A textbook of pharmacology and therapeutics, or, The action of drugs in health and disease / by Arthur R. Cushny.

Contributors

Cushny, Arthur R. 1866-1926.

Publication/Creation

London : Rebman, 1903.

Persistent URL

https://wellcomecollection.org/works/gzp23ds3

License and attribution

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.

wellcome collection

Wellcome Collection
183 Euston Road
London NW1 2BE UK
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722
E library@wellcomecollection.org
https://wellcomecollection.org

TEXT BOOK OF PHARMACOLOGY

CUSHNY

EX BIBLIOTHECA

CAR. I. TABORIS.

22101018457

Cecil H. W. Page.
Higham Cottage
Norwich.

May 1904.

"If there should be another flood
& this book would fly
for though submerged beneath the wave
yet it would still be dry"

Anon.

"When the world was 1st made by
order divine
10 measures of talk were put on the earth
And the women took nine"

J.O

Purgatives.

I Vegetable

(a) castor (ricinoleicae) & croton (crotolinicae) oils

(b) Anthracene group ($C_{14}H_{10}$)

Aloes Frangula Rhubarb & Senna

(c) Jalap & colocynth group

contain irritant resin — Podophyllin, Elaterium, Scammonium

II Saline

absorb fluid into intestine

no irritation retarded absorption

weight & distension cause + peristalsis

III Mercurials

Intestinal irritants

not cholagogues but prevent decomposition.

IV Sulphur local irritant.

V Enemata

VI Suppositorium Glycerini

A

TEXTBOOK

OF

PHARMACOLOGY

AND

THERAPEUTICS

OR THE

ACTION OF DRUGS IN HEALTH AND DISEASE:

BY

ARTHUR R. CUSHNY, M.A., M.D., ABERD.

PROFESSOR OF MATERIA MEDICA AND THERAPEUTICS IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN; FORMERLY THOMPSON FELLOW IN THE UNIVERSITY OF ABERDEEN AND ASSISTANT IN THE PHARMACOLOGICAL INSTITUTE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF STRASSBURG.

THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

ILLUSTRATED WITH FIFTY-TWO ENGRAVINGS

REBMAN, LIMITED,

129 SHAFTESBURY AVENUE,

LONDON, W. C.

1903.

PRINTED IN AMERICA.

WELLCOME INSTITUTE
LIBRARY
Acc. 339101
Call
No. QV4
1903
C98t

Alkaloids are.

1. active N principles of organic bodies
2. = NH_3 in one or more H's replaced by organic bodies
3. combine with acids to form crystalline bodies without ~~formation of~~ production of H_2O
4. alkaline
5. mainly solid, those containing O colourless crystalline
6. a few liquid generally containing C. H. N. pilocarpine conine nicotine sparteine lobeline
7. sparingly sol in H_2O readily in alcohol
8. solutions are bitter
9. nearly closely related to pyridine.

OSWALD SCHMIEDEBERG,

DEM MEISTER, VOM SCHÜLER GEWIDMET.

Glucosides + acids or enzymes = Glucose + { alcohol phenol etc

---

Volatile oils (Essential oils)
prepared by distillation
do not mark paper
Inflammable nearly — lighter than H_2O
aromatic — sol in H_2O to some extent gives it an odour

Resins

Oleo Resins
Sol of Resins in volatile oil

Balsams
mixtures of oleo resins & Benzoic or Cinnamic acid

Tolerance

1. opium in dogs oxidation in tissues

2. Belladonna in children

developmental 292

3. arsenic antitoxin
Ricin

4. Nicotine

constituent of tissues

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

DURING the eighteen months which have elapsed since the appearance of the second edition, several important advances have been made in pharmacology, necessitating corresponding changes in the text. The most interesting of these advances is the authoritative and, it is to be hoped, final determination of the food value of alcohol, which has been treated in more detail than in former editions. The increasing use of cocaine as a local anæsthetic, and the introduction of the subarachnoid method of medication required an expansion of the chapter on this drug, and the same may be said of the pages devoted to the adrenal gland. Numerous minor changes have been made to bring the text up to date and several new illustrations have been added.

Some experience in teaching pharmacology has led me to devote the last part of the term to a review, in which the drugs are classified according to their therapeutic uses. There is then an opportunity to compare the relative advantages of, and the special indications for different remedies, which is necessarily absent in the earlier part of the course. In order to facilitate this part of the work, such a classification has been appended to this edition.

I have again to express my gratitude to the teachers of pharmacology for the welcome accorded the first two editions, as well as for many helpful suggestions for this one.

A. R. C.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2019 with funding from
Wellcome Library

https://archive.org/details/b31363684

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

THE following pages were written to supply a want which I have felt keenly in teaching the subject of pharmacology to students who have completed the purely scientific branches of medicine and are beginning their clinical studies. My object has been to bridge over the hiatus which exists between the phenomena occurring in the normal organism and those which are elicited in the therapeutic use of drugs, to show how far the clinical effects of remedies may be explained by their action on the normal body, and how these may in turn be correlated with physiological phenomena. It necessarily follows that the subject is treated from the experimental standpoint, and that the results of the laboratory investigator are made the basis of almost every statement. Where these fail to elucidate the therapeutic effects or even to suggest a possible explanation, I have preferred to leave the question undiscussed rather than to call on such occult *dei ex machina* as alterative or tonic actions.

Two great difficulties present themselves at the outset to the writer on pharmacology who is not satisfied to take his statements at second hand, or to formulate explanations from his unaided inner consciousness; these are the overwhelming literature on the subject, and the wide limits of the field of study. As regards the first, I have read, as far as was in my power, the original papers of importance, and in order to facilitate the work of others who may wish to follow this, the only satisfactory method of study, have appended a bibliography to each chapter. It was impossible within the limits of a textbook to make this complete, or even to enumerate more than a few of the works consulted, and I have accordingly selected those which appeared most important, and those which were furnished with the most complete bibliography.

As regards the scope of the work, I have attempted to give the present standpoint of knowledge of such bodies as are of therapeutic or toxicological interest, and also of those which, possessing in themselves no immediate interest in practical medicine, have thrown important light on biological problems, and are accordingly likely to be referred to in scientific literature.

Unfortunately, a writer on this subject cannot as yet restrict his attention to these classes, but must refer at more or less length to many drugs which possess little interest either from a therapeutic or a scientific point of view. It is true that the more advanced teachers of medicine have very properly abbreviated their lists of remedies, until those generally employed may be enumerated in units where they were once counted in scores, but the student on going into practice meets numbers of drugs previously unknown to him, and not appreciating that these have already been tried and discarded by his teachers, is tempted to fall into the slough of unreasoning empiricism. There is still a tendency even among the educated to ascribe therapeutic virtues to every new weed and every new product of chemical industry, and the teacher of pharmacology must not only point out the good, but has the more ungrateful task of condemning the worthless. The period of constructive pharmacology has scarcely dawned; at present its chief function is destructive and critical.

In dealing with each drug, I have attempted to unify the whole action by using the most distinctive feature as a centre around which to group the less important symptoms. Where, as is often the case, there is a divergence of views among authorities, I have generally presented only one side of the question, except in very important subjects. This dogmatic method has of course its drawbacks, but is, I think, preferable to involving the student in a labyrinth of arguments and counter-arguments, the respective weight of which he is quite unable to estimate.

The preparations enumerated are those included in the United States and the British Pharmacopœias, and such others as seemed of sufficient importance. I have attempted to indicate by special type (small capitals) those that are more generally used.

Some explanation may seem necessary for the introduction of the word "therapeutics" in the title, in view of the fact that pharmacology is stated in the introduction to embrace all that part of therapeutics which can be treated of apart from clinical lectures. This definition is not universally used, however, and it has been felt advisable to indicate more distinctly the scope of the work by adding the more familiar term.

To those acquainted with the *Grundriss der Arzneimittellehre* of Schmiedeberg, it is unnecessary to state that this volume has been largely inspired by that classical work. Some chapters may in fact be regarded as merely expansions of those issued from the Strassburg laboratory, but this must necessarily be the case in any work which

pretends to treat the subject from the experimental standpoint. The use of such a model naturally exposes the writer to the criticism that he has fallen short of the original standard, especially when such divergences are made from it as occur in this work. But if I have departed from the letter in some respects, I hope that at least the spirit of the *Grundriss* has been preserved in these pages. I must acknowledge my indebtedness for references to papers which might have otherwise escaped my notice to the following textbooks: Kobert's *Lehrbuch der Intoxicationen*, Lewin's *Nebenwirkungen der Arzneimittel*, Husemann's *Pflanzenstoffe*, Harnack's *Arzneimittellehre*, H. C. Wood's *Therapeutics, its Principles and Practices* and Stokvis' *Leçons de Pharmacotherapie.*

Finally, I have much pleasure in acknowledging the assistance of my colleagues in the preparation of this work, particularly that of Professor Huber, who furnished several of the illustrations. Dr. G. B. Wallace has put me under lasting obligations through the patience and care which he has bestowed on the tedious task of proof-correction, and I must thank Dr. W. Mogk also for his assistance in this part of the work.

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN,
ANN ARBOR, MICH., June, 1899.

CONTENTS.

PAGE.

Introduction. 17
Mode of action of drugs, stimulation, depression, irritation . . 20
Elective affinity of drugs, protoplasm poisons 22
Remote, local and general action 23
Chemical composition and pharmacological action . . . 24
Conditions modifying the effects of drugs 25
Methods of administration 30
Chemical characters of drugs 34
Pharmacopœias and pharmacopœial preparations. 37
Classification of drugs 41

PART I.

ORGANIC SUBSTANCES WHICH ARE CHARACTERIZED CHIEFLY BY THEIR LOCAL ACTION 45
1. Demulcents 45
2. Emollients 49
3. Sugars and flavoring substances 54
4. Simple bitters. 56
5. Volatile oil series 61
Flavoring agents and carminatives. 66
Pepper group. 72
Malodorous volatile oils. 74
Genito-urinary disinfectants 75
Uva ursi 77
6. Skin irritants and counter-irritation. 78
Turpentine oil group 86
Mustard. 89
Cantharidin series 90
7. Vegetable purgatives 95
Purgative oils. 99
Anthracene purgatives 100
Jalapin and colocynthin group 105
8. Vegetable astringents—tannic acid group 111
9. Anthelmintics 117
Male fern 118
Cusso 120
Granatum 121
Santonin 122

PART II.

		Page.
	ORGANIC SUBSTANCES CHARACTERIZED CHIEFLY BY THEIR ACTION AFTER ABSORPTION	127
1.	Narcotics of the methane series. Alcohol-chloroform group	127
	Alcohol	131
	General anæsthetics — ether and chloroform	154
	Nitrous oxide	183
	Soporifics — chloral	187
2.	Strychnine — Nux vomica	196
3.	Opium series	207
	Minor drugs of the opium series	228
4.	Hydrastine and hydrastinine	230
5.	Cannabis indica	233
6.	Apomorphine	235
7.	Prussic acid	239
8.	Caffeine	245
	Coffee and tea	254
9.	Curara	256
10.	Coniine (gelseminine and sparteine)	261
	Coniine	261
	Gelseminine	265
	Sparteine	266
11.	Nicotine	268
	Tobacco	276
12.	Lobeline	278
13.	Atropine series	279
	Agaricin	301
14.	Cocaine	302
15.	Pilocarpine (and muscarine)	315
16.	Physostigmine	324
	Résumé	330
17.	Aconitine	332
18.	Veratrine	338
19.	Emetine (ipecacuanha)	343
20.	Colchicine	347
21.	Saponin, sapotoxin and solanine	350
22.	Aspidosperma or quebracho	356
23.	Quinine	357
24.	Antipyretics (acetanilide and antipyrine series)	373
25.	Antiseptics of the aromatic series (carbolic and salicylic acid series)	390
	Carbolic acid	398
	Cresol	404
	Thymol	405
	Eucalyptol	406
	Resorcin	406
	Pyrogallol	407
	Naphtalin and naphtol	408

PAGE.

Tar 410
Creosote 411
Ichthyol 412
Salicylic acid 413
Other aromatic oxy acids 422
Sulphocarbolates 422
Benzoic acid 423
Nitrobenzol compounds 425
Naphthylamine 426
Toluylendiamine 427
Benzol 427
Pyoctanine 428
26. Formaldehyde 428
27. Camphor 430
28. Picrotoxin 436
29. Digitalis series 440
30. Suprarenal or adrenal glands 463
31. Nitrites 468
32. Ergot 476

PART III.

COMBINATIONS OF THE ALKALIES, ALKALINE EARTHS, ACIDS AND ALLIED BODIES 485
Salt-action 485
1. Sodium chloride and water 490
2. Potassium salts 498
(Lithium, cæsium, rubidium) 499
3. Ammonium 500
4. Bromides 504
5. Iodides 510
6. Iodine 517
7. Iodoform 521
8. Fluorides 525
9. Chlorates 526
10. Nitrates 531
11. Sulphites 533
12. Hypophosphites 534
13. Saline cathartics 535
14. Hydrates and carbonates of the alkalies 544
Piperazine and Urotropine 553
15. Acetate series. 554
16. Ammonia and carbonate of ammonia 555
17. Oxalates. 557
18. Acids 559
19. Calcium 569
20. Barium and strontium 576
21. Sulphides and sulphur 577

PAGE.

22. Charcoal 581
23. Boracic acid and borax 582
24. Carbonic acid 584
25. Chlorine and bromine 586
26. Oxygen 588
27. Peroxide of hydrogen 591
28. Phosphorus 594
29. Arsenic 607

PART IV.

THE HEAVY METALS 625
1. Antimony 633
2. Mercury 638
3. Iron 659
4. Lead 674
5. Copper 684
6. Zinc 688
7. Silver 691
8. Bismuth 696
Cerium 700
9. Aluminium and alum 700
10. Minor metals 703
Gold 703
Platinum 703
Chromium 704
Manganese 705

PART V.

FERMENTS, SECRETIONS AND TOXALBUMINS . . . 709
1. Digestive ferments 709
Pepsin 709
Pancreatic ferments 710
Vegetable ferments 711
Diastase 711
2. Bile 712
3. Internal secretions 714
Thyroid gland 715
Other internal secretions 722
4. Toxalbumins 724
5. Cod-liver oil 726
6. Phloridzin 729

PART VI.

MENSTRUA AND MECHANICAL REMEDIES 731

A TEXT BOOK OF PHARMACOLOGY.

INTRODUCTION.

PHARMACOLOGY is the study of the changes induced in living organisms by the administration in a state of minute division of such unorganized substances as do not act merely as foods. Many of the best known of these substances are used to counteract the effects of disease, or to reinforce the tissues in their struggle to maintain their functions, when these are rendered abnormal. These substances are known as *drugs*, and the art of applying drugs in disease, is *Therapeutics*. Other substances are of little or no value in disease, but are of importance because they act as *poisons*, that is, cause dangerous or fatal symptoms in man or animals, when they are ingested in quantity. The practical study of the effects of these poisons in man — the diagnosis and the treatment of poisoning, and the methods of detecting the poison — is termed *Toxicology*. But the explanation of the symptoms induced by chemical substances, and their study, as apart from their practical applications, belong to the field of pharmacology, which includes not only the effects of drugs and poisons, but those of any substance which induces changes in the living organism, whether those changes are of benefit to it, injurious, or quite indifferent.[1]

The substances must, of course, conform to the requirements of the definition. Thus, a needle introduced into the tissues induces effects which are outside the field of pharmacological investigation, because it is not in a state of minute division. But the iron of the needle may be reduced to a fine powder and induce changes in the body which are then the legitimate subject of research. Similarly the drug must be introduced from without, for many active agents are formed within the body, but their study belongs rather to the departments of physiology and pathology; and the effects of organized bodies introduced from without are now studied under bacteriology. Pharmacology is really a department of biology, very closely related to the other sciences included by that term. Thus, as physiology is the study of the life of the normal organism, pharmacology is the study of the organism rendered abnormal by drugs, while in pathology the phenomena of life under disease are examined. All three subjects may be pursued without reference to the practical needs of medicine, and all three are closely interconnected and mutually dependent, for, in many instances, the normal condition of an organ can be recognized only by considering the results of its destruction by disease (pathology), or of its paralysis or stimulation by chemical agents

[1] It is quite impossible to distinguish between drugs and poisons. Almost all remedies given in excess cause dangerous or fatal symptoms, while many poisons are valuable remedies in small doses. Some bodies may in fact be remedies, foods, or poisons according to the quantity ingested and the method of application.

(pharmacology). Similarly, many of the features of disease are now recognized to be due to the presence of unorganized poisons formed in and by the tissues, and it accordingly becomes difficult to accurately define the limits of pathology and pharmacology. Thus, the toxines formed by microbes resemble in their action some of the ordinary drugs or poisons, and might be considered along with these. But the study of these toxines is so closely bound up with that of the microbes from which they originate, that it has been thought better to leave them to be treated by special text-books on bacteriology. For a similar reason the antitoxines, which play so prominent a rôle in modern therapeutics, may be excluded from treatises on pharmacology, for the present at any rate.

Even when these limitations are accepted, pharmacology has an enormous field to cover, and one which has been only very partially explored at the present day, in spite of the unremitting industry of many investigators. But a small part of the subject has been sufficiently developed to admit of text-book treatment, that namely, which is concerned with drugs used in therapeutics and with the commoner poisons. The slow advance of pharmacology is partly due to its position midway between the biological sciences and practical therapeutics, for while the biologist confounds it with clinical study, the clinician regards it as an experimental science. Its relation to biology has already been mentioned and its relation to practical therapeutics is no less close, for the effects of drugs in disease are as much a part of pharmacology as is their action in the normal organism. The aims of the pharmacologist and the clinician are not identical, however. The former seeks to solve the problem how the drug acts in a given case, while the primary object of the latter is to remedy the condition by any means in his power. Thus, in a case of heart weakness, the clinician prescribes some remedy which he has found of benefit in other similar cases, and regards only as of secondary interest the question which to the pharmacologist is the absorbing one, namely, whether the drug acts on the heart directly or through some other organ. Of course the results are of mutual advantage, for the physician supplies the experimental investigator with new facts and with new fields of inquiry, while the latter may indicate more exactly the conditions in which the drug is likely to be of benefit in the future by defining the method in which it acts. It is, therefore, much to be regretted that differences of opinion so often arise between these two classes of observers, for these can only retard the progress of both the science and the practical art. Doubtless there are often faults on both sides. The scientist sometimes insists too strongly on inductions drawn from a limited number of animal experiments, and refuses to admit results which have been obtained in thousands of cases of disease by competent observers. On the other hand, the therapeutist often lays too little weight on the general principles governing the interaction of the drug and the organism. Both often exceed the limits of their provinces, the scientist in refusing to admit effects of which he has perforce but a small experience, the clinician in attempting to refute deductions founded on experiments which he has no opportunity of performing. An example may render the relation of these allied subjects

clearer, and one has been recently offered in the discussion regarding the effects of iron. This metal has been used for many years in a form of anæmia, and its curative properties are attested by many thousands of cases and by whole generations of practical physicians. A pharmacologist, therefore, exceeds his province when he expresses doubt regarding this clinical fact simply because he is unable to explain it, but he is within his rights in discussing the means by which iron acts as a remedy. The clinician, on the other hand, enters on a pharmacological question when he attempts to determine whether iron acts by absorption or by its presence in the bowel, and must base his arguments on scientific experiment and not on his clinical experience of the curative effects of the metal. Fortunately for the progress of medicine and pharmacology, the scientific clinician is imbued with the desire to ascertain the methods in which drugs act as well as to cure disease, and thus unites clinical observation with pharmacological research. It is to be anticipated that the results of the practical physician and of the experimental investigator will come into more complete accord as more exact methods of clinical research are used by the former, and a wider laboratory experience is attained by the latter. But both methods are necessary to the complete knowledge of the action of a drug. Animal experiment cannot be dispensed with, for only thus can the action of drugs be ascertained in detail and expeditiously, and at the present time, when a new remedy appears almost every week, it is impossible to await the verdict of the clinics to separate the useful from the worthless, even if it were permissible to apply to the human subject drugs of unknown action and potency.

Pharmacology is one of the most recent developments of medical and biological science. It is true that from the earliest times attempts have been made to explain the effects of drugs on the then prevailing theories of pathology, but the objective study of the action of drugs on the organism has been a development of the nineteenth century, or it might almost be said, of the second half of it. During this period the same methods of research have been adopted as had earlier proved so fruitful in physiology and pathology, and with equally happy results. The study of drugs was termed *Materia Medica* up to this time, and comprised an examination of their botanical and chemical properties along with some account of the diseases in which they had proved of value. This descriptive rather than experimental study has been continued under the name of *Pharmacognosy*, but is now pursued by pharmacists chiefly. Undoubtedly the student of medicine ought to know those characters of drugs which are of importance as modifying their action and application, but it is undesirable that his valuable time should be occupied in the detailed description of crude substances, which he may probably never have an opportunity of seeing in his future practice.

Another subject which now occupies a much less prominent position in medical study than formerly, is *Pharmacy*, or the art of preparing drugs for therapeutic use. Some general knowledge of the methods used is no doubt indispensable to the educated physician, but the de-

tails may be left to the pharmacist. Pharmacy will probably occupy a still more subordinate position in medical education as the tendency to include only one or two drugs in a prescription becomes more widespread. As long as a dozen or more components went to make one mixture, it was of importance to know their solubility and their interactions, but with the decay of the complex prescription the study of pharmacy by medical students has certainly become less imperative.

MODE OF ACTION OF DRUGS. STIMULATION, DEPRESSION AND IRRITATION.

A small number of drugs affect the organism only through their *physical* properties, as when an inert oily body is applied to an abraded surface and promotes its healing by protecting it from irritation and from the evaporation of fluid, or when common salt absorbed into the blood changes its osmotic tension, and thus alters the distribution of fluids in the tissues.

But the great majority of drugs act through their *chemical* affinity for certain forms of living matter. They probably form temporary combinations with some forms of protoplasm, and alter the function of all cells which contain these forms. At least this is the only explanation of their affecting certain organs while others escape their influence. To take an example, the cells of the spinal cord normally receive sensory impressions from the exterior and send out motor impulses. But under strychnine the motor impulses are much more violent than usual, and this may be expressed by saying that the combination of strychnine and cord protoplasm functions more powerfully than unaltered cord protoplasm. The activity is changed, however, only in degree and not in kind; the reflex movement may be more powerful or less powerful than normally, but it remains a reflex movement and cannot under any circumstances partake of the nature of a voluntary movement. In other words, the action of drugs is quantitative and not qualitative, the activity of living matter may be changed, but the form which the activity assumes is unchangeable.

In recent years much attention has been paid to a series of natural phenomena occurring in the border-land between physics and chemistry and the application of the results of "physical chemistry" to pharmacology has proved of great value already and promises to elucidate in the future many problems which have hitherto been unapproachable. Examples of such applications will be met in the Meyer-Overton theory of narcosis and in the chapters on salt action. The tendency of study in this direction is to reduce the class of reactions which have hitherto been ascribed to special chemical affinity between drugs and protoplasm and to attribute many of the changes induced by drugs to the physical structure of the living cell rather than to its chemical constitution.

Drugs which increase the activity of any organ or function are said to *stimulate* it, while those which lessen the activity are said to *depress*

it. Another condition induced by drugs is *irritation*, for although this term is often applied loosely as a synonym for stimulation, the two conditions are not identical. Stimulation is properly used to indicate an increase in the specialized function of a cell, producing, for instance, in the spinal cord an increase in the reflex excitability. Irritation, on the other hand, is used rather in reference to the changes in the conditions common to all forms of living matter, that is, it indicates a change in the nutrition and growth of the cell, rather than in the specialized functions. Irritation may thus be induced in all kinds of tissues and is the commonest change caused by drugs in the less differentiated forms such as the connective tissues and ordinary epithelia; while stimulation is met with in the more highly specialized cells, such as those of the heart, nervous system, or secretory glands. In many instances the irritant action of drugs may be explained by their known reactions with the proteids of the cell; for example, substances which dissolve preteids, or precipitate them, or withdraw fluid from them, all tend to cause irritation when they are applied to living tissues. In other cases irritation appears to be induced through some chemical action the nature of which is quite unknown.

When stimulation is prolonged or excessive, the protoplasm generally becomes depressed and finally loses its activity entirely (paralysis). Some authorities have asserted that depression is invariably preceded by stimulation, and that stimulation sufficiently prolonged invariably leads to depression and paralysis. Both statements are too absolute, although they are true in the great majority of cases. For example, the action of atropine on the terminations of the cardiac inhibitory nerves is purely depressant. Even the most minute quantities of this alkaloid never increase the activity of these terminations, for if a quantity too small to paralyze them is ingested, it has apparently no effects whatever, and as the dose is increased, the first effect is paralysis.

Depression, whether induced directly, or following on stimulation, has been shown in several instances to resemble the fatigue induced by the prolonged exercise of the normal organ, and it is probably true that depression and fatigue are, in all instances, identical in appearance, although not necessarily identical in cause. For example, the phenomena of fatigue of the terminations of the motor nerves in muscle resemble exactly those induced by curara, but in the former the cause may be that the conducting substance of the nerve ends has been used up by the repeated passage of impulses, while in the latter the conducting substance is so changed that it becomes incapable of transmitting stimuli to the muscles. The final result is, of course, the same; there being no available conducting substance, impulses fail to reach the muscle. But the fatigued terminations rapidly recover, as conducting substance is reformed, while the curarized recover only when the poison is eliminated.

In most cases an excessive dose of a stimulating poison leads to depression and paralysis. The cell becomes functionally dead, but if the failure of its function does not involve the death of the organism, it

may recover and reassume its ordinary function as if no stage of inactivity had intervened. Excessive irritation, on the other hand, leads to actual death and disintegration, from which there is no recovery. For example, the cells of the spinal cord are first stimulated, and later paralyzed by a large dose of strychnine, but this is not fatal to cold-blooded animals, and after a few days the spinal cord regains its normal function, as the poison is eliminated. On the other hand, the injection of an irritant into the subcutaneous tissues causes dilatation of the vessels, effusion of fluid, and increased growth and rapid division of the cells. If only a small quantity be injected, this condition is recovered from, although it generally leaves evidence of its presence in the form of an increase in the fibrous tissue. But if the irritation be intense, the cells undergo degeneration and die, and an abscess is formed. The cells thus destroyed can never recover as the paralyzed ones do. They are either absorbed, or removed by the opening of the abscess, and their room is filled by the overgrowth of the neighboring tissues.

ELECTIVE AFFINITY OF DRUGS. PROTOPLASM POISONS.

Most drugs have an elective affinity for certain definite tissues. Thus, some attack the heart only, others the central nervous system and others the terminations of the motor nerves in muscle. Among the cardiac poisons again, some act on the ventricle, others on the auricle, and among the poisons of the central nervous system, some act primarily on the cortex, others on the medulla oblongata and others on the spinal cord. This elective affinity is not merely a question of degree, as is sometimes stated, for a drug which has a powerful action on the brain, may have no effect on the heart except when administered in such quantities as alter the physical characters of the blood. A drug may even alter different structures in diametrically opposite directions. Thus, atropine depresses certain nerve terminations, but stimulates the brain, and curara, which paralyzes the peripheral terminations of the motor nerves, stimulates the spinal cord. In some instances the immunity of a cell to the action of a drug may perhaps be explained by the latter failing to penetrate into its interior, but this is not true in the great majority of cases.

The fields of activity of different drugs vary greatly in extent. One may comprise only the terminations of the secretory fibres in the sweat glands (agaricin), while another, which affects these in the same way, may involve many other terminations in its action (atropine). Most poisons, however, while acting on a certain narrow area in small doses, extend the limits of their activity when larger quantities are ingested. Thus, a poison which acts in small doses on the medulla oblongata only, may, when exhibited in larger quantities, involve the spinal cord and the brain, and in still greater concentration may affect the heart and other organs. No poison is known that acts equally on all organs and tissues, but those which have a wide field of operation are often

known as *protoplasm poisons*. These paralyze any form of living matter when they are brought in contact with it in sufficient quantity, but if they are injected into the blood and thus distributed equally throughout the body, they invariably select some special organ as the chief seat of their activity. This is exactly parallel to the behavior of chemical agents in the laboratory. For example, acetate of lead added to a solution of a chloride, or of a sulphate, precipitates it, but added to a mixture of the two, throws down more of the sulphate than of the chloride. Nitrate of silver, on the other hand, precipitates the chloride only. Acetate of lead may be compared to the protoplasm poisons, nitrate of silver to those with a less extensive field of action. As protoplasm poisons affect a large number of different forms of living matter it follows that they alter the nutrition rather than specialized functions. Many of them cause irritation; others are used to destroy or retard the growth of microbes and are known as disinfectants or antiseptics.

REMOTE, LOCAL, AND GENERAL ACTION.

Drugs change directly only those organs and tissues with which they come into immediate contact. But the alteration of one part of the organism very often entails that of another to which the drug may not have access, or for which it has no special affinity, because impulses are transmitted through the nerves, or changes are induced in the circulation and nutrition. Thus irritation of the skin may alter the rate of the pulse by impressions being transmitted by the cutaneous nerves and reflected along the inhibitory nerves of the heart. Similarly a poison that weakens the heart may induce disorder of the respiration, from the circulation being deficient in the medulla oblongata; and depression of the brain may lessen the oxidation in the muscles, because it leads to lessened movement. These secondary changes, which are not due to the direct action of the drug on the organs concerned, are known as *remote* or *indirect* effects.

The *local* action of a drug is that induced at the point of application before it enters the circulation, the *general* or systemic action is that due to its elective affinity for certain organs to which it is carried by the blood. The local effects are very often entirely different in nature from the general action, for a drug may act as an irritant at the point of application and as a depressant to the brain when it is carried to it in the blood. Local effects may be induced wherever the drug can be applied—in the skin, the alimentary tract, the respiratory passages, and the other mucous membranes. They also occur in the subcutaneous tissues when the poison is injected hypodermically, and in any of the deeper organs and tissues which can be reached by the needle of the syringe. Local remedies may cause irritation, or may protect the surface from irritation, may depress the sensory end-organs and cause local anæsthesia, or lessen secretion, or alter the functions at the point of application in many other ways. They may also have remote effects, as has been mentioned. Many drugs have only a local action, because

they are not absorbed, are absorbed in inactive forms, or are excreted or deposited as rapidly as they pass into the circulation, so that enough is not present in the blood at any one time to induce general effects. On the other hand, many powerful poisons have little or no effect at the point of application, but possess an elective affinity only for some organ to which they are carried by the circulation.

THE RELATION BETWEEN CHEMICAL COMPOSITION AND PHARMACOLOGICAL ACTION.

As the effect of drugs on living matter is conceived to be due to a chemical reaction between them, it might be inferred that those drugs which present a close resemblance in their chemical properties and composition must induce similar changes in the organism. And this is true as a general statement, although the relation existing between chemical constitution and pharmacological action can be followed only a short distance as yet. For example, so many members of the methane series of chemistry depress the central nervous system that this may be regarded as a general property of these bodies, just as they possess certain general chemical reactions, which distinguish them from the members of other chemical series. In the same way, the heavy metals resemble each other in their general effects on the organism, just as they react similarly to some chemical tests. But whenever an attempt is made to follow this relation in detail, the analogy breaks down, because factors which it is impossible to deduce from the chemical constitution, make themselves felt. Exactly the same thing occurs in chemistry; for example, the heavy metals resemble each other in so many respects that it might be inferred that the sulphides would be of the same color, or that the chlorides would be equally soluble in water, but experiment shows that this is not the case. In the same way they resemble each other in many points in their effects in the organism, but it cannot be inferred from this that they will have the same effect on any given organ or in any given respect. A simple example of the very different effects in the organism of drugs which are closely related chemically, is offered by the action of the simpler members of the acetic acid series on the sense of smell. For formic, acetic, proprionic, butyric and valerianic acids can be easily distinguished by their odors, that is, they act differently on the terminations of the olfactory nerves, yet they form a homologous series of as closely related members as any chemical series can offer. They present certain differences in their chemical reactions, of course; for example they vary considerably in the solubility of the salts they form with barium and calcium, and it is impossible to explain, or to anticipate these variations from any consideration of their chemical constitution. If then their reactions with such simple and familiar bodies as calcium and barium cannot be anticipated, it would seem futile to attempt to foretell their behavior towards the infinitely more complex and less known protoplasm of the nerve terminations.

A great deal of time and energy has been devoted to an attempt to bring the effects in the organism of certain metals (notably the alkalies) into relation with their atomic weights, their valency, and other properties, but no results are to be expected from these researches, so long as their ordinary chemical reactions can only be formulated to a limited extent and imperfectly from these considerations. In particular, it seems of little interest to determine their exact relative toxicity, since there is no question that they do not all act on the same organs, and if one act on the brain and another on the heart, one by its specific affinity for an organ and another by inducing physical changes in the fluids of the body, these differences are sufficient to nullify any relation which they may bear to each other in regard to the exact fatal dose. As has been stated, it may be inferred with some probability that any substance belonging to certain wide chemical groups will induce symptoms in the organism resembling in general characters those of the other members provided always that it does not contain some radicle which renders it inactive, or gives it a more powerful action in some other direction. But the details of its action can be ascertained only by actual experiment, exactly as the details of its chemical behavior can be known only by performing the necessary reactions; and as there is no prospect of explaining the latter from its constitution at the present time, there is still less hope that much advance will be made in the near future in formulating the laws governing the details of its pharmacological effects.

CONDITIONS MODIFYING THE EFFECTS OF DRUGS.

The effects of drugs on the living organism are subject to some modifications in certain individuals, and under some conditions, which it is of importance that the physician should recognize, as the dose has to be altered when they are present. One of these is the **Size and Weight.** If the same amount of a poison be distributed through the tissues of a large individual as of a small one, less is contained in any given organ of the former and less effect is therefore observed. This has been ascertained chiefly in animal experiment, in which the effects of drugs can be estimated much more exactly than in man, but it undoubtedly holds good for human beings also. Very large individuals, then, require a somewhat larger dose than ordinary persons, while in treating individuals of small stature, the dose has to be reduced.

The **Age** of the patient has also to be taken into account in prescribing. Children ought to receive much smaller doses than adults. The more powerful action of drugs in children is due in part to their smaller size, in part to the more active growth of certain tissues and to the less complete development of others, such as the central nervous system. The dose for a child is generally calculated according to Young's formula, in which a fraction obtained by dividing the age by the age + 12, is taken as the proportion of the adult dose required. Thus for a

child of four years, the dose would be $\left(\frac{4}{4+12}=\right)\frac{1}{4}$ of the adult dose, for one of one year $\left(\frac{1}{1+12}=\right)\frac{1}{13}$ of the adult dose. According to another less used formula, the dose for a child is ascertained by dividing the adult dose by 20, and multiplying the result by the age. Brunton suggests dividing the dose by 25 and multiplying the result by the age at the next birthday. These formulæ are not, however, invariably safe guides to follow in prescribing. For example, the narcotics, particularly opium and its preparations, must be given during the first years of life in much smaller quantities than are indicated by Young's rule, while alcohol may be administered in comparatively large doses.

The usual dose advised has to be modified for children then, and may be taken as that suitable from 20–60 years. After this age is passed, it is again reduced somewhat, so that from 70–80 about $\frac{3}{4}$ of the adult dose is advised, and after 85 it may be reduced to $\frac{1}{2}$. There are exceptions to this rule also, large doses of the purgatives, for example, being often necessary in old people.

Sex.—Women generally require somewhat smaller doses than men, because of their smaller size, and it is often stated, because their tissues react more strongly to some drugs, though this has not yet been satisfactorily established.

Temporary conditions also influence the activity of drugs. Thus *after a meal*, a poison is absorbed more slowly from the stomach than when it is taken fasting, and any local irritant action is also less marked, because the drug is diluted by the contents of the stomach. *Irritation of the stomach and intestine* may also modify the effects of drugs; thus in some forms of dyspepsia the absorption is slower than usual and little effect may be induced by the ordinary dose, while irritant drugs naturally cause more disturbance of the digestion in these cases. On the other hand, a slight congestion of the stomach and bowel tends to promote absorption, and it has been found that more of a heavy metal is absorbed when it causes some destruction of the mucous membrane than when it is given in smaller quantities. Vomiting and diarrhœa, of course, tend to lessen the action of drugs by removing them rapidly from the alimentary canal.

During *pregnancy*, purgatives have to be used with great care, because they induce congestion of the pelvis, and may lead to abortion. Drugs acting on the uterus, or inducing a marked fall of blood pressure, are to be avoided because the former may cause the evacuation of the uterine contents, while the latter may lead to asphyxia of the fœtus. Many drugs pass from the mother to the child, and this is to be borne in mind, as quantities which are insufficient to poison the former may have more serious effects on the latter. During *lactation*, it is important to remember that active bodies may be excreted in the milk, and may either act on the child or render the milk distasteful to it. In *menstruation*, purgatives are to be avoided, as they tend to increase

the flow, and all very active drugs are to be used with care or abandoned temporarily.

The **Time of Administration** has also some influence on the effects of drugs. The body is generally more resistant in the morning than in the evening, especially in the case of narcotic drugs; thus a dose of a soporific which may have little or no effect in the early hours, induces sound sleep when given in the evening, because the brain is already fatigued and depressed.

Idiosyncrasy is used to denote an unusual effect for which no explanation can be found. Some persons react more readily than usual to the ordinary dose, while in other instances a much larger quantity can be taken without any effect. Others, again, show symptoms which are entirely different from, and which may, in fact, be diametrically opposite to those ordinarily observed. These idiosyncrasies are naturally more frequently seen, and are better known when they arise from widely used drugs. Thus the modern antipyretics have so often induced abnormal symptoms that these are well known, but it is not improbable that if other drugs had been used, or rather abused, to the same extent, they would be found to induce unusual reactions in an equally large number of individuals. An idiosyncrasy, as has been said, cannot be explained in the present state of knowledge, but some conditions which have been termed idiosyncrasies are probably due to abnormally rapid, or to retarded absorption or excretion. Idiosyncrasies are not confined to human beings, for not infrequently one animal reacts quite differently from others of the same species.

As has been mentioned, one form of idiosyncrasy consists in the failure of the individual to react to the ordinary dose of a drug. This is known as **Tolerance**, and this particular form of idiosyncrasy may be termed *congenital* tolerance. Certain species of animals tolerate quantities of drugs which would be fatal to others of the same size. In fact, so frequently is this the case that it is impossible to determine the fatal dose of any drug on an animal from experiments performed upon others of a different species, even though it be nearly related. One of the most remarkable examples of this form of tolerance is met with in the hedgehog, which resists large doses of many very active poisons. Another well-known example is the tolerance of the rabbit of large quantities of atropine.

A form of tolerance which is a matter of everyday observation is that induced by the prolonged use of a drug, which has been called *acquired* tolerance, or mithridatism, from the belief that Mithridates protected himself in this way from the danger of poisoning. The most familiar example of this form of tolerance is that acquired for tobacco (nicotine); the first cigar often induces violent poisoning, but if a habit be formed, large amounts of nicotine may be absorbed without apparent harm, not because the absorption is retarded, or the excretion is accelerated, but because the tissues become accustomed to the presence of small quantities of nicotine, and thus fail to react to it. Nicotine, in fact, becomes a normal constituent of the tissues. This tolerance is entirely

different from the immunity induced by toxalbumins (see Ricin), and it is desirable that the two terms should be kept distinct. Very often while tolerance for a poison is established in certain tissues, others suffer from the prolonged use of excessive quantities; for example, although the seasoned smoker does not suffer from the nausea and vomiting which followed his first essay, other organs may in course of time become involved, such as the heart or the eye. It is to be noted that tolerance is soon lost if the drug be discontinued for some time. This is of great importance in cases of opium-eating, for a person who has taken opium for a long time acquires a tolerance for the drug, so that sometimes enormous quantities are required in order to induce the ordinary effects, but if the habit be discontinued for some time the tolerance is lost, and a dose which would formerly have had little effect may now induce dangerous poisoning. The prolonged use of one drug may establish tolerance for others of the same class. Thus chronic drunkards are not influenced by large quantities of alcohol, and are also more resistant to the action of chloroform than ordinary persons, this being due to the fact that chloroform and alcohol act on the same nerve cell in the same direction, and probably induce the same changes in the protoplasm.

The **Cumulative Effect** of drugs is another phenomenon caused by their prolonged ingestion. Small doses of certain drugs taken repeatedly for some time eventually cause symptoms which are much more marked than those caused by a single small dose. In many instances this seems due to the accumulation of considerable quantities in the tissues. The absorption may be more rapid than the excretion, and each new dose thus adds to the total quantity in the blood and organs more than is lost in the same time by excretion. The classical example of cumulative action is that of digitalis, but it is much more frequently induced by such drugs as mercury, arsenic, or the iodides, for the so-called chronic poisoning induced by these is really an example of cumulative action. It has been suggested that cumulative action is not really due to the accumulation of the drug in the tissues, but to a summation of a prolonged series of effects of the same kind; but although the increase of the drug in the organs has not been proved in all instances, it seems probable that this is the explanation in the great majority of cases, perhaps in all. Cumulative action may occur along with tolerance, as has been stated. Thus the tolerance of certain tissues for nicotine does not protect others from the effects of the abuse of tobacco.

Synergists.—The presence of another drug having the same effects in the body often increases the action of a remedy to an unexpected extent. This is the ground for the prescription of several remedies acting in the same way.[1] For example, several purgatives prescribed together often act more efficiently than any one given in quantity equal to all of them. It is quite impossible to explain this except by assuming that, although all are alike in their chief features, they differ in the details of their reactions, so that parts of the alimentary

[1] The less important ones are sometimes termed adjuvants.

canal which might escape one are affected by another, and the mixture thus acts more universally than any one of the components. It must be added that, although the greater efficiency of the mixture is attested by the general belief of physicians, no very satisfactory researches on the subject have been carried out as yet.

On the other hand, a drug may fail to elicit any symptoms if an **antagonistic** substance be present in the body. Thus in cases where a powerful nervous depressant, such as chloroform, has been inhaled, strychnine may have little or no effect on the spinal cord in doses which would normally increase the reflexes to a marked extent. In the same way, if the terminations of the inhibitory fibres of the heart are paralyzed by atropine, a poison which normally slows the heart by stimulating these terminations will have no such effect except in very much larger doses.

Similar modifications of the effects of drugs may be induced by poisons induced by pathological changes in the tissues, or by an unusual state of irritation or of depression of the tissues themselves. For example, in hot weather and in tropical climates, purgatives are found much more efficient than in colder climates, either because there is some poison which acts along with the purgative, or because the mucous membrane is more irritable than usual. That some such factor is present in these conditions, is shown by the frequent occurrence of diarrhœa without the use of drugs.

Similarly when an antagonistic poison is formed in the tissues in the course of a disease, a drug may have little or no effect; so that if the inhibitory cardiac terminations are paralyzed by disease, the heart cannot be slowed by muscarine or digitalis.

Pathological conditions very often modify the effects of drugs to a very considerable extent, and in a way which cannot be explained at present. For example, the antipyretics reduce the temperature in fever, but have no effect on it in health; the bromides lessen the convulsions in epilepsy, but have much less effect in depressing the brain in normal persons. The question may therefore be raised whether the examination of the effects of drugs in normal animals is of much value in indicating their therapeutic action. But in reply it may be said that in a large number of instances drugs are given, not in order to act upon the diseased tissues, but upon healthy ones. The object of the therapeutist is very generally not to restore the diseased tissue, but to relieve it from work, and to allow it rest so as to promote its restoration by nature. For instance, in disease of the cardiac valves, drugs are given not with the object of restoring their integrity, but to act upon the healthy heart muscle, and to obviate the disturbance of the circulation which is caused by the destruction of the valves. In inflammation of the kidneys, the physician seldom attempts to reduce the inflammation by the action of drugs on the cells involved, but confines his attention to removing by other channels the products of tissue waste, which would normally be excreted by the kidney. So that in most instances drugs are given to act on normal tissues, or on

tissues which are so little affected by disease that they react to remedies in the same way as the normal. In other cases in which the remedy acts on the cause of the disease or on the diseased tissue, its introduction is due to clinical experience only. Thus quinine destroys the organism of malarial fever, but this could never have been anticipated from its action on the normal tissues, and could only be discovered by experiments on the organism, or rather by experiments on persons suffering from the disease, as the organism has been recognized only of late years.

METHODS OF ADMINISTRATION.

The effect of a remedy is often determined very largely by the method in which it is administered. As regards the local action, this is sufficiently obvious, for an irritant applied to the skin could scarcely be expected to cause the same symptoms as if it were applied to the stomach and intestine. But the same holds true for the general action in most instances, because some tissues and organs absorb much more rapidly than others, and a larger quantity of the drug therefore passes through them into the blood in a given time. Thus, if a poison which is absorbed slowly be rapidly excreted, so little of it may exist in the blood and tissues at any given time that no effects are induced, while if it be rapidly absorbed, the same dose can exert some action before it is excreted.

Drugs are applied for their **Local Action** to the skin, to the mucous membranes of the alimentary, respiratory, and genito-urinary tracts, and to the conjunctiva and cornea. Not infrequently they are injected by means of the hypodermic needle into the subcutaneous tissues for their local effects, and the attempt is continually being renewed to treat even the deeper tissues and organs locally by the injection of remedies into them. The objects of local medication are very diverse, and can be treated of only in connection with the individual drugs. The methods of application are also so numerous that only a few of the chief can be mentioned. Drugs intended for application to the skin are often formed into salves or ointments (unguenta) by mixing them with oily or fatty substances, which adhere to the skin and do not dry up, and which in addition to serving as a means of applying an active substance, protect the surface from the air and from irritation. Other preparations for application to the skin, such as the plasters (emplastra), resemble the ointments in their general characters, but also give mechanical support, and bind surfaces together from their being spread on paper or cloth, which thus serves as a flexible splint. The collodions and cerates resemble the plasters, the oleates the ointments. In addition to these special preparations, drugs may be applied to the skin in solutions, or as powders, or solid masses may be used to cauterize it.

The methods of applying drugs to the alimentary tract and to the lungs for their local action are for the most part similar to those used

for drugs which are intended to be absorbed. The mouth and throat may be washed out with solutions, which are gargled (gargarismata), or may be treated with powders, or lozenges (trochisci), which are slowly dissolved and thus permit of a more prolonged and constant action in the mouth than is possible if the drug be swallowed immediately. The nose may be washed out with solutions of active drugs, or powders may be drawn into the nostrils as snuffs; the latter often cause sneezing, and are sometimes known as sternutatories, or errhines. The larynx may be treated locally by the application of powders or of very small quantities of fluids by means of the laryngoscopic mirror and probe. Solutions are generally used for application to the conjunctiva, but a more permanent effect can often be obtained from the use of ointments or powders which are less liable to be washed away by the tears. The urethra, vagina and uterus are treated by the injection of solutions, or by ointments and powders. Bougies, which are occasionally advised, are formed by incorporating an active drug in some substance which is solid at ordinary temperatures, but melts when introduced into the organ and allows the drug to come into contact with the surface. The rectum may similarly be treated by the injection of drugs in solution or suspension (enemata), or by the use of suppositories. Drugs are not infrequently applied by the rectum in order to elicit their action after absorption, but much oftener for their local action on the bowel. Enemata may be either large (a pint or more) or small (2–5 c.c., ½–1 fl. dr.). The large enemata are used either to wash out the intestines, and may then contain an antiseptic or astringent, or to induce peristalsis and evacuation of the bowel, when they are made up of water with or without soap or other slightly irritant substances. The small enemata are used chiefly to induce evacuation, and contain more irritant substances, such as glycerin alone or along with some more active body (see uses of the vegetable purgatives). The suppositories are formed of cacao-butter, which is solid at room temperatures, but melts at the temperature of the rectum.

All the visible mucous membranes may also be cauterized by the application of a solid rod of a corrosive for a short time.

Drugs whose **General Action** is to be elicited after their absorption are given by the mouth, except when some special character in them or in the disease renders some other method preferable. They may be given by the mouth in solution in water, alcohol, oils, or other more or less indifferent bodies. The disagreeable taste of many remedies, however, often precludes this method, and these may be ordered in the form of pills, or in capsules, which are formed of gelatin or similar substances and are dissolved in the stomach and intestines. Very often the disagreeable taste may be concealed by the addition of sugar, or of some strongly tasting but agreeable body such as a volatile oil. Insoluble drugs may be given as powders, as they have little or no taste. Powders are also used as a means of administering soluble drugs, if they have not a disagreeable taste and have no marked local action, but very deliquescent drugs should not be given in this form. Insoluble drugs are sometimes

ordered in suspension in mucilaginous fluids; and oils, which are distasteful to many people, may be given mixed with water and gums (emulsions).

The rate of absorption from the *alimentary canal* varies greatly with different drugs and also with the form in which they are administered. The first point will be treated of in connection with the individual drugs. As regards the second, it may be stated that drugs are more rapidly absorbed when they are swallowed in solution, and that when much inert and insoluble matter is associated with them, their absorption is much retarded. Thus, common salt passes more rapidly into the blood when it is dissolved before being taken than when it is swallowed dry, and morphine is absorbed much more quickly when it is administered pure than when, as in opium, it is mixed with a mass of gums and other bodies. This fact is taken advantage of in practice by giving drugs in solution when rapid absorption is desirable, and by giving less pure forms when the local action on the stomach and bowel is to be elicited. The more concentrated the solution, the greater is the irritant action on the stomach, and thus where irritation of the stomach is desired, either the solid drug or a strong solution is given; but as a general rule the local action on the stomach is to be avoided, and drugs are therefore ordered in as dilute solution as is possible without increasing the bulk to too great an extent. It is to be noted that drugs which are insoluble in the test-tube may be rendered soluble by the action of the gastric and intestinal juices, while many which are given in solution, are thrown down in the stomach in the form of insoluble albuminates.

The great mass of drugs absorbed from the stomach and intestine is carried to the liver before reaching the general circulation, and this is of great importance in determining their effects in the body, as some of them are retained in that organ, and are either entirely destroyed or escape so slowly that they have no perceptible effect.

Another important method of administering drugs for their general action and also for their local effects is by inhalation into *the lungs*. Only volatile drugs can be used thus for their general action. They are absorbed very rapidly owing to the extensive surface to which they are applied, and also because volatile substances penetrate the tissues more readily than others. The best examples of inhalation are offered by the general anæsthetics, chloroform and ether. Most substances absorbed by the lungs are also excreted by them, and this leads to an important practical point in regard to the anæsthetics. For the passage of gases or vapors through the lining epithelium of the alveoli depends in most instances[1] upon their partial pressure, that is, upon their concentration in the air and blood respectively. Accordingly, when the air contains more chloroform vapor than the blood, the anæsthetic passes into the blood, but as soon as the condition is reversed, and the blood contains more chloroform than the air of the alveoli, it commences to

[1] Such gases as oxygen and carbon monoxide, which form chemical combinations with the hæmoglobin, are of course exceptions.

pass backwards. The more concentrated the vapor inhaled, the more chloroform is contained in the cubic centimeter of blood, and the greater is the action on the nervous centres and the heart.

Less volatile substances are sometimes inhaled into the lungs for their local action, and even non-volatile bodies suspended in a spray of vapor may be thrown into the respiratory passages, but it may be questioned whether these last really reach the alveoli except in traces.

Drugs are also applied to *the skin* in order to elicit their general action. Volatile bodies are certainly absorbed by it, although much more slowly than by the lungs or by the stomach and intestine. Solutions in water of non-volatile drugs are not absorbed from the skin, but solutions of certain remedies in alcohol, oils, fats, ether, and some other substances which are capable of dissolving or mixing with the fatty covering of the skin, are absorbed fairly rapidly if they are rubbed in thoroughly. This method of application (inunction) has been used chiefly for the absorption of mercury, as the local action on the stomach and bowel is thus avoided. (See Mercury.) Alkaloids do not appear to be absorbed by the skin even when dissolved in oils or alcohol. An entirely obsolete method of application is the endermic, in which the epidermis was removed by a blister, and the remedy then applied to the exposed corium.

The *hypodermic method* is of comparatively recent origin, but is being more widely used every year. In it drugs are injected through a fine hollow needle into the subcutaneous, or, in the case of more irritant substances, into the muscular tissue, where they meet with fewer sensory nerves. Absorption occurs more rapidly than when drugs are given by the mouth, the local action on the alimentary canal is avoided, and the physician is more certain that the whole of the remedy is effective, provided it is soluble and is not precipitated at the point of injection. At the same time, the method has certain drawbacks, the chief of which are the pain of the injection and the danger of injecting a powerful remedy into one of the subcutaneous veins. Hypodermic injections should be made only by the physician or trained attendant, for incalculable injury has been done by entrusting patients with the syringe, particularly for the injection of morphine and cocaine. The needle and syringe ought to be disinfected, and the substance injected should be aseptic, and this renders the method inconvenient. As a general rule, solutions in water or in dilute alcohol are used for injection, but the insoluble salts of mercury have also been injected, suspended in oil (see Mercury). Irritant drugs are to be avoided as far as possible, as they cause great pain, swelling and sometimes suppuration, even when the injection has been carried out aseptically. Hypodermic injection is used very largely to elicit the general action of a remedy, but also for the local effects, as when cocaine is injected in order to produce local anæsthesia. Solutions of inert bodies have also some anæsthetic action, probably owing to their mechanical action on the sensory nerve fibres. As the absorption from the subcutaneous tissues is so much more rapid

than that from the stomach and intestine, when the drug is in perfect solution the dose has to be reduced. As a general rule, about one-half of the ordinary amount is sufficient.

Deeper injections are sometimes made for their local action on the organs. Thus, antiseptics have been injected into lung cavities, caustics have been injected into tumors, and direct applications have been made to the nerves in sciatica and other similar disorders.

Intravenous injection is the most certain method of bringing drugs into the circulation and tissues, and is at the same time the most rapid. It is, therefore, very largely used in experiments on animals, but has generally been considered too dangerous for therapeutic purposes in man. Baccelli has, however, recommended it highly in recent years in cases of emergency, in which the immediate action of a remedy is required. In pernicious malaria, and in syphilis when an important organ is threatened, he has injected small quantities of quinine and mercury with great success. The dose must be very much smaller than that employed by the mouth, but it is impossible as yet to state exactly what fraction will induce the same effects.

Drugs are occasionally applied by *the rectum* for their general action, as has been mentioned. The local effects on the stomach are avoided by this method, and morphine and opium are, therefore, not infrequently administered thus. The rate of absorption from the rectum as compared with that from the stomach and bowel is still a disputed point, and some physicians recommend that the dose be reduced to three-fourths, while others recommend one and one-half times that given by the mouth.

Drugs are not administered by the *other mucous membranes* for their general effects, but it must not be forgotten that symptoms may arise from their application to them for their local action. Similarly, drugs applied as dressings to *wounds or abrasions* have very often given rise to severe or fatal poisoning from being absorbed into the blood and tissues.

THE CHEMICAL CHARACTERS OF DRUGS.

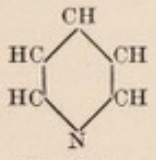
An enormous number of substances induce changes in the living organism, and have, therefore, to be recognized in pharmacological treatises. Many of them are comparatively simple chemical compounds, and require no general description here, but less attention is paid in ordinary chemical textbooks to certain groups of active poisons, and some note must be taken of their general properties.

In the inorganic materia medica are found many salts, bases, and acids, and a few uncombined elements, such as mercury and phosphorus.

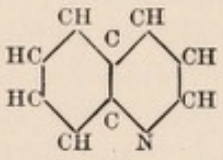
Organic chemistry offers a large and ever-increasing number of artificial compounds which belong to almost every one of the divisions recognized in chemistry. The hydrocarbons, alcohols, ethers, phenols, ketones, aldehydes, acids, and many others, contribute active agents, and in fact most of them are represented by one or more members in therapeutics. They may all be regarded as sufficiently known by stu-

dents who are prepared to study pharmacology with profit, but some substances, obtained chiefly from plants, require further mention.

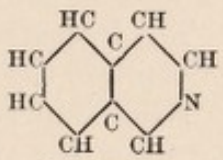
The first group of these is formed by the **Alkaloids**, which are substituted ammonias, and have a more or less strongly alkaline reaction, so that they are often known as the vegetable bases. They contain carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, and, as a general rule, oxygen, although some of them, such as coniine, are devoid of it. Like ammonia, they combine with acids readily without eliminating hydrogen, and the salts thus formed resemble those of ammonia in many respects, among others in being thrown out of combination by the fixed alkalies. The term alkaloid is often restricted to compounds of pyridine and quinoline, and this is convenient in treating them from a chemical point of view. But the pharmacological action of some of the substituted ammonias of the methane series has so much in common with that of the pyridine bodies that it is impossible to maintain this narrow definition. Most of the vegetable alkaloids whose constitution is known are derived from pyridine, quinoline and isoquinoline by the addition of hydrogen, and generally by the substitution of one or more of the hydrogen atoms by side chains of greater or less complexity.



Pyridine.

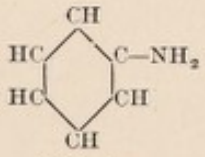


Quinoline.



Isoquinoline.

In these the nitrogen takes the place of one of the carbons in benzol and naphthalin respectively. In others the nitrogen is attached to radicles belonging to the methane or open-chain series, as in $CH(OH)_2 - CH_2 - N(CH_3)_3OH$, which is generally regarded as the formula of muscarine. A third series of bodies, which may be regarded as alkaloids, although they differ from the others in many respects, are derivatives of aniline, and are artificial products.



Aniline.

These aniline derivatives bear some relation to the vegetable bases in their action, but are equally or more nearly related to the benzol series so that they may be regarded as connecting links between these two classes of bodies.

Some of the vegetable alkaloids have been formed synthetically in the laboratory, and the constitution of some of the others is perfectly well known, but many of them have not yet been isolated, and there are probably others whose existence is not even suspected. These vegetable alkaloids occur in almost all parts of plants, although they are

found in greatest abundance in the seeds and roots. The same alkaloid is often found in most of the plants of a genus, or it may occur in one or two species of a genus and in other plants which are in no way related. Very often more than one alkaloid is found in a plant, and these may differ entirely in their action on animals, although not infrequently all the alkaloids of a plant resemble each other in their effects. The alkaloids are found almost exclusively in dicotyledonous plants, only one or two being known to exist in the monocotyledons. Muscarine is found in the fungi, and quite recently alkaloids have been isolated from the suprarenal capsule of animals and from the skin of the salamander.

The alkaloids are very often only slightly soluble in water, but form salts which are generally more soluble. Many of the bases are dissolved in ether, chloroform and amyl alcohol, while the salts are insoluble in these. Both bases and salts are generally fairly soluble in alcohol. The alkaloids are precipitated from solution by a large number of reagents, of which the most important are the chlorides of platinum and of gold, tannic acid, phosphotungstic and phosphomolybdic acid, the double iodides of potassium and mercury, and of potassium and cadmium, and iodine held in solution in water by potassic iodide. The hydrates and carbonates of the alkalies and the alkaline earths precipitate the alkaloids from solutions of the salts in water, a point of some importance in prescribing these bodies. In cases of poisoning when the alkaloid has been taken by the mouth, it may be precipitated in the stomach by dilute alkalies or better by tannin solutions. The poison should then be removed by inducing vomiting or by washing out the stomach with the stomach tube.

Another important class of vegetable poison is formed by the **Glucosides** (glycosides), or saccharides, which are esters (compound ethers) composed of sugars and hydroxyl substances, and which liberate sugar when they are heated with acids, or sometimes with alkalies, or when certain unorganized ferments act on them. The sugar formed in this way is often glucose, but not invariably so; the other decomposition products have been identified only in a few instances. Many of the glucosides contain only carbon, hydrogen and oxygen, a few have nitrogen in addition and one or two sulphur. In some instances the remainder, after the sugar is split off, is an alkaloid, *e. g.*, solanidine. Glucosides differ greatly in their solubility in water and alcohol; comparatively few of them are soluble in ether. Some of the glucosides are powerful poisons, others have little or no action.

Resins, an ill-defined group, are found in many plants, and are characterized by their smooth, shining fracture, and by their insolubility in water and solubility in ether, chloroform, volatile oils, benzol and, in many cases, in alcohol. They seem to be formed in plants by the oxidation of volatile oils, and are often acid or anhydride in character, while others are apparently alcohols or esters. The resins are almost invariably composed of several different substances mixed together. Many of the resins are local irritants, and some are poisonous in com-

paratively small quantity from the powerful action they exert on the intestine.

Oleoresins are solutions of resins in ethereal oils, which lend them a characteristic odor and taste.

The term '*Balsam*' is often used as synonymous with oleoresin, but most writers restrict it to those oleoresins which contain benzoic and cinnamic acid along with other constituents. (See Benzoic Acid.)

Gumresins are mixtures of resins and gums, generally containing some volatile oils. They are insoluble in water, but the resin is suspended in it by the gum. On the other hand, the resin is dissolved by alcohol, while the gum remains insoluble.

Gums are amorphous, transparent substances, composed of carbohydrates of the formula $C_6H_{10}O_5$ and are thus nearly related to cellulose and starch. Some of them are soluble in water, while others merely swell to a jelly in it; they are insoluble in alcohol. They generally occur in plants in combination with calcium, magnesium or potassium; they have no poisonous action, but form a protective covering for irritated surfaces, and are largely used to suspend in water substances which are insoluble in it, such as resins and oils.

Volatile oils occur in plants in large numbers. (See page 60.)

Many Acids which are of pharmacological and therapeutic interest are obtained from plants, but it is unnecessary to enter into a description of their properties here.

Fats and oils, sugars, starch, proteids, coloring matter, ferments and other bodies which occur in plants, and are contained in many of the preparations used in therapeutics, are not generally possessed of any action of importance. Those which are active in the body will be described individually.

Finally many of the active principles of plants are entirely unknown or have been only partially examined. Among these are a number of substances which have little in common except their bitter taste and which are known as **Bitters.**

THE PHARMACOPŒIAS AND PHARMACOPŒIAL PREPARATIONS.

Almost all governments have found it necessary to regulate the preparation of drugs used in therapeutics, and for this purpose issue at intervals codes of instructions defining the characters of the drugs and giving the exact formulæ according to which they are to be prepared for use. In the United States, where the government has not undertaken this as yet, a code has been prepared by a voluntary association of physicians and pharmacists. These codes are known as **Pharmacopœias**, and some differences exist between those of different states, although the most important drugs are found in all of them. All the drugs used in therapeutics are not found in the pharmacopœias, for these are issued only at intervals of several years, and in the mean-

time large numbers of remedies are introduced, used for a few months, and pass into oblivion. Even when a drug maintains its position for many years, and promises to be a lasting addition to therapeutics, it often fails to be admitted to the official code, while others of older standing, which are comparatively seldom used, and which might be omitted without loss, are kept on the list. This conservative tendency of the compilers of the pharmacopœias has its disadvantages, but at any rate tends to withhold official sanction from the innumerable ephemeral products of chemical industry. The official definition of therapeutic substances is of advantage to both physician and pharmacist, as it assures the former that the drug he prescribes will have a uniform quality, wherever in the country it is dispensed, while the pharmacist is saved from the continual preparation of remedies in different forms, by their being prescribed in one recognized strength.

The pharmacopœias contain a large number of pure substances such as salts, acids, bases, alkaloids, and these require no further description. On the other hand, many of the drugs are given in an impure form, either because the active principle is unknown, or because its isolation is attended with difficulty and expense. Thus many of the vegetable remedies are presented in the pharmacopœias as solutions or solids which contain not only the active principle but gums, sugars, coloring matter, and many other impurities. These are provided in different forms to allow of variation in their administration. In addition, the pharmacopœias contain a number of official prescriptions, that is, mixtures of active substances in such proportions as are ordinarily prescribed. These are generally designated by the addition of compound (compositus) to the name of the chief ingredient. Most pharmacopœias continue to use Latin in the titles of the drugs, and this is not due to mere pedantry or conservatism, as is often stated. For the popular name of a drug is often used for several different substances, as, for example, hellebore, while the Latin name in a prescription indicates that drug which is known by the term in the pharmacopœia. In the same way it is found necessary to maintain Latin terms in botany and zoology in order to define accurately the species.

Many crude or unprepared drugs are found in the pharmacopœias, such as leaves, roots, flowers, or even whole plants. These are used chiefly for the preparation of other more readily applicable remedies, but are sometimes prescribed as powders or in pills.

The following preparations[1] are official :

a. *Aqueous Preparations.*

Aquæ, medicated waters, generally contain only traces of some volatile substance, such as an ethereal oil or chloroform, in solution in water, and these are used in prescriptions as more agreeable to the taste and smell than pure water but have no further effect. In the U. S. P. the solutions of

[1] The student is advised to omit the following list for the present, and to refer to it only as he takes up the preparations of the individual drugs. Most of these preparations are found in both pharmacopœias. Those which occur only in the British are indicated by B. P., while those which are confined to the United States are marked U. S. P.

chlorine, ammonia and hydrogen peroxide are also included under aquæ, but these are used only to elicit the specific effects of these drugs and are powerful poisons. In the B. P. these strong solutions are included in the liquores.

Liquores (U. S. P.) are solutions in water of soluble substances which are not volatile. The official solutions of powerful poisons are often one per cent. in strength.

Liquores (B. P.) are solutions in the widest sense, in water, alcohol, or other fluids. The dissolved substance may be volatile or non-volatile. The "concentrated solutions" (B P., *Liquores Concentrati*) are not, as might be supposed, condensed by evaporation. They resemble infusions and decoctions in most respects.

Decocta, or decoctions, are impure solutions of vegetable principles, which are obtained by boiling parts of plants in water.

Infusa, or infusions, are solutions obtained by soaking parts of plants in water, which may be hot or cold, but is not kept boiling. Infusions and decoctions are weak preparations and decompose rapidly so that they are used only when recently prepared.

Misturæ (U. S. P.), or mixtures, are preparations in which substances insoluble in water are suspended in it by means of gums or similar viscid substances.

Misturæ (B. P.) include a number of preparations in which insoluble bodies are suspended in water by means of gums or syrup, but one mixture contains only soluble bodies.

Emulsa (U. S. P.), emulsions, are formed by suspending oils in water by means of gums or other viscid bodies. The B. P. contains no official emulsions, the corresponding preparations being known as *misturæ*.

Mucilagines, mucilages, are solutions in water of gums, starch, and similar bodies.

Syrupi, syrups, are strong solutions of sugar in water, which may be used alone, or may be impregnated with more active bodies. Similar preparations formed with honey instead of syrup (sometimes known as *mellita*) are official, as Mel Rosæ (U. S. P.), Mel Boracis (B. P.). A solution of honey and acetic acid is known as *oxymel* in the B. P. (Oxymel Scillæ).

Lotiones (B. P.), lotions, or washes. This term is used to designate two preparations of mercury, the black and yellow wash.

b. *Alcoholic Preparations.*

It is to be noted that in these preparations the menstruum (alcohol) is not an indifferent body as in the aqueous preparations; the effects of some of this class are undoubtedly due rather to the alcohol than to the dissolved substances.

Spiritus, spirits, are solutions of volatile bodies in alcohol, and often owe their chief action to the solvent and not to the drug contained in it.

Elixiria (U. S. P.), elixirs, differ from spirits chiefly in containing sugars, which are added in order to give them taste.

Tincturæ, tinctures, are solutions in alcohol of medicinal substances, which are generally formed by soaking parts of plants in it. They contain both volatile and non-volatile ingredients, but the latter are generally the more important.

Extracta Fluida (U. S. P.), *Extracta Liquida* (B. P.), fluid extracts, are prepared from plants by forming solutions in water or more frequently in alcohol, and evaporating them until the solutions contain as many cubic centimeters as the original crude drugs weighed in grammes; that is the volume of the fluid extract corresponds to the weight of the crude drug.

The tinctures and fluid extracts are the most commonly used liquid preparations, and most of the important drugs are prepared in one or both of these forms.

Vina, medicated wines, are solutions of active substances in wine or in dilute alcohol.

Succi (B. P.), the juices of fresh green plants, obtained by pressure. Some alcohol is added to preserve them from putrefaction.

c. *Other Fluid Preparations.*

Glycerita (U. S. P.) or *Glycerina* (B. P.) are solutions of medicinal substances in glycerin.

Collodia, collodions, are solutions of medicinal substances in collodion. (See Part VI.)

Aceta, or medicated vinegars, are solutions of medicinal substances in vinegar or acetic acid.

Linimenta, liniments, embrocations, are preparations in which active remedies are dissolved or suspended in dilute alcohol, oils, or water. They generally contain an oil or soap and are intended to be applied to the skin.

d. *Solid and Semi-Solid Preparations.*

Extracta, extracts, are formed from solutions such as tinctures, decoctions, or infusions by evaporation, which is continued until there remains a solid mass. The extracts thus contain all the substances which are taken up by the solvent, except those which are driven off or decomposed by the temperature at which evaporation is carried on.

Pilulæ, pills, are globular masses of small size, such as admits of their being easily swallowed. They are formed from extracts, or from powders, by the addition of some substance to give them the necessary cohesion and consistency. Pills generally weigh 0.1–0.3 G. (2–5 grs.). The U. S. P. determines the composition and size of the official pills, so that the dose can be modified only by ordering several pills to be taken at one time. The B. P. leaves the pills unformed, so that they may be prescribed of any size. The Pilulæ of the B. P. really correspond not to the Pilulæ, but to the Massæ of the U. S. P.

Massæ (U. S. P.), masses, are preparations made up of the proper consistency for pills. They are invariably prescribed in the form of pills.

Confectiones, confections or electuaries, are soft, solid preparations consisting of sugar or honey impregnated with some more active body.

Suppositoria, or suppositories, are intended for insertion into the rectum, urethra, or vagina, and are, except in one or two cases, formed by mixing the active ingredient with cacao-butter. (See part VI.) Suppositories for the rectum are conical in shape and weigh about a gramme (15 grs.). Those for the urethra are of the same weight, but are pencil-shaped, while the vaginal suppositories are globular, and weigh about 3 grammes (45 grs.).

Pulveres, powders, are simply dry substances in a state of fine division. Most of the official powders are mixtures of several active bodies.

Triturationes (U. S. P.), triturations, are formed from powders by diluting them with nine parts of sugar of milk.

Trochisci, troches, or lozenges, are solid masses, generally of a flattened shape, and consist of powders or other bodies, incorporated in sugar and gum. A very friable form of lozenge known as *Tabellæ*, or tablet triturates (not official), is formed by pressing in moulds a mixture of powdered sugar and drugs, slightly moistened with alcohol.

Lamellæ (B. P.), or discs, are small discs formed of gelatin with some glycerin, each weighing $\frac{1}{50}$–$\frac{1}{30}$ gr. They are impregnated with an active drug, and are applied to the conjunctiva in order to elicit the local effects.

Unguenta, ointments, salves, are soft, oily substances which are applied to the skin by rubbing. (See page 49.)

Oleata, solutions in oleic acid resembling the ointments in appearance and uses.

Cerata (U. S. P.), cerates, resemble ointments, but are rendered harder by the addition of wax. (See page 50.)

Emplastra, plasters, are adhesive bodies of a still harder consistency than cerates, and soften only when heated. (See Part VI.)

Chartæ, papers, are preparations of active substances which are spread in a thin layer upon paper, or are incorporated in it by dipping sheets of paper into a solution.

Unofficial Preparations.

Cachets, are thin discs of dough of the shape of a soup-plate and varying from ½ in. to 1½ in. in diameter. When two of them are placed together with their concave sides toward each other, they form a receptacle in which powders are dispensed. The edges stick together when they are moistened. A somewhat similar method of dispensing is in gelatin *capsules*, which may be hard or soft, and which are made in different sizes. The hard capsule is used for solids, the soft for liquids. Sometimes the latter contain as much as 15 c.c. (½ fl. oz.), but these are difficult to swallow.

Cataplasmata, or poultices, are not official preparations now, but are in common use. They are generally made of linseed meal, oatmeal, or bread crumb, which is formed into a paste with hot water, enclosed in thin cotton or linen and applied to the skin. Mustard and other remedies may be added to the poultice in order to induce special effects, and in some cases a poultice consists merely of drugs enclosed in a cloth sack, as in charcoal or spice poultices.

Enemata, clysmata, or clysters, are liquid substances injected into the rectum for their local or general effects. (See page 31.)

CLASSIFICATION OF DRUGS.

Writers on pharmacology and therapeutics arrange drugs on many different principles. Thus a somewhat antiquated system classifies the vegetable remedies according to the botanical families from which they are obtained, but there is little advantage in this arrangement, for an order may include drugs which differ entirely in their action and in the therapeutic uses to which they are put, while, on the other hand, two widely separated botanical groups may contain identical poisons. Another classification of drugs is according to their therapeutic effects, and this might seem at first sight the most convenient for students of medicine. This plan has its drawbacks, however, for many drugs are used for a large number of different purposes, and it is impossible to describe them under each heading. In addition, the classification in groups is always liable to suggest a much closer resemblance in the effects of the individual drugs than really exists. Thus the drugs often classed as "cardiac stimulants" differ much, not only in their effects on the body in general, but in their action on the heart, and opinions may differ as to whether some of them stimulate or depress the heart. They certainly cannot be substituted for each other in the treatment of heart disease, as is suggested by their being classified together under this heading. Finally, practical therapeutics can be taught only in the clinic, and in the teaching of pharmacology it seems advisable to direct the student's attention rather to the action of drugs than to the practical uses, which can be taught to much greater advantage in connection with the symptoms, prognosis, and other clinical features of disease. The classification of drugs and poisons according to their action on living matter is the natural one, and is based on the same logical principle as the modern classification of plants in botany and of animals in zoology. The object is to group together those substances which have most points of resemblance, whether they are obtained from the same or from different orders of plants, and whatever relation they may bear to each other in therapeutics. This classification, which was introduced by Buchheim, has been further developed by Schmiedeberg and his pupils. In the present state of knowledge it is necessarily imper-

fect, and many resemblances and affinities have not gained that recognition which they will doubtless receive in the future. Even in its present imperfect form, however, this classification is the most satisfactory one available, and, unlike the others, it can be easily subjected to such modifications as the advance of science renders necessary. If ever the ideal classification be attained, in which the grouping is based upon the chemical reactions of the poisons with the living protoplasm, this natural classification will be found to conform more easily to it than any based upon origin or temporary therapeutic uses.

Resemblance in pharmacological action does not necessarily involve similarity in chemical composition, as has been already pointed out. But it is found that in many instances the members of a pharmacological group have some general chemical character which distinguishes them from others. Drugs which resemble each other in their pharmacological action, are often used for very different purposes in therapeutics, although this is much less frequently the case now than formerly. This is very generally due to the failure of the clinicians to observe the resemblance in the action of drugs. As they become more familiar with the results of animal experiment, they will recognize that in many instances drugs which they now regard as distinct on account of superficial differences, really resemble each other in all important points, and may be substituted for each other in therapeutics In this way it is to be hoped that the natural classification of drugs will gradually be found to approach more closely to the therapeutic. At the present time the continued use of the therapeutic classification can only tend to delay this consummation.

In this volume, the classification adopted is that of Buchheim and Schmiedeberg, with some slight alterations which seemed to be demanded by recent progress. The drugs are thrown into a large number of groups which are named from the most prominent member, or from some marked property possessed by all. These groups are arranged, as far as possible, according to their mutual resemblances. It has been found advisable to retain, for the most part, the divisions into organic and inorganic drugs, although this may, perhaps, have to be abandoned in the future. The first series of groups of the organic materia medica are possessed of the common property of inducing more marked local than general effects, and these may therefore be classified in one large subdivision. The second division of the organic drugs is formed of those whose pronounced general action obscures their local effects, when these are not entirely absent. The first few groups of this division are formed of those whose chief action is developed on the central nervous system ; then follow those which involve more especially the peripheral nerves, muscles, and secretory organs ; these, again, pass into a series in which local irritant action is associated with powerful general effects, and through these into a series of protoplasm poisons. The last series of organic groups consists of those acting chiefly on the heart and vessels directly. The groups of the inorganic drugs show less defined affinities, and are much more difficult to classify than the organic series. The salts of the alkalies and alkaline earths, the acids and alkalies may be thrown into a large and somewhat heterogeneous division, which is easily marked off from that of the heavy metals, which have many points in common in their ef-

fects in the organism, as in their chemical reactions. The latter division is led up to by phosphorus and arsenic, and several bodies which it is impossible to classify at present are placed between these and the first inorganic division. Another class is formed of a number of substances which are either present in the normal body, or are merely substitutes for normal secretions, and the final class is composed of a few preparations which are used only for their mechanical effects, and which for the most part are not drugs, although they are included in the pharmacopœias.

It must be emphasized that no attempt is made to draw hard and fast lines of demarcation between the different groups. The essential features of the natural system involve the recognition that this is impossible. It has therefore been considered best not to indicate any definite point at which the discussion of poisons acting on the central nervous system ends and that of the drugs with peripheral effects begins. The student is always liable to lay more importance on such divisions than is intended by the writer, to list those on one side of the dividing line as central, those on the other as peripheral in action, whereas the transition is gradual. The six chief divisions are therefore the only ones indicated.

Demulcent protective.
Cover injured surfaces
Cover taste

PART I.

ORGANIC SUBSTANCES WHICH ARE CHARACTERIZED CHIEFLY BY THEIR LOCAL ACTION.

This class contains a very considerable part of the drugs included in the pharmacopœias, although it bears a smaller proportion than formerly to the other classes. There is still, however, in it a larger number of drugs which have practically identical effects, and there is no question that it might be considerably curtailed without loss to therapeutic practice. Many of its members are irritants, and these have been subdivided for convenience into groups according to the organs on which they exert their chief action and the purposes for which they are used in therapeutics, as gastric, intestinal, cutaneous irritants. Others act as protectives, covering injured surfaces (demulcents, emollients), and still others precipitate the proteids on the surfaces to which they are applied (astringents). Others seem to act chiefly by affecting the taste, and finally a heterogeneous group which is used in the treatment of intestinal parasites, has been inserted here.

I. DEMULCENTS.

Acacia Liquorice
Tragacanth. Amygdala

A large number of colloid substances—chiefly gums, dextrins, sugars and starches—owe their use in medicine, not to any changes they produce in the cells with which they come in contact, but to the fact that they are cohesive and serve to protect surfaces mechanically. When they are applied to a sensitive surface, they retard the movement of fluid or air against it and thus preserve it from the effects of these agents. This may be illustrated by familiar examples in which the taste of food is altered by their presence, although they have often no taste or odor in themselves. Sugar dissolved in mucilage tastes less sweet than in water and acids are also less appreciated, as may be observed in many fruits. For example, the raspberry contains more acid and less sugar than the currant, but in the former the acid taste is concealed by the presence of large quantities of colloids, so that the raspberry is regarded as a sweet fruit, the currant as an acid one. Even cold is felt less when a colloid substance is present in the fluid swallowed; thus, ice-cream or iced milk does not feel so cold on the tongue and throat as frozen water, because the colloid proteid substances form a protecting layer over the surface, and prevent the cold mass from reaching the sensory terminations so freely as it otherwise would. A

number of experiments carried out by Tappeiner[1] show that other organs may be protected in the same way by colloid solutions. Strong salt solution applied to a motor nerve first stimulates and then slowly paralyzes it, but Tappeiner found that both of these effects are much less marked if the solution be made up with mucilage instead of with water, because the salt does not reach the nerve so readily. In the same way, intense pain is caused in a wound by strong salt solution, but is much less severe if the solution contain colloid material.

When demulcents reach the stomach, they appear to coat the wall and thus to alter the sensation arising from food, for Quincke found in a case of gastric fistula that the patient could distinguish milk from water even when it was passed directly into the stomach, and Pawlow states that the presence of starch in the stomach alters the secretion induced by food. Tappeiner found that much less inflammation of the intestine is caused by irritants if they are suspended in demulcents than if they are dissolved in water, and this accords with the observation that beer, which contains large quantities of dextrin, is less irritant to the stomach than a solution of alcohol of equal strength. The digestion of proteids outside the body is retarded by the presence of the demulcents, and probably this is also true of the process in the stomach. Colloid bodies also retard the absorption of fluids from the stomach and bowel, and this leads to a feeling of distention, which is much less marked if the same amount of fluid be swallowed without colloid; for instance, water is absorbed more rapidly than milk or beer.

The slow absorption of colloid fluids allows time for decomposition, and this may give rise to irritation and catarrh. The colloids themselves are absorbed very slowly, and probably only in a condition of semi-decomposition. After absorption, they are oxidized in the tissues and therefore act as foods to some extent, although their slow absorption prevents their being of much value. They have, of course, no effect as demulcents after absorption, but the large quantity of fluid with which they are generally taken may be of benefit in some conditions.

Demulcents are used to cover inflamed surfaces; in tonsillitis, for example, they may be applied as gargles, or better by sucking lozenges containing them. They are not often applied externally for this purpose, as they are liable to serve as media for the growth of micro-organisms. In gastric and intestinal catarrh their use is objectionable for the same reason, their slow absorption leading to decomposition with the formation of irritants, which may do more harm than is counterbalanced by their protective action.

In acute irritant poisoning the demulcents are often of great value as they protect the stomach wall from the effects of the poison. The best remedy in these cases, because the most readily obtainable, is milk or white of eggs.

Their effects in retarding the absorption of other remedies may be taken advantage of. Thus when the effect of alcohol on the stomach

[1] *Tappeiner*, München. med. Woch., 1899, No. 38.

or bowel is desired, it is given as wine, which contains colloid material, and is therefore, absorbed slowly; it must be noted, however, that these same colloids delay digestion much more than alcohol itself. In the same way opium and extract of nux vomica are prescribed when the local action on the bowel and stomach is desired, while the pure alkaloids, morphine and strychnine, are administered for their effects after absorption.

Demulcents are often given instead of pure water in cases where it is desired to administer large quantities of fluid, as they have more "body" and are more agreeable to the taste. Thus, barley water or some other demulcent may be advised in order to dilute the urine when it is too concentrated or too acid. The thirst of fever is often assuaged much better by these than by water alone.

Demulcents are often used as the basis of enemata which are intended to be absorbed, because solutions containing colloids are less irritant and therefore less liable to set up peristalsis than pure water. For this purpose starch solution is generally used.

Preparations.

Acacia (U. S. P.), **Acaciæ Gummi** (B. P.) (gum arabic). a gummy exudation obtained from Acacia Senegal, consists of the potassium, magnesium, and calcium salts of a weakly acid substance, arabin or arabinic acid ($C_6H_{10}O_5$). It is soluble in equal parts of water, and is used as a demulcent, but more largely to give cohesion to pills, lozenges, etc., and to suspend powders or oils in water, in emulsions and mixtures.

Mucilago Acaciæ (U. S. P., B. P.).—About 1 part acacia in 2 of water.

Syrupus Acaciæ (U. S. P.).

Tragacantha (U. S. P., B. P.), a gummy exudation from various species of Astragalus, contains arabin and tragacanthin in combination with potassium, magnesium, and calcium. Tragacanthin differs from arabin in not dissolving, but merely swelling up into a jelly in water. Tragacanth is used chiefly to suspend heavy powders in water.

Mucilago Tragacanthæ (U. S. P., B. P.), formed of tragacanth, glycerin and water. In the B. P. alcohol is used instead of glycerin.

Glycerinum Tragacanthæ (B. P.), a solution of tragacanth in glycerin and water.

Pulvis Tragacanthæ Compositus (B. P.), contains tragacanth, gum acacia, starch and sugar. Dose, 20–60 grs.

Sassafras Medulla (U. S. P.), the pith of Sassafras variifolium (sassafras).

Ulmus (U. S. P.), the inner bark of Ulmus fulva (slippery elm).

Althæa (U. S. P.), the root of Althæa officinalis (marsh-mallow).

Linum (U. S. P., B. P.), the seed of Linum usitatissimum (linseed).

Linum Contusum (B. P.), crushed linseed.

Mucilago Sassafras Medullæ (U. S. P.).

Mucilago Ulmi (U. S. P.).

Syrupus Althææ (U. S. P.).

These all contain colloid substances which are extracted with hot water, and which are believed to be nearly related to arabin, although their composition is not accurately known. They are largely used in domestic medicine as demulcents in sore throat, and may be prescribed to suspend powders or oils. The syrup of marsh-mallow is a pleasant flavor.

Triticum (U. S. P.), the rhizome of Agropyrum repens, or couch-grass, contains mannite, lævulose, and a starchy substance, triticin. Its decoction is used as a beverage in fever, and to dilute the urine. It has a certain

popular reputation as a diuretic in suppression of the urine, calculus, etc., but this is entirely unmerited, for it increases the urine simply by the water given with it.

Amylum (U. S. P., B. P.), or starch, may be formed into a jelly by boiling in water, and may then be used for the same purpose as the demulcents.

Glyceritum Amyli (U. S. P.), *Glycerinum Amyli* (B. P.), is a jelly formed by heating starch with water and glycerin. Starch in various forms—arrow-root, sago, tapioca, etc.—is an important element in the diet of the sick, but this subject can not be entered on here.

Amygdala Dulcis (U. S. P., B. P.), or sweet almonds, the seed of Prunus amygdala dulcis, contains a fixed oil and emulsin, a ferment, but, unlike the bitter almond, no amygdalin. When triturated with water it forms an emulsion, or mixture, which is bland and demulcent.

Emulsum Amygdalæ (U. S. P.), *Mistura Amygdalæ* (B. P.).

Pulvis Amygdalæ Compositus (B. P.) contains sugar and acacia with almond.

Syrupus Amygdalæ (U. S. P.) is formed from a mixture of sweet and bitter almonds, and therefore contains a small proportion of prussic acid, but may be used in the same way as the demulcents with perfect safety.

Glycyrrhiza (U. S. P.), **Glycyrrhizæ Radix** (B. P.), or liquorice-root, the root of Glycyrrhiza glabra (var. glandulifera), is used as a demulcent, and more largely to flavor medicines. It has a pleasant, sweet taste, owing to the presence of *Glycyrrhizin*, an acid glucoside, which is combined with calcium and ammonia in the plant, and is not soluble in cold water, but swells up in it to a jelly-like mass. Glycyrrhizin is probably decomposed in the body ; the urine is often found to contain a reducing body after the administration of liquorice.

Extractum Glycyrrhizæ (U. S. P., B. P.).

Extractum Glycyrrhizæ Purum (U. S. P.).

Extractum Glycyrrhizæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), *Extractum Glycyrrhizæ Liquidum* (B. P.).

Glycyrrhizinum Ammoniatum (U. S. P.), the ammonium salt of glycyrrhizin.

Pulvis Glycyrrhizæ Compositus (U. S. P., B. P.) contains senna. Dose, 2–8 G. (30–120 grs.).

Trochisci Glycyrrhizæ et Opii (U. S. P.).

Mistura Glycyrrhizæ Composita (U. S. P.), "*Brown Mixture*," contains opium, antimony and spirits of nitrous ether. Dose, 15–30 c.c. (1–2 tablespoonfuls).

The extract is largely used in the form of lozenges for its demulcent action, and is very frequently used to make up pills. It is slightly laxative, and may be used as a pleasant aperient for children ; the compound powder is more reliable for this purpose owing to its containing senna, one of the vegetable purgatives.

The lozenges and the brown mixture contain opium and are used largely in cough and in catarrh of the air passages.

Numbers of other substances are used as demulcents in domestic medicine, and are found in different pharmacopœias. Examples of these are barley (Hordeum), salep, verbascum and quince seeds.

Cetraria (U. S. P.), Iceland moss, is a lichen (Cetraria islandica), and contains two nearly allied starch bodies (lichenin and isolichenin) together with acids, of which cetraric acid is the most important, as it gives the decoction a bitter taste. The acids can be removed by soaking in dilute alkaline solutions for some time.

Chondrus (U. S. P.) (Irish moss or Carragheen), Chondrus crispus and Gigartina mamillosa, both seaweeds gathered on the coasts of Ireland and Massachusetts. Chondrus contains a carbohydrate, carrageenin. The decoction forms a jelly when cold, and was formerly supposed to form a valuable food in illness, but it is of little value for this purpose, for only about $\frac{1}{20}$–$\frac{1}{30}$ of the jelly is solid matter, the rest water.

Decoctum Cetrariæ (U. S. P.).

Vitellus (U. S. P.) and *Glyceritum Vitelli* (U. S. P.), a mixture of yolk of egg and glycerin, may also be used as demulcents or to suspend insoluble drugs.

Inula (U. S. P.) (elecampane), the root of Inula Helenium, contains a starchy body, inulin, along with a volatile oil and camphor.

II. EMOLLIENTS.

Emollients are bland, oily substances which are applied to the skin to protect it from irritation, and to render it softer and more elastic, and thus bear the same relation to the skin as the demulcents to the mucous membranes. Their effect in rendering the skin softer and more pliable may be due in part to their penetration into the surface layers, but may also be explained by the slight congestion induced by the rubbing and massage used in their application.

The older emollients were chiefly animal and vegetable fats and oils, but several newer drugs of this class are derived from petroleum. The effects of these drugs when applied to the skin are purely local. No doubt some small percentage is absorbed into the tissues, but this has no known effect in man, and although the fats and oils are valuable foods when taken internally, this plays no part in their effects when applied to the skin. It has been proposed, it is true, to administer oils by the skin in cases of inanition in which they are not borne by the stomach and intestine, but no very satisfactory results have been recorded from this very laborious method of treatment.

The emollient preparations promote the absorption of drugs dissolved in them, because they mix readily with the thin layer of oily sebaceous matter which covers the epithelium. The active substances dissolved in them therefore come into intimate contact with the absorbing cells lining the ducts of the glands, while watery solutions are separated from the lining cells by a layer of sebum. If this layer be dissolved off by alcohol, watery solutions are also absorbed rapidly, and alcoholic solutions are absorbed as quickly as oily solutions, because the alcohol is miscible with the sebum. On the other hand solutions in water come into more intimate contact with the cells of the mucous membranes and with the subcutaneous tissues, and are therefore more readily absorbed by these than oily solutions. To ensure rapid absorption, a drug should be dissolved in some emollient if it is to be absorbed by the skin, in water when it is to be administered internally or hypodermically. Solutions in oil of such antiseptics as carbolic acid are much less powerful than those in water, because carbolic acid being more soluble in oil fails to diffuse into the watery protoplasm of the microbe, for which it has less affinity. (See Antiseptics of the Benzol Series.) But antiseptics which are more soluble in water than in oils are said to be equally active in both solvents.

The emollients are applied as protectives in abrasions, cuts, bruises, chapped hands, burns; they are less often used alone in extensive skin diseases, but are usually prescribed in these as the basis of ointments

in which other remedies are incorporated. There is no question that the protection afforded to the part and the exclusion of the air by the oily emollient plays an important part in the action of these remedies, and it seems probable that in many cases equally good results would follow the application of the emollient without any active ingredient.

Preparations.

Adeps (U. S. P., B. P.), lard; the prepared internal fat of the abdomen of the pig, purified by washing in water, melting and straining.

Adeps Benzoinatus (U. S. P.), *Adeps Benzoatus* (B. P.), benzoinated lard, is prepared from lard by the addition of benzoin, which is slightly antiseptic and preserves it from becoming rancid.

Unguentum (U. S. P.), ointment, is a mixture of lard and yellow wax. It was formerly known as Unguentum Simplex, and is the basis of many other ointments.

Unguentum Diachylon (U. S. P.) is formed from lead plaster and olive oil, perfumed with oil of lavender. The lead is inert, the action being identical with that of ordinary ointment.

Unguentum Aquæ Rosæ (U. S. P., B. P.), cold cream, is formed of spermaceti, white wax, oil of almonds, and some borax, scented with rose water.

Sevum (U. S. P.), **Sevum Præparatum** (B. P.), mutton suet, is obtained from the abdominal fat of the sheep.

Lard and suet have the ordinary constituents of animal fats, stearin, palmitin and olein. They are seldom used alone, but form the basis of numerous ointments. These animal fats tend to putrefy, and are then rendered irritant by the presence of free acids (rancidity), and have therefore been replaced to a considerable extent of late years by other preparations which do not suffer from this drawback.

Adeps Lanæ Hydrosus (U. S. P., B. P.), hydrous wool-fat, lanolin, the purified fat of sheep-wool, mixed with not more than 30 per cent. of water.

Adeps Lanæ (B. P.), wool-fat without water.

Lanolin has been used extensively in medicine only in the last few years. It consists of cholesterin esters with some impurities, does not become rancid, and differs from the older fats also in being miscible in twice its weight of water without losing its ointment consistency. Lanolin is very often used as an emollient application, as well as to form a basis for more active drugs.

Other preparations of wool-fats are known as lanichol and alapurin.

Petrolates or **Paraffins.** When the more volatile constituents of petroleum are distilled off, there remain a number of higher hydrocarbons, chiefly of the marsh gas series, which are used in medicine as emollients. The lower of these hydrocarbons are fluid at ordinary temperatures and are known as

Petrolatum Liquidum (U. S. P.), *Paraffinum Liquidum* (B. P.), a colorless, oily transparent liquid without odor or taste. When these are removed there remains

Petrolatum molle (U. S. P.), Paraffinum molle (B. P.), soft petrolate, vaselin, which has the consistency of an ointment, is yellow or white in color, and is liquefied a few degrees above the temperature of the blood. When the distillation is carried further, the residue is solid at ordinary temperatures, and is known as

Petrolatum Spissum (U. S. P.), *Paraffinum Durum* (B. P.), or hard paraffin, which melts at a somewhat higher temperature than vaselin.

Unguentum Paraffini (B. P.) is a mixture of three parts of hard paraffin with seven parts of vaselin.

By mixing the petrolates a salve of any desired consistency may be obtained. Soft petrolate is often known as petrolatum, as it is much more extensively used than the others. It is used as an emollient, and as a basis for ointments and has the advantage over the older lard and suet that it

does not become rancid. Liquid vaselin has been used to dissolve irritant substances for subcutaneous injection, as much less pain is caused when they are dissolved in vaselin than when water is used. Sobieranski[1] has shown that vaselin rubbed into the skin is absorbed to some extent, and may be recovered from the muscles and to a less extent from other organs. Rabbits lost flesh and some of them died under the continued application of vaselin, but this may have been due to the manipulation and not to the drug itself.

Several **Oils** are also used as emollients.

Oleum Olivæ (U. S. P., B. P.), olive oil, a fixed oil obtained from the ripe fruit of the olive, Olea europæa.

Oleum Lini (U. S. P., B. P.), Linseed or Flaxseed oil.

Oleum Amygdalæ Expressum (U. S. P.), *Oleum Amygdalæ* (B. P.), a fixed oil expressed from bitter or sweet almonds. It is to be distinguished from the volatile oil obtained from the bitter almonds. The fixed oil contains no prussic acid.

Oleum Sesami (U. S. P.), Sesame oil, Teel oil, Benne oil.

Oleum Gossypii Seminis (U. S. P.), Cotton-seed oil.

Oleum Adipis (U. S. P.), oil of lard.

These all resemble each other in their composition, and may be used as emollients. Olive oil is generally preferred to the others, but is much more expensive, and it is probable that much of the so-called olive oil is really purified cotton-seed oil. Olive oil has been advised as a cholagogue, but has been shown by more exact methods of research to have no effect whatever on the secretion of the bile. It sometimes gives relief in biliary colic however, an effect which may perhaps be due to its acting as a demulcent in the duodenum, and thus lessening the irritation of the gall duct. It is administered in large doses for this purpose—100–150 c.c. (3–5 fl. oz.) in 24 hours.

Cera Flava (U. S. P., B. P.), yellow wax.

Cera Alba (U. S. P., B. P.), white wax prepared from the yellow by bleaching.

Cetaceum (U. S. P., B. P.), spermaceti, obtained from the cachelot (Physeter macrocephalus), one of the whales.

These three preparations are not used alone, but are often added to the emollients and ointments in order to give them a firmer consistency, which is especially desirable in hot climates and in summer.

Ceratum (U. S. P.) a mixture of 3 parts of wax with 7 of lard.

Ceratum Cetacei (U. S. P.), *Unguentum Cetacei* (B. P.), is a mixture of white wax and spermaceti and olive or almond oil.

GLYCERINUM (U. S. P., B. P.), Glycerin, a liquid obtained by the decomposition of animal or vegetable fats or fixed oils, and containing not less than 95 per cent. of absolute glycerin, $C_3H_5(OH)_3$; clear, colorless, of a syrupy consistence, oily to the touch, with a sweet taste and no odor, soluble in water and alcohol.

Glyceritum Amyli (U. S. P.), *Glycerinum Amyli* (B. P.), glycerite of starch.

Glyceritum Vitelli (U. S. P.), glyconin, glycerite of yolk of eggs, may be used as a protective, but is more largely prescribed to form emulsions.

Glycerin is used as a solvent for a number of other drugs, the preparations being known as *glycerites* (U. S. P.), *glycerines* (B. P.).

Glycerin is somewhat irritant to the unbroken skin, when it is applied in the pure form, and even diluted glycerin causes pain and smarting when it is applied to unprotected surfaces such as cuts or burns, but the pain soon disappears, and glycerin then acts as a protective. The irritation is due to the glycerin abstracting the fluids of the tissues owing to its avidity for water. Glycerin and its preparations are used very extensively as applications to slight wounds, in ir-

[1] Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxi.. p. 329.

ritation of the skin and lips from exposure to cold, and in similar conditions. They are often applied to hard, dry crusts on the skin in order to soften them and permit of their removal.

The irritant action of glycerin causes peristalsis and evacuation of the bowels when small quantities are injected into the rectum. The glycerin is said to pass upwards from the anus to the sigmoid flexure or even further, and to increase the peristalsis of the greater part of the large intestine from its contact with the epithelial walls. It is very probable, however, that the local irritation of the lower part of the rectum is sufficient to set up reflex movement of the bowel. Small quantities of glycerin injected into the rectum do not cause diarrhœa; the stool is of almost ordinary consistency, and no pain or colic is felt subsequently, nor does the remedy cause more than one evacuation. Glycerin may be injected into the rectum for this purpose (dose 2–5 c.c., ½–1 teaspoonful), but a more convenient form is the glycerin suppositories, **Suppositoria Glycerini**, which are made up with stearic acid and sodium carbonate, U. S. P., with gelatin, B. P. These suppositories are found not to keep well, as the glycerin tends to attract moisture and then escapes; to avoid this they are often encased in paraffin, which is broken off immediately before they are inserted. Glycerin suppositories are used in constipation instead of the ordinary aperients, and they have also been advised in parturition to increase the pains. Large doses of glycerin taken internally sometimes cause purgation, but it is not a reliable remedy when administered in this way.

Glycerin in large quantities is poisonous whether it is taken by the mouth or injected hypodermically or intravenously. It is true that no case of glycerin poisoning in man is known, but large doses are fatal to animals in the course of a few hours. The chief symptoms are restlessness, agitation, acceleration of the heart and respiration, general weakness, tremor and convulsions, which finally end in somnolence, coma, and death from failure of the respiration. The convulsions are marked only after large doses, when they may assume a tetanic character. A rise in the temperature has been noted by several observers, followed by a fall which continues until death. When glycerin is injected subcutaneously in large quantities, hæmoglobin appears in the urine, while this is rarer when it is given by the mouth, and scarcely ever appears after intravenous injection. This is obviously due to the destruction of the red blood cells, but glycerin added to the drawn blood does not act so strongly on it as many other bodies which cause no hæmoglobinuria. Filehne explains the appearance of hæmoglobin in the urine after the subcutaneous injection of glycerin by supposing that the glycerin remains outside the vessels for some time, and withdraws the fluid from the red cells as they pass through the poisoned zone. As the cells return into the larger vessels, they take up fluid again and give off hæmoglobin. On the other hand, when glycerin is injected into the blood, it diffuses rapidly all over the body, and the blood cells are less acted on by the diluted poison and do not alternately shrink and swell in size. He supports his explanation by an ingenious experiment, in which the blood cells were first shrunk by glycerin and then allowed to return to the circulation; in this way he was able to induce hæmoglobinuria by the intravenous injection of glycerin. In addition to its action on the blood cells, glycerin apparently acts directly on the central nervous system, as is shown by the violent convulsions. Glomerulonephritis has also been observed in animals.

Glycerin is absorbed rapidly from the intestine, and undergoes combustion in the tissues, only a very small fraction of it reappearing in the urine. Some authors describe a reducing substance in the urine after the ingestion of glycerin, but this has not been confirmed on more careful investigation.

It follows from the fact that glycerin is oxidized in the tissues that it must supply the body with energy and act in some sense as a food. This is of interest chiefly because, the ordinary fats being compounds of glycerin, a certain amount must be contained in the food, but it is also of some therapeutic importance, because glycerin has been advised as a food in inanition, and has even been said to rival cod-liver oil. In respect to its value as a food, glycerin resembles ordinary alcohol, being readily absorbed, and undoubtedly increasing the total energy of the body. But it is still undecided how far it leads to an economy of the nitrogenous tissues, as the fats and carbohydrates do. Its combustion saves a certain amount of the fat of the body from being destroyed, but glycerin tends to increase the non-nitrogenous, and not the nitrogenous reserve of the body, and is therefore of only secondary importance as a food, although, like alcohol, it may be of value under certain conditions.

Glycerin has been said to have some effect on the sugar formation in the tissues. In some forms of experimental glycosuria, apparently less sugar is found in the urine if glycerin be administered, and in a certain number of cases of diabetes in the human subject, some improvement is said to have occurred under glycerin treatment. No satisfactory explanation of this point has been offered. Quite apart from its supposed action on diabetes, glycerin has been used as a substitute for sugar in this disease, but its place has been taken of late years by saccharin.

Glycerin has been shown to possess some virtue as an antiseptic, probably from its withdrawing water from the microbes, but like the oils (page 48) it is a less suitable solvent for many antiseptics than water.

Bibliography of Glycerin.

Dujardin-Beaumetz and Audige. Bull. de Therap., xci., p. 51.
Plosz. Pflüger's Arch., xvi., p. 153.
Ransom. Journ. of Phys., viii., p. 99.
Schwahn. Eckhard's Beiträge zur Anatomie und Physiolog., viii., p. 167.
Filehne. Virchow's Arch., cxvii., p. 413.
Munk. Virchow's Arch., lxxvi., p. 119; Pflüger's Arch., xlvi., p. 303.
Arnschink. Zeitschr. f. Biol., xxiii., p. 413.
Christomanos. Virchow's Arch., clvi., p. 582.
Wunschheim. Arch. f. Hygiene, xxxix, p. 101.

Along with the emollients, or oily protectives, may be mentioned another class of mechanical agents, the **Dusting Powders.** Any dry, insoluble, fine powder applied to irritated surfaces of the skin, or slight abrasions, will protect these from the air, and from contact with the clothes and other sources of pressure. These powders, at the same time, soak up any secretions, and render the injured spot less liable to bacterial infection, as they form a more or less impermeable crust. Powders used for this purpose should not be absorbed, or, if absorbable, should not induce any toxic effects. Those most commonly employed are the phosphate and carbonate of lime, talc (magnesium silicate), fuller's earth and kaolin (aluminum silicates), starch, and lycopodium (U. S. P.), which consists of the spores of Lycopodium clavatum (club moss).

A large number of powders are used as surgical dressings, most of them being credited with more or less antiseptic power. In many instances, however, their antiseptic action is so slight that it would appear that most of their virtues are due to their mechanical properties, and not to their bactericidal action.

III. SUGARS AND FLAVORING SUBSTANCES.

Sugars are used in medicine chiefly to disguise preparations of unpleasant taste, and in the small quantities usually employed have little further effect. In large quantities sugars, like other diffusible bodies, act as irritants to the stomach and bowel, and comparatively small quantities of some sugar substances possess an aperient action. Thus molasses and imperfectly refined sugar have some reputation in domestic medicine as aperients, and honey, manna, Cassia fistula, and several fruits are included as mild laxatives in the pharmacopœias. They are scarcely prescribed alone in medicine, but are used to give bulk to preparations of the stronger purgatives, such as senna. Their aperient action seems to be due to their colloid form, as pure sugar has no such effect, and it is possible that they merely delay the absorption of fluid, and thus cause softer evacuations than would otherwise occur.

Preparations.

Saccharum (U. S. P.), **Saccharum Purificatum** (B. P.), cane sugar.

Syrupus (U. S. P., B. P.), a concentrated solution of sugar. Syrup is the basis of a large number of medicated syrups of the pharmacopœias. Sugar and syrup are used exclusively to sweeten mixtures and to aid in the suspension of insoluble bodies. In place of ordinary syrup many of the flavored preparations may be used, such as syrup of citric acid, of acacia, of almonds, etc.

Saccharum Lactis (U. S. P., B. P.), sugar of milk, lactose, is not so sweet as ordinary sugar, and is much less liable to deliquesce, so that it is used largely to give bulk to powders. It has been said to have diuretic properties when given with large quantities of water, and to cause purgation when given in a more concentrated solution. Asses' milk contains more lactose than cows' milk, and has been recommended for its slight aperient action in chronic constipation.

Mel, honey, and *Mel Despumatum* (U. S. P.), *Mel Depuratum* (B. P.), or clarified honey, are used to give taste to mixtures, and have a very slight aperient action, so that they may be advised as articles of diet in habitual constipation. Some medicated honeys are used, of which *Mel Rosæ* is included in the U. S. P., *Mel Boracis* in the B. P.

Oxymel (B. P.) is a mixture of honey and acetic acid. Dose, 1–2 fl. drs.

Syrupus Glucosi (B. P.), a mixture of liquid glucose and syrup.

Rubus Idæus (U. S. P.), Raspberry fruit, is used to form the *Syrupus Rubi Idæi* (U. S. P.), which is used as a flavoring agent. Raspberry contains only a small quantity of sugar in proportion to its acid, but the taste of the latter is concealed by the presence of large quantities of colloid.

Manna (U. S. P.), a saccharine exudation of Fraxinus ornus (Flowering Ash), contains about 50–75 per cent. of mannite, $C_6H_8(OH)_6$, a hexatomic alcohol of sweetish, sugary taste. It has slight aperient properties when taken in large quantities.

Cassia Fistula (U. S. P.), purging Cassia, the fruit of Cassia fistula.

The pulp, **Cassiæ Pulpa** (B. P.), contains considerable quantities of sugar.

Tamarindus (U. S. P., B. P.), tamarinds; **Ficus** (U. S. P., B. P.), figs; **Prunum** (U. S P., B. P.), prunes, all contain sugar in considerable quantity. These are used as mild aperients and flavoring agents, generally in combination with more powerful remedies. Thus manna is used in Infusum Sennæ Co. (U. S. P.), and the others form ingredients of Confectio Sennæ. They are not prescribed alone, but the fruits may be advised as articles of diet where a mild laxative is required. The tamarind pulp may owe its aperient action in part to the presence of tartrates, citrates, malates and other cathartic salts. (See Saline Cathartics.)

Frequently other flavors are preferred to sugar, which is especially disliked in fever cases, as sweet fluids do not quench the thirst so effectually as acids and bitters. Many of the preparations of the volatile oils and some of the demulcents are used almost exclusively as flavoring agents, and in some both sugar and volatile oil are combined, as in the syrups.

Instead of sugar some artificial compounds have been introduced of late years. **Glusidum** (B. P.) or **Saccharin,** $C_6H_4<\begin{matrix}CO\\SO_2\end{matrix}>NH$, and its sodium salt, $C_6H_4<\begin{matrix}SO_2NH_2\\COONa,\end{matrix}$ or soluble saccharin, are the best known of these. Saccharin is a light, white, crystalline powder, soluble in 400 parts of water and in 25 parts of alcohol. It is about 500 times as sweet as sugar, and gives a distinct flavor to 70,000 times its weight of water. **Dulcin,** another aromatic compound, is said to be even sweeter than saccharin. None of these taste exactly like sugar, however, there being a distinct flavor besides that of sweetness, and patients generally object to them after a short time. They have been used as substitutes for sugar in diabetes, a disease in which sugar is to be avoided as far as possible. Artificial digestion with saliva, gastric juice, or diastase is said to be hindered somewhat by saccharin,[1] while the soluble saccharin delays the proteolysis of the gastric juice only; and it is said that the prolonged use of these bodies often leads to digestive disorders.[2] Like the other derivatives of benzol saccharin has some antiseptic action and tends to lessen the putrefaction of the intestinal contents. Even very large doses of saccharin may be injected intravenously in animals without other effect than some depression and stupor.

Some pharmacopœial preparations are designed to give color to solutions, but are seldom or never prescribed, although they are sometimes added by the pharmacist.

Coccus (U. S. P., B. P.), cochineal, the dried female of Coccus Cacti.
Tinctura Cocci (B. P.).
Crocus (U. S. P., B. P.), saffron.
Tincturi Croci (U. S. P., B. P.).
Santalum Rubrum (U. S. P.), **Pterocarpi Lignum** (B. P.), red sanders, saunders or sandal wood.
Rhœados Petala (B. P.), the fresh petals of Papaver Rhœas, red poppy.
Syrupus Rhœados (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.
Poppy petals contain none of the alkaloids of opium.

[1] *Riegler*, Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxv., p. 306.
[2] *Bornstein*, Zeitschr. f. klin. Med., xl., p. 208.

IV. SIMPLE BITTERS.

This group includes a number of substances which have little in common except their bitter taste and their comparative inactivity in the body. Several alkaloids may be placed in it, *Berberine*, *Buxine*, *Menispermine* and *Canadine*, for, although these are poisonous in very large quantities, they are harmless in those in which they are contained in the preparations used in therapeutics. In addition to these there may be placed in it numerous neutral bodies, possessing an intensely bitter taste, but with little or no further action, such as the *Quassiins*, *Columbin*, and a few weak acids and glucosides.

Pharmacological Action.—These substances, or rather the preparations containing them, are largely used in therapeutics in order to increase the appetite, and their administration is often followed by a distinct improvement in the digestion and an increase in weight.

Alimentary Tract.—The explanation of these effects is still obscure, although a large number of investigations have been made as to their effects in the stomach. In experiments with artificial digestion the pure principles have generally been found without influence on the activity of both gastric and pancreatic fluids, the slight variations observed lying within the limits of error; and where any distinct effect has been observed, it has generally been a retardation of the process. The ordinary therapeutic preparations, on the other hand, generally delay artificial digestion, owing to the presence of tannic acid and colloid substances. The bitters neither destroy nor greatly retard the growth of bacteria in culture media, and most of them seem to be without effect on the yeast fermentation of sugar solutions, although Vas found that quassiin retarded it somewhat. The absorption from the stomach is unchanged by the presence of bitters.

In regard to the effect of the bitters on the secretion of the stomach, Reichmann states that in man the bitters taken during gastric digestion do not affect the secretion, although they seem to retard the proteolysis. When bitters are taken on an empty stomach, less gastric juice is secreted immediately than if the same amount of water had been swallowed, but some time afterwards a very active secretion occurs. Reichmann, therefore, advises the bitters in cases of insufficient acidity of the gastric juice, the remedy to be taken half an hour before meals. On the other hand, in hyperacidity the bitters may aggravate the condition. This statement is in accordance with the observations of Bokai, that the secretory cells of the peptic glands present the histological appearances of activity after the bitters have been ingested.

In animal experiments, the movements of the stomach are said to be somewhat augmented by the bitters, and poisonous doses of several of them increase the movements of both stomach and bowel, and cause considerable hyperæmia. But it is unknown whether this action is common to all the bitters, and whether the small quantities used in therapeutics cause any increase in the blood supply. According to Reichmann, the movements are probably somewhat less than usual in man.

Pohl found that bitters given by the stomach increase to a marked extent the leucocytes in the blood of the dog, and this may possibly aid in the absorption of the food. Ramm has shown that this holds true for man, and adds that the red blood cells are also augmented. The secretions of the pancreas and the bile are unaffected by the bitters. In the mouth the bitters cause a reflex flow of saliva, and it has been suggested that this may in part explain their therapeutic effect. Large quantities are said to cause a burning sensation in the œsophagus and stomach.

The whole literature on the action of the bitters is full of contradictions, which is perhaps to be explained by the fact that comparatively few investigators have examined their effect in human digestion, and many have contented themselves with the results of intravenous injection in animals. The most probable explanation is that of Reichmann, that the gastric secretion is increased. It may be suggested here that this does not involve a direct action on the secretory epithelium, for Pawlow and his pupils have shown that the chief factor that determines the activity of the gastric secretory cells is the odor and taste of the food. In dogs with gastric fistulæ, in which the food swallowed did not pass into the stomach but escaped through a wound in the œsophagus, the taste and odor of food caused a profuse reflex secretion of gastric juice, while several other substances fed them failed to have any such effect. It is quite possible that bitter tastes may cause this reflex secretion in man, and not in the dog, and that the whole effect may be explained by the one property common to all these drugs—their bitter taste. In addition, it is to be remembered that the improvement is largely subjective, and that the bitters are capable of producing a considerable impression upon patients, so that the effects may be due in part to suggestion and not to any real action of the drug.

Action after Absorption.—In very large quantities some of the bitters produce effects that are obviously due to their absorption. These have seldom been observed in man, but have been studied in animal experiments. Thus Compardon states that in many individuals 0.12 G. of *quassiin* produces burning in the throat and stomach, discomfort, headache, nausea, and vomiting. In flies and other insects it has a narcotic action. *Columbin* and *cetrarin* were found by Köhler to increase the blood pressure by stimulation of the vasomotor centre when they were injected intravenously. Ramm states that the intravenous injection of cetrarin causes irritation of the stomach and bowel, purging and vomiting, and general paralysis of the central nervous system, which is preceded by convulsions in mammals. He did not observe any increase in the blood pressure. Both the glucosides of *condurango* produce in dogs ataxia and loss of coördination, with increased movement, and eventually convulsions, and death follows in 12–72 hours or longer. The brain seems the part chiefly affected in mammals, although the reflex excitability of the spinal cord is also augmented in the frog (Jukna). *Buxine* possesses considerable antiseptic power, and prevents the movement of leucocytes and of the lower organisms in the same way as quinine. Large doses often cause vomiting, confusion, giddiness and tremor, with diarrhœa in dogs, but are sometimes without effect. *Aristolochine*, which has been found in several species of Aristolochia, and probably occurs in the official serpentary, produces in rabbits acute necrotic nephritis, with albuminuria

and uræmic symptoms. In dogs it causes a very marked fall of blood pressure, and hemorrhages in the intestinal mucous membrane, but no nephritis. The poisonous action of aristolochine is very similar to, but much more powerful than that of aloin (Pohl). *Lupulinic acid* obtained from hops, when injected as a neutral salt into the blood, causes first stimulation and then paralysis of the medullary centres, but has very little effect when given by the stomach even in large doses (Dreser). In beer an oxidized product of lupulinic acid occurs, which has no effect even when injected into the blood. *Berberine* is a very widely distributed alkaloid of the pyridine series ($C_{20}H_{17}NO_4$), and when administered in very large quantities per os, causes diarrhœa, and occasionally vomiting, tremor, acceleration of the pulse and respiration and general weakness, from which the animal recovers only slowly. Its subcutaneous or intravenous injection is followed by the same symptoms, but paralysis of the hind extremities, convulsions, and asphyxia from failure of the respiratory centre may occur when it is administered in this way, while the largest quantities are not fatal when exhibited by the stomach. The acceleration of the pulse seems due to paralysis of the inhibitory terminations in the heart, and is accompanied by a fall of blood pressure from the effects of the alkaloid on the vasomotor centre and on the heart directly. Berberine has been credited with causing contraction of the uterus and of the spleen, but this is disputed. It has also been said to resemble quinine in its effects on bacteria and on the leucocytes, but only in very strong solution. Berberine seems to be excreted in part by the kidney unchanged, and is said to cause nephritis in large doses.

The *cotoin* of Coto bark, and the *paracotoin* and other constituents of Paracoto bark were found by Albertoni to cause dilatation of the intestinal vessels when they were injected intravenously or perfused through the mesenteric vessels. Paracotoin is much weaker than cotoin.

Orexine ($C_{14}H_{12}N_2$), an artificial base, seems to stand midway between the peppers and the bitters in its action, as it is somewhat more irritating than most of the latter. Injected into the frog it induces paralysis, which is apparently of peripheral origin, and its subcutaneous application in mammals is followed by tremor, tonic and clonic convulsions, dyspnœa, acceleration of the heart and vomiting. It has some antiseptic action, and tends to form methæmoglobin when mixed with the blood. No symptoms have been observed from its use in man, except increased appetite and augmentation of the gastric secretion, and in a few cases a feeling of heat in the throat and some nausea.

Preparations.

Gentiana (U. S. P.), **Gentianæ Radix** (B. P.), gentian, the root of Gentiana lutea, contains a glucoside, gentiopicrin, a neutral body, gentisin, and a trace of tannic acid.

Extractum Gentianæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.1–0.5 G. (2–10 grs.).

Extractum Gentianæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.5–2 c.c. (10–30 mins.).

Tinctura Gentianæ Composita (U. S. P., B. P.), containing gentian, bitter orange peel, and cardamom, 2–16 c.c. (½–4 fl. drs.).

Infusum Gentianæ Compositum (B. P.), containing gentian, bitter orange peel, and fresh lemon peel, ½–1 fl. oz.

Quassia (U. S. P.), **Quassiæ Lignum** (B. P.), the wood of Picræna excelsa, contains several neutral bitter substances, resembling each other closely chemically and known as quassiins.

Extractum Quassiæ (U. S. P.), 0.05–0.2 G. (1–3 grs.).

Extractum Quassiæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.5–2 c.c. (5–30 mins.).

Tinctura Quassiæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.).

Liquor Quassiæ Concentratus (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Infusum Quassiæ (B. P.), ½–1 fl. oz.

Calumba (U. S. P.), **Calumbæ Radix** (B. P.), columbo, the root of Jateor-

rhiza palmata, or Columba, contains columbin, a neutral body, columbic acid, and the alkaloid berberine.

Extractum Calumbæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 1–2 c.c. (15–30 mins.).

TINCTURA CALUMBÆ (U. S. P., B. P.), 4–15 c.c. (1–4 fl. drs.).

Infusum Calumbæ (B. P.), ½–1 fl. oz.

Liquor Calumbæ Concentratus (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Chirata (U. S. P., B. P.), Chiretta, the plant Swertia chirata, contains a glucoside, chiratin, and ophelic acid.

Extractum Chiratæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Tinctura Chiratæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 2–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

Liquor Chiratæ Concentratus (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Infusum Chiratæ (B. P.), ½–1 fl. oz.

Taraxacum (U. S. P.), **Taraxaci Radix** (B. P.), the root of the dandelion, Taraxacum officinale, contains two neutral bitter substances—taraxacin and taraxacein.

Extractum Taraxaci (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Extractum Taraxaci Fluidum (U. S. P.), *Liquidum* (B. P.), 4–12 c.c. (1–3 fl. drs.).

Succus Taraxaci (B. P.), 1–2 fl. drs.

Pareira (U. S. P.), **Pareiræ Radix** (B. P.), the root of Chondrodendron tomentosum, contains an alkaloid, buxine.

Extractum Pareiræ Fluidum (U. S. P.), *Liquidum* (B. P.), 2–8 c.c. (½–2 fl. drs.).

Menispermum (U. S. P.), the rhizome and roots of Menispermum canadense (yellow parilla or Canadian moonseed), contains berberine and menispermine.

Extractum Menispermi Fluidum (U. S. P.), 2–4 c.c.

Serpentaria (U. S. P.), **Serpentariæ Rhizoma** (B. P.), snake root, the rhizome and roots of Aristolochia serpentaria and of Aristolochia reticulata, contains a volatile oil, an unknown bitter principle, and perhaps an alkaloid, aristolochine.

Extractum Serpentariæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 1–2 c.c.

Tinctura Serpentariæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 2–8 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

Liquor Serpentariæ Concentratus (B. P.), ½–2 fl. drs.

Infusum Serpentariæ (B. P.), ½–1 fl. oz.

Humulus (U. S. P.), **Lupulus** (B. P.), hops, the strobiles of Humulus lupulus, and **Lupulin**, a glandular powder separated from hops, contain a volatile oil, a bitter neutral substance, lupulin, lupulinic acid, and resins.

Tinctura Humuli (U. S. P.), 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

Extractum Lupulini Fluidum (U. S. P.), 2–8 c.c. (½–2 fl. drs.)

Oleoresina Lupulini (U. S. P.), 0.1–0.3 G. (2–5 grs.).

Lupulinum (B. P.), 2–5 grs.

Infusum Lupuli (B. P.), 1–2 fl. oz.

Tinctura Lupuli (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Cuspariæ Cortex (B. P.), Angostura bark, the dried bark of Cusparia febrifuga, contains four or more alkaloids, cusparine, cusparidine, galipine, and galipidine, along with a volatile oil and a neutral bitter stuff.

Infusum Cuspariæ (B. P.), 1–2 fl. oz.

Liquor Cuspariæ Concentratus (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Nectandræ Cortex, Bebeeru bark, is not pharmacopœial, but is occasionally used in therapeutics. It contains an alkaloid which is now known to be buxine, but which has been called beberine, biberine, or bebeerine hitherto. Buxine or beberine sulphate is prepared from it.

Condurango, the bark of Gonolobus condurango, contains two glucosides of similar properties, and has been used a good deal of late years as a stomachic bitter. It was formerly credited with a specific action on epithelioma.

Cetraric acid, or cetrarin, is obtained from Iceland moss (see page 47), and has been recommended as a bitter in doses of about 0.1 G. (2 grs.), in tablets.

Coto bark, whose origin is still doubtful, contains cotoin ($C_{22}H_{18}O_6$), and

has been used to form a fluid extract. Dose, 0.3–1.5 c.c. (5–20 mins.). Cotoin has been prescribed in the dose of 0.03–0.2 G. (½–3 grs.).

Orexine Hydrochlorate, $C_6H_4N_2C_2H_3C_6H_5HCl$, is a colorless, crystalline body, soluble in about 15 parts of water, with a bitter, somewhat pungent taste. It is prescribed in powder or tablets. Dose, 0.3 G. (5 grs.).

Bael fruit, or Bengal quince, was formerly contained in the B. P., but has been omitted in the last edition. Very little is known regarding its action or principles, but it may perhaps have some effect as a bitter.

Many other bitter stomachics might be enumerated, some of which have been used largely in former times, but as they are all identical in their effects, it seems unnecessary to do so.

Instead of the simple bitters, cinchona and nux vomica preparations are often used in small quantities. Many of the preparations which will be enumerated under the volatile oil series owe much of their effect to the bitter which accompanies the volatile oil, and in numerous other pharmacopœial preparations bitters are present, although their effect is hidden by the action of the drug in other directions.

Therapeutic Uses.—The bitters are used chiefly to increase the appetite and the digestion. In convalescents, in persons of sedentary habits, and occasionally in chronic dyspeptic conditions they are of value, while in cases of more acute gastric irritability they may do harm rather than good. Gentian, Quassia, Calumba and Chirata are the only simple bitters that are largely used, and the first is much the most important. They are generally prescribed as tinctures, fluid extracts or other fluid preparations. The three last may be prescribed with iron preparations, as they contain little or no tannic acid and thus cause no precipitate. Pills are sometimes prescribed with extract of gentian or quassia, but it seems open to question whether these ingredients have really any effect when given in this form. Compound tincture of gentian is sometimes used to give flavor rather than for any effect on the digestion.

Quassia infusion (ten per cent.) is injected as an enema in the round worms of children.

Several of the drugs mentioned, such as taraxacum and gentian, have been supposed to have a specific action on the liver, but there are no sufficient grounds for this belief. The supposed virtues of pareira as a diuretic and of berberine, buxine, and other alkaloids as substitutes for quinine in malaria have also proved to have no foundation, and the popular reputation of hops as a narcotic probably arises from its association with alcohol in beer. Cotoin and Coto bark are said to have some special effect in lessening diarrhœa, in addition to their action as bitters.

Bibliography.

Bokai, Reusz, Vas, Huber and Gara. Ungar. Arch. für Medicin, ii., pp. 295–325.
Gottlieb. Arch. f. exp. Path., xxxiii., p. 261.
Brandl. Zts. f. Biol., xxix., p. 277.
Scanzoni. Ibid., xxxiii., p. 462.
Farnsteiner. Ibid., xxxiii., p. 475.
Pawlow and Schumowa-Simanowskaja. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1895, p. 53.
Binz. Virchow's Arch., xlvi., p. 129.

Jukna. Arb. des pharmak. Institut. Dorpat, iv., p. 81. (Condurango.)
Pohl. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxix., p. 282. (Aristolochine.)
Dreser. Ibid., xxiii., p. 129. (Lupulinic acid.)
K. v. Bunge. Arb. des pharmak. Institut. Dorpat, xi.–xii., p. 135. (Berberine.)
Mosse u. Tautz. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xliii., p. 257.
Ramm. Historische Studien a. d. pharmak. Instit. Dorpat, ii., p. 1.
Compardon. Bull. gen. de Therap., 1884.
Albertoni. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xvii., p. 291. (Coto.)
Reichmann. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xiv., p. 177.
Kobert. International Congress Berlin, 1890, iv., p. 58. (Cetrarin.)
Penzoldt. Therap. Monatsh., 1890, p. 59. (Orexine.)
Kronfeld. Wiener klin. Woch., 1891, p. 45. (Orexine.)

V. VOLATILE OIL SERIES.

The group of volatile, ethereal, or essential oils contains a large number of preparations in the pharmacopœias of all countries. These oils are obtained from plants by distillation, or more rarely by pressure, and must be distinguished by the student from the fatty or fixed oils, which are non-volatile. The volatile or ethereal oils are found chiefly in the fruits and flowering parts of plants, and are very widely diffused through the vegetable kingdom, though some orders, such as the Labiatæ, Umbelliferæ, Aurantiaceæ, Cruciferæ, and Coniferæ are preëminent in their production. They are all strongly odorous, and are therefore used in perfumery, and to conceal nauseous odors and tastes in medicine. Their composition is extremely variable. The commonest constituents are *Terpenes*, and some oils contain these only, while in a few oils no terpene has been found (Attar of Roses). Terpenes are hydrocarbons of the aromatic series,[1] and possess the general formula $(C_5H_8)_n$. The great majority of them, or the terpenes proper ($C_{10}H_{16}$), are combinations of a dihydrobenzol with propyl and methyl ($C_6H_4(H_2)C_3H_7CH_3$). Some twelve terpenes of this formula are known, varying in their chemical structure and in their stereometrical form. Another group of these hydrocarbons is formed by the *Sesquiterpenes* ($C_{15}H_{24}$), while a few *Diterpenes* ($C_{20}H_{32}$) are known. Some volatile oils consist of these hydrocarbons only, but many of them contain in addition some oxidized aromatic substances, such as phenols, ketones, aldehydes, acids and compounds of these. Many of these oxidized products crystallize out when the volatile oil is cooled sufficiently, and especially on long standing, and the resulting solid is known as a *Stearoptene*, while the fluid remaining is sometimes called *Elæoptene*. The oils containing oxygen are not so volatile as the pure hydrocarbons, but the odor is often due chiefly to the oxidized substances. A very few oils contain nitrogenous bodies, generally in the form of cyanides, while on the other hand, the majority of the volatile oils of the Cruciferæ contain sulphur bodies, which lend them a pungent, disagreeable odor, quite different from that of the other oils.

[1] Of late years several oxidized products have been isolated from the volatile oils, which belong not to the aromatic but to the fatty series, and from these hydrocarbons have been formed resembling the terpenes closely in general, but differing from them in belonging to the fatty series. No "fatty terpene" has as yet been shown to occur in nature, but the presence of these oxidized forms renders their existence in plants extremely probable.

The volatile oils are generally clear, colorless fluids, although some of them are green from the presence of small quantities of vegetable coloring matter, while others are blue in color from the presence of a terpene derivative (azulene). After long keeping they often acquire a yellowish color and an acid reaction, from the formation of resins. They are generally light, sparkling fluids, but the oils of copaiva and cubebs are more viscid. They are insoluble in water except in very small amount, which, however, is enough to lend their characteristic odor to the solution; in strong alcohol, ether, benzol, chloroform, and fixed oils, they are freely soluble.

Many of the plants from which the volatile oils are obtained possess other active constituents, such as bitters, and as many of the preparations used in therapeutics are formed, not from the distilled oils, but from the crude parts of plants, it must be noted that the oil is not the only active principle in them. A series containing members which differ so widely chemically, and which in fact have only their volatility and their aromatic nucleus in common, could not be expected to have a uniform action in the animal organism. It is found, however, that they resemble each other in their therapeutic properties, because they are used almost solely for their local action, and that in only small quantities. Some of the volatile oil preparations which are employed for their general effects, will be discussed later. (See Camphor.)

Action Externally.—The volatile oils all possess antiseptic properties, which are doubtless due in part to their volatility enabling them to penetrate readily into protoplasm and to lessen its vitality by acting as foreign bodies. In addition, they are nearly related to the benzol series, the members of which are all antiseptics and protoplasm poisons. They differ a good deal in their germicidal power, and are much more poisonous to the moulds than to the bacteria. The most active oils are those containing a large amount of terpene, such as the oil of turpentine.

Their volatility may also explain their irritant action in part, for most other volatile substances are more or less irritant, but here again their relation to the phenols and benzol cannot be ignored. Applied to the skin, they cause redness, itching and warmth, owing to a local dilation of the vessels, which may be due to the penetration of the oil to the cutaneous arterioles or veins, or to a reflex from the irritated terminations of the sensory nerves acting on the vasomotor centres.

When painted on the mucous membranes, such as those of the eye or nose, or on wounds, the volatile oils cause similar irritation, which is betrayed by redness and congestion, pain and smarting.

Action on the Alimentary Canal.—Strong solutions of the oils act as irritants in the mouth. They have generally a hot, burning taste, and if kept in the mouth, cause redness and irritation of the mucous membranes, although some of them induce a sense of coolness at first. At the same time the organs of smell are affected by these oils, which are almost all possessed of characteristic odors. The irritation of the mouth leads to a reflex secretion of saliva, which is often very profuse.

The antiseptic action of the oils is exercised in the mouth as elsewhere, and may have a beneficial effect in some conditions.

On passing into the stomach, the oils cause the same sensation of warmth in that organ, and this is accompanied by a sense of well-being and comfort, the appetite is often increased, and any feeling of distention after meals is relieved. This is often attended by the eructation of quantities of gas. Substances which produce these effects in the stomach are known as *carminatives*, and many explanations of their action have been offered. The oils undoubtedly act as antiseptics here as elsewhere, and may hinder the development of yeasts and other organisms and thus be of benefit, but this would not give the immediate feeling of relief which is often experienced after a small quantity of these remedies. The process of digestion seems to be rather retarded than accelerated by the presence of the oils, as far as can be judged by test-tube experiments and by some measurements made by Buchheim on the digestion of animals with gastric fistulæ. The secretion of the gastric glands has been said to be increased by the direct action of the volatile oils, but this has been disputed. But it must not be forgotten that the most powerful stimulant to gastric secretion is the smell and taste of food, and that substances of agreeable taste and odor cause a marked increase in the gastric juice by reflexes from the mouth and nose. An argument for the direct action of the volatile oils on the secretory glands has been drawn from the observation that, applied to the frog's skin, they induce a profuse local secretion, but this is scarcely sufficient basis for an explanation. The eructation of gas certainly suggests that the volatile oils accelerate the movements of the stomach, and this has been repeatedly confirmed by the direct observation of the stomach walls. Brandl has also shown recently that absorption occurs much more rapidly from the stomach in the presence of slight irritants, such as the volatile oils. Finally it must be added that many of the beneficial effects are purely subjective; the patient has a feeling of warmth and comfort in the region of the stomach, arising from the slight irritation and consequent hyperæmia of the mucous membrane, but this does not necessarily indicate any marked alteration in the processes of digestion or in the movements of the stomach.

Similar effects are believed to be produced in the intestine, for the administration of these oils is often followed by an improvement in its condition, manifested by lessened flatulence and distention, and relief is given by their use in some forms of colic. The antiseptic action may play a part in these effects. Scanzoni and Farnsteiner have recently shown that the intestine, like the stomach, absorbs more rapidly in the presence of small quantities of the oils. The pancreatic secretion was supposed to be increased by their irritant action in the stomach, through a reflex travelling both centripetally and centrifugally along the vagus fibres (Gottlieb), but Schirokikh asserts that this is true only when large quantities produce very marked gastric irritation. Whether the peristaltic movements of the bowel are increased by the volatile oils is quite unknown. It is believed, however, that their administration

lessens the pain and griping produced by some of the more powerful purgatives, and several pharmacopœial preparations are formed on this theory, which is supported by many years of clinical experience.

A considerable increase in the leucocytes of the blood follows their ingestion by the mouth, but this is observed in congestion of the stomach and intestine from other causes and is not induced by the subcutaneous or intravenous injection of the volatile oils, so that it cannot be regarded as a specific effect. Winternitz found that irritation of the pleura causes less purulent exudate in animals treated with some volatile oils than in controls which were not treated in any way, and concludes that the presence of the oils in the blood lessens the exudate and also promotes its absorption; he is inclined to regard this antiphlogistic action as a result of the leucocytosis and of a supposed attraction exercised on the leucocytes by the oils, which prevents their wandering into the tissues.

Excretion. — Like other bodies of the aromatic series, they tend to undergo a partial oxidation in the body; thus the terpenes ($C_{10}H_{16}$) become terpenols ($C_{10}H_{15}OH$), and several derivatives of the terpenes have been shown to undergo a similar change of a hydrogen atom to hydroxyl, while others which contain the -OH group originally, remain unaltered. The odor of the original oil or of these derivatives may often be detected in the breath, showing that a small part is excreted by the lungs, and possibly traces may be eliminated by the skin. Some also escapes by the kidney uncombined and imparts an odor to the urine either of the original oil or of some oxygen derivative; for instance, oil of eucalyptus or of turpentine give the urine a violet odor. But much of the hydroxyl product is combined with glycuronic acid and escapes in the urine in this form, while some may combine to form conjugate sulphates. The glycuronic acid reduces Fehling's solution, especially when the urine is previously boiled with acid, so that the volatile oils were formerly credited with inducing glycosuria. Some of the constituents of the oils are oxidized to acids and excreted in the urine as salts.

In the course of excretion, some of the oils cause irritation of the lungs and kidneys, so that some of them are employed to increase the bronchial secretion, while others have a distinct diuretic action. This irritant action is of course not confined to the tissue, but extends to microbial guests, so that the volatile oils have been given internally with the intention of destroying or retarding the growth of bacteria in the lungs, and some of them are used almost exclusively for their antiseptic action in the urine.

Poisoning. — The various oils differ a good deal in their activity, while resembling each other closely in the general characters of their effects. All of them may produce marked irritation of the stomach and bowel when given in large quantities, but the oils of tansy, sage, and English pennyroyal are distinguished especially by the violent inflammation they cause, and by the frequency with which fatal poisoning occurs from their use. The terpenes appear to be but slightly

poisonous, and their effects are probably limited to local irritation; the oxidized aromatic substances have been shown to be the poisonous constituents in all the oils hitherto examined. The symptoms are those of acute gastric, intestinal, and often renal irritation—vomiting, purging, acute pain in the abdomen, blood in the stools and in the vomited matter, collapse, weakness of the pulse and respiration, anuria, or albumin and blood in the urine, and convulsive attacks ending in coma and death. Great hyperæmia of the abdominal organs, often blood in the peritoneal cavity, and sometimes acute inflammation of the kidney are the chief post-mortem appearances. The hyperæmia and congestion of the organs of the abdomen may cause abortion in pregnancy, or increase the menses, and in the majority of cases of poisoning, these oils have been taken with the object of inducing abortion. In many instances, however, the drug has proved fatal without this end being achieved.

General Action.—The small quantities of volatile oils administered in ordinary medicinal use pass through the tissues without modifying them perceptibly, their only effects arising in the organs by which they are absorbed and excreted. In large quantities, however, some of them (the oils of wormwood, nutmeg, sage, savine among others) produce symptoms which indicate an affection of the central nervous system quite apart from their local action. The latter also produces nervous effects reflexly, and it has been found exceedingly difficult to distinguish these indirect results from those caused by the direct action on the central nervous system. A good deal of divergence is to be found in the statements of different writers from this cause, and also from the fact that comparatively few researches have been carried out with pure principles. Many of the oils vary in their constituents according to the climate, the season of the year, and other conditions under which the plant was grown, and some of the confusion may arise from differences in the oils used by investigators. Almost all the oils hitherto examined cause depression and final paralysis in the *frog*. The action seems to be mainly on the brain, larger quantities being required to paralyze the spinal cord than to prevent all spontaneous movements. This stage of depression is preceded by one of excitement after oil of wormwood and some others. Some of the oils paralyze the terminations of the motor nerves in voluntary muscle like curara and camphor.

In *mammals* the general action of the constituents of the volatile oils seems to involve a preliminary stimulation and subsequent depression of the nerve cells. The relative importance of these two stages differs in different oils, some, *e. g.*, turpentine oil, causing only a transient excitement, followed by marked weakness and depression, while others, such as the oil of absinth, cause very marked excitement and convulsions. The activity of the oils as nervous poisons also varies greatly, some producing only insignificant effects on the central nervous system compared with those from their local action, while in others, such as the oil of absinth or wormwood, the symptoms from the nervous system predominate in cases of poisoning. As a general rule the higher divisions of the central axis are affected more than the lower. Few of the oils, save absinthol, cause any marked increase in the reflexes, which are also comparatively slightly affected during the stage of depression. The stimulation of the brain causes convulsions of different kinds, of which the epileptiform fits, seen after absinth, have been examined by Boyce. He found that, while the action on the cerebrum was mainly responsible for these convulsions, other parts of the central nervous system were also involved, although it was impossible to assign to each its precise

share in the disturbance. Some of the oils, *e. g.*, saffrol and nutmeg oil, produce tremors similar to those described under carbolic acid, and presumably of similar origin. In many cases a combination of excitement and ataxia is observed, the animal moving about restlessly, but being unable to balance itself. Clonic convulsions are also observed among their effects, probably from excessive stimulation of the mid-brain. In the later stages of poisoning the spontaneous movements cease, while the excitation of the lower centres still persists, and wild convulsive movements accompany the final arrest of the respiration.

The *medullary centres* are also affected differently by the various oils and their constituents. The respiration is finally depressed by all of them, but this depression is often preceded by stimulation, the breathing increasing both in rapidity and in volume. The vasomotor centre undergoes similar changes, the blood-pressure falling from some oils immediately, from others only after a preliminary increase.

The *heart* does not seem to be affected by most of the volatile oils, except indirectly. In cases of poisoning the collapse and shock may alter the character of its contractions, but direct effects on the cardiac muscle have not been shown to be produced by the volatile oils, unless when enormous quantities are injected intravenously.

Heffter and Lindemann have recently shown that some of the constituents of the oils cause fatty degeneration of various organs, especially of the liver and kidney, while others of very similar constitution have no such effect.

Large quantities of the volatile oils often produce a considerable fall in the temperature.

Although these general effects of the volatile oils have no therapeutic importance, the frequent occurrence of epilepsy and insanity in habitual absinth drinkers have given them some practical interest.

Different oils are used for different purposes in therapeutics, although they all resemble each other in most respects, and it is, therefore, convenient to divide them into several therapeutic classes.[1] A number of the less irritant members are used very largely as flavoring agents, for their carminative effects on the stomach and intestine, more rarely as antiseptics, and as expectorants. Another small class may be formed of the malodorous oils, a third of those used as genito-urinary disinfectants, while several which contain a large proportion of terpenes and are too irritant to be employed as carminatives, will be discussed among the skin irritants.

1. Volatile Oils Used as Flavoring Agents and Carminatives.

As regards their use as flavoring agents but little need be said, one preparation is used by one physician, another by another, and the selection is largely a matter of custom and taste. The orange preparations are probably more generally appreciated by patients than any others. Carminatives are used only when no marked irritation of the stomach or intestine is present, in cases where the gastric juice seems unable to cope with the food ingested, especially in persons of sedentary habits. In cases of colic, flatulence and abdominal distention they are often of use, provided that these are not due to peritonitis and other

[1] Two small and unimportant groups of bodies which are used for the same purposes as some of the volatile oils have been inserted along with these.

inflammatory diseases. Several of them have been employed as surgical antiseptics, notably thymol, but its insolubility in water has prevented its extensive adoption; they are more widely used as parasiticides for scabies, pediculi, etc. Some of the oils, such as oil of cloves, are used in dentistry to relieve pain, and also for their antiseptic action; the relief of pain is due to their paralyzing the exposed nerve ends after a preliminary irritation. Eucalyptus has been advised in septic conditions and in malaria, and at one time was supposed to be a specific for the latter; it improves some cases, but is not reliable, and has probably no more effect than others of the series. Its use as an internal remedy in septicæmia is apparently no more successful, although it still enjoys some reputation in these cases. Volatile oil preparations are sometimes given internally in the hope that in their excretion through the lungs they will exercise an antiseptic action in pulmonary disease, but the traces excreted in this way are quite incapable of any noticeable effect on microbial growth and the tubercle bacillus, against which these measures are most frequently directed, appears to be peculiarly resistant to the action of this group of remedies. They are frequently inhaled with a similar object. Some of them have been used as anthelmintics to destroy tapeworm in the intestine, but they are less efficient than some other remedies, unless given in quantities which are liable to irritate the stomach and bowel. Externally some of them are used as mild skin irritants, generally in the form of spirits. Arnica has a great popular reputation as a stimulating local remedy in bruises and sprains, although it has no specific action and is in no way preferable to the other members of the series.

The volatile oils are important constituents of many of the popular liqueurs, such as Kummel, Maraschino, Curaçoa, Chartreuse, etc., and therefore have a certain dietetic importance.

Preparations.

Crude Drugs.—Many of the pharmacopœial preparations are whole plants, seeds, leaves or flowers, and are never prescribed, although some of them are used in popular medicine in the form of infusions or "teas." The virtues of these old-fashioned remedies lie perhaps more in the large draughts of warm water than in the traces of volatile oil which they contain, but the presence of the latter prevent, to some extent, the nausea produced by warm water alone. These infusions are used to induce perspiration in fevers or chills, as diuretics, or to relieve colic and griping, and generally contain about a tablespoonful of the herb to one or two cupfuls of water. Those most frequently used for this purpose are peppermint and spearmint leaves and tops (*Mentha Piperita* and *Mentha Viridis*, U. S. P.); Coriander seeds (*Coriandrum*, U. S P., *Coriandri Fructus*, B. P.); Chamomile flowers (*Anthemis*, U. S. P., *Anthemidis Flores*, B. P., and *Matricaria*, U. S. P.); Anise (*Anisum*, U. S. P., *Anisi Fructus*, B. P., the fruit of Pimpinella anisum); Elderflower (*Sambucus*, U. S. P., *Sambuci Flores*, B. P.); Horehound (*Marrubium*, U. S. P., leaves and tops); and Balm (leaves and tops of *Melissa officinalis*, U. S. P.). In different countries, however, the constituents of the herbalist recipes vary according to the local flora. The U. S. Pharmacopœia recognizes a number of other crude drugs of this group, but as these are seldom or never prescribed, they need only be enumerated here: *Rosa*

Centifolia and *Rosa Gallica* (white and red rose petals), *Eucalyptus*, *Limonis Cortex* (lemon peel), *Aurantii Dulcis Cortex*, *Aurantii Amari Cortex* (sweet and bitter orange peel), *Caryophyllus* (cloves), *Pimenta* (allspice), *Cinnamomum* (cinnamon), *Sassafras* (sassafras bark), *Cypripedium* (lady's slipper), *Illicium* (star anise), *Fœniculum* (fennel), *Vanilla* (vanilla), *Cardamomum* (cardamom), *Carum* (caraway), *Melissa* (balm), *Myristica* (nutmeg), *Macis* (mace), *Tanacetum* (tansy), *Hedeoma* (pennyroyal), *Salvia* (sage), *Sabina* (savine), *Arnica*, *Absinthium* (wormwood), *Allium* (garlic), and *Zingiber* (ginger). The British Pharmacopœia is less lavishly supplied with these little used crude drugs. It contains, in addition to those first mentioned: *Rosæ Gallicæ Petala* (red rose petals), *Limonis Cortex* (lemon peel), *Aurantii Cortex Recens* and *Siccatus* (fresh and dried orange peel), *Caryophyllum* (cloves), *Carui Fructus* (caraway seeds), *Pimenta* (alispice), *Cinnamomi Cortex* (cinnamon bark), *Sassafras Radix* (sassafras root), *Fœniculi Fructus* (fennel seeds), *Cardamomi Semina* (cardamom seeds), *Myristica* (nutmeg), *Arnicæ Rhizoma* (arnica rhizome), *Zingiber* (ginger), and *Anethi Fructus* (dill).

Bitter Almonds (*Amygdala Amara*, U. S. P., B. P.) may be mentioned here, as, although they contain no volatile oil in themselves, one is formed from them when they are bruised in water. They contain a glucoside, amygdalin, and a ferment, emulsin, which, in the presence of water, decomposes the amygdalin into dextrose, prussic acid, and benzaldehyde.

Amygdalin.			Dextrose.		Prussic acid.		Benzaldehyde.	
$C_{20}H_{27}NO_{11}$	+	$3H_2O$	=	$2(C_6H_{12}O_6)$	+	HCN	+	C_7H_6O + H_2O

The prussic acid and benzaldehyde, which are probably in combination and not merely mixed together, are known as the oil of bitter almonds, which is much more poisonous than the other volatile oils, owing to its containing prussic acid. Emulsin is also contained in the sweet almond, but no amygdalin, so that no prussic acid is formed when it is pounded in water. The fixed oil of almonds is formed from bitter and sweet almonds, but contains no prussic acid. Laurel leaves (*Laurocerasi Folia*, B. P.), and the bark of the Virginian prune, or cherry (*Prunus Virginiana*, U. S. P., *Pruni Virginianæ Cortex*, B. P.), also contain amygdalin, or some nearly related substance, and emulsin, and form benzaldehyde and prussic acid when rubbed up with water. The Virginian cherry bark has, however, a more bitter taste than the others, from the presence of a resin or some other unknown body.

The **Volatile Oils** themselves are also represented in unnecessarily large numbers in the pharmacopœias.

U. S. P.—*Oleum Menthæ Piperitæ* (oil of peppermint), *Ol. Menthæ Viridis* (spearmint oil), *Ol. Gaultheriæ* (wintergreen), *Ol. Lavandulæ Florum* (oil of lavender), *Ol. Eucalypti* (eucalyptus oil), *Ol. Limonis Corticis* (oil of lemon), *Ol. Aurantii Corticis* (oil of orange peel), *Ol. Aurantii Florum* (oil of orange blossom, oil of Neroli), *Oleoresina Zingiberis* (ginger), *Ol. Amygdalæ Amaræ* (bitter almonds), *Ol. Caryophylli* (oil of cloves), *Ol. Pimentæ* (oil of allspice), *Ol. Carui* (caraway oil), *Ol. Cinnamomi* (cinnamon), *Ol. Coriandri* (coriander), *Ol. Erigerontis* (erigeron or fleabane), *Ol. Cajuputi* (cajuput), *Ol. Bergamottæ* (bergamot), *Ol. Sassafras* (sassafras) *Ol. Anisi* (anise), *Ol. Fœniculi* (fennel), *Ol. Myrciæ* (bay), *Ol. Rosmarini* (rosemary), *Ol. Hedeomæ* (pennyroyal), *Ol. Juniperi* (juniper), *Ol. Sabinæ* (savine), *Ol. Rosæ* (oil, attar or otto of roses), *Ol. Betulæ Volatile* (volatile oil of birch), *Ol. Thymi* (thyme), *Ol. Myristicæ* (nutmeg).

B. P.—*Oleum Anethi* (oil of dill), *Ol. Anisi* (anise), *Ol. Cajuputi* (cajuput), *Ol. Carui* (caraway), *Ol. Caryophylli* (cloves), *Ol. Cinnamomi* (cinnamon), *Ol. Coriandri* (coriander), *Ol. Eucalypti* (eucalyptus), *Ol. Lavandulæ* (lavender), *Ol. Limonis* (lemon), *Ol. Menthæ Piperitæ* (peppermint), *Ol. Menthæ Viridis* (spearmint), *Ol. Myristicæ* (nutmeg), *Ol. Anthemidis* (chamomile), *Ol. Pimentæ* (allspice), *Ol. Rosæ* (oil, attar, or otto of roses), *Ol. Rosmarini* (rosemary).

The majority of these oils resemble each other very closely in their effects

and require no special comment. Oil of roses is so expensive that it is never used in medicine, especially as it has no special advantages over the others. The oils of rosemary, juniper, and savine are more irritant than the others, and are seldom used. The oils of wintergreen and of birch consist mainly of methyl-salicylate, and may be used instead of the other salicylates. Nutmeg and mace oils are more poisonous than the others, not from their local irritant action so much as from their effects after absorption. Oil of bitter almonds contains a very variable amount of prussic acid and therefore cannot be substituted for the other volatile oils, but its preparations are so dilute as to be void of all danger.

The volatile oils themselves are comparatively little used. A single drop may be added to powders, pills or solutions to give a pleasant odor, and their presence in tooth powders renders these more or less strongly antiseptic. Occasionally they are given in cases of colic or in chill by pouring a few drops on a piece of sugar which is sucked. The dose of the volatile oils in general is 1–2 drops.

Spiritus are formed from many of the volatile oils by dissolving them in alcohol, sometimes with the addition of water and sometimes with some of the crude drug, so that the preparation is really a mixture of tincture and spirit. The spirits or essences of the volatile oils are used very largely as flavoring agents in mixtures for internal use, and are often added to external applications to lend them odor. They may also be prescribed where alcohol is indicated but is distasteful to the patient; the spirits of the volatile oils contain nearly double the amount of alcohol in brandy, and have to be diluted accordingly. Any of them may be used as carminatives, but the spirits of peppermint, cinnamon, anise and lavender are more frequently used for this purpose than the others. Spirit of juniper is often given as a diuretic, either alone or along with other drugs. Spirit of rosemary is generally used externally. Many of the common perfumes are spirits of different volatile oils; thus eau de Cologne contains the oils of bergamot, lemon, rosemary, lavender and orange-flower, along with acetic ether and alcohol.

The dose of the spiritus as carminatives is 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.). They are often prescribed along with other stomachics, such as nux vomica, cinchona, or the bitters.

U. S. P.—*Spiritus Amygdalæ Amaræ*, *Spir. Anisi*, *Spir. Aurantii Compositus* (containing the oils of orange peel, lemon, coriander and anise), *Spir. Cinnamomi*, *Spir. Gaultheriæ*, *Spir. Juniperi*, *Spir. Juniperi Compositus* (containing oils of juniper, caraway and fennel. Dose, 4–8 c.c., 1–2 fl. drs.), *Spir. Lavandulæ*, *Spir. Limonis*, *Spir. Menthæ Piperitæ*, *Spir. Menthæ Viridis*, *Spir. Myrciæ* (bay rum, containing oils of bay, orange peel and allspice), *Spir. Myristicæ*.

Elixir Aromaticum is a preparation of the Spir. Aurantii Compositus, which is used exclusively as a flavor.

B. P.—*Spiritus Anisi*, *Sp. Cajuputi*, *Sp. Cinnamomi*, *Sp. Juniperi*, *Sp. Lavandulæ*, *Sp. Menthæ Piperitæ*, *Sp. Myristicæ*, *Sp. Rosmarini*.

The compound spirit of horseradish (*Spir. Armoraciæ Compositus*) is obtained by extracting the volatile oils of horseradish, bitter-orange peel, and nutmeg with dilute alcohol and purifying them by distillation. Horseradish oil, like that of most of the Cruciferæ, is a sulphur compound, and has a peculiarly hot, burning taste. Dose, 1–2 fl. drs. (4–8 c.c.).

Aquæ.—The volatile oils are very insoluble in water, but when they are shaken in it, enough remains in the water to give it the odor and taste of the oil. In the process of obtaining the oils from the crude drugs by distillation, some oil is held by the water, and a number of these waters (aquæ) are contained in the pharmacopœias. They are used as substitutes for distilled water in making up prescriptions, the small quantity of volatile oil serving merely to give a pleasant odor and taste.

U. S. P.—*Aqua Anisi*, *Aq. Aurantii Flor.* and *Aq. Aurantii Florum Fortior* (the latter containing twice as much volatile oil as the former), *Aq. Cinnamomi*, *Aq. Fœniculi*, *Aq. Menth. Piperitæ*, *Aq. Menth. Viridis*, *Aq. Rosæ*, *Aq. Rosæ Fortior* (the latter twice as strong as the ordinarily used *Aq. Rosæ*).

B. P.—*Aqua Anethi*, *Aq. Anisi*, *Aq. Aurantii Florum*, *Aq. Carui*, *Aq. Cinnamomi*, *Aq. Fœniculi*, *Aq. Laurocerasi* (laurel water, containing prussic acid and benzaldehyde), *Aq. Menthæ Piperitæ*, *Aq. Menthæ Viridis*, *Aq. Pimentæ*, *Aq. Rosæ*, *Aq. Sambuci*.

Other preparations containing volatile oils merely as flavoring ingredients are *Trochisci Menthæ Piperitæ*, U. S. P. (peppermint lozenges), and *Unguentum Aquæ Rosæ* (cold cream), U. S. P., B. P.

Some of the preparations containing volatile oils are derived not from the oil itself, but from the crude drug, and therefore contain non-volatile substances which are generally absent from the preparations already mentioned. As a general rule these non-volatile bodies are inactive, but in some cases, bitters or resins are contained in the preparations, and may influence their action. Thus a bitter glucoside, hesperidin, is found in the orange peel, and is present in the preparations formed directly from it, while it is absent from those formed from the volatile oil. Ginger contains a resin of hot, burning taste, which increases the carminative action of the oil. Cinnamon contains some tannic acid, which passes over in the tincture, while a fixed oil is contained in cardamom. Arnica contains a bitter substance, arnicin; calamus, a bitter, acorin, in addition to a volatile oil; cascarilla, a bitter principle, cascarillin, along with another oil. Preparations which contain a bitter substance in addition to a volatile oil, are often classed as aromatic bitters along with the Pepper series.

Among the preparations formed from the crude drugs are the **Syrups**, which are used exclusively as flavoring agents.

U. S. P.—*Syrupus Aurantii Florum*, *Syr. Amygdalæ*, *Syr. Aurantii*, *Syr. Rosæ*, *Syr. Zingiberis*, *Syr. Pruni Virginianæ*.

B. P.—*Syrupus Aromaticus* (containing tincture of orange and cinnamon water), *Syr. Aurantii*, *Syr. Aurantii Floris*, *Syr. Limonis*, *Syr. Pruni Virginianæ*, *Syr. Rosæ*, *Syr. Zingiberis*. Dose of syrups, B. P., 2–4 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

The **Tinctures** are used for the same purposes as the spirits of the pure oils, and in the same dose, 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.). The tinctures of arnica are employed externally as applications to bruised surfaces and in similar conditions, but they have no more effect than other preparations, although they are popularly regarded as specifics.

U. S. P.—*Tinctura Arnicæ Florum*, *Tinct. Arnicæ Radicis*, *Tinct. Aurantii Amari*, *Tinct. Aurantii Dulcis*, *Tinct. Cardamomi*, *Tinct. Cardamomi Composita* (contains cardamom, cinnamon, caraway), *Tinct. Cinnamomi*, *Tinct. Lavandulæ Composita* (oils of lavender, rosemary, cinnamon, cloves, nutmeg), *Tinct. Vanillæ*, *Tinct. Zingiberis.*

B. P.—*Tinctura Arnicæ*, *Tinct. Aurantii*, *Tinct. Cardamomi Composita* (containing cardamom, caraway, cinnamon and raisins), *Tinct. Cinnamomi*, *Tinct. Lavandulæ Composita* (lavender, rosemary, cinnamon, nutmeg), *Tinct. Limonis*, *Tinct. Pruni Virginianæ*, *Tinct. Zingiberis*, *Tinct. Cascarillæ.*

Fluid Extracts of the volatile oil series.

U. S. P.—*Extractum Arnicæ Radicis Fluidum.*

Ext. Aurantii Amari Fl., 1–2 c.c. (15–30 mins.).

Ext. Rosæ Fl., 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

Ext. Calami Fl., 0.5–1.3 c.c. (8–20 mins.).

Ext. Sabinæ Fl., 0.2–0.5 c.c. (3–8 mins.).

Ext. Pruni Virginianæ Fl., 2–4 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

Ext. Zingiberis Fl., 0.5–1.3 c.c. (8–20 mins.).

Ext. Aromaticum Fl., 0.5–1.3 c.c. (8–20 mins.), from aromatic powder.

The only fluid extracts at all extensively used are the last three.

Infusions.

U. S. P.—*Infusum Pruni Virginianæ.*

B. P.—*Infusum Aurantii.*

Infusum Aurantii Compositum (formed from bitter orange peel, fresh lemon peel and cloves).

Infusum Caryophylli.

Infusum Rosæ Acidum (containing sulphuric acid).

Infusum Cascarillæ.

These infusions are given in doses of ½–1 fl. oz. (15–30 c.c.) and may be used instead of the medicated waters (aquæ).

Other Preparations.

Extractum Arnicæ Radicis (U. S. P.) is used to form the *Emplastrum Arnicæ* (U. S. P.), Arnica plaster.

Extractum Anthemidis (B. P.), 0.1–0.5 G. (2–8 grs.).

Confectio Rosæ Gallicæ (B. P.).

These two last preparations are used almost exclusively as cohesive bases for pills.

Pulvis Aromaticus (U. S. P.) contains cinnamon, cardamom, ginger, and nutmeg in powder, and is a useful carminative in doses of 0.3–2 G. (5–30 grs.).

Pulvis Cinnamomi Compositus (B. P.) contains cinnamon, cardamom and ginger, and is used as a carminative in doses of 10–40 grs.

Unguentum Eucalypti (B. P.).

Several pure substances which have been isolated from the volatile oils and introduced into therapeutics (eucalyptol, menthol, thymol) will be mentioned later. (See index.)

A number of other volatile substances are used locally in medicine for the same purpose as the volatile oils, although they are classified in other groups owing to their possessing other properties which are not shared by the oils. Among these may be mentioned especially the preparations of chloroform (aqua, emulsum, spiritus, linimentum), the simple and compound spirits of ether, and acetic ether. These are used largely for the same purposes as the volatile oil preparations, and when administered in moderate quantities do not cause any further effects. The preparations of alcohol known as spirits, or liqueurs, or essences,

contain volatile oils—Curaçoa, Cherrywater (Kirchwasser), Kummel, Essence of Mint, etc.—and the simpler spirits, Brandy, Whiskey, Rum, Gin, and the wines contain bodies known as œnanthic ethers, which probably act in a similar way.

Bibliography.

Bucholtz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iv., p. 1. (Antiseptic action.)
Bokorny. Arch. f. d. ges. Physiol., lxxiii., p. 555.
Binz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., v., p. 109; viii., p. 50.
Pohl. Ibid., xxv., p. 51.
Batelli. Trav. du Labor. de Therapeut. de Geneve, iii., p. 197.
Brandl, Scanzoni, Farnsteiner. Ztschr. f. Biol., xxix., p. 277, xxxiii., pp. 462, 475. (Action on absorption from stomach and bowel; compare papers by *Pawlow* and his pupils. Arch. des Scienc. biolog., ii. and iii.)
Heffter. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxv., p. 342. (Saffrol, etc.)
Winternitz. Ibid., xlv., p. 163.
Fromm u. Hildebrandt. Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem., xxxiii., p. 579.
Lindemann. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlii., p. 356; Ztsch. f. Biol., xxxix., p. 1.
Bohm. Inaug. Diss., Halle, 1879. (Absinth.)
Boyce. Brit. Med. Journ., 1893, ii., p. 1097. (Absinth.)
Magnan. Comptes Rendus de l'Academie, lxviii., p. 825. (Absinth.)
Lapin. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1893. (Ol. Menth. pip.)
Fleischmann. Untersuch. d. Würzburger pharmakol. Institut, iii., p. 50. (Turpentine.)
Kobert. Centralbl. f. d. med. Wissen., 1877, p. 129. (Turpentine.)
Hare. Medical News, li., p. 593. (Turpentine.)
Pallop. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1889. (Turpentine.)
Wallace. J. of Exp. Med., vi. (Nutmeg.)

2. Pepper Group.

Several drugs which act as carminatives like the volatile oils, but which differ from them in the nature of their active constituents, may be mentioned here.

Black Pepper contains a weakly basic substance, *Piperine* (which is broken up by caustic alkalies into *Piperidine* and *Piperinic acid*), in addition to a volatile oil and a bitter pungent resin. According to Buchheim a second base, *Chavicine*, also exists in it and can be decomposed into *Piperidine* and *Chavicic acid*. Piperine is insoluble in water, and has therefore no taste when absolutely pure, but is hot and pungent to the taste when it is taken in solution.

Pyrethrum, or pellitory, contains similar constituents, volatile oil, resin and *Pyrethrine*, which is decomposed into *Piperidine* and *Pyrethric acid* (Buchheim).

The unstable alkaloid, *Sedine*, of Sedum acre (biting stonecrop), resembles the pepper alkaloids in its effects, but has not been accurately examined as yet.

Capsicum, or Cayenne pepper, contains a number of ill-defined, non-volatile bodies, which have been termed *Capsicol*, *Capsaicin*, *Capsicin*, etc., but of which little or nothing is known accurately. As it has no volatile oil, it differs entirely from the other members of the series, but it acts similarly in the stomach, and is used frequently as an irritating carminative.

Ginger might also be included here, as it owes its pungency in part to the presence of a resin along with the volatile oil.

The volatile oils derived from the Cruciferæ differ from the others in containing sulphur, and in possessing a much more irritating action. Thus the volatile oil of mustard might be treated of along with the peppers rather than with the other volatile carminatives, but mustard is used in medicine

only as a skin irritant, and will be taken up in that connection (see page 89). The horseradish (Armoracia, B. P.) and the formerly official scurvy-grass (Cochlearia officinalis) are used as carminatives, and owe their activity to their containing similar or identical sulphur compounds.

These drugs differ from the volatile oils only in being more irritant when applied to the skin and alimentary canal. The absorption of large quantities has led to inflammation of the kidney in some instances.

Pepper and capsicum are largely used as condiments, and are comparatively seldom prescribed in therapeutics. Both are used in domestic medicine as skin irritants, and capsicum is prescribed where a strong stomachic irritant is required. The tincture has been employed in chronic alcoholism in order to provide a substitute for the local irritant effects of spirits in the stomach. Ginger preparations are added to other remedies as flavoring agents, the syrup being generally used, and they are also among the best of the carminatives. The lozenges are prescribed in chronic inflammatory conditions of the pharynx and larynx. Pyrethrum is rarely employed. Piperine has been advised in malaria as a substitute for, or adjuvant to quinine, but has fallen into disuse. Pepper has been administered internally as a genito-urinary disinfectant and stimulant.

Preparations.

Piper (U. S. P.), **Piper Nigrum** (B. P.), black pepper, the unripe fruit of Piper Nigrum.

Oleoresina Piperis (U. S. P.), 0.03–0.1 c.c. (½–2 mins.).

Piperinum (U. S. P.), 0.1–0.5 G. (2–3 grs.).

Confectio Piperis (B. P.), 60–120 grs.

Pyrethrum (U. S. P.), **Pyrethri Radix** (B. P.), pellitory, the root of Anacyclus Pyrethum.

Tinctura Pyrethri (U. S. P., B. P.).

Zingiber (U. S. P., B. P.), ginger, the rhizome of Zingiber officinale.

Syrupus Zingiberis (U. S. P., B. P), 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. dr.).

Tinctura Zingiberis (U. S. P., B. P.), 2–4 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

Extractum Zingiberis Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.5–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Oleoresina Zingiberis (U. S. P.), 0.05–0.1 c.c. (1–2 mins.).

Trochisci Zingiberis (U. S. P.).

Capsicum, Cayenne pepper, chillies, the fruit of Capsicum fastigiatum (U. S. P.); **Capsici Fructus**, the dried fruit of Capsicum minimum (B. P.).

Tinctura Capsici (U. S. P., B. P.), 1–2 c.c. (15–30 mins.).

Oleoresina Capsici (U. S. P.), 0.01–0.05 c.c. (¼–1 min.).

Extractum Capsici Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.03–0.1 c.c. (½–2 mins.).

Emplastrum Capsici (U. S. P.).

Unguentum Capsici (B. P.).

Armoraciæ Radix (B. P.), horseradish root, the fresh root of Cochlearia Armoracia.

Spiritus Armoraciæ Compositus (B. P.), 1–2 fl. drs. (See p. 68.)

Piper Methisticum, or Kava Kava, is used in the South Sea Islands to prepare an intoxicating liquor, which according to Kesteven, differs from the alcoholic preparations in producing marked muscular weakness without affecting the mental powers. Other observers state, however, that it causes confusion and sleep very much as alcohol does. Its local action resembles that of pepper, and like it, it has been advised in gonorrhœa. Its virtues seem to reside in two resinous bodies.

Bibliography.

Buchheim. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., v., p. 455.

Jungst. Ibid., xxiv., p. 315.

Hogyes. Ibid., ix., p. 117.

Kesteven. Practitioner, xxviii., p. 199.
Lewin. Berlin. klin. Woch., 1886, p. 7.
Cerna. Therapeut. Gazette, 1891, p. 7.

3. Malodorous Volatile Oils.

Some of the volatile oils differ from the others in possessing an odor which is disagreeable and nauseating to most people, although not to all. The best known of these are the *Oils* of *Asafœtida* and *Valerian.* The former occurs along with resins and gums exuding from some species of Ferula, and contains several organic sulphur compounds, to which it owes its odor. Oil of Valerian,[1] from Valeriana officinalis, is almost without odor when freshly distilled, but when kept for some time and exposed to the air, it assumes a somewhat unpleasant, penetrating odor. It contains two terpenes, borneo-camphor, and numerous esters of formic, acetic and valerianic acid. While both of these oils are generally regarded as possessing very unpleasant odors, asafœtida is used in India as a condiment, and valerian was formerly used in England as a perfume. Another species of Ferula which is included in the pharmacopœias, but of which little is known, is *Sumbul*, the root of Ferula Sumbul. It has a strong musk-like odor, and is sometimes used to adulterate musk.

Asafœtida and valerian are used in hysterical affections, and the benefits accruing from their administration have generally been attributed to the mental impression produced by their unpleasant odor and taste, and not to any action they produce after absorption.

But Kionka and Liebrecht[2] state that valerian has a definite stimulating action on the psychical functions and that this is due to the presence of certain valerianic compounds in the oil. They have also formed some artificial compounds (*Valyl*) possessing similar properties. The ordinary valerianic salts have no further effects than other salts of the acetic acid series, so that it is quite irrational to use such bodies as valerianate of quinine for their action in hysteria.

Asafœtida is also used like the other volatile oils as a carminative and as an expectorant, and the emulsion is given by the mouth or in an enema to relieve abdominal distention.

Preparations.

Asafœtida (U. S. P.), a mixture of volatile oil, gum, and resin from Ferula fœtida.

Emulsum Asafœtidæ, 15–30 c.c. (½–1 fl. oz.).
Pilulæ Asafœtidæ, 1–3 pills.
Tinctura Asafœtidæ, 2–4 c.c. (30–60 mins.).
Pilulæ Aloes et Asafœtidæ, 2–5 pills (used largely in hysteria with constipation).

Asafetida (B. P.), a gum-resin obtained from the root of Ferula fœtida and probably other species.

Tinctura Asafetidæ, ½–1 fl. dr.
Pilula Aloes et Asafetidæ, 4–8 grs.

[1] *Sikorska*, These de Geneve, 1899.
[2] Deutsch med. Woch., 1901, Dec. 5.

Pilula Galbani Composita, 4–8 grs.

Spiritus Ammoniæ Fetidus, 20–40 mins. for repeated administration; for a single administration 60–90 mins.

Valeriana (U. S. P.), **Valerianæ Radix** (B. P.), valerian, the rhizome and roots of Valeriana officinalis.

Extractum Valerianæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 2–4 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

Tinctura Valerianæ (U. S. P.), 5–10 c.c. (1–3 fl. dr.).

Tinctura Valerianæ Ammoniata (U. S. P.), 5–10 c.c. (1–3 fl. dr.).

Tinctura Valerianæ Ammoniata (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Sumbul (U. S. P.), **Sumbul Radix** (B. P.), the root of Ferula Sumbul.

Tinctura Sumbul (U. S. P., B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

4. Volatile Oils Used as Genito-urinary Disinfectants.

Another group of volatile oils is used chiefly for genito-urinary disinfection. The best known of these are the *Oils of Copaiba, Cubebs and Sandalwood,* which resemble each other closely in character. Oil of cubebs and oil of copaiba contain a large proportion of sesquiterpene ($C_{15}H_{24}$), and the oil of sandalwood has two oxidized substances (santolol and santalal), which can be reduced to a sesquiterpene identical with that of copaiba. In copaiba the volatile oil is associated with one or more resinous acids, and in cubebs there is in addition to resinous acids a bitter substance, *Cubebin,* which, however, is not absorbed from the stomach and bowel, and is entirely inactive. Cubebs and copaiba have long been used as genito-urinary disinfectants, while sandalwood oil is a more recent addition to the group, which is less disagreeable to take and has less tendency to disturb the digestion.[1] The oils have the ordinary effects on the skin, stomach and intestine, are absorbed, and are excreted partly by the lungs, but chiefly by the kidneys in combination with glycuronic acid; some oil is unchanged, some is partially oxidized in the tissues.

The products of the oils excreted in the urine appear to have some antiseptic action for the urine of persons treated with them putrefies more slowly than ordinary urine and the growth of many of the more common germs is somewhat retarded by it. On the other hand there seems some question as to how far it is destructive to the gonococcus, which sometimes grows readily in culture media made up with such urine instead of water. Winternitz therefore attributes the undoubted therapeutic efficacy of these oils to their lessening the inflammatory exudate rather than to their antiseptic action, without denying that the latter may also be of some importance. In large quantities, these oils cause irritation in the bladder and urethra, which leads to a constant desire to micturate, and to much pain and difficulty in doing so; sometimes the pain is so great as to lead to complete retention. When the urethra or bladder is in a state of inflammation, these symptoms are produced by even small doses, so that these oils are generally avoided in the acute stages of inflammation, and only given later when

[1] The ideal genito-urinary disinfectant of this series ought to be well borne by the stomach and bowel, and ought to be excreted mainly by the kidneys in a fairly strong combination with glycuronic acid, as, if the latter is easily split off in the urine, it is liable to act as a culture medium for bacteria. (Schmiedeberg.)

the disease has passed into the subacute or chronic stage. They are used in some inflammatory affections of the bladder, but much more extensively in gonorrhœa.

Copaiba and cubebs both contain resinous acids in addition to the volatile oil, and these possess considerable diuretic powers, and are also credited, along with the oils, with some action on the bronchial mucous membrane, so that they often form constituents of "expectorant" mixtures, prescribed to lessen the secretion of the bronchi. These resins are excreted in the urine, and are precipitated by the addition of acids; when the nitric acid tests for albumin are employed after copaiba, a precipitate is accordingly obtained, and may be mistaken for albumin, but can easily be distinguished from it by the addition of alcohol, which redissolves the resin but not the proteid. The urine is often found to reduce Fehling's solution, in some cases apparently from the presence of sugar, in others from the glycuronic acid combined with the oil. The oil of sandalwood is excreted more rapidly than the others. Copaiba and cubebs are less irritant to the stomach than many of the other volatile oils, but after their prolonged administration (especially in the case of copaiba) symptoms of gastric disturbance sometimes appear in loss of appetite and uneasiness in the stomach. Sandalwood oil is said to be less irritant than the others. Occasionally skin eruptions occur after the use of these oils; they are generally of the nature of urticaria, sometimes of erythema nodosum, and only very rarely is eczema seen. The cause of these skin eruptions is unknown, but they may be due to the gastric disturbance.

Preparations.

Copaiba (U. S. P., B. P.), Balsam of Copaiba, Copaiva, the oleoresin of Copaiba Langsdorffii and of other species of Copaifera. Dose, 0.5–1.3 c.c. (10–20 mins.), B. P., ½–1 fl. dr.

Massa Copaibæ (U. S. P.), formed from the oleoresin by the addition of magnesia; an inferior preparation.

Oleum Copaibæ (U. S. P., B. P.), the oil freed from the resin by distillation, 0.5–1 c.c. (10–15 mins.).

Resina Copaibæ (U. S. P.), 1 G. (15 grs.).

Cubeba (U. S. P.), **Cubebæ Fructus** (B. P.), Cubebs, the unripe fruit of Piper Cubeba, 2–8 G. (30–120 grs.) in powder.

Extractum Cubebæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.5–2 c.c. (10–30 mins.).

Oleoresina Cubebæ (U. S. P.), 0.5–1 c.c. (10–15 mins.).

Tinctura Cubebæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

Oleum Cubebæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.5–1 c.c. (10–15 mins.).

Trochisci Cubebæ (U. S. P.).

Oleum Santali (U. S. P., B. P.), Sandalwood oil, distilled from the wood of Santalum Album. Dose, 0.5–1 c.c. (10–15 mins.).

Therapeutic Uses.—As has been mentioned, these drugs find their most extensive application in the subacute stages of cystitis and gonorrhœa. They are also used in bronchial disease with an excessive flow of mucopurulent secretion; less often copaiba is prescribed along with other diuretics to promote the secretion of urine. The cubeb lozenges

are sucked in hoarseness and relaxed sore throat, and often give relief owing to the pungent stimulating action.

In gonorrhœa the therapeutic agent is undoubtedly the volatile oil, the resin having little or no antiseptic action. The oils and the oleoresins are often administered in capsules, as they have an unpleasant odor and taste, especially those of copaiba. They may also be given as emulsions, and cubebs is sometimes prescribed as a powder suspended in mucilage. The resin of copaiba is rarely used alone.

Several other oils have been used as substitutes for Copaiba and Cubebs. Among these may be mentioned Gurjun Balsam, which is obtained from Dipterocarpus alatus, and contains a sesquiterpene and a resin. It has been used in gonorrhœa and as a local application in leprosy.

Matico, the dried tops of Piper angustifolium, which contains a volatile oil, resin and acid, has also been used in gonorrhœa to some extent.

Its pharmacopœial preparations are

Extractum Matico Fluidum (U. S. P.), 1–3 c.c. (15–45 mins.).

Tinctura Matico (U. S. P.), 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

Bibliography.

Bernatzik. Vierteljahrschrift f. prakt. Heilkunde, lxxxi., p. 9, and c., p. 239.
Schmidt. Arch. d. Pharm., cxci., p. 1.
Quincke. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xvii., p. 273.
Heffter. Ibid., xxxv., p. 369.
Winternitz. Ibid., xlv., p. 163.
Karo. Ibid., xlvi., p. 242.

See also the bibliography of the volatile oils in general.

5. Uva Ursi (Arbutin).

A number of drugs which are used for almost the same purposes as the cubebs series, but which do not all owe their activity to volatile oils, may be mentioned here.

Uva Ursi.—The leaves of the bearberry, Arctostaphylos Uva-Ursi, and of allied plants contain two glucosides, *Arbutin* and *Methylarbutin*, along with large quantities of tannin, an inactive glucoside, *Ericolin*, and a neutral insoluble body, *Urson*. These glucosides are decomposed by the action of acids or of emulsin into glucose and hydroquinone or methylhydroquinone, bodies of the benzol series. A part of the arbutin administered in therapeutics seems to undergo this decomposition in the body, but most of it is eliminated by the kidneys unchanged. It is possible that the small quantity of hydroquinone and methylhydroquinone which appears in the urine is formed from arbutin by the bacteria of the intestine, and not by the activity of the tissues.

Uva ursi is found to have some diuretic action, which is obviously due to its acting on the renal epithelium, and the urine is found to undergo putrefaction much more slowly than usual. This was at one time believed to be due to the formation of hydroquinone, but it seems more likely that arbutin itself is a slight stimulant to the renal cells, and that it is also weakly antiseptic. It is still undecided how far the other constituents of uva ursi are active, but there is little doubt that the arbutin and methylarbutin are the chief principles.

The urine is often dark in color after uva ursi or arbutin, and this tint deepens when it is allowed to stand and undergo putrefaction. The coloration is due to the hydroquinone, which is subject to further oxidation, and forms brownish-green pigments similar to those seen in the urine after carbolic acid and its allies. When decomposition of the urine occurs in the

bladder, as in cystitis, the urine may have this dark color when passed. In these cases probably less of the arbutin escapes undecomposed, but this has not been demonstrated.

Large quantities of uva ursi cause nausea, vomiting and diarrhœa, but Lewin states that this disturbance of the alimentary canal may be avoided by filtering the watery preparations through animal charcoal, or by administering the glucosides instead of the cruder preparations.

Buchu, the leaves of several species of Barosma, contain a volatile oil, one constituent of which is a camphor body, *Diosphenol.* This volatile oil is absorbed and is excreted by the kidneys, and renders the urine slightly antiseptic. It does not increase the renal activity appreciably.

Pichi, the twigs of Fabiana imbricata, contains a resinous acid, a glucoside and traces of an alkaloid, none of which have been satisfactorily examined. It has been found of benefit in the same conditions as Buchu and Uva Ursi.

Zea, or cornsilk, contains a resinous acid which increases the secretion of urine by direct stimulation of the renal epithelium.

Chimaphila, or pipsissewa, contains a volatile substance, *Chimaphilin,* and arbutin, and is used as a substitute for Uva ursi.

Preparations.

Uva Ursi (U. S. P.), **Uvæ Ursi Folia** (B. P.), the leaves of Arctostaphylos Uva-ursi (bearberry).

Extractum Uvæ Ursi (U. S. P.), 1–4 G. (15–60 grs.).

Extractum Uvæ Ursi Fluidum (U. S. P.), 5–15 c.c. (1–4 fl. drs.).

Infusum Uvæ Ursi (B. P.), ½–1 fl. oz.

Buchu (U. S. P.), **Buchu Folia** (B. P.), the leaves of Barosma betulina and B. crenulata.

Extractum Buchu Fluidum (U. S. P.), 2–4 c.c. (30–60 mins.).

Tinctura Buchu (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Infusum Buchu (B. P.), 1–2 fl. oz.

Zea (U. S. P.), cornsilk, the styles and stigmas of Zea Mays (Indian corn or maize).

Extractum Zeæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 5–10 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

Chimaphila (U. S. P.), Pipsissewa, the leaves of Chimaphila umbellata.

Extractum Chimaphilæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 2–5 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

Fabiana (Pichi), the branches of Fabiana imbricata (not pharmacopœial).

Extractum Fabianæ Fluidum, 4 c.c. (1 fl. dr.).

Arbutin has been advised as an improvement on the crude Uva ursi. It is given in doses of 1–4 G., in sweetened solution.

Therapeutic Uses.—These drugs are all used as mild disinfectants of the urinary tract, and are generally prescribed along with more powerful diuretics. They are found to give relief in catarrh and inflammation of the bladder.

Bibliography of Uva Ursi.

Lewin. Virchow's Archiv, xcii.,p. 521.
Paschkis. Wiener Med. Presse, 1884, p. 398.
Kunkel. Münch. med. Woch., 1886, p. 891.

VI. SKIN IRRITANTS AND COUNTER-IRRITATION.

The practice of applying irritants to the skin in internal diseases is one of great antiquity. The theories on which this therapeutic method is based have changed with the advance of medical knowledge, until, no explanation satisfactory to modern scepticism being forthcoming, the use of these remedies has fallen into a certain disrepute in the

last few years. The old theory of revulsion or derivation was at first based on the belief that disease was a malignant entity or humor, which might be drawn from the deeper organs to the surface by means of irritation of the skin. Later, it was supposed that the congestion of the diseased organs might be relieved by the withdrawal of fluid to the skin, and this belief has been held in more or less modified forms in quite modern times. In addition, it was recognized very early that irritation of the skin relieved pain in many instances. The means by which the skin irritation was attained, were extremely numerous and varied; large numbers of drugs have been used, and in addition mechanical devices of all kinds were employed, such as burning, electrical currents, or the introduction of setons. In many of these the idea of irritation was combined with that of leaving a way of escape for humors. This latter is only of historical interest, but the practice of relieving internal organs by external irritation or *counter-irritation* persists still, and perhaps merits more attention than it receives at the hands of many physicians.

The effects of an irritant applied to the skin are local and remote. The first symptoms of irritation are congestion and redness of the part, and many drugs which produce only this degree of irritation in ordinary circumstances, are known as *Rubefacients*. Stronger irritants cause blistering, and are called *Vesicants*, while some drugs which cause irritation and small discrete suppurations, receive the names of *Pustulants*.

Local Symptoms.—The application of an irritant to the skin causes a feeling of warmth, and often of itching, which may later become intensified into actual pain. The skin becomes red, congested, warm, and at first is more sensitive to touch and painful stimuli, though the sensitiveness is afterwards lessened. This condition persists for a longer or shorter time according to the nature of the irritant, and then passes off slowly. Very often desquamation follows, if the rubefacient has acted for some length of time. Stronger irritation is followed at first by the same results, but soon small globules of fluid appear below the epidermis, and these coalesce so as to form a large accumulation of fluid, which raises the epidermis completely off the true skin, forming a blister. If the irritant be removed, the fluid of the blister undergoes a slow absorption, so that in the course of a few days the epidermis forms an empty sack, which, however, is not obliterated by the adhesions of the walls. If the blister be opened, the sensitive dermis is exposed, and the secretion of fluid continues for some time, until a new epidermis has been formed.

The distinct and separate points of inflammation caused by the pustulants are due to their affecting the orifices of the skin glands and not the intervening tissue. This has been ascribed in some instances to the drug being rendered irritant at these points by the presence of acids formed by the decomposition of the sebum and perspiration; a simpler explanation is that the pustulants cannot pass through the horny epidermis, but act as irritants wherever they come in contact

with living tissue, that is, at the orifice of the glands. They cause the same sensation of warmth and prickling of the skin as the other irritants, but even in the earlier stages of their action small, dark-red, raised points are observed, exactly as in some of the exanthemata, and these afterwards form small abscesses. If the application be persisted in, these discrete abscesses may burst through the intervening tissues and become confluent, and large abscesses have thus been formed in the skin. When the irritant is removed before the formation of pus, the inflammation of the ducts slowly subsides and the epidermis peels off as after the milder irritants.

The local effects of the rubefacients and vesicants are identical with those of acute inflammation. The pain and discomfort are due to the action on the nerve terminations, while the redness and swelling betray the local dilatation of the vessels. This latter is perhaps due to the direct effect of the irritant on the vessel walls, rather than to any reflex action from the irritation of the sensory nerves, but it cannot be said to be known how far this latter agency is involved in the result. The dilatation of the vessels and the slowing of the blood current in them lead to the transudation of fluid and leucocytes into the tissues, especially at the points where the irritation is greatest, and the accumulation eventually pushes off the horny epidermal layer from the living layers and forms a blister. The fluid in the blister has been shown to contain some of the irritant, which diffuses into it through the epidermis. The œdema and swelling is not confined to the skin, but extends into the subcutaneous tissue and the more superficial layers of muscle.

If the irritation be continued long enough, suppuration may commence in the blister and lead to deep erosion of the tissues.[1]

Remote Action.—Local irritation cannot exist without causing certain general changes which affect the whole organism. These arise from the reflex stimulation of various centres in the medulla oblongata, and are thought to explain many of the beneficial effects of counter-irritation. The centres involved are those regulating the heart, the tone of the vessels, and the respiration. Moderate irritation of the skin causes an acceleration of the heart-rhythm, which has not been satisfactorily explained, while more powerful irritation slows the heart through the inhibitory centre. The blood-pressure measured in the arteries is considerably increased by ordinary irritation of the skin, but if it be very severe or widespread, the slowness of the pulse may cause a fall of tension. This increase in the blood-pressure is due to the reflex stimulation of the vasomotor centre, which causes a constriction of the arterioles over wide areas of the body. The constriction is not general, however, but seems to affect the abdominal organs

[1] Samuel states that when the rabbit's ear has recovered from the local irritation induced by croton oil, it is not so readily acted upon by this poison again. This he ascribes to some change in the blood vessels, which acquire a toleration for the irritant. It is not determined whether this holds good for other irritating drugs, nor, in fact, whether it is generally true for croton oil.

chiefly, while the vessels of the limbs and probably those of the skin are not contracted. The result is that while the blood-pressure is raised equally throughout the body, the resistance to the circulation is greater in the abdominal organs than in the rest of the body, and more blood is accordingly supplied to the muscles and skin and less to the internal organs than normally.

The effects of skin irritation on the respiration are less uniform. In the rabbit the breathing is sometimes accelerated, sometimes slowed by mild stimulation, while stronger stimuli seem to slow it always. The effect of the application of skin irritants on the respiration in man has not been observed accurately, but that sudden stimulation of the skin causes gasping and irregularity of the respiration, may be observed whenever cold water comes in contact with the more sensitive parts of the body.

The temperature of the body also undergoes changes when the skin is irritated. When the irritation is slight, an increase in the rectal temperature is often observed at first, while a decrease follows later, but on powerful stimulation, the preliminary rise of temperature is so short as to escape observation by ordinary methods, while the subsequent fall is more distinct and prolonged. The skin temperature is raised at the same time as the internal temperature falls. The explanation of these changes in the internal and external temperatures is obviously the altered distribution of the blood, more of which flows through the skin vessels and is cooled than usual. This results in a fall of the internal temperature and a rise in that of the skin, through the warm blood from the interior of the body pouring through the superficial vessels. The preliminary rise in the temperature has not been explained. The whole subject of the alteration of the temperature through counter-irritation has perhaps received greater attention than it deserves, if the observations of Jacobson be correct, for he found the variations in man to amount to less than one-tenth of a degree Centigrade as a general rule.

The metabolism has been found to be altered by the application of irritants to the skin, and, although in the experiments on which this statement is based, the surface exposed to the irritant was larger than that affected in therapeutics, it seems probable that some change is produced by the ordinary agents also. Zuntz and Röhrig found that bathing animals in strong salt solution increased the oxygen absorbed and the carbonic acid excreted much more than bathing in ordinary water, and Paalzow obtained the same result from the application of mustard plaster. The nitrogen of the urine is also said to be increased. This increase in the oxidation of the tissues is of the same nature as that produced by cold, and is due to an augmentation of the muscular activity, which, however, is too slight to cause any perceptible movement.

Irritation of the skin induces leucocytosis in the same way as irritation of the alimentary canal. This is especially evident after the application of a vesicant such as cantharides plaster, while rubefaction seems to have less effect. The injection of irritants into the subcutane-

ous tissues induces a leucocytosis similar to that following cantharides.

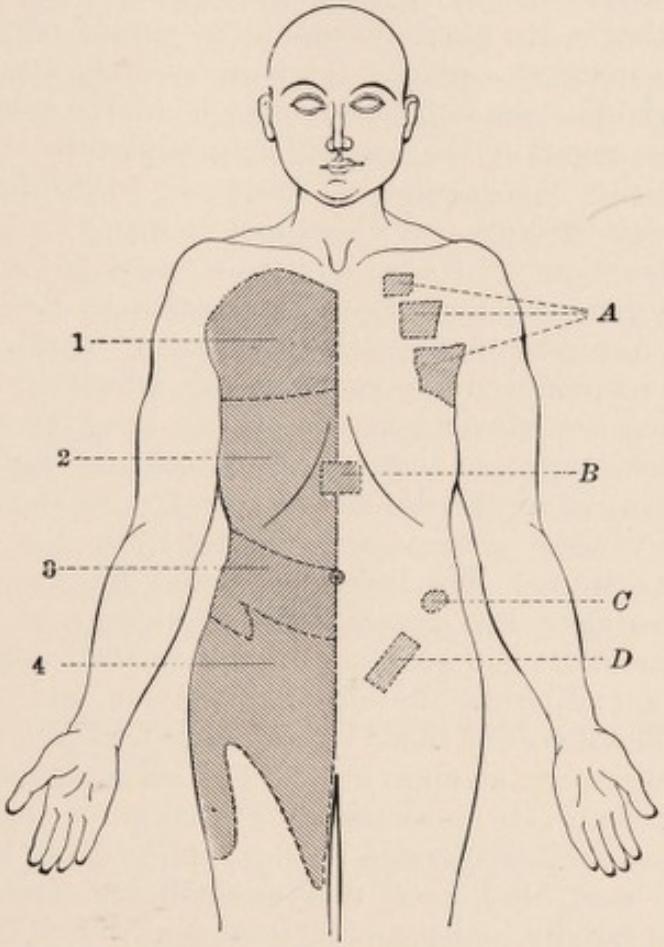
Lastly, in considering the effects of skin irritation on the general vitality, it may be mentioned that a sudden application may awake the consciousness, as is seen in the effects of dashing cold water on the chest, or of striking the hands in narcotic poisoning. Another example is seen in the improved mental condition so often observed in fever patients treated with cold baths. This improvement is due to the changes in the skin, and not, as is often said, to the fall in temperature, for the latter is often insignificant.

In rabbits, irritation of the skin causes albuminuria, but this is elicited easily in these animals by a large variety of procedures. In the guinea-pig, an animal in which the nervous centres seem to be more easily deranged than in most others, irritation of the skin produces very profound and often fatal changes, through reflex excitation of inhibitory areas of the brain (Roger).

All of these effects are produced by irritation at any point of the surface, and are quite insufficient to explain the practical use of counter-irritants to affect a particular organ. For example, in gastric disorders a counter-irritant is often applied just over the ensiform cartilage, while in facial neuralgia a blister behind the ear often gives relief. If the beneficial results were due to the general alteration of the circulation, respiration, or temperature, there would be no reason to vary the point of application, for the effect would not vary. Zuelzer, therefore, attempted to ascertain whether the deeper tissues and the internal organs were affected by superficial irritation over them, and found that when cantharides was applied to one side of a rabbit's back for fourteen days, the superficial muscles under it were congested, while the deeper layers and the lung were anæmic when compared with the corresponding parts on the other side. His treatment, however, led to necrosis and suppuration, so that his conclusions are not unimpeachable. Lazarus-Barlow and Philipps observed recently that the muscles on the same side as, but at some distance from a blister, were of higher specific gravity than those on the uninjured side, while those immediately below the blister were of lower specific gravity, and therefore concluded that fluid was drawn from the deeper muscles to supply the superficial ones. This, however, evidently requires that the internal organs to be affected must be not only contiguous, but also continuous with those directly affected, and offers no explanation of the alleged effects of irritation of the skin upon the stomach or lungs. Much light has been thrown on the subject by the researches of Head, who found that in many cases internal disease is accompanied by a tenderness of the skin, and mapped out with care the skin areas corresponding to each organ. In this way he was able to show that a distinct relation exists between irritation of an internal organ and that part of the skin which is supplied by the same segment of the spinal cord or brain. Thus in painful diseases of the stomach, tenderness is often complained of in the skin of the epigastrium, while in

œsophageal stricture, pain is often referred to a point near the angle of the scapula and to another in the neighborhood of the apex-beat. The superficial points are, of course, only connected with the diseased organ by means of nerve-fibres, but Head's observations show that a nervous impulse from these organs does not pass in an indeterminate manner through the central nervous system, but has a distinct tendency to affect the superficial areas which are supplied with sensory nerves from the same segment of the cord. It would, therefore, seem a plausible theory that an affection of these superficial areas may affect the

FIG. 1.



The right side is divided into segments which correspond to some of the skin areas in which Head found tenderness in internal diseases. 1. Area of tenderness in disease of the lungs. 2. In diseases of the stomach. 3. In ovarian disease. 4. In disease of the Fallopian tubes and other appendages. On the left side are represented the points of application of counter-irritants in disease of the lungs (*A*), of the stomach (*B*), of the ovary (*C*), and of the uterine appendages (*D*).

corresponding internal organ more than the rest of the body, and this is exactly what is required to explain the benefits derived from the use of counter-irritants. It is especially noticeable that several of the points which Head observed to be affected by internal disease are precisely those points at which experience has shown irritation to be most beneficial. (Fig. 1.) Thus the application of a blister over the epigastrium has long been recognized as a means of relieving gastric disorders. Similarly the old treatment of iritis by means of a blister on the temple may be justified by the fact that Head found areas of tenderness on the temple accompanying this disease.

The exact nature of the effects of counter-irritation on the internal organs has not been ascertained, but it would seem most probable that an alteration in the calibre of the vessels and in the sensory nerves or their terminations is induced. These alterations may, however, produce or be accompanied by a distinct alteration in the activity of the organs; for example, there seems good reason to believe that in many cases irritants applied to the abdomen produce evacuation of the bowels.

Besides these physiological effects of counter-irritation, it must not be forgotten that a great impression is produced on the patient, and that some of the benefit may be due to hypnotic suggestion.

Therapeutic Uses.—Local irritants are applied occasionally to produce an alteration in the nutrition and blood supply of the skin itself and of the subcutaneous tissues. Thus in some chronic inflammatory conditions, with effusions into, or indurations of the subcutaneous tissues, the improvement of the circulation produced by slight irritation may be of benefit. An example of this is the treatment of ulcers of old standing with irritants. Another case in which a slight inflammatory attack causes very obvious improvement, is in corneal opacity, which may be removed entirely in some cases by the acute inflammatory reaction produced by such irritants as abrin. Probably a similar effect is produced on subcutaneous effusions, as in bruises. Some interesting experiments on this subject have recently been performed by Wechsberg, who induced suppuration in both hind legs of rabbits by the injection of irritants and then treated the one leg by the application of various irritants to the skin, while the other was left untreated as a control. He invariably found the abscess of the leg subjected to treatment less extensive and showing a greater tendency to heal than the other, and accounts for this by the œdema induced by the skin irritant diluting the original irritant and promoting its absorption. The increased blood supply must lead to a larger number of leucocytes and more alexines around the inflammation than would otherwise be present. He found that the absorption of pigments from the rabbit's ear was much accelerated by the application of irritants to the skin over the part, and cites this as evidence that irritants are absorbed more rapidly under similar treatment. For these purposes only the milder irritants are required; in fact, vesication may do more harm than good. Mild irritation alters the sensitiveness of the sensory organs of the skin, and heat is often applied to alleviate pain and discomfort in the skin itself. In other instances pain is increased by heat, and, in fact, it is sometimes applied in the treatment of local anæsthesia, with the object of rendering the surface more sensitive. In many forms of skin disease, mild irritants are found to be of benefit; this is sometimes attributed to their antiseptic action, but the slight irritation is undoubtedly of some importance.

Counter-irritants are used in a large number of diseases, often without any definite idea of what precise effects they will elicit, but merely because they have been found to give relief in similar conditions. As a general rule they are placed over the affected organ, and this corre-

sponds fairly in most cases of disease of the trunk with Head's area of skin tenderness. In the head, however, the segmental arrangement has been rendered very irregular by the compression in development, and counter-irritants are often found to be most effective when placed at some distance from the seat of pain, *e. g.*, behind the ear in some forms of facial neuralgia. They are used in acute inflammation of the lungs and pleura, in gastric disorders accompanied by much pain, in colic and in neuralgia and neuritis. Their action is very uncertain, but their application is often followed by great relief, more especially of pain. They are also used occasionally in shock or collapse, not for their effect on any individual organ, but to elicit the reflex alterations in the circulation which have already been described. A blister is often recommended in internal hæmorrhage, and may very possibly lessen the bleeding by altering the distribution of the blood in the organs, although it is difficult to estimate how far the improvement is due to the remedy and how far it is spontaneous. In order to produce any marked effect on internal organs, the more powerful irritants must be used, such as mustard or cantharides. It is not necessary, however, to produce actual vesication in the great majority of cases. Formerly blisters were opened and fresh irritants applied on the raw surface in order to prolong the effects, but this treatment was extremely painful, besides being liable to set up suppuration and ulceration, and it is very questionable whether any equivalent benefit followed.

Counter-irritation must be applied only with the greatest caution in weak, badly nourished, or very old persons, as it may cause sloughing. In diabetes, the tendency to gangrene contraindicates blistering, and in very young children only mild irritants are used.

Bibliography.

Naumann. Vierteljahrsch. f. prakt. Heilkunde, lxxvii., p. 1, and xciii., p. 133.
Zülzer. Deutsche Klinik., 1865, p. 127.
Röhrig. Ibid., 1873, p. 209.
Röhrig and Zuntz. Pflüger's Arch., iv., p. 57.
Paalzow. Ibid., iv., p. 492.
Wertheimer. Arch. de Phys., 1894, pp. 308 and 724.
Heidenhain. Pflüger's Arch., iii., p. 504; v., p. 77.
Riegel. Ibid., iv., p. 350.
Mantegazza. Schmidt's Jahrb., cxxxiii., p. 153.
Jacobson. Virchow's Arch., lxvii., p. 166.
Head. Brain, xvi., p. 1; xvii., p. 339.
Schuller. Berl. klin. Woch., 1874, p. 294.
Winternitz. Arch. f. exp. Path. und Pharm., xxxv., p. 77; xxxvi., p. 212.
Roger. Arch. de Phys. [v.] v., p. 17.
Samuel. Virchow's Arch., cxxvii., p. 467.
Hay. Saline-Cathartics, pp. 128–144.
Buchner, Fuchs, Megele. Arch. f. Hygiene, xl., p. 347.
Wechsberg. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxxvii., p. 360.

An enormous number of drugs produce irritation of the skin, and it would be idle to attempt to enumerate them here. In many instances, however, the irritant action is insignificant in comparison with the other effects produced, and these will, therefore, be discussed elsewhere; among these are found some of the alkaloids, the acids and alkalies, and many other inorganic preparations. Irritation of the skin

may also be produced by heat and cold, and in fact burning in various forms was formerly used as a means of counter-irritation. Heat is still employed to cause irritation of the skin and subcutaneous tissues, and to promote their circulation. Thus, poultices and hot water compresses are beneficial in many local inflammations, though the same effects may generally be obtained by the use of the milder irritants. The effect of cold on the skin is more frequently demonstrated by bathing, and will be touched on in relation to the antipyrine series.

Apart from those drugs in which the irritation of the skin is merely an incident in a wider general action, there are a number of preparations which are used almost exclusively for this purpose. They may be divided into three classes: the volatile irritants, such as turpentine oil; the mustard series, some of which are also volatile; and those which are either non-volatile or only boil at high temperatures, such as cantharidin.

I. The Turpentine Oil Group.

Under the volatile irritants may be included a large number of the ethereal oils and many members of the methane and of the aromatic series; but among the ethereal oils those which possess a low boiling point, that is, those which contain a large proportion of terpene, with comparatively little oxygen, are found to possess a more penetrating action than the others. At the same time, the taste and odor of these oils is often less pleasant than that of the others, so that they are less used as flavors and carminatives. The oils derived from the Coniferæ have, for this reason, been more largely used than the others for their effect on the skin, although several other volatile preparations are recognized by the pharmacopœia for this purpose. The action of these oils is similar in other respects to that of the general group (see p. 61), so that it need not be discussed here.

Preparations.

Terebinthina, turpentine (U. S. P.), **Thus Americanum**, Frankincense (B. P.), a concrete oleoresin obtained from Pinus palustris and other species of Pinus.

Terebinthina Canadensis (U. S. P., B. P.), Canada balsam, a liquid oleoresin obtained from Abies balsamea.

Pix Burgundica, Burgundy Pitch (U. S. P., B. P.), an oleoresin derived from Abies excelsa, Norway spruce fir, contains less volatile oil than turpentine.

Oleum Terebinthinæ (U. S. P., B. P.), oil of turpentine, a volatile oil distilled from turpentine, 0.1–0.5 c.c. (2–8 mins.); as an anthelmintic, 8–15 c.c. (2–4 fl. drs.).

Oleum Terebinthinæ Rectificatum (U. S. P.) is formed from ordinary oil of turpentine by redistillation with lime water, in order to remove any acids and resin which may be contained in it. It consists of a mixture of terpenes ($C_{10}H_{16}$). After long standing it undergoes partial oxidation among other changes, and contains some oxidizing substance which was formerly supposed to be ozone.

Linimentum Terebinthinæ (U. S. P., B. P.).

Linimentum Terebinthinæ Aceticum (B. P.) is formed by mixing turpentine, glacial acetic acid and camphor liniment.

Emplastrum Picis Burgundicæ (U. S. P.).
Emplastrum Picis (B. P.), pitch plaster.

Oleum Pini (B. P.), the oil distilled from the fresh leaves of Pinus pumilis.

Terebenum (U. S. P., B. P.), a liquid formed from oil of turpentine by the action of sulphuric acid. It consists of a number of terpenes, one of which is the pure substance known as terebene. Its odor is more pleasant than that of turpentine oil, which it closely resembles in most other points. It does not cause any rotation of a ray of polarized light.

Terpini Hydras (U. S. P.), terpin hydrate, is a crystalline substance ($C_{10}H_{16}(OH)_2 + H_2O$) derived from oil of turpentine by the action of nitric acid in the presence of alcohol and water. It possesses almost no odor, is insoluble in water, and melts at about 116° C.

Sabina (U. S. P.), the tops of Juniperus sabina, savine, contains as its active principle Ol. Sabinæ, a volatile oil which resembles that of turpentine in many respects, but is not identical with it.

Oleum Juniperi (U. S. P., B. P.), oil of Juniper, is derived from the juniper berries and consists mainly of terpenes. Dose, 0.03–0.2 c.c. (½–3 mins.).
Spiritus Juniperi (U. S. P., B. P.), 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.).
Spiritus Juniperi Compositus (U. S. P.), 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

In addition to these preparations the following may be mentioned here as possessing similar action and uses.

Linimentum Chloroformi (U. S. P., B. P.).
Linimentum Camphoræ (U. S. P., B. P.).
Linimentum Camphoræ Ammoniatum (B. P.).
Linimentum Saponis (U. S. P., B. P.), very slightly irritant.
Emplastrum Arnicæ (U. S. P.).
Ceratum Camphoræ (U. S. P.).

Therapeutic Uses.—Turpentine oil is used externally as a rubefacient, and differs from mustard and cantharidin in its greater penetrating power. It is not so irritant, however; it blisters only after long application, and the vesication produced is very painful and heals slowly, from the vapor penetrating into the deeper tissues. It is, therefore, employed to produce rubefaction only, and ought to be removed when this is attained. For this purpose any of the liniments of the group may be employed, or a more intense action may be got from the "turpentine stupe," which is made by dipping flannel in hot water, wringing it dry, and then dropping warm turpentine oil on it.[1] Turpentine preparations are used especially in rheumatic affections of the joints or muscles, and in sciatica. The oleoresins may be formed into ointments, or plasters, and used as feeble stimulants in skin diseases. Turpentine oil is a fairly strong antiseptic, and is less irritant than many of the more powerful ones. It is often inhaled in lung diseases such as tuberculosis or gangrene, and has the effect of lessening the odor in the latter; the oil may be simply allowed to evaporate, but is much more efficient when sprayed into the air. Many of the resorts for phthisical patients are stated to be rendered especially suitable for the treatment of this disease by the neighborhood of coniferous forests, which are supposed to dissipate the oils into the atmosphere; but this is probably only an insignificant factor in the treatment. Turpentine

[1] Alcohol has recently been applied in a similar way in phlegmon and other forms of inflammation. Gauze is soaked in alcohol (60–96 per cent.), wrung out, wound round the affected part and covered with cotton and oil-cloth.

oil is occasionally added to baths in order to cause a slight general stimulation of the skin, which may be of benefit in some skin diseases and also in general debility under certain conditions; and pine-needle baths have some reputation in Germany for the same reason, the water being supposed to extract the oil.

Internally, turpentine oil is occasionally employed as a vermifuge, but is inferior to other preparations used for this purpose. A few drops are often added to purgative enemata to increase their efficiency. It has been given by the mouth in order to lessen flatulence and to disinfect the intestine in various diseases, among others, typhoid fever, although its value here is disputed. Preparations of turpentine oil and juniper are reliable and fairly powerful diuretics, but must not be prescribed in irritation of the kidney. The turpentine preparations have a certain reputation as expectorants, and terebene has been especially advised for this purpose; they are also given internally as pulmonary disinfectants. In some forms of neuralgia their internal administration has been found beneficial, and oil of turpentine has been used in internal hemorrhage, but with doubtful results.

Oil of turpentine was formerly believed to form ozone when it had been long exposed to the air, and old oil of turpentine was therefore recommended in cases of phosphorus poisoning, as it was supposed that it would oxidize the phosphorus in the stomach and thus render it innocuous. Recent investigators have, however, failed to detect ozone or peroxide of hydrogen in turpentine, and have not been able to confirm the older statements regarding its efficacy in phosphorus poisoning.

BIBLIOGRAPHY. (See page 72.)

Along with these may be mentioned a series of resins which have some slight irritating effect on the skin, and have been used in the treatment of skin diseases.

Resina (U. S. P., B. P.), resin, colophony, is the residue left after distilling off the volatile oil from turpentine.

Ceratum Resinæ (U. S. P.).

Emplastrum Resinæ (U. S. P., B. P.), adhesive plaster.

Unguentum Resinæ (B. P.).

Galbanum (B. P.), a gumresin obtained from Ferula galbaniflua and probably from other species. It contains some volatile oil, gums and resin. Dose, 5–15 grs.

Pilula Galbani Composita (see Asafœtida).

Ammoniacum (U. S. P., B. P.), a gumresin obtained from Dorema Ammoniacum, and containing a small quantity of a volatile oil with an unpleasant odor.

Emplastrum Ammoniaci et Hydrargyri (U. S. P., B. P.).

Emulsum Ammoniaci (U. S. P.), 15–30 c.c. (½–1 fl. oz.).

Mistura Ammoniaci (B. P.), ½–1 fl. oz.

Guaiaci Lignum (U. S. P., B. P.), the heart-wood of Guaiacum officinale.

Guaiaci Resina (U. S. P., B. P.), the resin obtained from Guaiacum officinale, contains several resinous acids, some volatile oil and gums. It is colored deep blue by oxidizing agents.

Tinctura Guaiaci (U. S. P.), 4 c.c. (1 fl. dr.).

Tinctura Guaiaci Ammoniata (U. S. P., B. P.), 2–4 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

Mistura Guaiaci (B. P.), ½–1 fl. oz.

Trochiscus Guaiaci Resinæ (B. P.), each containing 3 grs.

Elemi resin (not official) is obtained from a number of trees of the order Burseraceæ, and contains volatile oil and resins.

Unguentum Elemi (not official).

Myrrha (U. S. P., B. P.), a gumresin obtained from Commiphora Myrrha (U. S. P.), from Balsamodendron Myrrha (B. P.), containing a small quantity of volatile oil.

Tinctura Myrrhæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 2–4 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

Pilulæ Aloes et Myrrhæ (U. S. P., B. P.).

Tinctura Aloes et Myrrhæ (U. S. P.).

Mistura Ferri Composita (U. S. P.).

Many other resins have been used in therapeutics, but have been abanboned, a fate by which these survivors seem to be threatened. They are occasionally used externally as mild irritant applications in skin affections. Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Guaiacum and Myrrh have been used internally for many different purposes, as expectorants, diaphoretics, diuretics, aperients, and have enjoyed a reputation in the treatment of amenorrhœa. They may be used to suspend insoluble bodies, as the gum contained causes them to form emulsions when water is added.

II. Mustard.

Mustard occurs in two forms in the pharmacopœias, Black Mustard, Sinapis nigra, and White Mustard, Sinapis alba. Black Mustard contains a glucoside, *Potassium Myronate* or *Sinigrin*, and a ferment, *Myrosin*, which decomposes it in the presence of water into dextrose, potassium bisulphate and allyl-isosulphocyanate or volatile oil of mustard.

Sinigrin. Volatile oil.

$$C_{10}H_{18}KNS_2O_{10} = CSNC_3H_5 + C_6H_{12}O_6 + KHSO_4$$

Volatile oil of mustard is formed in various other Cruciferæ when they are mixed with water. Thus horseradish root (Armoracia, B. P.) contains it, while the allied species Cochlearia officinalis apparently contains the corresponding isobutyl compound. Garlic (Allium, U. S. P.) is also believed to contain a small quantity of mustard oil, although this is disputed; in any case, the amount is too small to induce much irritation, although garlic poultices are sometimes employed in domestic medicine.

White mustard contains another glucoside, *Sinalbin*, which is also decomposed by the *Myrosin* in the presence of water. The products are entirely different, however, dextrose, sulphate of sinapine (an alkaloid), and an oil of mustard containing an aromatic nucleus being formed.

Sinalbin. Oil of Mustard. Sinapine Sulphate.

$$C_{30}H_{44}N_2S_2O_{16} = C_6H_4(OH)CH_2NCS + C_{16}H_{23}NO_5H_2SO_4 + C_6H_{12}O_6$$

The oil of white mustard differs from that of the black in being less irritant, and in being destroyed by heat.

Action.—Either of these oils is intensely irritant when applied to the skin, and if left long enough produces blistering, which is more painful than that caused by cantharides, and is said to heal less readily. This is probably due to the oils penetrating more deeply into the tissues, and thus setting up more extensive inflammation. Mustard is accord-

ingly used only to induce rubefaction, and ought to be removed before actual vesication occurs. When the crude drug is moistened and applied to the skin, the oil is formed only slowly, so that the longer it remains applied, the more intense is the action. The glucosides in themselves have little or no action, and the products of their decomposition are harmless, with the exception of the oils.

Preparations.

Sinapis Alba (U. S. P.), **Sinapis Albæ Semina** (B. P.), the dried ripe seeds of Brassica alba.

Sinapis Nigra (U. S. P.), **Sinapis Nigræ Semina** (B. P.), the dried ripe seeds of Brassica nigra.

Sinapis (B. P.), a mixture of the powdered seeds.

Charta Sinapis (U. S. P., B. P.), mustard powder rendered adhesive by India-rubber, applied to sheets of paper and dried. The U. S. P. preparation is formed from the black mustard, the B. P. from a mixture of the two.

Oleum Sinapis Volatile (U. S. P., B. P.), derived from black mustard.

Linimentum Sinapis (B. P.), formed from volatile oil of mustard, camphor and castor oil.

Linimentum Sinapis Compositum (U. S. P.), contains volatile oil of mustard, mezereum and camphor.

Uses.—Mustard is largely used as a condiment and to promote appetite, but is never prescribed for this purpose. In large quantities it causes violent irritation of the stomach and bowel, with vomiting, purging, acute pain and tenderness in the abdomen, and collapse. Mustard and warm water is a convenient emetic in emergencies, as in cases of poisoning.

The plaster or leaf (charta) is the form in which it is generally used in therapeutics. It contains the glucoside, which is slowly decomposed by the ferment when the plaster is dipped in warm water for a few minutes before application. Another popular application is the mustard poultice, in which powdered mustard is sprinkled on an ordinary poultice. Mustard is also added to baths occasionally when slight irritation and consequent congestion is desired over a large surface. For this purpose 2–4 teaspoonfuls of the dry powder are added for each gallon of water. In preparations of mustard it is important to avoid a temperature of over 60° C. (140° F.), as the ferment is destroyed above this. The plaster is left on the skin only for 15 to 30 minutes, when it is used as a rubefacient.

Thiosinamine ($CSNH_2NHC_3H_5$) is formed from volatile oil of mustard by the action of ammonia and alcohol, and has been advised to remove the scar tissue left after lupus and extensive burns of the skin. It is applied as a plaster or injected dissolved in 2 parts of glycerine and 8 of water. The action has not been explained, but is said not to be due to inflammation.

III. Cantharidin Series.

Another series of local irritants comprises non-volatile substances, of which cantharidin is the best known. It is the anhydride of cantharidic acid, which does not exist itself, but the salts of which are

formed from cantharidin by the action of bases. Cantharidin is represented by $C_{10}H_{12}O_4$, and is a derivative of benzol. Its action on the central nervous system resembles, it is stated, that of the other members of that series, but is of no importance in comparison with its local irritant effects. Cantharidin is found in Spanish fly (Cantharis vesicatoria, or Lytta vesicatoria) and in several allied species of Coleoptera (beetles).

Action.—The irritant action of cantharidin and of many other drugs was formerly supposed to be due to its being an anhydride, but other anhydrides have no such specific action, and the cantharidates are quite as powerful as cantharidin.

Animals vary very considerably in the degree in which they react to cantharidin, the most noted example being the hedgehog, which is capable of surviving a dose of the poison sufficient to poison an adult man. Fowls and rabbits also possess a high degree of congenital tolerance for this poison, although none of these is absolutely insusceptible to it.

Applied to the *skin*, cantharidin produces redness, smarting and pain, followed very soon by small vesicles, which later coalesce into one large blister. This is much less painful than the vesication produced by mustard, because less of the irritant penetrates into the deeper tissues than in the case of the volatile mustard oil. If the blister be broken, however, and the unprotected dermis be allowed to come in contact with the irritant, violent inflammation with much pain, suppuration and even sloughing may follow.

When large quantities of cantharidin are given *internally*, the same irritant action takes place along the alimentary tract. If taken in solution, blisters arise in the mouth and throat, and the pain and swelling in the œsophagus may be so acute as to prevent swallowing. The irritation of the stomach produces vomiting, followed by purging with excruciating pain in the abdomen, and all the symptoms of shock and collapse.

Cantharidin is absorbed from the alimentary canal, and also to a less extent from the skin, but has no important action on the internal organs, with the exception of those by which it is eliminated. The heart is often accelerated in poisoning in animals, but has been slowed in some cases in man, while in others it was rapid and feeble. The respiration becomes rapid and dyspnœic some time before death, and some confusion, deepening into coma and convulsions, indicate a specific action on the central nervous system. Vomiting also occurs on subcutaneous injection, but the presence of ulceration of the stomach and of diarrhœa when it is absorbed from the skin, indicates that some of the poison is excreted into the alimentary tract, and the vomiting in these cases may therefore be of peripheral rather than of central origin. In the process of excretion, cantharidin has the same effects on the organs involved as on those of absorption. These effects are seen only in the genito-urinary tract in the vast majority of cases of poisoning. Comparatively small quantities irritate the bladder, and cause a

Irritation of Bladder - Nephritis -

constant desire to micturate, with pain in doing so. In somewhat larger amount it sets up an acute nephritis with albuminuria, pain in the kidney region, and sometimes blood in the urine. The inflammation of the bladder and urethra produces intense pain and often priapism; in women abortion is said to occur occasionally, and in both sexes the irritation may lead to increased sexual desire.

The irritation of the kidneys by small doses increases their secretion, and cantharides was therefore considered a diuretic formerly. The tendency to produce nephritis renders it a dangerous internal remedy, however, and its diuretic power is quite insignificant in comparison with that of caffeine.

Preparations.

Cantharis (U. S. P., B. P.), Spanish Fly, the dried beetle, Cantharis vesicatoria.

Ceratum Cantharidis (U. S. P.).

Collodium Cantharidatum (U. S. P.).

Tinctura Cantharidis (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.1–0.3 c.c. (2–5 mins.).

Emplastrum Picis Cantharidatum (U. S. P.), formed by the mixture of the cerate with Burgundy pitch. It is much less irritant than the cerate, but sometimes produces blistering, if applied for a long time.

Emplastrum Cantharidis (B. P.).

Emplastrum Calefaciens (B. P.), warming plaster.

Acetum Cantharidis (B. P.).

Unguentum Cantharidis (B. P.).

Collodium Vesicans (B. P.).

Liquor Epispasticus (B. P.).

Therapeutic Uses.—Cantharides is at present used almost exclusively as a skin irritant, and more particularly as a vesicant. In the United States the cerate is generally used for this purpose, and is applied to the skin by means of adhesive plaster; the corresponding preparation of the B. P. is the cantharides plaster. It is to be noted that, in order to produce actual blistering, the plaster has to remain in contact with the skin some 8–10 hours, but an equal effect may be achieved by replacing the plaster by a hot poultice after 4–6 hours, when the skin irritation has reached the stage of redness. Cantharides is also used to cause rubefaction and commencing vesication (flying blister); this may be done by the use of these preparations, or by means of the cantharidated pitch plaster, U. S. P., or the warming plaster, B. P. Blistering collodion is used rarely in unmanageable cases, in which there is a risk of the plaster being removed by the patient. The ointment is said to induce blistering sooner than the plaster.

Cantharidin is liable to be absorbed from the skin, and its application is therefore avoided where there is any tendency to renal inflammation.

Cantharides has been used not infrequently as an aphrodisiac, and several cases of poisoning have occurred from its administration for this purpose. In cattle it is largely employed to this end in some countries, and in man it has undoubtedly similar effects in some cases through the irritation of the bladder and urethra, but its use for this

purpose is always liable to produce nephritis. As an emmenagogue, cantharides has a certain popular reputation, which however has been shown to be unmerited, any influence which it may possess on the menstrual flow being quite insignificant, and probably due only to the irritation of the bladder and urethra.

Cantharides has been advised internally in some forms of renal and vesical disease, but it is an exceedingly dangerous remedy in these conditions. In 1891, Liebreich proposed the treatment of tuberculous affections with cantharidinates, in the belief that these would cause an inflammatory reaction around the diseased nodules, and would thus lead to their being destroyed or encapsuled in cicatricial tissue. It has not been determined whether cantharidin acts more powerfully on irritated tissues, such as those around the tubercles, but experience has shown that no benefit followed Liebreich's treatment, while in several cases severe nephritis resulted from the injection, and the method has therefore fallen into disuse.

Cantharides is sometimes a constituent of hair washes, its irritant action on the skin being credited with causing a more rapid growth of the hair.

In cases of **Poisoning** with cantharides, the stomach ought to be emptied as rapidly as possible by the stomach tube, provided the œsophagus allows of its passage. Demulcents and albuminous substances are of use in slowing the absorption, but all oily or fatty bodies must be avoided, as they tend to dissolve the cantharidin and thus promote its absorption. Opium may be given for the pain, and if collapse sets in, the ordinary measures must be taken to combat it.

Poison Ivy and Poison Oak.—The commonest form of poisoning in the United States is the skin eruption produced by the leaves of poison ivy and poison oak (Rhus toxicodendron and venenata) which Pfaff has recently shown to be due to the presence of a neutral body, *Toxicodendrol*, resembling closely the other members of this group. The effects of poison ivy can arise only from touching the plant, the poisonous principle not being volatile. Very minute quantities of toxicodendrol are sufficient to produce skin eruptions, however, $\frac{1}{1000}$ mg. causing distinct symptoms in susceptible persons. The popular belief that skin affections can be induced by approaching the plant, without actually touching it, is probably accounted for by the facts that the eruption may be very late in making its appearance, and that poison ivy is very frequently mistaken for harmless climbing plants.

In the dermatitis from poison ivy, Pfaff recommends that the skin be washed and scrubbed with soap and water, or with alcohol, or a solution of lead acetate in alcohol. Ointments and oily liniments are to be avoided, as they dissolve the toxicodendrol and tend to spread it over the skin and thus produce further inflammation. For the same reason, the alcohol used to wash the part must be removed entirely, as the poisonous principle is soluble in it, while insoluble in water.

Several little known substances may be classed along with cantharidin, which they resemble in their violently irritating effects on the skin and mucous membranes, and in being non-volatile. They are of little importance in therapeutics, but not infrequently give rise to accidental poisoning.

A number of the Ranunculaceæ order are irritants, and this has been believed to be due to their containing *Anemonin*, $C_{10}H_8O_4$, which is closely connected to cantharidin in its chemical structure, but this has been disputed recently by Brondgeest, who asserts that this body is a convulsive poison. Noel and Lambert also state that anemonin is not the irritant contained in Anemone pulsatilla, which owes its irritant effects to some other more poisonous constituent. In Mezereum, Buchheim found an anhydride which he termed *Mezerein*, but Springenfeldt states that the action is due to an oil and to the acid which it contains, which resemble croton oil and crotonoleic acid in their effects. *Cardol*, found in the fruits of Anacardium occidentale and in Semecarpus anacardium, is a very powerful irritant, and has been used to a limited extent as a vesicant. Cardol is probably a mixture of a number of sub-tances, but it is unknown to which of these it owes its activity. *Euphorbin* is said by Buchheim to be the irritant principle in the Euphorbia resin (Euphorbia resinifera, etc.), and to resemble cantharidin in its anhydride form, but the salts and the euphorbic acid which is formed from them by acids are inactive, while the salts of cantharidic acid are irritant, and cantharidin is reformed when they are broken up by acids. A very poisonous member of the Euphorbiaceæ is the Manicheel tree, growing in the West Indies, and it apparently belongs to this series.

Capsicum contains one or more non volatile irritant substances which probably resemble the principles of this series more closely than any other. Capsicum is used in small quantities internally and has therefore been mentioned along with the pepper series, but it is also used occasionally as a skin irritant. Pepper is also used as a rubefacient in domestic medicine.

Chaulmoogra Oil, obtained from Gynocardia odorata, is apparently similar in character to the members of this group, although it is less irritant. It is used externally as an application to bruises, and both externally and internally in leprosy, although it is probably of little avail in this disease. It is said to owe its activity to *Gynocardic acid*, which it contains in combination with glycerin. Croton oil is also used as a skin irritant, but will be treated of in connection with the purgatives (page 99).

Many other plants possess irritant, poisonous properties, which would apparently entitle them to a place in this series, but so little is known of their active principles and of their effects, that they may be omitted for the present.

Preparations.

Mezereum (U. S. P.), **Mezerei Cortex** (B. P.), the bark of Daphne mezereum and of other species.

Extractum Mezerei Fluidum (U. S. P.).

Mezereum is also contained in several of the sarsaparilla preparations (U. S. P.).

Rhus Toxicodendron, poison ivy, the fresh leaves of Rhus radicans (U. S. P.).

Capsicum (U. S. P., B. P.).

Emplastrum Capsici (U. S. P.).

Unguentum Capsici (B. P.).

(For the other preparations of Capsicum see page 73.)

Pulsatilla (U. S. P.), the herb Anemone pulsatilla and A. pratensis.

Bibliography.

Radecki. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1866.
Aufrecht. Centralbl. f. med. Wissensch., 1882, pp. 545, 849.
Eliaschoff. Virchow's Arch., xciv., p. 323.
Liebreich. Therap. Monatsheft, 1891, p. 169; 1892, p. 294; 1895, p. 167.
Buchheim. Arch. d. Heilkunde, xiii., p. 1.
Cornil. Comptes rendus de l'acad., civ., p. 1875.
Lewin. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1901, p. 184.

Pfaff. Journ. of Exp. Med., ii., p. 181. (Toxicodendrol.)
Springenfeldt. Inaug. Dis., Dorpat, 1890. (Mezereum.)
Brondgeest. Schmidt's Jahrbuch, ccxx., p. 131. (Anemonin.)
Noel and Lambert. Arch. de Pharmacodynamique, iv., p. 169. (Pulsatilla and anemonin.)

VII. VEGETABLE PURGATIVES.

Purgatives are drugs which are employed in medicine to evacuate the bowel of its contents. Many drugs produce evacuation in the course of their action, but have other effects of importance and are not included in this class. Thus the members of the preceding classes of skin irritants induce diarrhœa, but this is accompanied by irritation of the mouth, throat and stomach, and in many other forms of poisoning, diarrhœa is a prominent feature, but is accompanied by vomiting or some other symptom. The ideal purgative is devoid of any effects whatsoever, save in the intestine; it passes through the stomach without materially deranging its function, and is not absorbed, or at any rate is absorbed so slowly that it has time to unfold its action throughout the intestine. The vegetable purgatives act through their irritant properties, which in some instances are elicited only by the action of the secretion of the intestines and of the neighboring glands. Thus some of the purgatives pass through the stomach in the form of bland, non-irritant compounds (castor oil), which are broken up by the digestive processes in the intestine, while others perhaps owe their activity in the intestine to their solution or suspension in the juices.

Many classifications of the purgatives have been based on their effects, and some of the terms are still retained, such as *aperient, eccoprotic, laxative, purgative, cholagogue, hydragogue, cathartic or drastic.* But the effect of the purgatives is determined largely by the dose and by the condition of the intestine, so that a small dose may act as an aperient, laxative or eccoprotic, while a larger quantity of the same drug, or even the same dose in a more susceptible individual, may act as a drastic or hydragogue cathartic. It is, therefore, preferable to classify them according to their chemical nature as far as that is known, and in this way three classes may be formed, (1) purgative oils, (2) purgatives of the anthracene series, (3) the jalapin and colocynthin group.

Symptoms.—In moderate doses the purgatives simply hasten the normal movements of the intestines, and the stool is of the ordinary appearance and consistency (laxative, aperient, or eccoprotic action). In larger quantities they cause a more profuse evacuation than normally, and the stools, which are repeated at short intervals, are of a looser, more fluid consistency. Their action is accompanied by considerable pain and colic, and the hurried movements of the intestine are shown by the characteristic gurgling sounds. Large quantities of the more powerful purgatives may cause all the symptoms of acute enteritis; the stools at first contain the ordinary fæcal substances accompanied by more fluid than usual, but later consists largely of blood-stained mucous fluid with little or no resemblance to ordinary fæces. This violent purgation, which is not induced in therapeutics, is accompanied

by pain and tenderness in the abdomen, and may induce shock, collapse and eventually death.

Action.—The origin of the fluid of the stools after purgatives has been much debated. According to many authors, they accelerate the passage of the intestinal contents so much that there is no time for the absorption of the fluid, and the fæces escape in the fluid condition in which they normally exist in the small intestine. Other investigators hold that purgatives cause fluid to pass into the intestine, either by increasing the normal secretions, or by causing an inflammatory exudate from the vessels. Both parties have founded, or attempted to confirm their statements by the results of the injection of the purgatives into loops of intestine isolated from the rest of the bowel. In these, some observers (Brunton, Roy) have found a larger accumulation of fluid after the injection of the purgatives, while others (Thiry, Radziejewski) found no more fluid after purgatives than after indifferent fluids. These contradictory results are probably due to the methods adopted, and the quantity of the drug injected. In small quantities, such as are used in the vast majority of cases in therapeutics, the irritation produced by the purgatives is probably only enough to accelerate peristalsis somewhat, and the fluid of the stools is drawn partly from the food and partly from the ordinary secretions of the digestive organs. In these cases the intestine is not actually inflamed, although some congestion may occur in it, as in all organs in a state of abnormal activity. On the other hand, when large quantities are ingested a true inflammation of the intestine occurs, manifested by increased movement, congestion, the exudation of fluid into the lumen of the bowel, and pain. In these cases the intestine presents the usual signs of inflammation; it is red and congested, and contains a muco-purulent fluid and often blood. The matter, therefore resolves itself into a question of dose; if it be small, the fluid is not an exudate, if it be large the fluid is partly an inflammatory product. No very distinct difference exists between the stools produced by purgatives and the normal fæces except in the larger proportion of water and of sodium. The excess of the latter has been explained by some as due to the exudation of serum, by others as the effect of the rapid evacuation, which prevents the normal absorption of the bile, pancreatic and intestinal secretions.

The colic produced by purgatives is not due to the inflammation of the intestinal wall, but is probably explained by the more vigorous contractions of the walls of the bowel and the difficulty in forcing on hard fæcal masses in the large intestine. The tenderness produced by large quantities of the purgatives, on the other hand, would seem to indicate inflammation.

A further question is whether a purgative must come in contact with the whole bowel, or whether irritation set up at one particular spot does not cause peristaltic waves through the whole intestine and induce evacuation. Radziejewski maintains that purgation may be effected by drugs in the stomach without their entering the bowel at all,

and supposes that this is a reflex action. This view would be in accord with the statements of Traube and Wood, that division of the vagi hinders or entirely prevents the action of some purgatives, and, on the other hand, with the fact that the bowels may be emptied by enemata, which are too small to reach the colon. Radziejewski's results, however, might be explained by the drugs in his experiments having been absorbed in the stomach, and afterwards excreted in the intestine, and thus producing irritation, while Traube and Wood's experiments require confirmation, as the action of purgatives on animals is often very variable. The drug given by enema may be absorbed from the rectum and excreted in the upper part of the intestine, although this is improbable. On the other hand, Hess found that when the bowel was occluded by an india-rubber ball, purgatives applied above the ball failed to induce evacuation of the bowel, and he therefore concludes that they produce purgation only when they are brought in contact with the large intestine, and that irritation of one part cannot induce activity of another by either nervous or muscular conduction. This would seem to be confirmed in cases of artificial anus, in which purges given by the mouth have no effect upon that part of the bowel lying between the natural and the artificial opening. The question cannot be said to be decided, and requires further investigation, although the probability seems great that the purgatives cause evacuation only when they come into direct contact with a large part or the whole of the intestinal wall.

Purgatives given by the mouth accelerate the movements of both the small and large intestine. In constipation, however, there seems no reason to suppose that the food is retarded in its passage through the small bowel. The delay takes place in the colon, and it is in removing the sluggishness of the latter that purgatives are beneficial.

The action of the purgatives is generally considered purely local, and strictly analogous to that of the skin-irritants. The irritation of the epithelium and of the nerve ends leads to increased activity of the deeper layers, which manifests itself in the bowel by contraction of the muscle, in the skin by vesication. But some of the purgatives seem to have a further action, which is of a more specific nature. Thus senna, aloin, frangulin, and colocynthin cause evacuation of the bowel when injected subcutaneously or into the blood, podophyllum resin causes violent purging and vomiting when thus administered, and croton oil has long been rubbed on the skin in order to relieve constipation, and is found to cause intestinal inflammation and purging when injected intravenously. It has accordingly been suggested that these have a specific action on the bowel quite apart from their irritant effects; but it is quite possible that their intestinal effects are here due to their excretion into the bowel, which has been shown to occur in several instances. Other irritants applied subcutaneously or intravenously often produce similar effects on the alimentary canal.

The interval which elapses between the administration of a purgative and its effects varies with the dose, and also with the individual

drug. In ordinary therapeutic doses, evacuation of the bowels occurs in most cases in 5–10 hours, but if large quantities of the more powerful purges, such as jalap or croton oil, be given, the effects may be elicited in two hours. Aloes and podophyllum differ from the others in the length of the interval, catharsis rarely or never occurring earlier than 10–12 hours after their administration, and often only after 20–24 hours.

The movement of the intestine induced by purgatives is accompanied by an increase in the leucocytes of the blood similar to that observed in other forms of intestinal activity, *e. g.*, during digestion.

The effects of the purgatives vary greatly in different animals. Thus, the rabbit is very refractory to most of the series, and often is killed by intestinal irritation without any evacuation being produced. The frog is unaffected by quantities which would produce poisoning in man, while the dog and cat respond much more readily.

It was formerly supposed that purgatives increased the secretion of bile, and certain of them, which were believed to have a special activity in this direction, were known as *Cholagogues*. It has been shown of recent years that none of them possesses any action on the secretion of bile, although they may increase its excretion by hurrying it through the intestine and preventing its reabsorption. On the other hand, the presence of bile in the intestine is a condition necessary to the activity of many of the purgatives. Thus Buchheim and Stadelmann found that in the absence of bile the following purgatives are either quite inactive or very much less powerful than usual—podophyllin and podophyllotoxin, resin of jalap, convolvulin, resin of scammony, rhubarb, cathartic acid, and the sodium salt of gambogic acid. This is probably due to some solvent action of the bile, for Stadelmann found that when soaps were given with some of these drugs their activity returned, and in other cases a comparatively slight modification of their chemical form was sufficient to restore their activity, even in the absence of either bile or soap. Analogous results have been observed from other causes than the absence of bile; thus some of the pure principles of the purgatives are much less active than the crude drugs because the impurities of the latter alter their solubility. This alteration of the solubility may act in two ways: if the principle is rendered too soluble, it may be absorbed in the stomach and upper part of the bowel, and therefore fail to produce purgation; on the other hand, it may be rendered so insoluble that it fails to come into intimate contact with the bowel wall, and therefore does not irritate it. The effects of such colloid substances as the bile and the gums of gamboge would be to delay the absorption of soluble substances in the upper part of the bowel, and at the same time to keep the insoluble resins in suspension.

Few of the purgatives have any appreciable action after absorption, but general effects may be produced indirectly from their intestinal action. It is probable that reflexes are elicited by irritation of the bowel analogous to those discussed under skin irritants, but in addition, the congestion of the bowel produced by its activity must alter con-

siderably the distribution of the blood in the body. The belief in the efficacy of a purge in congestion of the brain may thus be based on a true "revulsive" action; for the dilation of the intestinal vessels must necessarily lessen the blood pressure and thereby the blood supply to the brain. The congestion of the intestine is accompanied by a similar condition in the other pelvic organs, and the purgatives therefore often cause congestion of the uterus, with excessive menstrual flow, or in the case of pregnant women, abortion. Lastly, a certain amount of fluid is withdrawn which would otherwise be excreted by the urine, which is found to be proportionately diminished in amount.

1. The Purgative Oils.

Two very important members of the purgative series are *Castor oil* (Oleum Ricini), and *Croton oil* (Oleum Tiglii or Crotonis).[1] Castor oil consists almost entirely of an oil which resembles olive oil in most respects, but on saponification forms ricinoleic acid instead of oleic acid. This acid ($C_{17}H_{32}(OH)COOH$) differs from the fatty acids obtained from ordinary oils in being unsaturated and in containing a hydroxyl group. Castor oil is itself a bland, non-irritating fluid, but on passing into the intestine is decomposed by the digestive juices, and the ricinoleates thus formed are irritant and cause purgation. When the oil is saponified, and the free acid given by the mouth, the effects are quite different from those of the oil, for the taste is acrid and unpleasant, and discomfort, nausea and vomiting may follow its ingestion from its irritant action on the stomach. The oil, on the other hand, has a bland, if unpleasant, taste, and produces no effects on the stomach. Several other esters of ricinoleic acid have been shown by Meyer to resemble the glycerin ester (castor oil) in their purgative effects.

Croton oil is decomposed into glycerin and crotonoleic acid, of which little is known except that it is similar to ricinoleic acid from a chemical point of view. It differs from it in the fact that crotonoleic acid is a much more irritant body, and in that some acid is found free in the oil. This free acid renders croton oil irritant before it reaches the intestine, although the same process goes on here as in castor oil, and the croton oil therefore becomes more irritant than elsewhere. On the skin, and in the throat and stomach, croton oil exerts its irritant action, but these effects may be avoided while it continues to act as a purgative, if the free acid be removed. Croton oil then becomes bland and non-irritant, and can be distinguished from castor oil only by its more powerful purgative action. Castor oil is absorbed from the intestine and disappears in the tissues in the same way as an ordinary oil. Nothing is known with certainty of the fate of croton oil in the body, but it is not unlikely that it is excreted in part into the large intestine. Both croton oil and castor oil are borne in much larger quantities by animals than

[1] Another plant containing a purgative oil is the Jatropha curcas, which bears the Barbadoes nuts, or purging nuts. It is somewhat weaker in its action than croton oil, and is said to be often substituted for it in specimens of croton oil obtained from India.

by man, and not infrequently the former causes acute enteritis without purgation.

Castor oil may be given in very large quantities without producing any symptoms, save those of a mild laxative. Croton oil, on the other hand, acts as an irritant poison in any save the smallest doses, producing vomiting and violent purging with bloody stools, collapse and death. Castor oil is occasionally used as an emollient to the skin, and has been employed as a solvent for application to the eye, while croton oil has already been mentioned among the skin irritants. The harmless nature of castor oil is shown by its use in China as an article of diet.

It was formerly a matter of dispute whether croton oil causes the formation of pus when injected subcutaneously, or whether the presence of microbes is necessary, but it seems unquestionable now that croton oil alone is capable of producing this effect, provided that it contains free crotonoleic acid. The contradictory results obtained by observers may be explained by the fact that croton oil occasionally contains very little free acid, and that the mammalian tissues are unable to saponify the oil save in the presence of the intestinal ferments. In the frog these ferments are present in the tissues, or perhaps the latter are capable of breaking up the oil, for Hirschheydt found that the neutral oil caused inflammation and hemorrhages in various parts of the body.

In the beans from which castor oil and croton oil are derived, toxalbumins are found, and these were at one time supposed to be the active principles of the oils. (See Ricin.) It has been shown, however, that the oils are entirely free from these poisons, and that their action is due solely to the acids of which they are glycerides.

Preparations.

Oleum Ricini (U. S. P., B. P.), a fixed oil expressed from the seed, or bean of Ricinus communis. Dose, 4–30 c.c. (1–8 fl. drs.).

Mistura Olei Ricini (B. P.), made up with cinnamon and orange flower water by means of mucilage, 1–2 fl. oz.

Oleum Tiglii (U. S P.), Oleum Crotonis (B. P.), a fixed oil expressed from the seed of Croton Tiglium. Dose, 0.02–0.05 c.c. ($\frac{1}{3}$–1 m.).

Castor oil is difficult to take owing to its unpleasant taste. It may be given alone, in an emulsion flavored with sugar and some volatile oil, in wine, spirits or glycerin, or in flexible capsules.

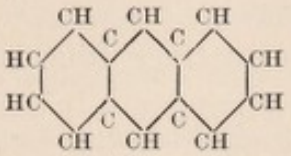
Croton oil is often given in a pill made up with bread crumb, or a single drop may be given on a lump of sugar or in solution in castor oil.

2. The Anthracene Purgatives.

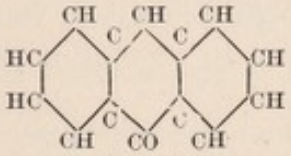
A number of purgatives, *Rhubarb*, *Senna*, *Aloes* and *Frangula*, owe their activity to the presence of irritant *anthracene* ($C_{14}H_{10}$) compounds, only a few of which have been isolated. The chemical examination of these drugs is a matter of great difficulty, as they each contain several active principles which are very nearly related to each other, and some of which are undoubtedly the products of the composition of more complex bodies. In addition, several of the pure substances have been found to be less certain in their purgative action than the

crude drugs, probably because the colloids in the latter aid in their solution.

All those which have been completely isolated hitherto have proved to be derivatives of anthraquinone,



Anthracene.



Anthraquinone.

and some of the oxyanthraquinones seem to be widely distributed. Thus all the members of the group contain *Emodin* or trioxymethylanthraquinone, ($C_{14}H_4(CH_3)(OH)_3O_2$), and rhubarb and senna contain *Chrysophanic acid* or dioxymethylanthraquinone, ($C_{14}H_5(CH_3)(OH)_2O_2$), while a nearly related body has been found in Frangula. It is still undecided whether the emodin found in different drugs is identical or merely isomeric, and the same may be said in regard to chrysophanic acid. In addition, a number of other anthracene bodies occur in these purgatives, some of them combined with sugars to form glucosides, but little is known regarding them, and it seems likely that some may prove to be impure emodin. Acid glucosides have been found in rhubarb, senna (*Cathartin* or *Cathartinic acid*) and in cascara and frangula (*Cathartin* and *Frangulin*). In the different species of aloes several *Aloins* (*Barbaloin* from Barbadoes aloes, *Socaloin* from Socotrine aloes, etc.) have been isolated.

Several of the pure principles have been used as purgatives, although they seem on the whole to be less certain in their effects than the crude drugs. *Chrysophanic acid* does not cause purgation, owing to its rapid absorption. *Frangulin* has given satisfactory results, and *Cathartin* has also been used experimentally, but is very liable to undergo decomposition. *Aloin* is less certain in its effects than aloes, and it seems to be indisputable that the crystalline aloin itself is inactive in the bowel, but is there changed under certain conditions to an amorphous compound which has irritant effects. This active substance can be prepared from aloin by boiling in water, and may be present in the amorphous resin left after the extraction of aloin. The purgative action of aloes is increased by the addition of small quantities of alkaline salts and of iron. The presence of bile in the intestine is necessary to elicit its full effects, and it is generally stated that enemata of aloes are inactive unless bile is injected with them, but Kohlstock found that the same results could be attained by dissolving aloin in glycerin. The latter produces evacuation when injected alone as an enema, it is true, but he used smaller quantities of it than are necessary for purgation, so that the rôle played by the bile is probably the same as that of glycerin—a purely solvent one.

The absorption of these bodies has not been satisfactorily determined in most cases. The urine is rendered yellow after rhubarb and senna, owing to the absorption and excretion of chrysophanic acid, but it is questionable whether the more active principles pass into the urine in appreciable amounts. When aloin is injected subcutaneously or intra-

venously, it is excreted for the main part into the bowel, and there produces irritation and catharsis. Cathartin and frangulin also act as purgatives when they are injected subcutaneously, probably because they are excreted into the bowel, although this has not as yet been investigated. The yellow pigment of the urine after rhubarb and senna becomes a purple red on the addition of alkalies[1]; the milk and skin also are said to assume a yellowish tinge from the presence of chrysophanic acid.

In the rabbit aloin seldom causes purgation, and is excreted by the kidney in considerable quantity, especially when injected hypodermically. In passing through this organ it causes marked irritation and epithelial necrosis, which often proves fatal in a few days. No irritation of the kidney occurs in man, the dog, or the cat after aloin.

Rhubarb contains a considerable amount of tannic acid, which acts as an astringent and therefore tends to cause constipation after the evacuation of the bowels. It is not well tolerated in some cases, its administration being followed by nausea, headache and giddiness, more rarely by skin eruptions of different kinds.

Preparations.

U. S. P.—**Rheum,** rhubarb, the root of Rheum officinale.

Extractum Rhei, 0.3–0.6 G. (5–10 grs.).

Extractum Rhei Fluidum, 1–2 c.c. (15–30 mins.).

Pilulæ Rhei (each contains 0.2 G. of rhubarb), 1–5 pills.

Pilulæ Rhei Compositæ (contain aloes, myrrh and oil of peppermint), 1–5 pills.

Pulvis Rhei Compositus (Gregory's Powder) contains magnesia and ginger. Dose, 1–4 G. (20–60 grs.).

Tinctura Rhei, 4–16 c.c. (1–4 fl. drs.).

Tinctura Rhei Aromatica (contains several volatile oils), 2–8 c.c. (½–2 fl. drs.).

Tinctura Rhei Dulcis (contains volatile oils and liquorice), 4–16 c.c. (1–4 fl. drs.).

Mistura Rhei et Sodæ (contains bicarbonate of soda, ipecac, peppermint and glycerin), 10–100 c.c. (2 fl. drs.–3 oz.).

Syrupus Rhei
Syrupus Rhei Aromaticus } Dose for child 4–10 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

B. P.—**Rhei Radix,** rhubarb root, the erect rhizome or so-called root of Rheum palmatum; 3–10 grs. for repeated administration; for a single administration, 15–30 grs.

Extractum Rhei, 2–8 grs.

Pilula Rhei Composita (contains rhubarb, Socotrine aloes, myrrh, and oil of peppermint), 4–8 grs.

Pulvis Rhei Compositus (Gregory's Powder) contains rhubarb, light magnesia and ginger, 20–60 grs.

Tinctura Rhei Composita, formed from rhubarb, cardamom and coriander, ½–1 fl. dr. for repeated administration; 2–4 fl. drs. for a single administration.

Syrupus Rhei, ½–2 fl. drs.

Infusum Rhei, ½–1 fl. oz.

Liquor Rhei Concentratus, ½–1 fl. dr.

U. S. P.—**Senna,** the leaflets of Cassia acutifolia (Alexandria Senna), and of Cassia angustifolia (India Senna).

[1] For the reactions required to distinguish chrysophanic acid in the urine from the pigment occurring in it after santonin, see page 124.

CONFECTIO SENNÆ contains senna, cassia fistula, tamarind, prune, fig, sugar, and oil of coriander, 4–8 G. (1–2 drs.).

Extractum Sennæ Fluidum, 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

INFUSUM SENNÆ COMPOSITUM (Black Draught) contains senna, manna, magnesium sulphate and fennel, 60–120 c.c. (2–4 fl. oz.).

SYRUPUS SENNÆ, 4–16 c.c. (1–4 fl. drs.).

Senna is also contained in the compound syrup of sarsaparilla and in the compound liquorice powder.

Senna is often administered as a simple infusion, senna tea, a teaspoonful of the leaves being used in a cupful of water.

B. P.—**Senna Alexandrina,** the dried leaflets of Cassia acutifolia.

Senna Indica, Tinnivelly senna, the dried leaflets of Cassia angustifolia.

TINCTURA SENNÆ COMPOSITA, formed from senna, raisins, caraway, and coriander, ½–1 fl. dr. for repeated administration; 2–4 fl. drs. for a single administration.

SYRUPUS SENNÆ, ½–2 fl. drs.

Liquor Sennæ Concentratus, ½–1 fl. dr.

INFUSUM SENNÆ, ½–1 fl. oz.; as a draught, 2 fl. oz.

MISTURA SENNÆ COMPOSITA (Black Draught), formed from magnesium sulphate, liquorice, compound tincture of cardamom, aromatic spirit of ammonia, and infusion of senna, ½–2 fl. oz.

CONFECTIO SENNÆ, formed of senna, coriander, figs, tamarinds, cassia, prunes, liquorice, and sugar, 60–120 grs.

U. S. P.—**Aloe Socotrina,** the inspissated juice of the leaves of Aloe Perryi.

Aloe Barbadensis, the inspissated juice of the leaves of Aloe vera.

The preparations of aloes are all formed from Socotrine Aloes.

Aloe Purificata, Socotrine aloes from which insoluble impurities have been removed, 0.1–0.5 G. (2–7 grs.).

Aloinum, either Barbaloin or Socaloin, 0.05–0.2 G. (1–4 grs.).

EXTRACTUM ALOES, 0.1–0.5 G. (2–7 grs.).

PILULÆ ALOES, 1–5 pills.

PILULÆ ALOES ET ASAFŒTIDÆ, 1–5 pills.

PILULÆ ALOES ET FERRI, 1–5 pills.

Pilulæ Aloes et Mastiches, 1–5 pills.

Pilulæ Aloes et Myrrhæ, 1–5 pills.

TINCTURA ALOES, 2–8 c.c. (½–2 fl. drs.).

Tinctura Aloes et Myrrhæ, 2–8 c.c. (½–2 fl. drs.).

Aloes is also contained in compound rhubarb pill, compound extract of colocynth and compound tincture of benzoin.

B. P.—**Aloe Barbadensis,** the juice of Aloe vera and other species, Barbadoes Aloes or Curaçoa Aloes, 2–5 grs.

Aloe Socotrina, the juice of Aloe Perryi, Socotrine or Zanzibar Aloes.

Aloinum, ½–2 grs.

EXTRACTUM ALOES, 1–4 grs.

PILULA ALOES, 4–8 grs.

Pilula Aloes Socotrinæ, 4–8 grs.

PILULA ALOES ET FERRI, 4–8 grs.

PILULA ALOES ET ASAFETIDÆ, 4–8 grs.

Pilula Aloes et Myrrhæ, 4–8 grs.

TINCTURA ALOES, ½–1 fl. dr. for repeated doses; for a single dose, 1½–2 fl. drs.

Decoctum Aloes Compositum (aloes, myrrh, saffron, potassium carbonate, liquorice, compound tincture of cardamom), ½–2 fl. oz.

Aloes is also contained in the compound extract of colocynth, compound colocynth pill, pill of colocynth and hyoscyamus, compound gamboge pill, compound tincture of benzoin and compound rhubarb pill. Some of the preparations are directed to be made from Socotrine, others from Barbadoes aloes, but there is really no difference in the effects.

U. S. P.—**Frangula,** Buckthorn, the bark of Rhamnus frangula, collected at least one year before being used.

Extractum Frangulæ Fluidum, 1–2 c.c. (15–30 mins.).

U. S. P.—**Rhamnus Purshiana**, Cascara sagrada, the bark of Rhamnus Purshiana.

Extractum Rhamni Purshianæ Fluidum, 1–2 c.c. (15–30 mins.).

B. P.—**Cascara Sagrada**, the dried bark of Rhamnus Purshianus.

Extractum Cascaræ Sagradæ, 2–8 grs.

Extractum Cascaræ Sagradæ Liquidum, ½–1 fl. dr.

Syrupus Cascaræ Sagradæ Aromaticus, ½–2 fl. drs.

An artificial compound, formed by combining a trioxyanthraquinone with acetic acid, has recently been introduced under the uninviting name of *purgatin*. It is quite insoluble in water and tasteless but is decomposed in the intestine and acts there like the other purgatives, to which it does not seem superior. Dose, 0.5–1.0 G. (8–15 grs.).

Of these numerous preparations, the most extensively prescribed are the pills. The fluid preparations have an unpleasant, bitter taste, and are therefore less used, unless when disguised by the addition of sugar or volatile oils. The syrups of rhubarb and senna are often administered to children, and the confection of senna and the compound liquorice powder are also pleasant, easily taken preparations. The compound infusion or mixture of senna and the compound rhubarb powder are old and tried preparations, in which the virtues of the vegetable purgative are combined with those of a saline cathartic and antacid respectively; they are both possessed of a harsh, unpleasant taste. Frangula is comparatively rarely used, but the fluid extract of cascara sagrada, which is practically identical with it, is a very popular remedy in habitual constipation.

Pure **Chrysophanic Acid** is not adapted for use as a purgative, as even in doses of 0.3 G. it fails to increase the peristalsis. A compound of chrysophanic acid, *Chrysarobin* ($C_{30}H_{26}O_7$), has found employment as an application in some forms of skin disease, especially in psoriasis, in which it is often of marked benefit. It is found in an impure form (Goa powder) in cavities in the Andira araroba, a tree growing in India and Brazil, and is isolated with comparative ease; it forms chrysophanic acid when it is oxidized. Chrysarobin is much more irritant than chrysophanic acid, and applied to the skin in a concentrated form, or in susceptible persons, causes itching, redness and swelling, less frequently papular or pustular eruptions; the skin and clothing are stained a reddish-brown color where it is applied. When swallowed, chrysarobin acts as a gastro-intestinal irritant, causing vomiting and purging; some of it is absorbed, and in its excretion by the kidneys causes in the rabbit nephritis with albumin and even blood in the urine. In man, slight albuminuria has been observed in some instances after its application to the skin; in animals the epithelium of the renal tubules has been found to be necrosed, the glomeruli being less frequently affected. It was anticipated that it would undergo oxidation to chrysophanic acid in the body, and this is true for a part of that absorbed, but most of it passes through the tissues unchanged.

Anthrarobin, an artificial derivative of alizarin, was advised at one time as a substitute for chrysarobin and chrysophanic acid in the treatment of psoriasis and other forms of skin disease, but its value has been disputed and it is comparatively seldom used now. Pyrogallol apparently acts in the same way in psoriasis as chrysarobin, and the effect has in each case been attributed to the withdrawal of the oxygen from the diseased skin.

Araroba (B. P.), or Goa powder, a substance found in cavities in the trunk of Andira araroba, free from fragments of wood, dried and powdered.

Chrysarobinum (B. P.), a substance obtained from Araroba by extracting with hot chloroform, and evaporating. It consists for the most part of chrysarobin, but contains some chrysophanic acid.

Unguentum Chrysarobini (B. P.), 4 per cent.

Chrysarobin is used in skin diseases, especially in psoriasis, in which it is applied in ointment. Chrysophanic acid might be used also for this purpose were its isolation not attended with such expense. Some confusion has arisen from chrysarobin having been at first supposed to be chrysophanic acid.

3. The Jalapin and Colocynthin Group.

The third group of the vegetable purgatives comprises a number of resinous bodies, from several of which Buchheim succeeded in forming acids by treatment with alkalies and afterwards with acids. He found most of the acids formed from these resins devoid of purgative action, and this led him to believe that the bodies existing in nature were anhydrides, and that their irritant effects were associated with their anhydride constitution. The chemistry of these bodies is still very obscure, however, and it is possible that the changes produced by his treatment do not consist only in hydration. On the other hand, some substances which Buchheim supposed inactive have proved to possess purgative properties. Thus Stadelmann found that the sodium salts of jalapinic and convolvulinic acids produce evacuation of the bowel in dogs, although nearly three times as much is required for this effect as of jalapin and convolvulin. It would seem, therefore, that Buchheim's explanation must be abandoned. A number of these bodies appear to be nearly related chemically, and it is possible that they, like those of the anthracene group, contain a common radical. In most instances these purgative substances are glucosides.

Jalap resin contains two anhydride glucosides, *Convolvulin* and *Jalapin*, the latter only in very small quantity. Scammony consists very largely of *Jalapin*. Squirting cucumber contains a resin (elaterium), the active principle of which is *Elaterin*, another anhydride of which little is known. Podophyllum contains two isomeric glucosides, *Podophyllotoxin* and *Picropodophyllin* ($C_{23}H_{24}O_9$). Gamboge owes its activity to *Cambogic acid*, which, however, is insoluble, and seldom acts unless it is accompanied by the inactive bodies of the crude drug. *Colocynthin* is a glucoside occurring in the colocynth fruit, and forms *Colocynthein* and sugar when treated with acids. Colocynthein is said to be even more irritant than colocynthin. Bryony contains two glucosides, *Bryonin* and *Bryonidin*, of which the latter is the more active. Leptandra owes its activity to a resinous glucoside, *Leptandrin*, euonymus to a glucoside, *Euonymin*. Many other plants contain similar resinous purgative substances, and some of these are used as remedies to some extent, but so little is known of their properties and they are so seldom employed that they may be omitted here.

Action. — These substances are in general much more powerful than any of the other purgatives except croton oil, and are therefore classed along with the latter as the drastic purgatives or hydragogue cathar-

tics. In small quantities they cause evacuation more rapidly than the anthracene purgatives, and in somewhat larger doses produce profuse watery stools with much pain and often tenesmus. In cases of poisoning, the bowel undergoes acute inflammation, and blood is passed in the stools, which often contain shreds of epithelium from the walls. The irritant action is not confined to the bowel apparently for their administration is sometimes followed by uneasiness in the stomach, and occasionally by nausea and vomiting. On the other hand, moderate quantities are said not to induce colic so frequently as some of the anthracene purges.

Several of these resinous purges are irritant to the skin and especially to the mucous membranes of the eye, nose and throat. Thus jalap, podophyllum and colocynthin all cause pain and irritation when they are applied to the nostrils in fine powder, and podophyllum has been used as a skin irritant.

The presence of bile in the intestine increases the purgative action of almost all these bodies, and in fact, seems absolutely necessary for the action of some of them.

Podophyllotoxin and colocynthin cause purgation when injected subcutaneously; this is probably owing to their excretion into the bowel, as the former has been detected in the fæces after this method of administration. Podophyllotoxin causes glomerular nephritis and hemorrhages into various organs when administered hypodermically or intravenously in large quantities, and when added to blood in a test-tube, it causes the formation of methæmoglobin in the corpuscles. It has been said to have a depressant action on the central nervous system, but this is probably a result of the shock and hemorrhage produced by its intestinal action. Colocynthin is said to cause renal inflammation when applied subcutaneously or taken internally, and even when the powder is inhaled during its manufacture. Jalapin and convolvulin given by the mouth cannot be found in the fæces or urine, and are therefore supposed to undergo partial or complete oxidation in the body. Convolvulin is found in the urine, however, when it is injected intravenously, and no purgation follows this method of administration; so that it is probable that convolvulin is decomposed in the bowel when it is administered internally.

Euonymin has the same effect on the heart as digitalis, and will be mentioned along with it, although it has a mild purgative action and is used chiefly as an aperient.

Preparations.

Colocynthis (U. S. P.), colocynth, the fruit of Citrullus Colocynthis deprived of its rind.

Colocynthidis Pulpa (B. P.), the dried pulp of the fruit of Citrullus Colocynthis freed from seeds.

Extractum Colocynthidis (U. S. P.), 0.1–0.3 G. (2–5 grs.).

Extractum Colocynthidis Compositum (U. S. P., B. P.) (containing colocynth, aloes, scammony and cardamom), 0.2–1 G. (3–15 grs.).

Colocynthin, 5–10 mg. (Not pharmacopœial.)

Pilulæ Catharticæ Compositæ (U. S. P.) (contain compound extract of colocynth, jalap, gamboge and calomel), 1 pill as laxative; 3 as drastic purgative.

Pilulæ Catharticæ Vegetabiles (U. S. P.) (contain compound extract of colocynth, Jalap, leptandra, podophyllum, hyoscyamus and oil of peppermint), 1 pill as laxative; 3 as drastic purgative.

Pilula Colocynthidis Composita (B. P.), colocynth, Barbadoes aloes, scammony resin, potassium sulphate and oil of cloves, 4–8 grs.

Pilula Colocynthidis et Hyoscyami (B. P.), compound pill of colocynth and extract of hyoscyamus, 4–8 grs.

Podophyllum (U. S. P.), **Podophylli Rhizoma** (B. P.), the rhizome and roots of Podophyllum peltatum.

Extractum Podophylli (U. S. P.). 0 05–0.2 G. (1–3 grs.).

Extractum Podophylli Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Resina Podophylli (U. S. P.), Podophylli Resina (B. P.), 15–60 mgs. ($\frac{1}{4}$–1 gr.).

Tinctura Podophylli (B. P.), 5–15 mins.

Podophyllin varies considerably in composition, and ought to be avoided.

Podophyllotoxin. 5–10 mgs. Neither of these is pharmacopœial.

Jalapa (U. S. P., B. P.), the tuberous root of Ipomœa Jalapa. 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Extractum Jalapæ Alcoholicum (U. S. P.), *Extractum Jalapæ* (B. P.), 0.1–0.5 G. (2–8 grs.).

Resina Jalapæ (U. S. P.), Jalapæ Resina (B. P.), 0.1–0.3 G. (2–5 grs.).

Pulvis Jalapæ Compositus (U. S. P., B. P.) contains jalap and bitartrate of potash. 1–4 G. (15–60 grs.).

Tinctura Jalapæ (B. P.), $\frac{1}{2}$–1 fl. dr.

Scammonium (U. S. P.), a resinous exudation from the living root of Convolvulus Scammonia.

Resina Scammoniæ (U. S. P.), 0.2–0.5 G. (3–8 grs.).

B. P.—**Scammoniæ Radix**, Scammony root, the dried root of Convolvulus Scammonia.

Scammonium, a gum resin obtained from the scammony root, 5–10 grs.

Scammoniæ Resina, 3–8 grs.

Pilula Scammoniæ Composita (contains jalap and ginger), 4–8 grs.

Pulvis Scammonii Compositus (contains jalap and ginger), 10–20 grs.

Scammony is also contained in the compound colocynth preparations.

Euonymus (U. S. P.), **Euonymi Cortex** (B. P.), Wahoo, the dried root-bark of Euonymus atropurpureus.

Extractum Euonymi (U. S. P.), 0.05–0.2 G. (1–3 grs.).

Extractum Euonymi Siccum (B. P.). 1–2 grs.

Elaterinum (U. S. P., B. P.), $C_{20}H_{28}O_5$, a neutral principle obtained from elaterium, a substance deposited by the juice of the fruit of Ecballium Elaterium (squirting cucumber). 1–5 mgs. ($\frac{1}{60}$–$\frac{1}{10}$ gr.).

Trituratio Elaterini (U. S. P.) (one part elaterin in 9 parts sugar of milk), 15–60 mgs. ($\frac{1}{4}$–1 gr.).

Elaterium (B. P.), varies in strength, $\frac{1}{10}$–$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.

Pulvis Elaterini Compositus (B. P.) (one part elaterin in 39 parts milk sugar), 1–4 grs.

Cambogia (U. S. P., B. P.), Gamboge, a gum resin obtained from Garcinia Hanburii.

Pilula Cambogiæ Composita (B. P.) contains Barbadoes aloes and cinnamon, 4–8 grs.

Bryonia (U. S. P.), Bryony, the root of Bryonia alba and of Bryonia dioica.

Tinctura Bryoniæ (U. S. P.), 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.).

Leptandra (U. S. P.), Culver's root, the rhizome and roots of Veronica virginica.

Extractum Leptandræ (U. S. P.), 0.1–0.2 G. (2–4 grs.).

Extractum Leptandræ Fluidum (U. S. P.) 2–4 c.c. (30–60 mins.).

Two other purgatives may be mentioned here, although nothing is known regarding their active principles.

Iris (U. S. P.), the rhizome and roots of Iris versicolor, Blue Flag.

Extractum Iridis (U. S. P.), 0.1–0 2 G. (2–4 grs.).

Extractum Iridis Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.5–1.5 c.c. (10–20 mins.).

Juglans (U. S. P.), butternut, the bark of the root of Juglans cinerea. *Extractum Juglandis* (U. S. P.), 1–2 G. (15–30 grs.). Juglans is a comparatively mild laxative.

The resinous purgatives are generally administered in pill form; very frequently two or more are combined in one pill, or they may be prescribed along with extract of belladonna or hyoscyamus, or with a drop of some carminative oil or resin, to prevent the pain and griping which often accompanies their action. The importance of these purgatives is much less than it was formerly, and several of them are very seldom used; the most important are colocynth, podophyllum, and jalap. In large doses they act rapidly, with the exception of podophyllum, which induces purgation very slowly (10–20 hours).

Therapeutic Uses of the Purgatives. — The purgatives are employed to cause evacuation of the bowel when for any reason its peristalsis is slow. In ordinary constipation of short standing, in which the peristalsis may merely seem somewhat more sluggish than usual, the milder laxatives are prescribed—castor oil, senna, rhubarb, aloes, frangula, or cascara sagrada. The first two cause least disturbance of the bowel, but are disagreeable to take, and are less commonly prescribed for adults than rhubarb or cascara, or small doses of colocynth or podophyllum. In children or in debility in adults, senna and castor oil are frequently used however.

In chronic constipation which cannot be controlled by hygienic measures, or by the use of a special dietary such as fruits, or coarse meal, and where the intestine has apparently taken on a sluggish habit, rhubarb, cascara, aloes, podophyllum, or colocynth may be ordered, but the saline cathartics often prove more satisfactory. Rhubarb tends to cause some constipation after its laxative effects, but is often used in these cases, as it possesses some bitter stomachic action, which compensates for its astringent after-effects. This bitter action is often given to the other purgatives by the addition of gentian, nux vomica, or cinchona. In obstinate constipation, in which the bowel contains hard fæcal masses, the milder purgatives often provoke griping without relieving the condition, and in these cases larger doses of colocynth, jalap, podophyllum, or croton oil are used, along with some of the extracts of the atropine group or with a carminative oil. They may be prescribed along with some of the saline cathartics, as in the compound infusion of senna or the compound powder of jalap.

Croton oil is used especially where the drug is required to be of small bulk and the administration is attended with special difficulty; thus in unconsciousness or mania one or two drops may be given on sugar. In lead colic, croton oil is said to act more rapidly and efficiently than the others.

In some forms of diarrhœa constant irritation seems to be kept up by the presence of irritants in the bowel, and the indications are the removal of these by a purge rather than the administration of astringents. Castor oil, senna, and rhubarb are especially adapted for this purpose; the two first because they increase the irritation of the bowel

less than the others, the latter because of its subsequent astringent action.

A purgative is often administered as a preliminary in the treatment of malaria, syphilis and other conditions, and seems to have beneficial effects, although these are difficult to explain. In the beginning of acute fevers also a purge is often useful, perhaps through the congestion of the bowel withdrawing the blood from the rest of the body, or through the removal of poisonous substances formed by the decomposition of the intestinal contents. In congestion of the brain a purgative is often administered with good effects, which may also be attributed to the accumulation of blood in the mesenteric circulation, and perhaps to some action analogous to counter-irritation of the skin. For these purposes a sharp purge is generally used, either croton oil or one of the jalapin and colocynthin series.

The more powerful purgatives were formerly largely used to remove fluid from the body in cases of dropsy or œdema, and they were generally prescribed along with the saline cathartics for this purpose. The violent action required is weakening, however, and while the fluid is withdrawn to a greater or less extent, the condition of the patient often undergoes little improvement, so that this measure is comparatively seldom used now.

The congestion of the pelvic organs induced by these purges is not infrequently beneficial in cases of amenorrhœa. Aloes is almost exclusively used for this purpose, and is generally administered along with iron or with myrrh, which is credited with some special action on the genital organs.

The purges act as intestinal disinfectants by removing the micro-organisms mechanically, though the vegetable purges are less used for this purpose than calomel. A purgative is administered to remove poisons in the intestine when they have passed beyond the stomach or when they are excreted into the bowel.

Purgatives are contraindicated in conditions of acute intestinal irritation, and during menstruation and pregnancy, owing to the congestion of the pelvic organs, which may lead to an excessive flow in the one case and to abortion in the other; aloes is especially dangerous in these conditions. In collapse, asthenia and anæmia, powerful purgatives are contraindicated, owing to the irritation they produce. In hæmorrhoids, aloes is often said to do harm by increasing the congestion of the rectum, and powerful purges are injurious from the straining they cause, but if constipation is present, a mild purgative is beneficial. In all those conditions, if a purgative is required, either castor oil, senna or rhubarb ought to be chosen.

Repeated attempts have been made to produce evacuation of the bowels by substances injected subcutaneously. Hiller found colocynthin the best available for practical purposes, although aloin and cathartinic acid also acted efficiently. The injection is so painful, however, that it ought only to be had recourse to in exceptional circumstances.

Another method by which the purgatives may be administered is in enema.

The addition of purgatives, such as castor oil, and of bile to the ordinary enemata has been practised for many years, but Kohlstock has recently drawn attention to the use of purgatives by enema with only 1–3 teaspoonfuls of fluid. The large water enema, containing a pint or more of fluid, acts mainly by distending the bowel and thus setting up peristalsis, although the soaps, salt and other similar bodies, which are often added to it, may have an irritating effect in addition. In the small enema, however, distention plays no part, the movement being elicited by the irritant action of the drug. Kohlstock found that colocynthin (0.01–0.03 G.), aloin (0.4–0.5 G.), and cathartinic acid (0.6 G.) dissolved in glycerin caused purgation, colocynthin acting in ½–2 hrs., aloin in 2–12 hrs. and cathartinic acid in 1–6 hrs. The two latter were certain in their effects only in cases of moderate constipation. He attributes their action to absorption from the rectum.

Bibliography of the Vegetable Purgatives.

Purgative action in general.

Thiry. Wiener Sitzungsbericht. Mathemat-naturwiss. Classe, Bd. L., Abt. i., p. 77.
Radziejewski. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1870, p. 37.
Hess. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xl., p. 93.
Brieger. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., viii., p. 355.
Brandl u. Tappeiner. Ibid., xxvi., p. 177.
Brunton. Practitioner, xii., p. 342.
Stadelmann. Berliner klin. Woch., 1896, p. 181. Archiv f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvii., p. 352.
Buchheim. Arch. f. Heilkunde, xiii., p. 1, and xiv., p. 1.
Wood. Amer. Journ. of Med. Sciences, lx., p. 75.
Hiller. Zeitschr. f. klin. Med., iv., p. 481.
Kohlstock. Charité-annalen, xvii., p. 283.

Purgative oils.

Buchheim. l. c.
Meyer. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxviii., p. 145; xxxviii., p. 336.
Kobert u. Hirschheydt. Arb. des pharmak. Institutes zu Dorpat, iv., p. 5.

Anthracene purgatives.

Aloin. *Meyer.* Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxviii., p. 186.
Kohn. Berl. klin. Woch., 1882, p. 68.
Murset. Archiv f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xix., p. 310.
Esselmont. Ibid., xliii., p. 274.
Tschirch. Bericht. d. deutsch. pharmaceut. Gesellsch., 1898, p. 174.
Senna. *Kubly.* Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1865.
Stockman. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xix., p. 117.
Gensz. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1893.
Vieth. Munch. med. Woch., 1901, No. 35.
Frangula. *Baeumker.* Inaug. Diss., Göttingen, 1880.
Chrysarobin and Anthrarobin. *Lewin u. Rosenthal.* Virch. Arch., lxxxv., p. 118.
Müller. Münch. med. Woch., 1896, p. 1221.
Weyl. Pflüger's Arch., xliii., p. 367.
Koch. Inaug. Diss., Giessen, 1880.

Jalapin and Colocynthin Series.

Podophyllum. *Podwyssotzki.* Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xiii., p. 29.
Neuberger. Ibid., xxviii., p. 32.
Kürsten. Archiv der Pharm., ccxxix., p. 220.
Spindler. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1893.
Jalap. *J. Muller.* Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1885.
Scher. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1895; Virchow-Hirsch Jahresber., 1895, p. 380.
Colocynth. *Hagentorn.* Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1857.
Elaterium. *Köhler.* Virch. Arch., xlix., p. 408.
Bryonia. *Mankowsky.* Historische Studien a. d. pharmakol. Instit., Dorpat, ii., p. 143.

VII. VEGETABLE ASTRINGENTS — TANNIC ACID SERIES.

A large number of vegetable substances owe their action to their containing tannin substances, while in many other preparations the effect of more important constituents is modified by the presence of these widely distributed bodies. Tannic acid proper is derived from the oak gall, and seems to consist of an anhydride combination of gallic acid, into which it is very easily decomposed, probably according to the following equation :

Tannic acid. Gallic acid.

$$C_6H_2(OH)_3CO-O(OH)_2C_6H_2COOH + H_2O = 2C_6H_2(OH_3)COOH.$$

Gallic acid is formed from a large number of other bodies which closely resemble tannic acid in their general features, but are by no means identical with it. Their constitution is altogether unknown, but they possess a number of reactions in common and are generally classed together as the tannic acid substances. Some of them contain a sugar, and tannin or tannic acid is therefore sometimes said to be a glucoside. These bodies precipitate albumins, gelatins, alkaloids and some glucosides, and the salts of the heavy metals. The salts of iron form a bluish-black or greenish-black precipitate, and an attempt is sometimes made to divide the forms of tannic acid by this reaction, but they may be better indicated by their origin, as kinotannic acid from kino, catechutannic acid from catechu, etc.

Action. — The pharmacological effects of these bodies are due to their precipitating albumins and other proteids, and this reaction may therefore be described before their action in the body. If tannic acid solution be added to a neutral solution of albumin or gelatin, a white precipitate falls, which is entirely insoluble in water, but is soluble in excess of albumin or gelatin, in acetic or lactic acid, and in alkaline solutions.[1] Solutions of pepsin and of peptones are also precipitated by tannic acid unless in the presence of an acid. If proteid tannate be exposed to the action of the gastric juice it undergoes digestion and is dissolved in the same way as an ordinary coagulated proteid such as fibrin. During the process the tannic acid is set free from its combination apparently, and can precipitate undigested proteids, although it has no effect on the peptones in the acid medium. When a soluble tannate is formed by the addition of soda or potash to a tannic acid solution, the presence of proteids produces no precipitate, the affinities of the acid being satisfied by the alkali, and for the same reason the tannic acid precipitate is dissolved in the presence of alkalies.

Tannic acid applied to animal tissue, as in the tanning of leather, causes a precipitation of the proteids, and the tissue becomes harder and tougher and tends to shrink together ; at the same time it has less tendency to undergo putrefactive changes and does not lose its flexi-

[1] Some discrepancies in the accounts of different authors in regard to these reactions are perhaps due to variations in the amount of the neutral salts in their preparations. The account given by Lewin has been followed in the text.

bility, as it would in drying. Strong solutions cause an immediate dense precipitate of the proteids on the surface and prevent the further penetration of the coagulating fluid, while the more dilute solutions are believed to penetrate more deeply and thus to cause a more complete precipitation of the proteids of the tissue.

Tannic acid solutions have a harsh, bitter, "astringent" taste and produce in the mouth a feeling of constriction, dryness and roughness, along with a sense of stiffness in the movements of the tongue, and some loss of taste. These effects are due to the coagulation of the superficial layers of proteid both within and without the epithelium, which substitutes for the ordinary smooth surface a firmer, less even one, over which the tongue can no longer move easily. The feeling of constriction may, perhaps, be caused by an actual shrinking of the superficial layers of the epithelium, or may be due merely to the impaired movements and sensation.

The astringent feeling is continued in the throat as the solution is swallowed, and occasionally some discomfort or even nausea and vomiting are provoked by it, but as a general rule no such effects are observed. The stools are rendered harder and firmer by the administration of tannic acid, and constipation is often produced by it. In excess, tannic acid sometimes causes irritation of the intestine and diarrhœa, but beyond these symptoms of local irritation of the stomach and bowel, no effects arise from even enormous quantities of the drug.

In the stomach, tannic acid combines with any proteid substance with which it may come in contact and precipitates it, but as digestion progresses, this combination is broken up, as the peptones do not combine with tannic acid in acid solution, and the astringent action is therefore exercised on the walls of the stomach and intestine. Ordinary quantities cause the same superficial coagulation as in the mouth, but if large doses be given when the stomach and intestine are not protected by foodstuffs, a more complete coagulation of the mucous membrane takes place and the consequent irritation results in vomiting, and sometimes in diarrhœa. The increase in the consistency of the stools is probably due to the layer of coagulated proteid acting as a protective to the bowel, lessening its irritability and thus retarding its movements, so that there is longer time for the absorption of the fluid part of its contents, although this proceeds more slowly under tannic acid than normally (Gebhardt). Yeasts and microbes are precipitated by tannin, and this may tend to lessen the fermentations in the bowel in some cases, although some preparations of tannic acid which have been examined in regard to this point have been found to have little or no effect on intestinal putrefaction.

The local application of tannic acid causes a diminution of the secretions of glands, as has been demonstrated by Schütz. This is due to its effects upon the protoplasm of the secreting cells, which probably undergo the initial stages of coagulation.

It was formerly believed that tannic acid caused constriction of the vessels of any part to which it was applied, but some doubt has been

thrown on this by the experimental results obtained by Rosenstirn and others. Heinz, the most recent writer on the subject, found that solutions of tannic acid of less strength than ½ per cent. caused constriction of the mesenteric vessels of the frog or rabbit when applied directly, while more concentrated solutions caused transient constriction followed by dilation. Another local effect produced by tannic acid is seen in the cessation of the movements of the leucocytes in the tissues around the point of application and the arrest of their diapedesis through the walls of the vessels.

When tannic acid comes in contact with blood in a test-tube it precipitates the albumins, and when it is injected intravenously, the precipitate formed leads to the formation of emboli. The alkaline tannates are generally believed to be entirely devoid of astringent effects, unless when the tannic acid is freed from the combination by the presence of an acid, but according to Heinz and Gottlieb the astringent action is only weakened and not entirely removed by combination with the alkalies.

The fate of tannic acid in the body has given rise to some discussion. When it is taken internally a small proportion is sometimes eliminated by the bowel unchanged, but very often none is to be found in the stools; traces are apparently absorbed and excreted in the urine as sodium tannate in both man and animals, although some investigators have failed to detect these. When sodium tannate is administered internally, a distinctly larger amount of it is absorbed and reappears in the urine. But much the greater part of the tannic acid is decomposed in the intestine into gallic acid, some of which often passes out in the stools, some in the urine. Only about one per cent. of the tannic acid swallowed reappears in the excretions, either as tannic or gallic acid; the rest apparently undergoes complete oxidation in the tissues, for no further trace of it can be found. After tannic acid is administered, some tannic or gallic salt is present in the blood, for iron salts give a darker color to it, but it is impossible to state whether this is tannin or a gallate, although in all probability it is the latter. According to Harnack, the gallic acid in the urine sometimes forms pyrogallol on standing, but this poisonous substance is not formed from tannic acid in the intestine or tissues.

Tannic acid then does not exist in the tissues as such, but only in the form of traces of the gallate or tannate of soda, which are so small as to be devoid of astringent properties. Tannate of soda seems to have no action whatever, while gallic acid has no further properties than other weak acids. Theoretically, therefore, it is to be expected that the effects of tannic acid are limited to the point of application, and there is no evidence of any weight that it exercises any action after absorption.

Lewin states that the muscles of the frog are altered in elasticity after the application of tannic acid subcutaneously, and an old observation is recorded in which the spleen was supposed to undergo contraction when tannic acid was administered, but the methods adopted render these observations worth-

less. Tannic acid is often said to lessen the albuminuria in certain forms of Bright's disease, but the only exact determinations which have been made in man showed that no such effect was present, and in Ribberts' experiments the animals were moribund when the improvement occurred, and no safe deductions can be made therefore. The urine is sometimes said to be diminished by tannic acid, but this statement is based on error. Last of all, tannic acid is said to lessen internal hemorrhage by contracting the vessels, but tannate of soda, the only form in which it can exist in the blood is entirely devoid of action.

Gallic acid given by the mouth is absorbed and is excreted by the kidneys to some extent. Much of it disappears in the tissues, however, apparently by oxidation. The excretion of uric acid in the urine is considerably reduced by the administration of gallic acid.

The numerous preparations of the pharmacopœias which owe their activity to their containing tannic acid, differ from the pure drug in that the acid is only slowly dissolved out from the colloid mass, and therefore acts less on the stomach and affects a greater length of intestine.

Preparations.

Acidum Tannicum (U. S. P., B. P.), tannic acid, gallotannic acid or digallic acid ($HC_{14}H_9O_9$), an organic acid obtained from nut gall, 0.1–0.6 G. (2–10 grs.).

Glyceritum Acidi Tannici (U. S. P.), Glycerinum Acidi Tannici (B. P.).

Unguentum Acidi Tannici (U. S. P.).

Collodium Stypticum (U. S. P.).

Trochisci Acidi Tannici (U. S. P.), 0.06 G. (1 gr.); (B. P.), ½ gr. in each.

Suppositoria Acidi Tannici (B. P.), 0.2 G. (3 grs.) in each.

Acidum Gallicum (U. S. P., B. P.), gallic acid ($HC_7H_5O_5$), an organic acid usually prepared from tannic acid, has no astringent properties, nor, in fact any qualities which render it of value in medicine.

Catechu (U. S. P.), an extract prepared from the wood of Acacia Catechu, 1–2 G. (15–30 grs.).

Tinctura Catechu Composita (U. S. P.) (flavored with cinnamon), 2–12 c.c. (½–3 fl. drs.).

Trochisci Catechu (U. S. P.).

Catechu contains catechutannic acid and catechin, a compound of tannic acid which gives most of the tannic acid reactions, but does not precipitate gelatin.

Catechu (B. P.), an extract of the leaves and young shoots of Uncaria Gambier.

Tinctura Catechu, ½–1 fl. dr.

Trochiscus Catechu, each containing 0.065 G. (1 gr.) of catechu.

Pulvis Catechu Compositus contains catechu, kino, krameria, cinnamon and nutmeg, 10–40 grs.

Krameria (U. S. P.), Rhatany, the root of Krameria triandra and of Krameria Ixina, **Krameriæ Radix** (B. P.), the dried root of Para Rhatany (Krameria argentea?) or of Peruvian Rhatany (Krameria triandra).

Extractum Krameriæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Extractum Krameriæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.5–4 c.c. (10–60 mins.).

Tinctura Krameriæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 2–8 c.c. (½–2 fl. drs.).

Syrupus Krameriæ (U. S. P.), 2–10 c.c. (½–3 fl. drs.).

Liquor Krameriæ Concentratus (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Infusum Krameriæ (B. P.), ½–1 fl. oz.

Trochisci Krameriæ (U. S. P., B. P.).

Trochiscus Krameriæ et Cocainæ (B. P.), each containing $\frac{1}{20}$ gr. of cocaine.

Kino (U. S. P., B. P.), the inspissated juice of Pterocarpus Marsupium, 0.5–2 G. (10–30 grs.).

TINCTURA KINO (U. S. P., B. P.), 2–8 c.c. (½–2 fl. drs.).

PULVIS KINO COMPOSITUS (B. P.), contains 5 per cent. of opium, 5–20 grs.

Hamamelis (U. S. P.), **Hamamelidis Folia** (B. P.), Witchhazel, the leaves of Hamamelis Virginiana, contains tannic acid, a volatile oil and a bitter.

Hamamelidis Cortex (B. P.), the dried bark of Hamamelis Virginiana, witch-hazel bark.

Extractum Hamamelidis Fluidum (U. S. P.), 2–8 c.c. (½–2 fl. drs.).

Extractum Hamamelidis Liquidum (B. P.), 5–15 mins.

Liquor Hamamelidis (B. P.).

Tinctura Hamamelidis (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Unguentum Hamamelidis (B. P.).

Hæmatoxylon (U. S. P.), **Hæmatoxyli Lignum** (B. P.), Logwood, the heart-wood of Hæmatoxylon campechianum.

Extractum Hæmatoxyli (U. S. P.), 0.5–2 G. (10–30 grs.).

Decoctum Hæmatoxyli (B. P.), ½–2 fl. oz.

Eucalypti Gummi (B. P.), a ruby-colored exudation, or so-called red gum, from the bark of Eucalyptus rostrata and some other species of Eucalyptus. 2–5 grs.

Trochiscus Eucalypti Gummi (B. P.), each containing 1 gr. of the gum.

Geranium (U. S. P.), Cranesbill, the rhizome of Geranium maculatum. 1–2 G. (15–30 grs.).

Extractum Geranii Fluidum (U. S. P.), 2–4 c.c. (30–60 mins.).

Rubus (U. S. P.), Blackberry, the bark of the root of Rubus villosus, R. Canadensis and R. trivialis.

Extractum Rubi Fluidum (U. S. P.), 2–8 c.c. (½–2 fl. drs.).

Syrupus Rubi (U. S. P.), 2–8 c.c. (½–2 fl. drs.).

Galla (U. S. P., B. P.), Nut-gall, an excrescence on Quercus lusitonica (Quercus infectoria, B. P.), one of the oaks, caused by the punctures and ova of an insect, Cynips Gallæ tinctoriæ.

Tinctura Gallæ (U. S. P.), 2–12 c.c.

Unguentum Gallæ (U. S. P., B. P.).

Unguentum Gallæ cum Opio (B. P.) contains 7½ per cent. of opium.

Castanea (U. S. P.), Chestnut, the leaves of Castanea dentata.

Extractum Castaneæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 2–4 c.c.

Quercus alba (U. S. P.), white oak bark.

Rhus glabra (U. S. P.), the fruit of sumach.

Extractum Rhois Glabræ Fluidum (U. S. P.).

Rumex (U. S. P.), yellow dock, the root of Rumex crispus and of some other species of Rumex.

Extractum Rumicis Fluidum (U. S. P.), 2–4 c.c.

Several new preparations of tannic acid have been introduced into therapeutics of late years, chiefly for use as intestinal astringents. Tannic acid itself is liable to produce irritation of the stomach, and to be decomposed or absorbed to a large extent before it reaches the large intestine, and although the cruder preparations are less liable to these changes, even they are by no means devoid of disagreeable features. Meyer, therefore, introduced *tannigen*, or diacetyltannin, in which two of the original hydroxyl groups of the tannic acid are replaced by acetyl. This body is exceedingly insoluble in water, but is dissolved by alkalies. It was hoped that it would remain insoluble in the stomach and only commence to act in the bowel, and Rost finds that after administration by the mouth, it occurs in the human fæces in small quantity as tannic acid, while in the cat it passes through the alimentary canal in part unchanged. At the same time the presence of gallic acid in the urine indicates that part of it undergoes the fate of tannic acid. *Tannoform* is a somewhat similar combination of tannic acid and formaldehyde, while *tannopin* is a still more recent and untried member of the series. Both

tannigen and tannoform are astringent in the mouth and stomach, but reach the bowel owing to their insolubility. The *tannalbin* of Gottleib, on the other hand, is a combination of tannic acid and albumen, dried at such a temperature as to prevent the action of the gastric juice upon it, but capable of being broken up by the more powerful pancreatic fluids. It is entirely insoluble and is not astringent until digested in the bowel, so that it has no irritant action on the stomach and is tasteless. Rost found tannalbin and tannic acid in the fæces of the cat after its administration, while only gallic acid occurs in the stools and urine in man, showing that in the latter the whole of the tannalbin administered is decomposed in its passage through the alimentary canal. *Tannocol* is a combination of tannic acid and gelatin, resembling tannalbin in most respects.

TANNIGEN, 0.5–2 G. (10–30 grs.), in powder.
TANNALBIN, 0.5–2 G. (10–30 grs.), in powder.

Several combinations of gallic acid have been introduced of late years as astringents. They can have no such effect, however, and must be regarded as additions to the group of inert protective powders, which is already represented in overabundance in therapeutics.

Therapeutic Uses.—The preparations of tannic acid ought to be used for their local effects exclusively. They are applied externally in cases of excessive secretion, as in local sweating or weeping ulcers, and occasionally to harden the skin. For this purpose tannic acid may be used in solution in water, or in the form of the glycerite or ointment, or some other fluid preparation may be preferred. The styptic collodion may also be employed for this purpose, the evaporation of the solvent leaving the surface covered with a thin layer of collodion impregnated with tannic acid. Tannic acid is used as a mouth wash in cases of swollen gums, or relaxed throat, and may here be prescribed in a flavored solution or in the form of lozenges, of which the pharmacopœia offers a choice. In certain forms of diarrhœa the astringent action of tannic acid is of considerable value, and occasionally when such drugs as cod-liver oil cause diarrhœa, tannic acid prevents this action without hindering their general effects. The pure drug is seldom used in these cases, as it is liable to derange the stomach and to form compounds with the albumins before it reaches the bowel, and catechu, krameria or kino is accordingly prescribed, either in the form of pills or in fluid preparations. Possibly all of these may be replaced in the early future by such artificial compounds as tannigen or tannalbin. Tannic acid stops hemorrhage by precipitating the proteids, when it comes into immediate contact with the bleeding point, but it is not of so much value for this purpose as some of the metallic astringents. When the bleeding point can be reached directly, the pure acid is used, but for hemorrhage of the intestine or stomach one of the extracts is preferred. Large enemata containing tannic acid have been advised in cholera, dysentery and similar conditions.

In cases of poisoning with metals and alkaloids, tannic acid is often used to cause their precipitation in the stomach, but the tannate formed must be removed at once, as it is gradually dissolved in the digestive fluids. The administration of tannic acid is therefore only a tem-

porary expedient to allow of active measures being taken to empty the stomach.

Some individuals are peculiarly susceptible to the action of tannic acid, which induces local irritation and inflammation wherever it is applied in these cases.

Bibliography.

Hennig. Arch. f. physiol. Heilkunde, xii., p. 599.
Rosenstirn. Rossbach's Pharmakologische Untersuchungen, ii., p. 78.
Lewin. Virchow's Archiv, lxxxi., p. 74.
Stockman. Brit. Med. Journ., 1886, ii., p. 1077. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xl., p. 147.
Mörner. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xvi., p. 255.
Heinz. Virchow's Arch., cxvi., p. 220.
Schütz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvii., p. 202.
Meyer. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1894, p. 626.
Gottleib. Ibid., 1896, p. 163.
Rost. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxviii., p. 346. Centrabl. f. Physiol., xii., p. 258.
Harnack. Zeitschr. f. physiolog. Chemie, xxiv., p. 115.
Flatow. Deutsch. med. woch. Therap. Beilag., 1899, p. 37.
Straub. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlii., p. 1.
Gebhart. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., lxvi., p. 585.

IX. ANTHELMINTICS.

Anthelmintics are drugs which are used to kill or remove intestinal worms. They possess no such mutual resemblances in their effects as are met with in the purgatives, and their arrangement in a class is therefore artificial; at the same time, they have no marked affinities with other groups, and it is convenient to have those bodies which are used exclusively for this purpose placed together.

In order to possess any value as an anthelmintic, a drug must, of course, act more strongly on the parasite than on the host, and this more intense effect may be attained either by a specific action on the parasite, or by the drug failing to be absorbed from the alimentary canal. As a matter of fact, the anthelmintics, with the possible exception of pelletierine, have no such specific action, and their use is rendered possible only by their slow absorption. In this point they resemble the purgatives, from which they differ, however, in causing little or no irritation in the stomach or bowel.

Anthelmintics are often divided into vermicides and vermifuges, according as they kill or merely cause the expulsion of the worm, but as this is determined largely by the quantity which comes in contact with the parasite and the rapidity with which the bowel is evacuated, the distinction is imaginary.

Before the administration of an anthelmintic, the bowel ought to be emptied of its contents as far as possible by a light, easily digested diet and a laxative, and a brisk purge ought to follow some hours later, in order to remove the dead or stupefied worm. The anthelmintic is often prescribed along with a purge.

A number of drugs belonging to other groups are used occasionally as anthelmintics. Thus several of the volatile oils—tansy, turpentine—

have some reputation ; and chloroform is also administered occasionally by the mouth for its action on the parasites, but, like the volatile oils, is apt to produce gastric and intestinal irritation. The less easily absorbed antiseptics, such as naphthol, have been used with good results. Large enemata of salt solution, or of infusion of quassia, are thrown into the rectum when the worms infest the large intestines. The anthelmintics proper may be divided into those which are used for tapeworm, of which *male fern*, *cusso* and *pomegranate* are the most largely used, and those for the round worm of which *santonin* is the chief. Besides these, an enormous number of substances have been used popularly as anthelmintics, but have not been shown to have any advantages over those more generally adopted in medical practice.

Male Fern (Aspidium Filix-mas).

A number of ferns contain bodies which present considerable resemblance to each other from a chemical as well as from a pharmacological point of view, and which may therefore be classed together, at any rate until further information is available regarding them. The best known of these is the male fern (Aspidium Filix-mas). The active constituent of this remedy was supposed to be *Filicic Acid* by Poulsson, but Boehm has found a series of neutral and acid bodies present in much larger amount — *Aspidin*, *Aspidinin*, *Flavaspidic Acid*, *Albaspidin* and *Aspidinol* — of which aspidin is contained in largest quantity in the root and is the most important, although aspidinin is also highly poisonous. A number of these constituents have been shown to be derivatives of phloroglucin, and it is probable that they are all closely related. The therapeutic and toxicological effects of the male fern are to be attributed then to aspidin, aspidinin and filicic acid.[1]

Action.—The extract or oleoresin of male fern, which is the only one of these plants used in regular medicine, as a general rule passes through the bowel without causing any symptoms whatever. The quantity of active substance dissolved, while sufficient to destroy the parasite, is too small to produce any effects on the host, and escapes with the other contents of the bowel, or if absorbed does not cause any symptoms. In some cases, however, where large quantities are administered, or where some unknown conditions favor the absorption and retention of an unusually large amount of the active constituents, grave and even fatal symptoms may supervene. These consist in vomiting and purging, with acute pain in the abdomen, muscular weakness, confusion and somnolence, with occasional twitching of the muscles, or slight convulsive movements, collapse, coma and death. The stomach

[1] Nearly related bodies have been found in Aspidium athamanticum (Uncomocomo), which contains two forms of *Pannic Acid*, and in Aspidium spinulosum, while smaller quantities of acids occur in a large number of ferns.

Several of these ferns enjoy a reputation as anthelminics for tapeworm, and their virtues are generally considered due to these bodies, although Kobert maintains that it is partly to be ascribed to the fixed or volatile oils which accompany them.

and intestine are found congested and swollen, and sometimes covered with small ecchymoses. In some cases icterus has been observed to follow the administration of male fern, probably from the duodenal catarrh, but possibly from destruction of the red blood cells, the number of which has been found to be diminished in some instances (Georgiewsky). In other cases permanent or temporary blindness has been observed, without any distinct ophthalmoscopic appearances.

In the rabbit, filicic acid produces very similar symptoms. The congestion of the stomach and intestine is evidently due to the local irritation produced by the poison, while the other symptoms point to changes induced in the central nervous system. It would seem probable that the spinal cord is affected in the same way as by strychnine, for the reflex excitability is distinctly increased. The higher parts of the central nervous system seem to be depressed, and the paralysis of the respiratory centre is the cause of death, although the heart is also weakened by filicic acid. Inflammation of the kidney is said by some authors to occur, and in some cases Poulsson found evidence of glycuronic acid in the urine.

In the frog, a mixture of depression and stimulation of the central nervous system is produced by filicic acid, along with a distinct diminution in the strength of the skeletal muscles and the heart.

Aspidin injected into the frog causes dyspnœa followed by paralysis of the spontaneous and respiratory movements; fibrillary twitching of the muscles sets in after some time and is succeeded by convulsive movements or tonic spasms, which indicate an increased activity of the reflexes of the spinal cord. The heart is depressed and eventually paralyzed, and the peripheral muscles are also weakened. The muscular tissue of the invertebrates is more powerfully affected by the constituents of male fern and Straub attributes its action on the tapeworm to its paralyzing muscle. Mammals do not seem to be affected by aspidin injected hypodermically or administered by the mouth, but when it is introduced directly into the blood vessels, it proves fatal by paralyzing the respiratory centre. Aspidinin induces very similar symptoms in the frog, while the other constituents are less active.

The blindness which has been observed in some cases of male fern poisoning has also been produced in dogs; it occurs chiefly in young, weakly and anæmic individuals, and is due to the degeneration and atrophy of the ganglionic layer of the retina

Pannic acid differs from filicic chiefly in its acting more strongly on muscle and less on the central nervous system of the frog.

Preparations.

Aspidium (U. S. P.), Male fern, the rhizome of Dryopteris Filix-mas and of Dryopteris marginalis, **Filix Mas** (B. P.), Male fern, the rhizome of Aspidium Filix-mas.

Oleoresina Aspidii (U. S. P.), 2–8 c.c. (½–2 fl. drs.).

Extractum Filicis Liquidum (B. P.), 45–90 mins.

The oleoresin (U. S. P.) and the liquid extract (B. P.) are practically identical in composition.

Therapeutic Uses.—Male fern is used exclusively in the treatment of tapeworm and of Anchylostomum duodenale. Previous to its administration the bowel ought to be emptied, as far as possible, by a light diet for one or two days, and, where necessary, by a purgative. The oleoresin, or liquid extract, is then to be administered in the form of pills or enclosed in a capsule or suspended in mucilage, and another purgative is required some 6–12 hours later. In case the parasite fails

to be dislodged, several days ought to be allowed to elapse before a second dose is given. Poulsson recommends that oily substances be avoided during the "cure," as they dissolve the filicic acid, and thus promote its absorption. It is impossible to estimate the importance of this fact since Boehm has discovered the other active constituents, but it is certainly suggestive that in many cases of poisoning with male fern castor oil had been given along with it or soon after.

Bibliography.

Poulsson. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxix., p. 1; xxxv., p. 97; xli., p. 246.
Kobert. Therap. Monatsheft, 1893, p. 136.
Birch-Hirschfeld. Graefe's Arch. f. Ophthalmologie, l., p. 225.
Georgiewsky. Ziegler's Beiträge, xxiv., p. 1.
Boehm. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxv., p. 1; xxxviii., p. 35.
Straub. Ibid., xlviii., p. 1.
Walko. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., lxiii., p. 348.

Cusso.

Cusso, or Kousso, contains a neutral body, *Kosotoxin*, which is soluble in alcohol and in alkaline fluids, but is insoluble in water. *Kosin*, which was formerly supposed to be the active constituent, seems to be formed by the decomposition of kosotoxin, and is entirely inactive.

Kosotoxin ($C_{26}H_{34}O_{10}$) is probably nearly related to the active constituents of male fern, which it resembles somewhat in its pharmacological action.

Cusso has a bitter, somewhat astringent taste, and sometimes causes nausea and vomiting and some looseness of the bowels. In rare cases prostration and collapse, with irregularity of the pulse, are said to have occurred from its use.

In the frog, kosotoxin paralyzes the nerve ends like curara, and has a specific action on the striped muscular tissue, which it weakens and eventually paralyzes. The heart muscle undergoes similar changes. In mammals the muscular action is well developed, but is accompanied by some stimulation of the medullary centres, indicated by rapid, dyspnœic breathing, salivation and vomiting. The stools are often fluid, and the urine is increased in amount. When it is injected directly into the circulation, some convulsive movements are often observed, and the heart is weakened and paralyzed. Kosotoxin seems to be a general protoplasm poison, as is indicated by its action on muscle, and by its retarding the growth of yeast.

Preparations.

Cusso (U. S. P., B. P.) (Kousso or Brayera), the female inflorescence of Hagenia Abyssinica (Brayera anthelmintica).

Extractum Cusso Fluidum (U. S. P.), 15 c.c. (½ fl. oz.).

Cusso is generally given by suspending 15 G. (½ oz.) of the powdered flowers in water, or the fluid extract may be prescribed, although it is said to be less certain in its effects. Kosotoxin has not yet been prescribed for therapeutic purposes. The usual preliminary treatment ought to be instituted, but no purge is required after Cusso as a general rule.

Therapeutic Uses. — Cusso is used exclusively as an anthelmintic in cases of tapeworm.

Bibliography.

Leichsenring. Arch. d. Pharm., ccxxxii., p. 50.
Handmann. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvi., p. 138.

Granatum.

The bark of the pomegranate contains a very large amount of tannic acid (20–25 per cent.), along with numerous alkaloids, of which *Pelletierine*, or *Punicine*, and *Isopelletierine* alone are active in ordinary doses. All the pomegranate alkaloids are closely related chemically to each other and to tropine (see atropine). None of them can be classed among the more active poisons as far as man and the higher animals are concerned.

In man, large doses cause heaviness, confusion, giddiness and very marked weakness of the limbs. The consciousness is but little affected, but the sight is often dim and uncertain, and in one case complete blindness persisted for several days. Occasionally nausea and discomfort in the abdomen are complained of, and more rarely vomiting, tremors and cramps of the leg muscles are produced; the gastric symptoms are perhaps due to the large quantity of tannic acid in the drug rather than to the alkaloids.

In the frog and in most mammals, pelletierine causes a distinct increase in the reflex irritability of the spinal cord and medulla oblongata, along with some depression of the higher divisions of the central nervous system. The muscles of the frog are affected in much the same way as by veratrine, and very large doses weaken or paralyze the conductivity of the nerve plates like curara. The heart muscle is also acted on and its pulsations are slowed in the frog, although they may be temporarily augmented in force.

Pelletierine and isopelletierine have a specific action on tapeworms, for Schroeder found that a solution of one part in 10,000 was sufficient to kill them in ten minutes, while a stronger solution had practically no effect upon other intestinal worms.

Preparations.

Granatum (U. S. P.), **Granati Cortex** (B. P.), Pomegranate bark. the bark of the stem and root of Punica Granatum.

Decoctum Granati Corticis (B. P.), ½–2 fl. oz.

Granatum is used as a decoction formed of 30–60 G. (1–2 oz.) in 250 c.c. of water (½ pt.), to be taken in two parts, at an interval of one hour. The bark ought to be as fresh as possible, as the alkaloids decompose on keeping. The presence of large quantities of tannic acid renders the decoction very unpleasant to the taste, and flavoring substances are therefore generally prescribed with it, or, to avoid the tannic acid effects, pelletierine may be prescribed in doses of 0.1–0 5 G. (2–8 grs.). The pelletierine of commerce is often a mixture of all the alkaloids and has therefore to be given in larger doses. It is well to prescribe it along with four times its weight of tannic acid, in order to prevent its absorption in the stomach. Pelletierine tannate is given in doses of 0.75–1.5 G. (10–20 grs.).

Therapeutic Uses.—Granatum is used exclusively as an anthelmintic. The preliminary treatment is the same as that given under aspidium, and a purge ought to be given ½–2 hours after the decoction.

Bibliography.

Dujardin-Beaumetz. Bull. de Therap., xcviii., p. 433.
Berenger-Feraud. Ibid., xcvii., pp. 8, 337, 391.
v. Schroeder. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xviii., p. 381, and xix., p. 290.

Kamala (U. S. P.) is a reddish-brown powder which consists of the minute glands and hairs obtained from the surface of the fruits of Mallotus Philippensis. It contains two or more substances which have been termed *Kamalin*, *Rottlerin* or *Mallotoxin*, and which are probably neutral bodies like kosotoxin, but it is not known which of these is the active constituent. Kamala is used in cases of tapeworm in doses of 2–8 G. (30 grs.–¼ oz.) suspended in water. It acts as an intestinal irritant, causing purging and more rarely nausea and vomiting. No purge is necessary, therefore, after the powder. An alcoholic tincture of kamala has been found quite as efficient as the powder.

Pepo (pumpkin seed) contains a fixed oil and resin, and the latter seems to have considerable power as an anthelmintic, although this is disputed by some authorities. No symptoms are produced by very large quantities of the powdered seeds.

Pepo (U. S. P.), the seed of Cucurbita pepo, Pumpkin seed, is generally administered in doses of 60–120 G. (2–4 oz.), the powdered seed being suspended in an emulsion or in sugar or honey. Pumpkin seed has no laxative effect and its administration is, therefore, to be followed by a purge. The resin has been used with good effects in some cases.

Santonin.

Santonin ($C_{15}H_{18}O_3$) is an anhydride or lactone of santoninic acid, which is formed from it by the action of alkalies, and is a derivative of naphtalene. It occurs in Artemisia maritima along with a nearly related body (artemisin) and a volatile oil (cineol). Santonin is very insoluble in water, but is dissolved by alkalies, with which it forms santoninates.

Action.—Owing to its insolubility in water, santonin has only a slightly bitter taste in the mouth. It is partially dissolved in the stomach and absorbed, but enough passes into the bowel to effect the removal of some forms of intestinal worms. Under special conditions it is possible that the greater part of the santonin may be absorbed in the stomach, however, and general poisoning results without the parasites being affected. A certain amount of absorption occurs in every case, as is shown by the disorders of color vision and by the yellow coloration of the urine. At first objects appear of a bluish color to the patient, but this aberration is of comparatively short duration and may in fact pass unnoticed. It is followed by a much longer period of "yellow sight" or xanthopsia, during which objects that are brightly illuminated seem to have a yellow tinge, blue seems green, and violet is indistinct, although in dimmer lights the violet may still predominate. In severe poisoning the appreciation of the darker colors becomes very imperfect, and violet and even blue may fail to be distinguished from black. In general the violet end of the spectrum is shortened, while the yellow impresses the retina more vividly than normally. Sometimes "hallucinations" of vision are said to occur under santonin, although these seem to be unimportant; thus one observer saw green globes on a violet background whenever he closed his eyes. These aberrations of sight are the most generally observed symptoms produced by santonin, but in some cases the sense of taste and smell, and more rarely the hearing, are also deranged. These symptoms all pass off in the course of a few hours, a second stage of "violet sight" occasionally intervening before complete recovery.

The symptoms produced by the absorption of large quantities of santonin are so uniform in man and the other mammals that it is sufficient to enumerate those observed in experiments on the dog. The first distinct effects are generally twitching of the muscles of the head, frequently beginning on one side. These are followed by rolling of the eyes, grinding of the teeth, flexion and extension of the neck and rotation of the head from side to side, later by regular epileptiform convulsions in which the animal is first thrown into opisthotonos and then into clonic spasms of the limbs and trunk. These are interrupted by intervals of repose during which a curious momentary contraction of all the muscles of the body is often noticed. During the convulsive seizures the respiration is irregular and insufficient, and in fatal cases it fails to return after the convulsion passes off, and the animal dies of asphyxia. In man, some confusion, nausea and vomiting occasionally occur after quantities which are too small to produce convulsions, and in several cases aphasia has been observed. In frogs, convulsions are produced by santonin as in mammals, but they are preceded by a prolonged stage of depression, which is entirely absent in the higher animals.

These symptoms manifestly point to changes in the central nervous system. The xanthopsia is generally referred to a specific action on the retina, though some hold that the central apparatus of vision in the brain is the seat of the action.[1] The condition has been ascribed to a preliminary stimulation and subsequent depression of the sense organs for the perception of the violet and eventually of the blue rays of the spectrum, or more precisely to some obstruction to the regeneration of the substance in the retina which normally appreciates violet rays (Filehne). The clonic nature of the convulsions at once points to an affection of the brain rather than of the cord, but some discussion has arisen as to how far the cortical areas are involved and how far the symptoms may be explained by stimulation of the basal ganglia. The latest investigators have come to the conclusion that the epileptiform convulsions are due for the main part to the stimulation of the cortex, while the sudden contractions observed in the intervals of repose are ascribed to increased activity of the parts lying between the cerebral peduncles and the medulla oblongata. The gray matter of this division of the central nervous system also seems involved in the clonic movements, although these are only elicited in their full strength through action on the cerebral cortex (Kramer).

Although these parts of the central nervous system are the most susceptible to the action of santonin, large quantities also affect the cord after division of the medulla oblongata and produce tonic convulsions resembling those seen in strychnine poisoning.

The medullary centres seem to be comparatively little affected by santonin, the respiration being interfered with during the spasms, but returning to its ordinary rate and strength during the intervals. The

[1] The view formerly held that the yellow vision was due to a yellow pigmentation of the vitreous humor or the retina is undoubtedly erroneous.

circulation is altered only by the asphyxia, and the heart continues to beat long after the respiration has ceased.

Santonin undergoes some oxidation in the tissues and is excreted in the fæces and urine in several forms, two of which have been examined by Jaffe and found to be oxysantonins. The urine and sometimes the fæces have a deep yellow color, which changes to red or purple when alkalies are added. A similar reaction is obtained from the urine after the administration of chrysophanic acid, as in rhubarb or senna, and a number of reactions are given to distinguish between these two pigments, which, however, it can scarcely be necessary to do frequently.

Thus the red of chrysophanic acid is permanent, while that of the santonin pigment fades after a time, and reducing agents, such as zinc, remove the former, and not the latter, while barium and calcium precipitate the chrysophanic and not the santonin pigment.

Santonin was formerly credited with some cholagogue and diuretic action, but more accurate investigations have shown that it has no such effects.

According to Harnack and Hochheim, santonin lowers the temperature in most animals by increasing the loss of heat through dilation of the cutaneous vessels; it resembles in this respect several other convulsive poisons investigated by these authors.

Santonin is universally used as a remedy for the round worm, Ascaris lumbricoides, and most clinicians believe that it has a specific poisonous action on these animals, and that its undoubted effects are due to its killing them. In experiments on the entozoa outside the body, however, von Schroeder found that santonin solutions were by no means fatal to them, and he explains their therapeutic effects by supposing that santonin renders the intestine so unpleasant an abode for the parasites that they migrate from it voluntarily into the large bowel, and are carried out by the purgative. Another explanation is that the ascarides are stimulated to active movements or convulsions, and are then hurried through the intestine by its peristaltic contractions, while the latest investigator supposes that the santonin is dissolved by the gastric juice and is then precipitated in a state of fine division, in which he believes that it is much more fatal to the parasites than when in solution. Von Schroeder's explanation is the one most widely received. The worms are often found in active movement when passed after santonin, although this movement ceases very soon afterwards from the exposure to cold.

The alkaline salts of santoninic acid act in precisely the same way as santonin itself, but are less suitable as anthelmintics owing to their greater solubility and rapid absorption.

A number of santonin derivatives have been examined by Coppola, who found that many of them produced effects which were practically identical with those of santonin, while in others the stage of convulsions was preceded by one of depression. Santoninoxin, a compound of santonin and hydroxylamin, and calcium santoninate have been proposed as substitutes for santonin in therapeutics, but have not received much attention as yet.

Preparations.

Santonica (U. S. P.), Levant wormseed, the unexpanded flower-heads of Artemisia pauciflora.

Santoninum (U. S. P., B. P.), $C_{15}H_{18}O_3$, a neutral principle derived from Santonica. Santonin is colorless when freshly prepared, but assumes a yellow color when exposed to the light. This does not seem to impair its activity materially, but it is preferable to avoid it by keeping santonin in amber-colored vials. Dose, 0.03–0.1 G. (½–2 grs.).

Trochisci Santonini, each containing 0.03 G. (½ gr.) of santonin, U. S. P.; each containing 1 gr., B. P.

Therapeutic Uses.—Santonin is used almost exclusively to remove Ascaris lumbricoides from the intestine. It is much less effective against tapeworm or other intestinal parasites. The lozenges are generally prescribed, one for children, two for adults, U. S. P., while the dose of the B. P. lozenge is one for an adult. Lewin recommends the administration of santonin in oily solutions, especially in castor oil, as less is absorbed from the stomach than when it is prescribed in other ways. The bowel ought to be emptied by suitable diet and a laxative before the santonin is administered, and a sharp purge ought to be given 2–4 hours afterwards in order to bring away the entozoa.

Santonin has been advised in some retinal diseases, but the results have generally been unsatisfactory.

Poisoning.—In cases of poisoning, the stomach and bowel ought to be evacuated as rapidly as possible by the use of emetics or of the stomach tube, and of purgatives. The convulsions may be controlled by the use of chloroform or ether. The xanthopsia requires no treatment, and is not to be regarded as heralding any dangerous developments, as it occurs to some degree in the great majority of cases in which santonin is administered.

Bibliography.

Binz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., vi., p. 300.
Lewin. Berl. klin. Woch., 1883, p. 170.
Luchsinger. Pflüger's Arch., xxxiv., p. 293.
Jaffe. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xvii. Suppl., p. 7. Ztsch. f. phys. Chem., xxii., p. 538.
Falck. Deutsche Klinik, 1860, p. 257.
Kramer. Ztschr. f. Heilkunde, xiv., p. 303.
Turtschaninow. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiv., p. 208.
v. Schroder. Ibid., xix., p. 290.
Monaco. Arch. Italien., xxvi., p. 216.
Harnack. Zts. f. klin. Med., xxv., p. 16; Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlvi., pp. 272, 447.
Rose. Virchow's Arch., xvi., p. 233; xviii., p. 15; xix., p. 522; xx., p. 245; xxviii., p. 30.
Hüfner. Arch. f. Ophthalmol., xiii., p. 309.
Preyer. Pflüger's Arch., i., p. 299.
Coppola. Maly's Jahresbericht, xvii., p. 92.
Filehne. Pflüger's Arch., lxxx., p. 96.

Spigelia.

Another remedy used in cases of round worm is pink root, Spigelia maritima (U. S. P.), the active principle of which is unknown, although an alkaloid, *spigeline*, is said to occur in it. Occasional cases of poisoning have

been observed, especially in children, the symptoms consisting in flushing and dryness of the skin, often with some œdematous swelling of the face, delirium and sopor followed by dimness of sight or temporary blindness. In frogs spigelia appears to depress the brain and spinal cord, and the heart beats more slowly and weakly, while in rabbits the most prominent symptoms arise from the breathing, which becomes slow and labored and finally ceases in a convulsive attack. In the dog and cat its injection is followed by vomiting, great weakness and incoördination of the movements, restlessness, rapid dyspnœic respiration and finally by stupor, coma and death from failure of the respiratory centre.

Spigelia (U. S. P.), the rhizome and roots of Spigelia maritima.

Extractum Spigeliæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

The fluid extract is used to remove round worms, which it seems to effect in very much the same way as santonin. It ought to be preceded and followed by a purge.

One of the volatile oil series which is frequently used as an anthelmintic is that obtained from **Chenopodium** ambrosioides or American worm-seed.

Chenopodium (U. S. P.), American Wormseed, the fruit of Chenopodium ambrosioides, var. anthelminticum.

Oleum Chenopodii (U. S. P.), 0.2–0.3 c.c. (3–5 mins.). The oil is administered on sugar or in an emulsion.

PART II.

ORGANIC SUBSTANCES CHARACTERIZED CHIEFLY BY THEIR ACTION AFTER ABSORPTION.

I. NARCOTICS OF THE METHANE SERIES.

ALCOHOL-CHLOROFORM GROUP.

A LARGE number of the derivatives of the methane series are characterized by the production of depression of the central nervous system, more especially of the cerebrum, and some of them are perhaps the most extensively employed of all drugs. With the exception of alcohol, which has been known since prehistoric times, the use of the members of this series scarcely extends over more than half a century.

From the large number of substances belonging to this division of organic chemistry which are possessed of narcotic powers, it would seem that the combination of carbon and hydrogen in the form characteristic of this series is possessed of a special relation to the protoplasm of the nerve cells, or in other words, carbon radicles combined in open chain form are possessed of specific depressant powers. As a general rule the greater the number of these radicles contained in the chain, the more powerful the action, provided the substance is not changed so as to become incapable of absorption. Thus, in the alcohol series a regularly ascending scale of toxicity is met, commencing with methyl and passing through ethyl, propyl, butyl and amyl alcohols, of which each succeeding member is more poisonous than its predecessor. The later members of the series, however, become less soluble in the body fluids, are less easily absorbed and therefore less toxic.

The toxicity of these bodies may also be reduced or removed completely by the presence of acid-forming groups. Thus ethyl alcohol ($CH_3—CH_2OH$) is a powerful depressant, but propionic acid ($CH_3—CH_2—COOH$) is entirely inactive in this direction. Again, one hydroxyl group in a substance does not remove its narcotic action, while two hydroxyls reduce it very considerably or may destroy it entirely; thus ethyl alcohol ($CH_3—CH_2OH$) is probably quite as active as ethane ($CH_3—CH_3$), but glycol ($CH_2OH—CH_2OH$) is almost inactive. A still more striking example of the effects of several hydroxyl groups is seen in the comparison of propyl alcohol ($CH_3—CH_2—CH_2OH$) with glycerin ($CH_2OH—CHOH—CH_2OH$), the former being a powerful depressant, while the latter is practically devoid of any such action on the central nervous system. Compounds of the fatty series may also lose their characteristic effects by their combination with more active radicles. Thus ethane (C_2H_6) is a member of the narcotic series, but ethyl nitrite

($C_2H_5O—NO$) cannot be classed with it, because the —O—NO group has a very powerful and entirely different effect; very small quantities of ethyl nitrite are required to produce the nitrite effect, so that the depressant action is pushed into the background. Members of the methane series often lose their depressant action when combined with nitrogen so as to form substituted ammonia. Thus trimethylamine ($N(CH_3)_3$) has no depressant action, although each of the methyl radicles alone would possess it. Again, the substitution of a member of the aromatic series for one of the fatty substances sometimes changes the action from that characteristic of the alcohol-chloroform group to that of the benzol series. For example, ether ($C_2H_5—O—C_2H_5$) is one of the most valuable anæsthetics, but if one ethyl radicle be substituted by phenyl ($C_6H_5—O—C_2H_5$), it loses this property entirely. Others, however, retain their depressant action, as, for example, acetophenone ($C_6H_5—CO—CH_3$).

A very interesting hypothesis has recently been suggested by Meyer[1] and Overton[2] to explain why so many of the bodies of this series act as narcotics. Practically all of them are more soluble in lecithin and cholesterin than in water and accordingly when they reach the blood they tend to accumulate in the nerve cells, which are rich in cholesterin and lecithin. Here they may be supposed to partially dissolve these constituents, or, at any rate, to change their relations to the rest of the nerve cells and this derangement of their normal condition leads to impairment of the function of these cells, or narcosis. But many other substances (*e. g.*, many of the benzol derivatives) possess these physical properties equally with the members of the methane series, and yet induce no narcosis proper, so that though the physical characters of these drugs may probably be important factors in their action, they cannot be held to determine it solely.

It is impossible to enumerate here all the substances of this series which possess more or less depressant action on the nerve centres. A very large number of them have been the subject of investigation, but only a few of them have become established remedies.

Among the *hydrocarbons* the fifth, **Pentane,** and the eighth, **Octane,** have been proposed as anæsthetics for short operations, but have never received an extensive trial. Some of the *unsaturated hydrocarbons* have also been suggested, such as **Amylene,** which was introduced by Snow, but was found to vary exceedingly in its properties, and proved to be a mixture of several isomers. One of these has lately been isolated and recommended for short operations under the name of **Pental** ($(CH_3)_2=C=CH-CH_3$). Another unsaturated hydrocarbon which has been shown to possess narcotic properties is **Acetylene,** but its action on the heart is said to preclude its use in practical therapeutics.

Among the *alcohols*, **Ethyl alcohol** (C_2H_5HO) stands preëminent from its extensive use in therapeutics as well as from its importance in dietetics and as a poison. Other alcohols, however, have been found to resemble it in action. Thus Methyl alcohol is weaker, while Propyl and Butyl alcohols are stronger, but the symptoms produced by each are practically identical. The only other alcohol that has been introduced into therapeutics is **Amylene hydrate,** or tertiary isoamyl alcohol ($(CH_3)_2C(OH)CH_2CH_3$), which has been recommended as a hypnotic.

[1] Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlii., p. 109 and xlvi., p. 338.
[2] Studien u. d. Narkose. Jena, 1901.

The *ethers* contain one very important member in **Ethyl ether** ($(C_2H_5)_2O$), which is perhaps the best anæsthetic in use.

The *aldehydes* possess narcotic properties, but ordinarily are irritant and of disagreeable odor, so that they have not been used in therapeutics.[1] **Paraldehyde** ($C_6H_{12}O_3$), a polymer of ordinary aldehyde, is, however, one of the newer hypnotics. Several derivatives of the aldehydes have been introduced, such as **Methylal** ($HCH(OCH_3)_2$) and **Acetal** ($CH_3CH(OC_2H_5)_2$). Another important aldehyde derivative is **Sulphonal** ($(CH_3)_2C(SO_2C_2H_5)_2$), which has received considerable attention of late years as a hypnotic. Two analogous compounds, **Trional** and **Tetronal**, in the first of which one, in the second both methyl groups are replaced by ethyl, are said to be more powerful than sulphonal.

The only member of the *ketones* which has received attention at the hands of therapeutists, is **Hypnone** ($C_6H_5COCH_3$), which has been used as a hypnotic.

The *esters*, or *ethereal salts*, have been but little used as depressants, and seem to be much weaker in action than the corresponding ethers.[2] Some of them, as amyl nitrite, owe their use not to the action of the alkyl radicle, but to the acid with which it is compounded, and are therefore included in another group. One ester which has been used as a narcotic in therapeutics, and to a much greater extent in animal experiments, is **Urethane**, the ethyl ester of carbamic acid ($CO(NH_2)(OC_2H_5)$). An analogous compound recently recommended as a hypnotic is **Hedonal** ($CO(NH_2)(OC_5H_{11})$), the carbamic ester of tertiary amyl alcohol.

The *acids* of the methane series possess little narcotic action as a general rule, and have not been used in therapeutics for this purpose, though butyric acid is said to have distinctly depressant effects on the central nervous system. When hydrogen atoms of these acids are replaced by chlorine or bromine, they acquire a much stronger action; thus acetic acid is practically devoid of narcotic action, while some of the chloracetic and bromacetic acids are narcotic. But their effects on the other organs of the body preclude their use in therapeutics.[3]

Some of the most important members of this series are *halogen substitution products*, formed by replacing one or more atoms of hydrogen in the simpler substances of the fatty series by chlorine. This substitution often increases the narcotic power to a very great extent: methane (CH_4) is practically not depressant, but if one, two or three of the hydrogen atoms in the molecule be substituted by chlorine, forming CH_3Cl, CH_2Cl_2 and $CHCl_3$, the narcotic power increases with each Cl added. The best known of these is **Chloroform** ($CHCl_3$), which is the most powerful anæsthetic in use. Other analogous compounds have also been employed as anæsthetics, as **Ethylene Chloride** ($CH_2Cl—CH_2Cl$) and **Ethylidine Chloride** ($CH_3—CHCl_2$), but these have fallen into disuse. Another important substitution product is **Chloral**, or chloral hydrate ($CCl_3CH(OH)_2$), which is the hydrate of trichloraldehyde (CCl_3CHO). Another analogous compound used occasionally is **Butyl chloral**, or **Croton chloral** ($C_3H_4Cl_3CH(OH)_2$), and a very recent addition to the group is **Chloretone** or **Aneson** (trichlorpseudobutylalcohol or acetonechloroform, $CCl_3C(CH_3)_2OH$).

Several compounds of chloral have been recently introduced into therapeutics, such as **Chloralamide** ($CCl_3CHOH—NHCHO$), which is a combination of chloral with formamide, and **Chloralose** ($C_8H_{11}Cl_3O_6$), a compound of chloral and grape sugar.

It has already been mentioned that the substitution of chlorine for hydrogen in the acids endows them with a narcotic effect. Another example of

[1] Formaldehyde is used as a disinfectant. (See Formalin.)

[2] *Vogel*, Pflüger's Arch., lxvii., p. 141.

[3] *Mayer*, Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxi., pp. 97, 119. *Pohl*, ibid., xxiv., p. 142.

the alteration of the properties of a substance by the substitution of chlorine for hydrogen is offered by glycerin, which in itself inert, becomes depressant to the central nervous system when its hydroxyl radicles are replaced by chlorine.[1]

Some attempt has been made to introduce bromine instead of chlorine into the methane derivatives, because bromides are central nervous depressants, and it was hoped that a combination of the methane and the bromide effects could be thus obtained. But, as will be explained, the bromides owe their action to the bromide ion, which is not present in these organic compounds. **Ethyl bromide** (C_2H_5Br) has been used as an anæsthetic, and **Bromoform** ($CHBr_3$) as a narcotic, but only to a limited extent. The analogous compounds formed with iodine possess a powerful action which is different from that of the other methane derivatives, and which precludes their use as narcotics. (See Iodoform.)

The augmented effect of these halogen substitution derivatives has been explained by reference to a supposed depressant effect of chlorine and bromine upon the brain. But even though this were proved to be the case, it would not elucidate the matter, for chlorine is not set at liberty in the tissues when chloroform is inhaled, the molecule acting as a whole. (See page 24.)

The chlorine and bromine derivatives of methane are not only more powerful drugs, but also more powerful poisons than the ordinary compounds: much less chloroform is required to anæsthetize than methane, but much less is required to kill. In addition, these compounds, especially those containing chlorine, seem to have a more powerful action on the heart and circulation and on the metabolism than the others. In other words, the chlorine bodies have a wider field of activity and are more nearly general protoplasm poisons. (See Chloroform.)

All of the narcotics of the methane series resemble each other closely in their general action. This consists of a first stage of imperfect consciousness and confused ideas, followed by one of wild excitement, and eventually by complete unconsciousness, which may terminate in death. The second stage is much more marked after some of the series than after others, and is often entirely absent. It has given rise to the theory that these drugs stimulate the nerve cells before paralyzing them, but an alternative explanation is that the functions of control and inhibition are lessened, and the centres of motion are thus left free and act more strongly than normally. This question has been most discussed in regard to alcohol, and will receive greater attention under that heading. (See pages 133–135.)

The depression of the central nervous system induced by these bodies is in the majority of cases accompanied by an alteration of the circulation of the brain in the direction of congestion or anæmia, and it was formerly believed that these drugs induced depression by causing anæmia of the brain and thus starving the nerve cells. But this improbable explanation has been refuted by experiments in which all the blood of a frog was replaced by salt solution, and the brain cells thus deprived of nutrition before an anæsthetic was applied; chloroform then induced the same changes as in normal animals. There is no question at the present time that these bodies act directly on the

[1] *Marshall* and *Heath*, Journ. of Physiol., xxii., p. 38, and *Kionka*, Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., vii., p. 475, give a résumé of the relation of the chlorine substitutes to the simple methane derivatives.

nerve cells, or rather on the central part of the neurons. Binz suggested that the change was of the nature of a coagulation of the protoplasm, but this theory is not supported by microscopic investigation, and more recently histologists have been inclined to regard the effects of the central nervous depressants as associated with alterations in the distribution of the chromatin in the nerve cells. A simple explanation of nervous depression has been suggested in the retraction of the dendrites. These finer processes of the nerve cells are supposed to serve to maintain the connection between the individual cells during consciousness by forming ramifications between them, while it is suggested that in natural sleep and in unconsciousness in general, the dendrites are withdrawn, and the cells are thus cut off from intercommunication. Some changes which have been observed in the dendrites after narcotics might be explained in this way, but the explanation is only a hypothesis at present. There is, however, every probability that the nerve cell depressed by drugs undergoes changes similar to those of natural sleep and the changes in the brain circulation (anæmia) may be regarded as the result and not as the cause of the depression in both conditions.

While the members of this group resemble each other closely in their effects on the central nervous system, they are used for very different purposes in therapeutics and may therefore be discussed in three subgroups: 1, alcohol; 2, general anæsthetics, and 3, narcotics or hypnotics. It must be recognized, however, that there is no hard and fast line dividing these subgroups; for the anæsthetics, chloroform and ether, may be used in small quantities to produce rest and sleep, and would then, strictly speaking, be narcotics; while, on the other hand, chloral and sulphonal, which are generally used as hypnotics, give rise to complete anæsthesia when administered in large quantities.

I. Alcohol.

Ethyl alcohol (CH_3CH_2OH) has been known in an impure form since the earliest times, and as far back as the history of medicine extends, has been used as a drug. Its medicinal reputation has undergone many fluctuations, by many held to be a panacea, by others it has been considered of little or no value as a remedy, but of the greatest importance as a poison.

Alcoholic liquors are generally prepared by the fermentation of sugars, which either exist preformed in the fruits, or are derived from starch by a preliminary ferment action. The simple liquors (wines and beers) generally contain only a low percentage of alcohol (2–20 per cent.), and the stronger preparations (spirits) are prepared from them by distillation, which raises the percentage to 30–60 per cent. and at the same time removes the non-volatile constituents. Spirits and liquors are not, however, simple mixtures of alcohol and water but contain many other volatile substances, the character of which is little known, and which are called œnanthic ethers. Some of them have

been shown to be higher members of the alcoholic series, while others would seem to be of entirely different constitution. The name is derived from their giving the odor and taste, or bouquet, to wines.

Pure alcohol is obtained from these spirits by repeated distillation and by special measures designed to remove the water. It is seldom used in medicine, some form of spirits, wine, or beer being prescribed instead.

Action.—The value of alcohol in medicine depends upon three chief points: 1, its irritant local action; 2, its action on the central nervous system, and 3, its value as a food.

The **irritant action** is not so marked as that of many other substances, but is of much greater importance, owing to the habitual use of this drug. It is probably due at any rate in part to the withdrawal of water from the cells and is shown by the results of its application to the skin, to wounds and to the mucous membranes. Applied to the skin in sufficient concentration (*e. g.*, 60–90 per cent.), it produces redness, itching and a feeling of heat like other volatile and irritant substances, such as the volatile oils. Alcohol is, however, much less irritant and at the same time more volatile than these, so that unless its evaporation be prevented, it may produce a sensation of cold and have little or no irritant action; this is especially the case when dilute alcohol is used, no very distinct appearances of irritation of the skin being produced by solutions under 40–50 per cent. In ulcers and other unprotected surfaces, the irritant action is much greater and the cell division is accelerated, so that, judiciously applied, it may quicken the healing of such breaches of continuity. Concentrated solutions, however, cause a precipitation of the albumins, and act first as astringents and later as corrosives, until they are diluted by the fluids of the wound.

Its effects on mucous membranes are similar to those on wounds. In the mouth strong alcohol produces a burning, unpleasant sensation which passes to the throat and stomach when it is swallowed, and if the concentrated vapor be inhaled, it causes irritation and reflex closure of the glottis. The effects of alcohol on the digestive functions are so important that they will receive further attention (page 140).

The action of alcohol on the **Nervous Centres**, differs a good deal in individuals. In small quantities it generally produces a feeling of well-being and good-fellowship, along with increased confidence in the powers, mental and physical, of the subject of the experiment. Larger quantities are followed by a certain amount of excitement, marked by laughter, loquacity and gesticulation. The face becomes flushed and hot, the eyes brighter and livelier, the pulse is accelerated. Even at this stage self-control is partially lost and the will power is weakened. The speech may be brilliant, but it often betrays the speaker; the movements are more lively, but they are often undignified. The loss of self-control is often indicated further by furious outbursts of anger and unreasonableness, or by the indulgence in maudlin sentimentality and sensual fancies. The sense of responsibility and the power of

discrimination between the trivial and the important are lost, and the individual has no regard for the feelings of others or the ordinary conventions of life. If the bout be further continued, the movements become uncertain, the speech becomes difficult and stammering, the walk becomes a stagger, and a torpid slumber follows. Often nausea and vomiting set in, although these are entirely absent in some cases. On awaking from slumber, very great depression is generally suffered from, together with nausea and vomiting, and want of appetite, which may last for several days and is associated with all the symptoms of acute gastric catarrh.

Very large quantities of alcohol lead to a deep, torpid sleep, which eventually passes into total unconsciousness, resembling the condition in chloroform anæsthesia; the respiration becomes stertorous and slow, and the face, which has hitherto been flushed, becomes pale or cyanotic. This condition may last for several hours and end in death from failure of the respiration, but in other cases the anæsthesia becomes less deep, and after a very prolonged sleep the patient recovers. When the stage of anæsthesia is reached, it lasts very much longer than that produced by chloroform and ether. It is said that persons rarely or never recover if unconsciousness lasts longer than 10–12 hours after the drinking bout.

The effects of alcohol vary greatly, however, in different individuals and in the same individual at different times. One person is rendered sentimental, another bellicose, while in a third there may be no appearance of excitement, the first distinct symptom being profound slumber. When drinking is indulged in in company, the excitement stage is a very common phenomenon, but if alcohol is taken without the exhilarating accompaniments of bright lights and exciting companionship, it is much less frequently seen, and the question has therefore arisen how far the environment produces the excitement in alcoholic intoxication.

It may be stated at once that there exist two distinct views as to the action of alcohol on the central nervous system: the one stoutly upheld by Binz and his pupils, that alcohol first stimulates and then depresses the nerve cells; the other championed by Schmiedeberg, Bunge and their followers, that it depresses the central nervous system from the beginning. The symptoms of excitement require no explanation on the first theory, which is rather to be looked on as the natural expression of the facts observed. On the other hand, Schmiedeberg explains them as not due to true stimulation of the motor areas, but as the result of these areas being freed from control by the weakening of the highest functions of the brain — the will and self-restraint. Even the smallest quantities of alcohol tend to lessen the activity of the brain, the drug appearing to act most strongly, and therefore in the smallest quantities, on the most recently acquired faculties, to annihilate those qualities that have been built up through education and experience, the power of self-control and the sense of responsibility.

The question is a most difficult one to decide, for on the one hand it

has been shown that the simplest movement is the result of a combination of motor and inhibitory impulses from the brain, while on the other hand the measurement of the relative strength of these impulses is one of the most difficult problems of biology. The advocates of the stimulant action point to the confidence in their own powers exhibited by intoxicated persons, to the brilliancy of the after-dinner speech, and to the excitement stage as evidences of the increased activity of the brain. But their opponents question whether the confidence is accompanied by any really increased physical strength, and point out that the brilliancy of speech may be due to the environment and to the speaker having lost his habitual shyness and nervousness, and that the excitement is generally absent when the associations are different, or degenerates into a form which more distinctly resembles depression.

More definite evidence for or against the stimulant action of alcohol has therefore been sought by comparing the amount of work which can be done with and without it; and an apparent confirmation of Bunge's view has been found in the results of the use of alcohol by troops on the march, for repeated experience has shown that those regiments which were not supplied with alcohol marched farther and were in better condition at the end of the day than others to which it had been given. Forms of work requiring larger drafts upon the intelligence than the marching of soldiers are also performed less correctly with alcohol than without it; thus typesetters can do more work and make fewer errors when they abstain from its use. The capacity for work depends not so much upon the actual strength of the muscles as upon the condition of the brain, and these experiments are therefore generally quoted as evidence of the depressant action of alcohol. Their results are not incompatible with the view that alcohol primarily stimulates the nerve cells, however, for Binz and his followers allow that the stimulation is transient and is followed by depression, and if a sufficient time elapse after the alcohol is taken, the stage of depression is elicited and the total work may thus be reduced. A more exact method of examining the initial effects of alcohol on work is afforded by measuring at different intervals after the drug is given the work of which a muscle is capable before it is completely fatigued. This has been done in a number of experiments with the ergograph and the dynamometer, which have not all given the same result; the majority of the investigators hold, it is true, that the initial effect is to increase the capacity for work (Scheffer), but the number of experiments is comparatively small and the liability to error very great; besides, several authors are inclined to regard the increase as due not to the central action of the alcohol, but to its acting as a muscle food or affecting the peripheral nerves.

The measurement of intellectual work is, of course, much more difficult, and the results are very liable to misinterpretration, but Kraepelin found in a series of careful measurements of the simpler cerebral processes that the receptive and intellectual powers were weakened by very small quantities of alcohol, while the motor functions

seemed to be facilitated by small, and retarded by large quantities. For example, a person under even a small dose of alcohol makes more errors than usual in adding a row of figures and in reading a series of unconnected syllables and apparently recognizes letters and words somewhat more slowly. It is interesting to find that the subject of the experiment is quite unaware of the inferiority of his work and is often persuaded that it is unusually good. Kraepelin's latest investigations tend to show that this effect of alcohol lasts much longer than is generally recognized, the mental equilibrium being reinstated only 12–24 hours after even very moderate indulgence in alcohol. He leans to the view that alcohol weakens and paralyzes some parts of the brain, while primarily stimulating others, but brings forward no new evidence that this stimulation is not fictitious and really due to the removal of the barriers of self-restraint by the paralysis of higher areas. Jacobj found that small differences in weight could be estimated more correctly under alcohol than in the normal condition of the brain, and this would seem at first sight to indicate primary stimulation, but he believes that the true explanation is a retardation of the cerebral processes. The sensation of pain is also found to be lessened by even small quantities of alcohol. No unequivocal evidence of the initial stimulant action on the brain has yet been adduced, for each new feature may be interpreted as really due to the depression of controlling or inhibitory functions. Of course, there is no absolutely convincing proof that no stimulation of the motor areas occurs, and no physiological proof of the existence even of controlling areas can be adduced, much less of their paralysis by alcohol. On the other hand, no other known drug stimulates the motor areas only, without increasing the activity of the lower parts of the system at some stage of its action, and the advocates of the stimulant action have to consider chloroform and ether also brain stimulants, for they cause a stage of excitement very similar to that produced by alcohol, and, in fact, have been used as habitual intoxicants.

Baratynsky has recently made an attempt to demonstrate experimentally the correctness of Schmiedeberg's view, that the excitement of poisoning with the fatty series is really due to depression of the controlling functions, and although the drugs he used were chloroform, urethane, chloralamide and sulphonal, his experiments may be mentioned here. He finds that frogs are first excited and then depressed by these poisons, but that if the parts of the brain anterior to the optic lobes be destroyed no excitement is evinced. Uninjured pigeons also develop excitement under alcohol and other fatty narcotics, but if the cerebrum be removed before the drug is administered no excitement is observed. But these results indicate merely that the excitement is cerebral in origin, without determining whether it is caused by the removal of inhibition or by true stimulation.

Acute alcoholic intoxication leads to very distinct alterations in the histological appearance of the cells of the central nervous system, which have been described by Dehio, Stewart and others. The chief change noted by them consists in replacement of the chromatin network by fine granules, which in turn seem to become dissolved in the general cytoplasm. Staining reagents, therefore, give rise to a diffused coloration of the cell rather than to localized masses of color, such as are seen in the normal cell. The dendrites are shortened and exhibit rounded nodosites along their course.

In the lower parts of the central nervous system the evidences of primary depression are less open to question. For example, the coördination of the movements suffers at an early stage in alcohol drinking, long before the generally recognized forms of lack of coördination, such as indistinct speech and staggering, appear. In the spinal cord alcohol causes a depression of the reflex irritability, which passes into complete paralysis some time before the respiration ceases.

The medulla oblongata is the last part of the central nervous system to be acted on by alcohol, or at any rate to undergo complete paralysis. The **Respiratory and Circulatory Centres** preserve their functions long after the occurrence of complete unconsciousness and the disappearance of the ordinary reflexes. The same question has been raised in regard to the respiratory centre, as has been already discussed in the consideration of the brain, and the same two opposing views have been upheld. These are of greater importance as regards the respiratory centre, because the advocates of the stimulation theory advise the use of alcohol in conditions of the respiration in which it is directly contraindicated if the other view be the correct one. The question here is apparently much more simple, because the activity of the respiratory centre can be estimated directly by measuring the number of the respirations and the amount of air inhaled during each; but a large number of such experiments have been performed with very varying results. If the number of the respirations be counted in a person in the excitement stage of alcoholic intoxication, it is often found to be much greater than normally, but this may be due to the muscular movements and need not indicate any direct action of the drug on the medullary centre. And, of course, this excitement stage is not elicited in therapeutics, and the value of alcohol as a respiratory stimulant must therefore be estimated in cases in which no such excitement is caused. A number of such estimations have been made in man and animals, and on the whole the evidence shows that in man even when no excitement is produced and in some instances even when sleep follows, the amount of air inhaled is larger than before the drug was administered (Jaksch, Zuntz and Berdez, Geppert, Weissenfeld, Wendelstadt). This may not indicate a direct stimulation of the respiratory centre, however, for the increase is often not greater than that following an ordinary meal and may therefore be attributed to the respiratory centre being indirectly affected by the activity of the stomach and intestine. And it is to be noted that alcohol may have more indirect effect on the respiration than ordinary food because it is so much more irritant to the stomach wall. These experiments failing to determine whether the respiratory centre is directly stimulated in man, another method has been employed by Loewy in which the excitability of the centre was estimated by its response to the stimulus of an increase of the carbonic acid in the blood. Unfortunately his experiments were too few to permit of general inferences, but they lend no support to the theory that the irritability of the centre is increased. There is therefore no sufficient

evidence that the respiratory centre is directly stimulated in man and the increase in the amount of air inhaled may be due to the peripheral action of alcohol.

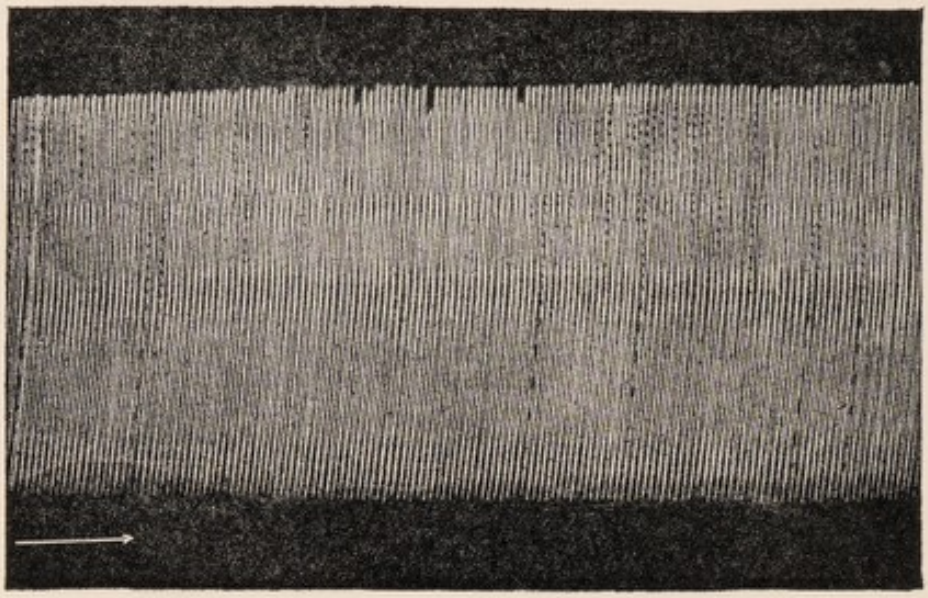
In the dog, no acceleration of the respiration occurs after alcohol, while in the rabbit, on the other hand, the respiration is much accelerated, and the amount of air inhaled shows a corresponding increase. Jacquet has attempted to show that this is due to the local action of the alcohol, and not to any direct effect on the nervous sytem, but his results have been disputed by Wilmanns; Singer also refuses to recognize the changes in the rabbit's respiration as an indication of direct action on the respiratory centre and is disposed to attribute them to the irritation of the stomach and the increased muscular activity which is rendered necessary by the loss of heat entailed by the dilatation of the cutaneous blood vessels. Besides, the respiratory mechanism of the rabbit seems to differ considerably from that of man and of the other mammals, for in the last stages of chloroform and ether poisoning a very remarkable acceleration of the respiration occurs, which would seem to be similar to the acceleration under alcohol, but can scarcely be supposed to be due to stimulation of the centre. This fact seems to invalidate any inferences as to the behavior of the human respiration drawn from that of the rabbit under these drugs.

In short, there is no unequivocal evidence that the increase in the respiration under alcohol in health is due to direct stimulation of the respiratory centre, while on the other hand, no depression of the activity of this centre occurs except at a late stage of alcohol poisoning. Alcohol is often said to slow the respiration in fever patients and to stimulate it in cases of shock. In the first case, however, there need be no direct action on the respiratory centre, for it seems much more likely that the improvement (when present at all) is due to the alcohol lessening the excitement through its narcotic action. The pathology of shock is so little understood that it would be useless to attempt to explain its therapeutics, but if, as is held by many, shock is a condition of great inhibitory activity, the action of alcohol may be explained by its depressant effects, while on the other hand, it is difficult to explain these two contradictory effects on the theory that alcohol is a stimulant.

The whole question might be supposed to possess merely theoretical interest; in cases in which the respiration is insufficient it would seem that it is of little moment whether it is improved by a direct increase in the activity of the centre, or by some peripheral action. This is not correct, however, for if the respiration is increased only to cope with the products of the augmented activity of the alimentary tract, the general economy may profit little. On the other hand, if the air inspired is augmented in a greater ratio than these products, as is the case when the centre is directly stimulated, the advantage to the organism is correspondingly great.

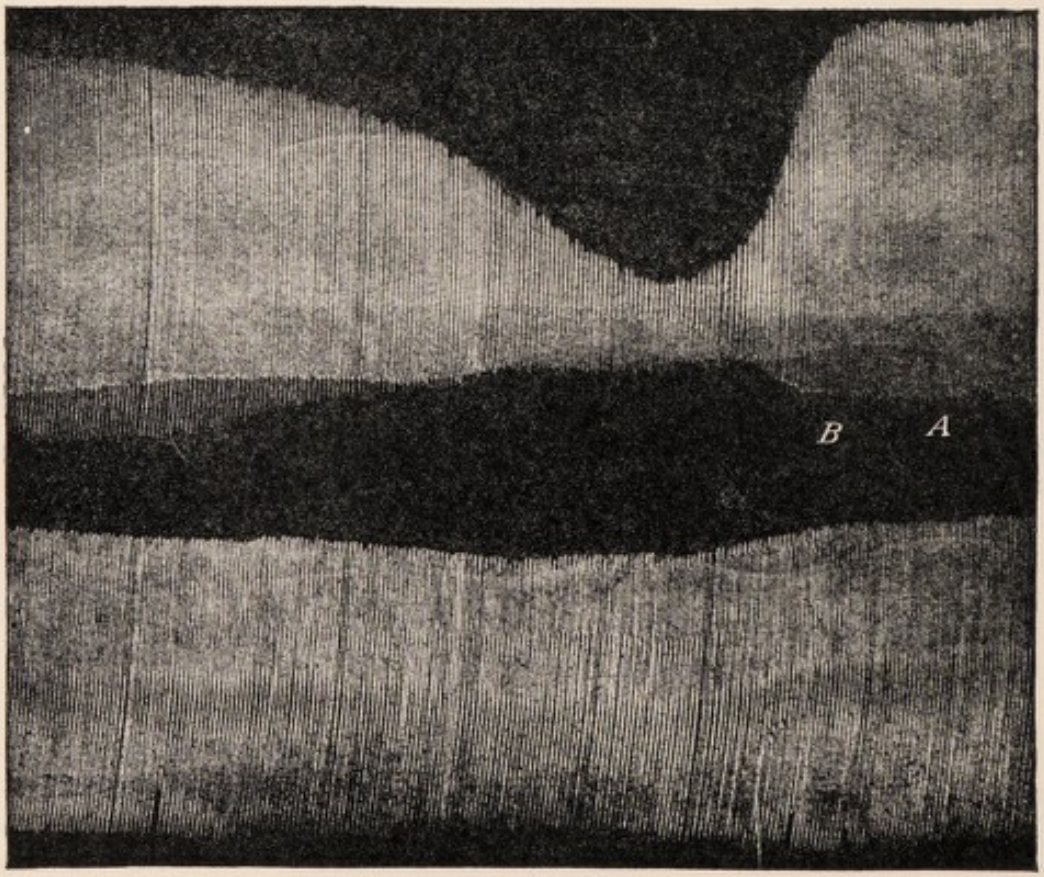
The action of alcohol on the **Circulation** is no less disputed than that on the respiration, and the same divergence exists in the statements of the supporters of the stimulation theory. The real foundation for this view is here again the acceleration of the pulse during the excitement of alcoholic intoxication, which may be due to the increased muscular effort and not to any direct action on the heart. Jacquet has shown that the pulse rate is unaltered by alcohol in normal cases, provided that no excitement be produced by the environment. In animals

FIG. 2.



Tracing of the dog's ventricle under alcohol. 8 c.c. (2 drs.) of 50 per cent. alcohol were injected into a vein during this tracing, but no effect whatever is visible in the movement of the heart. During systole the lever moves upwards, during diastole downwards. (The tracing is to be followed from left to right.)

FIG. 3.



Tracing of the movements of the ventricle (lower) and auricle (upper) of the dog when a large dose (20 c.c. or ⅔ oz.) of 50 per cent. alcohol is suddenly thrown into a vein. The levers move upwards during systole, downwards during diastole. *A*, normal. *B*, injection. The systole of the auricle is very much weakened, the diastole is less affected. The ventricular systole is comparatively little changed, although it also is a little weaker. The effect passes off very rapidly, so that at the end of the tracing both chambers have almost recovered. A very similar effect is seen under chloroform. (Fig. 9.) (The tracing is to be followed from right to left.)

alcohol has no effect on the pulse rate, unless given in very large quantities, when it produces effects similar to those described under chloroform and ether — weakening of the auricular systole, and later of the ventricular, with distention of both cavities and slowing. The effects of alcohol on the heart are, however, very much less marked than those of chloroform, for Dieballa found that 48 times as much alcohol as chloroform was required to modify the movements of the frog's heart, and that in order to bring it to a standstill 192 times as much alcohol was required.[1] Alcohol having been shown not to increase the rate of the heart, its advocates have begun to state that the force of the contraction is augmented, without however bringing forward any evidence of this worthy of attention. In animal experiments, it has been shown that the first effect of alcohol on the heart is lessened efficiency and weakness of the contractions. (Figs. 2 and 3.)

The flushing of the skin which occurs in alcoholic intoxication would seem to point to some vascular action, but it is impossible to say at present what the nature of this action is. It indicates dilation of the skin vessels, but whether this is of central or peripheral origin, whether due to stimulation of dilator centres or paresis of vaso-constrictors, is unknown. The widening of the blood path through this dilation is but slight, and produces little or no fall in the general blood-pressure. Very large quantities of alcohol cause a marked fall in the arterial tension, through weakening the vaso-constrictor centres and the heart muscle, but the quantities of alcohol required to cause any great fall in blood-pressure are far in excess of those used in therapeutics. It has been suggested that the widening of the arteries may in itself relieve the heart by lessening the resistance against which it has to contract, but it has yet to be proved that any marked dilation of the vessels occurs before the direct action on the heart muscle. Some evidence of this is forthcoming, it is true, for Hammeter found the velocity of the blood current increased by alcohol, but he does not state the quantity used in his experiments.

The slowing of the heart which often follows the administration of alcohol in fever, would seem due rather to its diminishing the cerebral excitement than to its direct action on the heart. On the other hand, the alleged improvement of the circulation in shock may be due to a reflex from the irritant local action, and certainly would not seem to require any direct cardiac action for its explanation.

Alcohol has no effect on **Muscle** or on peripheral **Nerves** when it is carried to them by the blood, but when it is applied directly to muscle, it weakens its contractions. When a frog's nerve is exposed to alcoholic vapor its irritability is first increased and later diminished if the quantity applied be large enough. This fact has been used by Scheffer to explain the results of ergographic experiments in which the amount of work done under alcohol is at first augmented. He regards this augmentation as due not to central

[1] An exception to the general rule is found in the embryo heart of the chick, which according to Pickering, is much accelerated by the direct application of alcohol, but this may be due to the local irritant action rather than to the general effects.

stimulation, but to the peripheral processes being facilitated. The sensory fibres are said to be depressed before the motor.

The effect of alcohol on the **Digestion** has been the subject of many investigations, both from the clinical and the experimental point of view. There exists a widespread belief in both lay and medical circles that small quantities of alcohol taken before a meal increase the appetite, while after food they accelerate the digestion. It is obvious that alcohol may affect digestion either by altering the activity of the ferments in the digestive canal, or by altering the secretion, movement, or absorption of the stomach and intestine. The digestive power of the *ferments* outside the body has been found to be unaltered or slightly increased when alcohol is present in very small quantity. In a solution of 5–10 per cent. of alcohol or of spirits, however, the gastric juice digests very much more slowly than normally, and the pancreatic secretion is affected prejudicially by even smaller quantities. (Chittenden and Mendel.) Very large quantities of alcohol precipitate the proteids, but it is unlikely that sufficient alcohol to produce this effect ever remains in the stomach for any length of time. The malt liquors and wines are much more detrimental to the digestive ferments than pure alcohol or spirits, and the augmentation of the activity of the ferments is so slight in any case that it does not seem likely that it plays any important rôle in the effects of alcohol on the stomach.

The presence of alcohol in the mouth causes (according to Chittenden, Mendel and Jackson) a very appreciable increase in the secretion of the saliva, presumably by reflex action. As regards the action on the *stomach wall*, it is to be remembered that alcohol, even in comparatively dilute solution, is an irritant, and therefore leads to increased activity of the cells, a more active circulation in the organ, and probably to a more rapid secretion of both acid and solids of the gastric juice. But apart from this local action on the stomach, it appears to exert a specific action on the secretion after its absorption into the circulation. For when it is injected into the dog's rectum, a profuse secretion from the gastric mucous membrane follows, and when part of the stomach is isolated from the rest of the organ, so that alcohol given by the mouth fails to enter it, this part still shares in the secretion. According to Radzikowski, the pepsin secretion is not always correspondingly augmented, the alcohol not accelerating the formation of pepsin from propepsin but merely leading to the secretion of the pepsin preformed in the cells. Similar effects have been obtained in man by Spiro, who administered alcohol by the rectum. It has been further demonstrated that the absorption of fluids from the stomach and bowel is much accelerated by the addition of alcohol (Brandl, Scanzoni, Farnsteiner, Tappeiner), and the movements of the stomach are also augmented by moderate quantities. (Klemperer, Batelli.)

Digestion in the stomach may thus be influenced in two opposite directions when alcohol is administered in the usual form of wine, spirits, or beer. The action on the ferments is deleterious while the changes in the stomach wall, the increased secretion and movement and the

small doses
deleterious ferments
+ secretion + movement + absorption
partly direct. partly reflex.

accelerated absorption, are beneficial in many cases. These two opposing factors may neutralize each other, as in the dog in which the rate of digestion is scarcely altered, the retarding effects of alcohol on the proteolysis being compensated for by the more abundant secretion of the juice, which continues after the alcohol is absorbed, and therefore after its deleterious effects on the fermentation have disappeared. (Chittenden, Mendel and Jackson.) In man the result varies, the one factor predominating in some cases, the other in others. Thus, while Kretschy and Buchner found that the digestion of proteids in the human stomach was distinctly retarded by alcohol and beer, Eichenberg, Wolffhardt and others state that small quantities of alcohol or wine accelerate the digestion, and Gluzinsky came to the conclusion that as long as alcohol remains in the stomach the digestion is retarded, but that after its absorption the digestion progresses more rapidly than if no alcohol had been given. Zuntz and Magnus-Levy have shown that the addition of beer to the dietary does not affect the absorption and utilization of the food by the tissues. It is not unlikely that the taste has some influence on the result, that in those who enjoy the taste of alcohol, it induces a more rapid secretion and an improved digestion, while in those to whom it is disagreeable, the secretion is less altered.

The divergence of opinion exists only in regards to the effects of small quantities, for all are agreed as to the deleterious action of any but moderate doses of alcohol on the digestion. After large quantities the irritation of the stomach wall is so great that nausea and vomiting are induced. There is every reason to suppose that this is due to the local irritation, and not to the action of the absorbed alcohol on the nervous centres. A large dose of concentrated alcohol sometimes leaves evidence of its irritant action in redness and injection of the mucous membrane and, it is said, in ecchymoses, but in most cases of fatal poisoning no such appearances are to be observed after death.

Is Alcohol a Food? — This has long been discussed, and that with more passion and prejudice than are generally elicited by pharmacological questions. It was formerly supposed that the alcohol absorbed from the stomach was excreted unchanged by the lungs, skin and kidneys, and therefore gave up no energy to the body in its passage through it. But it has been shown that only the small amount of from 5–10 per cent.[1] of the ingested alcohol is really excreted in this way, and that mainly by the kidneys and lungs, the skin taking practically no part in the excretion. The rest of the alcohol absorbed from the stomach and bowel, amounting to over 90 per cent., undergoes combustion. The fact that none of the products of the combustion have been isolated from the body does not invalidate this statement, for the corresponding products of sugar are not known, but there is no

[1] Recent investigations suggest that even this is too high a valuation for the alcohol excreted and that only 2–3 per cent. of that ingested escapes oxidation. In particular there seems reason to question whether anything more than traces escape by the lungs. A very small quantity appears in combination with glycuronic acid in the urine of some animals, notably the rabbit.

doubt that sugar is oxidized in the body.[1] According to Grehant's recent work, the oxidation of alcohol progresses slowly, appreciable amounts being found in the blood twenty-four hours after its ingestion; this accords with Kraepelin's statement that its effect on the brain can be detected for 12–24 hours. In undergoing combustion alcohol gives up energy to the body, and therefore is technically a food. This statement has met with a great deal of opposition, and the mere fact that alcohol gives up energy to the body does not constitute it an advisable food in all conditions. For example, the question might be raised whether alcohol does not require an amount of energy for its absorption equal to that liberated by its combustion, or whether its action on the nervous centres does not produce a greater waste of force than the food itself supplies. Both of these have been answered by experiments in which the carbonic acid excretion of the body has been measured before and after alcohol. Zuntz and Berdez and Geppert have shown by this method that after alcohol is taken, a slight rise of 5–10 per cent. occurs in the output of carbonic acid; that is, a small amount of extra combustion goes on, a certain amount of energy is required for the absorption, but this is not greater than that required for the absorption of any other form of food. And the total amount of carbonic acid excreted in 24 hours is not appreciably altered by alcohol, so that alcohol taken in addition to the ordinary food is either itself transformed into tissue, or undergoes oxidation instead of some substance which in turn is used to build up the body. Strassmann has shown that animals that receive alcohol tend to lay on more fat than others receiving the same food without alcohol, and this is in accord with the common observation of the obesity of alcohol drinkers. Alcohol, therefore, acts as a substitute for fats and carbohydrates in the food to some extent.

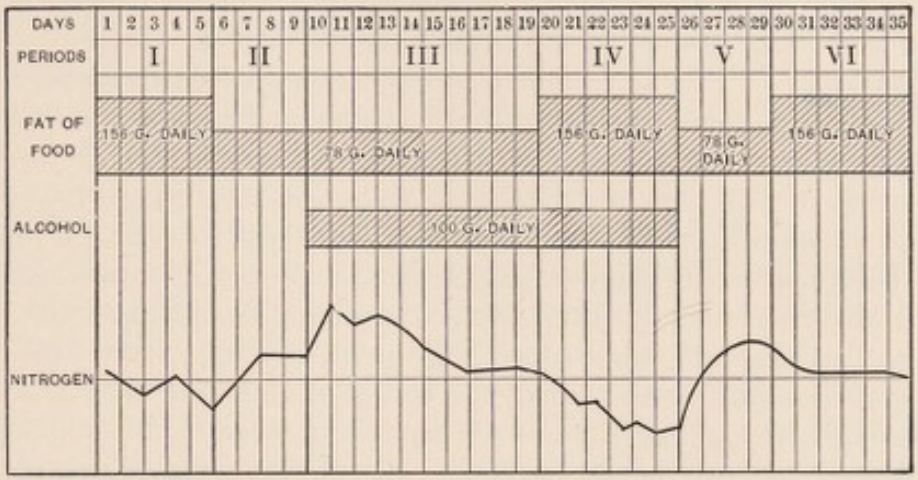
It has long been recognized that when insufficient fat and carbohydrate is supplied to the body, the proteids are drawn upon to make good the deficiency and the nitrogen eliminated rises accordingly. On the other hand, when the fats and carbohydrates of the food are increased, the organism economizes its proteid and the nitrogen tends to fall. This is the most accurate method of testing the food value of non-nitrogenous substances, and alcohol has been the subject of a number of such investigations. The divergent results have given rise in the last few years to a series of experiments which promise to become classical for the extraordinary patience and conscientiousness exhibited by those engaged in them as well as for the complete agreement in the results obtained by investigators who approached the subject with opinions which were diametrically opposed. These experiments, which may be cited as models of investigations in metabolism, were performed

[1] It has been suggested that the oxidation of alcohol in the body may not give rise to the same products as its oxidation in the chemical laboratory. If aldehyde were formed it would be excreted in part by the lungs and kidneys, for aldehyde injected into the blood at once appears in the breath and urine. Acetic acid has never been identified with certainty after alcohol, but formic acid is excreted after methyl alcohol, and it therefore seems probable that ethyl alcohol is oxidized to acetic acid immediately, and that this at once undergoes further decomposition.

by Neumann, Atwater and Benedict, and Rosemann and his pupils. The results may best be illustrated by an account of Neumann's first experiment.

This lasted 35 days divided into six periods. The proteids of the food and the carbohydrates remained constant throughout while alcohol was substituted for part of the fat for some time (see Fig. 4). Dur-

FIG. 4.



The effect of alcohol on nitrogen elimination. The wave-line represents the nitrogen excreted. It rises rapidly in the second period when the fat of the food was reduced to one half, but soon falls in the third period where alcohol was substituted. 100 g. of alcohol is chemically equivalent to 78 g. of fat. (After NEUMANN.)

ing the first five days, the nitrogen excreted was practically equal to that of the food (nitrogenous equilibrium), while during the next four days one half of the fat of the food was omitted and the immediate result was an increase in the nitrogen excreted, indicating that the proteids of the body were being drawn upon to make good the deficit in the fat of the food. The next ten days a quantity of alcohol chemically equivalent to the fat deficit was taken and the nitrogen elimination slowly fell to the normal (equilibrium). In the first five days of this period, however, the nitrogen remained high, showing that alcohol did not at first replace the fats completely. In the fourth period of six days, the same amount of fat was given as at first, while the alcohol was continued, and the nitrogen fell much below the amount ingested ; *i. e.*, the alcohol again led to a saving of the proteids. Next, both alcohol and fat were omitted for four days and the proteid tissues were again drawn upon. Finally the original diet was resumed and the nitrogenous equilibrium was at once restored. From this experiment Neumann drew the conclusion that alcohol can replace a chemically equivalent amount of fat in the dietary, for otherwise the nitrogen would not have returned to the normal toward the end of the third period ; and alcohol given along with a sufficient dietary leads to a further economy of the proteids just as additional fat would ; otherwise the nitrogen would not have fallen below the point of equilibrium in the fourth period. Certain objections which were made to this experiment by Rosemann

have been refuted by his own work and by Neumann's, so that both investigators are now in accord.

The final result of all these investigations is that alcohol can take the place of some of the fat in the food, and leads to the same economy of proteid as the ordinary non-nitrogenous constituents of the dietary. The first three or four days during which alcohol is substituted for fat it has little or no tendency to economize the proteids, but this is true of other forms of food also, any sudden change in the non-nitrogenous food leading to a temporary increase in the nitrogen excreted, which persists until the tissues have become accustomed to the new dietary.

Metabolism. — It was formerly supposed that alcohol economized the body tissues in some ill-defined way, by means of a direct action on the protoplasm of the cells; as it was expressed, alcohol lessened the combustion of the tissues. There is no reason to suppose that alcohol in ordinary quantities has any action on the tissues save as a food, for, as has been mentioned, the oxidation of the tissues as measured by the oxygen absorbed and the carbonic acid exhaled is only affected as it is by any other food. When very large quantities of alcohol are taken, and depression and sleep follow, the combustion of the body is reduced, not through any action on the protoplasm generally, but through the muscular movements being lessened. In the same way, during the excitement stage, the carbonic acid exhaled is doubtless much increased, because more energy and more of the body tissues is used up in the violent movements. Of course, the oxidation of alcohol by the tissues saves fat from combustion, and it is possible that some bodies which would normally be oxidized in the organism may pass through it unchanged in the same way. Thus it is stated that less benzol is oxidized in animals under the influence of alcohol than in unpoisoned ones, and this is to be explained by the energy, which would ordinarily be employed in oxidizing the benzol, being diverted to the combustion of the alcohol. The uric acid excretion does not seem to be changed in amount by alcohol even when given in large quantities. Paton and Eason found that the proportion borne by the urea to the total nitrogen of the urine is lower when alcohol is administered and infer from this that the function of the liver is disturbed.

The **Temperature** of the body falls somewhat after the administration of alcohol, but this is not due to any diminution in the oxidation and in the heat formed, but to the greater output of heat from the dilation of the skin vessels. The fall in temperature is comparatively slight, seldom being more than $\frac{1}{4}$–1° C., but it would seem that exposure to cold causes a greater fall in the temperature after alcohol than in normal conditions; this is perhaps due to the temperature-regulating mechanism being rendered less sensitive by alcohol.

The fall in temperature produced by alcohol is generally accompanied by a feeling of heat, and a thermometer applied to the skin may actually show a rise of several degrees, because more warm blood flows through the dilated vessels. If much excitement and movement follow

the ingestion of alcohol, no fall in the temperature may result, the increased heat formed during the movement compensating for the increased output, and in some cases a rise of temperature occurs from the same cause. Very large quantities of alcohol may lead to a fall in temperature of 3–5° C., owing to the lessened movements during unconsciousness.

The alcohol which escapes combustion in the tissues is excreted by the kidneys and perhaps by the lungs. Traces are sometimes found in the sweat and milk, but there is no foundation for the legend that children may be intoxicated, or acquire a taste for strong drink from the alcohol absorbed in the milk of a drunken mother or wet-nurse. The amount and quality of the milk are unaffected by the administration of alcohol (Rosemann).

Although alcohol seems to increase the urine to some extent, it cannot be said to be a powerful diuretic in itself, and it is quite unknown whether it acts on the kidney directly or not. Some of the spirituous liquors such as gin, produce a profuse secretion of urine, but this is due to their other constituents, and not to the alcohol.

Alcohol is generally credited with aphrodisiac powers, that is, with increasing sexual desire, although no less an authority than Shakespeare states that it prevents the consummation of sexual intercourse. The unquestionable tendency toward sexual excess observed in intoxication is due, not to any effects on the generative organs, but to the loss of self-control from the cerebral action of the poison.

Alcohol has comparatively little bactericidal action at the temperature of the body; 50–70 per cent. alcohol is said to be more destructive to germs than either stronger or weaker solutions. Not only is it of little practical value in itself as an antiseptic, but many bodies which are antiseptic when dissolved in water, have comparatively little effect when dissolved in alcohol. (Compare p. 48.)

It has long been recognized clinically that persons addicted to the use of alcohol show less resistance in acute disease and in operations accompanied by shock than more temperate individuals, and in very intemperate cases, the prognosis must be guarded in an attack which would ordinarily be accompanied with little danger. This has been confirmed by a number of experiments on animals which were subjected to treatment with alcohol and then inoculated with pathogenic germs (Laitinen). The results have invariably shown a greater susceptibility to infection and a greater mortality than in control animals which had received no alcohol. A similar effect was observed when toxines were injected instead of bacteria, and great difficulty was encountered in rendering animals immune to the diphtheria toxin if they had previously been treated with alcohol. This has been attributed to pathological conditions induced in various organs and in evidence of this it is stated that the alkalinity of the blood is reduced in these cases.

Repeated doses of alcohol produce tolerance, which, although not so great as that acquired for morphine and nicotine, involves the pre-

scription of double or triple doses, in persons addicted to drinking. The close relationship between the narcotics of the fatty series is indicated by the fact that much more chloroform or ether than usual is required to anæsthetize persons in whom a tolerance for alcohol has been established.

The **other alcohols** are mainly of interest as impurities of the preparations of ethyl alcohol. They all resemble it in their general effects, but differ from it in toxicity; thus the poisonous dose becomes smaller with each CH_2 added, propyl alcohol is more powerful than ethyl, butyl than propyl, and amyl than any of them. Ethyl alcohol, on the other hand, is more poisonous than methyl, but the latter has a much more prolonged action, apparently owing to its slower oxidation in the body. Amyl alcohol, or fusel oil, is present in small quantity in most forms of spirits, especially when these are freshly distilled or "raw." It resembles ethylic alcohol in general, but is more irritant locally, and is believed by some authorities to have more deleterious effects in chronic poisoning than pure ethylic alcohol. This is not based on any very satisfactory evidence, however, and almost all the characteristic symptoms of chronic alcoholism have been produced in animals by pure ethyl alcohol.

Preparations.

Alcohol (U. S. P.) contains 91% of alcohol (C_2H_5HO) by weight.

Alcohol Absolutum (U. S. P., B. P.), absolute alcohol, contains not more than 1%, by weight, of water.

Alcohol Deodoratum (U. S. P.) contains 92.5%, by weight, of alcohol.

Alcohol Dilutum (U. S. P.) contains about 41%, by weight, of alcohol.

Spiritus Rectificatus (B. P.), rectified spirit, contains 90 parts of pure alcohol, by volume, and 10 parts of water (85.65%, by weight, of alcohol). There are four official dilutions in the B. P., containing 70, 60, 45 and 20 per cent. of alcohol by volume respectively.

Spiritus Frumenti (U. S. P.), whiskey, contains 44–50% of alcohol by weight, and is obtained by distillation of an extract of fermented grain.

Spiritus Vini Gallici (U. S. P., B. P.), brandy, contains 39–47% of alcohol by weight, and is obtained by the distillation of fermented grape juice.

Mistura Spiritus Vini Gallici (B. P.), a mixture of brandy, cinnamon water, sugar and yolk of egg (about 17 per cent. alcohol). Dose, 1–2 fl. oz.

Non-pharmacopœial spirits, which are used occasionally in medicine, are gin and rum.

These **Spirits** all contain, roughly speaking, about one half as much alcohol as the three concentrated alcohols of the U. S. P. or the rectified spirits of the B. P. They contain, in addition to the ethyl alcohol proper, numbers of other volatile substances, some of which are alcohols of the same series as ordinary alcohols (butylic, amylic, etc.), while others are of entirely unknown constitution—the œnanthic ethers. Brandy and whiskey act very much in the same way as pure alcohol, but are more powerful than would be expected from the percentage of alcohol alone. When freshly distilled they are much more irritant than when kept for some years. Numerous other preparations containing large quantities of alcohol, such as the spirits of the volatile oils, might also be included in this group, but they are not used, as a general rule, for the same purposes as the alcoholic preparations proper, and their effects are in part due to the volatile oils contained. Some of them have, however, been employed as intoxicants instead of brandy or whiskey, and *Eau de Cologne* and other essences have gained a certain notoriety as a means of secret drinking among women. The liqueurs are too numerous to mention, and their composition is extremely diverse. Many of them contain considerable quantities of sugar, and the combination

of alcohol and sugar would seem peculiarly deleterious to the gastric mucous membrane. Others, such as cherry water (Kirschwasser), contain hydrocyanic acid, and the others various bodies of the volatile oil series. None of them seem to have any properties which would recommend their use in therapeutics.

The **Wines** and **Beers** are much weaker preparations of alcohol. The U. S. P. recognizes two forms of wine, VINUM ALBUM (white wine) and VINUM RUBRUM (red wine, claret). These both contain 10–14% of alcohol by weight, along with 1.5–3% of solid matter in the white wine and 1.6–3.5% in the red. The VINUM XERICUM (sherry) of the B. P. contains not less than 16% of alcohol by volume, while the VINUM AURANTII (B. P.), or orange wine, contains 10–12% by volume. In addition, the wines contain the same volatile constituents as brandy, although in smaller amounts. Other wines are prescribed in medicine, some of which, such as port (15–20%), contain larger, and others smaller quantities of alcohol (hock and champagne 8–13%). The red wines contain a form of tannic acid derived from the skin of the grapes, and both red and white often contain considerable quantities of acids, chiefly tartaric acid. The amount of sugar varies with the different wines, and in fact in wine from the same locality but of different seasons. These constituents may lend to the wines a local deleterious action on the stomach, more especially when they are taken habitually. Champagne and the other sparkling wines contain large quantities of carbonic acid, which acts as a stimulant to the gastric mucous membranes. Champagne is considered one of the most "stimulant" of alcoholic preparations, although it contains a very low percentage of alcohol compared with spirits, a fact which is of some significance in the explanation of the "stimulant" effects of alcohol.

The beers are not pharmacopœial, and are less frequently advised than the other preparations. They generally contain a comparatively small percentage of alcohol (4–10%), along with a large amount of solids. These solids consist mainly of dextrin, sugar and other starch products, which retard the absorption of the fluid, but are of considerable value as foods. The hops added in the preparation have probably no action save as bitter stomachics. The alcohol of beer is comparatively slowly absorbed owing to the colloid constituents, and this allows time for fermentation changes in the sugars and dextrins, which may perhaps account for the discomfort produced by malt liquors in persons of feeble digestion. When beers and porter do not derange the digestion, they are the most nutritive of all the alcoholic preparations, owing to the large amount of carbohydrates they contain.

Therapeutic Uses.—Alcohol is used *externally* in very dilute solution as a cooling application to the skin, and in threatening bedsores, in which it is often applied as brandy, whiskey, or dilute alcohol in order to harden the epidermis. It has been employed as an antiseptic and mild irritant to broken surfaces, and if applied to the skin in concentrated form, and especially if kept from evaporation, acts as a rubefacient and irritant. In the form of diluted claret it is not infrequently used as an astringent gargle.

The indications for the *internal* use of alcohol are ill defined, and cases which one physician would treat with alcohol, often seem to progress as favorably without it in the hands of another. It is not sufficiently recognized that this drug possesses several different qualities, as local irritant, narcotic and food and that while one property considered alone might render it unadvisable in a given condition, the deleterious effect induced in this direction may be more than counterbalanced by

its valuable results in other directions. At the same time it would be preferable in most cases to substitute for this conjunction of good and bad properties, other drugs with a less extended sphere of action. One series of symptoms which is often treated with wines is of gastric origin, and is manifested in want of appetite and enfeeblement of the digestion ; in some of these cases the alcoholic preparations seem to be beneficial, while in others they appear to be positively harmful. This may be explained by the effect of alcohol on secretion and absorption, only those cases in which secretion is deficient being benefited, but the tastes of the patient are also an important factor ; if he enjoys the taste and odor of wine, its administration may promote his appetite, while, on the other hand, if he has a distaste for wine, it will prove harmful. There is no question that the functions of the stomach are increased by pleasing, and retarded by unpleasant tastes and odors. In these cases "dry" wines are to be preferred, as the sugar of the sweet wines may irritate the stomach ; champagne may be used, and the wine ought to be given immediately before or during a meal.

Cases of hemorrhage, shock, and other forms of severe and sudden depression of the heart and central nervous system are very frequently treated by the administration of strong alcoholic preparations, such as brandy and whiskey, this treatment being based upon the belief that alcohol is a cardiac and respiratory stimulant, the grounds for which have already been examined. It is extremely difficult to estimate the value of a remedy in these conditions, and it is possible that the irritant action of alcohol in the stomach may increase the activity of the medullary centres reflexly, or that by its narcotic action it may lessen the anxiety and pain of the patient. On the other hand, in cases of inhibitory slowing of the heart it may aid by lessening the activity of the vagus centre in the medulla. But the beneficial effects of alcohol in these cases has been much questioned in recent years and the belief that it is of little value is certainly more widely held at present than at any previous time.

In sudden chill with a tendency to fever, alcohol is often of great benefit, especially when taken in the form of brandy or whiskey diluted with hot water. Its efficacy here would seem due to the relief of the congestion of the internal organs by the return of the blood to the skin.

In many cases of acute inflammatory disease, the prescription of alcohol seems to be attended with benefit, while in others it seems to rather increase the severity of the symptoms. No special indications can be given for alcohol in these cases, and the physician must be guided by its effects. An old rule advised that if the pulse becomes slower, the temperature falls, the respiration is deeper, the nervous symptoms are ameliorated and the skin becomes moister after the administration of alcohol, the treatment ought to be continued ; but this is merely equivalent to advising the continued administration of alcohol when it is found to improve the symptoms. The effect of alcohol in these cases is often said to be a stimulant one on the heart and central nerv-

ous system, but it would rather seem to allay the irritability of the nervous centres, and thus reduce the delirium and slow the heart and respiration by lessening the muscular movement. Moreover, the tissue waste is much increased in fever, and at the same time the food absorption is less than normally, so that many of the symptoms may be due to starvation of the tissues. Alcohol is more readily absorbed, and demands less energy from the digestive organs than fats and starchy foods, and at the same time has a higher value as a producer of energy than sugar. It cannot supply the place of the nitrogenous foods, but given along with them, may lead to a greater economy of the tissues. It is to be remarked that according to Neumann alcohol fails to have this effect, at any rate in normal individuals, until it has been given for several days, so that if it is to be used as a food, it ought to be given early in the disease. Strong wines or diluted spirits are generally employed here and ought to be given in small quantities frequently. Alcohol was formerly advocated especially in septic conditions, and here it may be of value on the same grounds as in acute fevers, although it does not seem to have any specific action in septic disease, as was once believed. A protest has recently been raised against the use of alcohol in these cases, on the ground that animals subjected to alcohol succumb more readily to infection than controls which have received no treatment, and this has been shown to be true even when the dose of alcohol was proportionate to that often advised in the treatment of these cases in man (Laitinen). This is undoubtedly an objection of great weight, but it must not be forgotten that though alcohol may be deleterious in this way, this may be more than compensated for by its value as a food, and by its narcotic effects allaying the nervous irritability and promoting sleep; this narcotic action may very well be conceived to be of benefit to man, while actually prejudicial to animals.

In some chronic forms of nervous disease alcohol may also be of value, although its administration must always be guarded, owing to the tendency to the formation of the alcohol habit. Thus, in some forms of melancholia and of neuralgia it gives relief, partly probably through its depressant action on the brain and partly from its local action on the digestion. Some authorities recommend the use of alcohol in small quantities in cases of distress of mind from any cause, such as grief, business anxiety or depression, and undoubtedly alcohol improves these conditions by its narcotic action on the brain. But the danger of the alcohol habit is so great, that many physicians refuse to take the responsibility of prescribing the drug in these cases.

In chronic conditions of cachexia and loss of flesh in general, and during convalescence, alcoholic preparations are often advised simply as foods, and in these cases the ales, beers and porters are generally to be preferred to the others, provided always that the stomach is not irritated by them, as they contain other food-stuffs of value in addition to the alcohol.

In poisonous snake bite, alcohol is generally administered in enor-

mous quantities, either as whiskey or brandy, but it seems open to question whether it is really of value in these cases, and its action on the normal tissues certainly gives no indication for its use here.

Alcohol is of value as a mild hypnotic, a comparatively small quantity taken before retiring being often sufficient to secure quiet and refreshing sleep. Beer or spirits and water is generally used for this purpose.

Brandy has a certain reputation in the treatment of the milder forms of diarrhœa, while the other spirits have no effect in this condition. The means by which this effect is accomplished are unknown.

In the prescription of alcohol, the ordinary spirits, brandy or whiskey, are very much more frequently advised than the purer preparations, as the latter are more apt to pall upon the taste of the patient. Both of these spirits ought to be diluted with at least an equal quantity of water. The wines are more used in chronic conditions, although diluted spirits may be advised here also. Beers are employed only in debility unaccompanied by gastric symptoms.

Alcohol can be given to children in relatively larger quantities than to adults, and again in old age no such reduction in the dose is required as in the case of many other drugs. Where a tolerance for alcohol has been established, the dose has often to be more than doubled in order to have any effect, and in acute febrile conditions very large quantities of alcohol are often given without detriment, though it seems questionable whether an equally beneficial result could not be attained with much smaller doses. In gastric irritation, most preparations of alcohol are contraindicated, but champagne is often of benefit in checking vomiting, especially that of pregnancy and of seasickness, this effect being due to the carbonic acid, not to the alcohol. In nephritis and other inflammatory conditions of the genito-urinary tract, alcohol is generally avoided on account of its supposed effects on the epithelium.

In regard to the habitual use of alcohol by healthy persons all authorities agree that it is a luxury, that it is entirely unnecessary for the growth and maintenance of the body, but that taken in moderate quantities it is harmless, except from the danger that this may lead to the habit being formed. The habitual indulgence in alcohol to excess is more easily intelligible than some other chronic intoxications, for, unlike nicotine, alcohol is taken not only for its local effects on the organs of taste and on the mucous membranes of the mouth and stomach, but also for its action on the brain in numbing the consciousness of unhappiness, and this weakening of the higher sensibilities by drink is generally the object sought by the drunkard. He finds that under alcohol his habitual depression disappears, and he loses the sense of degradation and remorse which possesses him when sober. The depression returns in exaggerated form after the effects of the drug have passed off, but it can be removed again by the same means and in this way the habit is formed, each successive dose being rendered necessary by the depression produced by its predecessor.

This descent into chronic drunkenness is facilitated by the lessening of the self-control owing to the action of alcohol on the brain. The victim may form the best of resolutions, but his impaired will power and self-control are unable to carry them out.

The symptoms of **Chronic Alcoholism** are unfortunately common, but may be treated better in detail in connection with various forms of disease, with which they are associated more closely than with the effects produced by the medicinal use of the drug. The earliest symptoms are generally observed in the stomach, throat and larynx, and consist of a chronic catarrh, which is often accompanied by skin affections, such as injection of the cutaneous vessels (especially of those of the face), acne or pustular eruptions. The irritation spreads from the stomach to the liver and kidney, and produces fatty degeneration and necrosis of the cells, followed by increased growth of the interstitial connective tissue, and cirrhosis of these organs. The fatty degeneration is also found in the arterial walls throughout the body, and causes atheroma and arterio-sclerosis, which may lead to small aneurysmal dilatations, ecchymoses, or apoplexy. The heart undergoes more or less fatty change, which is accompanied by dilatation and weakness. In the central nervous system, the nutrition is imperfect owing to the vascular changes, but in addition to this, alcohol has a special action on the neurons, which is betrayed by the disappearance of the chromatin granules, and eventually by shrinkage of the whole cell. The dendrites show moniliform enlargements along their course, and in the later stages the finer dendrites disappear entirely. These alterations in the central nervous system lead to impairment of memory, self-control and the other higher mental processes. Tremor, convulsive attacks, hallucinations and mania are eventually followed by idiocy and paralysis in the worst forms of the disease. The peripheral nerves seem to be acted on directly as well as through the changes in the centres, for neuritis has been frequently observed, ending in local paralysis. A form of amblyopia commencing by atrophy of the retinal ganglion cells and later extending to the fibres of the optic nerve has recently received some attention; it seems to be more readily elicited by methyl than by ethyl alcohol. A characteristic result of chronic alcoholism is *delirium tremens*, an acute attack of insanity, which is liable to occur after any shock, such as hemorrhage or acute disease, but which is said to be also produced by the sudden withdrawal of alcohol, and sometimes occurs without any apparent immediate cause. It is characterized by tremor, perspiration, sleeplessness, fear, excitement and hallucinations of the various senses, which differ from many other hallucinations of insanity in consisting of the multiple appearance of the same object. These objects are often animals, such as snakes, rats, dogs, but the hallucinations are not confined to those of sight, for whispering voices are complained of not infrequently.

The more severe forms of chronic alcoholism are confined almost entirely to the drinkers of undiluted spirits. Beers and wines seldom

have any distinct action on the brain in themselves, unless spirits are also indulged in. The abuse of the weaker preparations of alcohol is always liable to lead to that of the stronger, however, as tolerance is established and the former lose their effect. The combination of spirits and malt liquors is said to be more liable to produce delirium tremens than the abuse of either alone.

The disastrous effects of the abuse of alcohol are seen in the statistics of the hospitals, prisons, and asylums, and unfortunately these show an increase in the number of victims almost every year and in nearly all countries, but more especially in those in which the population is addicted to spirits. In Prussia, in 1886–1888, 11 per cent. of the cases admitted to the insane asylums were diagnosed as directly due to alcoholic excess, while in one of the Berlin asylums the enormous percentage of 47.4 of the admissions were found to be addicted to alcohol. In France, in 1888, one eighth of the cases of suicide were due to alcoholic excess. In Paris, 72 per cent. of the convicted criminals in one year were found to be chronic alcoholists, while the proportion in Berne Canton was about 40 per cent. These numbers are officially certified to be correct, but give only an imperfect idea of the deplorable results of alcoholic abuse, as only the more extreme cases come under the categories of criminals or lunatics, and the enormous number of cases of disease directly caused or aggravated by the lesions due to alcohol escapes recognition. At the same time, it is beginning to be appreciated that chronic alcoholism itself is probably due to a mental defect, so that in a certain number of these cases of insanity and crime, the over-indulgence in alcohol must probably be considered a symptom and not a cause. Attempts have been made of late years to demonstrate that the effects of alcohol are hereditary, that the children of alcoholists supply a larger proportion of cases of insanity and crime than those of the rest of the population. The belief is widely entertained among biologists, however, that acquired characters such as alcoholism are not inherited directly, but can only affect the nutrition of the offspring. It would seem more probable, then, that the alcoholic excesses of the parent have no direct effect on the offspring, except in their nutrition at birth, but that the mental defect which leads to alcoholic excess in the one generation is inherited and leads to crime or insanity in the next. The deleterious effect of the alcoholic habit in the parent on the nutrition of the offspring is a well-established fact. It has been shown experimentally by Hodge, who states that only a small percentage of the puppies born of parents treated with alcohol survive, and further that they are peculiarly liable to infectious disease, such as distemper.

The *treatment of acute alcoholic intoxication* is to evacuate the stomach by means of the soft elastic tube. The patient ought to be put in bed and kept warm, as there is a tendency to a marked fall in the body temperature. In case of great congestion of the brain, cold may be applied in the form of ice-bags to the head, and some authorities recommend bleeding. In cases of extremely deep unconsciousness,

nervous stimulants, such as caffeine or strychnine, may be had recourse to, and, as a last resort, artificial respiration.

Chronic alcoholism is to be treated by the withdrawal of the poison, and this is best done gradually, as the immediate stoppage may lead to delirium tremens. It is often necessary to incarcerate the patient in some retreat. A large number of drugs have been advocated in these cases, some of them such as opium acting as substitutes for alcohol, others (capsicum) replacing the local action on the stomach. The use of opium and other narcotics may however lead to a craving for these which is quite as serious as the original condition. Another method of treatment, which appears to be successful in some cases, is the addition of nauseating drugs such as ipecacuanha or apomorphine to the alcohol which is supplied to the patient. The association of nausea with liquor eventually becomes so strong that alcohol in any form becomes distasteful. The organic lesions must be treated individually.

The *treatment of delirium tremens* generally consists in the use of chloral or opium to lessen the excitement. It is often necessary, or at any rate advisable, in these cases to allow small quantities of alcohol, as the sudden withdrawal may aggravate the condition.

Bibliography.

Binz, Jaksch. Verhandl. des VII. Congress f. innere Medicin, 1888, pp. 70, 86.
Bunge. Die Alkoholfrage, Leipzig, 1887.
Baratynsky. Arch. des Scienc. biolog., iii., p. 167.
Jacquet. Die Stellungsnahme des Arztes zur Abstinenzfrage, Basel, 1896.
Geppert. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxii., p. 367.
Riess. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., ii., p. 1.
Bodländer. Pflüger's Arch., xxxii., p. 398.
Martin and Stevens. Studies from Johns Hopkins Biological Laboratory, ii., p. 477.
Pohl. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxi., p. 281.
Riegel. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xii., p. 79.
Vas. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiii., p. 141.
Berkeley. Brain, xviii., p. 473.
Brandl, Scanzoni, Farnsteiner. Ztschr. f. Biol., xxix., p. 277; xxxiii., pp. 462, 475.
Buchner. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xxix., p. 537.
Chittenden and Mendel. Amer. Journ. of the Med. Sciences, 1896, p. 35.
Stenberg. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., x., p. 356.
Kraepelin. Ueber die Beeinflussung einfacher psychischer Vorgänge durch einige Arzneimittel, Jena, 1892. And (with his pupils) in Kraepelin's Psychologische Arbeiten, i.–iv., *passim.*
Jacquet. Arch. de Pharmacodynamique, ii., p. 107.
Wilmanns. Pflüger's Arch., lxvi., p. 167.
Afanassijew. Zeigler's Beiträge, viii., p. 443.
Kahlden. Ziegler's Beiträge, ix., p. 349.
Mertens. Arch. d. Pharmacodynamique, ii., p. 127.
Näcke. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xxv., p. 416. (Delirium tremens.)
Baer. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1898, p. 283.
Liepmann. Arch. f. Psychiatrie, xxvii., p. 172.
Gudden. Ibid., xxviii., p. 643.
Radzikowski. Pflüger's Arch., lxxxiv., p. 513.
Spiro. Münch. med. Woch., 1901, p. 1871.
Boedecker. Arch. f. Psychiatrie, xxvii., p. 810.
Chittenden, Mendel and Jackson. Amer. Journ. of Physiol., i., p. 164.
Zuntz and Magnus-Levy. Pflüger's Arch., xlix., p. 438; liii., p. 544.
Dehio. Centralbl. f. Nervenheilkunde und Psychiatrie, 1895, p. 113.

Stewart. Journ. of Exp. Med., i., p. 623. Amer. Journ. of Physiol., i., p. 40.
Kleefeld. Journ. de Physiol., iii., p. 563.
Simanowsky and Schoumoff. Pflüger's Arch., xxxiii., p. 251.
Dieballa. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiv., p. 154.
Weissenfeld. Pflüger's Archiv, lxxi., p. 60.
Wendelstadt. Ibid., lxxvi., p. 223.
Guillery. Ibid., lxxvii., p. 321.
Singer. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., vi., p. 493.
Schumberg. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1899, Suppl., p. 289.
Scheffer. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xliv., p. 24.
Minervini. Ztschr. f. Hyg., xxix., p. 117.
Rosemann. Pflüger's Arch., lxxvii., p. 405; lxxxvi., p. 307.
Neumann. Arch. f. Hyg., xxxvi., p. 1; xli., p. 85.
Grehant. Journ. de l'Anatomie, xxxvi., p. 143.
Abbott. Journ. of Exp. Med., i., p. 447.
Laitinen. Ztschr. f. Hygiene, xxxiv., p. 206. Acta Societat. Scient. Fennic., xxix., No. 7.
Birch-Hirschfeld. Arch. f. Ophthalmologie, lii., p. 358.
Atwater and Benedict. U. S. Dept. of Agriculture Exper. Station Bulletin No. 69.
Paton and Eason. Journ. of Physiol., xxvi., p. 166.

2. General Anæsthetics — Ether and Chloroform.

The term general anæsthetics is employed to indicate substances used to produce unconsciousness sufficiently complete to allow of surgical operations being performed. In the history of medicine there are repeatedly obscure allusions to substances used for this purpose, but it was not until the end of the first half of the nineteenth century that the era of surgical anæsthesia really opened. In 1798, Davy advised the use of nitrous oxide as an anæsthetic, but no practical use was made of his suggestion, and Wells may be said to have rediscovered this property of the gas in 1844, though his efforts to introduce it into general use met with no greater success than Davy's. Long used ether in 1842–1843 in surgical operations, but did not give any publicity to his discovery, and the honor of demonstrating publicly the practical use of ether in surgery must be awarded to Jackson and Morton in 1846. In 1847, Simpson introduced chloroform to the medical profession as a substitute for ether, over which he supposed it to possess several advantages. Its pharmacological action had been investigated some months earlier by Flourens, but Simpson appears to have made his investigations quite independently. Chloroform soon ousted ether in popular favor in Europe, and although in America a considerable number of surgeons continued to use it, ether had practically fallen into complete disuse throughout Europe, save in Lyons, until a few years ago. The continually increasing number of accidents in chloroform anæsthesia has, however, caused a reaction to set in in favor of ether, and it seems probable that it will once more be reinstated as the rival, and perhaps as the superior, of chloroform throughout the world. Even in 1880, however, Kappeler could write that in Germany chloroform was used exclusively.

Many attempts have been made to introduce other substances of the methane series as substitutes for the two generally recognized anæsthetics, but as yet no other has attained popular favor. Soon after the introduction of ether and chloroform, nitrous oxide gained a permanent footing as an anæsthetic for short operations.

These anæsthetics are invariably given by inhalation and not by the stomach, as it is found that the exact depth of the narcosis can be much more easily controlled by the former method. Both the absorption and excretion of these drugs occur almost entirely by the lungs, according to the ordinary physical laws of the absorption of gases by fluids. The more concentrated the vapor of chloroform in the lungs, the greater is the quantity absorbed into the blood and the deeper the narcosis. By regulating the proportion of the vapors in the air inhaled, therefore, an anæsthesia of any desired depth may be induced. The degree of narcosis and of danger is not indicated by the actual amount of the anæsthetic which has been used, but by the concentration of the vapors which have been inhaled; one patient may, in the course of a long operation, inhale and again exhale many ounces of chloroform without danger, while another may be thrown into a position of extreme peril by the inhalation of a few drops of chloroform in concentrated vapor.

Symptoms. — The action of chloroform and ether may be divided into three stages: 1, that of imperfect consciousness; 2, that of excitement; 3, that of anæsthesia.

The *first effect* of their application is a feeling of asphyxia, which is especially marked in the case of ether, and of warmth of the face and head and eventually of the whole body. The senses become less acute, the patient seeming to see only through a veil of mist, and the voices of those in the immediate neighborhood appearing to come from a distance. Ringing, hissing and roaring in the ears, and a feeling of stiffness and of inability to move the limbs herald the approach of unconsciousness. With the exception of the first feeling of suffocation, the sensations are generally pleasant. During this stage the face is generally flushed, the pupils enlarged, the pulse is somewhat accelerated, and the respiration may be rendered irregular by the sense of suffocation, or may be slightly quickened. Even at this early stage sensation is blunted.

The *second stage* of excitement varies extremely in different individuals. In some cases, especially in children, it is entirely absent, and in others its presence may be indicated merely by tremor, by the stretching of the limbs, or by irregularities in the respiration, but in the majority of cases of anæsthesia it is much more marked. It often begins by movements of the arms, designed either to push away the inhalation mask or to enable the patient to rise; soon his other muscles are involved in the movement; he struggles, shouts, sings, groans, or bursts into laughter. The movements are not generally uncoördinated, but are evidently the result of some dream-like condition of the consciousness, and these dreams are often connected with the operation or with the surroundings of the patient before the inhalation began. They are, of course, determined largely by his natural mode of thought —one person prays aloud and sings hymns; another abuses the surgeon, the hospital and all his recent surroundings, while yet another is overcome with the fear of impending death and laments his unfortunate position.

In this stage the pulse is generally quickened, the skin is flushed and often cyanotic, the respiration is extremely irregular from the struggling, and the pupil continues somewhat dilated. If the anæsthetic be pushed, however, the movements soon become less powerful, the muscles relax and the stage of anæsthesia sets in.

In the *third stage*, the face assumes a calm, death-like appearance from the relaxation of the muscles, the pupils contract somewhat and do not react to light. The reflexes disappear, one of the last to go being the closure of the eyelids on touching the cornea. The pulse is generally somewhat slow and weak; the face is pale in chloroform anæsthesia, but may be suffused and cyanotic after ether. The respiration is slow and shallow, but regular. This stage of anæsthesia may be kept up for hours without much change by the repeated inhalation of small quantities, although the pulse tends to become weaker and the respiration shallower unless the greatest care be exercised, and the body temperature invariably sinks. When the administration ceases, the patient passes again through the excitement stage, which, however, is not generally as violent, although it may be more prolonged, and then often sinks into sleep, which lasts several hours. Not infrequently, however, instead of sleep, nausea, giddiness and vomiting continue for some time after the recovery of consciousness.

In surgical anæsthesia, the third stage is often interrupted by short intervals of semi-consciousness and slight excitement if the administration of the drug be occasionally interrupted, as is sometimes advisable in prolonged operations.

The use of these drugs is so widespread, and the indications of danger in anæsthesia are so important that a more detailed account of the alterations observed during their use in the human subject may be inserted here.

The *pulse* is often somewhat accelerated before anæsthesia, owing to the anxiety and nervousness of the patient, and in the first, and still more the second stage, a further acceleration may occur from the same cause, although in other instances marked slowing of the pulse may set in here from reflex stimulation. When the stage of anæsthesia is reached, the pulse becomes slower and weaker than normally, and this change increases with the depth of the anæsthesia produced. It remains perfectly regular, however, in ordinary cases, and, in fact, unless the anæsthesia has reached an extremely dangerous stage. In very prolonged, deep anæsthesia the weakness of the pulse may give rise to anxiety, especially if the temperature of the body is very low.

The *respiration* is generally fairly regular until the second stage, save that the breath may be held for some time owing to the choking sensation, and a deep gasp may follow; coughing is occasionally met with, especially in the first stage of ether anæsthesia. In the second stage, the respiration is extremely irregular when the excitement is violent. The respiratory muscles are involved in the general convulsive movements, so that no air whatever can enter the lungs for several moments, and then several deep gasps may follow and load

the blood with concentrated vapor. During the third stage the respiration becomes regular but shallower and slower than before the anæsthetic was applied, and if the operation be prolonged, the weakness of the respiration may give rise to alarm. Large quantities of saliva and mucus may hinder the respiration and require removal, and a common occurrence is the production of snoring from the falling back of the tongue, and this may also require attention.

The behavior of the *pupil* is of some importance in anæsthesia. During the first and second stages it is generally somewhat dilated, but as soon as complete unconsciousness is attained, it becomes rather narrower than it is normally. As the patient recovers, the slight dilatation recurs, and if the respiration and circulation be dangerously weak, this dilatation also occurs in most cases. Dilatation of the pupil in the stage of anæsthesia, therefore, indicates danger, unless it is accompanied by symptoms of returning consciousness, such as reflex movements and vomiting.

Other eye symptoms which occur in some cases are squinting and more or less rhythmic movements of the eyeball. In the beginning of the narcosis the pupil is generally directed upward and is covered by the upper lid as in ordinary sleep, but later it returns to the normal position; curious rolling movements, which are quite independent in the two eyes, often make their appearance (Kappeler, Hogyes).

The *hypersecretion* of saliva and of bronchial mucus is much more marked in ether than in chloroform anæsthesia. *Vomiting* occurs so frequently during anæsthesia that it may be looked upon rather as one of the attendant phenomena than as an accident. It may set in practically at any time, but is more often seen in the late than the early stages, and more frequently when the anæsthetic is applied soon after a meal than when the stomach is empty.

Action. — The action of ether and chloroform on the **Central Nervous System** is evidently similar to that of alcohol, although the phenomena habitually elicited in the use of the former are very rarely produced by the latter. In all three intoxications, however, there may be observed the stages of lessened consciousness, of excitement, and of total unconsciousness. Alcohol was formerly administered in very large quantities to allow of surgical procedure, and ether has not infrequently been used as a habitual intoxicant.

These anæsthetics produce the same progressive paralysis of the central nervous system as alcohol, commencing with the highest cerebral functions, those of self-control, and passing downwards through the lower intracranial divisions. The spinal cord is affected before the medullary centres, which are the last part of the central nervous system to become paralyzed. Some authorities believe that the motor areas of the brain are first stimulated before being paralyzed, but it is unnecessary to enter upon this question here, as it has been discussed under alcohol. The wilder excitement of chloroform and ether may be due to the greater irritation which they excite in the periphery. It may be remarked that the depression of the motor areas has been

shown experimentally in the case of chloroform and ether, a much stronger electric stimulus being necessary to produce movement of a limb after these drugs than before them; their excitability by the electric current has not been tested, however, during the excitement stage. The anæsthesia is not produced equally rapidly throughout the body, the back and the extremities first becoming insensible, then the genital organs and rectum and, last of all, the parts supplied by the trigeminus. The reflexes of the spinal cord are said to be first increased by ether and chloroform and then depressed and paralyzed, but the primary increase is of very short duration and, in fact, it is open to question whether it occurs at all. It would seem that ether and chloroform tend to depress the sensory functions before the motor. For Bernstein found in some cases that if chloroform were excluded from a section of the spinal cord by destruction of part of the pia mater, reflexes could be elicited in other parts of the cord by the irritation of sensory nerves whose cells lay in the protected area, while irritation of nerves, the cells of which were exposed to the chloroform, had no effect (Fig. 5). In the protected area there were, of course, both motor and sensory cells, and an impulse reaching the protected sensory cell was transmitted to the neighboring and also to more distant motor cells. An impulse reaching the exposed sensory cell, on the other hand, was not transmitted to the motor cells, although these were shown by the first part of the experiment to be capable of stimulation. Later, however, the motor cells are also paralyzed, as is shown by stimulation of the cord having no effect, even when the respiration is still active. Electrical stimulation of the cerebral motor areas produces movement for some time after sensation has been lost, but as the anæsthesia becomes deeper, their irritability disappears. Finally the medullary centres are also paralyzed by the anæsthetic. Some authorities have stated that they are first stimulated directly by chloroform and ether, but the evidences for this will be discussed later (page

FIG. 5.

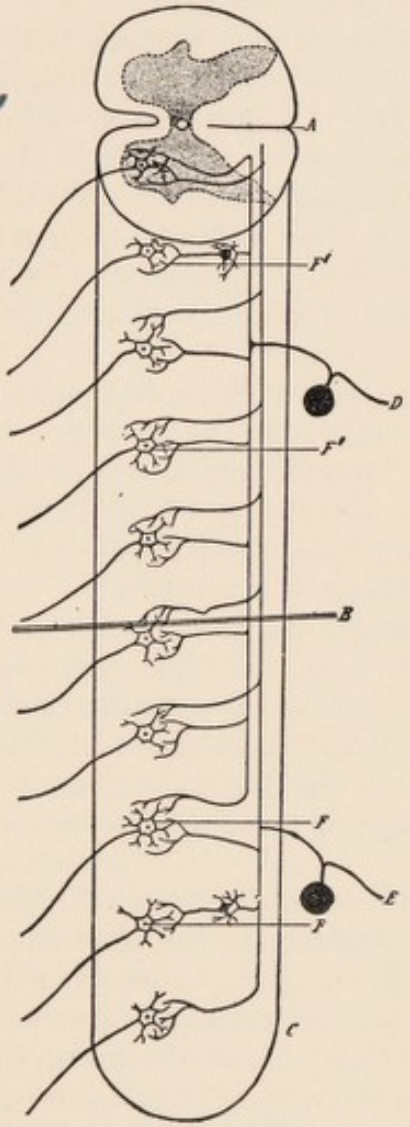


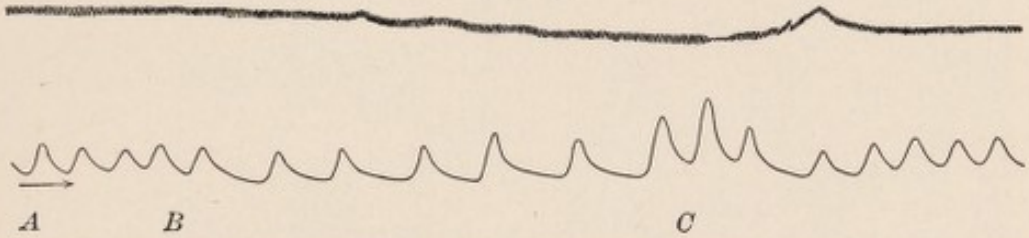
Diagram of the spinal cord. *A–B* part of the cord exposed to the action of chloroform, *B–C* part unaffected. A sensory impression traveling by the posterior root fibre *D* does not elicit a reflex movement, but one reaching the cord through the unaffected root *E* causes reflex impulses, which may be sent out by the motor cells *F*, *F* in the unaffected area, or by *F'*, *F'* in the poisoned area. The cells of the anterior horns *F*, *F'* and the dendrites surrounding them are, therefore, intact after the reflex arc is interrupted at some other point.

162). The medullary centres are liable to be affected by reflex stimulation up to the moment at which they cease to send out impulses, for the respiratory centre responds to stimulation of the superior laryngeal nerve as long as the respiration continues. It is possible that the motor cells are not directly paralyzed by the drug, but can only send out impulses received from the sensory cells, and that the paralysis of these is the cause of the asphyxia.

Shortly stated, the direct action of chloroform and ether on the central nervous system is a descending depression and paralysis which affects the medullary centres last of all, and which probably affects the sensory and receptive functions sooner than the motor ones.

The action of chloroform and ether on the **Respiratory Centre** is partly direct and partly indirect. In the first stage, the respiratory movements may be slowed or stopped temporarily by a reflex action set up by the irritation of the terminations of the trigeminus in the nose and throat and of the pneumogastric in the larynx and bronchi, but this interruption is only of short duration (Fig. 6). During the

FIG. 6.



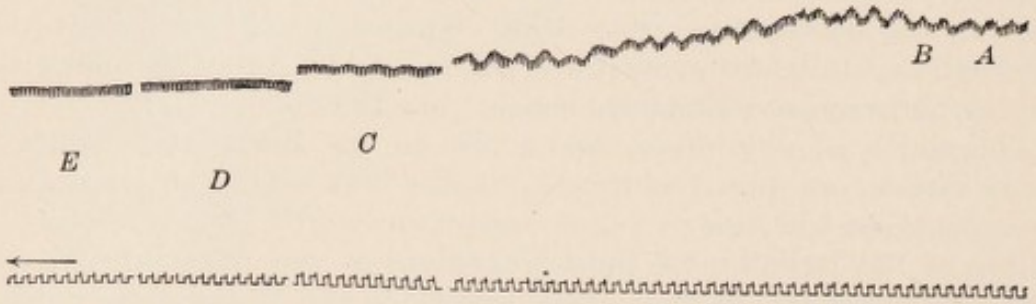
Tracings of the blood-pressure (upper) and of the respiration (lower) of a cat at the beginning of ether inhalation. *A*, normal respiration. At *B*, ether inhaled, and there follows an immediate slowing of the respiration (reflex inhibition) culminating in gasping at *C*. The respiratory tracing then resumes its normal appearance except for some slowing (central).

second stage the respiration is often rendered irregular by the convulsive struggling, which produces alternately periods of asphyxia and deep gasping movements. During the third stage, the respiration is regular and no reflex disturbance occurs, because the sensibility is so dulled that the continued irritation of the nerve ends causes no reflex response. In this stage, however, the direct action of the drug on the centre makes itself manifest in the slow and shallow respiratory movements. If the drug be pushed, the weakness and slowness of the movements increase, until the respiration ceases entirely from paralysis of the centre. In man and the dog and cat the respiration is gradually extinguished, but in the rabbit the final standstill is preceded by very rapid and extensive respiratory movements, which have not been explained hitherto, but probably bear some relation to the acceleration of the respiration seen in the rabbit after alcohol.

The effects of the anæsthetics on the **Circulation** are complicated by the respiratory action, and in order to arrive at any satisfactory conclusions as to the changes in the heart and vessels, it is therefore necessary to examine their action while the aëration of the blood is carried on artificially, when the effects are seen to be partly direct and partly indirect. The first change observed in the blood-pressure tracing,

after chloroform or ether is often a slowing or even a temporary standstill of the heart, due to reflex stimulation of the inhibitory centre from the irritation of the air passages; but in other cases a short rise in the blood-pressure is seen from a similar reflex action on the vasomotor centre and this may be accompanied by extreme acceleration of the pulse arising from the general excitement. Later, however, a fall

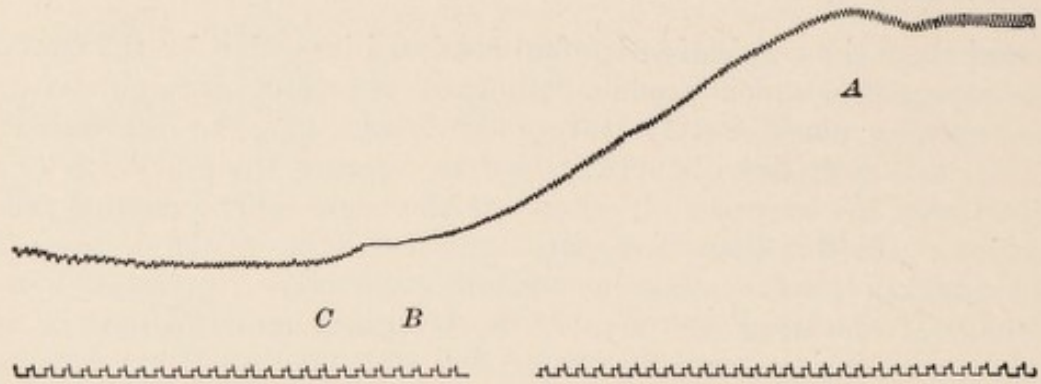
FIG. 7.



Gradual fall of the blood-pressure in a cat during anæsthesia with dilute chloroform vapor. At *A*, normal pressure. *B*, inhalation commenced and the pressure slowly falls soon afterwards. *C*, blood-pressure 5 minutes after *B*. *D*, 10 minutes after *B*. *E*, 13½ minutes later. At *E*, the respiration has ceased, but the blood-pressure is still fairly high and the pulse is satisfactory. Below the time is marked in seconds.

in blood-pressure is observed, and afterwards a distinct slowing of the heart. Eventually, if the administration be carried far enough, the blood-pressure falls to zero and the heart ceases to beat. The way in which this fall in the blood-pressure is produced has been the subject of prolonged discussion, but it is now generally recognized that the weakness of the heart is the chief factor and that along with this there

FIG. 8.



Sudden and dangerous fall in the blood-pressure from the inhalation of too concentrated vapor of chloroform during anæsthesia in a cat. At *A* the concentrated vapor began to be inspired. At *B* the blood-pressure had fallen to about one third of the height at *A*, and the pulse was so weak as to be scarcely perceptible. The chloroform mask was removed, and at *C* artificial respiration was commenced when the pulse rapidly improved in strength and the pressure began to rise.

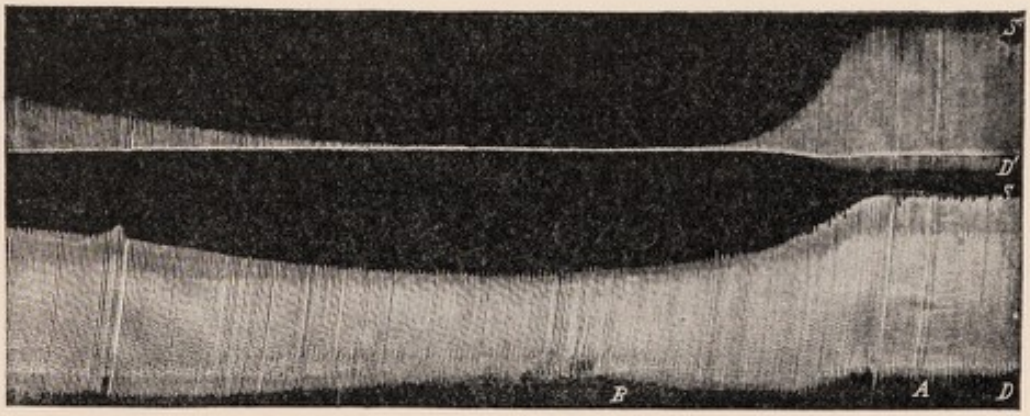
is a progressive enfeeblement of the vaso-constrictor centre. The vagus centre is much less affected, and in some instances the slowing of the pulse is due in part to its increased activity, so that more chloroform may accelerate the pulse somewhat through the depression of the inhibition counterbalancing the direct deleterious effects on the heart. It is not infrequently asserted that the action of ether differs altogether from that of chloroform as far as the circulation is concerned, but this

is erroneous. Chloroform acts much more powerfully than ether on the circulation, but their action is the same in kind.

The frog's *Heart* under chloroform or ether beats more slowly and more weakly, and at the same time undergoes a certain amount of dilatation, all owing to the paralyzing effects of these drugs on the cardiac muscle. About 48 times as much ether as chloroform is required to affect the frog's heart, however, and in order to bring it to diastolic standstill 36 times as much ether as chloroform must be added to the blood.

The effects on the mammalian heart in deep anæsthesia are very similar. The slowing is not so marked, however, as the weakness and the dilatation, so that the rhythm of the pulse does not indicate the extent to which the heart is affected. The auricles are acted on by smaller quantities than the ventricles, and the former may be rendered so weak as to give practically no movement to an attached lever long

FIG. 9.



Myocardiographic record of the movements of the right auricle (upper tracing) and right ventricle (lower tracing) of the dog during the inhalation of concentrated chloroform vapor. During systole the lever attached to the auricle moves from *D'* to *S'*, that attached to the ventricle from *D* to *S*. In diastole they return to *D'* and *D* respectively. At *A*, concentrated chloroform was inhaled. The excursion of the levers towards systole rapidly diminished, while that of the ventricle towards *D* was somewhat augmented. After a short time the auricle ceased in diastole, while the ventricle continued to beat, though much weakened. At *B*, the chloroform was shut off and the heart began to recover very soon afterwards.

before the ventricular force is very seriously impaired (Fig. 9). The first direct effect of these drugs on the heart, therefore, is a weakness in the auricular contraction and an increase in the ventricular relaxation. The diminution in the strength of the auricle progresses rapidly, while the ventricular dilatation soon reaches a maximum and is accompanied by lessened force of contraction. The auricular weakness soon becomes so great that practically no blood is expelled by its systole, and the slowing of the heart, which has not been very marked up to this point, becomes distinct. The ventricular contractions next become extremely weak and occasionally fail entirely, and soon afterwards the heart comes to a standstill in diastole. Occasionally a venous pulse appears during surgical anæsthesia, and this may be due to the dilatation of the right ventricle causing incompetency of the tricuspid

valve. Stimulation of the inhibitory nerves has less effect than usual during anæsthesia with chloroform or ether, but it does not seem likely that this lessened activity of the peripheral mechanism plays any part in the symptoms observed in practice.

The *Vascular* effects of the anæsthetics are rendered very difficult of investigation by the presence of these changes in the heart. The general impression has been that the tone of the vaso-motor centre is lowered and that the blood-pressure therefore falls through the dilatation of the vessels along with the weakness of the heart. Thus Scheinesson observed marked dilatation of the vessels of the rabbit's ear under chloroform, and several investigators found the reflex irritability of the vaso-motor centre diminished or abolished entirely by chloroform, while ether had less effect on it.

Gaskell and Shore, however, came to the result that chloroform actually stimulates the vaso-motor centre and causes narrowing of the peripheral vessels. Their most important experiments consisted in feeding the brain of one rabbit or dog from the vessels of another (Fig. 10) by joining the peripheral ends of the carotids, C′, in one animal, A, to the central ends, C, in the other, B. The jugular veins, JJ′, were connected in the same way. On giving chloroform to the feeder rabbit, B, its blood-pressure fell, because it was carried to the heart, while on the other hand, the blood-pressure of the other rabbit, A, rose, although chloroform was carried to its brain and vaso-motor centre. They conclude from this that the vaso-motor centre is stimulated, and the arterioles contract through the action of chloroform, but that the resultant rise of blood-pressure is prevented by the simultaneous weakening of the heart's action. After large quantities of chloroform, however, the vaso-motor centre also becomes weakened and the arterioles dilate. Conclusions from so complicated a method can be drawn safely only when uniform results have been obtained in a large number of experiments, but it would seem that the effects of the anæsthetics on the vaso-motor centre have been exaggerated hitherto, and that the chief point of attack as regards the circulation is the heart.

There is no reason to suppose that the vessels are acted on directly by either chloroform or ether, although it is not impossible that this is the case. A marked dilatation of the skin vessels occurs in the first stage of anæsthesia, and in the case of ether at any rate, generally persists throughout; this is probably due to some central action, but here, as in many other similar instances, the primary dilatation of the cutaneous vessels has not been fully explained.

During anæsthesia Pick found that the blood current in the veins of the extremities is slower than usual, while in the brain and abdomen it is increased owing to the extreme dilatation of the vessels. Other observers mention anæmia of the brain as a constant feature in anæsthesia. It seems likely that this divergence of views is due to the observations having been made at different stages, and that the brain vessels are at first dilated like those of the skin, but afterwards become pale and anæmic.

Kemp has recently drawn attention to a marked contraction of the renal vessels of the dog without a corresponding increase in the general blood-pressure during deep ether anæsthesia, which lessens the secre-

tion of urine and may arrest it completely, or cause such injury to the kidney that albuminuria or even hæmaturia may follow. Some writers state that albumin is found in the urine in a considerable proportion of cases of ether anæsthesia in man, which would suggest that a corresponding action is elicited here, but others have failed to detect any change except a slight diminution of the urine. The discrepancy in these results may perhaps be due to the method of administration. Ether is often given in such a way as to induce partial asphyxia and this may induce contraction of the renal vessels without a corresponding rise in the blood-pressure if the heart be much weakened by the drug.

FIG. 10.

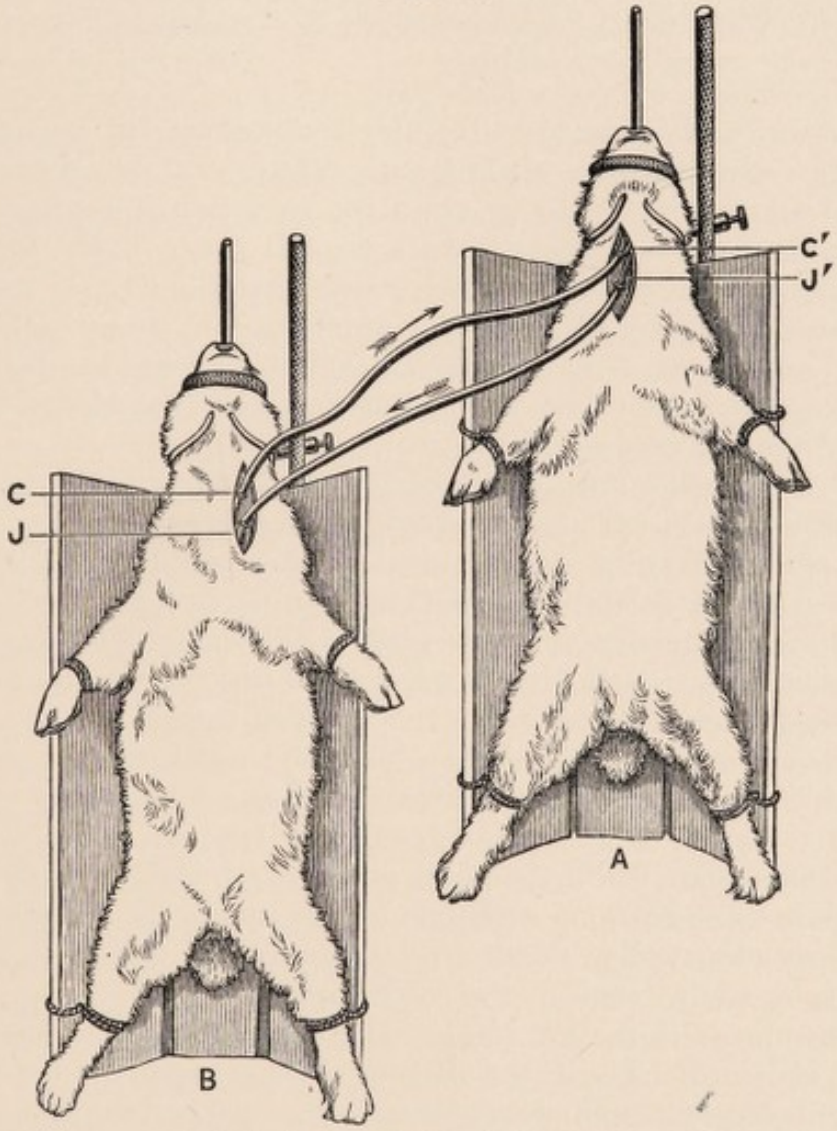


Diagram of the cross-circulation in two rabbits. C, C', the central and peripheral ends of the carotid arteries connected by a tube. J', J, the peripheral and central ends of the jugular veins connected in the same way. The arrows indicate the direction of the blood current to and from the brain of A.

The **Muscles** and **Nerves** are not affected by chloroform or ether when inhaled, but when a frog's muscle is exposed to an atmosphere of either of them, it is weakened, loses its irritability and eventually passes into rigor mortis ; Eisenmeyer and Buchheim found that the relaxation of muscle after contraction was somewhat retarded by exposure to dilute vapor of chloro-

form. Waller has recently shown that when a frog's nerve is exposed to chloroform or ether vapor in weak dilution, its irritability is at first increased; strong vapor, on the other hand, abolishes the excitability temporarily in the case of ether, generally permanently in that of chloroform, which is much the more powerful nerve poison of the two. The sensory fibres are said to be paralyzed sooner than the motor when chloroform or ether is applied to a mixed nerve (Pereles and Sachs). When the sciatic nerve of a frog is dipped in ether solution and then stimulated, it is often found that the flexor muscles contract while the extensors remain flaccid, while in the normal animal exactly the opposite occurs. A somewhat similar result is got on stimulating the recurrent laryngeal nerve of the dog in deep ether narcosis. This puzzling observation has been explained by Albanese as being due to the nerve fibres to the extensor muscles lying more superficially than the others, and thus being acted on sooner by the anæsthetic. The local paralyzing effects of ether have been elicited repeatedly in the human subject by its subcutaneous injection, and have occasionally been followed by neuritis and permanent weakness.

Chloroform and ether dissolve the **Red Corpuscles** and free the hæmoglobin when they are shaken with defibrinated blood outside the body, and chloroform is said to retard the reduction of oxyhæmoglobin by forming a loose combination with it; Da Costa holds that ether tends to destroy the red cells during anæsthesia and advises caution in its administration in cases in which a diminution in their numbers may be of serious import. Apparently chloroform, when absorbed, exists not in simple solution but in combination with the cholesterin and lecithin of the red corpuscles.

The effects of chloroform and ether on the **Pupil** present some variation in different animals, and, indeed, are not very constant in man. No entirely satisfactory explanation of their mechanism has been offered as yet. The dilatation of the pupils in the first and second stages is merely the accompaniment of the general excitement and anxiety, and is not specific. The contraction in the stage of unconsciousness is similar to that seen in natural sleep, and is evidently of central origin. It may perhaps be a secondary effect of the dilatation of the vessels in the iris (Limbourg). The dilatation occurring during wakening or vomiting is evidently caused by the same process as that of the preliminary stages. Just before death the pupil dilates, and this may perhaps be attributed to the effects of asphyxia on the muscle of the iris, and is so frequently observed in death from other causes that it cannot be regarded as a direct result of the chloroform.

The movements of the eye occasionally seen during anæsthesia have not been explained. The dissociation of the movements is believed by Hogyes to indicate a preliminary stimulation and subsequent exhaustion of the centres for their coördination, but this explanation conflicts with the general depressant action.

The local effects of the anæsthetics on the **Alimentary Canal** and **Respiratory Passages** are confined to irritation with resultant reflexes. Thus the profuse secretion of saliva and of mucus is due to the irritation causing increased activity of the glands reflexly, and can be arrested by atropine. It has been stated that the bronchial rhonchi

are due entirely to aspirated saliva, but this is incorrect, as they occur in animals to which the anæsthetic has been given through a tracheal canula. The irritation is much greater when concentrated ether fumes are inhaled than in ordinary chloroform anæsthesia.

This local irritation may explain in part the vomiting which is so often a feature of anæsthesia. The irritant vapors reach not only the throat, but also the stomach with the mucus swallowed, and irritation of either of these parts may well lead to reflex vomiting. But similar effects are occasionally induced by other methods of anæsthesia, such as by nitrous oxide, in which local irritation can play no part, so that there is probably some central effect in addition. The ordinary movements of the stomach and intestine do not seem to be influenced by anæsthesia, unless when it is accompanied by asphyxia, when the peristalsis may be increased.

The **Kidney** appears to be affected in a certain proportion of cases of anæsthesia in man as is shown by the appearance of albumin in the urine. Chloroform induces typical fatty degeneration occasionally, while the albuminuria after ether has been ascribed to a specific vascular change by Kemp. The proportion of cases in which this organ is affected seems to vary extraordinarily, some authorities finding albuminuria in 30 per cent. of the cases where chloroform was used; while others could detect it in less than 8 per cent. Most surgeons consider chloroform far more deleterious to the kidney than ether.

The **Uterine Contractions** during parturition seem little influenced by moderate anæsthesia, but are slowed in the deeper stages, probably because the anæsthetics lessen the irritability of the spinal cord. Chloroform and ether pass into the fœtal blood, and some experiments are recorded in which the fœtus was killed by the inhalation, while the mother recovered. This may be caused either by the direct action of the drug on the young animal, or by the low maternal blood-pressure leading to its asphyxia. It does not seem dangerous to induce a moderate degree of anæsthesia during labor in human beings, although here, too, the effects on the child are shown by an increase in the nitrogen excretion in the urine for some days.

The **Temperature** falls during anæsthesia of even short duration. Thus Kappeler found it reduced 0.2–1.1° C. when chloroform was inhaled 15–40 minutes, and a fall of 3–5° C. has been observed during very long anæsthesia. This action is due partly to the greater output of heat through the dilated skin vessels, but mainly to a lessened heat production from the diminished muscular movement. It is not necessary to assume, therefore, as some writers do, that the anæsthetics lessen the heat production by their direct effects on the tissues in general.

Of late years a good deal of interest has been manifested in the effects of the anæsthetics on the **Metabolism of the tissues**, and it is now generally recognized that chloroform, in addition to its action on the central nervous system, produces marked changes in the nutritive processes of protoplasm. The simpler organisms, which are devoid of nervous structure, are killed in comparatively dilute solutions, and

chloroform water, therefore, prevents or retards putrefaction and the fermentation of yeasts. It seems to hinder the action of some ferments, such as pepsin and rennet ferment, when added in comparatively large quantities, but increases their activity in greater dilution. Plants cease to assimilate carbonic acid, but are not killed by chloroform except in very large quantities. In the higher animals and in man, evidences of an alteration in the processes of life and nutrition of the different organs have also been discovered, quite apart from the effects on the nervous system. Thus fatty degeneration [1] of various organs is produced by chloroform administered repeatedly and even by single inhalations in some cases. The organs implicated in this change are the liver, heart and kidneys more especially, but degeneration of ordinary muscle has also been observed occasionally. If this process attains a certain degree of development, it may lead to failure of the heart, but otherwise the tissues recover in the course of a few days. Traces of fatty degeneration have been observed after prolonged ether narcosis also, but they are so slight that no significance attaches to them from a practical point of view (Selbach). Given in small quantities for several months, chloroform leads to atrophic cirrhosis of the liver, and to a less extent of the kidneys, spleen and lungs, this cirrhotic change forming a sequel to a preliminary fatty degeneration of the parenchymatous cells. Some jaundice occasionally occurs after chloroform anæsthesia, and in one case acute yellow atrophy of the liver seemed to be induced by it. Ether has no such effect. (Bandler.)

Other symptoms of disordered nutrition are obtained from the urine secreted during and after the administration of chloroform either by inhalation or by the stomach. The nitrogen eliminated is considerably increased, and the sulphur shows a similar augmentation, and these would seem to indicate an increased destruction of nitrogenous (proteid) bodies in the tissues. In the normal urine, the sulphur appears partly in the form of sulphates, partly in forms in which it has undergone less complete oxidation. After chloroform the proportion of these constituents is changed, the unoxidized sulphur forming a much larger part of the total than normally, and apparently occurring in a substance nearly allied to cystin. (Kast and Mester.) This indicates that while the breaking up of the nitrogenous tissues is greater than normal, the oxidation is not so perfect, and another fact pointing in the same direction is the not infrequent occurrence of acetone in the urine and breath and of glycosuria. (Becker.) It has long been recognized that diabetes is liable to be aggravated by chloroform anæsthesia, and some fatalities after chloroform seem due to this action. The sugar of the blood has been found to be increased, and the glycogen of the liver is diminished or entirely absent after chloroform; this is, according to Paton, the effect of a specific action on the liver cells, which form glycogen into sugar much more rapidly than usual; ether has a very much less powerful action on them. Bile pigment is said to occur

[1] The same divergent views are held in regard to the nature of this "degeneration" as in the case of phosphorus, to the chapter on which the reader is referred.

in the urine in a considerable number of cases of anæsthesia with chloroform, especially one or two days after the administration. The uric acid of the urine is augmented.

These effects of chloroform on the metabolism resemble very closely those of phosphorus poisoning, and have, like them, been ascribed to the formation of acid in excess in the tissues. They seem to occur only after those substances of the fatty series in which chlorine is substituted, ether having little or no effect in producing fatty degeneration or in changing the proportion of the sulphur compounds in the urine.

Distribution in the Body. — When chloroform or ether is absorbed from the lungs, it is carried all over the body by the blood, but is not equally distributed throughout the tissues. It has been mentioned already that a loose combination exists between chloroform and the lecithin and cholesterin of the red cells, and it was to be anticipated that those organs which are richer in these constituents would contain larger quantities of the drug. As a matter of fact, both chloroform and ether are found in larger quantities in the brain than in the blood, liver or muscles, which is in conformity with the theory of Meyer and Overton regarding the causation of narcosis (page 128).

The **Excretion** of both ether and chloroform takes place mainly by the lungs. Whenever the partial pressure of the vapor in the alveoli falls sufficiently far below that in the blood to loosen the combination between the anæsthetics and the constituents of the blood, the drug diffuses back into the alveoli, and thence passes into the air. Most of the anæsthetic is eliminated very rapidly, but traces of chloroform are said to be found in the breath for 24 hours after the inhalation and even longer in cases in which there is a tenacious mucous secretion from the bronchi. As far as is known this is the only way in which ether is excreted, but small quantities of chloroform escape by other channels, for it has been found in the urine, and is said to occur in the perspiration and the milk. Some of the chloroform inhaled seems to undergo combustion in the body, for Kast found the chlorides of the urine considerably increased after its inhalation.[1] The acidity of the urine is also augmented, owing to the hydrochloric acid formed by the combustion. Bongers has found traces of chloroform in the stomach after its subcutaneous injection.

Differences Between Chloroform and Ether. — Ether and chloroform resemble each other closely in their general effects, but differ in certain points of importance. Thus ether has a much weaker narcotic action than chloroform, for Spenzer found that 1.5–2.5 volumes per cent. of ether vapor in air produced only incomplete anæsthesia, that 3–3.5 per cent. induced narcosis in 25, and 4.5 per cent. in 15 minutes, while 6 per cent. stopped the respiration within ten minutes; Rosenfeld obtained no narcosis with 0.5–0.7 volume per cent. of chloroform, complete narcosis with 1 per cent. only after 30–45 minutes, and respiratory standstill with 1.5 per cent. in the course of ¾–2 hours after the

[1] It is stated that chloroform in the course of its destruction forms traces of carbon monoxide, which may be recognized in the expired air.

inhalation commenced.[1] So that chloroform is about 3–3½ times as depressant to the central nervous system as ether, while, on the other hand, its action on the heart is 36–48 times as great as that of ether. Ether has to be given in more concentrated form to produce anæsthesia, and, therefore, produces more irritation of the air passages, as shown by the greater secretion of saliva and mucus, by coughing, and by the sensation of asphyxia. Dreser has shown, however, that if air containing less than 6 per cent. of ether be inhaled, this irritation and feeling of suffocation is not very marked. Anæsthesia is produced with greater difficulty, more slowly and often less perfectly than with chloroform, and the stage of excitement is generally more violent and prolonged. But the pulse is not nearly so much affected as by chloroform; it may be somewhat slower than usual, but is full and strong. The concentration of chloroform which is necessary to produce anæsthesia is very close to the concentration which causes serious impairment of the heart's action, while, on the other hand, 3½ per cent. ether vapor is sufficient to cause narcosis, but a very much stronger concentration is required to cause a dangerous condition of the heart. In the same way the difference in the concentration required to produce anæsthesia and that which will stop the respiration is very much smaller in chloroform than in ether, and the anæsthetist has thus more leeway when he uses the latter. The changes in the metabolism following the use of chloroform are not produced to the same extent, if at all, by ether.

Regarding the **Choice of an Anæsthetic** it must be said that each has its advantages, but that ether is less liable to cause dangerous symptoms than chloroform, and ought, therefore, to be used wherever special circumstances do not indicate the latter. Chloroform is always preferred by the patient, for it causes less irritation and less feeling of suffocation, and it is often preferred by the surgeon because it induces anæsthesia sooner and less of it is required. In cases where excitement is to be avoided as much as possible, or in which a very deep anæsthesia with complete muscular relaxation is required, and in irritable conditions of the air passages, chloroform ought to be used rather than ether. In the case of drunkards, ether sometimes fails to induce deep anæsthesia, and in very hot climates anæsthesia with ether may be difficult and unpleasant to induce owing to its rapid evaporation, so that in these cases chloroform may be necessary. Lastly, where artificial lights are necessary (except the electric incandescent), or where the actual cautery is to be used, ether is dangerous on account of its inflammability, and chloroform is indicated. On the other hand, chloroform is specially contraindicated in cases of fatty change of the heart and in renal disease. The disadvantages of both anæsthetics may often be avoided by inducing unconsciousness by chloroform and prolonging it by small quantities of ether. The effects of the prolonged use of chloroform are avoided in this way, and at the same time the excitement is less

[1] Other investigators have found different absolute values from these, but the relative strength of ether and chloroform is generally held to be about 1 to 3. (Honigmann.)

marked, and less irritation of the air passages is elicited than if the anæsthesia had been induced by concentrated ether vapor.

It has been found that anæsthesia either by chloroform or ether reduces the resistance offered by the organism to the invasion of pathogenic organisms. Thus normal frogs and rats possess a high degree of immunity to anthrax infection, but became susceptible to it if subjected to a short anæsthesia before inoculation.

The **Dangers of Anæsthesia** are caused only in part by the direct action of the ether or chloroform, for fatal accidents have occurred from objects such as false teeth or tobacco plugs falling into the air passages and causing asphyxia, while vomited matter has been drawn into the larynx in some cases. Very often the relaxation of its muscles permits the tongue to fall back into the throat, rendering the breathing labored and stertorous; this is at once relieved when the tongue is drawn forward. The accumulation of saliva and mucus, or blood in the throat may lead to similar symptoms. In these accidents the chloroform or ether is only indirectly the cause, but in a large and ever-increasing number of cases, the fatal effects must be ascribed to the direct action of the anæsthetics. The proportion of accidents during anæsthesia is very difficult to estimate, and great discrepancies occur in the statistics of different surgeons. Thus, in one of the London hospitals, one death occurred from chloroform in 1,236 cases of anæsthesia; Juillard gives one in 3,258, McGuire one in 15,000, as the proportion of fatalities, while Lawrie gives a series of over 40,000 cases without a single death. A fair average would seem to be one death in 3,000 chloroform inhalations. The statistics of ether fatalities also vary from one death in 3,000 to one in 16,000 cases, but probably one in 10,000–12,000 cases would represent the average mortality.[1]

A very prolonged discussion as to the **Cause of Death** in these cases has been carried on, and even now there cannot be said to be any unanimity of opinion on the subject. A fatality may occur practically at any stage of the anæsthesia, and the accounts of its onset and symptoms differ exceedingly. In the majority of cases it is stated that the pulse suddenly disappeared, and the breathing either ceased at the same moment or after one or two weak inspirations. In others the respiration is stated to have ceased before the pulse, and in several the heart beat could be felt or heard after the pulse ceased. The evidence of the practical anæsthetist is, however, of doubtful value, as an accident in anæsthesia demands prompt measures, and no great attention can be paid to the exact order in which the phenomena occur. In addition, there is a feeling that a certain amount of culpability attends a fatality due to the stoppage of the respiration, and a tendency exists consequently to ascribe it to heart failure when there is any uncertainty.

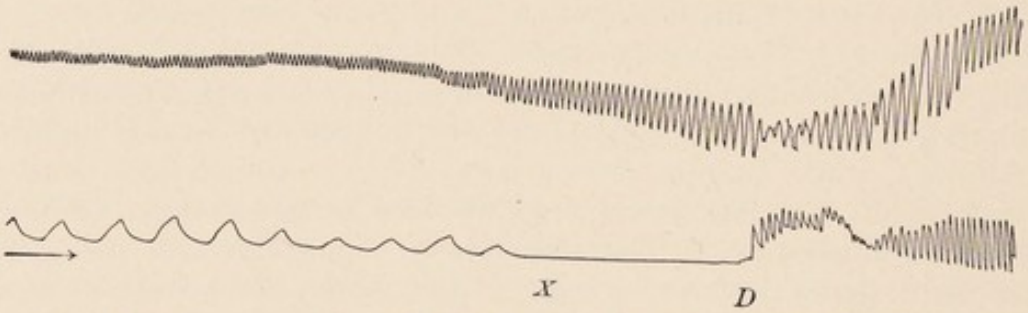
Large series of experiments with chloroform have been carried out on animals with somewhat varying results. It was formerly stated that death might occur in the commencement of anæsthesia through

[1] Gurlt's careful statistics of 330,000 cases of anæsthesia gave a mortality of 1 in 2,000 for chloroform and 1 in 5,000 for ether, but these both seem unusually high.

reflex arrest of the heart or respiration from the irritant action of the vapor on the terminations of the sensory nerves in the nose and throat. This has now been disproved, and it is recognized by most authorities that death occurs only from the action of the drug after its absorption into the blood. The reflexes arising from the action of chloroform and ether on the respiratory passages are identical with those produced by the inhalation of ammonia or acetic acid, and fatalities do not occur from either of these.

As to the exact way in which anæsthetics cause death after absorption, a dispute has been carried on for many years. Until 1889, the general impression was that, while ether paralyzed the respiration without affecting the heart, chloroform acted first on the heart and paralyzed it before the respiratory centre. Snow and others, however, maintained, in opposition to this, that chloroform caused death by paralysis of the respiratory centre. In 1889, some criticisms by the *Lancet* of the results of experiments in Hyderabad led the Nizam (Prince) of that province to appoint a commission, including Sir Lauder Brun-

FIG. 11.



Tracings of the blood-pressure (upper) and of the respiration (lower) of the cat in the last stage of ether anæsthesia, failure of the respiration. At *X* the ether was shut off, and at *D* artificial respiration was begun. The oscillations on the respiratory tracings after *D* are due to the artificial respiration. The heart continues to beat after the failure of the respiration. The pulsations increase in size, not from an increase in the strength of the heart, but from the slowness of the beat, which gives time for the arteries to empty themselves between each pulse.

ton, to investigate the question, and after experimenting on over 600 animals, this commission came to the conclusion that death during chloroform inhalation is always due to arrest of the respiration. This decision has been subjected to much criticism, and it would seem that while it is literally true that the respiration is always carried on as long as the circulation, the alterations in the circulation produced by chloroform were not properly appreciated, or, at any rate, were not sufficiently emphasized in the report. The condition when the breathing fails varies with the concentration of the vapor. If very dilute chloroform or ether be inhaled, the respiration always ceases several minutes before the heart, which continues to beat fairly strongly at first but rapidly becomes weaker. If more concentrated vapor be used, the respiration again ceases before the heart, which is, however, much weakened and comes to a standstill after a short interval, and as the concentration is increased, the weakness of the heart at the moment when the respiration fails, also increases, and the interval between

the arrest of the respiration and of the heart-beat becomes shorter. Finally, when air saturated with vapor is inhaled, the interval between the two is so short as to be inappreciable (Fig. 12). When concentrated vapor of either chloroform or ether is inhaled, the pulse may be so weak as to be no longer perceptible before the respiration ceases, and the anæsthetist, therefore, believes that heart failure has been the cause of death, but if the movements of the heart be registered directly, it is found beating as long as the respiratory movements are carried on. The importance of the condition of the heart is further shown by the results of attempts to resuscitate the animal after the respiration has ceased; for if artificial respiration be commenced at once, the animal can invariably be restored to life, provided the heart has not been weakened too much; but if concentrated vapors have

FIG. 12.

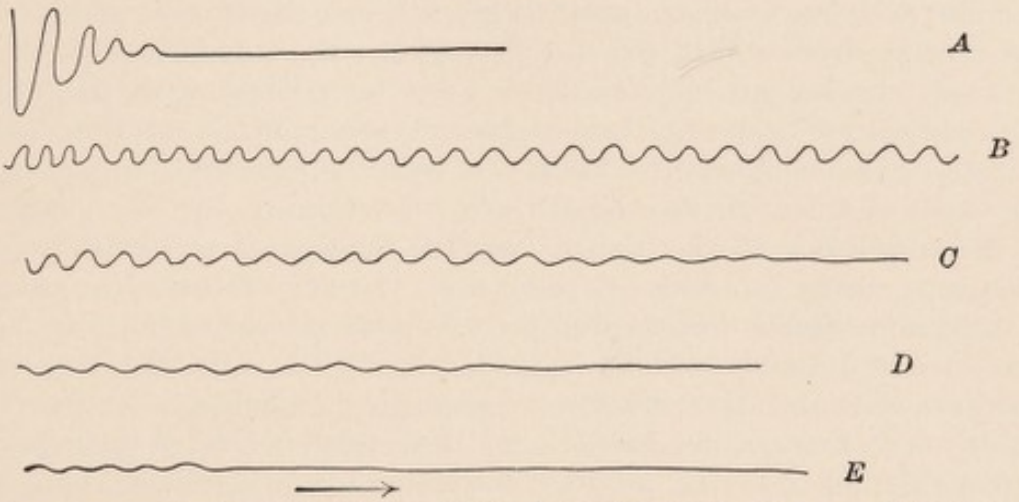


Diagram representing the state of the heart at the failure of respiration from an anæsthetic (chloroform or ether). *A* represents the respiratory movements, which cease very early in the tracing, *B* the pulsations of the heart at this point if the anæsthetic vapor has been much diluted with air, *C* if it is of medium strength, *D* if very concentrated, and *E* if saturated. The heart pulsations are recorded by the mercury manometer.

been inhaled, the heart is unable to carry on the circulation, and the animal cannot be resuscitated.

Hill has recently stated that when concentrated vapor is inhaled, the heart may sometimes cease before the respiration, which is finally paralyzed in part by the direct action of the drug, but mainly by the anæmia caused by the fall of blood-pressure. But almost all the exact experiments of the last few years show that the respiration fails before the heart. It is quite true that the medullary centres may suffer from the anæmia as well as from the direct action of chloroform, but the heart always continues to beat as long as the breathing is maintained, and, save in exceptional circumstances, for some time longer.

From a practical point of view, it is of comparatively little importance whether there are a few fluttering beats of the heart after the last inspiration or not. The all-important question is whether the heart has been so injured as to be unable to carry on the circulation, and this is decided by the concentration of the vapor that has been in-

haled. It has been mentioned already that ether acts very much less on the heart than chloroform, and this is really the reason why ether is so much the safer anæsthetic. Even when dilute vapor of chloroform is inhaled, the heart is considerably injured when the respiration ceases, while unless very concentrated ether fumes be inhaled, the weakness of the heart is very much less.

The autopsy in cases of death by chloroform or ether shows no specific lesions. The blood is often dark colored from the asphyxia, and the heart is found dilated. Irritation of the respiratory passages may be present in ether poisoning, and the odor of the anæsthetic may be recognized in the different organs. Microscopic examination may show some alterations in the cells of the respiratory centre and cardiac ganglia, fragmentation of the heart muscle, and some degeneration of the liver, kidneys, spleen and heart after chloroform (Poroschin).

Apparatus and Principles.—The principles on which the safe production of anæsthesia is based, then, are comparatively simple, but their interpretation into practice has given rise to various methods. A large number of inhalers have been introduced with the object of permitting of only a certain degree of concentration of the vapors. But the great majority of these are entirely erroneous in principle, the concentration of the vapor being determined by the character of the respiration of the patient, and the number of accidents has not been appreciably reduced by their use. In one of these, the amount of oxygen available for respiration was found to be reduced to 5 per cent., while the carbonic acid had risen to 7.8 per cent. after two minutes' respiration. This mixture of gases is insufficient to support the combustion of a candle, and is very near that which is immediately fatal to animal life. In another the concentration of the vapor was found to vary between 1.2 and 16.4 volumes per cent. An apparatus has recently been constructed by Dreser on correct principles, which allows of an exact gradation in the strength of the vapor inhaled, but it is exceedingly cumbrous, and while it might be used in hospitals, is certainly not available for ordinary practice. The advantage of this principle of measuring the concentration of the vapors is further only relative, for it has been shown that vapors so dilute as to be absolutely safe do not induce anæsthesia within a reasonable time. Thus 1 per cent. chloroform seems to be absolutely safe, but no surgeon will wait $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{3}{4}$ hr. for the anæsthetist. To induce anæsthesia, therefore, vapors have to be used, which would in time be fatal, and only after the reflexes disappear, is it possible to reduce the concentration to the point of absolute safety. The responsibility of the anæsthetist is, therefore, lessened, but by no means entirely removed by these methods. In the vast majority of cases, however, much simpler apparatus is used, and the ordinary mask or towel on which the anæsthetic is poured is not responsible for a larger proportion of accidents than the more complicated forms of apparatus. When no inhaler is used, the anæsthetist attempts to regulate the concentration of the vapor according to the symptoms, and this can

be done with complete success by watching the respiration closely. If the breathing be shallow, much less concentrated vapor is inhaled into the alveoli than if it be deep and gasping, for in ordinary respiration the air in the smaller bronchioles and alveoli is not exchanged directly with every respiration, but only by a process of diffusion from the larger air passages. The deeper the respiration, however, the further does the vapor penetrate and the lower the concentration needed to change the quantity in the blood. An experienced anæsthetist, by watching the respiration, removing the mask during deep breathing and replacing it when it becomes steady, can regulate with sufficient nicety the concentration of the anæsthetic in the alveoli and thereby the quantity in the blood. When anæsthesia has been attained, he of course ceases the administration until the return of the reflexes indicates awakening consciousness, and even then applies much smaller quantities than were necessary at first. This method of inducing anæsthesia requires the anæsthetist to watch only the respiration and the reflexes, and is that advised by Simpson and his followers (see Hyderabad Commission Report). A further safeguard has been sought for in the condition of the pulse, and this would seem the natural consequence of what has been stated above as to the importance of the condition of the heart. The pulse, however, is not very reliable as a guide in anæsthesia, for in the second stage, in which a certain number of fatalities occur, it is quickened by the excitement and may be irregular, and only gives indications of danger when it is too late to take measures to prevent it. In the third stage it may become gradually weaker, and thus indicate approaching danger, but if the respiration be watched the warning is given earlier. A large number of anæsthetists advise, however, that pulse and respiration both be watched, and this would seem to be the safest method, provided always that the anæsthetist does not depend on the pulse too much for indications of danger, and does not allow it to distract his attention from the more important indications given by the respiration.

Preliminary Examination. — Before anæsthesia, a careful examination should be made of the condition of the patient, and if there is great anxiety and excitement, a hypodermic injection of morphine may be given beforehand, or chloral may be prescribed, but these are rarely necessary. Valvular disease of the heart does not contraindicate an anæsthetic unless there are marked symptoms of inefficiency, such as dropsy or œdema. In fatty disease of the heart, on the other hand, chloroform is to be avoided, and if it seems extensive, ether is also dangerous from the strain put on the circulation during the excitement. Chloroform is liable to induce fatty degeneration of the heart, and for this reason it would not seem advisable to use it in successive operations on the same patient. Atheromatous arteries are dangerous from the tendency to apoplexy during the second stage also, and if anæsthesia is absolutely necessary, an opiate ought to be given previously. Anæsthesia is said to be dangerous in cases of brain tumor, and this may possibly arise from the fragility of the vessels. In cases of bronchitis

and catarrh of the air passages, chloroform is to be preferred to ether as it is less irritating, while in Bright's disease chloroform is generally more injurious than ether from the resultant albuminuria and tendency to fatty degeneration although ether is also believed by many to disturb the renal functions. Advanced diabetes contraindicates anæsthesia, the sugar increasing in the urine afterwards and coma and death sometimes supervening in the course of a few days. Da Costa recommends that where there are symptoms of anæmia, an examination of the blood should be made before anæsthesia, and states that where the hæmoglobin is found to be deficient, great care is necessary and that where it is lower than 50 per cent. of the normal, an anæsthetic is contraindicated.

Practical Anæsthesia. — The patient should have a light, easily digested meal 2–4 hours before, so that the stomach may be empty and vomiting avoided as far as possible. The bowels should also be regulated the day before for the same reason. He should then be laid on a table of suitable height with a low pillow, and should remove false teeth and any other foreign object from the mouth. The clothing about the neck, chest and abdomen is to be loosened or removed to allow of perfectly free respiration, but warm blankets or warm bottles should be applied as far as possible to prevent the fall of temperature if the operation is likely to be a long one. The eyes are closed in order to protect the conjunctiva from the irritating vapor. The anæsthetic is then applied on a towel or on a mask, which ought to be freely permeable by the air, and ought not to fit closely to the face. It must be remembered that the air passes through cloth with much greater difficulty when it is wet by the saliva and mucus, and that a mask which is freely permeable at the commencement of an operation, may lead to asphyxia after it has been soaked during the first and second stages. The patient is instructed to breathe as regularly as possible, or to count from one upwards, and some of the anæsthetic is dropped on the mask. If the breath be held, the mask should be raised a little from the face, as the next inspiration will be a very deep one. During the excitement stage the respiration is irregular, and great care must be taken to avoid the inhalation of too concentrated vapor. As soon as the conjunctival reflex disappears, the mask is removed, and is replaced only when it reappears or when the patient evinces signs of pain. Throughout the anæsthesia, care must be taken to prevent any interference with the respiration by the operator leaning on the thorax or abdomen. Very often stertorous respiration sets in from the tongue falling back into the throat, and this has to be remedied by pressing forward the angle of the jaw, or if this is not sufficient, by pulling out the tongue with a blunt-pointed forceps. Vomiting is a very common occurrence in anæsthesia, and when it sets in, the head is turned to one side and the vomited matter removed with a sponge.

A more serious accident is the failure of the respiration. A reflex arrest often occurs in the first stage, but is not of importance in itself,

but only from the deep gasping inspiration which follows it. If the anæsthetic be given too long in concentrated form, however, the respiration fails from direct action on the centre, and this demands immediate attention. The head ought to be lowered at once, and the lower limbs elevated, in order to drive the blood to the head as far as possible and thus remedy the anæmia of the brain from the weakness of the heart that accompanies the cessation of the respiration. The epiglottis must be raised by pressing forward the angles of the jaw (Hare), or by dragging forward the base of the tongue with hook or finger. Artificial respiration in one or other form ought to be commenced at once, and carried on as long as is necessary ; a large number of methods of performing artificial respiration have been proposed, but they can only be taught in a practical class and need not be entered upon here. If the pulse is weak, intermittent pressure over the heart may aid it in carrying on the circulation, and it has been proposed to pass one hand up under the ribs, and then press the heart between the two hands and aid it in expelling its contents. If the heart stops at this stage, there is little hope of reviving the patient, although this can often be done in animals by kneading the heart between the two hands. Various drugs have been recommended in these cases, but it is exceedingly questionable whether they are really of service ; alcohol, ammonia and ether have been injected subcutaneously, and may conceivably cause such local irritation as to reinstate the respiration reflexly, although this is improbable. Strychnine, caffeine and atropine have been injected as respiratory stimulants, and digitalis to strengthen the heart contraction ; as a matter of fact, however, if the circulation is strong enough to cause the absorption of these drugs and carry them to the respiratory centre and the heart, the patient will recover with the artificial respiration alone, while on the other hand, they are of no value unless absorbed. Nitrite of amyl is often given by inhalation in cases of accident, but the blood-pressure is so low already that there really seems no advantage in reducing it further, and amyl nitrite can have no other action. On the whole, it seems more than questionable whether drugs should be used at all in accidents during anæsthesia.

In the course of very long operations it is recommended to allow the patient to almost recover consciousness at intervals, but this is often impossible without interfering with the course of the operation. It must be remembered that in prolonged anæsthesia comparatively small quantities are required to maintain unconsciousness when it is once completely reached, and at the same time that, owing to the fall of temperature and the prolonged action of the drug, the quantity necessary to produce cessation of the respiration and the heart is much smaller than during shorter operations. In order to induce anæsthesia within a reasonable time, comparatively strong vapor may be used at first, but as soon as unconsciousness is reached, the vapor ought to be diluted as far as is compatible with the continuation of the narcosis.

On the completion of the operation, the patient seldom requires further attention from the anæsthetist ; after prolonged anæsthesia heat

may be applied by warm bottles, etc., as the temperature often continues to fall for some time after the administration of the drug has ceased. If vomiting persists after the recovery of consciousness, ice may be sucked, or bismuth may be prescribed. The inhalation of vinegar has been recommended and relief is sometimes given by lavage of the stomach.

The patient should always be placed in the recumbent position when possible, as otherwise the weakened heart tends to drive the blood in the direction of least resistance, that is, downwards, and in the depressed condition of the vaso-motor centre, this is not counteracted by the contraction of the arterioles of the abdomen, and anæmia of the brain and syncope are liable to result. The operation ought not to be commenced until anæsthesia is complete; otherwise shock may result and, in the weakened state of the central nervous system, may lead to fatal results.

Various drugs have been advised as preliminaries to anæsthesia, generally with the object of preventing the reflex arrest of the respiration and heart. Thus atropine and sparteine have been proposed to paralyze the vagus, and to arrest the mucous secretion and vomiting, and spraying of the nose with cocaine has recently been advised to paralyze the sensory terminations and so prevent the irritation which sets up the reflexes. As a matter of fact, however, the reflex arrest of the respiration and the slowing of the heart may rather be regarded as monitions that the vapor is too concentrated than as dangers in themselves. It has been proposed to dilute ether or chloroform vapor with oxygen instead of air, but there seems no theoretical reason why this should have any advantages, and in practice it has been used in too limited a number of cases to allow of trustworthy inferences.

Of late years a good deal of interest has been excited by the discovery that the perils of anæsthesia are not over when consciousness returns, but that fatal consequences may follow several days later. These late fatalities are due to fatty degeneration of the heart and kidneys or to diabetic coma in the case of chloroform, to bronchitis, pulmonary œdema and pneumonia after ether. No reliable data are as yet available as to the frequency of these sequelæ, as it is very difficult to distinguish between the results of the anæsthetic and the ordinary forms of disease. Even the proportion of cases in which albuminuria occurs after chloroform seems to vary remarkably in different hospitals, for it is given as low as 5 per cent. by some authors and as high as 30 per cent. by others; this may perhaps be explained by differences in the duration of the anæsthesia. The irritant effects of ether and the liability of pulmonary affections afterwards have been so evident that some surgeons have returned to the use of chloroform, believing that the late effects in ether claimed as high a proportion of victims as the more immediate effects of chloroform. Dreser has shown, however, that the irritant action of ether and its consequent dangers may be largely avoided by the use of dilute vapor. Some anæsthetists have found albumin and casts in the urine in a considerable proportion of cases in which anæsthesia had been induced by ether, but others have failed to detect any action on the kidneys after this anæsthetic.

Therapeutic Uses. — Anæsthesia is generally induced for the purpose of surgical operations and examinations, and in labor. Until recent years, when it was necessary to perform an operation or manipulation involving much pain, the surgeon had to consider only which of the two general anæsthetics was the better adapted to the case. But the improvements introduced in the methods of inducing local anæsthesia and the reintroduction of nitrous oxide as a surgical anæsthetic have now enlarged his field of choice, and the further question has to be met whether unconsciousness is desirable, or whether the necessities of the case may not be met by paralyzing sensation at the seat of operation only. The advantages claimed for local anæsthesia will be discussed under cocaine, but the general conditions in which chloroform and ether are to be preferred may be stated shortly (see also nitrous oxide). General anæsthesia is absolutely essential where complete relaxation of the muscles is desired, and where the movements of the patient may imperil the success of the operation. Operations on the abdominal organs and around joints and such others as involve wide and deep incisions will almost certainly continue to be performed under chloroform or ether, although a few such operations have been attempted under cocaine. In many less serious operations it is necessary also to have recourse to the older methods, which allow greater freedom to the surgeon, who is under no apprehension that he may reach a sensitive area and has thus one less source of anxiety than if the anæsthesia were localized. Another argument for the use of general anæsthetics is the effect which the anxiety and the sights and sounds of the operating room may have on a nervous patient even when no actual pain is felt. And a considerable amount of practice is required before complete local anæsthesia can be induced over an extensive field of operation, while the surgeon has often to interrupt his manipulations in order to admit of a fresh area being rendered analgesic. But there is no question that many operations in which ether or chloroform has hitherto been employed, will in the future be performed more often under local anæsthesia or nitrous oxide. In this class may be included most minor operations in which only very short or partial anæsthesia is necessary and in which no complications are to be anticipated.

During labor only the lighter degrees of anæsthesia are necessary, the object being to dull the pain without lessening to any marked extent the reflex irritability of the spinal cord, and accidents are extremely rare in this use of anæsthetics, although the common statement that they are unknown is incorrect. Some cases have been recorded in which it is believed that chloroform was fatal to the child and not to the mother, but it is, of course, impossible to state with certainty that the anæsthetic was the cause of death. If too deep anæsthesia is produced, however, it is quite conceivable that the labor may be prolonged, or the blood-pressure so reduced as to lead to an imperfect exchange of gases in the placenta and thus to the death of the infant; or as another explanation it might be suggested that the irritability of the respiratory centre of the child may

be so reduced that it fails to react when the placental circulation is interrupted.

Anæsthetics are also employed in cases of extreme irritability of the central nervous system, as in strychnine poisoning, tetanus or other convulsive affections. In order to reduce these, it is unnecessary to produce deep anæsthesia, a few whiffs of chloroform being generally sufficient to produce quiet, often without affecting the consciousness to any marked extent. In cases of very acute pain, chloroform or ether may be used, but as a general rule morphine or opium is preferable, as the action lasts much longer and the administration is much more convenient.

During the stage of excitement of anæsthesia, the dreams of the patient sometimes assume an erotic character, and charges of criminal assault have been repeatedly brought against surgeons by women whom they had anæsthetized. It is, therefore, advisable to give chloroform to women only in the presence of a third person.

The local action of chloroform and ether on the stomach and skin is entirely independent of the action as anæsthetics, and has to be discussed separately (see page 181).

Preparations.

U. S. P.—Chloroformum, a liquid containing 99–99.4% by weight of absolute chloroform ($CHCl_3$) and 0.6–1% of alcohol.

Æther, ether, a liquid composed of about 96% by weight of absolute ether or ethyl oxide ($(C_2H_5)_2O$) and about 4% of alcohol containing a little water.

B. P.—Chloroformum, chloroform ($CHCl_3$), must have a specific gravity of 1.490–1.495, that is, must contain 99 per cent. of absolute chloroform.

Æther, ether, or sulphuric ether, a volatile liquid prepared from alcohol and containing not less than 92% by volume of pure ether or ethyl oxide ($(C_2H_5)_2O$).

Æther Purificatus, ether freed from most of the alcohol or water, and of 0.720–0.722 specific gravity.

Chloroform is ordinarily formed by the action of chlorine on alcohol, the chlorine being added in the form of chlorinated lime. The crude drug is purified by repeated washing with water and sulphuric acid, and dried over calcium chloride. The fatalities following its use have frequently been ascribed to impurities, and a certain demand has arisen for a purer article than that required by the pharmacopœias. Another method of preparation has therefore been introduced, the decomposition of chloral by soda (*Chloroformum e Chloral præparatum*). Other pure forms are prepared from ordinary chloroform by crystallizing it by cold (Pictet), or by forming a compound with salicylid and decomposing it again by slight heat, *Chloroform* (*Anschutz*) or *Chloroform* (*Salicylid*).

The impurities of chloroform are due partly to imperfect manufacture and partly to decomposition. Along with the chloroform there distils over a small quantity of heavy oily fluid, which may be isolated by Pictet's method, but whose composition is entirely unknown. DuBois-Reymond found that this fluid acted more strongly on the heart than pure chloroform, but it is very questionable whether the minute quantities inhaled in ordinary anæsthesia produce effects of any importance, and, on the other hand, it is quite certain that the use of absolutely pure chloroform does not prevent accidents. Chloroform undergoes decomposition when exposed to light and air, hydro-

chloric acid and chlorine being set free in small quantity. These can affect the course of anæsthesia only through their local irritant action, but if present in sufficient quantity may cause the respiration to be more irregular than usual in the earlier stages; the chloroform used for anæsthetic purposes ought, therefore, to be kept in a dark place or in colored bottles. Another decomposition occurs when chloroform is evaporated in the neighborhood of a large flame, such as from gas or lamps, and hydrochloric acid and phosgen (CCl_2O) are formed, the latter being a gas with exceedingly irritant properties.

Chloroform is a heavy volatile fluid, of characteristic pleasant odor and hot sweetish taste. Its specific gravity is 1.490 (U. S. P.) and 1.490–1.495 (B. P.), and it boils at 60–62° C. A number of tests are given for impurities, but those of importance can generally be detected by the odor, especially if some chloroform be allowed to evaporate in a watch-glass, when the last drop ought to have no irritant effect when inhaled. Chlorine and hydrochloric acid may be tested for by shaking the chloroform with distilled water, and testing the latter with potassium iodide and starch and with silver nitrate. The water ought to give no acid reaction to litmus. If left in contact with concentrated sulphuric acid, chloroform should not become darker within one hour, as this indicates the presence of some foreign unstable body. The other impurities require complicated chemical processes for their detection.

Ether is prepared by the action of sulphuric acid on alcohol, and is subsequently purified by washing with water and alkalies. It seldom contains impurities of importance. Bruns supposed that the irritant, suffocating action of ether was due to its containing impurities, such as ozone, but it would rather seem due to the inhalation of concentrated vapor. Æther (B. P.) is unsuited for anæsthesia, and, in fact, is entirely superfluous. Æther purificatus (B. P.) and Æther (U. S. P.) are practically identical and are the forms intended for inhalation. Ether is a very volatile fluid, of a suffocating, irritant odor and bitter taste. Its specific gravity is .725–.728 U. S. P., and .720–.722 B. P., and its boiling point is 36–37° C. It evaporates very rapidly in the air and should leave no foreign odor and no residue. It should not color litmus paper, nor be colored within an hour when shaken with potassium hydrate solution. Ether vapor is exceedingly inflammable when mixed with air, and it should therefore be kept in a cool place, away from gas flames or lamps.

Various other members of the fatty series have been introduced as general anæsthetics at different times, but none of them have proved to have any advantage over chloroform and ether, and it is, therefore, unnecessary to enter into details regarding them. Fatalities have occurred after all of those that have received a wide trial. Among others, methylene bichloride, ethylene chloride, and ethylidene chloride have received extensive trial, but have fallen into disuse. **Pental,** trimethylethylene ($(CH_3)_2C—CHCH_3$) has been introduced for short operations within the last few years, and possesses the advantage that no after-effects are suffered from, the patient feeling perfectly well a few minutes after regaining consciousness. Its use is not absolutely safe, however, as was once asserted, for several accidents have occurred under it within a comparatively short time. Pental produces anæsthesia before the reflexes disappear or the muscles relax, and not infrequently the jaws are tightly closed after consciousness is lost. In some cases tremor and convulsive attacks have occurred during its administration, but it seems to have very little action on the heart or circulation. In the frog it is said to paralyze the terminations of the motor nerves. **Ethyl Bromide** (C_2H_5Br) has also been used largely in recent years for short operations instead of chloroform, and produces anæsthesia with great rapidity. Consciousness returns more quickly after the removal of the mask than under any other anæsthetic, but on the other hand, the inhalation is not so

pleasant as that of pental and patients complain of greater depression and discomfort afterwards. Hennicke found that 10 vol. per cent. of ethyl bromide were necessary to anæsthetize animals within 5 minutes, and that if this concentration were maintained, death occurred in 15 minutes, so that it is by no means to be considered a perfectly safe anæsthetic; several deaths have occurred from its use in dentistry. Both pental and ethyl bromide are administered on a mask in the same way as ether. Ethyl bromide must be distinguished from ethylene bromide ($C_2H_4Br_2$) which is a much more dangerous anæsthetic. Ethyl bromide is very liable to decomposition when kept long, and is often furnished in an impure form; it ought to be perfectly colorless, as a yellowish color indicates decomposition, often with the presence of free bromide. Methyl bromide (CH_3Br) is quite unsuitable as an anæsthetic as after the drug is withdrawn, the unconsciousness remains and may even become deeper; this is perhaps due to the molecule being decomposed and bromides being formed in large amounts.

The other members of this series possess no practical importance. It may be mentioned that tetrachloride of carbon (CCl_4) differs from the others in causing convulsions, while perchlorethane (C_2Cl_6) is a crystalline solid and possesses too high a boiling point to be available for inhalation. **Bromoform** ($CHBr_3$) has anæsthetic properties resembling those of chloroform, but has never been largely used in medicine. Of late years it has been given internally in whooping-cough, and in this relation it is important to remember that when given repeatedly it causes fatty degeneration. A number of cases of alarming poisoning in children have been recorded from the use of bromoform, one gramme being sufficient to cause total unconsciousness.

Various **Mixtures of the Anæsthetics** have been advised at different times. Of these the ACE mixture (alcohol 1, ether 2 and chloroform 3 parts by volume) is the best known. Its use has, however, been attended with numerous fatalities, as was only to be expected from a consideration of the volatility of the different ingredients. Ether, being the most volatile, is first inhaled, and then chloroform, and last of all the alcohol. The safe concentration of ether is, however, much greater than that of chloroform, and a vapor which may be perfectly safe as long as it consists of ether for the most part, may become exceedingly dangerous when it consists of chloroform. This method, therefore, increases the responsibility of the chloroformist by leaving him in complete ignorance as to the composition of the anæsthetic at any given time.

A new series of mixtures, advocated recently by Schleich, consists of different proportions of chloroform, ether, and petroleum ether, the more volatile part of petroleum (boiling at 60–65° C.). His object is to have a fluid which boils as near the blood temperature (38.4°C.) as possible but it is unnecessary to enter into the theoretical principles on which he based his mixture as these have proved to be erroneous and such a fluid as he advises has no constant boiling point (Braun). He records very successful results in a small number of cases, and there is no reason why his mixture should not be as safe as the pure anæsthetics, provided it is given with such precautions as are always taken as long as a remedy is on its trial. It is not to be expected, however, that it will prove a "safe" anæsthetic for the inexperienced and untrained to use, or, in fact, that any such anæsthetic will ever be discovered. The anæsthesia is induced and maintained for the most part by the ether, which forms 70–80 per cent. of his mixture and the 17½–24 per cent. of chloroform merely accelerates and deepens its action. The petroleum ether is quite superfluous, and the danger of the mixture lies in the fact that the vapor consists at one time of ether mainly, while later most of it may be chloroform. In favor of the mixture of the two anæsthetics it has been urged that very small quantities are required to induce unconsciousness, while on the other hand, the respiration is more unfavorably influenced than by either of them given alone (Honigmann).

Local Action and Uses.

In addition to their use as anæsthetics, chloroform and ether are sometimes prescribed for the same purposes as the volatile oils. Chloroform has a hot, sweetish taste, while ether is bitter and suffocating in the mouth; a sensation of heat and often of pain in the stomach follows when they are swallowed, and chloroform may cause gastric irritation and catarrh when given undiluted. The movements of the stomach are accelerated, and Batelli states that a certain amount of shortening of the muscular fibres occurs. The whole effect is similar to that produced by the volatile oils, but absorption probably takes place more rapidly. On the skin, ether evaporates too rapidly to cause much irritation, but chloroform is occasionally used as a rubefacient in the form of a liniment.

Preparations.

The pure substances may be administered by the mouth, but more frequently other preparations are prescribed.

Chloroform, 0.5–1 c.c. (8–15 mins.).

Æther, 0.5–1 c.c. (8–15 mins.).

Spiritus Ætheris (U. S. P., B. P.), 1–5 c.c. (30–90 m.).

Spiritus Ætheris Compositus (U. S. P., B. P.) (Hoffmann's Anodyne) contains a number of esters of ethyl and other substances known as "ethereal oil," together with ether and alcohol, 2–4 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

Spiritus Chloroformi (U. S. P., B. P.), 1–4 c.c. (20–60 min.) (5–20 m. for repeated doses, B. P.).

Emulsum Chloroformi (U. S. P.), 15–30 c.c. (½–1 fl. oz.).

Aqua Chloroformi (U. S. P., B P.).

Linimentum Chloroformi (U. S. P., B. P.).

Tinctura Chloroformi et Morphinæ Composita (B. P.) contains one per cent. of morphine hydrochlorate, chloroform, prussic acid, cannabis indica, capsicum and oil of peppermint, and represents the patented medicine "chlorodyne." Dose, 5–15 m. It is used as a soporific (see morphine).

Æther Aceticus (U. S. P., B. P.), acetic ether, an ethereal fluid consisting of ethyl acetate, 1–3 c.c. (20–40 mins.).

Therapeutic Uses. — These preparations are used for the same purposes as the corresponding preparations of the volatile oils. Thus the spirits and emulsion may be prescribed as carminatives or in colic, while the liniment is used as a counter-irritant. Chloroform water is an antiseptic of considerable power, but is too volatile for surgical use.

Spirits of ether and ether itself are often given internally or subcutaneously in cases of shock or sudden collapse in the same way as brandy or whiskey, though Elfstrand states that ether injected hypodermically has no effect on the heart or blood-pressure; spirits of ether contains a much larger percentage of alcohol than ordinary whiskey. Both ether and chloroform, but more especially the latter, have been used internally for tapeworm with success. There is always some danger, however, that, besides destroying the parasite, they may cause irritation and lasting injury to the intestinal wall.

Hofmann's anodyne is a favorite carminative, and is often added to other drugs to lend them an agreeable odor and taste. It is also used

in dilution as a stimulant in the same indefinite way as wine and spirits, and its large percentage of alcohol, together with the bouquet given it by the various esters present, entitle it to be ranked among the alcoholic preparations.

Both spirits of ether are used occasionally in expectorant mixtures and are believed to increase the bronchial secretion.

Ether evaporates very rapidly and leaves a sensation of cold, and when thrown on the skin in a fine spray it produces sufficient cold to numb sensation in the part and allow of minor surgical operations. (See uses of cocaine.) Instead of ether still more volatile substances, such as ethyl chloride (boiling point 12.5° C.) and methyl chloride (boiling point — 23° C.) have been introduced. The latter is supplied in pressure cylinders, and is allowed to escape against the skin, while the others are thrown against it by pumping air through them. The local anæsthesia produced bears no relation to their action when inhaled, but is due simply to the cold produced by their evaporation. The vessels of the part contract, and the absence of blood and hardness of the tissues facilitate some operations, but the subsequent reaction is liable to produce considerable soakage of blood from the wound. The cold elicited ought not to be great enough to actually freeze the tissues, otherwise the healing may be slow. The intense cold is often quite as painful as the operation itself would be without any anæsthetic.

Bibliography of Chloroform and Ether.

The literature up to 1880 is given in *Kappeler's* "Anæsthetica," Stuttgart, 1880.

Snow. On chloroform and other anæsthetics, London, 1858.

Report of the *London Chloroform Committee*, Medico-chirurgical Transact., xlvii., 1864.

Sansom. Chloroform; its action and administration, London, 1865.

Claude Bernard. Leçons sur les anæsthesiques, Paris, 1875.

Bernstein. Moleschott's Untersuch., x., p. 280.

Scheinesson. Arch. d. Heilkunde, 1869, p. 36.

Knoll. Sitzungsber. d. Wiener Akad., lxxiv., 3 Abt., p. 233; lxxviii., 3 Abt., p. 223.

Bowditch and Minot. Boston Med. and Surg. Journ., 1874, p. 493.

Commission de la Soc. Med. d'emulation. Union Med., 1855.

P. Bert. Comptes rend. de l'Acad., xciii., p. 768; xcvi., p. 1831.

Dastre. Les Anæsthesiques, Paris, 1890.

In regard to the recent controversy as to the cause of death in chloroform anæsthesia, consult *Report of the Hyderabad Chloroform Commission*, Bombay, 1891, and Lancet, 1890. The criticisms on the report are also dealt with in the Lancet, 1890–91, and in the British Medical Journal, 1890–91.

MacWilliam. Proc. Roy. Soc., liii., p. 464. Journ. of Physiol., xxv., p. 235.

Wood and Hare. Medical News, lvi., p. 190.

Cushny. Ztschr. f. Biol., xxviii., p. 365.

Gaskell and Shore. Brit. Med. Journ., 1893.

Hill. Brit. Med. Journ., 1897, April.

Dieballa. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiv., p. 137.

Hoppes. Ibid., xvi., p. 81.

Pohl. Ibid., xxviii., p. 239.

Limbourg. Ibid., xxx., p. 93.

Nauwerck. Deutsche med. Woch., 1895, p. 121.

Poppert. Ibid., 1894, p. 719.

Miculicz. Berlin. klin. Woch., 1894, p. 1035.

Bruns. Ibid., p. 1147.

Salkowski. Zts. f. klin. Med. (Suppl.), xvii., p. 77.

Dubs. Inaug. Diss., Berlin, 1893.
Ungar. Vierteljahr. f. ger. Med., xlvii., p. 98.
Strassmann. Virchow's Arch., cxv., p. 1.
Ostertag. Ibid., cxviii., p. 250.
Fränkel. Ibid., cxxvii., p. 381; cxxix., p. 254.
Mertens. Arch. de Pharmacodynam., ii., p. 127.
Kast u. Mester. Zts. f. klin. Med., xviii., p. 469.
Taniguti. Virchow's Arch., cxx., p. 121.
Rudenko. Ibid., cxxv., p. 102.
Savelieff. Ibid., cxxxvi., p. 195.
Ambrosius. Ibid., cxxxviii., Suppl., p. 193.
Kast. Zts. f. phys. Chem., xi., p. 277, and xii., p. 267.
Lippmann. Mittheil. a. d. Grenzgebiet der Med. u. Chir., iv., p. 21.
Selbach. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiv., p. 1.
Bœker. Virchow's Arch., cxl., p. 1.
Spenzer. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiii., p. 407.
Rosenfeld. Ibid., xxxvii., p. 52.
Dreser. Beiträge zur klin. Chirurg., x., p. 412, and xii., p. 353. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvii., p. 375. Bulletin of Johns Hopkins Hospital, vi., p. 7, 1895.
Hennicke. Inaug. Diss. Bonn., 1895.
Heymanns et Debuck. Arch. de Pharmacodyn., i., p. 1.
R. du Bois-Reymond. Therap. Monatsch., 1892, p. 21.
Paton. Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc., 1894, p. 251.
Lambert et Garnier. Jour. de Phys., ii., p. 902.
Pereles u. Sachs. Pflüger's Arch., liii., p. 526.
Waller. Brain, xix., p. 43.
Poroschin. Centralbl. f. d. med. Wiss., 1898, p. 305.
Kemp. New York Med. Journ., 1899, ii., p. 732.
Thompson, Buxton, Levy. Brit. Med. Journ., 1900, ii., p. 833.
Duplay et Hallion. Arch. gen. de Med., clxxxvi., p. 129.
Da Costa. American Medicine, 1901, May 18th. Annals of Surgery, 1901, Sept.
Braun. Arch. f. klin. Chirurg., lxiv., p. 201.
Honigmann. Arch. f. klin. Chirurg, lviii., p. 730.
Kionka. Ibid., l., p. 339.
Pick. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlii., p. 412.
Elfstrand. Ibid., xliii., p. 435.
Sackur. Virchow's Arch., cxxxiii., p. 30. (Pental.)
Holländer. Therap. Monatsheft, 1891, p. 509; 1892, p. 19.
Friedländer. Ibid., 1893, p. 42.
Bauchwitz. Ibid., 1893, p. 352.
Rieth. Ibid., 1893, p. 427.
Reinecke. Ibid., 1898, p. 404. (Bromoform.)

3. Nitrous Oxide.

The oldest of the anæsthetics, nitrous oxide, N_2O, does not belong to the methane series, but may be discussed at this point.

Symptoms. — When a mixture of nitrous oxide and air is inhaled for a few seconds, a condition resembling alcoholic intoxication is produced, with much hilarity and laughter, so that the oxide is known popularly as "laughing gas." Even at this point a certain amount of anæsthesia is obtained, and it was the observation that persons falling during this stage did not complain of pain that first suggested to Wells the anæsthetic properties of the gas. Davy had noted these forty years previously, but his suggestion that nitrous oxide might be used in surgical operations passed unnoticed.

The inhalation of a mixture of nitrous oxide, 4 parts, and oxygen, 1 part, causes after a few seconds a rushing, drumming, hammering in the ears, indistinct sight, and a feeling of warmth and comfort. The movements become exaggerated and uncertain, the gait is

staggering, and the body sways from side to side. The patient seems brighter and more lively, and often bursts into laughter. Somewhat later a feeling of drowsiness may come on, but this is not constant; the sensibility to pain is much less acute than normally, but no complete anæsthesia is produced by this mixture of gases; the sense of touch is comparatively little altered, and total unconsciousness never results. The pupil is generally slightly dilated, the face flushed, and the pulse somewhat accelerated.

When pure nitrous oxide is inhaled without the admixture of oxygen, the patient passes almost instantaneously through the symptoms already described, but then loses consciousness completely; the face is cyanotic, the respiration becomes stertorous and dyspnœic and ceases after a weak convulsion, while the heart continues to beat for some time afterwards. If the mask through which the patient has been inhaling the gas be removed when the cyanosis becomes marked, very complete anæsthesia lasts for 30–60 seconds, and the patient then recovers within a few minutes and suffers from no after-effects whatever. No prolonged anæsthesia can be produced, however, as the respiration becomes endangered if the mask be kept on longer than the beginning of the cyanotic stage.

Action. — Nitrous oxide supports combustion outside the body, for if a glowing splinter of wood be held in it, it bursts into flame exactly as if it were immersed in oxygen. It was accordingly believed at one time that nitrous oxide supported the combustion of the living tissues in the same way as oxygen, but this has been disproved, for as far as the metabolism of protoplasm is concerned, nitrous oxide behaves in the same way as any other indifferent gas, such as hydrogen or nitrogen; that is, the tissues exposed to it suffer from asphyxia owing to the oxygen of the air being excluded. Thus, plants do not grow in an atmosphere of nitrous oxide and seeds do not germinate. Animals die after inhaling nitrous oxide in almost the same time as after hydrogen or nitrogen, and at death the spectrum of the blood shows no oxyhæmoglobin to be present, the tissues having used up all the available oxygen. Nitrous oxide, therefore, does not support combustion in the animal body, the nitrogen is not split off from the oxygen as it is when the oxide is exposed to high temperatures outside the body.

Another question is whether nitrous oxide behaves only as an indifferent gas in the body, or whether it has not some special effect on the central nervous system, although in the rest of the tissues it acts only by excluding the oxygen. The earlier workers in this field held that it affected the central nervous system only by cutting off its supply of oxygen, but this has been shown to be erroneous, for nitrous oxide acts as a depressant to the central nervous system by virtue of its molecular form just as chloroform or ether does. This has been shown in a variety of ways; thus, if it were a perfectly indifferent body no more effect would be produced by it when mixed with one fourth of its volume of oxygen than by air, which consists of 1 part of oxygen and 4 parts of an indifferent gas, nitrogen. But 80 per cent. nitrous

oxide has definite effects on the behavior of animals, as has been mentioned, and even 73 per cent. produces some slowing of the respiration. The narcotic action was demonstrated very clearly by Paul Bert in a series of experiments on man and animals. He noted that only imperfect anæsthesia was produced by 80 per cent. nitrous oxide, while the pure gas produced asphyxia. The problem was to introduce as much gas into the blood as would pass in under pure nitrous oxide, and at the same time to supply sufficient oxygen to prevent asphyxia. The absorption of nitrous oxide depends upon its partial pressure in the lungs, as it is simply dissolved in the blood without forming any real combination with it, and the quantity absorbed by the blood may be augmented by increasing the barometric pressure. Bert, therefore, administered a mixture of 80 parts nitrous oxide and 20 parts oxygen to animals in a glass case in which the pressure was raised one fourth above the ordinary atmospheric pressure. The absorption of the nitrous oxide was the same as if the animal had breathed the pure gas at the ordinary air pressure, and at the same time as much oxygen was absorbed as in ordinary air. The result was a complete anæsthesia without asphyxia, which could be maintained for 3 days without injury to the animal (Martin). Kemp has recently shown that mixtures of oxygen and nitrous oxide can be inhaled for some time and produce anæsthesia, which passes off at once when nitrogen is substituted for nitrous oxide. He has further investigated the blood gases during nitrous oxide anæsthesia, and finds that the oxygen contained in the blood at the deepest stage of anæsthesia is quite sufficient to maintain life and consciousness were no nitrous oxide present. Again Goltstein found that frogs were narcotized in $5\frac{1}{2}$ minutes in an atmosphere of nitrous oxide, in $1\frac{1}{4}$ hours in hydrogen, and showed that the narcosis and death in mammals from nitrous oxide differed in several details from that under indifferent gases. There can, therefore, be no doubt that nitrous oxide has distinct effects on the central nervous system, although it is indifferent to the other tissues. A further question arises, whether the anæsthesia produced by it in ordinary use is due to this specific action on the nerve cells alone or to the asphyxia. Wood has shown that even a slight admixture of oxygen (3 per cent.) delays anæsthesia considerably, so that the lack of oxygen appears to aid the direct effects of the anæsthetic. Bert's and Martin's experiments would indicate that death occurs not from the direct action of the nitrous oxide on the respiratory centre, but from the lack of oxygen, although the depression of the centre is undoubtedly a contributing factor.

The same question arises regarding the action on the nerve cells as has been met with in the members of the methane series, and here again the preliminary excitement would seem to indicate not stimulation of the brain areas, but lessened activity of the functions of control and restraint.

The respiratory centre is depressed when the gas is inhaled in comparatively dilute form, for Zuntz and Goltstein found the breathing slower and deeper after 73 per cent. The respiration ceases some-

what earlier under nitrous oxide than under indifferent gases, which would indicate that the cessation of the breathing is due at any rate in part to the specific depressant action. In asphyxia from nitrous oxide there is less convulsive movement than under hydrogen, owing to the general depression of the nerve cells.

The circulation is little affected by the nitrous oxide directly, the rise in the blood-pressure and slowness of the pulse being due to the asphyxial condition of the blood; the pulse is not so slow as in ordinary asphyxia or in asphyxia from nitrogen or hydrogen, because the inhibitory centre is less capable of activity. The heart is not affected directly, but only by the lack of oxygen.

Nitrous oxide is dissolved in the blood exactly as in water. There is no combination formed with any of the constituents, nor is the hæmoglobin altered in any respect.

Nitrous oxide is a gas at ordinary temperature and pressure, and is invariably administered by inhalation from a cylinder into which it has been forced under high pressure. The mask generally covers both nose and mouth, and the inhalation is carried on until distinct cyanosis appears, when the anæsthesia is sufficient to allow of short operations, such as those of dentistry. It is much the safest of the anæsthetics, for millions of persons have been subjected to its influence, and as yet only ten cases of death are reported from its use, and several of these do not seem to have been due to the direct action of the gas. Unfortunately, the anæsthesia cannot be kept up except for a very short time, which is quite insufficient to allow of ordinary operative procedures. A number of attempts have been made to prolong the anæsthesia, of which Bert's was much the most successful. The operator, patient and attendants were enclosed in an air-tight chamber, the air pressure was raised by means of force pumps, and Bert's mixture of oxygen and nitrous oxide was inhaled by the patient. A whole series of major operations were performed in this way, the anæsthesia being complete as long as was desired, and the patient recovering a few minutes after the mask was removed. The only objections to the method were the great expense of the chamber and of pumping the air, and the inconvenience attending the whole procedure. Bert, therefore, proposed later to induce anæsthesia by pure nitrous oxide, and then to substitute for it a mixture of oxygen and nitrous oxide, and to keep up the anæsthesia as long as desired by alternating between the pure gas and the mixture. A practical method of carrying out this form of anæsthesia has been devised by Hewitt, whose results have led to a wider trial of diluted nitrous oxide anæsthesia than it has hitherto had. His apparatus consists essentially of two reservoirs, the one containing oxygen, the other nitrous oxide, and of a mixing chamber with a stopcock by which the proportion of oxygen is regulated. A tube leads from the mixing chamber to the mask which must fit closely to the face. The inhalation is commenced with pure nitrous oxide or with a mixture containing only 2 per cent. of oxygen. When anæsthesia is attained the percentage of oxygen is increased to 5–8 per

cent. by turning the stopcock, and the symptoms determine the further changes, returning consciousness necessitating a diminution in the oxygen, stertor and cyanosis an increase. This form of anæsthesia is admirably adapted for minor operations and has been maintained in some cases for as long as an hour. The circulation and respiration are less seriously altered than by any other method that induces general anæsthesia, and the return of consciousness is almost immediate. The great drawback to its use is the cumbrous apparatus required and the large amount of gas used, amounting to about 100 gallons for anæsthesia of half an hour. Complete muscular relaxation is seldom attained and this precludes its use in many operations, in which however it may be employed at first and then be replaced by chloroform or ether, whose preliminary disagreeable effects are thus avoided. Klikowitsch proposed the use of 80 per cent. nitrous oxide, not for complete anæsthesia, but to relieve pain and spasm in cases of asthma, in labor and similar conditions. The patient could inhale it if necessary without the presence of a medical attendant, and it had the advantage over the other depressants that it need only be inhaled when an attack of pain was approaching and that it left no depression afterwards.

The high blood-pressure induced by nitrous oxide asphyxia is sometimes said to be dangerous in elderly persons from their liability to apoplexy, and of the few fatalities under the gas several would seem due rather to this than to the drug directly, but the danger is often overstated, and, in fact, it is a question whether the shock caused by the operation without gas would not be more dangerous than the effects of the gas itself. No such symptoms arise when the nitrous oxide is diluted with oxygen as in Hewitt's method.

Occasionally some glycosuria occurs after the inhalation, not owing to the gas itself, but to the accompanying asphyxia. It is merely temporary and has no practical importance.

The treatment of accidents in anæsthesia under nitrous oxide consists in artificial respiration alone.

Bibliography.

Paul Bert. Comptes rendus, lxxxvii., p. 728, and xcvi., p. 1271.
Hermann. Arch. f. Anat. und Phys., 1864, p. 521.
Jolyet et Blanche. Arch. de Phys., 1873, p. 364.
Goltstein. Pflüger's Arch., xvii., p. 331.
Klikowitsch. Virchow's Arch., xciv., p. 148. (Literature.)
Martin. Comptes rendus, cvi., p. 290.
Van Arsdale. Am. Journ. Med. Sciences, cii., p. 131.
Wood. Dental Cosmos, 1893.
Kemp. Brit. Med. Journ., 1897, ii., p. 1480.
Hewitt. Anæsthetics and their administration, London, 1900.

4. Soporifics.—Chloral.

Some twenty years after the introduction of the anæsthetics, a new interest was given to the methane series by the examination of the action of chloral by Liebreich. Henceforth the attention of investigators was diverted from the quest of anæsthetics to that of hypnotics, with

the result that a very large number of bodies have since been suggested for this purpose and that a few valuable drugs have been added to therapeutics. These soporifics, or narcotics, have the same general action as the anæsthetics, but are used only to produce the first effects of imperfect consciousness or sleep. The anæsthetics might be used for this purpose were it not for the comparatively short time during which their action persists. Narcotics are required to produce a slight but lasting effect, and for this purpose the gradual absorption from the stomach is better adapted than the rapid absorption and equally rapid elimination by the lungs. The narcotics are, therefore, less volatile than the anæsthetics, and ought to be soluble in water and not irritant in the stomach, so as to permit of rapid absorption. Chloral is still the best known and most widely used member of this group.

Symptoms.—In small quantities chloral produces drowsiness and weariness, which soon pass into a condition resembling natural sleep very closely, from which the patient can be awakened by ordinary means, such as touching, loud sounds, or pain. The respiration and pulse are somewhat slower than in waking moments, but scarcely more so than in natural sleep, and the somewhat narrowed pupil and unaltered excitability of the reflexes are also common to both conditions. As a general rule, the sleep passes off in 5–8 hours and leaves no unpleasant results, but sometimes headache, giddiness and confusion are complained of. Occasionally no real sleep is produced by chloral, a condition exactly resembling alcoholic intoxication following its administration and continuing for some time. When larger quantities, *e. g.*, 5 G. (75 grs.), are taken, the sleep is much deeper, the patient cannot be aroused to complete consciousness, the reflexes are distinctly lessened and the sensation of pain is less acute, although no complete anæsthesia is present. The respirations are fewer and the pulse may be slow and somewhat weak. The sleep lasts very much longer (10–15 hours), and nausea, vomiting, headache and confusion often remain after consciousness is regained. In still larger quantities chloral produces a condition resembling exactly the third stage of anæsthesia. The reflexes are entirely absent and no movement is elicited by painful operations, the muscles are completely relaxed, the respiration and pulse are both slow and weak, and eventually asphyxia occurs from paralysis of the respiratory centre. The heart continues to beat for a short time after the breathing ceases.

The first stage is the only one elicited in therapeutics. The use of chloral as an anæsthetic would be quite unjustifiable, because it is impossible to adjust the dose accurately enough to allow of complete anæsthesia without danger of respiratory failure.

Action.—The **Central Nervous System** is depressed and eventually completely paralyzed by chloral and its allies. Unlike the anæsthetics and alcohol, however, chloral rarely causes excitement, but this may be due to the facts that the surroundings of the patient are less likely to cause excitement and that the drug itself causes less local irritation. The results of psychological experiments on the effects of small doses

of the narcotics seem to indicate that they all depress the sensory or receptive functions of the brain, while its motor activity is much reduced by chloral and sulphonal, but may appear to be actually increased by paraldehyde; this apparent stimulation is analogous to that under alcohol and may be explained by lessened control. The sleep induced by the dulling of the perceptions may be interrupted by more intense stimuli from without. In particular, acute pain may prevent sleep after chloral, which seems to have no specific effects on the algesic areas, such as is possessed by morphine; the sensibility of the skin is also less affected by chloral than by morphine. In larger quantities, however, even very great disturbance of the environment produces no interruption of the sleep, and the reflex response to irritation is very much lowered. The motor areas of the brain cortex are rendered less irritable by chloral, and eventually fail to react to the strongest electrical stimulation. The reflexes of the spinal cord are depressed and finally paralyzed before the failure of the respiration.[1] The depression of the reflexes is one of the points which serve to differentiate the action of most of the methane series from that of the alkaloidal narcotics, such as morphine. The last part of the central nervous system to be attacked is the medulla oblongata, for although the respiration is somewhat slower and shallower after small quantities, it is scarcely more affected than in ordinary sleep, and Loewy found that both the excitability of the centre and the volume of the inspired air were very similar in the two conditions. As the dose is increased, however, the respiration becomes very slow and weak, and finally ceases from paralysis of the centre.

The heart is somewhat slower after chloral in moderate doses, but scarcely more so than in natural sleep. There is often some flushing of the face and head from some obscure central action, but the blood-pressure is little affected except by large quantities, which reduce it considerably and at the same time cause marked slowness of the pulse.[2] The depression of the blood-pressure is caused in part by paresis of the vaso-motor centre, in part by the effects on the cardiac muscle, and possibly in part by a direct action on the muscular walls of the vessels. It is much more evident in poisoning with chloral than with the other soporifics, this group presenting the same differences in this respect as the general anæsthetics. In both cases it is to be noted that the molecule containing chlorine has the more powerful action on the circulation. In chloroform, the effect on the heart is so great as to give rise to anxiety quite apart from the condition of the respiration, and in fact some cases of poisoning are said to have terminated with failure of the pulse before the respiration, though this is unlikely. The extreme weakness of the heart may, however, aid the

[1] The statement is made that the reflex irritability is at first increased in the frog, but this may be attributed rather to the remote effects of the local irritation than to the direct action on the cord.

[2] Some investigators have stated that small quantities of chloral increase the arterial tension at first, but this must be very transient, if present at all.

direct action of the drug in its effects on the respiratory centre. The alterations in the heart are similar to those produced by chloroform, the auricular contractions becoming weak earlier than the ventricular, and some dilatation occurring in both chambers.

Locally, chloral has an irritant action when applied in concentrated solution and this leads occasionally to nausea and vomiting when it is prescribed with insufficient fluid. This irritant action induces redness and even vesication when chloral is applied to the skin; it is said to corrode when applied to unprotected surfaces, and certainly possesses antiseptic properties like chloroform. It is rapidly absorbed from the stomach and carried to the central nervous system where it is taken up by the cells until they contain more than the blood corpuscles or the cells of other organs such as the liver. Liebreich introduced chloral as a hypnotic in the belief that it was decomposed in the blood and chloroform liberated, but this has been shown to be erroneous, no chloroform being found in the blood or expired air after chloral, and the drug itself having been found in the urine in combination with glycuronic acid. Chloral has no action on muscle or nerve in the living animal, but when it is applied to the exposed nerve it first irritates and later paralyzes it, and injected directly into the artery of a muscle it causes immediate rigor. The temperature falls after the administration of chloral from the lessened muscular movement, and perhaps from the increased output of heat through the dilated skin vessels.

The effects of chloral on the tissue-change have been recently investigated and found to correspond very closely to those of chloroform. Thus fatty degeneration of various organs has been produced by the prolonged administration of chloral and of chloralamide, and the increase in the nitrogen, phosphates and sulphur, especially of the unoxidized sulphur, in the urine points to augmented destruction of the proteids of the body, together with imperfect oxidation. The acidity of the urine is much increased by the presence of urochloralic acid (a combination of chloral and glycuronic acid). The excessive production of this acid in the tissues has been said to be the cause of the alterations in the metabolism, and as a matter of fact Kleine has found that the addition of alkaline carbonates to the food prevents these effects of chloral. Chloral was formerly supposed to lead to glycosuria, but this has been shown to be erroneous, the reducing substance in the urine being urochloralic acid, and not sugar. In addition to this effect on the tissues generally, less oxygen is absorbed and less carbonic acid excreted owing to the diminished muscular movement.

Chloral is reduced in the tissues to trichlorethyl alcohol (CCl_3CH_2OH) which combines with glycuronic acid and is excreted in this form in the urine. Some escapes by the kidneys unchanged, however, and some is thrown into the stomach and this may account for the nausea and discomfort felt after awaking in some cases.

The other hypnotics of this series, with the exception of chloralose, correspond exactly with chloral as far as their action on the central nervous system is concerned. The chief difference in their effects is

seen in the circulation and metabolism, which are comparatively little affected by those which do not possess substituted chlorine atoms.

Paraldehyde and **Sulphonal** do not affect the heart directly, although they may cause a slight acceleration of the pulse through their depressant action on the inhibitory centre. They lessen the metabolism through their action on the central nervous system, but produce no such marked alteration in the proteid decomposition as follows the administration of chloral. Paraldehyde resembles alcohol in its effects, though it is a much more powerful narcotic and rarely induces any symptoms of excitement. Very large quantities of sulphonal and paraldehyde have been taken without fatal results, and in fact without any more serious consequences than prolonged unconsciousness, so that they are much safer narcotics than chloral. Paraldehyde, however, has a most unpleasant odor and a hot, burning taste, which renders its administration somewhat difficult. In addition it is excreted in part by the lungs, though mainly in the urine, and the odor remains in the breath for some time after the patient awakens. The insolubility of sulphonal in water renders its absorption very slow and imperfect, and sleep is therefore late in following its administration, while, on the other hand, depression, drowsiness and lack of energy are often complained of the day after.

The use of sulphonal, especially when prolonged, has led in some cases to a series of symptoms, the most characteristic of which is the appearance in the urine of a reddish-brown pigment, hæmatoporphyrin, an iron-free product of the decomposition of hæmoglobin. This occurs most frequently in anæmic women, and is accompanied by constipation, pain in the stomach region and vomiting, weakness and ataxia, confusion and partial paralysis, and eventually by suppression of the urine or by collapse and death.[1] Hæmatoporphyrin occurs in traces in the urine of the rabbit normally and in much larger quantities after the animal has been treated with sulphonal (Neubauer). Its appearance in the human urine appears due to some obscure change in the blood, and not to derangement of the renal functions, although in one case the kidneys were found to be diseased, and in animals the prolonged administration of sulphonal often causes albumin and casts in the urine, while hemorrhages in the kidneys have been produced in them by the administration of only a few doses. The amount of hæmatoporphyrin in the urine is sometimes very large; in one case Tyson and Croftan found that the quantity passed in one day indicated the destruction of one seventeenth of the total hæmoglobin of the body. Very large doses of sulphonal are said to produce convulsive movements in animals, while ordinary ones cause sleep and subsequent drowsiness. Sulphonal is decomposed in the body and is excreted largely as ethylsulphonic acid in the urine, in which traces of the unchanged substance have also been found. The decomposition is a slow process, however, for Kast found sulphonal in the blood many hours after its administration. The ethylsulphonic acid

[1] Occasionally the hæmatoporphyrin appears several days after a single dose of sulphonal or its allies, sometimes after an interval of one or two weeks.

seems to have no action whatever in itself, so that the narcosis is due to the unchanged molecule of sulphonal.

Sulphonal seems to have some deleterious action on the heart when used for long periods, and is a much less certain hypnotic in cases of cardiac disease than in other conditions. In order to avoid the poisonous effects, which he regards as due to the accumulation of the drug in the alimentary canal and blood, Kast recommends that it be taken in small quantities, as far as possible in solution, and that the administration be stopped at intervals to allow of the complete elimination of the sulphonal already in the system.

Butylchloral, or **Crotonchloral**, was said by Liebreich to possess a specific analgesic or anæsthetic action on the nerves of the face and head, but this has been shown to be incorrect by v. Mering, and, as its effects are identical with those of chloral in almost all respects, crotonchloral seems entirely superfluous.

Chloralamide has been introduced into therapeutics in the hope that the stimulant action of the formamide, which is formed by its decomposition, would counteract the depression of the circulation caused by chloral alone. From blood-pressure experiments it would seem that chloralamide fulfills those expectations, and has little or no action on the circulation except in poisonous doses. It is said to be less irritant than chloral in the stomach, but to be somewhat slower and less certain in its effects. Chloral is formed by its decomposition in the body, and is excreted as urochloralic acid, and fatty degeneration has been observed after its prolonged administration. On the whole it would seem to possess the cerebral action of chloral, without producing its effects on the circulation.

Amylene Hydrate, or dimethylethylcarbinol, has been advised as a hypnotic, and is more closely allied to paraldehyde in its effects than to any of the others. It is twice or thrice as powerful a hypnotic as paraldehyde, however, while it is only one half as strong as chloral. It is said to depress the heart more than paraldehyde, but less than chloral, and to produce excitement and convulsions in the carnivora, but not in the herbivora. Even in man, it causes excitement more frequently than most other soporifics, and Harnack and Meyer state that it first stimulates and then depresses the respiratory centre as well as other parts of the central nervous system, and that it induces a very marked fall in the temperature. The cardiac and voluntary muscle is first increased in efficiency and then depressed. It has little or no effect on the general metabolism, and is excreted in the urine in combination with glycuronic acid in the rabbit, but seems to undergo complete combustion in the tissues of the dog and in man. It is less certain in its action than chloral but has not received so wide a trial as it would seem to merit. A combination of chloral and amylene hydrate has been introduced under the name of **Dormiol**, but offers no advantages over chloral.

Trional and **Tetronal** are very similar to sulphonal in their chemical structure, and have practically identical results with it in therapeutics, although their action on animals is somewhat more powerful. In some cases of treatment with trional hæmatoporphyrin has been found in the urine.

Urethane would possess all the advantages of the others with none of their disadvantages were not its effect on man much weaker and less constant. In many cases it is an almost perfect hypnotic, easily taken in solution, producing light sleep with no after-effects, but in others it seems to have little or no hypnotic effect. It is oxidized in the body to urea. **Hedonal** appears to have a greater hypnotic effect than urethane, but also fails to induce sleep in a considerable proportion of cases. It is followed by no after-effects and is oxidized in the body in the same way as urethane.

Hypnone has not received extensive trial, but would seem to be inconstant in its effects.

Hypnal, a combination of antipyrine and chloral, has been suggested as a hypnotic in cases of neuralgia, but has not been used largely as yet, and seems of doubtful value.

Chloralose acts much more like morphine than like chloral, depressing the psychical functions, while increasing the reflexes until convulsions resembling those of strychnine may be produced. The heart is comparatively little affected, and the respiration remains strong unless very large doses are given. In man it induces sleep, which is sometimes attended by distinctly exaggerated reflexes however, especially when large doses are given. Some of the other compounds of chloral with the sugar series seem to promise more satisfactory results.

Bromal (CBr_3COH) differs in several respects from chloral in its action. In animals its injection is followed by restlessness and excitement, and then by stupor, which is often accompanied by dyspnœa, and ends in failure of the respiration, or in convulsions. The pupil is much contracted, and profuse salivation is observed. It acts on the heart like chloral but is much more poisonous, and is scarcely used in therapeutics.

Chloretone resembles chloral in most respects, but is less liable to irritate the stomach and does not appear to depress the circulation to the same extent. Very large doses have been swallowed without producing any untoward symptoms, but the hypnotic effect is obtained by the use of smaller doses than are necessary in the case of chloral. Like chloral, chloretone has some virtues as an antiseptic, and in addition it paralyzes the terminations of the sensory nerves when it is applied locally and has proved of value as a local anæsthetic.

Tolerance is soon acquired for each of these drugs, and when it is developed for one, large doses of any of the others are required in order to produce sleep. Tolerance for alcohol also involves the use of larger quantities of the hypnotics, and in fact often leads to the complete failure of any except the most powerful.

Not infrequently the hypnotics lead to skin eruptions, especially when used for some time. These assume various forms, the most common being of the erythema order, but among others urticaria, purpura, papular eruptions and blisters occur.

Habit. — Prolonged abuse of chloral leads to a condition somewhat resembling that seen in chronic alcoholism or morphinism, and marked by general depression and cachexia, with impairment of the mental powers, digestive disturbance and exanthemata. The sudden withdrawal of the drug in these cases has sometimes led to symptoms resembling those of delirium tremens, which are especially dangerous here owing to the fatty degeneration of the heart which may be present.

A few cases of sulphonal habit have also been reported, but this drug has not been known long enough to permit of its extensive abuse as yet.

Preparations.

Chloral (U. S. P.), Chloral Hydras (B. P.) ($CCl_3CH(OH)_2$ or $CCl_3COH + H_2O$), a crystalline solid, of a characteristic fruity odor, and hot, acrid taste, readily soluble in water, alcohol, ether and oils, is almost invariably prescribed in dilute solution in syrup. Its deliquescent properties

preclude its use in most of the solid preparations, and its irritant effects contraindicate hypodermic injection. Dose, 0.5–2 G. (10–30 grs.), which may be repeated if necessary, in one or two hours.

Syrupus Chloral (B. P.), ½–2 fl. drs. (one drachm contains 10 grains of chloral).

Paraldehydum (U. S. P., B. P.) ($C_6H_{12}O_3$), a colorless fluid of strong, characteristic odor and burning taste. It may be prescribed in brandy and water, or in water up to 10%, or in capsules. Dose, 1–4 c.c. (15–60 m.).

Sulphonal (B. P.) ($(CH_3)_2C(SO_2C_2H_5)_2$), a crystalline powder, without taste or odor. It may be prescribed in powder form to be taken one to two hours before retiring, but is soluble in hot water or milk, and when given in solution acts more rapidly and leaves no confusion afterwards. It is prescribed in doses of 1–2 G. (15–30 grs.).

Butylchloral Hydras (B. P.), or Croton chloral ($CH_3CHClCCl_2CH(OH)_2$), resembles chloral and is prescribed in the same way, but generally in smaller doses—0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Nonofficial.

Trional and *Tetronal* resemble sulphonal closely, and may be prescribed in the same doses and forms.

Amyleni Hydras ($(CH_3)_2COHCH_2CH_3$), a colorless liquid of pungent taste, and of an odor somewhat resembling camphor. It may be prescribed in capsules, or up to 10% in water flavored with liquorice extract. Dose, 3–5 c.c. (40–80 m.).

Urethranum ($NH_2COOC_2H_5$), a crystalline solid prescribed in water. Dose, 5 G.

Hedonal a crystalline powder with a taste resembling that of menthol, very slightly soluble in water. Dose, 2 G. (30 grs.) in powder or tablets.

Chloralamidum ($CCl_3CH(OH)—NHCHO$) a white crystalline powder with a very faintly bitter taste. Prescribed in powder, or in solution in water, or spirit. Dose, 1–3 G. (15–50 grs.).

Chloralose ($C_8H_{11}Cl_3O_6$), colorless crystals of very bitter taste; it may be prescribed in capsules. Dose, 0.15–0.3 G. (2–5 grs.).

Chloretone ($CCl_3C(CH_3)_2OH$), colorless crystals with a strong camphoraceous odor, slightly soluble in water, very soluble in alcohol; it may be prescribed in aqueous solution (about 1 per cent.) or better in tablets. Dose, 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Therapeutic Uses. — These drugs are chiefly used to produce rest and sleep in cases of insomnia and in almost every form of nervous excitement. Until the discovery of the therapeutic value of chloral, opium was used in most of these cases, and when sleeplessness is due to pain it is still preferable to the more modern remedies, which have comparatively slight influence on acute pain, except in very large doses. But in delirium, mania and convulsions of various kinds, their action on the nerve centres is preferable to that of opium, especially where these convulsions are of spinal origin or of a reflex nature; thus, in strychnine poisoning and in tetanus, chloral is of great value, although in the former it may have to be reinforced by chloroform during the convulsions. In delirium from fever or from uræmic intoxication and similar causes, comparatively small doses often produce most satisfactory results, and in various spasmodic affections, such as cough, asthma, and choreic movements, it is exceedingly useful. Chloral has also been advised to lessen the pains of labor.

Most of the soporifics have been used more or less extensively as hypnotics in simple insomnia and in insanity, but when the disturb-

ance assumes a more violent character there is a disposition to return to the use of chloral, as at once the speediest and surest remedy of the whole group. When there is any reason to suspect fatty degeneration of the heart, however, paraldehyde or some other hypnotic which does not contain chlorine ought to be substituted for it. Chloral is often prescribed along with opium, and, when thus combined, smaller quantities of each drug are required than would be necessary if either were prescribed alone, and the sleep following is very deep and restful. It is also used very often to reinforce the action of the bromides.

Other Narcotics which for some purposes may be substituted for the members of the chloral group are alcohol, opium and its alkaloids, bromides, hyoscine, hyoscyamine and cannabis indica.

Chloral has been used externally as a counter-irritant and antiseptic, but is more expensive than many other equally efficacious remedies. Chloretone solution is an efficient local anæsthetic on wounded surfaces, and has been recommended in cases of gastric irritation and vomiting, which it relieves by paralyzing the terminations of the sensory nerves in the mucous membrane of the stomach.

In cases of acute **Poisoning** with chloral the treatment consists in the immediate evacuation of the stomach by the stomach tube. Emetics are of less value owing to the depression of the medullary centres. The patient ought to be kept warm and caffeine or strychnine may be given as a respiratory stimulant, while the complete failure of the breathing has to be met by artificial respiration. In acute poisoning with the other members of the series the same general treatment is to be applied, but the prognosis is much more favorable than after chloral; in one case in which 100 G. of sulphonal were swallowed, the recovery was attributed by the attendant physician to copious enemata of water. In chronic poisoning with sulphonal, the withdrawal of the drug is generally all that is required. In the chloral habit, the withdrawal has to be gradual and it may be necessary to send the patient to a retreat.

Bibliography.

Chloral.

Liebreich. Das Chloral, ein neues Hypnoticum, Berlin, 1868.
Lewisson. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1870, p. 346.
Rajewski. Centralb. f. d. med. Wiss., 1870, p. 211.
Harnack u. Witkowski. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xi., p. 1.
Heidenhain. Pflüger's Arch., iv., p. 557, and xxvi., p. 137.
v. Mering. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iii., p. 185. Zts. f. phys. Chem., vi., p. 480.
Preisendörfer. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xxv., p. 40.
Loewy. Pflüger's Arch., xlvii., p. 601.
Taniguti. Virchow's Arch., cxx., p. 121.
Peiser. Inaug. Diss., Halle, 1892.
Remertz. Inaug. Diss., Halle, 1893. Fortschr. der Med., 1893, p. 265.
Harnack u. Kleine. Ztsch. f. Biol., xxxvii., p. 417.
Kraepelin. Beeinflussung psychischer Vorgänge durch Arzneimittel., p. 209.

Paraldehyde.

Cervello. Arch. f. exp. Path., xvi., p. 265.
Albertoni. Arch. Ital. d. Biol., iii., p. 197.
Friedländer. Therap. Monats., 1893, p. 144.

Sulphonal.

Kast. Berl. klin. Woch., 1888, p. 309. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxi., p. 69.
Smith. Zts. f. phys. Chem., xvii., p. 1.
Friedländer. Therap. Monats., 1894, pp. 183 and 370.
Kast u. Weiss. Berl. klin. Woch., 1896, p. 621.
Vanderlinden u. Debuck. Arch. de Pharmacodyn., i., p. 431.
Neubauer. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xliii., p. 456.
Haenel. Kraepelin's Psychol. Arb., ii., p. 326.
Tyson and Crofton. Philad. Med. Journ., 1902, p. 882.

Amylene Hydrate, and other Soporifics.

v. Mering. Therap. Monats., 1887, p. 249.
Friedländer. Ibid., 1893, p. 370.
Harnack u. Meyer. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxiv., p. 374.
Lahousse. Arch. de Pharmacodyn., i., p. 209. (Butylchloral.)
Friedländer. Therap. Monats., 1893, p. 523. (Chloralamide.)
Manchot. Virchow's Arch., cxxxvi., p. 368.
Henriot u. Richet. Arch. de Pharmacodyn., iii., p. 191. (Chloralose.)
Schmiedeberg. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xx., p. 203. (Urethane and the group in general.)
Bradbury. Croonian Lectures, Brit. Med. Jour., 1899.
Houghton and Aldrich. Journ. Am. Med. Ass., Sept. 23, 1899. (Chloretone.)
Impens. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., viii., p. 77. (Chloretone.)

II. STRYCHNINE—NUX VOMICA.

Strychnine is the chief alkaloid occurring in several species of Strychnos, of which the best known are Strychnos nux-vomica and Strychnos Ignatia. It is found chiefly in the seeds, and is generally accompanied by the nearly related alkaloid *Brucine*.

A large number of alkaloids have been found to resemble strychnine in their action, such as the *Thebaine* found in opium, the *Gelsemine* of Gelsemium sempervirens, and the *Calabarine* of the Calabar bean, while it is difficult to decide whether several others ought to be classed with morphine or with strychnine.

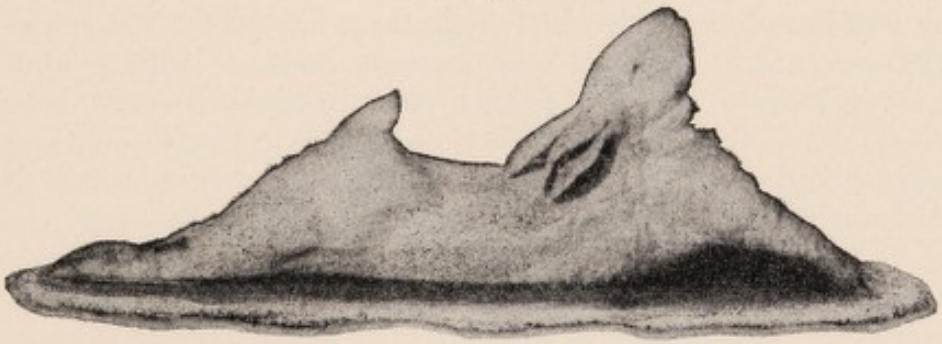
Strychnine seems to be a quinoline derivative, although its exact constitution is unknown. Its formula is $C_{21}H_{22}N_2O_2$, while that of brucine is $C_{23}H_{26}N_2O_4$. They are both derivatives of a substance of the formula $C_{15}H_{17}N_2O_2$, brucine differing from strychnine in having two methoxyl groups. It seems not unlikely that they are both nearly related to curarine, the alkaloid of curara, which is derived from some other species of the genus Strychnos.

The alkaloids of the strychnine group have a powerful stimulant action on the central nervous system, especially on the spinal cord, throughout the vertebrate kingdom.

Symptoms. — In ordinary therapeutic doses strychnine, like other bitter substances (page 55), improves the appetite and often leads to a distinct amelioration of the subjective symptoms, the patient feeling stronger and more hopeful. The pulse is generally slower and the artery feels less compressible. The special senses are rendered more acute by small quantities of strychnine, for differences can be recognized between shades of color which seem identical to the normal vision; the field of vision is widened, and in certain conditions of amblyopia light is rendered much more distinct. In the same way the hearing seems to be more acute, and the sense of touch is much more delicate. Some cases have been noted in which disagreeable odors

were rendered pleasant by strychnine, but this would seem to be a rare idiosyncrasy. In cases of poisoning with strychnine, the first symptom is often a more acute perception of external objects by the senses, especially by the sense of touch, but this is not generally observed by the patient, whose first complaint is of a feeling of stiffness in the muscles of the neck and face. This is soon followed by an increased reflex reaction, so that a slight touch causes a violent movement, and even a sound or a current of air is sufficient to cause a sudden start. The increased reflex irritability is generally accompanied by some restlessness, and animals sometimes seem to make attempts to escape from bright light. Some tremor or involuntary twitches may be observed in the limbs, and then a sudden convulsion occurs in which all the muscles of the body are involved, but in which the stronger extensor muscles generally prevail. In animals, the head is drawn back, the hind limbs extended, and the trunk forms an arch with its concavity backwards (opisthotonos) (Fig. 13). In man, the same convulsions are seen and

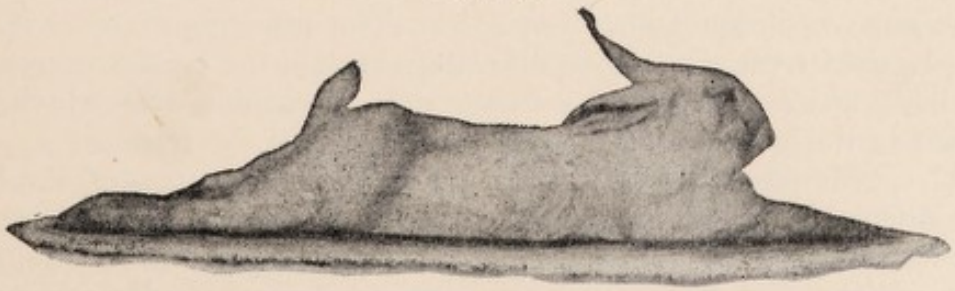
FIG. 13.



A rabbit during a strychnine convulsion.

are accompanied by strong contraction of the face muscles, producing a hideous grin which has been called the risus sardonicus. The respiratory muscles are involved in the general paroxysm and the blood rapidly becomes deoxygenated, as is shown by the blue cyanotic color of the lips and face in man. The muscles feel hard and firm at the commencement of the convulsion, but very soon a tremor may be made out, which becomes more distinct, and after a few intermittent contractions the animal sinks back in a condition of prostration (Fig. 14). The

FIG. 14.



A rabbit when the strychnine spasm is passing off. The head is supported to prevent it falling on the table.

respiration generally returns, and becomes fairly regular for a short time. Immediately after a convulsion the reflex irritability may be low, but it soon regains its former exaggerated condition and a second convulsion occurs, exactly resembling the first. Mammals, as a general rule, succumb after two or three convulsions, the respiration failing to return after the spasm. In some cases, however, the convulsions become shorter and the intervals of quiescence longer, the respiration becomes weak, the reflex irritability gradually lessens and the animal dies from asphyxia. In frogs, where the breathing can be dispensed with for long periods, the alternation of convulsions and periods of quiescence may continue for hours or days, but these are of the same general character as those described in mammals. After very large quantities no convulsions may occur, the animal dying almost immediately of asphyxia from paralysis of the central nervous system.

Action.—The whole character of the intoxication points to an affection of the **Central Nervous System**, and it has been found that the symptoms are unaltered when the drug is prevented from reaching the peripheral nerves and muscles. The chief symptoms arise from the spinal cord, for the convulsions are at least as well marked in frogs and mammals in which the brain has been destroyed or severed below the medulla oblongata. At the same time the brain is also believed to be affected, though to a less degree. The intellect in man remains unclouded until the end, except for the asphyxia produced by the stoppage of the respiration; the patient is perfectly conscious of his condition, and suffers excruciating pain from the violent contractions of the muscles. It is said that the increased reflex may be inhibited to a certain extent by the will, but during the convulsions no strength of will can cope with the irritability of the spinal cord.

The special senses are rendered more acute by small doses of strychnine and this is apparently due to its effects on the central nervous system in the case of touch, taste and smell, but there is every reason to believe that the increase in the field of vision and the increased sensitiveness to slight differences in light are to be attributed to its acting on the cells of the retina and not to cerebral changes. For when strychnine salts are injected in the temple or applied to the conjunctiva, the sight of the corresponding eye is improved while the other remains unaffected (Filehne); if the strychnine acted centrally it could do so only by being carried to the brain by the blood, but this would affect each hemisphere equally. The affection of one eye only is explained by the strychnine diffusing through the lymph spaces, and this has been shown to occur in the case of various dyes which were applied in the same way and were then found in the retina.

As regards the effects of strychnine on the motor areas of the brain some difference of opinion exists, although the majority of those who have investigated the subject hold that the irritability of the motor parts of the cortex is distinctly increased except during a convulsion.

The convulsions are, as has been stated, of spinal origin. It has been shown in addition that they are reflex, that provided no stimulus reaches the cord from without, no convulsion occurs. As has been already remarked, the convulsions are preceded by a stage of increased reflex, and in fact the first convulsion is often seen to follow a stimulus, such as a blow or a loud noise. Afterwards they may seem to occur without any such impulse, but this is merely because a very slight or even imperceptible stimulus is enough to induce them. For example, a slight contraction of a muscle may induce a convulsion, as is seen very frequently in the frog, where a very slight stimulus, in itself apparently too weak to cause a convulsion, is followed by an ordinary reflex contraction, and this leads to a spasm. The absence of convulsions when external stimuli are cut off may, however, be demonstrated conclusively in various ways. Thus Poulsson found that a frog dipped in cocaine solution underwent no convulsions after strychnine, the cocaine used being sufficient to paralyze the sensory terminations, but not to have any direct effect on the cord. Claude Bernard showed this even more conclusively by dividing all the posterior roots of the spinal nerves in the frog and then injecting strychnine, when no convulsions occurred except when the ends of the cut roots were stimulated. The convulsions therefore follow only on the passage of an impulse from without to the spinal cord, and are merely a further development of the preceding stage of exaggerated reflex irritability. The characteristic feature of strychnine poisoning is thus the response to external stimuli. In the unpoisoned animal the reflex movement following a stimulus is always of the same kind; for example, if the leg of a decapitated frog be dipped in acid it makes certain movements to withdraw the limb, and no matter how often the irritation be repeated, the same movements are produced, though it is true that if stronger acid be used the movement is more violent and a greater number of muscles are involved. In this movement certain muscles contract while their antagonists are inhibited, for example in drawing the toe away from an irritant the anterior muscles of the leg contract, while the gastrocnemius is relaxed. The same irritation which produced in the unpoisoned animal a simple withdrawal of the limb causes after strychnine stronger and more extensive contractions, and the movement is not confined to the two hind legs but spreads over the whole body. All the muscles contract together, there being no inhibition of antagonists and the resultant movement has thus quite a different result; the gastrocnemius being stronger than the anterior leg muscles, the foot is extended and thrust against the irritant instead of being withdrawn from it. When an external stimulus is sufficient to cause a convulsive movement in a poisoned animal, the contraction is always maximal; a stronger stimulus produces no greater effect. It must be remarked that the reflex response to different forms of stimuli is not equally altered by strychnine. The irritation of the frog's foot by very slowly acting substances, such as dilute acids, may be followed by an ordinary reflex movement, while a sudden shock causes a violent convulsion.

Many attempts have been made to define the exact seat of the strychnine action in the spinal cord and although the question is not absolutely determined, there are strong grounds for the belief that the cells of the anterior horn are not necessarily involved in the strychnine action. (Fig. 15.) For when strychnine is applied in solution to the cord of the frog at the level of the cells connected with the nerves to the fore limbs, irritation of the foot produces an ordinary response in the hind limbs, while the anterior part of the body remains motionless; that is, strychnine has not penetrated to the cells connected with the hind limbs. Irritation of the fore limbs, on the other hand, produces tetanus not only of these, but also of the hind limbs, although the motor cells of the hind limbs have been shown to be outside the poisoned area. Tetanus can, therefore, be produced in parts whose motor cells are unpoisoned, yet the increased strength of the contraction would seem to point to an affection of these cells. The explanation may be that the impulse reaching the motor cell is stronger, and that the latter simply transmits this more powerful impulse as it would a weaker one. A theory that covers the phenomena hitherto recognized is that the impulse traveling up a nerve in an unpoisoned frog may pass through a large number of paths in the cord, but meets with resistance in all save one. It therefore passes along the path of least resistance, and produces a definite result by acting on a fixed series of nerve cells. After strychnine the same impulse reaching the cord finds all the paths equally easy, and, therefore, divides and affects a very much larger number of motor cells. At the same time less energy is spent in passing through resistance, a greater force remains to be expended on the motor cells, and the muscular movement is, therefore, much exaggerated. It is quite impossible at present to state the exact point at which strychnine removes the resistance to the passage of impulses. It does not seem located in the cells of the anterior horn, for, as has been mentioned, tetanus may be elicited when they are certainly

FIG. 15.

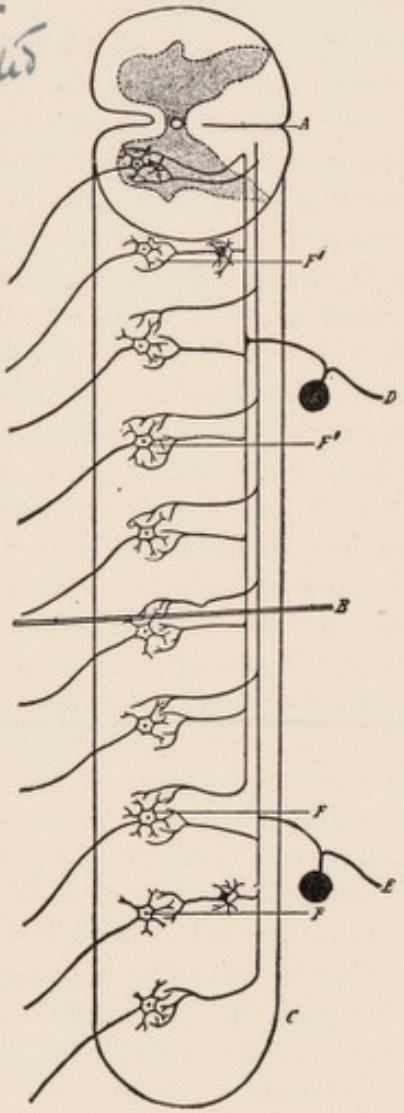


Diagram of the spinal cord of the frog. *A–B*, the part of the cord exposed to strychnine. *B–C*, the unaffected zone. An impulse reaching the cord through the sensory fibre *E* passes to the motor cells *FF* and induces an ordinary reflex movement, showing that the cells *FF* are not altered by strychnine. On the other hand, an impulse reaching the cord through the sensory fibre *D* causes tetanic convulsions not only in the muscles supplied by the motor cells *F' F'*, which are under the influence of the poison, but also in those supplied by *FF*, which have been shown to be free from the strychnine action.

not affected by strychnine. On the other hand, the cells of the spinal ganglion are not requisite, for stimulation of the posterior root sets up tetanus in frogs poisoned with strychnine, in which the section of the root has thrown the spinal ganglion out of action. The poison must, therefore, act at some point between the entrance of the sensory root into the cord and the motor cells.[1] It must be remarked that while the resistance is much reduced, it is not entirely removed and the ordinary path is still somewhat more easily traversed than the others, for very weak irritation often causes an ordinary reflex response in the frog, while slightly stronger stimulus throws it into opisthotonos. Baglioni has recently shown that a single stimulus is not sufficient to cause complete tetanus, but that the movement induced by the first shock leads to secondary stimuli arising from the joints and tendons which are moved; the arrival of these secondary stimuli in the cord maintains it in activity, and the muscles consequently remain contracted until the cord is fatigued and refuses to react to the persistent stimuli from the periphery. The muscles then relax and an interval of quiescence follows until the cord has recovered its irritability.

Besides the spinal cord, all other regions in which simple reflex can be produced are affected by strychnine. Thus the medullary centres are thrown into the same condition, and their responses to stimuli are equally exaggerated; but they are in constant receipt of impulses, and strychnine by increasing the efficiency of these augments the tone of the medulla oblongata, when it is given in small quantities. The increased activity of the higher reflex areas may in fact lessen or inhibit the irritability of the cord, so that the reflex response from the latter may be strengthened by the removal of the brain and medulla oblongata.

Artificial respiration has been shown to delay the onset of convulsions in animals, and Osterwald has recently proved that the same effect may be obtained by the inhalation of oxygen; animals survive a dose considerably higher than that ordinarily fatal if they are placed in an oxygen chamber.

The stimulation of the spinal cord by strychnine is followed by depression and paralysis. Even during the first stage the stimulation is mixed with depression, for though a more violent response is induced by a sensory stimulus, this cannot be repeated so often as in the normal frog, as the cord becomes fatigued more readily. The sensory part of the spinal cord seems to be paralyzed somewhat earlier than the motor cells, but these also lose their irritability after a time and no further movement can be elicited either by reflex or by direct stimulation of the cord.

Strychnine seems to have no direct action on the voluntary **Muscles**; it is stated that minute quantities increase their tone, that is, render

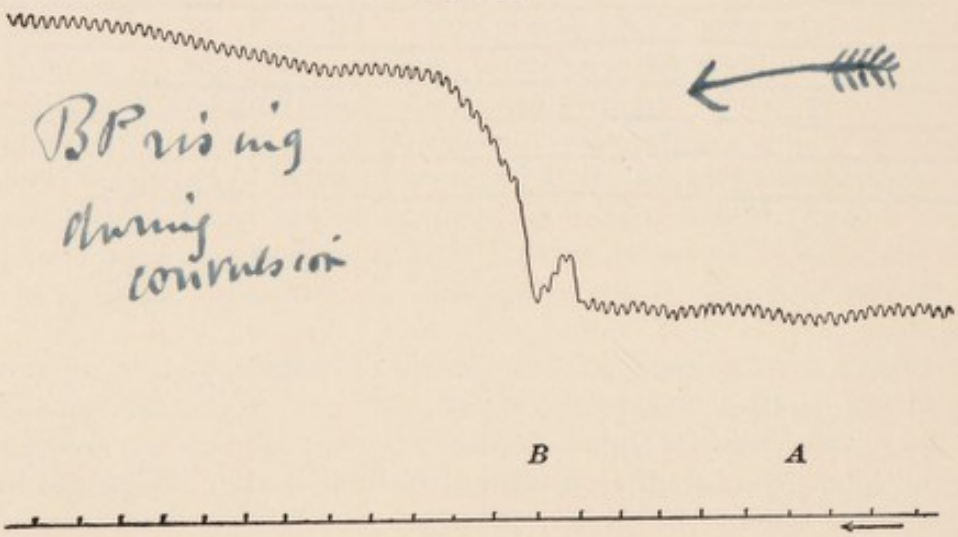
[1] The nuclei of the cells of the anterior horn in the spinal cord have been found somewhat enlarged in frogs poisoned with strychnine, but this is observed also after electric stimulation, and seems to indicate hyperactivity of the cell, which need not necessarily be due to direct action of the poison on it.

them more tense, so that they are prepared for immediate contraction, but this is due to action on the cord and not on the muscle fibres.

The **Terminations of the Motor Nerves** are paralyzed by large doses of strychnine in the same way as by curara. This effect is scarcely seen in mammals, as central paralysis always precedes it and destroys life, but in some species of frogs the nerve ends are paralyzed before the central nervous system. This paralysis is not due to the exhaustion of the nerve ends through the tetanus, but is a direct action on the terminations, although the exhaustion may contribute to the result.

The **Respiration** is quickened and deepened by small quantities of strychnine, the action on the centre being exactly parallel to that on the spinal cord.[1] During the convulsions, the breathing is arrested by the violent contraction of the diaphragm and the other respiratory muscles, but during the intermissions it continues fairly regular. After one or two spasms it often fails to be reinstated, and the animal dies of asphyxia ; in other experiments it undergoes a gradual diminution in rate and strength, and eventually ceases from gradual paralysis of the centre.

FIG. 16.



The blood-pressure tracing of a cat under strychnine, showing the marked rise during a spasm. *A*, quiescence ; *B*, convulsion commencing.

In frogs very large quantities slow and weaken the **Heart** by direct action, but in mammals it is not directly affected by strychnine, though the stimulation of the inhibitory centre leads to a slightly slower rhythm. Occasionally acceleration of the heart is seen during and after a convulsion, and this is probably due to the muscular exertion, and may be compared to that seen after violent movements in ordinary life. The stimulation of the **Vaso-motor Centre** leads to a constriction of the peripheral arterioles. Strychnine in small quantities therefore slows the heart and raises the blood-pressure, unless in exceptional cases where the slowing of the heart is so great as to counteract the contraction of the arterioles.

[1] According to Impens (Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., VI., p. 156), this occurs in the rabbit only when sufficient strychnine is injected to cause spasms.

During the convulsions the blood-pressure is raised to an extreme height, partly owing to the activity of the vaso-motor centre and perhaps partly from the blood being pressed out of the abdominal organs and the muscles by their violent contraction. Immediately after a convulsion the blood-pressure falls, probably from the exhaustion of the centre. The blood-pressure remains elevated much longer in curarized than in uncurarized animals, which would seem to indicate that the fall in pressure is partly due to the substances produced by muscular activity. The constriction seems to affect mainly the internal vessels, while those of the skin and perhaps of the muscles are dilated, and the blood current is, therefore, deflected largely from the internal organs to the skin and limbs. The cause of the dilatation of these vessels is probably stimulation of vaso-dilator areas in the medulla.

The heart continues to beat long after the breathing has ceased, and if artificial respiration be had recourse to, may remain active an indefinite time.

In the **Alimentary Tract**, strychnine has the same action as any other bitter substance, and it produces a flow of saliva and increased appetite if taken before meals. (See Stomachic Bitters, page 55.) It seems to be absorbed from the intestine mainly. After absorption it probably increases the activity of the central apparatus regulating the movement of the bowel, but the results in man and in most animals have not been ascertained with exactness.

Metabolism. — Strychnine produces an enormous activity of the muscles, and, therefore, increases very greatly the consumption of oxygen and the output of carbonic acid. This increased excretion of carbonic acid occurs, though to a less extent, even when the muscular contraction has been previously eliminated by curara, and must, therefore, be due in part to the contraction of the involuntary muscle of the vascular walls and perhaps to the increased metabolism of the central nervous system.

The augmentation of the oxidation in the tissues is accompanied by an increased formation of heat, which would lead to a rise in the temperature of the body were it not counteracted by an equal or even greater increase in its dissipation through the skin. The result of the interaction of these two factors is that in spite of an increased warmth production the internal temperature is generally lowered in rabbits, while a slight rise in the thermometer is sometimes seen in dogs and cats. The skin temperature, on the other hand, rises considerably because more blood flows through it than usual.

In the frog, the administration of strychnine is often followed by glycosuria. This does not seem to occur in adult mammals but is sometimes observed in young dogs, in which, as in frogs at certain seasons, there is a large accumulation of glycogen in the liver. Demant states that strychnine, even in small quantities, causes the glycogen of the liver and muscles to disappear; the increased muscular movement and the disturbance of the respiration are probably the explanation of both of these phenomena.

Strychnine is eliminated in the urine chiefly. Its excretion begins soon after its injection, but is exceedingly slow, and the reaction is often given by the urine for 3–8 days afterwards. Traces of the alkaloid also appear in the stomach after its hypodermic injection, and it is not improbable that some of it undergoes oxidation in the tissues.

The statement that a tolerance can be acquired for strychnine when it is given for some time has been proved quite incorrect (Hare).

The action of strychnine is almost identical throughout the vertebrate kingdom. Man is more susceptible than other mammals, and young animals are more refractory than adults, perhaps owing to the less developed condition of the central nervous system. The domestic fowl tolerates comparatively large quantities without symptoms. Among the invertebrates, the reaction to strychnine seems to vary considerably; in the medusæ symptoms of increased irritability and typical convulsions are produced by it (Romanes), while in the crab slightly increased movement may be observed occasionally, but the chief effect seems to be depression and eventual paralysis. The snail is said to be practically immune. The temperature of the animal has some influence on the action of the poison, for frogs react more readily when heated than when kept in the cold, the heat seeming to increase the activity of the central nervous system.

Brucine, the second alkaloid of nux vomica, resembles strychnine closely in action but is much weaker, from 30 to 40 times as large a dose being required to produce the same effect. It differs from strychnine also in possessing a much more powerful action on the nerve terminations in voluntary muscle, especially in some species of frog. It is credited with weak local anæsthetic properties.

Calabarine and gelsemine are chiefly of interest as impurities which occur along with the more important alkaloids of the Calabar bean and of Gelsemium, while thebaine forms a connecting link between the opium alkaloids and strychnine, and will be discussed along with the morphine series; it seems to stand midway between strychnine and brucine in toxicity.

Preparations.

Nux Vomica (U. S. P., B. P.), the seeds of Strychnos nux-vomica, contains 0.9–2 per cent. of strychnine and 0.7–1.5 per cent. of brucine, along with tannin, which gives a dark green coloration with iron salts. The powdered bean is occasionally prescribed in doses of 0.06–0.25 G. (1–4 grs.).

- Extractum Nucis Vomicæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.015–0.06 G. ($\frac{1}{4}$–1 gr.).
  Extractum Nucis Vomicæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.06–0.3 c.c. (1–5 mins.).
- *Extractum Nucis Vomicæ Liquidum* (B. P.), 1–3 mins.
- Tinctura Nucis Vomicæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).
  Strychnina (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.002–0.004 G. ($\frac{1}{30}$–$\frac{1}{15}$ gr.).
  Strychninæ Sulphas (U. S. P.), 0.002–0.004 G. ($\frac{1}{30}$–$\frac{1}{15}$ gr.).
- Strychninæ Hydrochloridum (B. P.), $\frac{1}{60}$–$\frac{1}{15}$ gr.
- *Liquor Strychninæ Hydrochloridi* (B. P.) (1 per cent.), 2–8 mins.
  Ferri et Strychninæ Citras (U. S. P.), 0.06–0.2 G. (1–3 grs.).
  Syrupus Ferri, Quininæ, et Strychninæ Phosphatum (U. S. P.), 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).
- *Syrupus Ferri Phosphatis cum Quinina et Strychnina* (B. P.), $\frac{1}{2}$–1 fl. dr.

The extract is generally prescribed in pill form, while strychnine sulphate or hydrochlorate may be given in solution, pill or tablet; where rapid action is desired, it is injected subcutaneously. The tincture is largely used as a stomachic bitter, and the iron preparations in conditions of general debility.

Ignatia, the seed of Strychnos Ignatia (St. Ignatius bean), was formerly included in the U. S. P., but has been excluded from the last edition.

Brucina is not pharmacopœial but is sometimes prescribed in doses of 0.005–0.03 G. ($\frac{1}{12}$–$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.).

Therapeutic Uses. — Strychnine is used largely for its local action on the digestive organs as a stomachic bitter, and is generally prescribed in the form of the tincture or one of the extracts for this purpose, as in this way it is much less liable to absorption than when given as an alkaloidal salt. It may be combined with the cinchona preparations or with one of the simple bitters.

Small quantities of strychnine are of benefit in many ill-defined conditions of weakness, cachexia and "want of tone" generally. The results are probably partly due to its stomachic effects in increasing appetite and digestion, but the action on the central nervous system cannot be overlooked. The slight increase in the irritability of the cord probably leads to an improvement in almost all of the nutritive functions through increasing the contraction of the vessels and producing greater activity of the muscles. In this way strychnine perhaps deserves the name of "tonic" more than most of the drugs to which it is applied.

As a stimulant to the central nervous system[1] strychnine has found wide application in almost every form of paralysis, and as long as distinct anatomical lesions of the central nervous axis are absent, it may be of benefit; for instance, it is often valuable in lead poisoning; but where the continuity of the axis is broken by hæmorrhage or by the destruction of the nerve cells, little improvement is to be anticipated from its use, though it may serve to delay or prevent the atrophy of peripheral nerves and muscles in some of these cases. When the paralysis is due to an inflammatory process, strychnine is to be used with the greatest care, or is perhaps better avoided entirely as long as the irritation is present, as it seems to increase and prolong the inflammation when used early in these cases.

Strychnine is used as a respiratory stimulant in some forms of pulmonary disease in which it is desirable to increase the respiration or to provoke coughing. It has been advised in failure of the respiration during anæsthesia, and is certainly more likely to be beneficial than the great majority of drugs suggested for this purpose. Too large doses must not be injected in these cases, however, as strychnine paralyzes the respiratory centre itself when given in excess. In other forms of poisoning in which the respiratory centre seems in danger, and in shock, strychnine may also be of service, especially when it is injected hypodermically. Other respiratory stimulants which may be substituted for strychnine for some purposes are caffeine and atropine.

In amaurosis or amblyopia unassociated with atrophy of the optic nerve, and even in commencing atrophy, strychnine has frequently improved the vision. In many cases it fails to produce any benefit, and the exact conditions in which improvement can be looked for are unknown.

[1] Other central nervous stimulants are **Caffeine, Atropine.**

Strychnine seems to be of benefit in some cases of heart disease and is often supposed to have a direct action on that organ. Any improvement which may be produced by it, however, must be attributed to the constriction of the vessels, and the indications for its use would seem to be a low blood-pressure. The increased arterial tension may be prejudicial to the heart in some conditions, through increasing the resistance against which it has to contract. The heart rhythm is also slower after strychnine has been administered, owing to stimulation of the inhibitory centre. A similar effect follows the use of aconite, veratrum, and digitalis, though in the case of the last it is accompanied by changes in the heart which are not induced by the others.

Strychnine is said to be of value in chronic alcoholism in lessening the depression which forms one of the chief difficulties in the treatment.

The other alkaloids of this series do not seem to have any properties which would entitle them to a position in therapeutics.

Poisoning. — In cases of strychnine poisoning, the first treatment consists in the evacuation of the stomach by means of emetics, or better by the stomach tube; it may be necessary to give chloroform as the attempt to pass the tube is often followed by violent convulsions. Preparations of tannic acid, such as strong tea, may be given in order to form the insoluble tannate, which, however, must be removed as quickly as possible, as it is broken up by the acid gastric juice and the strychnine is rapidly absorbed. To combat the convulsions, depressants to the central nervous system should be given, and, although chloral is usually advised, chloroform or ether is often preferable. It is unnecessary to produce deep anæsthesia, a few whiffs of chloroform being often sufficient to allay the convulsions. The advantage of the anæsthetics over chloral is that they can be removed if any symptoms of strychnine paralysis appear. Opium has been suggested, but is not nearly so efficacious in strychnine poisoning as members of the methane series. If the paralysis comes on, artificial respiration may be attempted, although the poison is excreted too slowly from the organism to permit of much hope of recovery.

Bibliography.

Mayer. Sitzungsber. der Wiener Acad., lxiv., 1871, p. 657.
Denys. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xx., p. 306.
Falck. Volkmann's Sammlung Klinischer Vorträge, No. 69.
Poulsson. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvi., p. 22.
Wood. Journ. of Physiol., xiii., p. 870.
Biernacki. Therap. Monatsheft, 1890, p. 383.
Berkholz. Dissertation, Dorpat, 1893.
Fodera. Arch. Ital. de Biol., xvii., p. 477.
Harnack. Centralbl. f. Physiol., 1898-99, p. 621.
Wertheimer et Delezenne. Comptes rendus de la Soc. de Biol., 1894, p. 632.
Delezenne. Arch. de Physiol. (5), vi., p. 899.
Houghton and Muirhead. Medical News, 1895, i., p. 612.
Reichert. Med. News, 1893, i., p 369.
Mays. Journal of Phys., viii., p. 391.
Hogyes. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xvi., p. 97.
Walton. Journal of Phys., iii., p. 308.
Hebdom. Skand. Arch. f. Phys., ix., p. 45.

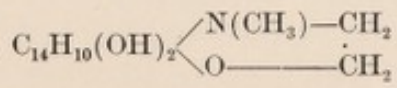
Filehne and his pupils. Pflüger's Archiv, lxxxiii., pp. 369, 397, 403.
Singer. Arch. f. Ophthalmologie, l., p. 665.
Osterwald. Arch. f. exp. Path., xliv., p. 451.
Verworn and Baglioni. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1900, p. 385, Supplem., pp. 152, 193.
Meltzer and Salant. Journ. of Exp. Medicine, vi., p. 107.
Hare. Amer. Journ. of Physiol., v., p. 333.
In addition, strychnine was studied by Magendie, Cl. Bernard and Orfila and their works ought to be consulted for the earlier history of the poison.

III. OPIUM SERIES.

Opium has been used in medicine since a very remote period, and although many substitutes have been proposed for it of late years, it still occupies a position of its own in therapeutics. It is the dried juice of the Papaver somniferum, a poppy which is grown chiefly in India, China, Egypt, Persia and Asia Minor, but has been cultivated in colder climates and is said to produce a more powerful opium there. Opium owes its activity to a large number of alkaloids, of which *Morphine* is the most important. Others are *Codeine, Pseudomorphine, Thebaine, Codamine, Laudanine, Laudanosine, Papaverine, Meconidine, Lanthopine, Cryptopine, Protopine, Papaveramine, Rhœadine, Narcotine, Oxynarcotine, Narceine, Hydrocotarnine, Gnoscopine* and *Tritopine.* Many of these, however, occur only in traces. The total amount of alkaloids in opium varies from about 5–25 per cent., and different specimens may contain very different quantities of each alkaloid; for instance, morphine may vary from 2.7–22.8 per cent. The average percentage of morphine is 10, of narcotine 6, papaverine 1, codeine 0.5, thebaine 0.3 and narceine 0.2; the others occur in too small quantity to have any influence on the action of the crude drug. The alkaloids are found in opium in combination with meconic, lactic and sulphuric acids. The empirical formulæ of most of the alkaloids have been determined, those of the most important being morphine ($C_{17}H_{19}NO_3$), codeine ($C_{18}H_{21}NO_3$), narcotine ($C_{22}H_{23}NO_7$), papaverine ($C_{20}H_{21}NO_4$), thebaine ($C_{19}H_{21}NO_3$). The constitutions of several are known, and these appear to be isoquinoline derivatives, but the structural formulæ of morphine and codeine are still undecided, and the majority of investigators are now inclined to believe that they do not belong to the pyridine-quinoline alkaloids. Morphine apparently contains phenanthrene ($C_{14}H_{10}$), a hydrocarbon isomeric with anthracene, combined with a nitrogenous radicle which is probably morpholine;[1] it possesses two hydroxyls and the substitution of one of these by methoxyl forms codeine. Thebaine and several others appear to be closely related to morphine, and it is not improbable that they may all eventually prove to be more nearly related than their reactions would seem to indicate at present.

The action of opium is due to the large amount of morphine con-

[1] The formula for morphine accepted as most probable at present is



tained in it, the other alkaloids being present in too small quantity to modify its effects appreciably. Morphine acts chiefly on the central nervous system although it also affects some peripheral organs, such as the intestine. Its action varies considerably in different animals, and it is therefore necessary to consider its effects at some length upon the different classes.

Symptoms.—The **Frog** is remarkably tolerant of morphine, no change whatsoever following the injection of quantities which would cause distinct symptoms in man. The first symptoms elicited are a diminution of the spontaneous movements; the animal sits still unless disturbed, but then moves in a perfectly normal manner. Later the movements become clumsy and ill-coördinated, and at the same time they are elicited less easily. At a somewhat more advanced stage of the intoxication, the animal makes no movement when placed in abnormal positions, as on its back, which indicates that it has lost entirely its power of preserving its equilibrium. The spinal cord maintains its irritability, but in a lower degree than usual, as is shown by the reflex movements being weaker than in the unpoisoned frog. This condition may last for several hours, when a series of symptoms of an entirely different nature appear. The reflex response to irritation is distinctly depressed during the first stage, but in this second phase it begins to return, and eventually a condition of exaggerated reflex irritability sets in. This development first affects the muscles of respiration, but soon spreads over the whole spinal cord, so that the condition comes to resemble exactly that noted in strychnine poisoning, except that the frog seems more easily exhausted than after moderate quantities of strychnine. The same tetanic contractions of the muscles are to be seen, however, with opisthotonos and cessation of the respiration, interrupted by periods of quiescence and exhaustion. The animal may recover from this stage, in which case it again passes through the stage of depression, but it frequently dies during it from exhaustion and paralysis of the central nervous system.

In **Mammals**, morphine produces symptoms resembling those seen in the frog, first depression of the voluntary movements, and later a marked increase in the reflex irritability. The relative importance of these two stages differs, however, in the different classes, and indeed in different individuals of the same class. Thus in the cat and in all the other felidæ, and in the horse and ass morphine seems rather to increase than to diminish movement. The animal runs about the room or in a circle and seems unable to remain at rest for a moment. At the same time a depression of the intelligence and of the power of perception makes itself manifest, for no definite attempts at escape are made and obstacles are not avoided so carefully as by the unpoisoned animal. Eventually convulsions similar to those seen after strychnine are developed. In the dog, on the other hand, the depressant action of the drug is the more highly developed, at any rate after small doses. The first symptom is not infrequently vomiting and defæcation, and then the animal passes into a light sleep, from which he can be easily aroused by touching or

by noise, but which rapidly becomes deeper, so that greater force has to be used to waken him. When once awakened, he seems to sleep less heavily for a short time, and a much slighter stimulus is enough to arouse him if it is applied soon afterwards. When awakened he may perform apparently voluntary movements for a short time, although more clumsily than in his normal state, but no complete consciousness is present, the animal is stupid and drowsy and soon sinks back into deep slumber again. The sensation of pain seems to be much lessened but not entirely abolished, and reflex movements are difficult to elicit. After larger quantities an exaggerated sensibility to external stimulation seems present, for the animal starts convulsively at loud sounds and on pinching, but when left undisturbed lies in profound sleep. The respiration is at first quick and dyspnœic, the dog panting as if after a long run, but later it becomes slow and labored; the pupil is narrowed; the circulation seems less affected, although a congestion of the skin and mouth is often observed. The stage of strychnine-like convulsions is not developed in the dog, although the reflex irritability may be distinctly increased by large quantities. Just before the respiration finally ceases, convulsions generally occur, but these are asphyxial in origin and are not due to the direct action of the alkaloid. In the rabbit and other rodents the symptoms are similar to those seen in the dog, but the depression is even more marked. An increase in the reflex irritability to external stimulation is also evident here, while the respiration is slowed from the beginning. Small quantities of morphine produce drowsiness in the horse, ass or goat, larger quantities restlessness and excitement which may pass into convulsions and death. Harley found excitement and subsequently coma and death produced by morphine injections in the mouse.

In **Birds**, morphine causes vomiting, drowsiness, sleep and stupor, with slow and imperfect respiration, very much as in mammals. It has been repeatedly stated that pigeons possess a high degree of tolerance for morphine, but this does not seem correct, for though in common with all the lower animals they are much less susceptible to its influence than man, the tolerance does not seem much greater than that of rabbits and dogs when the drug is administered hypodermically. It seems to be absorbed with difficulty from the crop.

In **Man**, small quantities of morphine lessen the voluntary movements and produce a drowsiness which soon passes into sleep, unless the patient is continually aroused by his surroundings. As long as he is kept awake, his actions and movements show nothing abnormal, but it is impossible to keep his attention directed to any object for long, and as soon as he is left to himself for a few moments he sinks into sleep. After small quantities there is no difficulty in arousing him; in fact, the sleep seems lighter than usual and may resemble rather a state of abstraction or "brown study" In this condition the imagination is not depressed to the same extent as the reason, and it is often stated, therefore, that opium at first stimulates the intellectual

powers. This is incorrect, however — the self-control and judgment are lessened, and although the stream of thought may seem more rapid and the images more vivid than usual, the logical sequence is lost, and the condition may rather be compared to dreaming than to a real increase of the intellectual powers. In particular, the patient has often no idea of time. This stage of abstraction is not by any means generally observed and soon passes into sleep, but the unchecked imagination may still persist in the form of dreams.

In larger quantities morphine produces deep, dreamless sleep, from which the patient is still easily aroused, but which returns at once when he is left undisturbed. When once aroused, he can be kept awake or can be aroused again after a short interval much more easily, some time elapsing apparently before the same degree of depression is reached again. As the dose is increased, the sleep deepens into torpor, from which he can be wakened only with difficulty, and eventually all efforts to arouse his attention are fruitless and he sinks into coma, which may be reached very soon after a large dose. During this deeper sleep and coma the respiration is very slow, the pulse is regular, full, and of moderate speed. The pupils are contracted to a small point and the mouth and throat are dry. The face is purple and congested, and the skin feels warm, although the temperature may be low. The breathing generally becomes slower and weaker, and occasionally periodic (Cheyne-Stokes). The cyanosis increases, the pulse becomes smaller and often quicker, the pupils remain contracted, but dilate widely just before the final arrest of the repiration. The heart continues to beat feebly for a short time afterwards.

After small doses of morphine the patient generally awakes refreshed, and, save for an occasional dryness of the throat and slight nausea, apparently quite normal. Not infrequently, however, headache is complained of, and sometimes nausea and vomiting, accompanied by marked depression. In rare cases delirium, and even convulsions, have been observed soon after its injection, but these symptoms of excitement are so rare in the human subject as to be classed as idiosyncrasies. Some skin affections, such as itching and redness, are occasionally seen while the action is passing off.

Action.—The action of morphine on the **Central Nervous System** seems to consist then of a mixture of stimulation and depression, which are not equally marked, however, throughout the divisions of the central axis. The depression seems to be produced mainly in the brain, especially in those parts associated with the higher intellectual faculties, while the stimulation affects first the spinal cord. It seems likely that in different animals these two opposing influences prevail to varying extents, so that in some the stimulant action extends to the brain, as in the cat, while in man the depressant action dominates the whole central nervous system, at any rate when moderate quantities are used. The action on the brain is elicited by smaller quantities than that on the cord, so that the first effect of morphine is general intellectual depression, while the increased activity of the spinal functions is only

elicited by very large quantities. This selective action of morphine is especially evident in the medulla oblongata, in which certain centres are entirely paralyzed before neighboring ones undergo any distinct modification.

Morphine, therefore, seems to combine in itself the properties of alcohol and of strychnine; like the former, it depresses the functions of attention and coördination of the brain, while, like the latter, it increases the activity of the spinal cord.

The effect of morphine on the **Spinal Cord** has been studied almost exclusively in the frog. The reflex irritability in these animals is first diminished to a slight extent, and then increased to the same degree as by strychnine. It seems difficult to believe that the same drug should cause first depression and then stimulation of a function, but it has been shown in the description of the action of strychnine that all the elements of the spinal cord are not involved in the changes produced by that poison, and a possible explanation would be that while small quantities of morphine lessen the ability of the motor cells to give out impulses, larger quantities increase the activity of the receptive and transmitting cells, so as to compensate for the depression of the motor cells and eventually to conceal their depression entirely.

It will be shown in the discussion of the effects of morphine on the respiratory centre that some grounds exist for the belief that the motor functions are depressed by morphine, but this explanation of its action on the cord must be looked upon merely as a preliminary hypothesis to account for the phenomena.[1]

The hypothesis of opposing action on the motor and sensory elements of the cord would explain the different results observed in different classes of animals by assuming that the depressant effects on the motor apparatus are more developed in one class, while in another the stimulation of the receptive apparatus is the predominating feature. It is to be remarked that in all animals the cord is less depressed than in the corresponding stage of chloral poisoning, for if two animals are poisoned, the one with morphine, the other with chloral, until no voluntary movements occur, the reflexes of the one poisoned with morphine are always found more active than those of the other.

The effects of morphine on the **Brain** are no less difficult to account for than those on the cord. In the frog, the symptoms of increasing depression correspond to those observed after the removal in succession of the cerebral lobes, the corpora quadrigemina, the cerebellum and the medulla oblongata. In man, it is often found that comparatively small quantities are sufficient to deaden or even entirely remove the pain of disease without rendering the patient unconscious. The intelligence is not so acute as normally, but he answers questions and converses freely and may even seem abnormally sensitive to impressions caused by loud noises or bright flashes of light. Animals in this condition may be subjected without resistance to what would ordi-

[1] The old explanation, which attributed the increased activity of the spinal cord to its being liberated from the inhibitory action of the brain through the cerebral depression, has proved inadequate, for total destruction of the brain does not give rise to the exaggerated reflex movements elicited by morphine in the frog.

narily involve considerable pain, provided the application be not suddenly made. If struck suddenly, however, they react as usual, and remain apparently as sensitive as usual for some time. Morphine then seems to lessen the power of concentrating the attention. As long as any stimulus is of constant strength, be it an internal pain or a noise or light, the morphinized individual remains unconscious of it. On the other hand, a shock is at once perceived, and the lethargy being for the moment dispelled, he reacts to his surroundings for a short time, but is incapable of prolonged attention and soon sinks into stupor again.

Morphine in moderate quantities seems to have but little effect on the irritability of the motor areas of the brain cortex, but in large quantities it lowers and eventually abolishes it. Exner found no alteration in the time elapsing between the perception of a flash of light and a preconcerted movement, while others have found that the reaction to a slight touch was retarded. This would agree with the hypothesis introduced above — the power of attention is lessened and slight stimuli are, therefore, perceived more slowly, while a stronger impression is perceived and acted upon after the usual interval.

FIG. 17.

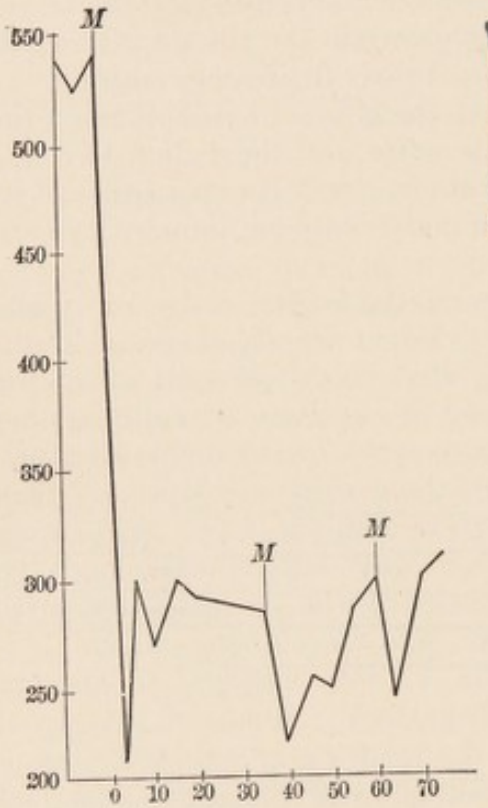


Diagram of the volume of air inspired by a rabbit during morphine narcosis. *M*, injection of morphine. The amount is measured in c.c. along the perpendicular, while the time is measured along the horizontal line. At first about 540 c.c. is inspired in 2½ minutes, but after the injection of morphine, *M*, the volume falls to about 200 c.c. and is maintained at 200-300 throughout the experiment. (After STURSBERG.)

Several observers have investigated the relative sensibility of the skin before and after morphine. The method employed was to measure the smallest distance on the skin at which the person could recognize two points as distinct. In every case it was found that the ability to do this was lessened by morphine owing to the central depression, the drug seeming not to have any direct action on the sensory organs themselves. Various authors have examined the cortical cells after morphine with the hope of finding some histological changes produced by it. The results are discordant, however, and alterations said to be characteristic by one investigator have been shown to be due to the histological methods used by him.

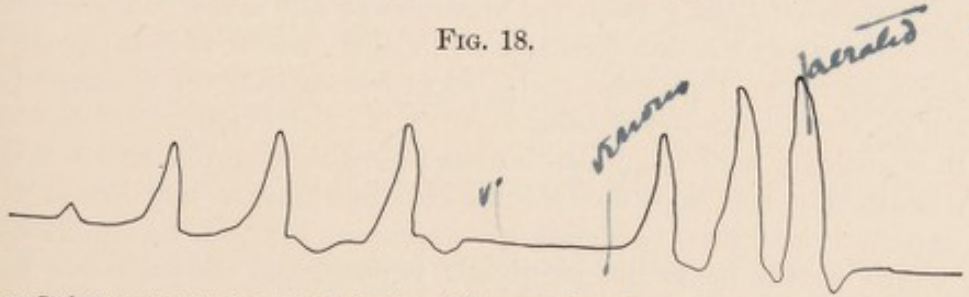
Before closing the consideration of the action of morphine on the central nervous system, it may be well to discuss its effects on the

Respiration. In man and in most other animals the respiration is slowed by morphine from the beginning (Fig. 17), but in the dog

there is often a preliminary stage of rapid, panting breathing, which may, however, be secondary to the emetic and purgative effects. The respiration in man is at first somewhat deeper than usual, but the increase in the depth is not sufficient to counterbalance the slowness of the breathing, so that the air inspired per minute is considerably reduced; in the later stages it becomes shallower and is often irregular. This irregularity may have a periodic character, a series of deep respirations being followed by several progressively weaker ones and then by complete inactivity for several seconds. The breathing then recommences with a very slight movement, followed by a series increasing regularly in strength and then again decreasing. This form of respiration (Cheyne-Stokes) is seen in various pathological conditions and has received different explanations,[1] but is probably due to direct action on the respiratory centre. It has been mentioned already that when the animal is once aroused repeated movements are much more easily elicited, and it would seem probable that the accumulation of carbonic acid and other poisons and the lack of oxygen in the blood during the pause eventually awaken the torpid centre, which causes a small movement. The next movement is larger owing to the persisting activity of the centre and this continues until, the blood becoming less venous, the stimulus becomes weaker and the cells sink again into their former torpor, to be again resuscitated by the increasing venosity of the blood. Loewy has examined with particular care the condition of the respiratory centre, and found that much larger quantities of carbonic acid than usual were required to increase the volume of the respired air a given degree. His results may indicate that the power of sending out impulses as well as of receiving them is lessened by morphine, while the narcotics of the methane series may perhaps lessen the receptivity of the centre without lessening its power to emit impulses.

After large doses the respiration becomes gradually slower and

FIG. 18.



Cheyne-Stokes respiration in opium poisoning. The up strokes denote inspiration. (After FILEHNE.)

weaker, and often loses its periodic character. Even after consciousness fails to be aroused by the most powerful shocks, some influence may be exerted on the respiratory centre. Thus the sudden application of cold water may cause several deep respirations, although it fails to dispel the stupor, but the respiration finally fails to react to these applications and soon afterwards ceases.

[1] According to Filehne, it is caused by alternate constriction and dilatation of the brain vessels.

To sum up the action of morphine on the central nervous system, it produces great depression which is especially marked in the psychical functions, but spreads over the lower parts of the nervous axis and involves sooner or later the respiratory centre. This depression does not seem to affect so much the motor areas as the powers of the will and attention. In mammals the failure of the respiration closes the course of the intoxication, but in the cold-blooded animals a further development of excessive reflex irritability follows which may pass into tonic convulsions. Even in the higher animals some indication of this action on the cord may occur, and in the feline group this stimulation involves not only the cord, but also the motor areas of the brain apparently.

Morphine has little direct action on the **Circulation**. The heart is often slightly accelerated at first, perhaps from the slight nausea. The frog's heart is rendered slow and weak by very large quantities of morphine.[1]

The blood-pressure remains high and the peripheral arteries in general show no change of calibre, with the exception of those of the skin, especially of the head and neck, which are dilated, rendering the face flushed and hot; as asphyxia comes on the flush becomes more dusky and cyanotic, but the vessels remain dilated, so that the face is of a bloated, purple color. The dilatation of these vessels has little influence on the general pressure. It arises from some obscure central action, but it is unknown whether this is of the nature of stimulation or of depression. The dilatation of the superficial vessels causes a sense of warmth in the skin, which is occasionally followed by itching and discomfort. It may account in part for the increased perspiration often observed, although this is doubtless contributed to by other factors. As asphyxia advances, the pulse may become slow, while the blood-pressure varies, either rising from the asphyxial activity of the vaso-motor centre or falling from the slowness of the heart. These effects are entirely absent if the blood be sufficiently aërated by artificial respiration, and are, therefore, to be regarded as indirect results of the action on the respiratory centre.

It is asserted that the pulse is sometimes accelerated and weak before death, but this does not seem a constant feature and has received no explanation, unless Gscheidlen's statement that the terminations of the vagus in the heart are paralyzed be accepted as sufficient to account for it.

The selective action of morphine is thus excellently illustrated in its effects on the medulla oblongata, for the respiratory centre is paralyzed before the centres for cardiac inhibition and vaso-constriction are affected to any marked extent.

The peripheral **Muscles** and **Nerves** are also unaffected by morphine in any except overwhelming doses. Even when directly applied to

[1] Barnard states that the cat's heart dilates more completely and also contracts more strongly under morphine, but this is opposed to earlier investigations and cannot be received without confirmation.

the nerve it has but little effect on the irritability (Waller). When morphine is injected subcutaneously in the frog in large quantities, it lessens the power of the end-organs to transmit impulses, but no such effect is noted in mammals. It is often stated that the sensory terminations are paralyzed by morphine, and solutions are therefore injected into the seat of pain, or liniments are rubbed into the skin over it, but as a matter of fact, morphine seems entirely devoid of any such local action. The sensibility of the skin is lowered by an injection, it is true, but no more so at the point of application than in other parts of the body, so that the action appears to be central.

The **Pupil** undergoes characteristic changes in morphine poisoning. In the great majority of cases in man, the pupil is contracted to pin-point dimensions until just before the final asphyxia, when it dilates widely. In some animals, such as the dog and rabbit, the same effects are seen, while in birds the pupil remains unaffected, and in animals in which morphine causes movement and excitement, it is dilated widely. The action is undoubtedly central, and not due to any local changes in the eye. A number of other drugs produce equally marked contraction of the pupil, but these have the same action when dropped into the conjunctival sac, while morphine has no effect when applied in this way; atropine applied to the conjunctiva at once removes the myosis produced by morphine. The terminal dilatation seen in man is not due to any direct action of the poison, but is a result of the general asphyxia.

As a general rule the **Secretory Glands** seem to be rendered less active than usual by morphine. When it produces nausea, however, it may increase the saliva and the mucus, but these are the usual accompaniments of this condition and cannot be considered due to any special action of the poison. The sweat glands are exceptions to the general rule, however, for slight perspiration is generally observed from the therapeutic action, and profuse perspiration is seen before death in some cases in man from the effects of the asphyxia. The urine does not generally show any distinct alteration after morphine in man, but there is not infrequently retention in the bladder because the sphincter reflex is absent. In the dog and in some other animals, morphine causes glycosuria, apparently from some alteration of the glycogenic function of the liver.

The **Alimentary Canal** manifests some distinct changes under morphine, and although these have been the subject of numerous researches no satisfactory explanation has as yet been vouchsafed. In the human subject its injection is occasionally followed by some nausea, which is much more frequently present, however, during recovery from the drug. In the dog and cat nausea and vomiting are almost invariably sequelæ of its application in any form, and from the rapidity with which they follow its subcutaneous injection would seem to be due to its acting on the medullary centre. Small quantities of opium or morphine lessen the sensation of hunger in the human subject, but this is probably to be attributed to central action rather than to any effects

on the stomach. Batelli states that the gastric movements in animals are first increased and then retarded by morphine, and Riegel states that in man and the dog the gastric secretion is generally retarded at first but is subsequently increased to a considerable extent. This occurs whether the drug be administered by the mouth or hypodermically and is therefore due to some change induced by it after absorption. The rate of absorption in the stomach and bowel appears to be unchanged by morphine. Hirsch states that the passage of the contents of the stomach into the bowel is delayed through a spasmodic contraction of the pylorus.

The effects on the intestine vary with the dose injected as well as with the species of animal. Very large quantities cause violent peristalsis and repeated evacuation of the bowel in the dog, cat, and according to some authors, the rabbit, while small doses, on the other hand, are followed by lessened peristalsis and constipation in man and in most animals. Even in poisoning in man, the purgative effect is not observed, and opium and morphine are very extensively used in therapeutics to quiet the movements of the bowel. Two explanations of this action have been offered, the first that moderate quantities of morphine stimulate the centre in the cord inhibiting the intestinal movements, while larger doses paralyze this centre and thus allow the bowel to contract more powerfully than usual (Nothnagel), the second that the central nervous system is not concerned in the sedative effects, which are attributed to morphine depressing the local mechanism in the intestinal wall. Neither theory is wholly satisfactory, and some writers are, therefore, inclined to believe that the action is partly central on the spinal cord and partly peripheral on the bowel wall. It is to be remarked that morphine is excreted by the intestinal epithelium and that this may have some connection with the excessive peristalsis. The grounds on which these explanations are founded are so involved, and so little convincing, that they may be omitted.[1] It seems more probable that the effects are peripheral than that they are central, however, for none of the other numerous drugs which act on the spinal cord possesses this curious action on the intestinal movements.

Morphine frequently causes a slight fall in the **Temperature**, which may be explained by the less active movements and the dilatation of the cutaneous vessels; sometimes a slight preliminary rise in the temperature has been seen in man. It is found that animals under morphine react less to an increase in the surrounding temperature than unpoisoned ones; *i. e.*, a normal animal exposed to a high temperature takes measures to prevent its internal temperature from rising above the normal, while, under morphine, these measures are less effective, and the temperature rises more rapidly and to a greater height; this indicates that the temperature centre in the brain is rendered less sensitive.

[1] The most recent account of the subject is that given by *Vamossy*, Deutsch. med. Wochenschr., 1897, p. 457.

Metabolism. — The excretion of carbonic acid is lessened during the depression stage, while in those animals in which excitement is produced, it may be considerably augmented from the increased muscular movement. The imperfect respiration leads to an increase in the lactic acid of the blood and urine and to the disappearance of glycogen from the liver. Sugar may appear in the urine from the same cause (Araki).

Excretion.—Morphine is excreted mainly by the digestive tract, in the saliva, stomach and bowel, and is therefore found in large quantities in the fæces even after hypodermic injection. Traces of it occur also in the urine after large doses. It appears in the stomach very soon after injection, a weak reaction occurring after 2½ minutes according to Alt, but after about an hour no further excretion into the stomach has been shown to occur, although its narcotic action persists much longer. A certain amount of the morphine undergoes partial oxidation in the tissues, and some oxidation products have been said to occur in the urine.

Tolerance.—The continued use of morphine or opium leads to a condition of tolerance in which enormous doses of the drug are necessary to elicit any effect. Faust has succeeded in producing a similar state in dogs, and finds that much more morphine is oxidized in the tissues in this condition than in untreated animals; for when a normal dog received an injection of morphine, over 60 per cent. of the amount injected could be recovered from the stools, while when a much larger quantity was injected into a tolerant animal, none whatever was found in the excreta. The tissues therefore acquire the power of oxidizing morphine when they have become habituated to its presence.

Oxydimorphine ($C_{34}H_{36}N_2O_6$) has been believed to be present in the urine after the administration of morphine. It has also been found in opium by some investigators and has a very weak narcotic action resembling that of morphine. Marmé supposed that the symptoms seen after the abrupt withdrawal of morphine in cases of opium habit were due to this oxydimorphine remaining in the tissues, but this has not been confirmed.

Heroine is an artificial alkaloid formed from morphine by substituting acetyl for its two hydroxyls, and has attracted some attention recently through its being advocated as a respiratory sedative in cough. It appears to resemble morphine in its general effects, but is said to act more strongly on the respiration and less on the cerebral functions. Thus the respiration is rendered slower with less mental depression than would accompany an equal change elicited by morphine. According to the advocates of heroine, the slowness of the breathing is in part compensated for by its greater depth, so that the actual diminution of the air inspired is not proportional to the decrease in the number of the movements; but this has been disputed and is certainly not invariably true, particularly in man. On the whole the evidence of experimental and clinical observers seems to indicate that heroine deserves a place between morphine and codeine.

Codeine resembles morphine in the general features of its action, although it is much less poisonous. It depresses the brain, and causes an exaltation of the activity of the lower parts of the central nervous system. Its depressant action is not so powerful nor so enduring as that of morphine, however, while the stimulation is more evident and involves not only the cord, but also the medulla oblon-

Depression of codeine less than morphine which stimulation more than morphine.

gata and lower parts of the brain. As has been mentioned already, morphine also stimulates rather than depresses the brain in the feline class, but with codeine this is true also for the dog and to a less extent for man. In the latter small quantities of codeine produce sleep but this is not so deep and restful as that which follows the administration of morphine, and the patient is liable to be awakened by slight noises, and is restless and often unrefreshed when he awakens. Somewhat larger quantities, instead of inducing deeper sleep, increase the restlessness and cause a considerable exaggeration in the reflex excitability. The respiration is not so much slowed as after morphine, and, according to Winternitz, the excitability of the centre is practically unchanged, while morphine reduces it very considerably. The pupil is slightly contracted during the codeine sleep, but dilates when the excitement stage follows. Codeine does not seem to produce so great constipation as morphine, and in animals often causes purging and diarrhœa. It is said by Tauber to be excreted in the urine mainly, but his statement requires confirmation.

Codeine is methylmorphine, and a number of similar compounds have been formed artificially, such as ethylmorphine and amylmorphine. Two of these, ethylmorphine (**Dionine**) and benzylmorphine (**Peronine**) have recently been introduced into therapeutics, but appear to possess no advantages over codeine.

Papaverine stands midway between codeine and morphine in its action on the central nervous system, but is a comparatively weak poison. Even in large quantities it has not the soporific action of morphine, nor does it produce the same degree of excitement as codeine. Comparatively small quantities are followed by sleep, but this does not become deeper as the dose is increased. On the contrary, the reflex excitability is augmented, and after very large quantities some tetanic spasm may be elicited, but this seems to be of spinal origin entirely, while that produced by codeine points rather to an affection of the lower part of the brain. Papaverine has more tendency to slow the heart rhythm than either morphine or codeine ; it apparently acts directly on the heart muscle and not through the regulating centres. The blood-pressure is, however, little affected by ordinary quantities.

Narcotine resembles codeine rather than morphine, but has even less depressant action, especially in mammals. In the frog a short stage of depression is elicited, but this soon gives place to strychnine-like exaggeration of the reflex excitability. In mammals there may be but little appearance of depression, the injection being followed by a condition of excitement immediately—restlessness and tremors with increased reflexes, which eventually lead to convulsions, during which the animal generally succumbs exactly as in strychnine poisoning. The pulse is considerably slower after narcotine injection from a direct action of the drug on the heart. Narcotine is a very much less poisonous body than either morphine or codeine, and very large quantities have been administered repeatedly with little or no narcotic effect. It is a compound of hydrocotarnine, another opium alkaloid, with meconin. Hydrocotarnine apparently acts very much in the same way as narcotine, but produces even less depression.

Narceine has attained a certain reputation owing to the statement of Cl. Bernard that it is the most powerful narcotic of all the opium alkaloids. There seems, however, to be no doubt that the preparation he used was very impure, and that narceine itself has little or no action of any kind. It is exceedingly insoluble in water, and its salts are broken up in aqueous solution, so that it is probably absorbed very slowly and imperfectly.

Thebaine seems to have practically no depressant action. It sometimes produces some heaviness and confusion in man, but this is accompanied by

symptoms exactly resembling those described under strychnine, and it may therefore be considered as belonging to the latter series rather than to that of morphine ; it is very much less active than strychnine, however. Thebaine seems to differ from morphine also in its effects on the bowel, for Vamossy finds that it increases peristalsis instead of allaying the irritability. **Laudanine** seems to resemble thebaine very closely in its effects.

The other alkaloids occur in very minute quantities in opium and possess no great interest from the therapeutic point of view. Very little has been done to elucidate their pharmacological action, but those which have been examined seem to produce effects resembling those of the better known members of the group. There are some exceptions to this rule, however, for in the effects of **Cryptopine** and **Protopine** some features appear which seem to be without analogue in the action of morphine and codeine. In frogs, small doses produce a narcotic condition similar to that following the injection of morphine, but the reflex irritability does not show the same exaggeration afterwards ; larger quantities cause complete paralysis of the whole central nervous system. At the same time a very marked action appears in the striated muscles, the contraction of which is altered in a perfectly characteristic manner ; if a tetanizing series of electric shocks be passed through a muscle poisoned with these drugs, no real tetanus, but a series of rapid contractions and relaxations is produced. The ends of the motor nerves are also said to be partially paralyzed. In mammals, no depression occurs but restlessness and eventually convulsions, which do not seem to be of spinal origin but rather suggest a stimulation to the cerebrum and midbrain. The heart is slow and weak, and some depression of the vaso-motor centres is caused by large quantities of the poisons. The respiration does not seem to be depressed, but rather to be accelerated, save by the largest doses. They paralyze the terminations of the sensory nerves on local application in the same way as will be described under cocaine. The action of these two alkaloids on muscle and on the heart would seem to separate them off entirely from the other opium alkaloids, although it is not impossible that these are merely further developments of the heart action noted after narcotine and papaverine.

With the exception of cryptopine and protopine the alkaloids of opium form a series, of which morphine is one, thebaine the other extremity. In morphine the narcotic action is the most striking feature, but as the successive members are taken up, this effect becomes less marked than the reflex stimulation, until in thebaine practically no depression can be made out, and the symptoms resemble those of strychnine exactly. Some of these alkaloids, however, differ in type somewhat from both morphine and thebaine, because the brain itself seems the seat of stimulation, and the convulsions partake more of the character of those produced by cocaine and atropine than of those of strychnine. Morphine itself possesses this action in the cat, so that these alkaloids do not in reality depart from the general type so completely as might at first appear. The more important members of the group may, therefore, be arranged in the following order, the most depressant standing first and the most stimulant last.

Morphine (oxydimorphine).
Papaverine.
Codeine.
Narcotine.
Thebaine.
(Strychnine.)

In man morphine is much the most dangerous of the opium alkaloids, because death is produced in the narcotic stage through asphyxia. In most animals, however, thebaine, codeine, and laudanine are more toxic, because the failure of the respiration does not occur in the stage of depression, but during the convulsions.

Opium itself contains besides the alkaloids already discussed, various acids with which they are in combination, meconic, lactic and sulphuric acid, but none of these possess any action of importance. Along with these are found gums, sugars, albumins, wax, and the other common constituents of plant juices, but these merely tend to delay the absorption of the active constituents, and cannot be said to play any part in the effects of opium. Of the alkaloids, morphine is present in greatest abundance, and is also the most powerful in its effects. The action of opium, therefore, is practically identical with that of morphine, except that the latter is absorbed more rapidly when pure than when mixed with the numerous inactive substances of the crude drug. Opium acts much more slowly than morphine, and seems to produce more marked effect on the intestine in which it remains for a longer time. It is also said to cause less nausea, although this is disputed.

U. S. P. Preparations.

Opium, the dried milky exudation obtained by incising the unripe capsules of Papaver somniferum, yields when moist not less than 9 per cent. of crystallized morphine.

Opii Pulvis, dried and powdered opium, yielding 13–15 per cent. of crystallized morphine. Dose, 0.02–0.1 G. ($\frac{1}{3}$–$1\frac{1}{2}$ grs.).

Opium Deodoratum, opium deprived of its odorous principles and of any other bodies soluble in ether; sugar of milk is added to make up the weight to that of the original. Dose, 0.02–0.1 G. ($\frac{1}{3}$–$1\frac{1}{2}$ grs.).

Extractum Opii, the dried aqueous extract, contains 18 per cent. of morphine. Dose, 0.015–0.06 G. ($\frac{1}{4}$–1 gr.).

The following preparations contain 10 per cent. of opium or from 1.3 to 1.5 per cent. of morphine.

Tinctura Opii (Laudanum). Dose, 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Tinctura Opii Deodorati. Dose, 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Vinum Opii, flavored with cinnamon and cloves. Dose, 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Acetum Opii (Black Drop) is formed by extracting opium powder with dilute acetic acid. Dose, 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ et Opii (Dover's Powder), 10 per cent. each of opium and ipecac powders. Dose, 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Tinctura Ipecacuanhæ et Opii. Dose, 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Other preparations of opium generally weaker than the foregoing are:

Pilulæ Opii, each contains 0.065 G. (1 gr.) of opium powder or 0.009 G. ($\frac{1}{7}$ gr.) of morphine.

Trochisci Glycyrrhizæ et Opii, each contains 0.005 G. ($\frac{1}{12}$ gr.) of opium.

Tinctura Opii Camphorata (Paregoric) contains four parts of opium per thousand, along with benzoic acid, camphor, oil of anise and glycerin. Dose, 4–15 c.c. (1–4 fl. drs.) for an adult, 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 drops) for a child.

Mistura Glycyrrhizæ Composita (Brown Mixture) is formed from liquorice, syrup, acacia, wine of antimony, spirits of nitrous ether and camphorated

tincture of opium, and contains only about 1 part of opium in 2,000. Dose, 15–30 c.c. (½–1 fl. oz.).

Emplastrum Opii, opium plaster, 6 per cent.

Alkaloids:

MORPHINA ($C_{17}H_{19}NO_3 + H_2O$), colorless crystals without odor but with a bitter taste, practically insoluble in water and only slightly soluble in alcohol. Dose, 0.005–0.03 G. ($\frac{1}{12}$–½ gr.).

MORPHINÆ HYDROCHLORAS.

MORPHINÆ SULPHAS.

Morphinæ Acetas.

Of these salts the hydrochlorate and sulphate are the most important, as the acetate tends to decompose on keeping. The hydrochlorate and sulphate are soluble in about 21–24 parts of water, less so in alcohol. They form white, silky crystals with a bitter taste. Dose, 0.005–0.03 G. ($\frac{1}{12}$–½ gr.).

Pulvis Morphinæ Compositus (Tully's Powder) is a mixture of liquorice powder, camphor and morphine sulphate, in which the latter is contained to the amount of 1⅔ per cent. Dose, 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

TROCHISCI MORPHINÆ ET IPECACUANHÆ, each contains 0.0016 G. ($\frac{1}{40}$ gr.) of morphine sulphate.

CODEINA ($C_{18}H_{21}NO_3 + H_2O$), white or nearly transparent crystals with a faintly bitter taste, soluble in 80 parts of water and in 3 parts of alcohol. Dose, 0.015–0.12 G. (¼–2 grs.).

B. P. PREPARATIONS.

OPIUM, the juice obtained by incision from the unripe capsules of Papaver somniferum, inspissated by spontaneous evaporation. When dried it contains 9½–10½ per cent. of anhydrous morphine, and it is therefore weaker than the corresponding preparation of the U. S. P. Dose, ½–2 grs.

EXTRACTUM OPII contains 20 per cent. of morphine. Dose, ¼–1 gr.

Extractum Opii Liquidum contains ¾ per cent. of morphine (⅜ gr. in 110 mins.). Dose, 5 30 mins.

TINCTURA OPII, Laudanum, contains ¾ per cent. of morphine, or about 1 gr. of opium in 15 mins. Dose, 5–15 mins. for repeated administration; for a single administration 20–30 mins.

Tinctura Opii Ammoniata is formed of laudanum, benzoic acid, oil of anise and ammonia. It contains about ⅛ per cent. of morphine or nearly 5 grs. of opium in the fluid oz. Dose, ½–1 fl. dr.

TINCTURA CAMPHORÆ COMPOSITA, Paregoric or Paregoric Elixir, resembles the foregoing in composition except that camphor is substituted for ammonia and that the laudanum is reduced so that only one part of morphine is contained in 2,000 of paregoric or ¼ gr. of opium in each fl. dr. Dose, ½–1 fl. dr.

Pulvis Opii Compositus contains 10 per cent. of opium along with pepper, ginger, caraway and tragacanth. Dose, 2–10 grs.

PULVIS IPECACUANHÆ COMPOSITUS, Dover's Powder, contain 10 per cent. each of opium and ipecacuanha in powder. Dose, 5–15 grs.

PULVIS KINO COMPOSITUS contains 5 per cent. of opium along with kino and cinnamon. Dose, 5–20 grs.

PULVIS CRETÆ AROMATICUS CUM OPIO contains 2½ per cent. of opium along with aromatic chalk powder. Dose, 10–40 grs.

PILULA PLUMBI CUM OPIO contains 12½ per cent. of opium along with lead acetate. Dose, 2–4 grs.

PILULA SAPONIS COMPOSITA, contains 20 per cent. of opium. Dose, 2–4 grs.

Pilula Ipecacuanhæ cum Scilla is formed from Dover's powder and squills, and contains about 5 per cent. of opium. Dose, 4–8 grs.

SUPPOSITORIA PLUMBI COMPOSITA, each contains 3 grs. of lead acetate and 1 gr. of opium.

Linimentum Opii (⅜ per cent. of morphine).

Emplastrum Opii (10 per cent. opium).

Unguentum Gallæ cum Opio contains $7\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. of opium.

Morphinæ Acetas ($C_{17}H_{19}NO_3,C_2H_4O_2,3H_2O$), a white crystalline or amorphous powder almost entirely soluble in $2\frac{1}{2}$ parts of water and in 100 of alcohol, $\frac{1}{8}$–$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.

Morphinæ Hydrochloridum ($C_{17}H_{19}NO_3,HCl,3H_2O$), acicular prisms of a silky lustre, soluble in 24 parts of cold water, one part of boiling water or 50 of alcohol. Dose $\frac{1}{8}$–$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.

Morphinæ Tartras ($(C_{17}H_{19}NO_3)_2C_4H_6O_6,3H_2O$), a white powder consisting of fine nodular tufts of acicular crystals, soluble in 11 parts of cold water, insoluble in alcohol. Dose, $\frac{1}{8}$–$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.

Liquor Morphinæ Acetatis, 1 per cent., 10–60 mins.

Liquor Morphinæ Hydrochloridi, 1 per cent., 10–60 mins.

Liquor Morphinæ Tartratis, 1 per cent., 10–60 mins.

Injectio Morphinæ Hypodermica contains 1 per cent. of the tartrate. Dose by subcutaneous injection, 2–5 mins.

Suppositoria Morphinæ, each contains $\frac{1}{2}$ gr. of morphine hydrochloride.

Trochiscus Morphinæ, each contains $\frac{1}{3\frac{1}{2}}$ gr. of morphine hydrochloride.

Trochiscus Morphinæ et Ipecacuanhæ, each contains $\frac{1}{3\frac{1}{2}}$ gr. of morphine hydrochloride with $\frac{1}{7\frac{1}{2}}$ gr. of ipecacuanha root.

Tinctura Chloroformi et Morphinæ Composita corresponds to the patented chlorodyne and contains 1 per cent. of morphine hydrochloride, along with chloroform, prussic acid, capsicum, cannabis indica, oil of peppermint and glycerin. Dose. 5–15 mins.

Codeina ($C_{17}H_{18}(CH_3)NO_3,H_2O$), colorless crystals soluble in 80 parts of water, readily soluble in alcohol and ether. Dose, $\frac{1}{4}$–2 grs.

Codeinæ Phosphas ($(C_{17}H_{18}(CH_3)NO_3,H_3PO_4)_2,3H_2O$), white crystals with a slightly bitter taste, soluble in 4 parts of water, much less soluble in alcohol. Dose, $\frac{1}{4}$–2 grs.

Syrupus Codeinæ, one fluid drachm contains $\frac{1}{4}$ gr. of codeine phosphate. Dose, $\frac{1}{2}$–2 fl. drs.

Papaveris Capsulæ, the nearly ripe dried fruits of Papaver somniferum, contain a small percentage of morphine, but are entirely superfluous in therapeutics.

Therapeutic Uses. — Opium is one of the most important and most extensively used drugs in the pharmacopœias at the present day as in the past. Of late years the crude drug has been largely replaced by morphine, but the action is the same, and although morphine is preferable in most cases, opium is still specially indicated for certain purposes. In almost any disease, conditions which are favorably influenced by morphine may present themselves, and these conditions alone can be discussed here.

Pain. — As has been repeatedly mentioned, opium or morphine has a special analgesic action which is not shared by its modern rivals of the methane series, and which justifies the celebrated dictum of Sydenham that without opium few would be callous enough to practise therapeutics. The general statement may suffice that severe pain indicates opium. Even where the disease in itself is one which would in ordinary circumstances contraindicate it, it must be always taken into consideration whether the relief of the pain and its attendant restlessness may not counterbalance the disadvantages of the narcotic. At the same time the danger of inducing the craving for morphine cannot be forgotten, for the use of morphine to subdue pain is perhaps the

most fruitful cause of the habit. It is often found that comparatively small quantities of opium are sufficient to remove or at any rate to dull pain, but after repeated doses the quantity has to be increased owing to tolerance being attained. Some forms of pain are relieved by the members of the antipyrine series, but these are less certain and more limited in their action than morphine. On the other hand the antipyretics often relieve pain without inducing sleep, and in this possess a great advantage over opium in the treatment of headache, neuralgia and similar conditions.

Sleeplessness. — Opium was formerly the only drug used to induce sleep, but since the discovery of chloral and its congeners it is used less frequently. These fail entirely to replace it, however, where the sleeplessness is due to pain, while, on the other hand, they are more efficacious in some conditions of excitement. Not infrequently opium and chloral are prescribed together for this purpose, and the combination acts more efficiently than either of the drugs alone. Each is, of course, prescribed in considerably smaller amount than if administered separately. Opium is less efficient than chloral when there is apparently an increased activity of the motor functions of the brain, as in wild delirium and mania, and sometimes seems to increase the excitement even, but this general statement is subject to numerous exceptions, and morphine is still largely used in many such disorders. In the true convulsive diseases, such as tetanus, epilepsy and chorea, chloral is preferable. The beneficial effect of morphine in many acute febrile conditions is undeniable, and, as in the case of alcohol, is due to its lessening the pain and discomfort of the patient and inducing rest. A good deal of difference of opinion exists as to the advisability of administering opium or morphine in these conditions, and there is no question that the routine treatment of fever by narcotics is to be deprecated; but on the other hand, the restlessness and discomfort may in itself aggravate the disease, and morphine is distinctly indicated under these circumstances.

The preparations chiefly used to relieve pain and promote sleep are the extracts, laudanum, opium pill, or compound soap pill, and the morphine salts and their solutions. The latter may, of course, be administered hypodermically.

In **Respiratory Disorders**, opium and morphine are largely used for their effects on the centre. Where it is desirable to lessen its irritability, as for example in excessive cough and dyspnœa, opium may be indicated. On the other hand, when there is a profuse expectoration, the irritability of the centre cannot be lowered without danger, and opium is contraindicated. Opium gives relief in cases of asthma, but there is always danger of inducing the habit.

Opium is often combined with expectorants in the treatment of cough, and a large number of suitable preparations are provided in the pharmacopœias, such as paregoric, Dover's powder and other preparations containing ipecacuanha, liquorice mixture, the compound morphine powder (U. S. P.), the ammoniated tincture, the compound

tincture of chloroform and morphine, the pills of ipecacuanha and squill (B. P.), the lozenges and the codeine preparations. Codeine is often preferred to morphine in these cases, because it reduces the excitability of the respiratory centre with less marked cerebral depression. This is also true of the new artificial alkaloids, heroine and dionine, which have enjoyed some popular reputation in late years. Impartial investigators of these drugs have generally failed to obtain better results from them than from codeine and morphine, and further investigation is required before they can be recommended as superior to the older and unpatented alkaloids.

In Peritonitis and Intestinal Disorders, opium is indicated doubly; first, for its general action in allaying pain and restlessness; and secondly, for its special action in lessening the movement of the intestine. Opium is preferable to morphine for these purposes because it lies longer in the bowel, and therefore evolves a stronger action there than on the rest of the economy. In colic, especially lead colic, it often relieves the pain without increasing the constipation and seems to allay the spasm of the bowel without stopping entirely its peristalsis. In diarrhœa opium may be given to check the excessive peristalsis, though in the severer forms of dysentery it generally fails to have this effect, and in septic purging is rather to be avoided. In perforation and hemorrhage from the bowel, opium is the most efficient of all remedies, as it allows adhesions or clots to be formed by checking movements of the intestine, which would provoke further leakage.

The B. P. offers a number of preparations specially designed for use in intestinal disorders and especially in diarrhœa, such as the compound kino powder, the compound chalk powder, the lead and opium pill, and the compound lead suppository and morphine suppository. Instead of these the tincture, extract or other simple preparation may, of course, be used.

In **Hæmorrhage,** where the bleeding point cannot be reached, opium or morphine is most valuable. This is not from any direct effect on the vessels or blood, but because it allays the restlessness which follows the loss of large quantities of blood and thus allows the blood to clot in the ruptured vessel. The same preparations are suitable here as for pain.

In **Vomiting** morphine is sometimes used in small quantities, but it seems doubtful whether with any benefit.

Opium has been used instead of quinine in **Malaria,** and though it cannot be said to replace the latter, has a distinct effect in some cases apparently. Of course, symptoms may arise in malaria as in other diseases in which opium is specially indicated, but apart from this, cases of malaria of old standing seem to be benefited by opium with or without quinine. According to Roberts, the action is due to narcotine and not to morphine.

Opium or morphine has sometimes been used in **Diabetes** with good effects; for though the glycosuria seldom disappears under its use, it is lessened in some cases. Codeine has been advised instead of morphine

in this disorder, as it is less likely to cause constipation and gastric disturbance. According to many authorities the only effect of these narcotics in diabetes is to allay the tormenting thirst, while others suppose that they retard the formation of sugar from glycogen in the liver.

Lastly, opium is used as a **Diaphoretic,** and for this purpose it is generally combined with ipecacuanha and prescribed as Dover's powder. Although in itself it has little or no diaphoretic action, opium may augment the effects of ipecacuanha through dilating the skin vessels. Opium and its alkaloids have no effect applied to the skin, and the plasters, ointments and other similar preparations are quite superfluous.

Codeine is much less often used than morphine in therapeutics. It is of comparatively little value in allaying pain or excitement, but has been found of benefit in the sleeplessness of melancholia. It is used not infrequently as a sedative in cough, and, as has been stated, in diabetes. There seems less liability to the formation of the codeine habit, and it has been suggested as a substitute for morphine in morphinomania, but has not proved efficient in this condition.

Opium and morphine are contraindicated in very young children, in whom even minute quantities often produce the most alarming symptoms of poisoning. Even one drop of laudanum is said to have been fatal to a child under one year of age. In great weakness, especially in cases where the respiration is barely sufficient to aërate the blood, or where profuse expectoration is present, morphine has to be administered with the greatest care. In cerebral congestion and meningitis the opiates are generally contraindicated. It must be remembered also that both opium and morphine are liable to disturb the digestion and to cause nausea and want of appetite, and that these may prevent their use in cases in which they would otherwise be suitable. In some persons opium invariably causes nausea and vomiting, either soon after its administration or while its effects are passing off. For this idiosyncrasy morphine may be substituted for opium, although this is often equally nauseating, or chloral and bromides may be prescribed with opium to prevent the unpleasant after-effects. Not infrequently, however, opium has to be avoided entirely. In all chronic painful diseases opium or morphine has to be given guardedly, on account of the risk of the formation of the opium habit; the patient ought to be kept in ignorance of the drug used as far as possible, and it should be alternated with others. Of course, in cases of incurable, hopeless disease, where life can only last a comparatively short time and is attended by severe suffering, this objection does not hold, and it may be necessary to administer morphine without stint and in ever-increasing quantity.

Morphine and opium are often said to be contraindicated in Bright's disease of the kidney. This seems to be due to the belief that morphine is excreted in the urine, which has now been shown to be erroneous. There seems no reason to believe that morphine is harmful in these conditions, and in some forms of uræmia it has even been of considerable benefit.

Acute Poisoning with morphine or opium is the commonest of all forms of intoxication, with the exception of the alcoholic. It is often difficult to diagnose from other forms of unconsciousness, but the extreme contraction of the pupils give a clue, as a general rule, and if opium has been used, the breath often has the characteristic odor.

The treatment is immediate evacuation of the stomach, whether the drug has been taken by the mouth or not, as even when injected hypodermically it is excreted into the stomach and may be reabsorbed. Emetics may be employed for this purpose, but often fail of effect owing to the depression of the medullary centres, so that where possible a stomach tube ought to be used in preference. The stomach should be thoroughly washed out at intervals, in order to remove every trace of the drug as it is excreted. As the respiration begins to fail, it is to be encouraged by irritation of the skin, either by dashing cold water on it, by the electric current, or by flipping it with towels. The violent flagellation formerly advocated with the view of encouraging the respiration, served also usually to exhaust the nervous energy both of patient and attendant. When these means fail to keep up the natural breathing, it is necessary to resort to artificial respiration, either electrical or mechanical, and this ought to be continued as long as the heart continues to beat. Enormous doses of morphine and opium have been recovered from under this treatment. Numerous drugs have been advocated in acute morphine poisoning, and of these caffeine administered either hypodermically or in the form of strong coffee by the stomach seems the most satisfactory. A long controversy has been carried on as to whether atropine is to be considered an antidote to morphine and used in these cases. It is a stimulant to the medullary centres, and may, therefore, be used in small quantities ; but large quantities, such as have been advised by some authorities, are undoubtedly harmful, as atropine itself paralyzes the respiration when given in sufficient amount. Bashford states that the best effects are to be expected from about 1.5 mg. ($\frac{1}{40}$ gr.) of atropine and that more than this increases the danger of respiratory failure. In discussing this question too great weight has been laid on the results of animal experiment, which is not convincing in this case, as the effects of morphine are so different in man. Caffeine seems certainly more indicated than atropine, for it is scarcely possible to paralyze the respiratory centre with the former, which stimulates it equally strongly. Alcohol has been advised also, and as far as its local action is concerned, it may increase the respiration, but its direct action on the respiratory centre is similar to that of opium. Of late years permanganate of potash has been advised in case of morphine poisoning, because the poison is oxidized by it. A certain amount of poison in the stomach may be destroyed in this way, but the portion absorbed is unaffected by the permanganate, and the method is less efficacious than the prompt and repeated use of the stomach tube. The hypodermic injection of permanganate is, of course, entirely useless.

Chronic Opium or Morphine Poisoning is a not infrequent condition,

and, unfortunately, seems to be increasing rapidly. Among Eastern nations, especially in China and India, opium is smoked, and some of the morphine is carried over in the smoke and absorbed from the respiratory tract. This habit is rare in European peoples, among whom the drug is taken by the mouth, generally in the form of laudanum or of pills, or is injected hypodermically as morphine hydrochlorate or sulphate. Of the three methods the first seems to be the least harmful, for in some parts of China the majority of the adult population seems to indulge in it without the serious results which are met with in the Western opium-eaters and morphinomaniacs. This result may be due in part to race, or to the fact that the opium-smoker never attains to the immense doses taken daily in the cases of the habit met with in Europe and America. In the beginning the quantity used is small, but as tolerance is attained, ever larger quantities are required to produce any effect, until, as De Quincy states in his "Confessions of an Opium-eater," 8000 drops of laudanum may be required to stay the craving. The effects are generally described as stimulant, but it seems possible that they consist rather in depression of the sensibility, by which the unfortunate patient becomes unconscious of the miseries of his condition, and may accordingly be able to perform his duties and maintain appearances better than when deprived of the poison. The symptoms of the opium habit are exceedingly indefinite, and the diagnosis is often almost impossible. The statements of the patient ought not to be taken into consideration, because these unfortunates seem to have lost all idea of honor and truthfulness. As a general rule they are nervous, weak in character and wanting in energy, and utterly unfit for work unless when supplied with the drug. The pupils are often contracted, the heart sometimes irregular, and tremors and unsteadiness in walking may be apparent. The appetite is bad and a considerable loss in weight occurs, and the movements of the bowels are irregular, constipation alternating with diarrhœa. Eventually melancholia and dementia may follow the prolonged use of opium, and especially of morphine. Some continue the habit for many years, however, and it would seem with comparative immunity. If morphine is injected habitually, evidence may be obtained from the small needle marks on the front of the body, which often give rise to multiple abscesses of small size from carelessness in the disinfection of the syringe. When other evidence fails, it may be necessary to give a moderate dose disguised in some unusual way and to observe if it induces sleep; in habitual users the ordinary dose will have little or no effect.

The treatment of chronic morphine poisoning is not very promising. The will and self-control would seem completely paralyzed in many cases, and although the patient wishes to be freed from his enemy, he seems utterly unable to withstand the craving. The only means of treatment which promises success in most cases is the strict régime of an asylum or retreat, where the patient is kept under constant supervision. The immediate removal of the drug often produces such in-

tense misery and depression as to seem actually dangerous; but the withdrawal ought not to be too gradual, and ought to be complete after two or three weeks at the most. The patient has to be watched carefully for long after he has apparently recovered, as relapses are exceedingly common.

The morphine habit has often been combated by the substitution of other drugs, such as cocaine, but the result generally has been that a new and even more dangerous habit has been substituted for, or often merely grafted on, the original. Numerous drugs have been proposed for the cure of morphinomania, but none of them seems to have the slightest effect.

Bibliography.

The literature of opium is so immense that only a few of the more important pharmacological papers can be mentioned here.

Cl. Bernard. Leçons sur les Anæsthesiques et sur l'asphyxia. Paris, 1875.
Harley. Old Vegetable Neurotics. London, 1869.
Kölliker. Virchow's Archiv, x., p. 244.
Hitzig. Untersuchungen über das Gehirn. Berlin, 1874.
Gscheidlen. Untersuchungen aus dem physiologischen Laboratorium zu Wurzburg, ii., p. 1.
Baxt. Arch. f. Anat. und Phys., 1869, p. 112.
Filehne. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., x., p. 442; xi., p. 45. Pflüger's Arch., lxii., p. 201.
Loewy. Pflüger's Archiv, xlvii., p. 601.
Araki. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xix., p. 422.
Salvioli. Arch. f. Anat. und Phys., 1880, Supplement, p. 95.
Bubnoff u. Heidenhain. Pflüger's Arch., xxvi., p. 137.
v. Schroeder. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xvii., p. 96.
Witkowski. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., vii., p. 247.
Pohl. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiv., p. 87.
Alt. Berl. klin. Woch., 1889, p. 560.
Levison. Diss. Bonn, 1894. Berl. klin. Woch., 1894, p. 891.
Brunton u. Cash. Beiträge zur Physiologie, C. Ludwig gewidmet, 1887, p. 149.
Stockmann and Dott. Proc. Roy. Soc. Edinburgh, 1890. British Medical Journal, 1890, ii., p. 189, and 1891, i., p. 157.
Engel. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvii., p. 419. (Protopine.)
Rheiner. Therap. Monatsch., 1889, p. 393. (Codeine.)
Dreser. Ibid., 1898, p. 509.
Stursberg. Arch. de Pharmacodyn., iv., p. 325.
Winternitz. Pflüger's Arch., lxxx., p. 344.
Marshall. Med. Chronicle, April, 1901.
Riegel. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xl., p. 347.
Hirsch. Centralbl. f. inn. Med., 1901.
Bashford. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., viii., p. 311.
Faust. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xliv., p. 217.

Minor Drugs of the Opium Series.

In some other members of the poppy family (Papaveraceæ), alkaloids are found which bear a close resemblance to those of opium. There are *Chelidonine*, *α-*, *β-* and *γ-Homochelidonine*, *Chelerythrine* and *Sanguinarine; Protopine* is also found in a number of other papaveraceæ. These alkaloids are met with in very small quantities in various plants, of which Sanguinaria Canadensis (Bloodroot) and Chelidonium majus (Celandine) are the best known.

Chelidonine and *α-homochelidonine* resemble morphine in their effects on the central nervous system, but have even less stimulant effect. In the frog no secondary increase in the reflex irritability is produced, but in some mammals a slight stimulation of the spinal cord may be caused. They have the same effect as protopine and cryptopine on the muscles and heart, and like

them produce insensibility of the skin and cornea when applied locally through paralyzing the terminations of the sensory nerves. The heart is slowed, partly owing to stimulation of the inhibitory centres in the medulla, and partly through direct action on the cardiac muscle.

Sanguinarine has very little depressant action, but causes tetanus and wild excitement, so that as far as its action on the central nervous system is concerned, it deserves a place between codeine and thebaine of the morphine series. It possesses the same muscular action as protopine, however, and the heart is slowed through direct affection of the muscle. Sanguinarine paralyzes the peripheral sensory endings when applied locally, but this paralysis is preceded by a stage of irritation. It causes violent peristalsis of the bowel, and increases the secretion of saliva.

β-homochelidonine resembles protopine and cryptopine closely in its effects, causing the same stimulation of the lower parts of the brain with very slight effects on the intellectual powers, slowing the heart through its muscular action and paralyzing the sensory terminations.

Chelerythrine paralyzes the central nervous system without any preliminary increase in the reflex irritability, possesses the muscular action of protopine and cryptopine, and first irritates and then paralyzes the sensory terminations.

None of these alkaloids have been used in therapeutics, and there would seem to be no indication for them that is not as well met by opium or morphine. None of the plants containing them have been used to any great extent, although Sanguinaria Canadensis was formerly occasionally prescribed as a nauseating expectorant and emetic. The "sanguinarine" of commerce is generally a mixture of the alkaloids with other constituents, and, like the other preparations of the plant, might well be dispensed with.

U. S. P. Preparations.

Sanguinaria, the rhizome of Sanguinaria Canadensis, bloodroot, collected in autumn.

Tinctura Sanguinariæ, 1–2 c.c. (15–30 mins.).

Extractum Sanguinariæ Fluidum, 0.1–0.5 c.c. (2–8 mins.).

Chelidonium, celandine, the entire plant of Chelidonium majus.

Bibliography.

H. Meyer. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxix., p. 397.
Schmidt. Arch. der Pharmacie, ccxxxix., p. 393.

Anhalonium.—A number of alkaloids, some resembling morphine, others strychnine in their effects on animals, have recently been isolated from different members of the Anhalonium genus (Fam. Cactaceæ). In Mexico, and along the southern boundary of the United States, where those plants are indigenous, some of them are used as narcotics in the religious rites of the Indians and are known as Pellote, Peyotl, or Muscale or Mezcal Buttons. The symptoms arise for the most part from the cerebrum and differ from those of opium and cannabis indica in the frequency with which color visions are induced, these consisting in constantly shifting flashes of brilliant colors. Mezcal eating is not followed by merriment as in cannabis nor by sleep like morphine but depression of some functions is indicated by the imperfect coordination of the movements, the retarded perception and the errors in the estimation of time. The exaltation seems to be caused for the most part by one of the alkaloids, mezcaline. Very large doses have induced unpleasant symptoms through depression of the respiration. Anhalonium and pellotine, one of its alkaloids, have been used as narcotics in a few cases of insomnia.

Lewin. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxiv., p. 401; xxxiv., p. 374.
Heffter. Ibid., xxxiv., p. 65; xl., p. 385.
Prentiss and Morgan. Med. Record, 1896, Aug. 22.
Dixon. Journ. of Physiol., xxv., p. 69.

IV. HYDRASTINE AND HYDRASTININE.

Another alkaloid which is closely related to those of opium chemically and pharmacologically, is *Hydrastine*, which occurs in the Hydrastis Canadensis (Golden Seal) along with *Berberine* and *Canadine*.

Hydrastine ($C_{21}H_{21}NO_6$), when exposed to oxidizing agents such as potassium permanganate, is decomposed into opianic acid and *Hydrastinine* ($C_{11}H_{13}NO_3$), another alkaloid. Narcotine ($C_{22}H_{23}NO$), the opium alkaloid, undergoes a similar decomposition into opianic acid and *Cotarnine* ($C_{12}H_{15}NO_4$). Hydrastine and narcotine differ only in a hydrogen atom of the former being substituted by $-OCH_3$ in the latter, and a similar relation exists between hydrastinine and cotarnine. All four are derivatives of isoquinoline. The action of hydrastis is similar to that of hydrastine, the berberine and canadine having little effect; the latter is as poisonous as hydrastine, but is present only in very small quantities in the plant.

Action. — Hydrastine causes in frogs an increase in the reflex irritability and eventually tetanus exactly resembling that produced by strychnine, and like it terminating finally in paralysis. Unlike strychnine, however, it weakens and eventually destroys the muscles in the same way as the alkaloids of sanguinaria. The heart is rendered slow and weak, partly by the central stimulation of the inhibitory apparatus and partly by direct action on the muscle fibres.

In mammals, the pulse is slowed by comparatively small quantities, while somewhat larger doses cause general feebleness, tremor, dyspnœa, and incoördination in the movements. Very large quantities elicit clonic and then tonic convulsions and tetanus, during which the respiration ceases. The pulse is slowed at first from stimulation of the vagus centre, is afterwards quickened from its paralysis, and still later becomes slow again from direct action on the cardiac muscle. The blood-pressure rises from constriction of the arterioles but afterwards falls, partly from their dilatation and partly from the weakness of the heart; the constriction of the arterioles is due to stimulation of the vaso-motor centre in the medulla. Several authors have asserted that the injection of hydrastine solution is followed by rhythmic contractions of the uterus similar to those observed during labor, but this has been denied by others, and cannot be said to have been satisfactorily established either by experiment or by clinical experience. Another statement which is frequently met, is that hydrastis and hydrastine increase the secretion of the bile, but this is founded upon very imperfect experiments and is in all probability erroneous. Hydrastine has no local anæsthetic action.

Hydrastine then stimulates first the centres of the medulla oblongata, and produces slowing of the pulse, an increased arterial tension and accelerated respiration. Larger quantities stimulate further the spinal cord and eventually paralyze both medulla and cord. In addition to this central action, hydrastine weakens and paralyzes muscle, this

being confined to the heart in warm-blooded animals, but extending to the ordinary striated muscle of the frog.

These effects would appear to give hydrastine a position near that of thebaine, though it differs from most of the opium alkaloids in seeming to act more strongly on the medulla than elsewhere in the central nervous system. Its action on the heart and muscle is analogous to that of several of the opium alkaloids. Hydrastine is excreted as such in the urine, and does not form hydrastinine in the organism as might have been surmised from its behavior towards oxidizing substances. When it is administered for some time, a cumulative action is said to be developed.

Canadine in small quantities produces depression and drowsiness followed by complete recovery without further symptoms. In larger quantities v. Bunge found that it caused a short stage of excitement, which was followed by depression and paralysis of the central nervous system. It has little or no effects on the mammalian circulation when administered in ordinary doses, but very large quantities cause weakness and arhythmia of the heart. Its injection is followed by violent peristalsis of the intestine and diarrhœa. Canadine is present in only very small quantity in the Golden Seal and has apparently little importance in therapeutics.

Hydrastinine, an artificial alkaloid formed from hydrastine, has of late years attacted a certain amount of attention from its alleged power of arresting hemorrhage. It seems to differ from hydrastine in causing no marked disturbance of the centres of motion and feeling save in enormous doses, which paralyze the nervous system, and, in the frog, the terminations of the motor nerves in muscle (Santesson). On the other hand, its action on the medulla oblongata resembles that of the parent substance. The heart is slowed somewhat by small doses, apparently from stimulation of the vagus centre, and the arterial tension rises further than after hydrastine. Unlike the latter, however, hydrastinine causes a very prolonged augmentation of the blood-pressure, because it does not tend to depress the heart to the same extent as hydrastine. In fact, several authors believe that it increases the efficiency of the heart movements from action on the muscle, although the pulse may be somewhat slowed by stimulation of the inhibitory centre. After very large quantities, the pulse is often extremely rapid from paralysis of the inhibitory centre.

The cause of the increased arterial tension is still undecided. There seems to be undoubted stimulation of the vaso-motor centre, but according to some writers, the peripheral vessels are contracted by direct action on the walls as well. This statement seems open to question, however, none of the experiments on which it is founded being altogether satisfactory; thus, while Falk found well marked contraction of the abdominal, and especially of the renal vessels, v. Bunge denies that the renal vessels are constricted. It has been repeatedly stated that hydrastinine produces rhythmical contraction of the uterus, and even abortion in animals, but this does not seem to be correct. It appears to have no direct action on the muscle of this organ, but its ves-

sels undergo constriction like those of the rest of the body, and this may stop hæmorrhage and at the same time cause asphyxia of the fœtus and abortion. It must be stated, however, that several writers on hydrastinine hold that it causes contraction of the uterus through action on the muscle, and the question deserves further investigation.

Archangelsky states that a 10 per cent. solution of hydrastinine applied locally causes dilatation of the pupil, which reaches its maximum in 2–3 hours, and lasts for 12–15 hours.

Preparations.

Hydrastis (U. S. P.), **Hydrastis Rhizoma** (B. P.), the rhizome and roots of Hydrastis Canadensis, Golden Seal.

Extractum Hydrastis Fluidum (U. S. P.), 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.).

Extractum Hydrastis Liquidum (B. P.), 5–15 mins.

Glyceritum Hydrastis (U. S. P.), 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.).

Tinctura Hydrastis (U. S. P., B. P.), 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.).

Hydrastininæ Hydrochloras (U. S. P.), 0.03–0.1 G. (½–2 grs.), given in solution hypodermically or by the mouth, or in pills or tablets.

Therapeutic Uses. — Hydrastis has been used as a stomachic bitter and the large quantity of berberine contained in it would seem to give it a place along with the simple bitters. It has also been credited with some obscure action on the mucous membranes when locally applied, through which it is said to benefit many forms of catarrhal inflammation. For this purpose the glycerite may be used. Besides various conditions in which its use was attended by doubtful success, it has been used in hæmorrhage from the uterus; but for this purpose, hydrastinine ought to be preferred, as it causes a much greater constriction of the peripheral vessels than hydrastine, and acts less on the heart. The conditions in which it is indicated seem to be moderate hæmorrhage, for which no contraction of the uterine walls is required; for example, hydrastinine is of value in excessive menstrual flow, while in post-partum hæmorrhage it seems to have little effect, because here the hæmorrhage is to be met rather by inducing contraction of the uterine walls by the use of ergot than by constricting the vessels. There seems no reason why hydrastinine should not be used in other forms of hæmorrhage, for it does not act more on the uterine vessels than on others throughout the body.

Hydrastinine has been found to lessen somewhat the irritability of the motor areas of the brain, and its use has, therefore, been suggested in epilepsy.

Cotarnine has been introduced under the name of *Stypticine* as a substitute for hydrastinine in uterine hæmorrhage. Dose, 0.02–0.03 G. (⅓–½ gr.). It resembles hydrastinine in its general action and has received some recommendation at the hands of gynecologists.

Bibliography.

P. Marfori. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvii., p. 161. Arch. Ital. de Biol., xxviii., p. 191.

E. Falk. Virchow's Arch., cxix , p. 399; cxlii., p. 360.

Cerna. Therap. Gaz., 1891, pp. 289, 361.
K. v. Bunge. Arbeiten a. d. pharmakolog. Institut. Dorpat, xi. and xii., p. 119.
Fellner. Centralbl. f. Physiol., xi., p. 374.
Santesson. Skandin. Arch. f. Physiologie, vi., p. 308.
Ronsse. Arch. de Pharmacodynam., iv., p. 207; v., p. 21.
Philipps and Pembrey. Brit. Med. Jour. 1898, ii., p. 1052.

V. CANNABIS INDICA.

The hemp plant possesses no pharmacological interest when grown in temperate regions, but when cultivated in warm climates as in India, Egypt or the southern United States, it develops products which induce marked derangements of the central nervous system. The Indian plant was formerly supposed to be a distinct species, but differs so little from the European form that botanists now consider them merely varieties. The old name of Cannabis Indica has, however, been retained in medicine. Its introduction into Western medicine dates only from the beginning of last century, but it has been used as an intoxicant in Asiatic countries and in Africa since unknown time, and under the names of *Hashish*, *Bhang*, *Ganja*, *Charas* or *Churrus*, is habitually indulged in by some one or two hundred millions of mankind. Some of the preparations are smoked either alone or mixed with tobacco; others form an intoxicating drink, while in others it is mixed with sugar or honey and taken as a confection.

A large number of investigators have attempted to isolate the active principle of Indian hemp, and its virtues have been attributed in turn to a resin, a glucoside, and one or more alkaloids, each investigator invariably failing to confirm the statement of his predecessors. The latest examination, by Wood, Spiney and Easterfield, resulted in the discovery of a number of terpenes and of a red oil or resin boiling at a high temperature, which they term *Cannabinol*, and which was found by Marshall to induce the typical effects of cannabis indica in man and in animals. Its characters and true nature can be discovered only by further investigation, but it seems likely that it will prove nearly related to the active principles of some of the volatile oils. The pharmacological action of cannabis indica presents so many features in common with that of opium and in particular with that of anhalonium that it may be assigned a place near them.

Symptoms. — The effects of cannabis indica are chiefly due to the changes in the central nervous system, in which it induces a mixture of depression and stimulation similar to that seen occasionally under morphine. Its action is much less constant, however, and seems to depend very largely on the disposition and intellectual activity of the individual. The preparations used also vary considerably in strength, and the activity of even the crude drug seems to depend very largely on the climate and season in which it is grown, so that great discrepancies occur in the accounts of its effects. Soon after its administration, the patient passes into a dreamy, semiconscious state, in which the judgment seems to be lost, while the imagination is untrammeled by its usual restraints. The dreams assume the vividness of visions, are

of boundless extravagance, and, of course, vary with the character and pursuits of the individual. In the eastern races they seem generally to partake of an amorous nature. The true believer sees the gardens of paradise and finds himself surrounded by troops of houris of unspeakable beauty, while the less imaginative European finds himself unaccountably happy and feels constrained to active movement, often of a purposeless and even absurd character. Ideas flash through the mind without apparent continuity, and all measurement of time and space is lost. True hallucinations may appear, but are often absent, the chief features of the action being merriment, comfort, well-being and self-satisfaction. Often less pleasant thoughts obtrude themselves, however, such as the fear of impending death or of some imminent indefinite danger. During this period, the consciousness is not entirely lost, for the patient often feels that his dreams are unreal, his satisfaction unfounded and his movements ridiculous, but he cannot restrain them; he can give a coherent account of his condition when aroused and answer questions intelligently. The sensation of pain is lessened or entirely absent, and the sense of touch is less acute than normally. Later the dreams alternate with periods of complete unconsciousness, from which the patient can be aroused easily, and the symptoms eventually pass into tranquil sleep, from which he awakes refreshed, and, as a rule, without any feeling of depression or nausea. In the majority of cases the preliminary stage of exaltation is very short or entirely absent in Europeans, the first effects of the drug often being heaviness, drowsiness, noises in the ears and numbness of the extremities, which pass into deep sleep. According to Dixon the drug is much more exhilarating when inhaled than when swallowed, and this may account for some of the variations in its action. In some cases, acute mania and convulsive attacks have been developed, and among the natives of India catalepsy occasionally occurs.

In animals, the effects of cannabis indica seem to resemble those in man and present the same marked variations; a stage of exaltation with increased movement is sometimes present and is followed by depression, lassitude and sleep. The reflex excitability is first increased and then diminished in frogs. Vomiting is often induced in dogs and cats, but cannabis indica differs from opium in producing no disturbance of the digestion and no constipation. The heart is generally accelerated in man, when the drug is inhaled; the intravenous injection in animals slows the pulse partly through inhibitory stimulation and partly through direct action on the heart muscle. This action on the heart is stated by Dixon to be the cause of death after poisonous quantities, for he found the respiration persist for some seconds after standstill of the heart. The pupil is generally somewhat dilated. No effects have been noted in regard to the glandular secretion, such as might be expected if muscarine were present, as has been asserted.

Death from acute poisoning is extremely rare, and recovery has occurred after enormous doses. The continued abuse of hashish in the East sometimes leads to mania and dementia, but does not cause the

same disturbance of nutrition as opium, and the habitual use of small quantities, which is almost universal in some eastern peoples, does not seem detrimental to them, although among Europeans it might possibly be as fatal as that of morphine.

Preparations.

Cannabis Indica (U. S. P., B. P.), Indian hemp, the flowering tops of the female plant of Cannabis sativa (hemp), grown in the East Indies.

Extractum Cannabis Indicæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.02–0.06 G. (⅓–1 gr.).

Extractum Cannabis Indicæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.1–0.3 c.c. (2–5 mins.).

Tinctura Cannabis Indicæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 1–2 c.c. (15–30 mins.).

The preparations vary extremely in strength and many are entirely inert, especially when they have been kept some time. The unofficial preparations, such as "cannabin tannate," cannabinon, etc., seem to be no more reliable than the pharmacopœial ones, and offer no advantages at all commensurate with their price.

Therapeutic Uses. — Cannabis indica is used as a hypnotic in cases of sleeplessness from nervous exhaustion and, less often, from pain. It is not nearly so reliable as opium, and in fact produces sleep in only about 50 per cent. of the cases, according to some authors. On the other hand, it does not disturb the digestion and produces no subsequent nausea and depression, and may therefore be employed in some cases in which opium is contraindicated. It is of use in some cases of migraine, and has been prescribed as a substitute for opium in mental diseases.

Lactucarium (U. S. P.), the dried juice of Lactuca virosa, the common lettuce, is reputed to have some hypnotic properties. It contains neutral bitter substances, *lactucin* and *lactucon*, and it has been stated recently that traces of hyoscyamine and atropine are also present. In any case its action is so feeble that half an ounce has been administered to a dog without effect, and it seems quite unnecessary to include it in the pharmacopœia.

U. S. P.—*Tinctura Lactucarii.*

Syrupus Lactucarii.

Bibliography of Cannabis Indica.

Martins. Inaug. Diss. Erlangen, 1855. (Historical.)

Hare. Therapeutic Gazette, 1887, p. 225.

Preisendorfer. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xxv., p. 49.

Wood. Proc. Amer. Phil. Soc., 1869, p. 226.

Fronmüller. Erlangen, 1869.

v. Schroff. Lehrb. der Pharmakologie, 1868, p. 499.

Zuco u. Vignolo. Arch. Ital. de Biol., xxiii., p. 409. Bericht. der Berl. Chem. Gesellsch., 1895, iv., p. 558.

Marshall. Lancet, 1897, i., p. 235. American Medical Journal, 1898, ii., p. 882.

Dixon. Brit. Med. Journ., 1899, ii., p. 136.

VI. APOMORPHINE. (morphine − H_2O)

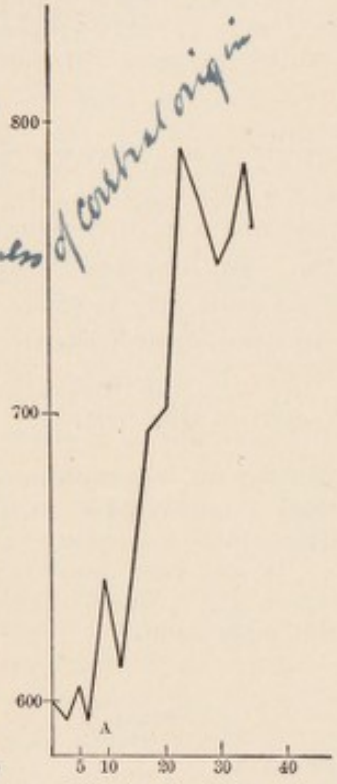
When morphine is acted on by acids and by some other dehydrating agents, it loses a molecule of water, and a new alkaloid is formed, *Apomorphine* ($C_{17}H_{17}NO_2$).

Through this change the action of the original alkaloid is considerably modified; apomorphine preserves the stimulant, but loses to a

great degree the depressant action of morphine on the central nervous system. This stimulant action extends over the whole central nervous system in animals, but is most developed in the "vomiting centre" of the medulla oblongata.

Symptoms.—In man, apomorphine in doses of 5–10 mg. ($\frac{1}{12}$–$\frac{1}{6}$ gr.) induces within 10–15 minutes nausea and vomiting, accompanied by the usual attendant phenomena, but with no symptoms which cannot be directly included in these. Very often the nausea passes off immediately after the evacuation of the stomach, but when larger quantities have been administered, repeated vomiting and retching may occur. Occasionally depression and sleep follow the emesis after even small doses.

FIG. 19.



Graphic record of the amount of air inspired by a rabbit after apomorphine. The volume inspired in each 2½ mins. is measured along the perpendicular, the time along the horizontal line. At first about 600 c.c. represents the average amount, but after the injection of apomorphine (A) it rapidly increases to 750-800 c.c. (Contrast Fig. 17, p. 212.)

The attendant symptoms are profuse salivation, increased secretion of the mucous glands of the nose, throat and bronchial passages, tears and a cold perspiration. A feeling of depression and muscular weakness and acceleration of the pulse are also well-known symptoms accompanying nausea and vomiting, and are present after apomorphine. These are all to be regarded as sequelæ of the emetic action, however, and not as due to the direct action of the drug on the glands and other organs. In a few instances the depression and weakness have passed into alarming collapse, but no actual fatality is recorded from the use of apomorphine.

In dogs and cats, small quantities elicit the same effects as in man, but larger doses are followed by symptoms of general nervous stimulation. In the herbivora, which are incapable of vomiting, these symptoms follow the injection of comparatively small quantities and are much more marked. The rabbit, for example, becomes restless and easily alarmed; it moves about, climbs up the walls of its cage and gnaws anything it can reach. Circus movements are developed very often, especially in the dog, the animal running unceasingly in a circle and striking against obstacles in its path, apparently unconscious of all its surroundings and overcome by the impulse to continual movement. The respiration is very much accelerated (Fig. 19). After very large quantities, the movements become less coördinated, and eventually tetanic convulsions set in, during which the respiration ceases, while the heart continues to beat for some time afterwards.

In the frog, apomorphine causes a transient stimulation of the central nervous system, followed by depression and paralysis. Larger

quantities weaken and paralyze the muscles and the heart through direct action on the fibres. The muscular action may also be demonstrated on excised muscles, in which the elasticity is lessened, and the contractions become weaker and eventually cease entirely. This weakening in the contraction of the muscles has not been observed in mammals, and is quite distinct from the feeling of weakness accompanying nausea in man, for the latter is certainly of cerebral origin. No emesis is induced in frogs, although these animals are not, like the herbivora, incapable of vomiting.

Very small doses of apomorphine may induce the secondary symptoms without actual vomiting. Thus the saliva, perspiration, tears and other secretions may be augmented by quantities which are too small to act as emetics, though there is no question that these are due to the commencing emetic action.

Apomorphine induces vomiting through changes in the medulla oblongata and not by irritation of the stomach. This is shown by the fact that it acts much more quickly and in smaller doses, when it is injected hypodermically than when it is swallowed, and also by the fact that if the medulla be brushed with apomorphine solution, vomiting follows immediately. It is even disputed whether apomorphine has any effect on the gastric movements at all, for Batelli states that the stomach remains quite passive during vomiting, while Schütz found it undergoing antiperistaltic movements towards the cardiac orifice. In any case the movements of the stomach play an unimportant part in the evacuation of its contents by apomorphine, and all the phenomena in man are to be ascribed to medullary action.

Apomorphine is said to have some anæsthetic effects on the cornea when a solution is dropped upon it. It causes cloudiness and consequent dimness of sight, however, and has not been used practically for this purpose. Apomorphine is not excreted into the stomach like morphine, nor has it been found in the mucous membranes of the air passages, and it is possible that it is decomposed in the tissues.

The symptoms induced by apomorphine resemble in some degree those following morphine in many animals, for here too the first symptom is vomiting accompanied by signs of excitement, which are, however, generally attended by those of depression of some parts of the central nervous system. The similarity between the effects of apomorphine and of morphine on the cat, for example, is particularly striking. In man, however, the effects are very different, for apomorphine seems to have lost all the depressant action of the parent body, although here again it must be remembered that morphine occasionally causes vomiting, so that apomorphine does not depart so far from the type of the opium alkaloids as would at first sight appear.

Apocodeine is formed from codeine in the same way as apomorphine from morphine, and according to some observers it acts in the same way as apomorphine when injected in doses of 15–20 mg. (¼–⅓ gr.), but it has been recently stated that pure apocodeine is not an emetic, but a cerebral depressant.

If codeine be heated with hydrochloric acid (B. P.), apomorphine is formed, and not apocodeine.

Preparations.

Apomorphinæ Hydrochloras (U. S. P.), 5–10 mg. ($\frac{1}{12}$–$\frac{1}{6}$ gr.).
Apomorphinæ Hydrochloridum (B. P.), $\frac{1}{20}$–$\frac{1}{10}$ gr.
Injectio Apomorphinæ Hypodermica (B. P.), 1 per cent., 5–10 mins.

Apomorphine hydrochlorate is a grayish-white crystalline substance, very soluble in water and turning dark green or even black, especially when kept long in solution. This change in color does not appear to impair its activity appreciably. The doses given above are those for hypodermic use to induce vomiting. The same quantity may be given by the mouth as an expectorant.

Therapeutic Uses. — Apomorphine is used chiefly as an emetic, and for some purposes presents several advantages over the older drugs employed with this object, inasmuch as it acts more promptly and can be administered by the hypodermic needle, while the other emetics have to be given by the mouth, which is a serious drawback in cases of poisoning. The more important of these older drugs are ipecacuanha, tartar emetic (antimony), ammonium carbonate, the sulphates of copper and zinc and alum.

Vomiting is not now such an important method of treatment as it was formerly, and the emetics are less frequently employed to evacuate the stomach than other less heroic measures such as the passage of the stomach tube. Emesis may be indicated in poisoning, and here apomorphine is especially useful. But in the great majority of cases a better method of treatment is repeated washing of the stomach by means of the stomach tube, for in narcotic poisoning apomorphine not infrequently fails to act owing to the depression of the vomiting centre, and in corrosive poisoning a certain amount of danger attends its use, as the pressure on the walls of the stomach exerted by the contraction of the diaphragm and abdominal muscles may lead to the rupture of the weakened walls of the organ. In irritant poisoning, on the other hand, the reflex vomiting set up is generally sufficient to empty the stomach, and the indications are rather to allay the gastric irritation than to increase it by causing violent movements of the abdominal walls by apomorphine. Emetics, such as apomorphine, have been used occasionally to cause pressure on other abdominal organs, *e. g.*, on the gall-bladder in order to dislodge a calculus or plug of mucus in the ductus choledochus, but this treatment is not to be advised, owing to the risk of rupture of the gall-bladder. Occasionally emetics are used, especially in children, to expel bodies from the air passages, as violent movements of expiration are produced during emesis. Apomorphine is, however, comparatively rarely used for this purpose. In cases of choking due to foreign bodies lying in the pharynx, vomiting is often beneficial, but the emetics act too slowly to be of benefit here.

Occasionally vomiting is still induced as a preliminary to treatment of various conditions not related to the alimentary canal; thus before commencing the treatment of malaria with quinine, the stomach is sometimes emptied by an emetic, while the bowel is evacuated by a purge.

A second use of emetics is in inflammatory conditions of the respiratory passages; the object here is to induce an increased secretion without producing emesis, and very small quantities are therefore used. The special condition in which this class of remedies is of service is bronchial irritation with a sticky mucous secretion which causes cough, but can only be expectorated with difficulty. The indications are for a mild and prolonged action such as can be induced by small doses of ipecacuanha, antimony and similar bodies, rather than for the more transient effects of apomorphine, but the latter has been advised by some authorities.[1]

Emesis is contraindicated in all conditions in which a sudden rise of blood-pressure may be dangerous, as in atheroma, fatty heart or aneurism, and where there is any danger of rupture of the abdominal walls or organs as in hernia, advanced pregnancy (especially if there be any tendency to abortion) gastric ulcer, and generally in impacted gall-stone.

Bibliography.

Siebert. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1871. Wagner's Archiv. f. Heilkunde, xii., p. 522.
Quehl. Inaug. Diss., Halle, 1872.
Harnack. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., ii., p. 254; iii., p. 64. Therapeut. Monatsh., 1892, p. 270.
Thumas. Virchow's Archiv, cxxiii., p. 44.
Murrell. Brit. Med. Journ., 1891, i., p. 452.
Guinard. Schmidt's Jahrb., ccxli., p. 130.

VII. PRUSSIC ACID.

Prussic or hydrocyanic acid differs entirely from the other acids in its pharmacological action, and has therefore to be described apart from them.

The pure acid is scarcely ever seen save in the chemical laboratory, and is an extremely dangerous body to handle, as it is very volatile and its fumes when inhaled may produce death within a few seconds. It is generally met with in a very dilute solution, which is formed by the decomposition of one of its salts.

In nature, prussic acid occurs in the secretion of some of the myriapoda, and in the decomposition products of a few glucosides, of which *Amygdalin* is the best known. Amygdalin is in itself practically inactive, but may be decomposed by dilute acids or by a ferment, emulsin, which is generally found associated with it in plants. The products of its decomposition are prussic acid, benzaldehyde and glucose, and the process may be represented by the formula,

Amygdalin.		Prussic acid.	Benzaldehyde.	Glucose.
$C_{20}H_{27}NO_{11}$	$+ 2H_2O =$	CNH	$+ C_6H_5CHO +$	$2C_6H_{12}O_6.$

Both amygdalin and emulsin occur in the bitter almond and in the kernels of a number of fruits, such as the apple, cherry, prune, plum

[1] Apomorphine is occasionally mentioned as a hypnotic, but the preliminary vomiting would certainly prevent its use for this purpose unless in quite exceptional conditions. It is not unlikely that in some instances morphine may be contained in the drug and that this may explain this narcotic action.

and apricot. In smaller quantities they have been found in the bark and leaves of several of these trees and in the laurel (Prunus laurocerasus). In the sweet almond emulsin occurs, but no amygdalin. When bitter almonds are rubbed into a paste with water, prussic acid is formed by the action of the ferment on amygdalin, and very large quantities of such a paste may give rise to unpleasant symptoms, especially in children. A more dangerous substance is the oil of bitter almonds, which consists of benzaldehyde and prussic acid in a loose combination and in very varying proportions. Several liqueurs are distilled from kernels and fruits containing amygdalin, and therefore possess a variable percentage of prussic acid. The best known of these are Kirschwasser and Maraschino. Laurel water and the preparations of Virginian cherry bark contain benzaldehyde and prussic acid, although these are in too small quantity to have any poisonous action.

Prussic acid and its salts have practically the same action, although none of the latter are so poisonous as the free acid. Cyanogen, $(CN)_2$, also resembles prussic acid in its effects, but is not so active.

The ferrocyanides and other double cyanides are in most cases harmless but other compounds, from which prussic acid is formed in the organism, are poisonous. The organic combinations containing the — CN radicle form two series, the *Nitriles*, in which the nitrogen is trivalent (*e. g.*, $CH_3 — C \equiv N$), and the *Isonitriles*, or *Carbylamines*, in which the alkyl is attached to the nitrogen (*e. g.*, $CH_3 — N \equiv C$). These compounds are all much less poisonous than prussic acid, and the nitriles are said to differ from it in their effects, inasmuch as the chief symptoms caused by them arise from gastro-intestinal irritation. The isonitriles are more poisonous than the nitriles and resemble the acid more closely in their action. Both nitriles and isonitriles give rise to the formation of prussic acid in the tissues.

Symptoms and Action. — Prussic acid first stimulates and then paralyzes the central nervous system in mammals, but it acts on so many forms of living matter that it merits the designation of a general protoplasm poison. The fatal dose in man is believed to be about 0.05–0.08 G. (1–1½ gr.) of the pure acid, certainly a much larger quantity than is fatal in cases of poisoning with some of the alkaloids and glucosides. Prussic acid acts much more rapidly than these, however, and has thus gained its reputation of being the most dangerous of poisons.

After very large doses in mammals, there may be practically no symptoms; the animal falls to the ground with a slight convulsive movement or a scream, and death follows in a few seconds from simultaneous arrest of the heart and respiration.

In smaller quantities, prussic acid has a bitter, acrid, burning taste, which is accompanied by salivation, and is followed by numbness in the mouth and throat. A sensation of warmth in the stomach is followed by nausea and vomiting, confusion and headache, dyspnœa, slow pulse, and general muscular weakness. The pupils are widely dilated and the eyeballs protrude, as generally occurs in asphyxia. Unconsciousness follows, and then violent convulsions, which pass into paralysis with involuntary evacuation of the contents of the bladder and bowel,

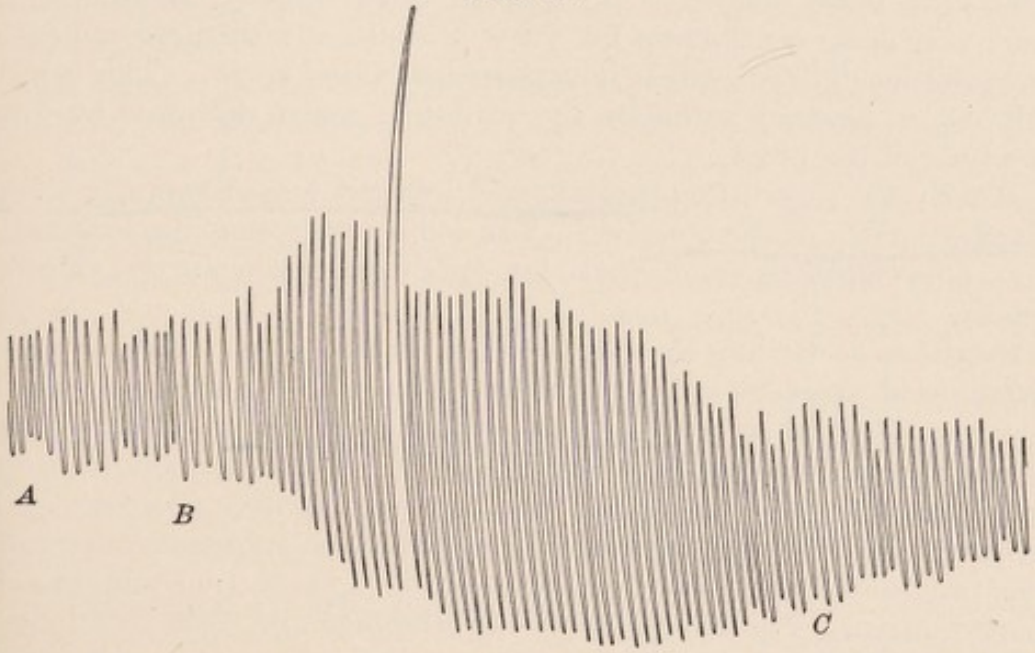
the respiration becomes extremely slow and eventually ceases, while the heart continues to beat for some time afterwards.

In frogs, no convulsions occur, the symptoms pointing to a paralysis of the central nervous system without preliminary stimulation, except in that the respiration is somewhat quick and dyspnœic.

In mammals, the **Central Nervous System** is first stimulated and then paralyzed, but the action seems to be developed more fully in the medulla oblongata and lower parts of the brain than in the cerebral cortex, for the convulsions resemble those produced by stimulation of the hind-brain, although the subsequent paralysis seems to include all parts of the central axis.

The peripheral **Nerves** and the **Muscles** are weakened and eventually paralyzed when suspended in an atmosphere of the gas, but unless

FIG. 20.



Tracing of the movements of the diaphragm (respiration) of the rabbit under a large but not fatal dose of cyanide of potash injected intravenously. *A-B*, normal respiration. At *B* 1 mg. injected; the respiratory movements are much larger. At *C* recovery. Note the short duration of the stimulation.

very large quantities are injected, they are not much affected in the living animal. When prussic acid in solution is applied locally to the **Skin**, it produces a numbness and partial loss of sensation, but this does not follow in general poisoning. The anæsthetic action is well seen on brushing the leg of a frog with a weak solution, for no reflex can be elicited from subsequent irritation of the limb, although it is moved on irritation of other parts of the body, which shows that the motor nerves and the spinal cord are still intact.

The **Respiration** is rendered quicker and deeper by the injection or inhalation of small quantities of prussic acid. During the convulsions it is, of course, irregular, and afterwards generally becomes extremely slow and deep and then ceases. After very large quantities it may cease within a few seconds. These changes are produced by primary stimulation and subsequent paralysis of the medullary centre.

i Slowing of heart due to medullary cardio Inhibit stim
ii Slowing from direct action on cardiac muscle.

+BP due to central stim of vaso constrict centr foll by paralysis ↓ BP. during convulsions +BP.

The **Circulation** is altered mainly through the action on the central nervous system, although prussic acid also acts directly on the heart. The stimulation of the inhibitory centre generally slows the pulse, but this is accompanied by a very considerable rise in blood-pressure from increased activity of the vaso-constrictor centres. This central stimulation later passes into paralysis and the blood-pressure falls from the depression of the vaso-motor centres, but the heart does not generally regain its normal rhythm, because although the inhibitory stimulation has passed off, the cardiac muscle is now directly affected, and its movements therefore remain somewhat slow. During the convulsions the arterial pressure rises again, but afterwards the progressive weakening of the heart leads to a slow and imperfect circulation. In the frog's heart, prussic acid causes slowing and standstill long before the peripheral nerves and muscles are affected.

If very large quantities be injected intravenously, or inhaled, the heart may cease contracting for a few seconds, and then recommence a slow and feeble beat, which is very soon arrested again. This is probably due to primary action on the inhibitory centre, followed by direct paralysis of the heart.

Batelli has shown that prussic acid injected hypodermically lessens the movements of the stomach. The temperature remains constant or rises somewhat after small doses, but falls rapidly when toxic symptoms appear.

Nutrition. — Besides its specific action on the central nervous system, prussic acid exercises a depressant action on protoplasm in general, and may therefore be called a general protoplasm poison, although some of the bacteria are but little affected by it. Both plants and animals are retarded in their movements and in their nutritive processes by its presence, although they may recover and show no subsequent deterioration provided the poison acts only during a short time and in sufficient dilution. For example, the development of seeds is hindered by the presence of prussic acid, but proceeds when it is withdrawn; yeast cells cease their activity, and the insectivorous plant Drosera no longer moves its tentacles in the presence of cyanides or prussic acid (Darwin). This action in plants has been explained by supposing that prussic acid stops by its presence the activity of the ferments which play so large a part in the economy of nature.

The effects of prussic acid on the mammalian tissues have been examined by Geppert in a long and careful research. He found that the oxygen absorbed by the tissues was much lessened by prussic acid, whereas it was to be expected that a convulsive poison, such as that under discussion, would cause an increased waste in the tissues and a corresponding rise in the oxygen used; yet during the most powerful convulsions after prussic acid, the absorption of oxygen is often distinctly lower than in the normal resting animal. After some time the consumption of oxygen again increases, although it does not regain the normal standard unless complete recovery occurs. The carbonic acid actually formed by the tissues falls, owing to the lessened oxidation,

which might be due to various causes, for example to the blood being less capable of absorbing oxygen than usual. Geppert shows, however, that this is not the explanation, but that the tissues are unable to absorb the oxygen brought to them by the blood cells; that, in fact, a change occurs in the protoplasm, which retards the normal respiration of the cell. The consequence of this is that the oxyhæmoglobin of the blood is not reduced in the capillaries, so that the venous blood has the same bright red color as the arterial. Prussic acid seems to be rapidly changed to other products in the tissues, however, provided a lethal dose has not been given, and as this process goes on, the protoplasm recovers its oxygen-absorbing power, the expired air becomes less rich in oxygen and richer in carbonic acid, and the venous blood assumes its ordinary dark color. Lactic acid and sugar are found in the blood in unusually large quantities during the action of prussic acid; these are invariably present when the oxidation of the tissues is imperfect from any cause.

The changes in the central nervous system are produced by smaller quantities and somewhat more rapidly than those in the metabolism, and they also last longer. The dilatation of the blood vessels from the depression of the vaso-constrictor centre may probably coöperate with the lessened absorption of oxygen to produce the bright red color of the venous blood, for it stands to reason that a more rapid circulation through the capillaries must lessen the amount of oxygen given up by the blood.

The diminution in the oxygen absorption by the tissues is of interest in relation to the retardation of the ferment action in plants, for Jacquet has shown that the tissues oxidize mainly by a ferment action, and there would thus seem to be an entire correspondence between the changes produced in the metabolism of plants and animals by prussic acid.

Prussic acid is changed to sulphocyanides in the tissues, and is partly excreted in the urine in this form, while part of it undergoes further and unknown changes. This combination of prussic acid and sulphur bodies, such as the proteids, seems to arise by simple chemical processes, without the intervention of living protoplasm being necessary.

In the animal body prussic acid does not form any combination with the hæmoglobin of the red blood cells, but in the drawn blood, on the other hand, it seems to enter into a curious relation to it, as is shown by its reaction to peroxide of hydrogen. If normal blood be brought in contact with a solution of the peroxide, it effervesces owing to the liberation of oxygen, but the oxyhæmoglobin remains unchanged; if, however, prussic acid be present no effervescence occurs, but the hæmoglobin is at once changed to methæmoglobin. Blood to which prussic acid has been added retains its red color much longer than ordinary blood, which soon assumes a dark venous color from the hæmoglobin giving up its oxygen. Kobert explains both of these reactions by supposing that prussic acid destroys some oxidizing substance or ferment in the blood. Hoppe-Seyler believes that a loose chemical combination is formed by prussic acid and hæmoglobin, but

that this is very easily decomposed and has the same spectrum as oxyhæmoglobin. Preyer, on the other hand, described a definite compound with a distinctive spectrum and possessing quite different reactions to reducing and oxidizing bodies, but his work has not been confirmed, and it seems likely that he used some decomposition products instead of hæmoglobin.

Kobert discovered a curious combination of prussic acid and methæmoglobin, which is formed whenever these two come in contact, and is distinguished from ordinary methæmoglobin by possessing a bright red color. In cases of cyanide poisoning, the dependent parts of the body often present this color, owing to the methæmoglobin which they ordinarily contain after death being changed to cyan-methæmoglobin.

Preparations.

Acidum Hydrocyanicum Dilutum (U. S. P., B. P.), a two per cent. solution formed from potassium ferrocyanide or silver cyanide. It is a colorless fluid with a characteristic smell and taste, and ought not to be kept long, as it is liable to decomposition; much of that actually used in medicine is partially decomposed and therefore under two per cent. in strength. Dose, 0.1–0.5 c.c. (2–8 mins.).

Argenti Cyanidum (U. S. P.), is used in medicine only for the formation of the dilute hydrocyanic acid.

A number of other preparations contain prussic acid, generally in very variable quantity. Thus in the U. S. P. the preparations of bitter almonds, except the expressed oil, contain it, and the volatile oil is, in fact, dangerous owing to the large proportion of prussic acid sometimes present. Another series of preparations containing it, though only in minute quantities, is that of the bark of the wild cherry, Prunus Virginiana. In the British Pharmacopœia the bitter almond, Virginian cherry and the cherry-laurel water contain it, but only in harmless quantities. It is also present in the tincture of chloroform and morphine, B. P.

Therapeutic Uses.—The uses of prussic acid at the present day are very few. Externally it is applied to itching surfaces to cause numbing and insensibility of the sensory nerve terminations, but care must be taken that the surface is unbroken, or unpleasant and even dangerous symptoms may be induced. It is also used internally in vomiting, especially in that occurring in pregnancy, and seems to be beneficial occasionally. It was formerly used extensively as a sedative in cough, but was generally prescribed along with opium or other narcotics, and it seems unlikely that the hydrocyanic acid had any effect.

In **Poisoning** with prussic acid or the cyanides, the treatment is that of poisoning in general—thorough evacuation of the stomach, warmth and general measures against collapse. A number of so-called antidotes have been proposed, such as atropine, which there is no reason to suppose would be of benefit, for it has been found useless in animal experiments. The intravenous injection of sodium sulphide and hyposulphite has been advised on the theory that the comparatively harmless sulphocyanide would be formed, and animals seem to be able to survive an otherwise lethal dose when this is done. Peroxide of hydrogen has also been suggested, in order to form innocuous oxidation

products with the prussic acid. Artificial respiration should be resorted to when necessary, as the cyanide is comparatively quickly rendered inactive, and the recovery is rapid when it once sets in. But in many cases life is extinct before medical aid can be called.

Bibliography.

Kölliker. Virchow's Archiv, x., p. 272.
Preyer. Die Blausäure, Bonn, 1868.
Preyer. Virchow's Archiv, xl., p. 125. Pflüger's Archiv, ii., p. 146.
Hoppe-Seyler. Medicinisch-chemisch. Untersuch., 1866–1870, p. 133.
Gaethgens. Ibid., p. 324.
Zillessen. Ztsch. f. phys. Chem., xv., p. 398.
Boehm u. Knie. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., ii., p. 129.
Geppert. Zts. f. klin. Med., xv., pp. 208 and 307.
Kobert. Ueber Cyanmethæmoglobin und den Nachweis der Blausäure. Stuttgart, 1891.
Schär. Naegeli-Köllikersche Festschrift, Zurich, 1891.
Lang. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiv., p. 247.
Pascheles. Ibid., p. 281.
Bunge. Ibid., xii., p. 41. (Cyanogen.)
Heymanns et Masoin. Arch. de Pharmacodynamique, iii., p. 359.

VIII. CAFFEINE.

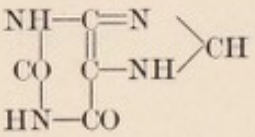
In a number of plants used in different parts of the world to form beverages and condiments, there are found the xanthine compounds, *Caffeine*, *Theobromine* and *Theophylline*, the first two of which have been employed in therapeutics of late years, and have, therefore, acquired a double importance as drugs and as articles of diet. The widespread use of preparations of these by uncivilized peoples is a curious and unexplained fact, especially as they possess neither peculiar taste nor odor to guide in the selection of the plants in which they exist. Besides, caffeine and its allies in moderate quantities induce no marked symptoms, such as follow the use of alcohol, opium or hashish and explain their use among widely separated peoples. On the contrary, the only effects to be observed are a brightening of the intellectual faculties and an increased capacity for mental and physical work. Coffee, the use of which is derived from the Arabians, is the berry of Coffea Arabica and contains caffeine; tea, the leaves of Thea Chinensis, contains caffeine along with theophylline.[1] Cacao, cocoa or chocolate is derived from the seeds of Theobroma cacao, a tree indigenous in Brazil and Central America, and contains theobromine. In central Africa, the Cola or Kola nut (Sterculia acuminata) is used by the natives, and contains caffeine with small quantities of theobromine. Kolanine, or colanine, which was at one time supposed to be a new body, seems to be a compound of tannic acid with these xanthine derivatives. In Brazil, Guarana paste is formed from the seeds of Paullinia sorbilis, and contains caffeine and theobromine, while in the Argentine Republic, Yerba Mate or Paraguay tea (Ilex Paraguayensis) is used to form a beverage which contains a very small quantity of caffeine.

[1] Tea was formerly supposed to contain theine, but this has proved to be identical with caffeine.

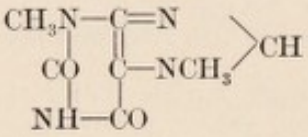
Another species of Ilex is met with in Virginia and Carolina under the name of Apalache tea or Youpon, and also contains caffeine.

These three principles, caffeine, theobromine and theophylline, are purine derivatives closely related to the xanthine bodies found in the urine and tissues of the animals. The members most closely approaching the vegetable forms are xanthine, paraxanthine and heteroxanthine; the last is a monomethylxanthine, while paraxanthine is a dimethylxanthine isomeric with theobromine and theophylline, and caffeine is trimethylxanthine. The structural formulæ may serve to indicate more clearly the close relationship of these bodies.

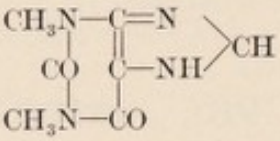
Xanthine.



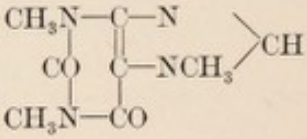
Theobromine.



Theophylline.



Caffeine.



Action.—These all resemble each other in most points of their pharmacological action, although caffeine acts on the central nervous system as well as on the kidneys, muscle and heart, while the others have comparatively little effect except on the last three. None of them are by any means powerful poisons, and fatal intoxication has not been observed in man from their use, although very large quantities of caffeine have repeatedly caused disagreeable and even alarming symptoms.

Central Nervous System.—In mammals the injection of large quantities of caffeine is followed by symptoms closely resembling those induced by strychnine. The reflex irritability is remarkably increased, the lightest touch being followed by powerful contraction of almost all the muscles of the body. After a time these contractions occur without any apparent stimulus, and culminate in tonic convulsions which last for several seconds. During these the respiration ceases from the respiratory muscles being involved in the spasm and occasionally it fails to be reinstated when the convulsions pass off. In other instances the spasms become weaker and occur at longer intervals; the respiration diminishes in frequency and depth and eventually ceases.

In man, smaller quantities of caffeine stimulate the central nervous system, in particular that part associated with the psychical functions. The ideas become clearer, thought flows more easily and rapidly, and fatigue and drowsiness disappear. Not infrequently, however, connected thought is rendered more difficult, for impressions follow each other so rapidly that the attention is distracted, and it requires more and more effort to limit it to a single object. If the quantity ingested is small, however, the results are of distinct benefit in intellectual work.

The capacity for physical exertion is also augmented, as has been demonstrated repeatedly by soldiers on the march, and more recently by more exact experiments with the ergograph. The stimulation of the higher nervous centres is often evidenced by the insomnia and restlessness which in many people follow indulgence in coffee or tea late at night. Kraepelin has investigated the effects of caffeine from the psychological point of view, and finds that both tea and coffee facilitate the reception of sensory impressions and also the association of ideas, especially in fatigue, while the transformation of intellectual conceptions into actual movements is retarded. This he regards as due to stimulation of the highest or controlling functions of the brain, caffeine acting on the same parts as are first affected by alcohol and the methane derivatives, but altering them in the opposite direction. The effects of caffeine on the acuteness of the senses has been demonstrated by the greater accuracy of touch under its influence.

Large quantities of caffeine often cause headache and some confusion, and in rare cases of special susceptibility a mild form of delirium may be elicited, or noises in the ears and flashes of light may indicate derangement of the special senses. The pulse is quickened, and occasionally palpitation and uneasiness in the region of the heart are complained of. Convulsive movements of the muscles of the hand and tremor in different parts of the body have also been recorded in some cases. These effects are induced only with difficulty in habitual drinkers of tea or coffee, so that the continued administration of small quantities of caffeine evidently gives rise to tolerance.

The symptoms induced by caffeine in the lower mammals are due for the most part to its acting on the spinal cord in the same way as strychnine, though small doses may act on the brain, for they often elicit restlessness and timidity without any marked change in the reflex excitability. The centres in the medulla oblongata are also involved in the effects, as is indicated by a rise in the blood-pressure from stimulation of the vaso-motor centre, acceleration of the breathing, and occasionally some slowness of the pulse from action on the respiratory and pneumogastric centres.

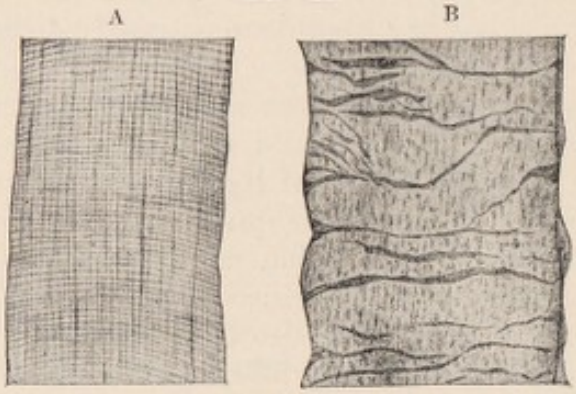
Frogs show no nervous symptoms that cannot be ascribed to action on the spinal cord, and in some species these are elicited with considerable difficulty owing to the muscular action described below.

On comparing the effects of caffeine and strychnine on the central nervous system it will be found that while there is a general similarity in their action, the latter causes more marked stimulation of the lower divisions and has less action on the cerebrum in mammals and man. While they both produce a general increase in the activity of nerve cells, caffeine acts more on the psychical, strychnine more on the vital and reflex functions.

Theobromine and the monomethylxanthines have much less effect on the central nervous system; in fact, it is doubtful whether any stimulation whatever occurs after their use, and xanthine seems to be followed by a rapid loss of reflex irritability in the frog.

The **Muscular** action of caffeine is best seen in the Rana temporaria (grass frog), although it is also induced in other species of frogs, and some rigidity may be elicited in mammals by very large doses. When a few drops of caffeine are injected into the leg of a frog there follows a peculiar stiffness and hardness in the muscles around the point of injection, which slowly spreads to other parts of the body and induces the appearance of rigor mortis. The same effect is observed when teased muscle fibres are subjected to a caffeine solution under a high-power microscope. The fibres contract, become white and opaque, and look stiff and inflexible; the transverse striæ disappear, while the longitudinal become more easily visible. (Fig. 21.) This appearance is due to the death and rigor mortis of the fibres. That it is a true rigor is shown by the fact that the ferment producing ordinary coagulation of the myosinogen is found increased after the action of caffeine. Fürth states that the myogen of muscle is formed into myogenfibrin and coagulated by the addition of caffeine to its solutions outside the body, so that the rigor induced by caffeine seems due to a comparatively simple reaction between the poison and the proteids of the muscle fibre.

FIG. 21.



A muscular fibre of the frog (highly magnified). A, normal; B, after the application of caffeine solution. The coarse striæ in B are the folds of the sarcolemma.

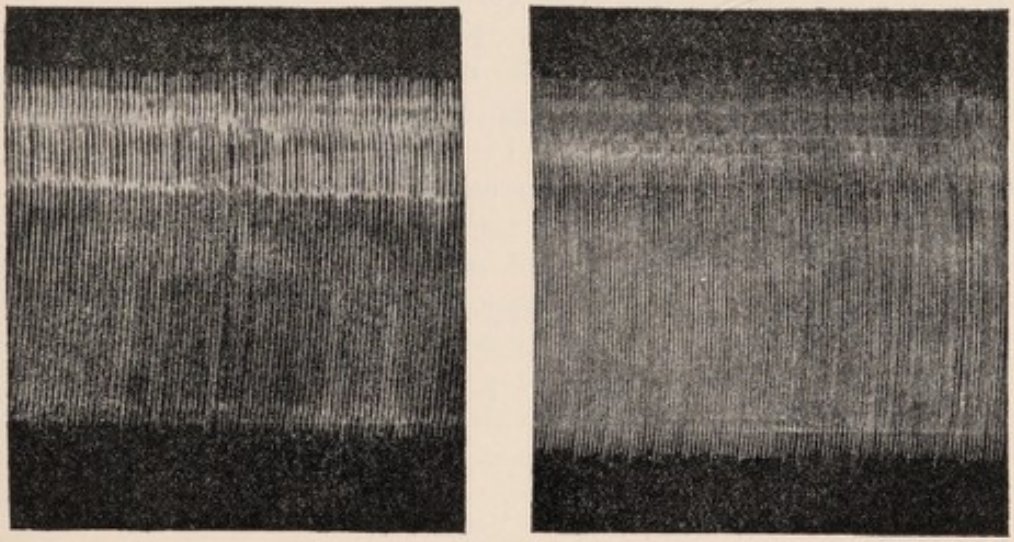
In small quantities caffeine increases the irritability of muscle as well as its absolute strength and extensibility, that is, the muscle contracts on a weaker stimulus and against a greater load than it does normally. The amount of work done before fatigue sets in is also increased, unless when large quantities are applied, when the capacity for work is lessened; and with the first appearance of rigor it ceases to react to stimuli altogether. It is frequently stated that caffeine possesses no action on the mammalian muscle, but this error is due to the fact that much larger quantities are required to induce rigor than to paralyze the respiration. If artificial respiration be maintained, stiffness and hardness of the muscles may be elicited, although complete rigor can be produced only by injecting caffeine solution into the arteries, as otherwise the heart ceases before the muscles are completely contracted. Sobieranski has recently shown that in ordinary doses caffeine increases the work done by the human muscles when they are stimulated by electric shocks. The universally recognized effect of tea and coffee in increasing the capability for physical work and in relieving fatigue has generally been regarded as due to changes in the nerve cells, but according to Kraepelin and others is really of peripheral origin and explained by the direct action on the muscle.

While the action of theobromine on the central nervous system is much less marked than that of caffeine, muscle enters into rigor after the former more readily and xanthine exceeds even theobromine in its power to produce this change.

The action of caffeine on the **Circulation** is exerted in two directions, on the vaso-motor centre in the medulla and on the heart itself. Along with the rest of the central nervous system, the vaso-motor area undergoes stimulation and the smaller arteries are therefore contracted, causing a marked rise in the arterial pressure.

In the frog's heart caffeine in very small quantities is found to increase the absolute strength, that is, the heart contracts against a greater aortic pressure than it would normally, and at the same time the amount of blood expelled by each beat is slightly increased. The rhythm is generally somewhat accelerated by small doses, but this effect is often of very short duration. On the absorption of larger quantities, the heart first becomes slower and its volume smaller, then the apex ceases to relax with the rest of the ventricle and remains white and contracted, and eventually the whole heart passes into a condition of rigor exactly resembling that seen in the skeletal muscles.

FIG. 22.



A B

Tracing of the ventricle of the dog's heart: A, normal; B, after caffeine. The lever moves upwards during systole, downwards during diastole. The only alteration caused by caffeine is acceleration. The slightly larger excursion in diastole in B is mechanical. (Contrast tracings under digitalis.)

When moderate quantities of caffeine are injected intravenously in mammals, the heart is accelerated, without any marked change in the extent of systole or diastole. The increased rate is independent of any action on the regulatory mechanism of the heart, for it is seen in hearts in which the accelerans has been cut and the inhibitory apparatus paralyzed by atropine. It is probably due to direct action on the heart muscle for, as has been stated, an analogous increase in irrita-

bility occurs in voluntary muscle. The increased irritability of the cardiac fibres also accounts for the fact that stimulation of the vagus is followed by less slowing of the heart after caffeine than before its administration. In man the heart rhythm is often found slower after caffeine, and this appears to be due to stimulation of the inhibitory centre in the medulla oblongata, the increased inhibition proving more than sufficient to counterbalance the acceleration which would arise from the direct action of the caffeine on the heart muscle. After large quantities of caffeine the heart becomes weak and irregular and after death it is found in diastole. The increased rate of the heart beat is not always accompanied by an increase in the amount of blood expelled in a unit of time (Bock), although this is often the case. Apparently the contractions of the ventricle follow each other so rapidly that the time is often insufficient for the inflow of the usual amount of blood. The increase in the blood-pressure under caffeine is therefore to be ascribed for the most part to the action on the vaso-motor centre, although not infrequently this is supplemented by an increased efficiency of the heart. Theobromine and xanthine possessing but little action in the vaso-motor centre, scarcely raise the blood-pressure although they have the same effect on the heart as caffeine.

The **Respiration** is quickened and strengthened by caffeine, owing to a stimulant action on the medullary centre. This effect on the respiration is seen in the improvement of the respiration in cases of dangerous poisoning with alcohol, opium and other drugs which prove fatal by failure of the respiration, but is much less marked in normal animals.

The **Temperature** has been found to be raised by caffeine through its action on the nervous centres and perhaps on the muscles. The increase is, however, comparatively insignificant (0.5–1° C.) and is seen only in cases in which an almost poisonous dose has been used.

Kidney.—The most important property of caffeine from a therapeutic point of view is its power of increasing the secretion of urine.

It is an everyday experience that strong coffee or tea increases the urine to a much greater extent than the same amount of water, and this has been shown to be due to the caffeine contained in these beverages. It was formerly supposed that caffeine increased the urine in the same way as digitalis, by its action on the circulation, but von Schroeder has shown that even when the changes in the circulation are prevented from occurring, the same increased flow of urine sets in. Caffeine acts directly on the renal epithelium, therefore, and causes an increase in the activity which manifests itself by a more rapid secretion of urine. Not infrequently, however, the administration of caffeine produces no diuresis whatever, in fact less urine may be secreted afterwards than before, because besides acting on the kidney, it also acts on the vaso-motor centre, and if the consequent contraction of the arterioles is great enough, much less blood passes through the kidneys, and the epithelial cells, receiving but little fluid, can excrete but little, however active they may be. The stimulation of the vaso-motor centre may thus entirely prevent any effects from the stimulation of the

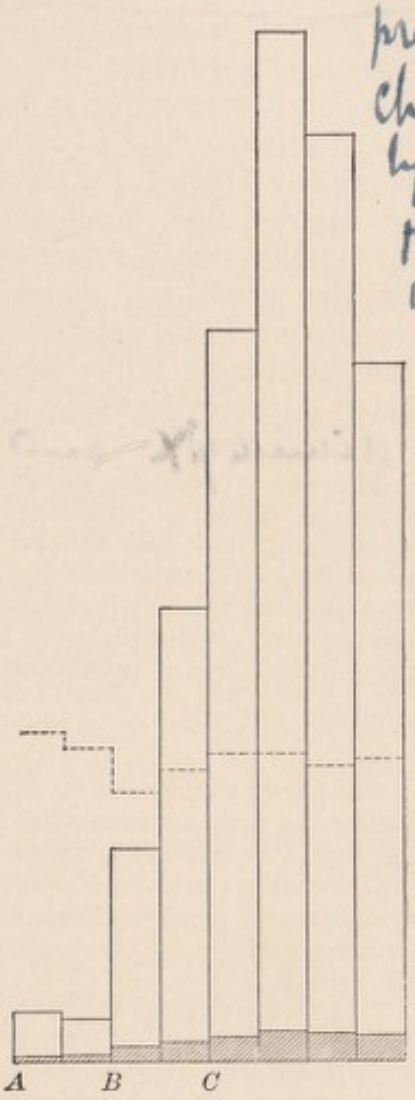
renal cells, and in order to produce a satisfactory diuresis measures must be taken to prevent the action on the central nervous system. This may be done by prescribing along with caffeine some drug which lessens the irritability of the medullary centres, *e. g.*, chloral, but a much more satisfactory method is to employ theobromine instead of caffeine. As has been mentioned already, theobromine has little or no effect on the centre, while its action on the renal epithelium is at least as great as that of caffeine; hence by its use the full effect is got on the renal cells without the constriction of the vessels.

When caffeine produces diuresis, it causes some dilatation of the renal vessels, but this is merely the accompaniment of the increased activity of the renal cells and is analogous to the dilatation of the vessels in a muscle which is undergoing contraction.

In the caffeine diuresis, the fluid part of the urine is increased chiefly, but the solids also undergo an augmentation, though not to the same extent. Among the solids the chief increase is seen in the sodium chloride, the nitrogenous constituents undergoing less alteration although they also rise in amount; a small amount of sugar is often found in the urine, more especially if the food has contained large quantities of sugar-forming substances, but this glycosuria is probably due merely to the large quantities of fluid sweeping some of the sugar of the blood along with it, and does not indicate any dangerous alteration in the renal epithelium or in the metabolism.[1]

The excretion of large quantities of fluid in the urine is, of course, accompanied by a diminution of the fluids of the blood, but the latter soon recuperates itself from the tissues. If there is any accumulation of liquid, such as œdema, it is drained into the blood to replace the

FIG. 23.



Caffeine diuresis in a rabbit. The amount of urine passed in ten minutes is represented by the height of the rectangles. The first of these, *A–B*, represent the normal secretion. At *B* a small dose, and at *C* a large dose of caffeine was injected intravenously, and the secretion is accordingly increased. The shaded part of the rectangles represents the amount of solids in the urine. It will be noted that these are increased but not to the same extent as the fluid. The dotted line represents the average height of the blood-pressure during each period of ten minutes. The animal had received a large dose of chloral to depress the vaso-motor centre and the heart, and caffeine had, therefore, little or no effect on the height of the blood-pressure.

[1] Richter's view that caffeine induces glycosuria through altering the glycogenic functions of the liver, scarcely appears admissible (Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxxv., p. 463).

fluid thrown out by the kidney, and caffeine may accordingly be used to remove œdema or dropsy in this way. If no such accumulation exists, the blood draws on the fluids of the intestine and stomach, and their withdrawal leads to the sensation of thirst. As a diuretic, caffeine is distinctly inferior to theobromine; in the first place because the diuresis is less certain and is often accompanied by nervous symptoms — sleeplessness and restlessness — and secondly because the increase in the secretion is smaller and lasts for a shorter time.

Excretion. — Caffeine is excreted in the urine to a very small extent as such. During its passage through the body it loses its methyl groups and first becomes dimethyl- and then monomethylxanthine. Eventually xanthine is formed and this probably breaks up into urea. In the urine are found small quantities of the unchanged drug, accompanied by larger quantities of dimethylxanthine, heteroxanthine and xanthine. After theobromine, some of the unchanged drug is found in the urine along with heteroxanthine and xanthine.

The exact order in which the methyl groups are lost in the tissues appears to differ in different animals; in the dog all three isomeric dimethylxanthines are formed from caffeine and after large doses appear in the urine, although theophylline predominates, while in the rabbit and in man paraxanthine is formed in larger amounts. The monomethylxanthines are also excreted in different proportions in different animals, heteroxanthine prevailing in man and the rabbit.

Preparations.

Caffeina (U. S. P., B. P.), long, white, silky crystals, without odor, but possessing a bitter taste, but little soluble in cold water, more so in alcohol, still more so in boiling water. 0.05–0.3 G. (1–5 grs.).

Caffeina Citrata (U. S. P.), Caffeinæ Citras (B. P.), a white powder, consisting of a weak chemical combination of citric acid and caffeine. It is decomposed by mixture with more than 3 parts of water. 0.1–0.5 G. (2–8 grs.).

Caffeina Citrata Effervescens (U. S. P.), Caffeinæ Citras Effervescens (B. P.), a mixture of citrated caffeine with sodium bicarbonate, tartaric acid and sugar. On throwing the powder in water it effervesces, owing to the acids acting on the bicarbonate and liberating carbonic acid. This preparation is an extremely weak one, containing only 1 per cent. of caffeine in the U. S. P. and about 2 per cent. in the B. P.

Caffeine is best prescribed either in powder or in tablets formed from either of the first two preparations. It may also be given in water with salicylate of soda, which aids its solution.

Theobromina (unofficial) is a crystalline powder even less soluble than caffeine, and is absorbed with difficulty when given alone. It is generally prescribed in doses of 0.5 G. (8 grs.) three times a day, but larger quantities may be given. Solutions of salicylate of soda dissolve it much more readily than pure water.

Diuretin consists of a mixture of equal parts of theobromine-sodium and salicylate of sodium and is much more soluble than theobromine. The dose is 1 G. three times a day, either in powder form or in solution. Neither theobromine nor diuretin is pharmacopœial.

Guarana (U. S. P.), a brown paste derived from the seeds of Paullinia sorbilis and containing caffeine and theobromine along with some tannic acid.

Extractum Guaranæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 3–8 c.c.

Numerous preparations of Kola nut are now put on the market, but the pure principles are preferable.

Therapeutic Uses. — The action of caffeine on the central nervous system has led to its employment in a number of different conditions. Thus, in nervous exhaustion it may be used to stimulate the brain, and in collapse its action on the vaso-motor and respiratory centres has been found of value — the blood-pressure rises, the whole tone of the circulation is improved and the respiration becomes quicker and less shallow. In narcotic poisoning with failing respiration, caffeine may be used to stimulate the centre in place of strychnine or atropine; in opium poisoning more particularly, strong coffee has long been used, but caffeine might be substituted with advantage. Its stimulant action on the brain, and more especially on the respiration, renders it an antidote in dangerous cases of alcoholic poisoning also. Some forms of migraine and headache are relieved by caffeine, but in others it seems rather to intensify the pain. Kola preparations are often advised as general tonics in weakness and neurasthenia.

Caffeine has been used largely for its action on the heart and is often said to be a substitute for digitalis, though as a matter of fact, it cannot replace the latter, the action of the two on the heart being entirely dissimilar. In cases of heart weakness without marked dilatation and incompetency of the valves, it may be of service as it increases the activity of the ventricle, but its reputation in cases of cardiac disease is due mainly to the removal of dropsy through its diuretic action. The contraction of the arterioles following the use of caffeine may also be of service in feeble action of the heart.

In their action on the kidney the members of the caffeine series stand preëminent, no other drug producing such a copious flow of urine as either caffeine or theobromine. As has been explained already, the latter is to be preferred to caffeine as a diuretic, and may be used in all cases in which there is a pathological accumulation of fluid in the body, whether of cardiac, hepatic or renal origin. The results are most brilliant, however, in cases of cardiac dropsy, and here it may be prescribed along with one of the digitalis series. It must be emphasized, however, that in these cases it cannot supplant digitalis, but merely aids in the removal of the fluid which is obstructing the circulation by its pressure, while digitalis relieves the dilatation of the heart. In cases of hepatic dropsy, caffeine and theobromine have also proved of service, although here the treatment can only be considered palliative. In renal dropsy theobromine has been used with somewhat variable results; it does not seem to increase the albumin in the urine, but not infrequently little or no diuresis follows its administration. This is only to be expected where the renal cells are in such a condition as to be incapable of stimulation. Where the disease is less developed the members of this series produce the usual increase in the secretion.

Inflammatory effusions do not seem to be lessened to any marked extent by either caffeine or theobromine.

Theobromine in very large doses has been found to produce nausea and loss of appetite when taken for long, but in ordinary quantities it produces no symptoms save diuresis.

A number of other derivatives of xanthine and caffeine have been isolated but none of them have been used in therapeutics, and some doubt exists as to their relative activity in the body. None of the xanthine bodies appear to possess the action of caffeine on the central nervous system, though another purine derivative, desoxycaffeine excels it as a stimulant. Xanthine itself and all its monomethyl and dimethyl derivatives hitherto examined induce muscle rigor. According to Ach, the latest writer on the subject, the dimethyl-xanthines are more powerful diuretics than caffeine, and theophylline and paraxanthine surpass even theobromine in their action on the kidney. The monomethylxanthines and xanthine itself are only slightly diuretic. Guanine, a substance nearly allied to the xanthine series in its chemical form, seems to have practically no action on frogs.

A number of compounds of caffeine have been proposed as substitutes for it, the object being to provide a drug possessing its diuretic action but without its effects on the central nervous system. Of these, sodium-caffeine sulphonate (symphorol), is the best known, but it possesses no advantages over theobromine and may therefore be regarded as superfluous. It acts less on the central nervous system than caffeine and is thus an example of the general law that the action of drugs is lessened by the addition of the sulphon group.

Coffee and Tea.

Coffee is not used in medicine, but in view of its immense dietetic importance it may be mentioned here in what respects it differs from the pure caffeine. The coffee bean contains about $\frac{2}{3}$ per cent. caffeine, and the roasting does not seem to reduce the percentage at all, as was formerly supposed, and since almost all the caffeine is extracted by the ordinary culinary preparation, a cup of coffee contains from 0.1–0.2 G. ($1\frac{1}{2}$–3 grs.) of caffeine. Along with the caffeine there are extracted a number of other substances, the most important of which are volatile substances produced by the roasting, which have been called *Coffeon* and resemble in their action the volatile oils.

Tea contains a larger percentage of caffeine (about $1\frac{1}{2}$–2 per cent.), but as less tea is used than coffee, each cup may be considered to contain 0.1–0.2 G. ($1\frac{1}{2}$–3 grs.). In green tea there is a considerable quantity of a volatile oil which also passes into the infusion, but this is not present in black tea, owing to the greater heat used in its manufacture. Both black and green tea contain about 7 per cent. of tannic acid, but this is only extracted slowly. The bitter taste in tea that has been prepared too long is due to the tannic acid passing into solution.

The wakefulness and the relief from fatigue which are produced by tea and coffee are undoubtedly due to the caffeine contained in them, and are to be ascribed to the central action chiefly, although its action on the muscles may also be of some value here. On the other hand, the feeling of well-being and comfort produced by coffee after a full meal is probably to be explained by the local action of the volatile oil in the stomach. The same result is produced by prepara-

tions of the other volatile oils, and, in fact, these are often added to coffee in the form of brandy and other liqueurs. Apart from this local action the volatile parts of tea and coffee (theon, coffeon) seem to have no effect whatever on the economy. In experiments on the activity of the digestive ferments outside the body, it is found that caffeine increases slightly the rapidity of the process, but that coffee and tea retard it considerably. On the other hand, coffee, probably owing to its volatile oils, increases the peristaltic movements of the intestine while caffeine has no effect on them. Tea that contains much tannic acid precipitates the peptones and albumins of the stomach, and may lead to chronic dyspepsia and constipation.

It was formerly stated that coffee lessened the tissue change and that it ought therefore to be included among foods, and one enthusiast even suggested that a diet of tea and coffee exclusively should be served out in the besieged fortresses of France in 1870. It has been shown conclusively, however, that far from lessening the metabolism of the body, coffee and tea increase it, the amount of urea and carbonic acid excreted being considerably augmented by their use. This is only to be expected from the increased activity of the nervous centres, which leads to increased movement and increased consumption.

Chocolate contains theobromine (0.5–1 per cent.), instead of caffeine, and besides this a large amount of fat (cacao-butter 30–50 per cent.), starch and albumins. The theobromine does not possess the stimulant action of caffeine on the nervous system, and chocolate may therefore be taken where coffee or tea produces wakefulness. The starch and fat are assimilated by the tissues so that chocolate is a true food. At the same time the cacao-butter is not easily absorbed from the stomach, and may give rise to heaviness and discomfort, and even to indigestion. Chocolate is, therefore, often used freed from the oil, but theobromine is also somewhat detrimental to the gastric mucous membrane after continued use.

Bibliography.

Johannsen. Ueber die Wirkungen des Koffeins, Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1869.
Aubert. Pflüger's Arch. f. Physiol., v., p. 589.
Schmiedeberg. Arch. f. exp. Path., ii., p. 62.
Archangelsky. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., vii., p. 405.
Bock. Arch. f. exp. Path., xliii., p. 317.
Filehne. Arch. f. Anat. und Phys., 1886, p. 72.
v. Schroeder. Arch. f. exp. Path., xxii., p. 39; xxiv., p. 85.
Albanese. Ibid., xxxv., p. 449; xliii., p. 305. Bericht. d. deutsch. Chem. Gesell., 1899, p. 2280.
Bondzynski u. Gottlieb. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvi., p. 45; xxxvii., p. 385.
Heerlein. Pflüger's Arch., lii., p. 165.
Philipps and Bradford. Journ. of Physiology, viii., p. 117.
Dreser. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxiv., p. 221.
Sobieranski. Gazeta lekarska, 1896. Centralbl. f. Physiol., 1896, p. 126.
Kraepelin. Ueber die Beeinflussung einfacher psychischer Vorgänge durch einige Arzneimittel (Jena, 1892) and Psychologische Arbeiten, i., p. 378; iii., p. 203.
Hellin u. Spiro. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxviii., p. 368.
Brunton and Cash. Journ. of Phys., ix., p. 112.

Lehmann u. Wilhelm. Arch. f. Hygiene, xxxii., p. 310.
Lehmann u. Tendlau. Ibid., p. 327.
Riegel. Congress f. inn. Med., 1884, p. 292.
Pawinsky. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxiii., p. 440; xxiv., p. 315.
Fischer. Ber. d. deutsch. chem. Gesell., xxx., p. 549.
v. Firth. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvii., p. 389.
Krüger. Bericht. d. deutsch. chem. Gesell., 1899, pp. 2818, 2677, 3336. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlv., p. 259. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xxi., p. 169.
Ach. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xliv., p. 319.
Katsuyama. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xxxii., p. 235.
Cushny and Van Naten. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodynamie, ix., p. 169.
Anten. Ibid., viii., p. 455.
Santesson. Skandin. Arch. f. Physiol., xii., p. 259.

IX. CURARA.

Curara, woorara, urari or woorali, is an arrow poison used by the natives of South America, who prepare it by extracting various barks and plants. The plants used seem to vary somewhat in different localities, but those which produce the symptoms known as curara action are undoubtedly members of the genus Strychnos, such as S. toxifera. Different preparations of curara were found by Boehm to contain different alkaloids. That formerly obtainable owed its activity to *Curarine*, but the curara now exported contains *Tubocurarine*, which resembles curarine in its action, and *Curine*, a weaker poison, which has an entirely different effect. Another preparation examined by him contained three alkaloids, *Protocurine*, *Protocuridine* and *Protocurarine*, the last of which is the most powerful of all the curara alkaloids. Most of the experiments on which the statements regarding curara action are based, were performed by the crude drug, but the alkaloids seem to have a very similar effect, with the exception of curine.

Action. — The chief effect of curara is paralysis of the **Terminations of the Nerves Supplying Striated Muscle,** and it therefore causes general paralysis of all the voluntary movements. In the mammal the muscles give way one after the other until the animal lies helpless on the ground. It can still move its limbs, but cannot recover its ordinary position, and soon the limbs become totally paralyzed and the respiratory movements alone persist, although they too are slow, weak and jerky. Eventually the respiration ceases also and asphyxia follows, but is not betrayed by the usual convulsions, owing to the paralysis of the motor nerve ends. The blood, however, becomes venous, and the heart soon fails from the asphyxia and not through the direct action of the poison.

In the frog similar symptoms are seen, but here the arrest of the respiration is not necessarily fatal, as the skin carries on the exchange of gases, and recovery not infrequently occurs after two or even five days of complete paralysis. The cause of the curara paralysis was demonstrated by the classical researches of Claude Bernard and Kölliker. If the sciatic nerve of the frog be stimulated during the paralysis no movement follows, but if the artery of one leg be ligatured before the application of the poison this limb remains unparalyzed and reacts to reflex irritation, while the rest of the body is perfectly motionless.

These facts can only be interpreted in one way; the paralysis is peripheral and not central, and may, therefore, be due to action either on the muscle, the nerve trunks, or the intermediate structures. That it is not due to the muscle is shown by the fact that direct stimulation causes the same movement as usual. On the other hand, in the experiment in which the artery is ligatured, stimulation of the nerves above the ligature, that is, where the poison has access to the nerve fibres, causes contraction, so that the nerve trunks do not seem affected. This may be shown in another way; if a nerve-muscle preparation be made and the nerve be laid in a solution of curara, contraction of the muscle still occurs on stimulation of the nerve, but if the muscle be laid in the curara solution stimulation of the nerve has no effect while direct stimulation still causes contraction. Curara must, therefore, act on the connection between the nerve and muscle within the muscle itself, that is, on the terminations of the nerve in the muscle. Curara paralyzes the nerve terminations without previous stimulation.

Here, perhaps, better than elsewhere it can be shown that the condition of "paralysis" produced by poisons is analogous to that termed by physiologists "fatigue." It is known that on stimulating a nerve rapidly by electric shocks, or otherwise, the muscle at first contracts with every stimulation, but eventually ceases to respond, owing to "fatigue" of the nerve ends, that is, to their inability to transmit impulses from the nerve to the muscle. If now the response to nerve stimulation of a muscle to which a minute quantity of curarine has been applied, be compared with that of a normal one, it is found that the poisoned one ceases to respond much sooner than the other—*i. e.*, its nerve ends become fatigued much sooner. The more curara is applied, the sooner does it fatigue, until at last no response at all can be elicited from it. The "paralysis" of the nerve terminations by curara then is of the same nature as physiological "fatigue," and other conditions of "paralysis" are also analogous to those produced by over-stimulation, though the exact condition of the paralyzed organ may not be the same as the fatigued one. Thus there is some reason to suppose that in the curarized terminations the energy consumed in transmission is present, but in such a form that it cannot be changed to actual movement, while in fatigue the energy has all been exhausted by the impulses which have already passed through.

Curara paralyzes very readily the terminations of nerves in all striped muscular tissue except the heart. The nerves first affected are those of the short muscles of the toes, ear and eye, later those supplying the limbs, head and neck, and, last of all, those supplying the muscles of respiration. At first, slight movements can be performed, because single impulses can pass through the nerve ends, but sustained contractions such as are necessary to preserve the equilibrium, cannot be maintained, and the animal therefore falls. The intermittent impulses to the respiratory muscles still allow time in the interval for the recovery of the terminations, but as the intoxication proceeds, the number of impulses which can pass through becomes fewer and fewer, and the movement therefore assumes more and more the character of a jerk. Eventually total paralysis sets in and, unless artificial respiration is carried on, asphyxia follows. Small doses of curara do not affect the

innervation of unstriped muscle, and the strict demarcation of its action is seen very distinctly in organs which consist partly of striated and partly of unstriated fibres. Thus in the œsophagus, the striated muscle fibres no longer contract on stimulation of the vagus after curara, while the unstriated continue to respond as usual. In the iris of the mammals, which consists of unstriated muscle, curara has no effect, while the striated muscle of the bird's iris ceases to respond to stimulation of the motor oculi, but contracts on direct stimulation. The terminations of the nerves in the heart are not affected, as the cardiac fibre is not of the same character as the ordinary striated one, but the nerves of the lymph hearts of the frog are paralyzed, these organs consisting of ordinary striated muscle. Curiously enough, it has been found that curara does not act on the terminations of the motor nerves supplying the electrical organ of the torpedo, although this organ is analogous to striated muscle in many respects. The nerve ends in striated muscle in invertebrates also appears to be immune to curara (Straub).

The nerve fibres seem unaffected by curara, for stimulation causes the usual electrical changes in them after it. The action of curara on the muscle fibres has been a good deal disputed, many authorities denying that any alteration whatsoever occurs, while others assert that slight modifications may be observed. The irritability to direct stimulation seems rather less, but this is due to the paralysis of the nerve ends. The contraction is often said to be somewhat prolonged and weakened, and the absolute strength to be diminished, but these changes are in any case very slight and unimportant.

When larger quantities of curara or curarine are injected, several other organs are affected. Thus the **Peripheral Ganglia** cease to transmit impulses, and hence stimulation of the nerves central to them has little or no effect. In this way the stimulation of the vagus in the neck produces no slowing of the heart, because the impulses can no longer pass through the ganglionic structures on the course of the fibres, and stimulation of several secretory nerves, such as the chorda tympani, has no effect on the secretion. In the same way, stimulation of the cervical sympathetic no longer dilates the pupil, and the splanchnic nerve loses its control over the mesenteric vessels and the movements of the intestine. The sympathetic ganglia are also paralyzed by nicotine, which differs from curara in stimulating them previously, and also in attacking the ganglia before it affects the endings in muscle.

Large quantities of curara are often said to paralyze the nerve terminations in unstriated muscle, but this has never been satisfactorily proved, all the symptoms quoted to show this effect being explained by the paralysis of the sympathetic ganglia, which undoubtedly occurs.

Curara, then, first paralyzes the terminations of efferent or centrifugal nerves in voluntary muscle, and in larger quantities the ganglia (cf. Nicotine). The peripheral terminations of the afferent or sensory nerves seem unaffected, for if the artery of one leg be ligatured before the application of curara, reflex movements may be obtained in it from

stimulation of any part of the body, while if the sensory terminations were paralyzed reflexes could be elicited only by the irritation of parts to which the poison had not penetrated, *i. e.*, from the ligatured leg.

Very large quantities of curarine are said by Tillie to cause a stimulation of the **Central Nervous System** resembling that described under strychnine. In ordinary poisoning, however, no evidence of this stimulation is shown, as although an increased number of impulses may be sent out, they cannot reach the peripheral organs owing to the paralysis of the motor end-plates and of the ganglia. If, however, curarine reach the central nervous system without affecting the muscles, spasmodic contractions and increased reflexes occur exactly as in strychnine poisoning. This is seen when curarine is perfused through the vessels of the cord or when it is applied to it without the aid of the circulation, but the quantity required to stimulate the cord is much larger than that which suffices to paralyze the terminations of the motor nerves.

The **Heart** does not seem to be acted on directly by ordinary quantities of curarine, and the circulation is left intact long after the respiratory nerves have been paralyzed. Large quantities prevent the inhibitory action of the vagus, and the pulse is consequently quickened, but the blood-pressure often begins to fall at the same time, owing to the dilatation of the peripheral arteries through paralysis of the ganglia on the course of the constrictor nerves. After curara and curarine the movements of the **Intestines** are said to be increased. This was formerly supposed to be due to the asphyxia, but seems to be independent of it, for the increased peristalsis occurs even when artificial respiration is kept up, and, according to Nasse, the irritability of the bowel muscle is much increased by curara. A similar acceleration of the rhythmic movements of the spleen has been noted after curara by Shäfer and Moore.

The **Secretions** sometimes seem to be increased by curara, for tears, saliva and perspiration may be formed in considerable excess of the normal, but no explanation has been offered and it may possibly be due to the asphyxia and not to any direct action.

The paralysis of the ends of the motor nerves leads to a very marked decrease in the products of **Tissue Change.** Thus, the carbonic acid excreted and the oxygen absorbed amount to only $\frac{1}{2}$–$\frac{2}{3}$ of the normal, because the impulses which pass to the muscles and maintain their metabolism in the normal animal, are prevented from reaching them through the paralyzed terminations. This change, it must be noted, is not due to any direct action in the muscular fibres but merely to the impulses from the central nervous system being cut off.

Another alteration of the tissue change often produced by curara is evidenced by the appearance of sugar and lactic acid in the urine. This glycosuria is not, however, a direct effect of the drug, but is due to the asphyxia. From the same cause the glycogen of the liver and muscles disappears entirely soon after the administration of curara.

Curara is **excreted** by the kidneys, apparently unchanged. It has long been known that this arrow poison may be swallowed with impu-

nity provided there is no wounded surface in the mouth or throat and that it is therefore perfectly safe to suck the poison from a wound. This has been explained in various ways, some holding that the absorption from the stomach is so slow that the kidneys are able to excrete the poison as fast as it reaches the blood and that this prevents its accumulation in sufficient quantity to affect the tissues. Others suppose that the liver retains and destroys it and a third view is that it is rendered innocuous in passing through the stomach walls. The results of different investigators differ so widely in regard to these explanations that it is impossible to state definitely which is correct, and it is not unlikely that more than one factor is engaged.

Rothberger has recently shown that curara and physostigmine are mutually antagonistic so far as the action on the nerve terminations in striated muscle is concerned (see Physostigmine).

Curine, the second alkaloid found by Boehm in some specimens of curara, is a much less poisonous body than curarine. It possesses some action on the heart, the same appearances following its injection in the frog as after digitalin and veratrine, while in mammals the rhythm is slow even after paralysis of the inhibitory mechanism.

Preparations.

Curara, an extract of varying constitution and strength. The active constituents are freely soluble in acidulated water, and when used ought to be injected hypodermically. Before using curara in therapeutics it is always necessary to estimate the strength of the preparation by experiments on animals, and its application ought to be graduated, commencing with the smallest quantities and increasing them until the desired effect is attained. Neither curara nor its alkaloids are recognized by any of the official pharmacopœias.

Therapeutic Uses.—Curara has been used occasionally in various conditions of exaggerated movement, such as tetanus, strychnine poisoning and hydrophobia. The object is to lessen the movement by partial paralysis of the motor terminations. The respiratory nerves being the last to be affected by the poison, the convulsions may be controlled, or at any rate hindered from causing such marked irregularity of the respiration as they would otherwise do, and in the same way the overstrain of the heart caused by the convulsions may be prevented. The danger accompanying the use of curara is great, however, and the fact that in all these cases the cause of the movement is excessive activity of the central nervous system would seem to indicate one of the many depressants of that system, rather than a drug such as curara, whose action is on an entirely different part of the body. Some cases of tetanus and one of hydrophobia are alleged to have been successfully treated by it, but its use must still be regarded as purely experimental, and, in fact, as generally opposed to the teachings of rational therapeutics.

Paralysis of the terminations of the motor nerves in striated muscle—the so-called "**Curara-Action**"—is elicited by a large number of poisons, but in few of them is it the first effect of their application. Many drugs induce it only when injected in large quantities and at the end of a series of phenomena produced by their action on other parts of the body; it is observed much more frequently in frogs than in mammals, and is often of little importance compared to the other symptoms. Among the bodies which resemble curara more closely in their action, the peripheral paralysis playing the chief rôle in their effects, are the compounds formed from the natural alkaloids by the

substitution of an alkyl, *e. g.*, methylstrychnine, amylquinine, etc.[1] Some of the ammonium salts and many of the alkyl ammonium combinations also cause it, so that the general statement may be made that quaternary compounds of nitrogen possess a curara action ; in these the nitrogen atom may be replaced by phosphorus or arsenic without loss of the curara action, so that nitrogen is not a necessary constituent of substances possessing this property. The simpler bodies, pyridine and quinoline which form the basis of most of the natural alkaloids, have little action save on the nerve ends, a fact which is of some importance in the consideration of the relation between the chemical constitution and the pharmacological action of poisons. At the same time the property of causing this paralysis is so widespread among substances of very different constitution that it may be looked upon as indicating a peculiar susceptibility and weakness of the motor terminations, more especially in the lower vertebrates, and inferences based upon it as to the mutual relation of substances are to be received with caution (Santesson).

Bibliography.

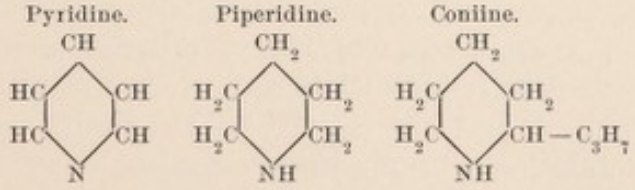
Cl. Bernard. Comptes rendus, xxxi., p. 533 ; xliii., p. 825.
Kölliker. Virchow's Archiv, x., p. 3.
Kühne. Arch. f. Anat. und Phys., 1860, p. 477.
Nasse. Beiträge zur Phys. der Darmbewegung, Leipzig, 1866.
Boehm. Beiträge zur Physiologie C. Ludwig zu seinem sechzigsten Geburtstage gewidmet, Leipzig, 1887, p. 173. Arch. der Pharmacie, ccxxxv., p. 660.
Overend. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvi., p. 1.
Tillie. Ibid., xxvii., p. 1.
Boehm. Ibid., xxxv., p. 16.
Santesson. Ibid., xxxv., p. 23. Skand. Arch. f. Physiol., x. and xi.
Sauer. Pflüger's Arch., xlix., p. 423.
Zuntz. Ibid., xii., p. 522
Nikolski u. Dogiel. Ibid., xlvii., p. 68.
Jakabhazy. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlii., p. 10.
Morishima. Ibid., p. 28.
Straub. Pflüger's Arch., lxxix., p. 379.

X. CONIINE, GELSEMININE AND SPARTEINE.

Several alkaloids which show many points of resemblance to curara in their pharmacological effects. may be classed together, although their action may differ in details.

Coniine.

Coniine is one of the simpler derivatives of *Piperidine*, which is obtained from *Pyridine* by reduction. A series of alkaloids may be formed from piperidine by substituting methyl, ethyl, propyl or other alkyls for hydrogen, and one of these, *α*-propyl-piperidine, is the natural alkaloid coniine.



[1] Boehm has recently stated that tubocurarine, which is the active constituent of much of the modern curara, is really one of those methyl bases (methylcurine).

Coniine is found in Hemlock (Conium maculatum), along with two nearly allied alkaloids, *Methylconiine* and *Conhydrine*. The latter differs from coniine only in having a hydroxyl group in the side chain. Methylconiine is found in many specimens of coniine, and is probably formed in the plant, although this has not been definitely proved; in it the hydrogen attached to the nitrogen of coniine is replaced by methyl. Coniine is of some historical importance, as the first vegetable alkaloid which was successfully formed by synthesis in the laboratory. It is a volatile fluid, characterized by a strong mouse-like odor, but forms crystalline, non-volatile salts. The two other alkaloids of hemlock act in the same way as coniine, although much more weakly, so that the effects of the crude preparations of the plant are identical with those of coniine.

Piperidine and its compounds with methyl and ethyl act in the same way as coniine but more weakly. An ascending scale of toxicity may be formed, commencing with piperidine and passing upwards through methyl- and ethyl-piperidine to coniine. The other simple derivatives of piperidine seem to resemble coniine in their action as far as it has been investigated.

Symptoms. — The general symptoms induced in man by poisonous doses of coniine are weakness, languor and drowsiness which does not pass into actual sleep. The movements are weak and unsteady, the gait is staggering, and nausea and vomiting generally set in, along with profuse salivation. In most cases the intelligence remains clear to the end, as is related of the death of Socrates from hemlock poisoning, but in some instances imperfect vision and hearing have been noted. The pupils are somewhat dilated. Tremors and fibrillary contractions of the muscles are often seen in animals, and some observers state that actual convulsions occur. The breathing becomes weaker and slower and death occurs from its arrest.

Action. — Coniine is sometimes credited with possessing a narcotic depressant action on the **Central Nervous System**, but this is by no means a characteristic feature in poisoning, for in both man and animals consciousness is often retained until immediately before the cessation of the respiration. Other writers mention convulsions as a feature of coniine poisoning, and weak convulsive movements are often seen before death, obviously from the failure of the respiration. Quite distinct from these are the twitching and tremors of the earlier stages of the intoxication, which are often accompanied by a certain stiffness and rigidity of some of the muscles of the limbs. Some of these movements may be due to the partial paralysis of the motor nerve terminations preventing the animal from contracting its muscles in a normal tetanus and permitting only of short, jerky movements, which may readily be mistaken for convulsions. But at the same time, the tremor and the rigidity of the limbs seem to indicate some central stimulation, although this point requires further investigation. This preliminary stimulation may afterwards pass into depression of the lower parts of the central nervous system, although this

is denied by some investigators, who maintain that coniine has little or no central action, but manifests its activity only in the peripheral organs.

Coniine causes nausea and very often vomiting at an early stage of its action. This may be elicited by its hypodermic or intravenous injection, and is probably due to an alteration in the medullary centres rather than in the stomach. The nausea is accompanied by profuse salivation and sometimes by perspiration.

The chief effect of coniine in the frog is a paralysis of the **Terminations of the Motor Nerves** similar to that induced by curara. This paralysis is elicited only with difficulty in the mammal, but unquestionably occurs to a more or less marked extent. According to some researches on the subject, all the symptoms in mammals are due to the paralysis of the ends of the motor nerves, while others regard both the convulsions and the final failure of the respiration as of central origin. It seems likely that while in the frog the symptoms are all due to the action on the nerve terminations, some of the phenomena observed in mammals are due to central stimulation and to subsequent paralysis of the medullary centre of respiration. It is difficult to explain on any other theory how the symptoms of coniine poisoning are so different from those of curara.

Coniine acts on the **Peripheral Ganglia** in the same way as curara. According to some writers these are first stimulated and then paralyzed, and there seems to be no question as to the final paralysis, whether the preliminary stimulation is present or not. Coniine certainly does not act so strongly on the ganglia as nicotine, and the details of the action may, therefore, be left for discussion under that heading. (See page 274.) The inhibitory impulses no longer reach the heart after large doses of coniine, owing to paralysis of the ganglionic apparatus and stimulation of the vagus nerve has no effect on the pulse rate. Some drugs which act on the extreme terminations of the inhibitory fibres still slow and weaken the heart, however. Similarly, stimulation of the cervical sympathetic no longer dilates the pupil, because the superior cervical ganglion is paralyzed. The partial dilatation of the pupil in cases of poisoning may, perhaps, indicate a similar action on the ciliary ganglion.

Coniine seems to have but little direct effect on the **Heart** though large quantities slow the rhythm and somewhat prolong the systole in the frog (Moore and Row), and some slowing of the mammalian heart has been noted from the intravenous injection of large quantities. The inhibitory mechanism is often found to be stimulated and the pulse is accordingly somewhat slow and weak. The paralysis of the ganglia on the inhibitory nerve may lead to some acceleration in other cases, but the changes in the heart are not marked features in the intoxication.

Moore and Row have observed a very considerable though transient increase in the arterial tension after coniine, and regard it as of peripheral origin, for they found that the perfusion of coniine through

the blood vessels of the frog tends to constrict them, while the direct application to the exposed blood vessels has no such effect, but rather widens their calibre. They are accordingly inclined to regard the rise of blood-pressure as due to a stimulation of the ganglionic apparatus lying on the course of the vaso-constrictor nerves.

The **Respiration** is generally accelerated and deepened in the earlier stages of the coniine intoxication, but later becomes slow and labored, then weak and irregular, and finally ceases while the heart is still strong and the consciousness has just disappeared. The cause of the asphyxia is still undecided, many investigators holding that the centre is paralyzed before the terminations of the nerves in the diaphragm, while the majority of recent investigators look upon the paralysis of those terminations as the cause of death.

A curious change has been observed by Gürber in the **Blood Cells** of frogs poisoned with coniine. Numerous small vacuoles appear in the red corpuscles, and persist long after the frog shows no further symptoms of poisoning. The nucleus is also somewhat altered, but not so characteristically.

Coniine is rapidly **excreted** in the urine, so that its action passes off very soon even when quite large doses are taken. The treatment of coniine poisoning therefore consists in evacuation of the stomach and artificial respiration.

Piperidine acts in the same way as coniine, but more weakly, while methyl- and ethyl-piperidine stand between them in toxicity. Many of the piperidine alkaloids cause the formation of vacuoles in the red blood cells of the frog, and the simpler members of the series act more strongly in this direction than the more complex ones, while they are much less active as general poisons.

Pyridine resembles piperidine in most features but does not paralyze the ganglia nor increase the blood-pressure. It seems more poisonous in frogs, and induces distinct depression of the central nervous system, but like piperidine it is only feebly poisonous in mammals. Pyridine is excreted in the urine as methyl-pyridine, a combination between it and the alkyl occurring in the tissues. A similar synthesis occurs between methyl and telluric acid (see Tellurium).

Quinoline and isoquinoline cause in mammals a condition of collapse similar to that seen under the antipyretics and the benzol compounds.

Preparations.

Conium (U. S. P.), **Conii Fructus** (B. P.), the dried, full-grown, unripe fruit of Conium maculatum, or hemlock.

Extractum Conii (U. S. P.), 0.05–0.1 G. (1–2 grs.).

Extractum Conii Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.1–0.5 c.c. (2–8 mins.).

Tinctura Conii (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Conii Folia (B. P.), the fresh leaves and young branches of Conium maculatum, collected when the fruit begins to form.

Succus Conii (B. P.), juice of hemlock, in which one part of alcohol is added to three of the juice, 1–2 fl. drs.

Unguentum Conii (B. P.).

Therapeutic Uses. — Conium has passed into almost complete disuse. It has been prescribed in whooping-cough and chorea with doubtful results, and has been employed locally and given internally to relieve pain. Tetanus and strychnine poisoning have been treated with it without apparent results.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Guttmann. Berl. klin. Woch., 1866, p. 45.
Kölliker. Virchow's Arch., x., p. 235.
Prevost. Arch. de Physiol. (2), vii., p. 40.
Boehm. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xv., p. 432.
Burmeister. Inaug. Diss., Kiel, 1891.
Gürber. Arch. f. Anat. und Phys., 1890, p. 401.
Cushny. Journ. of Exp. Med., i., p. 202.
Moore and Row. Journ. of Phys., xxii., p. 273.
Stockman. Journ. of Phys., xv., p. 245.
Brunton and Tunnicliffe. Ibid., xvii., p. 272.
Heinz. Virchow's Arch., cxxii., p. 116.
His. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxii., p. 253.
Cohn. Zts. f. phys. Chem., xviii., p. 112; xx., p. 210.

Gelsemium.

Gelsemium sempervirens (Yellow Jasmine or Carolina Jasmine) contains two alkaloids, *Gelsemine* and *Gelseminine.*[1] Gelsemine forms crystalline salts, while gelseminine is entirely amorphous, and, as far as is known, does not form any crystalline combinations. Gelsemine is only slightly active, inducing the same symptoms in frogs as strychnine, but having no effects on mammals, even when injected into a vein in very large quantity. Gelseminine, on the other hand, is a powerful poison which resembles coniine in most of its effects. The action of the crude preparations of gelsemium is undoubtedly due to gelseminine and not to gelsemine, as far as mammals are concerned. Large quantities of the extract injected into frogs may, however, increase the reflex movements somewhat from the gelsemine they contain.

Action. — The symptoms of gelsemium poisoning resemble those of coniine so closely that the reader may be referred to the description given under the latter. Gelseminine differs from coniine chiefly in possessing a more depressant action on the central nervous system. In the frog the spinal cord is distinctly less active than usual before the ends of the motor nerves are paralyzed, and, in fact, the depression of the central nervous system seems to be the cause of the general paralysis in these animals, rather than the peripheral action, although this is always present. In mammals the symptoms resemble those of coniine more closely than in the frog, and there may be some question as to whether the effects are mainly central or peripheral in origin. There is a general consensus of opinion, however, amongst those who have worked on the subject, that gelseminine proves fatal by paralyzing the respiratory centre rather than the terminations of the nerves in the diaphragm and other muscles, while most writers now consider the asphyxia of coniine poisoning due to the peripheral action. The

[1] Gelsemine is frequently known as gelseminine, a use of the term which leads to some confusion and which is not based on the history of the drug.

symptoms are practically identical, however, and it will probably be found that both act on the same points in the innervation of the respiration. In the meantime the question must remain undecided for both poisons.

The pupil is very widely dilated by gelseminine when a solution is applied locally to the eye, much less so in general poisoning, in which the respiration generally fails before the pupil is fully dilated. The power of accommodation is also entirely lost when gelseminine or gelsemium tincture is applied to the eye. This mydriatic action has not been explained, but the most plausible suggestion would seem to be that gelseminine paralyzes the terminations of the oculomotor nerve in the eye in the same way as atropine. Gelseminine differs from atropine in its behavior to other nerves, however, for although it paralyzes the inhibitory cardiac fibres, it does so through acting on the ganglionic structures on their course and not on the extreme terminations. Its action on the ganglia, as far as it is known, resembles that of coniine, but it does not cause any increase in the arterial tension, such as is observed under this poison.

Preparations.

Gelsemium (U. S. P.), **Gelsemii Radix** (B. P.), the dried rhizome and roots of Gelsemium sempervirens or nitidum.

Extractum Gelsemii Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.3–0.6 c.c. (5–10 mins.).

Tinctura Gelsemii (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

"*Gelsemine*" is an unofficial mixture of the alkaloids in very varying proportions. In some preparations no gelseminine whatever was found.

Therapeutic Uses.—The tincture of gelsemium has been employed as a mydriatic in ophthalmology, but it presents no advantages over the more generally used preparations of atropine, and sometimes causes some pain and redness, which has prevented its general adoption for this purpose. In certain forms of neuralgia, especially of the facial branches of the trigeminus, gelsemium has proved of some value, when administered internally as the tincture.

Bibliography.

Ringer and Murrell. Lancet, 1876, i., p. 82.

Putzeys and Romiee. Memoire sur l'action physiologique de la Gelsemine. Bruxelle, 1878.

Cushny. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxi., p. 49.

Sparteine.

Another alkaloid which resembles coniine closely in its action is *Sparteine*, which is found in the common broom plant (Spartium or Cytisus scoparius), along with a neutral substance, *Scoparin*. Sparteine is a pyridine derivative possessing the formula $C_{15}H_{26}N_2$, and is a fluid, but forms crystalline salts, which are often prescribed instead of the crude preparations.

Action.—The general effects of sparteine are almost identical with those of coniine, but it seems very probable that the central nervous

system is little affected by it, the whole of the phenomena pointing to a paralysis of the peripheral terminations of the motor nerves and probably of the terminations around the cells of the sympathetic ganglia. Sparteine has more effect than coniine on the heart, which it depresses so that the rhythm is slow and the contractions weak. When injected into a vein, sparteine induces less increase in the arterial tension than coniine, probably because the contraction of the vessels is counterbalanced by the weakness of the heart. No increase in the arterial tension is observed from the administration of sparteine internally, and even the slight rise of pressure induced by intravenous injection is of only short duration.

The slow pulse and slight rise of pressure observed in experiments in animals when sparteine is injected intravenously, have led some writers to ascribe to it an action similar to that of digitalis, and at one time sparteine was used to some extent as a substitute for the latter; both experimental and clinical observations, however, go to show that these claims are quite unfounded, and sparteine is comparatively little used at the present time, and possesses no properties which are likely to reinstate it in favor.

Sparteine is very much less poisonous than either coniine or gelseminine. It proves fatal to animals by paralyzing the terminations of the phrenic nerves in the diaphragm.

Broom tops have long enjoyed a certain reputation as a diuretic, and this perhaps strengthened the belief in the virtues of sparteine as a heart remedy. The diuresis is not due to the sparteine, however, but to the scoparin, which seems to act on the renal epithelium in the same way as Uva-ursi and other remedies of that series. The broom tops are generally administered in the form of a decoction or infusion, and the large amount of water taken along with them may also tend to increase the urine and to strengthen the reputation of the remedy.

Preparations.

Scoparius (U. S. P.), **Scoparii Cacumina** (B. P.), the tops of Cytisus scoparius or broom.

Extractum Scoparii Fluidum (U. S. P.), 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.).

Infusum Scoparii (B. P.), 1–2 fl. oz.

Succus Scoparii (B. P.), 1–2 fl. drs.

Sparteinæ Sulphas (U. S. P.) ($C_{15}H_{26}N_2H_2SO_4 + 4H_2O$), colorless, white crystals with a saline bitter taste, very soluble in water and alcohol. The dose recommended by different clinicians as of benefit in heart disease varies from 0.004–0.8 G. ($\frac{1}{15}$–12 grs.) in the course of 24 hours. It may be given in doses of 0.1 G. (2 grs.) with perfect safety.

Uses.—Broom tops are used as a feeble diuretic, generally in the form of a decoction (16 G. in 250 c.c. of water or ½ oz. in a half pint in divided doses in 24 hours), or infusion (B. P.). Sparteine has been advised in heart disease, but is of no value here. It has also been proposed to paralyze the terminations of the vagus with it before the administration of chloroform, the object being to avoid the reflex syncope, but if this were to be dreaded, a small dose of atropine would

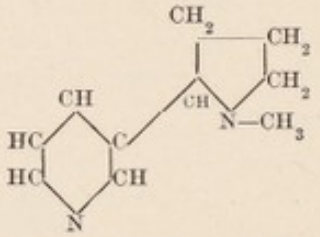
be preferable to sparteine. It has also been suggested as a local anæsthetic in ophthalmology, but has only a feeble action.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Fick. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., i., p. 397.
Masius. Bull. de l'Acad. Roy. de Med. de Belge, 1887.
Cushny and Matthews. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxv., p. 129.

XI. NICOTINE.

Nicotine, the well-known alkaloid of tobacco (Nicotiana tabacum), is a volatile fluid, possessing a strong alkaline reaction, and forming salts with acids, most of which are amorphous. The exact structure of the nicotine molecule ($C_{10}H_{14}N_2$) is still under discussion. It was formerly supposed to be a combination of pyridine with piperidine, but a number of its reactions seem to preclude this, and it has thus been recently stated to contain a pyridine and a hydrated pyrrhol ring. According to this theory its structural formula is probably



Another alkaloid which is practically identical with nicotine in its pharmacological action, is *Piturine* ($C_{12}H_{16}N_2$), which is derived from the pituri plant (Duboisia Hopwoodii). The leaves of the pituri are said to be used by the Australian natives in the same way as tobacco by the civilized races.

Nicotine is the only constituent of tobacco which possesses any toxicological interest, although several other alkaloids are present in comparatively small amounts. It is accompanied by a volatile oil in dried tobacco, but this is only developed during the processes of preparation and seems to have no action apart from that of the other volatile oils. The odor and flavor, and probably the "strength," of tobacco depends in part upon the quantity and quality of this oil, in part on some products of the decomposition of nicotine. Absolutely pure nicotine has comparatively little odor, but it decomposes when kept, becomes dark colored and acquires the characteristic odor of tobacco.

Tobacco is not used in therapeutics, but is of great hygienic importance, and nicotine possesses considerable biological interest from the results obtained by Langley by its use in physiology in recent years. It acts chiefly on the central nervous system, the sympathetic ganglia, and the terminations of the motor nerves.

Symptoms. — Poisonous doses administered to man or other mammals cause a hot, burning sensation in the mouth, which spreads down the œsophagus to the stomach, and is followed by salivation, nausea, vom-

iting and sometimes purging. The breathing is quick, deep and labored, and is often accompanied by moist râles. The pulse is generally slow and somewhat weak at first and then becomes very rapid, but after very large doses may be first accelerated and then slow and feeble. Some mental confusion, great muscular weakness, giddiness and restlessness are followed by loss of coördinating power and partial or complete unconsciousness. Clonic convulsions set in later, accompanied by fibrillary twitching of various muscles, and eventually a tetanic spasm closes the scene by arresting the respiration. In other instances the convulsions are followed by complete relaxation of all parts of the body, the reflexes disappear, the respiration becomes slow and weak and finally ceases, the heart continuing to beat for some time afterwards. Very large doses of nicotine may prove fatal within a few seconds; the symptoms are those of sudden paralysis of the central nervous system including the respiratory centre, and no convulsions are developed.

FIG. 24.

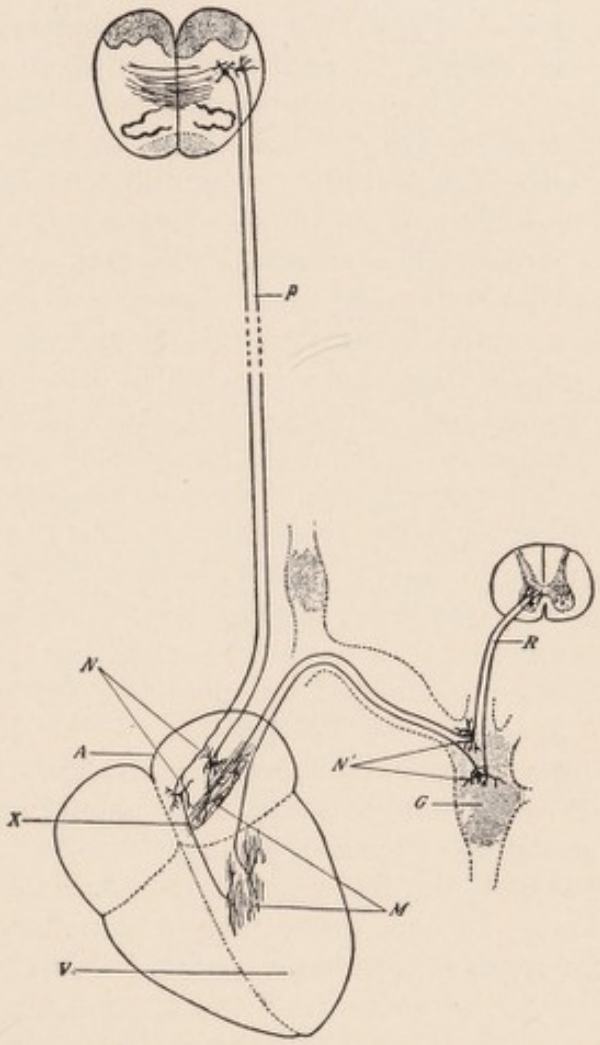


Diagram of the regulating nerves of the heart. *P*, inhibitory fibres arising in the vagus centre in the medulla oblongata and terminating around ganglion cells in the auricle (*A*). The axis cylinders issuing from these cells terminate on the muscular fibres of the auricle and ventricle (*V*). *R*, accelerator fibres issuing from the spinal cord and terminating around ganglion cells in the stellate ganglion *G*. The axis fibres of these ganglion cells run through the *Annulus Vieussenii* and terminate on the muscular fibres of the auricle and ventricle. *N*, *N'* points at which *nicotine*, *coniine*, *curarine*, etc., act—the ganglion cells surrounded by the terminations of the nerves. *M*, points at which *muscarine and atropine* act—the terminations of the fibres which arise from the intra-cardiac ganglia.

In the frog the same excitement and violent convulsions are seen as in mammals, but the respiration soon ceases, and there follows a "cataleptic" stage in which the animal assumes a characteristic attitude. The fore legs are crossed in front of the sternum, and are rigid, the thighs are at right angles to the axis of the body and the legs are flexed on them but are not rigid. When a leg is drawn down it at once returns to its original position, and the frog still attempts to escape when it is aroused. Fibrillary contractions are observed in many of the muscles. Somewhat later, the reflexes disappear, the

muscles become flaccid, and eventually complete paralysis occurs from a curara-like action on the terminations of the nerves.

Nicotine has but little toxic action on the lowest invertebrates, but as the nervous system begins to be differentiated it causes paralysis, and still higher in the scale the paralytic action is preceded by a stage of stimulation.

Circulation. — The action on the circulation is extremely complex, as a number of factors are involved. After moderate quantities the heart is slow and may stand still in diastole for a few seconds, but then recovers gradually and regains its former rhythm or becomes somewhat quicker. The slow pulse is due to stimulation of the ganglia on the vagus nerve (Fig. 24, *N*), exactly the same effects being produced as by stimulation of the vagus fibres in the neck. It is not affected by section of the cervical pneumogastric, as the path from the ganglia to the cardiac muscle fibres is still intact, but on the other hand, it is prevented by atropine, which acts on the extreme terminations of the inhibitory fibres, and therefore blocks the passages of impulses from the ganglia to the muscle. It is also prevented by a number of drugs, such as curara and coniine, which paralyze the ganglia.

This stimulation of the ganglia is of but short duration, soon passing into paralysis, which obstructs the passage of the inhibitory impulses from above. On stimulating the vagus after nicotine there is consequently no slowing of the heart but often some acceleration, due to the fact that the accelerating fibres running along with the inhibitory in the vagus nerve have no ganglionic apparatus in the heart, and are therefore unaffected by nicotine. Although inhibitory impulses can no longer reach the heart from above, the intracardiac inhibitory neuron is still intact, and stimulation of the venous sinus in the frog still causes arrest of the heart exactly as in the normal animal. The stimulating current here reaches the inhibitory nerves beyond the paralyzed ganglia (Fig. 24, *X*), and these preserve their usual irritability. In the same way a number of poisons which act upon the extreme terminations of the inhibitory fibres in the heart muscle (Fig. 24, *M*) can slow the rhythm even after the ganglia have been paralyzed by nicotine (see the Pilocarpine and Muscarine group). The results of the stimulation and subsequent paralysis of the ganglionic structures on the inhibitory fibres by nicotine are the preliminary slowing and subsequent slight acceleration of the heart rhythm seen in both cold- and warm-blooded animals In larger doses nicotine produces no slowing of the heart, owing to the ganglia being paralyzed immediately, without previous stimulation.

In addition to its action on the peripheral inhibitory ganglia, nicotine seems to stimulate the vagus centre in the medulla, as the slowing is greater when the vagi are intact than when they are divided. But apart from this action on the inhibitory apparatus, nicotine possesses some direct action on the heart muscle, which appears to be first stimulated and then depressed. Accordingly, when the inhibitory apparatus has been previously paralyzed, moderate quantities increase the

rate of the heart beat considerably, while very large ones slow and weaken it. It has been supposed that this quickening is due to action on the accelerator centre, or on the ganglia on the course of the sympathetic accelerator fibres (*N'*, Fig. 24), but this seems not to be the only cause, for Wertheimer found the acceleration continue even after extirpation of these ganglia. The quickening must be attributed in part, or wholly to action on the cardiac muscle, or on the terminations of the accelerator nerves in it. The subsequent slowing and weakness is undoubtedly due to a paralyzing action on the muscle itself.

On the injection of nicotine into a vein or subcutaneously an immense augmentation of the arterial tension occurs; this may be due in part to stimulation of the vaso-constrictor centre in the medulla, but is to be ascribed chiefly to peripheral influences, for it has been observed after section and even after total removal of the spinal cord. The vaso-constrictor nerves pass through ganglia on their way to the vessels and the rise of the blood-pressure seems to be mainly caused by a stimulation of these ganglia.

The constriction of the vessels can be observed in many parts of the body —mesentery, foot, rabbit's ear, etc. In these parts the pallor produced by the narrowing of the vessels is followed by redness and congestion owing to the paralysis of the ganglia, and at the same time the pressure falls to a level somewhat below the normal. In some parts of the body no constriction of the vessels occurs; for example, the dog's lip and mouth are congested first and then become pale. This flushing seems partly due to the stimulation of the ganglionic apparatus on the vaso-dilator fibres for these parts, but cannot be wholly explained thus, for it occurs also after removal of the superior cervical ganglion, although to a less marked degree. It may therefore be caused in part by direct action on the vessels.

After a few minutes the blood-pressure falls to the normal level or lower, but a second injection again produces a similar rise in the arterial tension, unless the first was large enough to paralyze the ganglia. Eventually nicotine lowers the blood-pressure owing to the weakening action on the heart.

Respiration. — The respiration is at first rapid and shallow with some deficiency in the expiratory movements, but after a time, while maintaining the acceleration, it becomes deeper. It is liable to be interrupted at this stage by the convulsions, but if these do not prove fatal, it gradually becomes slower while remaining deep. Later, pauses in the position of expiration appear, and the movements become weaker until they disappear, the animal dying of asphyxia. The rapid, shallow movements in the beginning of the intoxication are absent in animals in which the pneumogastric nerves have been previously divided, so that this phenomenon appears to be due to the alkaloid acting as an irritant to the pulmonary branches of the pneumogastric. The later features are caused by its acting on the respiratory centre directly, first stimulating and then paralyzing it. After large doses this direct action alone may be elicited. The paralysis of the respiration is the cause of death, the heart continuing to beat for some time afterwards although slowly and weakly.

Most of the **Secretions** are increased temporarily by nicotine. The glands investigated have generally been the salivary, where it is found that the secretion is increased by the injection of small quantities, but is afterwards depressed, while large doses diminish it at once. The seat of action is again the ganglionic apparatus on the secretory nerves. If the chorda tympani be stimulated in the normal animal a large secretion of saliva at one follows, but if a sufficient quantity of nicotine be injected no such effect follows its stimulation. If, however, the nerve fibres be stimulated between the ganglion cells and the gland (at *X* in Fig. 25), the secretion again follows as before. On the other hand, nicotine increases the secretion whether the chorda be intact or not, but ceases to act if the connection between the ganglion cells and the gland be interrupted. These results can only be interpreted by nicotine first stimulating and then paralyzing the ganglia on the course of the chorda tympani. In the same way it first stimulates and then paralyzes the ganglia which lie in the course of the sympathetic salivary fibres. Pilocarpine and muscarine cause profuse salivation after nicotine, because they stimulate the terminations of the nerves in the gland cells, and it is therefore immaterial whether the connection with the central nervous system be interrupted or not. On the other hand, the reflex secretion of saliva normally produced by irritation of the mouth or by chewing is prevented by nicotine. Atropine stops the secretion produced by nicotine by paralyzing the extreme terminations of the nerves.

Fig. 25.

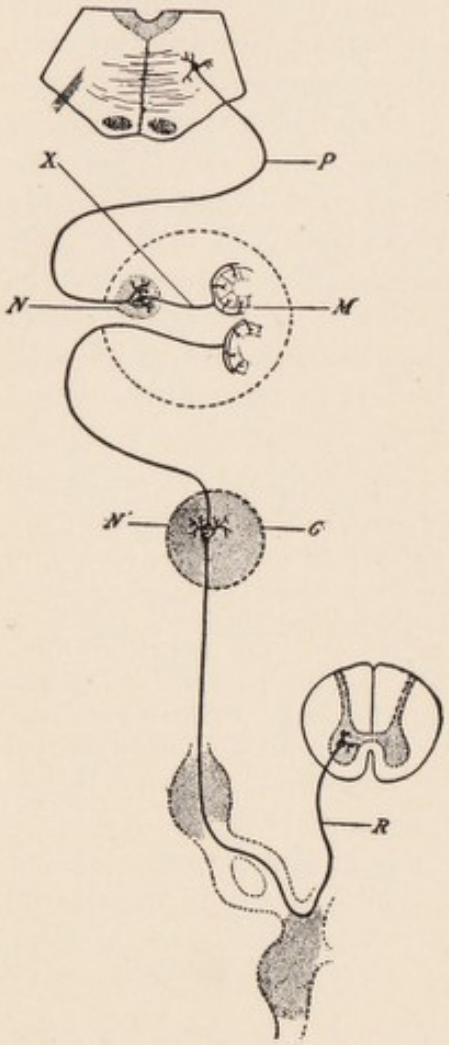


Diagram of the innervation of the submaxillary gland. *P*, a fibre of the chorda tympani issuing from the pons Varolii and after a devious course terminating around a ganglion cell in the hilus of the submaxillary gland. The axis from this ganglion cell runs to the secretory epithelium. *R*, a fibre issuing from the spinal cord and after running through the sympathetic chain in the neck, terminating around a ganglion cell in the superior cervical ganglion *G*. The axis from this cell runs to the secretory epithelium. In the diagram the nerves are represented as running to separate acini. *N*, *N'*, ganglion cells surrounded by the terminations of the nerves—the points at which *nicotine* acts. *M*, the terminations of the secretory fibres connected with the chorda tympani—the points at which *atropine*, *muscarine*, and *pilocarpine* act.

The other secretory glands are affected in the same way by nicotine, and although the details have not been worked out so carefully as for the salivary glands, there is no question that their secretions are first increased by the stimulation of the ganglia on the course of their secretory nerves, and then lessened by their paralysis. Thus the

sweat secretion is found to be markedly increased, as also the secretion of the bronchial mucous glands. The urine and bile have not been shown to be affected by nicotine, and as their secretion does not seem to be so dependent upon nervous influences, it is probable that it is but little changed in amount.

Nicotine produces extreme **Nausea** and **Vomiting** when taken even in comparatively small quantities, a fact which is generally recognized by tyros in smoking. This may be in part central in origin, but is mainly due to the powerful contractions of the stomach walls. This contraction extends throughout the intestinal tract, so that repeated **Evacuation of the Bowel** occurs. Eventually a tetanic contraction of the whole intestine sets in, the lumen being much narrowed, or even entirely obliterated.[1] During this tetanic stage there is no peristaltic movement, but afterwards the wave contractions set in again in much exaggerated form. The mesenteric vessels are narrowed during the tetanic period so that the bowel is pale and anæmic, but when peristalsis recommences they seem more congested than usual. Salvioli has shown that very similar effects are to be observed in the excised intestine when blood containing nicotine is perfused through its vessels, so that the increased movements are due to action on the structures of the wall of the bowel. Atropine prevents the peristalsis caused by nicotine, so that on the analogy of the action of these drugs on the secretory glands and on the heart it seems probable that nicotine stimulates the ganglionic apparatus in the wall of the intestine. The constriction of the vessels may be due to action on the ganglia of the cœliac plexus.

Similar movements are produced by nicotine in the bladder and uterus, both of which are thrown into tetanic contraction. The urine is therefore expelled very soon after the injection of nicotine, and this probably gave rise to the erroneous view that the renal secretion was increased.

The action of nicotine on the **Pupil** varies in different animals, for while in the cat and dog its application either intravenously or locally produces marked but transitory dilation, in the rabbit partial constriction sets in immediately. In cases of acute poisoning in man contraction is generally seen at first and is followed by dilatation. In birds nicotine causes very marked contraction of the pupil, apparently owing to direct action on the muscles of the iris. The size of the pupil is regulated by two sets of nerves, the motor oculi and the sympathetic, and the ciliary fibres of both of these are interrupted by ganglia in their passage from the brain to the iris, those of the motor oculi by the ciliary ganglion, those of the sympathetic by the superior cervical ganglion (see Fig. 26, p. 287); the varying effects of nicotine may be due to its stimulating the one ganglion more strongly in one species

[1] Bayliss and Starling (Jour. of Phys., xxiv., p. 138) observed inhibition of the intestinal movements induced in dogs whose vagi and splanchnic nerves had been divided previously and ascribe it to an intense stimulation of the peripheral splanchnic apparatus. At the same time the pneumogastric fibres cease to have any control over the intestinal movements.

of animals, the other in another. It is found, however, that atropine does not remove the effects of nicotine on the rabbit's eye, which would seem to indicate an action on the muscular fibres of the iris. Several other effects on the orbital muscles are seen; thus in cats and dogs the nictitating membrane is withdrawn, the eye opens and is directed forwards, while in the rabbit these symptoms are preceded by a stage in which the nictitating membrane is spread over the cornea and the eye is tightly closed. These are probably produced by action on the superior cervical ganglion.

Nicotine, then, first stimulates and later paralyzes all the **Sympathetic Ganglia**, whether applied locally to them or injected into the circulation. In these ganglia, the characteristic formation is the basket-like arrangement of the terminations of the entering nerve, which surround a large nerve cell from which an axis cylinder runs to the muscle or secretory cell. A nerve impulse from the central nervous system passes from the basket to the cell and thence to the periphery. Langley has recently shown that small quantities of nicotine stimulate the cell of the peripheral neuron, for the same effect is obtained from the application of the poison to the ganglion whether the basket-like terminations round the cell are normal or have degenerated. This renders it probable that the paralysis of the ganglia observed from larger quantities of nicotine is also due to action on the cell and not on the terminations.

In the frog nicotine produces fibrillary contraction of the muscles, which is not prevented by previous division of the nerves leading to them, but disappears on the injection of curara. The phenomenon is therefore independent of the central nervous system; and it is not produced by muscular changes, for in this case it would persist after curara; it must consequently be due to stimulation of the terminations of the motor nerves. These terminations are subsequently paralyzed if the quantity injected be large enough. In mammals the twitching of the muscles is prevented by section of the nerves, and is, therefore, due to central action, but large quantities of nicotine cause paralysis of the nerve ends exactly like curara. The nerves of the orbital muscles are found to be paralyzed sooner than those of the rest of the body.

Nicotine does not seem to act on **Muscular Tissue** in general, although some obscure symptoms have been ascribed to changes in the cardiac and iris muscle.

The convulsions seen in both cold- and warm-blooded animals evidence the influence of nicotine on the **Central Nervous System.** The spinal cord is thrown into a condition of exaggerated irritability, and the reflexes are correspondingly increased, but the convulsions do not seem to be due so much to the spinal cord as to the medulla oblongata and hind brain, for they are not tonic but clonic in character, and are much weaker after division of the cord immediately below the medulla than in the intact animal. The medullary stimulation also betrays itself in the rapid and deep respiration, and is perhaps in part responsible for the inhibitory slowing of the heart and the rise in the blood-

pressure. The higher centres in the brain seem to participate but little in the stimulant action of nicotine, which is short-lived, and soon gives way to marked depression of the whole central nervous system, manifested in the slow respiration, the low blood-pressure, the disappearance of the reflex movements and the final unconsciousness.

The **Excretion** of nicotine is probably carried on mainly by the kidneys, for it is found in the urine very soon after it enters the blood. It has also been detected in the saliva and perspiration. It has been shown repeatedly that nicotine and some other alkaloids are weakened in toxic effect or rendered entirely inactive by being mixed with an extract of the liver or of the suprarenal capsules; but no satisfactory explanation is forthcoming, though there is every reason to suppose that much of the nicotine absorbed from the stomach and intestine is thus modified in its passage through the liver.

When small quantities of nicotine are injected repeatedly, the body soon gains a certain **Tolerance**, and no symptoms whatever are produced by doses which would in ordinary cases produce grave poisoning. A familiar example of this tolerance is seen in the practice of smoking. The first use of tobacco is in the great majority of individuals followed by vomiting and depression which may even amount to collapse, but after a few experiences no symptoms follow smoking, owing to the cells of the body becoming tolerant of the poison. In some individuals no such tolerance is developed, however, and each attempt to acquire the art of smoking or chewing tobacco is followed by the same symptoms. In animal experiments it is often found that while one application of nicotine produces considerable ganglionic stimulation, the second has much less effect. This is probably due not to the establishment of tolerance, but to the first dose having produced primary stimulation and then depression of the ganglia, this depression, while not amounting to complete paralysis, being sufficient to counteract to some extent the stimulant action of the second injection.

An effect of an entirely different character has been found to follow the successive application of large doses. If a quantity just smaller than the lethal one be injected into an animal, and two or three days after its recovery a second injection of the same amount be made, death will follow, but some of the symptoms, such as the convulsions, may be entirely absent. The reason for the fatal effect is believed to be the lasting depression of the heart in the frog, and of the respiratory centre in mammals. The absence of the convulsive seizures is said by von Anrep to be due to a similar depression of the gray matter of the spinal cord and medulla. Large quantities of nicotine are, therefore, cumulative in their action, while smaller quantities lead to a condition of tolerance.

Nicotine and Piturine are not used in therapeutics. Tobacco was formerly employed in the reduction of intestinal hernia, and for this purpose was injected into the rectum in the form of an infusion. Several cases of poisoning and the introduction of general anæsthesia led to its disuse.

Tobacco.

Tobacco had been in use among the aboriginal tribes of America before they became known to civilization. It was introduced into Europe soon after the discovery of America, and its use as an article of luxury, beginning in England, soon spread to the continent, and in spite of papal bulls and numerous efforts on the part of the secular authorities, has continued to enthral a considerable portion of the human race. The most widespread use of tobacco — smoking — is also the most ancient one, having been that of the aboriginal Indians. Snuff-taking, introduced by Francis II. of France, remained fashionable for a long time, but is now almost obsolete. Tobacco-chewing is a more modern development, but shows no signs of abatement. Curiously enough, the leaves of the pituri plant, which, as has been mentioned, contain an alkaloid nearly allied to nicotine, are formed into a mass and chewed by the natives of Australia. In smoking, snuffing or chewing, nicotine is absorbed. It has been stated and the statement has received an undeservedly wide circulation, that tobacco smoke contains no nicotine but merely the products of its decomposition; but as a matter of fact, tobacco smoke, whether from cigars or pipes, contains a certain amount of the alkaloid itself, along with pyridine and many of its compounds. The amount of nicotine in tobacco smoke cannot be definitely stated, as it depends on the kind of tobacco, as well as on the way in which it is inhaled; but only a small proportion of that contained in tobacco passes over in the smoke. In snuff the nicotine is generally small in amount, while in chewing tobacco there is generally a varying amount of foreign matter, such as molasses. The enjoyment derived from the use of tobacco has never been explained, and it is not even proved that nicotine is essential to the pleasurable results; consideration of the pharmacological effects of nicotine gives no clue, for these are of the opposite nature. It has been suggested that smoking gives repose and thereby improves intellectual work, but this is denied by many habitual smokers. It has also been stated and denied that the mental energy is reduced by the use of tobacco, and an attempt has been made to demonstrate this by measuring the amount of work done with and without tobacco; but investigators are not agreed on the results, which probably depend largely upon the individual. One fact is certain, that the tobacco habit cannot be compared with the use of such drugs as morphine, cocaine, or alcohol, for it is not taken with the purpose of producing stimulation or depression of the central nervous system, and it seems doubtful whether the nicotine ordinarily absorbed really has any action whatsoever. Perhaps the local effects on the mouth, nose and throat play a larger part in the effects of tobacco than is generally recognized. A certain amount of rhythmic movement demanding no exertion seems in itself to have a soothing, pleasure-giving effect, for it is otherwise impossible to explain the satisfaction enjoyed by many in chewing tasteless objects, such as gum or straws. A curious fact which tends

to show that tobacco smoking is not carried on for the sake of the nicotine absorbed is that the pleasure derived from a pipe or cigar is abolished for many persons if the smoke is not seen, as when it is smoked in the dark.

Most people may indulge in the moderate use of tobacco for many years with perfect impunity, but its excessive use is followed in many individuals by a number of symptoms, some of them trivial, others indicating grave changes in important organs.

One of the commonest effects of overindulgence in tobacco is a chronic inflammation of the throat and upper parts of the respiratory passages, leading to hoarseness and excessive secretion of the mucous glands. This is explained by the constant application to the throat of an irritant, alkaline vapor, and is probably not due to the specific action of nicotine. A similar irritated condition of the tongue is frequently met with, more especially when the hot vapor is directed especially on one part, as in pipe smoking, and it is sometimes stated that the constant irritation thus produced renders the tongue and lip more liable to cancerous disease. Dyspepsia, want of appetite, and consequent loss of flesh may also be explained by the local irritation produced by the nicotine swallowed in the saliva. A common result of the abuse of tobacco is palpitation and irregularity of the heart, which has as yet received no explanation. Another important symptom is dimness of vision, especially for colors, and imperfect accommodation of the lens for distance, which may go on to complete blindness in one or both eyes. In early cases the retina often appears pale, and if the condition persists, atrophy of the optic nerve may result, probably following on degenerative changes in the ganglion cells of the macular region of the retina. The hearing is said to be affected by excessive smoking, but the symptoms are indistinct and variable. Nervous symptoms such as tremor, exaggeration of the reflexes, headache and giddiness are sometimes developed in workmen in tobacco factories, but they do not seem to be induced by smoking or chewing tobacco, though depression, muscular weakness and giddiness are sometimes complained of. In the great majority of cases of chronic tobacco poisoning, the symptoms disappear on abandoning the habit, or even on restricting the daily consumption. A series of subjective and even objective symptoms are said to be induced in neurotic subjects by the sudden withdrawal of tobacco.

The prolonged administration of nicotine to animals does not seem to produce symptoms analogous to those seen in man. Vas found in rabbits subjected to daily injections of nicotine for several weeks a great reduction of the red blood cells along with a smaller increase in the leucocytes. The animals lost in weight, and changes were found in the nerve cells of the spinal cord and sympathetic ganglia similar to those described under chronic alcoholic poisoning.

Bibliography.

Langley and Dickinson. (Journal of Physiology, xi., p. 265), give all the more important experimental literature up to 1890.

Langley, Langley and Sherrington, Langley and Anderson. Journal of Physiology, xii., xiii., xv., and xxvii., p. 224.
Wertheimer et Colas. Archiv de Physiol. (5), iii., 1891, p. 341.
Baldi. Arch. Ital. de Biol., xv., 1891, p. 314.
Dornbluth. Sammlung klinischer Vorträge, No. 122.
Vas. Arch. f. exp. Path., xxxiii., p. 141.
Greenwood. Journal of Physiol., xi., p. 573. (Action on invertebrates.)
Salvioli. Arch. f. Anat. und Phys., 1880, Suppl., p. 95.
Moore and Rowe. Journ. of Physiol., xxii., p. 273.
Winterberg. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xliii., p. 400.
Habermann. Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem., xxxiii., p. 55.
Beyer. Johns Hopkins Hospital Reports, ix., p. 111.
Birch-Hirschfeld. Arch. f. Ophthalmologie, liii., p. 79.

XII. LOBELINE.

Lobeline, the alkaloid of Lobelia inflata or Indian Tobacco, is believed to possess the formula $C_{16}H_{24}NO$, and resembles nicotine in some respects in its action, but comparatively little is known regarding it.

Lobelia generally causes violent vomiting in man, and this is commonly the only symptom, as the greater part of the poison is thus eliminated When the emesis is insufficient, however, pain in the abdomen and purging have been observed, followed by confusion and collapse with a small, weak pulse, convulsions, dyspnœa and finally asphyxia. The pupil seems to vary in different cases, sometimes being dilated, sometimes contracted. The mucous membrane of the stomach and bowel has been found in a state of acute inflammation in some cases of fatal poisoning.

When injected into mammals, lobeline causes rapid, dyspnœic breathing, increased reflex irritability, vomiting and salivation, and finally paralysis of the respiration. In the frog the spontaneous movements cease soon after the injection, and the reflexes are then more easily elicited than usual, but the terminations of the motor nerves are soon paralyzed in the same way as by curara.

The higher divisions of the central nervous system seem to be depressed in the frog, but not in the mammal, while the spinal cord and medulla oblongata appear stimulated in both, as is indicated by the increase in the reflex irritability and by the acceleration of the respiration. The vomiting is also ascribed to stimulation of the medullary centres. Lobeline paralyzes the terminations of the motor nerves in the frog, but not in the mammal. Its action on the ganglia is unknown, but it seems to affect the inhibitory apparatus of the heart in the same way as nicotine, so that the pulse is first slow and then returns to its former rate or may be accelerated. The blood-pressure is reduced at first, but soon rises above the normal height; when vomiting is induced, great variations in the rate of the heart and in the blood-pressure attend it. The local application of lobeline to the eye is followed by contraction of the pupil, while in general poisoning in mammals Dreser observed only dilatation. The respiration is much increased in rate and the individual movements are deeper and stronger. The terminations of the vagus in the bronchial muscles or in ganglia in the lungs were found by Dreser to be paralyzed by lobeline, so that stimulation of that nerve no longer narrows the calibre of the air passages.

Preparations.

Lobelia (U. S. P., B. P.), the leaves and tops of Lobelia inflata, U. S. P., the dried herb, B. P.

Extractum Lobeliæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.06–0.3 c.c. (1–5 mins.).
Tinctura Lobeliæ (U. S. P.), 0.6–4 c.c. (10–60 mins.).
Tinctura Lobeliæ Ætherea (B. P.), 5–15 mins.

Therapeutic Uses.—Lobelia was formerly used as an emetic, but is exceedingly depressant and unreliable, and if vomiting does not occur is liable to give rise to the most alarming symptoms of poisoning. The only condition in which it is now used at all is in "dyspnœa and asthma of nervous origin," *i. e.*, in cases of asthma in which no organic lesion can be discovered, and which are therefore by a dangerous inference supposed to be due to contraction of the bronchial muscles. Its action certainly supports this use of the plant, but perhaps it aids in these conditions as much by the increased secretion of the mucous membranes owing to the nausea as through its action on the motor nerves of the bronchial muscles. Its effects must be carefully watched, as the preparations seem to vary in strength, and numerous alarming symptoms and even fatal results have followed its use.

Bibliography.

Ott. Phil. Med. Times, iv., p. 121, 1875.
Rönnberg. Inaug. Diss., Rostock, 1880.
Dreser. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvi., p. 237.

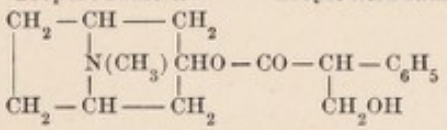
XIII. THE ATROPINE SERIES.

The atropine series contains a number of very closely allied alkaloids, of which the chief are *Atropine*, *Hyoscyamine* and *Hyoscine* or *Scopolamine*. They are found in several plants of the Solanaceæ order, and in most cases several of them occur together.

Atropine may be broken up by the action of alkalies into an alkaloid, *Tropine*, and *Tropic Acid*. The former is a pyridine compound very closely allied to *Ecgonine* (see cocaine) as may be seen by its structural formula, while the latter is an aromatic acid.

Atropine.

Tropine radicle. Tropic acid radicle.



Hyoscyamine may be decomposed in the same way, and into the same two constituents, and appears not only to be isomeric with atropine in the ordinary sense, but to differ from it only in the physical arrangement of the tropine and tropic acid radicles. This slight difference is, however, sufficient to alter its action somewhat. The close relationship subsisting between atropine and hyoscyamine is further shown by the fact that the latter can be very easily changed to atropine, and in fact, is so changed by many of the ordinary methods of extraction.

Scopolamine (hyoscine) was formerly supposed to be another isomer of atropine, but has lately been shown to differ slightly in its formula, which is $C_{17}H_{21}NO_4$. It is very closely allied to atropine, and is decomposed into tropic acid and *Scopoline* (Oscine), which was formerly supposed to be isomeric with tropine, but has been shown to differ from it in the number of hydrogen and oxygen atoms.

A number of other alkaloids have been described in different plants, generally associated with one or more of those already mentioned. It is often doubtful, however, whether they are really new alkaloids or whether they are not merely mixtures of atropine, hyoscyamine and hyoscine. Their formulæ are generally said to be the same as that of atropine, and the differences between them are often so slight as to suggest that a mixture of two alkaloids has been the subject of examination. Thus, an alkaloid, *Duboisine*, has been described in Duboisia myoporoides, but has been shown to consist at one time of scopolamine, at another of hyoscyamine according to the condition of the plant and the variety examined. *Mandragorine*, found in Mandragora (Mandrake) appears to be closely allied to atropine, although it has not been subjected to careful analysis as yet. *Daturine*, which was formerly believed to be a new alkaloid, is now stated to be atropine or a mixture of atropine and hyoscyamine. *Atropamine*, a new alkaloid found by Hesse in some species of Belladonna, differs slightly in formula from atropine, from which it may be formed by the application of heat; it is decomposed into a substance which is isomeric with tropine, but which differs from it in some respects and which has been called *β-tropine*. Atropamine is isomeric but not identical with *Belladonnine*, which is a compound of yet another isomer of tropine, *bellatropine*. *Pseudo-hyoscyamine* is said to differ from atropine and hyoscyamine in some of its chemical relations, but has not been the subject of much work as yet. *Atroscine* is isomeric with scopolamine and the same relation appears to exist between them as between atropine and hyoscyamine.

After atropine had been found to be a compound of tropine and tropic acid, a number of other acids were attached to tropine in the same way as tropic acid. These artificial alkaloids are known as *Tropeines*, and in action resemble atropine in some points while differing from it in others. Further study of the action of these tropeines is exceedingly desirable, and promises to be of considerable value in practical therapeutics. The only artificial tropeine which has as yet been used in medicine is the compound of tropeine and oxytoluic acid known as *Homatropine*. *Scopoleines* have been formed by substituting other acids for the tropic acid of scopolamine, but none of them has proved of value in therapeutics as yet.

It must be understood that the combination of tropine and its allies with tropic acid does not partake in any way of the nature of the combination of an ordinary alkaloid, such as morphine, with an acid. The bond is the much closer one seen in the compound ethers, and the resulting substance is alkaline and combines with acids to form salts exactly as other alkaloids do.

The chief plants containing these alkaloids are the following: Atropa Belladonna (Deadly nightshade) containing *atropine* mainly, but also varying quantities of hyoscyamine, scopolamine and sometimes of atropamine and belladonnine.

Hyoscyamus niger (Henbane), containing *hyoscyamine* and *scopolamine* with smaller quantities of atropine.

Datura Stramonium (Thornapple), containing *atropine, hyoscyamine* and some scopolamine.

Of less importance are :

Duboisia myoporoides, containing scopolamine or hyoscyamine, together with pseudo-hyoscyamine and other alkaloids. Another species of Duboisia contains piturine, an alkaloid nearly allied to nicotine.

Scopolia atropoides, containing hyoscyamine and scopolamine and perhaps small quantities of atropine.

Mandragora autumnalis, or Atropa mandragora (Mandrake), containing mandragorine, which is perhaps a mixture of several of the better known alkaloids.

A number of other Solanaceæ—*e. g.*, tobacco and potato leaves, are said to contain small quantities of one or other of these alkaloids but the quantity present here is too small to be of any importance. A ptomaine formed by the decomposition of fish and meat and known as ptomatropine also produces symptoms closely resembling those of atropine poisoning, but has not been isolated as yet.

These alkaloids all resemble each other closely in the effects produced by them in animals. Some differences in the symptoms exist, however, and the action of atropine alone will first be described and later the points in which that of hyoscyamine and of scopolamine differ from it.

Atropine acts as a stimulant to the central nervous system and paralyzes the terminations of a number of nerves, more especially those that supply involuntary muscle, secretory glands and the heart.

Symptoms. — In man and the higher animals small toxic doses cause dryness of the skin and throat, thirst, difficulty in swallowing and hoarseness in speaking. There is often nausea and in some cases vomiting, headache and giddiness ; the pupils are wider than normal and the sight may be indistinct, especially for near objects. The respiration and pulse are quickened, or the latter may at first be somewhat slowed. A symptom that is often present, though by no means invariably so, is redness of the skin, more especially of the head and neck ; the conjunctiva may also be congested. After larger doses the same symptoms are observed, but are soon followed by others of graver import. The patient can no longer swallow, although suffering from intense thirst, the heart is generally extremely rapid, speech is difficult and hoarse, and the pupils are dilated until the iris almost disappears. Restlessness and garrulity point to an increase in the irritability of the brain ; the patient at first talks in a perfectly normal way but soon becomes confused, begins a sentence and does not finish it, often bursts into laughter or tears, and in short becomes delirious and eventually maniacal. Often marked tremor of different muscles may be observed, and eventually convulsions set in and may be the cause of death through the failure of the respiration. As a general rule, however, the stage of excitement passes into one of depression, the patient sinks into a sleep, which deepens into stupor and coma,

the respiration and heart become slow, weak and irregular, and death eventually occurs from asphyxia.

In the frog the injection of small quantities of atropine is followed by a stage of increased reflex excitability, exactly resembling that seen under strychnine. It is generally of short duration, however, and is followed by a stage in which the frog lies motionless and does not react to stimulation in any way. After a variable time, sometimes a few hours, oftener several days, a return of the first symptom occurs, the reflex being much exaggerated and the tonic convulsions described under strychnine being generally developed. This stage slowly passes off and the animal again becomes normal.

Action. — These symptoms both in mammals and amphibians indicate stimulation of the **Central Nervous System** followed by depression. Those observed in man sometimes resemble those seen in the excitement stage of alcoholic poisoning, and it has been suggested that in both the cause is rather a lessening of the control normally exercised by the higher powers over the lower motor areas than a true stimulation of the latter. But this is shown to be incorrect by the fact that in atropine poisoning the motor area is more easily stimulated by the electric current than normally. The stimulant action of atropine is also seen in the increased reflex response to irritation of the skin, as well as in the augmented activity of the centres in the medulla. The nervous symptoms under atropine, therefore, arise from true stimulation of the central nervous system, but they are wholly different from those produced by strychnine, because the latter acts more especially on the lower parts of the nervous axis, while atropine acts more strongly on the higher divisions. The most marked symptoms of strychnine poisoning arise from the spinal cord and medulla oblongata, and consist in increased reflex movements and convulsions, while those caused by atropine are rather to be referred to the brain, and consist in increased coördinated movements, such as talking and delirium, the exaggerated reflex being of minor importance. In the frog the same effects are produced by each, because the higher parts of the central nervous system being less developed than in the mammals, the first symptoms produced are those arising from the cord.

Atropine differs from caffeine, on the other hand, in its effect on the brain, for under the latter the psychical functions are those affected first of all. It would seem probable, then, that each of these three stimulates the whole of the central nervous system more or less, but that while strychnine acts more strongly on the lower divisions, the spinal cord and medulla, and caffeine on the highest functions, the psychical, atropine occupies a midway position, and exercises its chief action on the motor divisions of the brain. These are rendered so excitable that the controlling areas can no longer keep them in check, and an increase in movement occurs somewhat resembling that seen when the controlling areas are paralyzed by alcohol. The stimulant action spreads downwards when large quantities have been absorbed, and involves the medulla oblongata and spinal cord, so that symptoms

resembling those seen in strychnine poisoning may make their appearance. After the stimulation has lasted some time, depression sets in and may go on to complete paralysis of the central nervous system. This is fatal to mammals through cessation of the respiration, but in the amphibia the paralysis may pass off after some time as the poison is excreted, and the stage of stimulation is renewed. Even during the stimulation stage some symptoms of depression are to be made out, exactly as has been described under strychnine.

The peripheral action of atropine involves a number of secretory glands, the organs containing unstriped muscular tissue and the heart.

Most of the **Secretions** are decreased by the application of atropine — salivary, mucous, milk and sweat. This is due not to any action upon the secretory cells, but to paralysis of some of the nerve ends. It has been investigated most carefully in the salivary glands, but enough work has been done on the others to show that the process is the same in all. The *secretion of saliva* in the normal animal seems to occur only when impulses reach the gland cells by one of two paths — through the chorda tympani, or through the cervical sympathetic fibres. If the chorda tympani be divided and put on electrodes and a canula be passed into Wharton's duct, a rapid flow occurs through it on stimulation of the nerve, which ceases or is very much diminished on stopping the stimulation. If now atropine be injected, stimulation causes no increase in the secretion and atropine, therefore, seems to paralyze some part of the peripheral secretory apparatus. The chorda tympani passes through ganglion cells on its way to the gland cells, and the impulses might be hindered in their passage through these, as actually occurs under the action of some drugs. (See Nicotine.) But this is not the explanation of the inefficiency of chorda stimulation, as is shown by the fact that if the electrodes be pushed into the hilus of the gland so as to stimulate the nerve fibres beyond the ganglia no secretion follows. Another explanation would be that the gland cells themselves are paralyzed by atropine, but this is shown not to be the case, for on stimulating the sympathetic which supplies the same cells as the chorda tympani, the usual secretion follows. The site of action of atropine, therefore, seems to lie between the ganglion cells on the course of the chorda tympani and the secretory cells, that is, the point of attack is the terminations of the nerve fibres in the gland cells. The action is limited to certain definite terminations, for it has been noted already that the sympathetic secretory fibres are not paralyzed, and it was discovered by Heidenhain that not all the fibres of the chorda tympani are acted on by atropine. On stimulation of this nerve in the unpoisoned animal, besides the increased secretion, a redness and swelling of the gland is noticed, its temperature rises, and the blood escapes from the veins in much larger quantity than usual and in spurts as if from an artery. This is due to the dilation of the arterioles of the gland from the stimulation of vaso-dilator fibres which run along with the secretory fibres in the chorda tympani. These fibres are not paralyzed by an injection of atropine, for on stim-

ulation of the chorda afterwards the same symptoms are produced as before, save that no secretion occurs. Atropine then seems to select the terminations of the secretory fibres of the chorda tympani for paralysis and to leave all others unaffected. The secretion of saliva seems to occur generally only on the arrival of impulses by way of the chorda tympani, so that on the paralysis of its terminations the secretion ceases entirely.

In the same way the other *glands of the mouth, throat, nose and respiratory passages* cease secreting after atropine, and the effect is the characteristic dryness of the mouth, the hoarseness of the voice, and the thirst and difficulty in swallowing complained of after its administration.

The secretion of the *gastric juice* has recently been shown to be diminished or entirely arrested by atropine, which paralyzes the terminations of the secretory fibres of the pneumogastric nerve in the stomach. The hydrochloric acid of the secretion is more reduced than either the pepsin or the fluid as a whole. The *pancreatic secretion* differs from that of the salivary glands in the fact that it is not entirely dependent on nervous impulses, but continues after all connection with the central nervous system has been destroyed; stimulation of the pneumogastric nerve has no effect after atropine, while normally it augments the amount of the secretion. The *bile* is also said to be somewhat lessened by atropine. The production of *sugar* from the glycogen of the liver has been recently shown to be controlled by branches of the cœliac plexus, but these have no effect after atropine, so that the terminations of the nerves in the liver cells seem to be paralyzed also.

The same paralysis is produced in the terminations of the nerves in the *sweat glands*. Stimulation of the sciatic nerve as a general rule produces perspiration in the foot of the cat and dog, but after atropine this effect is absent, because the impulses cannot reach the cells through the paralyzed terminations, and the skin therefore becomes dry and hot. The secretion of *milk* bears the same relation to that of perspiration as that of the pancreatic juice does to the saliva; it is increased by stimuli from the central nervous system, but at the same time the mammary gland continues to secrete after all its nerves have been divided. Atropine therefore lessens the secretion by paralyzing its nerves, but does not stop it altogether. The solids of the milk seem rather increased than diminished by the drug.

The *kidney* is believed not to be controlled by nervous influences to the same extent as the glands hitherto discussed and atropine causes little or no change in its amount except what is probably the indirect result of the arrest of the other secretions. The *secretion of lymph* is not altered by atropine, so that it is probably not controlled by nerves in the same way as the true secretions.

Horbaczewski states that atropine lessens the number of *leucocytes* in the blood and the uric acid of the urine.

All **Organs Containing Unstriped Muscle** (apart from the arterial wall) seem to be altered by atropine. Thus the movements of the stomach, intestine, bladder, uterus, spleen, thoracic duct, and of the

Movements of structures containing unstriped muscle apart from arteries is diminished under Atropin.

pupil and œsophagus (except in animals in which these consist of striped muscle) are lessened by atropine.

The movements of the *stomach* and *intestine* are generally believed to be arrested by small quantities of atropine, though vomiting is not infrequently observed in atropine poisoning, and less often a free evacuation of the contents of the bowel. The exact way in which atropine acts here is entirely unknown, but on the analogy of its action on the secretory glands and on the heart it is generally supposed to be through its paralyzing some of the nervous apparatus with which the alimentary canal is so richly supplied. Previous investigators state that both the splanchnic and the pneumogastric nerves have no further control over the gastric and intestinal movements, while the former inhibits and the latter excites these in the unpoisoned animal; but Bayliss and Starling found in their recent careful experiments that atropine had no influence on these nerves, and in fact failed to detect any definite change in the movements of the intestine after enormous quantities of the alkaloid had been injected intravenously. Unless these authors were mistaken in their observations, which there is no reason to believe, their statements involve the abandonment of the older explanation of the preliminary purgation and vomiting, which were attributed to atropine depressing the inhibitory endings before the excito-motor. The diminution of the peristalsis, which almost invariably follows the administration of atropine in the normal animal, is generally said to be due to paralysis of the ganglia of the wall, but on the analogy of the other organs atropine would seem to paralyze terminations rather than ganglia.[1]

Accepting this hypothesis, it is manifest that the movements are not finally arrested, for the intestinal muscle like the other involuntary muscles of the body, can maintain a regular movement without nervous impulses from without. Accordingly, any substance which irritates the muscle or perhaps even the mucous coat of the bowel, produces peristalsis after atropine. Thus the ordinary purgatives are often prescribed along with atropine and act quite as efficiently as far as the evacuation of the bowel is concerned. Purgatives often produce griping pains if given alone, however, and these are relieved by the addition of atropine to the prescription. This has been explained by the supposition that the griping is caused by local contractions of the intestinal wall, which are due to nervous influence and therefore disappear on the application of atropine.

Very large quantities of atropine are said to paralyze the muscle of the intestinal wall, but this scarcely occurs unless under special conditions, as paralysis of the respiratory centre would certainly precede it in the intact animal.

[1] This is not altogether in opposition to the statements of Bayliss and Starling, for the bowel is so richly supplied with nervous plexus, that it is possible that while the terminations of the vagus and splanchnic are not affected by atropine, some other nervous structure may be put out of activity. In fact some such theory is necessary to explain the immediate arrest by atropine of the violent peristalsis after muscarine, which was noted by these authors and by all previous observers.

Atropine exercises the same sedative effect on the movements of other organs as on those of the bowel. Thus, the *spleen*, *uterus*, *bladder*, and the *bronchial muscles* seem less liable to contraction after its use. In regard to its action on the two first but little is known, but Dreser has shown that the stimulation of the pneumogastric does not cause contraction of the bronchial muscle after atropine, while in the unpoisoned animal it has this effect. In regard to the bladder it has been observed frequently in cases of poisoning that the urine is ejected soon after the ingestion of the poison, and subsequently there is a desire to micturate without the ability to do so. The preliminary contraction of the bladder would seem analogous to that of the intestine, and the subsequent inability to empty it to the diminution of the peristalsis. The rhythmical contractions of the *ureters* are said to be accelerated by small doses, but to be slowed and arrested by larger amounts.

The terminations of the nerves in the unstriped muscle of the *œsophagus* seem to be affected in the same way as in that of the intestine. A curious contrast has been noted by Luchsinger in the behavior of the œsophagus in rabbits and cats, in the former of which the muscle is striated, while in the latter the upper part is striated, the lower is unstriated. Atropine, he found, paralyzes the vagus terminations in those parts which are unstriped, while leaving unaffected those in the striped fibres. Exactly the opposite occurs after curara, which paralyzes the nerve supply of the striped muscle, while leaving the unstriped active. Here, again, is evidence of the selective power of these poisons and of the difference in the chemical composition of nearly related structures.

It is possible that the difficulty in swallowing, which is so well marked in cases of poisoning by atropine, may be due in part to the paralysis of the motor nerve ends, but it is generally attributed to the absence of the mucous secretion and consequent dryness of the passages.

The dilatation of the *pupil* by atropine has been the subject of a very large number of researches both by physiologists and by practical ophthalmologists. It occurs on internal administration as well as on the application of minute quantities locally, and is due to paralysis of the terminations of the motor nerve in the circular muscle of the iris. This is shown by the fact that stimulation of the motor oculi nerve or of the sympathetic neuron running from the ciliary ganglion is without effect, as well as that the dilatation may be produced by atropine in the excised eye. This limits the paralysis to the periphery, and that the muscle is not acted on is shown by its reacting to electrical stimulation. The local nature of the action may be further shown by carefully applying a minute quantity of the drug to one side of the cornea, when dilatation of one half or less of the pupil occurs, the rest remaining contracted. The motor oculi (Fig. 26) constantly transmits impulses through the ciliary nerves to the sphincter muscle of the iris and keeps the pupil moderately contracted, and when these impulses can no longer reach the iris owing to the paralysis of the nerve ends, the

sphincter relaxes and the pupil dilates. The muscle itself does not seem to be affected by the ordinary application of atropine, but if strong solutions be continuously applied, its fibres may be paralyzed by it as by many other drugs. The action in paralyzing the nerve end is universally accepted now, although it was formerly disputed.

FIG. 26.

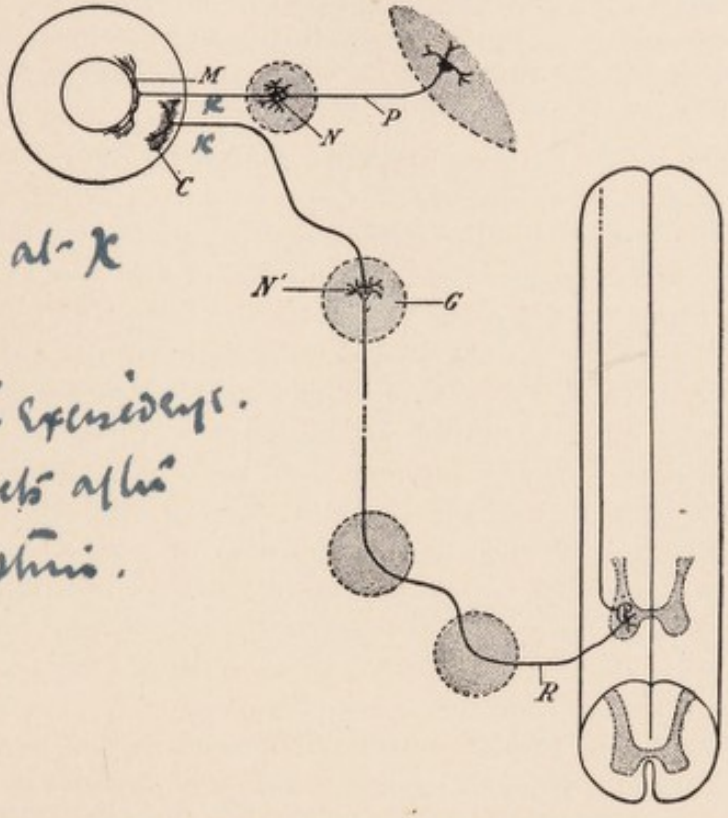


Diagram of the innervation of the iris. *P*, a fibre of the motor oculi passing from the brain to the ciliary ganglion (*N*) in which it terminates around a nerve cell, which sends an axis cylinder to terminate *M*, in the circular fibres of the iris. *R*, a spinal nerve fibre issuing from the lower cervical cord, running through the stellate and inferior cervical ganglia and terminating around a ganglion cell in the superior cervical ganglion, *G*. The axis cylinder from this nerve cell runs to the iris (passing the ciliary ganglion) and terminates, *C*, on the radiating fibres. *M* indicates the terminations of the nerve fibre in the circular fibres, and is the point acted on by atropine and muscarine. *NN'*, the ganglion cells, is the seat of action of nicotine. *C*, the terminations in the dilator fibres, that of cocaine.

A further question is whether this is the only effect of atropine on the pupil, or whether the terminations of the dilating sympathetic fibres are not stimulated at the same time, and this cannot as yet be said to be generally agreed upon, although there is very strong evidence against the latter view. Its advocates have generally ignored the fact that the constrictor muscle is constantly opposed by dilator fibres, and that when the former is thrown out of activity by the paralysis of the terminations of the motor oculi, the radiating fibres cause an active dilatation without any stimulation of the nerve ends being necessary. If, however, the radiating muscular fibres be separated from their innervating centre by section of the cervical sympathetic nerve in the neck, they also cease to contract and there is no active dilatation, so that atropine causes less widening of the pupil than it would if impulses continued to reach the radiating muscle. After the application of atropine to the eye, the iris often relaxes with sufficient force to tear weak adhesions to the lens, and this has also been held to indicate that the dilator fibres are stimulated, for it is unlikely that the mere passive relaxation of the iris could

rupture an attachment. The dilatation is unquestionably an active movement, accomplished by the contraction of the radiating muscular fibres, but these are not put in motion by stimulation of the terminations of the fibres in the radiating muscles of the iris, but by the normal impulses descending from the central nervous system, which after atropine are not counterbalanced by impulses reaching the circular fibres. If the iris be attached at two points to the lens, atropine causes a bow-shaped dilatation between them, the concavity being directed inwards, whereas if the dilatation were purely passive the part between the points of attachment would probably be loose and wrinkled. But this is not an argument in favor of the action of atropine, on the terminations of the nerves to the dilating muscle, as is often alleged, for it can be explained in the same way by the contraction of the dilator fibres due to the activity of the centre in the brain.

In short, the evidence goes to prove that atropine dilates the pupil by paralyzing the terminations of the nerves in the circular muscle. This leaves the radiating fibres unopposed, and they, therefore, draw back the edge of the iris. The terminations of the nerves in the radiating muscle fibres do not seem to be affected by atropine.

The dilatation of the pupil effected by atropine is not quite maximal, for stimulation of the cervical sympathetic trunk generally increases it, though but slightly. It differs considerably in different animals, being more complete in man, the dog, and the cat than in the rabbit, entirely absent in birds and reptiles and elicited with difficulty in the frog. In birds and reptiles the iris consists of striped muscle fibres, and accordingly atropine has no action on the nerve terminations.

In the rabbit and in man the dilatation is sometimes preceded by a slight contraction due, it is believed, to an irritant preparation setting up a reflex from the conjunctival sensory nerves. When complete dilatation is attained, the pupil ceases to contract in bright light, as the impulses descending from the central nervous system are prevented from reaching the muscle, although the rest of the reflex arc is intact. According to several observers the pupil dilated by atropine contracts during narcosis from chloroform or chloral, but this statement requires further confirmation.

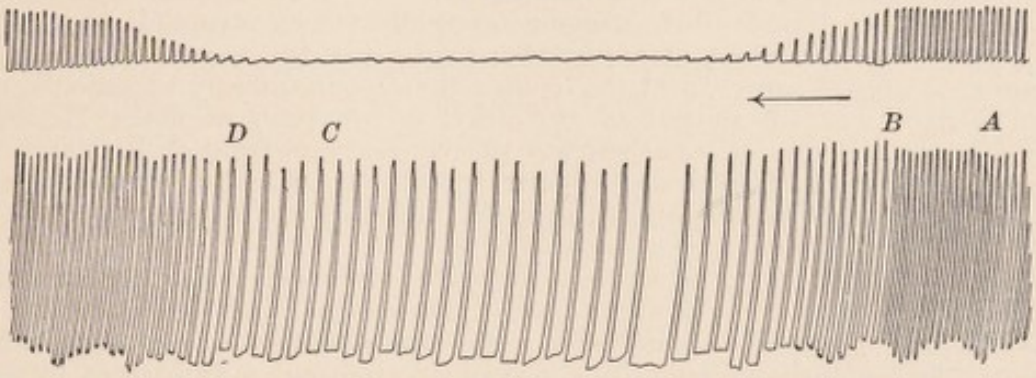
Besides the dilatation of the pupil, a further result of the application of atropine to the eye is the paralysis of the *accommodation*. Near objects are no longer seen clearly, while distant ones are as distinct as formerly or may be even more distinct in some eyes. The action is here again on the terminations of the motor nerve, in this case in the ciliary muscle. On local application the relaxation of the lens occurs later, and disappears earlier than the dilatation of the pupil, and larger quantities are required to produce it.

The *intraocular pressure* undergoes a considerable augmentation after the local application of atropine as well as when it is applied through the general circulation. This seems to be due to the dilatation of the pupil, although some writers seem to believe that atropine has also a special action on the intraocular fluids. The increase in the intraocular pressure has been demonstrated in animals through the movements of a manometer communicating with the vitreous humor, and is a well-known result of the application of atropine in ophthalmology.

It may, perhaps, explain the pain and aching in the eye and the headache complained of in some cases of poisoning, while in others these may be due to bright light falling on the retina, which is unprotected by the iris.

Atropine paralyzes the **Inhibitory Terminations of the Vagus in the Heart**, and stimulation of this nerve therefore causes no changes in the pulse after its administration. A number of other drugs also remove the inhibitory power of the vagus, but act on a different part of the nerve, namely, on the ganglia. That atropine does not act here but on the terminations, has been shown by a number of observations.

FIG. 27.



Tracings of the ventricle (lower) and auricle (upper) of the dog's heart. During systole the levers move upwards; during diastole, downwards. At *A*, the heart is normal; at *B*, the inhibitory fibres were stimulated electrically, and this was continued throughout the tracing. The ventricular rhythm became slow and irregular, while the auricle stood still in diastole. At *C*, atropine sulphate was injected into a vein, and at *D* the effects of the inhibition began to pass off, although the stimulation was continued.

Thus, in the normal frog's heart, and even after paralysis of the ganglia on the course of the vagus, electrical stimulation of the venous sinus causes slowing and standstill of the heart, because the stimulus reaches the vagus beyond the paralyzed ganglia (Fig. 24, p. 209); but after atropine, no slowing follows stimulation of the sinus. Again, several drugs stimulate the ends of the vagus in the heart and act on parts in which no ganglia exist, but these drugs have no effect whatever after atropine. Small quantities of atropine have no further action on the heart than the paralysis of the inhibitory nerve ends. The terminations of the accelerator nerve are unaffected, exactly as the terminations of the sympathetic in the salivary glands, and the heart muscle is neither stimulated nor depressed. The heart is therefore placed in the same position as if the vagus were divided in the neck and, accordingly, is accelerated in some animals, while in others the rhythm is unchanged. In the dog there is a marked quickening of the heart after atropine, because normally impulses are constantly transmitted from the inhibitory centre in the medulla, and these prevent the heart from beating as rapidly as it would if freed from the nervous control. In the cat the "tone" of the vagus is less, and the changes produced by atropine are correspondingly smaller, while in the rabbit and frog there is generally no inhibitory retardation of the heart, and atropine therefore produces little change. In man the effects vary considerably with the

age of the patient. The inhibitory fibres seem almost inactive at birth, but their tone increases with age up to 25–35 years, and from this time lessens again and is very slight in old age. Atropine does not quicken the heart in the newborn child, but up to about 30 the acceleration increases with the age, and from this point onwards it lessens again until the heart is accelerated by only 4–5 beats per minute in patients between 80–90 years. Along with the acceleration of the pulse the other effects of vagus section are also produced — increase in the extent of systole, decrease in the diastole and augmentation of the output of the heart per minute.

Stimulation of the vagus causes no retardation of the pulse after atropine, but on the contrary, is not infrequently followed by acceleration from the presence of accelerator fibres which are not affected by atropine.

Large quantities of atropine, besides paralyzing the vagus, weaken and depress the heart muscle and the contractions consequently become slower and weaker and the output of the heart is less than normal. Hedbom states that large quantities accelerate the coronary circulation in mammals and increase the amplitude of the contractions. He is inclined to regard the latter alteration as due in part to the dilatation of the coronary vessels, in part to a direct action on the heart muscle.

The peripheral action of atropine hitherto discussed is due to its paralyzing the terminations of a number of nerves in small doses and to its paralyzing the muscle or gland cells when administered in very large quantities. These facts are generally accepted as true, but a number of further effects have been disputed and may now be shortly discussed.

It is not seldom stated that atropine, in addition to paralyzing the vagus ends, stimulates the heart muscle and thereby quickens its rhythm. This assertion is somewhat difficult to disprove, but none of the alleged facts brought forward to support it have stood closer investigation. The error generally arose from the belief that atropine acted on the ganglia and not on the nerve ends or from the use of impure and irritant preparations, and all the phenomena on which it was based may be explained by the more modern theory that the ganglia on the course of the inhibitory nerve fibres are left intact by atropine, while the terminations of the nerve are paralyzed.

A further question is whether the nerve ends are paralyzed at once or whether they undergo a short stimulation first. In favor of the latter theory several facts may be mentioned, as that the heart in mammals is in rare cases first slowed and then quickened by atropine. This might indicate stimulation of the nerve ends, but seems due rather to the inhibitory centre in the medulla being stimulated before the terminations are paralyzed. This stimulation of the centre slows the heart until the impulses sent out from it are prevented from reaching the organ by paralysis of the nerve ends. The increase in the intestinal movements, which occurs immediately after the injection of atropine, might also be cited as proof of the preliminary stimulation of the nerve ends, but may also be explained by the inhibitory terminations being paralyzed earlier than the motor, so that these have a brief period of unrestrained activity. In the eye a short stage of contraction of the pupil not infrequently precedes the dilatation, but it is generally believed to be due to a reflex from the application of an irritant solution to the conjunctiva. Lastly, when atropine is applied to the eye of the cat a considerable secretion of saliva almost always follows for a short time, and this might be held to indicate a stimulation of the terminations of the chorda. It is more likely, however, that it is a reflex secretion from the bitter taste of the alkaloid which has escaped through the lachrymal duct into the back of the throat.

Several alkaloids stimulate the same peripheral nerve terminations as atropine paralyzes, and the interaction of the two groups is of considerable importance. It is more profitably discussed after the general action of these poisons has been learned, and will be taken up at that point (see muscarine, pilocarpine, and physostigmine; compare also nicotine and the curara and coniine series).

The voluntary **Muscles** are not directly affected by atropine. The terminations of the motor **Nerves** are paralyzed in the frog by large doses, but this has not been elicited in mammals by ordinary methods of experimental investigation. The terminations of the sensory nerves are paralyzed, or at any rate depressed by its local application. Thus when a liniment or ointment containing atropine is applied to the skin, a numbness of the part is produced and the sensation of pain is lessened. The local anæsthetic effect is not elicited by its internal administration, although it is said that the frog may be rendered less sensitive to irritation of the skin if poisoned with atropine. According to some recent investigations the sensory terminations are first stimulated and then paralyzed, but the assertion stands in need of confirmation.

Circulation. — The effect of atropine on the circulation is somewhat complex, as, besides the action on the heart, that on the central nervous system must be considered. The heart is sometimes slowed and weakened at first, owing to the stimulation of the inhibitory centre in the medulla probably, but is generally quickened from paralysis of the inhibitory fibres in the heart, and after very large doses is weakened by the direct action on the muscle fibre. The blood-pressure is considerably increased by the augmented output of the accelerated heart, and also owing to stimulation of the vaso-constrictor centre in the medulla which contracts the arterioles in the abdomen. The constriction of these vessels is accompanied by a dilation of the arterioles of the skin, and perhaps of the brain, from excitation of the vaso-dilator centre, so that the blood tends to flow from the abdominal cavity to the more superficial parts. The dilation of the skin vessels is, however, insufficient to counteract altogether the contraction of those of the abdomen, so that a considerable increase in the arterial tension follows the ingestion of atropine. The increased pressure is maintained for some time after small doses, while large ones lower it from the action on the heart muscle. The dilation of the skin vessels is more especially seen in the head and neck, and here produces marked flushing and a rash somewhat resembling that of scarlet fever. That it is due to central action is shown by the fact that it is prevented by division of the sympathetic trunk in the neck. The rash usually disappears after a few hours, but is sometimes followed in a day or two by desquamation. The circulation always persists after the respiration has ceased, and its failure is not the cause of death therefore.

The action of atropine on the **Respiration** has been the subject of much discussion in recent years. It is sometimes slower at first through some unexplained central action but then becomes quicker, and ac-

cording to most observers also deeper, and the amount of air inspired per minute is considerably increased. This is due to stimulation of the respiratory centre, which undergoes the same changes as the rest of the central nervous system. After large doses this quickened breathing is frequently interrupted by convulsive movements, and such an interruption often proves to be final. If it returns, the movements become shallower and slower in the stage of depression of the nervous centres, and the failure of the respiration is the cause of death in fatal cases of poisoning.

Atropine often induces a marked rise in **Temperature**, the cause of which cannot be said to be definitely known. According to Ott the dissipation of heat is increased, but the heat formation undergoes a still greater augmentation. This seems to be independent of the circulatory changes and also of the convulsions, and is attributed by him to direct action on the heat centres of the brain.

Atropine is **Excreted** in the urine in small quantities when injected into the dog, but most of it undergoes complete oxidation in the tissues; in the rabbit this seems to be the fate of the whole of the drug, for none is found in the excretions.[1] Young animals withstand much larger quantities than adults, according to v. Anrep because the brain is less highly developed and the cerebral symptoms are therefore produced less easily. Rabbits may be fed for weeks on belladonna leaves exclusively without showing any symptoms of poisoning, while carnivorous animals and man are very much more sensitive to its action. A curious case of poisoning is related in which the defence was made that the alkaloid was taken accidentally through partaking of roast rabbit, the animal's flesh having been saturated with atropine through feeding on belladonna leaves. It was found that rabbits thus fed might, in fact, contain large quantities of atropine and yet show no signs of poisoning. Von Anrep succeeded in developing a certain degree of **Tolerance** in dogs through repeated administration of atropine, but it was very incomplete. The symptoms arising from the central nervous system were much less evident after a few doses, while those from the heart, pupil and secretory glands persisted after the treatment had been continued for some time.

Hyoscyamine resembles atropine in its effects on the animal organism, but appears to have less stimulant action on the central nervous system. Instead of the garrulous delirium generally seen after atropine, patients frequently present all the symptoms of cerebral depression, fatigue, drowsiness and eventually sleep. This sleep is said to resemble the normal much more closely than that produced by opium and the hypnotics of the methane series and the patient is generally more easily aroused and is less confused. It is by no means a constant effect of hyoscyamine, however, for in many cases the confusion and delirium described under atropine are produced instead. After atropine, sleep occasionally follows without any excitement, though this is much rarer than after hyoscyamine, but in all cases the symptoms present a curious

[1] Traces have been found in the milk of some animals and also in the fœtal blood.

mixture of stimulation and depression. The difference is thus merely one of degree, atropine being followed by greater stimulation than depression, while in hyoscyamine the latter is the predominating feature.

As regards the peripheral action, both produce the same effects, though not with equal power; for pure hyoscyamine acts practically twice as strongly as atropine on the nerve terminations in the secretory glands, unstriated muscle and heart. But pure hyoscyamine is so seldom obtainable, that this is devoid of practical importance.

Scopolamine, Hyoscine, resembles atropine closely in its peripheral action. The inhibitory terminations in the heart are paralyzed in the frog and in most mammals, and possibly in man, although most observers state that the pulse is not much quickened in patients and some state that it is slow. In regard to its action on the pupil and accommodation some discrepancies exist in the accounts of different authors. It is generally said to produce mydriasis and loss of accommodation more quickly than atropine, but for a much shorter time; according to Rotislaw scopolamine acts five times as strongly on the pupil as atropine. The effects on the central nervous system present the greatest divergences from those described under atropine, for the characteristic stimulation is absent in the great majority of cases. As a general rule, scopolamine produces a marked sensation of fatigue and drowsiness, and the patient moves about less and speaks less. Soon an overpowering desire to sleep is felt, and a condition in no way dissimilar to the natural sleep follows. In many cases, however, a short stage of excitement with giddiness, uncertain movements, and difficult and indistinct speech precedes sleep, and occasionally symptoms exactly resembling those produced by atropine follow the administration of hyoscine. Sleep generally lasts from 5–8 hours, and the patient may then remain in a somnolent condition for several hours longer. As a general rule, after small doses no confusion is complained of on awakening, but dryness of the throat and thirst are often present.

In one or two cases collapse has been observed after scopolamine. The vaso-motor and respiratory centres do not seem to be stimulated as by atropine, the blood-pressure falling and the respiration generally becoming slower from the beginning.

In the lower animals scopolamine reduces the excitability of the motor areas as tested by electric shocks, while the reflex excitability in the frog is certainly not increased as by atropine, and according to some authorities is much depressed.

The action of scopolamine then seems to correspond with that of atropine, save that the central nervous system is here depressed even more than by hyoscyamine, while the action on the peripheral nerve ends is somewhat stronger, and in man no distinct quickening of the pulse is observed. Scopolamine depresses the brain in very small quantities, $\frac{1}{2}$ mg. ($\frac{1}{120}$ gr.) being generally sufficient to cause sleep. It does not seem to be so dangerous as the others of the series, for a dose

of 5 mgs. ($\frac{1}{12}$ gr.) has been recovered from in man, and over half a gramme ($7\frac{1}{2}$ grs.) administered to a small cat did not kill the animal. A certain degree of tolerance is produced after repeated use, so that the dose has to be increased after a week or two.

It must be remarked that the action of scopolamine as a hypnotic differs considerably from that of opium and of the members of the methane series. In the first place it is very much less reliable, and in the second the sleep produced resembles much more nearly natural sleep. This difference has not been explained, but it seems probable that the seat of action differs in all three.

The **Other Natural Alkaloids** have been less carefully examined than the three foregoing, and in the present state of their chemistry it is scarcely possible to make any definite statements regarding their action. "Duboisine" has been used as a hypnotic instead of scopolamine, but as has been mentioned, frequently consists mainly of the latter, while at other times the great mass of it is formed of hyoscyamine. The pseudo-hyoscyamine of Merck seems to be very feebly active, causing dilatation of the pupil on local application, but having little or no effect when given internally.

Among the **Artificial Tropeines**, only one has received much attention at the hands of either experimental or practical therapeutists. This is **Homatropine**, a compound of tropine and oxytoluic acid, which is found to be less poisonous than atropine but to resemble it in the symptoms produced by an overdose. The mydriatic effects pass off much sooner than those produced by the usual solutions of atropine, and are said to appear more rapidly and to be less complete. It was formerly supposed that homatropine caused no increase in the intra-ocular tension, but this has been shown to be erroneous, although it is less active in this direction than atropine.

Several other tropeines have been examined by Falck and Gottlieb, who found that they varied a great deal in their action on the lower animals. Many of them produce no paralysis of the oculomotor or the vagus terminations, while others act here in the same way as atropine, but differ from it in power. It may be stated that in general the compounds of tropine with the acids of the methane series possess much less of the peripheral atropine action than the others. It was formerly believed that even the compounds with the aromatic acids were devoid of this action unless the acid possessed a hydroxyl group, but this general statement has been shown to be erroneous by Gottlieb's work. A considerable variation also exists in the effects of the tropeines on the central nervous system, some causing excitement like atropine, while others act as depressants and therefore resemble hyoscyamine and hyoscine.

As has been mentioned, many of the tropeines cause no paralysis of the vagus inhibitory terminations but they often act as stimulants to the frog's heart. Tropine itself is a weakly toxic, basic substance, which in large quantities possesses this cardiac action, but does not paralyze the vagus nor the oculomotor terminations on local application. After the injection of large quantities, dilatation of the pupil has been observed, it is true, but this does not seem to be of the same origin as that produced by atropine.

Some artificial scopoleines have been examined recently by Schiller, who found that they differed from scopolamine in being devoid of action on the

nerve ends in the pupil and heart and on the salivary secretion. They possess a certain stimulant effect on the heart muscle like some of the artificial tropeines, and all produce more or less depression of the central nervous system and narcosis.

The action of the **Crude Drugs** is very similar to that of the active principles already discussed. The peripheral action of all of them is therefore almost identical in kind, though varying in degree. In considering their effects on the central nervous system it must be remembered that those containing much atropine are more stimulant, those with hyoscyamine, and especially those with hyoscine, more sedative. In belladonna preparations the quantity of hyoscyamine varies a good deal, and it is said that no atropine is present in the fresh plant, but that during the various processes of extraction some or all of the original hyoscyamine becomes changed to atropine. The relative proportion of these two poisons probably varies in different preparations, therefore, and with it the sedative effect. In hyoscyamus and scopolia the presence of scopolamine and hyoscyamine produces a much more narcotic effect than is obtained from belladonna, while datura is generally said to be less sedative than the former, but less stimulant than the latter. Duboisia also seems rather sedative than stimulant, but its action and that of its so-called alkaloid must vary considerably if the latter consists at one time of hyoscine, at another of hyoscyamine. In regard to mandrake no very recent work has been done, but its traditional effect in causing madness would seem to entitle it to a place nearer belladonna than hyoscyamus.

Preparations.

U. S. P.—**Belladonnæ Folia**, the leaves of Atropa Belladonna.
Extractum Belladonnæ Foliorum Alcoholicum, 0.005–0.03 G. ($\frac{1}{12}$–$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.).
Tinctura Belladonnæ Foliorum, 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).
Unguentum Belladonnæ.
Emplastrum Belladonnæ.
Belladonnæ Radix, the root of Atropa Belladonna.
Extractum Belladonnæ Radicis Fluidum, 0.05–0.1 c.c. (1–2 mins.).
Linimentum Belladonnæ, containing camphor.
Hyoscyamus, the leaves of Hyoscyamus niger, henbane.
Extractum Hyoscyami, 0.03–0.2 G. ($\frac{1}{2}$–3 grs.).
Extractum Hyoscyami Fluidum, 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).
Tinctura Hyoscyami, 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.).
Stramonii Semen, the seeds of Datura Stramonium.
Extractum Stramonii Seminis, 0.03–0.1 G. ($\frac{1}{2}$–2 grs.).
Extractum Stramonii Seminis Fluidum, 0.06–0.2 c.c. (1–3 mins.).
Tinctura Stramonii Seminis, 0.5–1.5 c.c. (8–20 mins.).
Stramonii Folia, the leaves of Datura Stramonium.
B. P.—**Belladonnæ Folia**, the fresh leaves and branches of Atropa Belladonna.
Extractum Belladonnæ Viride, $\frac{1}{4}$–1 gr.
Succus Belladonnæ, 5–15 m.
Belladonnæ Radix, the root of Atropa Belladonna.

Extractum Belladonnæ Alcoholicum (1 per cent. of alkaloids), ¼–1 gr.
Extractum Belladonnæ Liquidum (¾ per cent. of alkaloids), ½–1 min.
Tinctura Belladonnæ ($\frac{1}{20}$ per cent. alkaloids), 5–15 mins.
Linimentum Belladonnæ.
Unguentum Belladonnæ.
Emplastrum Belladonnæ.
Suppositoria Belladonnæ, each containing $\frac{1}{60}$ gr. of alkaloids.
Hyoscyami Folia, the fresh leaves, flowers and branches of Hyoscyamus niger, henbane.
Extractum Hyoscyami Viride, 2–8 grs.
Tinctura Hyoscyami, ½–1 fl. dr.
Succus Hyoscyami; ½–1 fl. dr.
Stramonii Folia, the dried leaves of Datura Stramonium.
Tinctura Stramonii, 5–15 mins.
Stramonii Semina, the seeds of Datura Stramonium.
Extractum Stramonii, ¼–1 gr.

Alkaloids.

Atropina (U. S. P., B. P.), an alkaloid ($C_{17}H_{23}NO_3$) derived from belladonna and forming white, acicular crystals, very little soluble in water, but soluble in alcohol and ether, and having a bitter taste. 0.0005–0.001 G., ½–1 mg. ($\frac{1}{200}$–$\frac{1}{100}$ gr. B. P.).
Atropinæ Sulphas (U. S. P., B. P.), a white, crystalline powder, with a very bitter taste, soluble in water and alcohol. Dose, as for atropine.
Unguentum Atropinæ (B. P.), 4 per cent.
Liquor Atropinæ (B. P.), 1 per cent., ½–1 min.
Lamellæ Atropinæ (B. P.), gelatin discs each containing $\frac{1}{300}$ gr. of atropine sulphate.
Hyoscyaminæ Sulphas (U. S. P., B. P.) ($(C_{17}H_{23}NO_3)_2H_2SO_4$), the sulphate of an alkaloid derived from Hyoscyamus niger. A crystalline, deliquescent powder with a bitter acrid taste, very soluble in water and alcohol. 0.0005–0.001 G., ½–1 mg. ($\frac{1}{120}$–$\frac{1}{60}$ gr.).
Hyoscyaminæ Hydrobromas (U. S. P.), the hydrobromate of hyoscyamine, resembles the sulphate in most points, but is not deliquescent. Dose, as of the sulphate.
Hyoscinæ Hydrobromas (U. S. P.), Hyoscinæ Hydrobromidum (B. P.), ($C_{17}H_{21}NO_4HBr$, $3H_2O$), the hydrobromate of hyoscine or scopolamine. It is obtained from hyoscyamus, scopolia and other solanaceæ, and forms colorless, transparent crystals with an acrid bitter taste and is very soluble in water, less so in alcohol. 0.0003–0.0005 G., ⅓–½ mg. ($\frac{1}{200}$–$\frac{1}{100}$ gr.).
Homatropinæ Hydrobromidum (B. P.) ($C_{16}H_{21}NO_3HBr$), the hydrobromide of an alkaloid prepared from tropine, a white crystalline powder, soluble in 6 parts of cold water.
Lamellæ Homatropinæ (B. P.), homatropine discs, each weighing $\frac{1}{30}$ gr. and containing $\frac{1}{100}$ gr. of homatropine hydrobromide.
Non-official preparations are the sulphate and hydrobromate of Duboisine, which have been recently introduced. They are given in the same quantities as atropine salts.

Therapeutic Uses.—The numerous changes produced by atropine and its congeners on the organism would indicate for them a very wide sphere of usefulness were it possible to elicit their action on one organ without affecting others and this difficulty may perhaps be overcome in the future, when the different individuals of the series have been more carefully compared, and new tropeines and other modifications of the tropine radicle are available in therapeutics.

The peripheral action of the whole series, as far as it is at present known, is so uniform that any member might be used to elicit it, but the only one that has come into general use for its peripheral effects is atropine. The purposes for which atropine is employed may be divided into groups as follows:

To Arrest or Lessen Secretions. — In rare cases of excessive *salivation* atropine has proved of service, but it is much more frequently used to lessen the *perspiration*, especially in the later stages of phthisis. For this purpose comparatively small quantities, such as $\frac{1}{4}$ mg. ($\frac{1}{250}$ gr.) given by the mouth or hypodermically are generally sufficient, or the extract or tincture of belladonna may be used instead. In local sweating, it is often applied locally in the form of an ointment, liniment, or plaster, although Tappeiner has found that it has no effect when thus employed. Atropine is also used to arrest the secretion of the *milk*, for although it has not the immediate effects on the mammary that it possesses on the salivary glands, the secretion is diminished and eventually ceases under its influence, which prevents the gland receiving any stimulation from the central nervous system. Belladonna is usually applied locally for this purpose in the form of the plaster, or less commonly of the ointment or liniment.

To Paralyze the Cardiac Inhibitory Terminations. — For this purpose a slightly larger quantity is required than is necessary to stop the secretions, and the administration of sufficient atropine to paralyze the vagus (1 mg.) therefore involves unpleasant dryness of the throat and difficulty in swallowing. In cases where slowing of the heart tends to be dangerous in itself, more especially in poisoning with certain substances to be discussed later, atropine is indicated. It may also be used for diagnostic purposes, to find if bradycardia is due to disease of the heart muscle or to inhibition. It may be repeated here that the resultant quickening is much less in old than in middle-aged people, and it is said that in many cases of old valvular lesion the administration of atropine is followed by little or no acceleration. Some forms of intermission of the pulse are due to unusual activity of the inhibitory apparatus, and these may be remedied by atropine; but this intermission possesses little importance, and seems to require no therapeutic treatment. Atropine may be used to diagnose it from the more significant forms present in organic disease of the heart. The use of atropine to paralyze the vagus terminations before the administration of an anæsthetic has been discussed already. (See page 176.)

To Paralyze the Terminations of the Motor Nerves in the Iris and Ciliary Muscles. — It is used for this purpose largely in ophthalmology as a means of diagnosis and of treatment, and the precise conditions in which it is indicated may be treated better in text-books on this subject than here. For these objects, solutions of the alkaloidal salts are generally applied to the conjunctiva, when enough of the alkaloid passes into the eye by a process of imbibition to produce marked local effects without affecting more distant organs. In order to dilate the pupil, extremely dilute solutions are used; a few drops of a solution of one in

1,000, or even of one in 10,000, are quite sufficient. Much stronger solutions are required to paralyze the accommodation, and as a general rule 1 per cent. is used. These strong solutions produce complete paralysis in 1–1½ hours, and the accommodation does not recover completely until after 5–7 days, while the pupil may not regain its normal size for 10–14 days. The application of even weaker atropine solution renders the sight imperfect for an inconveniently long period, and hyoscine and homatropine are therefore much used in its stead. The symptoms produced by a 1 per cent. solution of homatropine pass off, or at any rate become very much less marked in the course of 36 hours. These are consequently preferable for diagnostic purposes, while atropine is rather to be used where it is desirable to produce a paralysis of longer duration, as in various inflammatory conditions of the iris or cornea. Atropine is also preferable where complete paralysis of the accommodation is necessary, as homatropine often fails to effect this. Atropine and its congeners are contraindicated where there is any suspicion of glaucoma, as, owing to their action on the intraocular pressure, they may either aggravate the disease already present or precipitate an acute attack. When dilatation of the pupil is necessary and there is reason to apprehend the results on the intraocular pressure, homatropine should be employed as its effects can be readily controlled by eserine. Numerous cases of poisoning have arisen from the extensive use of atropine in diseased conditions of the eye. It is often asserted that it passes down with the tears through the lachrymal duct and is absorbed from the nose, throat and stomach, but as a matter of fact it may be absorbed from the conjunctiva itself. The symptoms are generally only the milder ones of atropine poisoning — dryness of the throat and slight excitement — but dangerous and even fatal poisoning has also arisen from its local application. In many cases this is due to the application of unnecessarily strong solutions to the eye, but, on the other hand, some patients seem abnormally sensitive to the action of atropine, and hyoscine, or better homatropine, ought to be preferred. In rare cases a curious inflammatory condition of the conjunctiva is set up by atropine, and this is often supposed to be due to the use of irritant preparations, but sometimes seems to follow the application of the absolutely pure alkaloid, and is apparently an idiosyncrasy; it may, perhaps, be explained by the arrest of the ordinary secretions of the lachrymal gland and conjunctiva in these cases. Sometimes discs of gelatin impregnated with atropine or homatropine sulphate (B. P.) are applied to the conjunctiva instead of solutions of the salts.

To Relax Spasm of the Intestines. — In various forms of colic atropine is of very great service in lessening pain and allowing the passage of the intestinal contents; for instance, it is preferable to morphine in lead colic, as it does not cause constipation. Hernia and volvulus are sometimes reduced by atropine injected hypodermically (3 mg. or $\frac{1}{20}$ gr.). It is often prescribed along with purgatives in order to lessen the griping which they produce, and has been used as a laxative in

some forms of constipation with considerable success. For action on the bowel it is generally prescribed in pill form as one of the extracts of belladonna or hyoscyamus. The object of prescribing an impure preparation instead of the alkaloid is to allow of a strong local action along the intestinal wall along with a slow and imperfect absorption, as the pure alkaloidal salts are liable to be absorbed in the stomach.

To Relax Spasms of the Involuntary Muscles of Other Organs. — In the spasmodic contraction of the ureters and bile ducts due to calculi, atropine is occasionally prescribed either in the form of a pill or in solution for internal use, or by hypodermic application. In some forms of asthma supposed to be due to contraction of the bronchial muscles, atropine has been applied locally by means of a spray or given internally, and stramonium leaves are often found of benefit when made up into cigarettes and inhaled when the attack comes on. Some cases of asthma are said to have been permanently cured by treatment with atropine internally. An ointment of atropine has also been applied to the cervix uteri with the hope of relaxing spasm during labor, but the results are somewhat questionable. Perhaps this action in relaxing spasmodic contractions of nervous origin may also explain the beneficial effects obtained in cases of incontinence of urine in children in which belladonna has long been the most reliable remedy.

To Lessen Pain. — Belladonna liniment, plaster and ointment have long enjoyed a considerable reputation as local anodynes and atropine has not infrequently been injected into painful areas. This anodyne action is very weak compared with that of cocaine, however, and the preparations of atropine have been less used of late years. In some forms of gastralgia atropine has also been suggested.

The Effects on the Central Nervous System of the members of this group are very different, and the purposes for which they are used are diametrically opposite. Atropine is used as a stimulant in various conditions of depression of the brain and medulla oblongata. Thus, in collapse its hypodermic injection may be of use to stimulate the respiratory and vaso-constrictor centres, and at the same time to free the heart from excessive inhibition. In dangerous poisoning from narcotic and hypnotic drugs, more especially in opium poisoning, atropine has been largely used. A long and weary dispute as to the value of atropine in those cases has been carried on, for the history of which the reader is referred to the recent paper by Bashford. The results indicate that atropine is useful in morphine poisoning through stimulating the respiratory centre, which is the danger point. But it must be employed in small quantities (1.5 mg. or $\frac{1}{40}$ gr.) as large doses, such as have frequently been advised, tend to depress the central nervous system and thus to aid rather than to antagonize the action of morphine on the respiration. It may be questioned whether in any case atropine may not be replaced by caffeine with advantage. The former stimulates the medullary centres but subsequently paralyzes them, while caffeine, even in comparatively large quantities, does not seem to have a depressant action in man.

Atropine at one time had some reputation in the treatment of epilepsy. It has been shown both clinically and experimentally that this reputation was undeserved, the number of attacks and their violence being rather increased than diminished by its exhibition. Possibly the belief in its powers arose from the use of impure preparations containing hyoscyamine or hyoscine.

In some spasmodic diseases, such as whooping-cough, belladonna preparations have long enjoyed a wide reputation; a possible explanation is that the hyoscyamine may allay the spasms by reducing the excitability of the respiratory centre.

Hyoscyamine and more recently hyoscine or scopolamine have been used as narcotics to depress the central nervous system; they are said to be of great efficacy in insanity, producing sound and refreshing sleep, but are of less value in controlling the excitement during the day, and may, in fact, increase it. Hyoscine is also used with benefit in various forms of tremor of central origin, and is said to lessen sexual excitement. Its hypnotic action does not seem to be of the same nature as that of opium, for in sleeplessness produced by pain it is of comparatively little value, and it has no power to relieve pain itself. It differs from chloral in not producing deep sleep, for patients under the influence of hyoscine can always be aroused and are much less confused than after chloral. The special indications for hyoscine seem to be sleeplessness due to abnormal activity of the motor areas, and some forms of tremor.

Poisoning.—In cases of poisoning with belladonna and its allies the treatment is purely symptomatic. In the excitement stage sedatives may be used; perhaps chloroform and ether are best, as their effects are more transient than the others. Morphine has been advised, but its action on the respiratory centre renders its use dangerous, as in severe atropine poisoning the stimulation soon passes into depression, and the effects of the poison and its so-called antidote therefore supplement each other. Chloroform and ether, on the other hand, may be used to control the spasms and then stopped when these pass off. In the depression stage caffeine may be used, and eventually artificial respiration.

Bibliography.

Bezold u. Bloebaum. Untersuch. a. d. physiol. Laborator. zu Würzburg, i., p. 1.
Keuchel. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1868.
Heidenhain. Pflüger's Archiv, v., p. 309, and ix., p. 335.
Luchsinger. Ibid., xv., p. 482; xviii., p. 587, and xxvi., p. 459.
Albertoni. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xv., p. 258.
Hammerbacher. Pflüger's Arch., xxxiii., p. 228.
Mironow. Arch. de Scienc. biologique, iii., p. 353.
Binz. Centralbl. f. klin. Med., 1893, p. 25.
Ott. Therap. Gaz., 1887, p. 511.
Alms. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1888, p. 416.
Surminsky. Ztschr. f. rat. Med., xxxvi., p. 205.
Bayliss and Starling. Journ. of Physiol., xxiv., p. 99.
Riegel. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxxvii., p. 381.
Schiff. Arch. f. Verdauungskrankh., vi., p. 107.
Gottlieb. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvii., p. 218.

Rabow. Therap. Monatsheft, 1893, p. 410. (Duboisine.)
Heubach. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., viii., p. 31.
Graser. Ibid., xvii., p. 329.
Lenhartz. Ibid., xxii., p. 337.
Vollmer. Ibid., xxx., p. 385.
Levison. Berl. klin. Woch., 1894, p. 891.
Orlowski. Diss., Dorpat, 1891.
Muller. Diss., Dorpat, 1891.
Mathews. Am. Journ. of Physiol., iv., p. 482.
Wood. Therap. Gaz., 1885, p. 1. (Hyoscine.)
Kobert. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxii., p. 396. (Hyoscine.)
De Stella. Arch. de Pharmacodynamique, iii., p. 381.
Friedländer. Therap. Monats., 1894, p. 533. (Hyoscine.)
Schiller. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxviii., p. 71.
Anrep. Pflüger's Archiv, xxi., p. 78.
Schultz. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1898, p. 53.
Thompson. Ibid., 1894, p. 117.
Walti. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvi., p. 411.
Stricker u. Spina. Wiener Sitzungsbericht, Math.-nat. Classe, lxxx., Abt. iii., p. 117.
Spiro. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxviii., p. 113.
Wicchowski. Ibid., xlvi., p. 154.
Hedbom. Skandin. Arch. f. Phys., viii., p. 171.
Compare also the Literature of pilocarpine and muscarine, nicotine and physostigmine.

Agaricin.[1]

White Agaric (Agaricus albus, Boletus Laricis), a fungus growing on the European larch tree, was formerly a purgative and antihydrotic of some repute. Its use to lessen the perspiration (antihydrotic) has been revived of late years, or rather a preparation known as agaricin and containing the active principle has been introduced into therapeutics. Agaric or Agaricinic acid, the active constituent, belongs to the malic acid series and has the formula $C_{14}H_{27}(OH)(COOH)_2$.

Action.—Both the acid and its sodium salt irritate the mucous membranes and wounded surfaces, and cause inflammation and even suppuration when injected subcutaneously. Large quantities irritate the stomach and intestine and cause vomiting and purging, but these are more liable to arise from the impure agaricin owing to its containing resinous acids. Injected into the frog, agaric acid paralyzes the central nervous system, weakens the heart and stops the secretion of the skin glands. In mammals the intravenous injection of agaric acid is followed by depression, weakness, dyspnœa and death. The medulla oblongata is first stimulated and then paralyzed, as is shown by the blood-pressure first rising and then falling to zero, while the heart is primarily slowed by inhibitory action and later regains its rhythm, to eventually fail after the arrest of the breathing. Animals can only be poisoned with difficulty by the subcutaneous injection of agaricin, and no general symptoms are elicited when it is administered by the mouth.

The most interesting feature of the action of agaric salts is the arrest of the sweat secretion, which is caused by peripheral action, for stimulation of the nerves of the cat's foot fails to elicit perspiration after its ingestion. It thus acts on the same peripheral mechanism as atropine in all probability, that is, on the terminations of the secretory nerves, but differs from atropine in acting only in the sweat glands, for the

[1] Agaricin does not resemble atropine in its general action, nor in its chemical properties, but it may be inserted at this point until these are more fully elucidated.

Chief action of Agaricin is paralysing term. of Sweat gland Nvs - does not affect other glands.

saliva, tears and other secretions are not hindered by it, and may, in fact, be increased by its causing nausea. It is also devoid of action on the nerve terminations in the heart and pupil. Atropine acts much more powerfully than agaric acid, at least twenty times as much of the latter being required to arrest the sweat secretion.

Uses.—Agaricin is used in the night sweats of phthisis and other similar conditions and is generally given in pill form in doses of 5–60 mgs. ($\frac{1}{12}$–1 gr.). The commercial agaricin often contains a large percentage of impurities and has to be given in larger quantities, but the treatment ought to be begun with small doses. Tolerance is said to be acquired after some time, and the dose has then to be increased. The best results are got when the pills are taken 5–6 hours before retiring, as the acid is only slowly absorbed. If agaricin causes intestinal irritation and diarrhœa it may be given with opium, but as in phthisis all irritation of the bowel is to be avoided, the remedy ought perhaps to be stopped when any such disturbance arises.

Other antihydrotics are atropine and camphoric acid. Agaricin is preferable to atropine, because the latter tends to cause dryness of the throat and other symptoms when it is given for some time even in very small doses.

Bibliography.

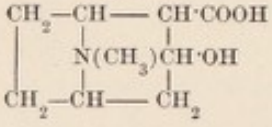
Hofmeister. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxv., p. 189.

XIV. COCAINE.

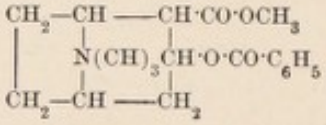
Cocaine is a comparatively recent addition to therapeutics, although the coca plant has been in use in South America for centuries. It is indigenous there, but has been introduced into India, Ceylon and Java. The leaves of the coca grown in Peru and Bolivia contain cocaine along with small quantities of other alkaloids, but the India coca and still more the Java leaves contain a smaller proportion of cocaine and a larger amount of the less known alkaloids.

Cocaine, like atropine, is readily decomposed into several constituents. On heating it with water, methyl alcohol is thrown off, leaving *Benzoyl-ecgonine*, which may be further broken up into benzoic acid and *Ecgonine*, a pyridine derivative.

Ecgonine.



Cocaine.



Cocaine is capable of being changed in several different parts of its structure. Thus ethyl or propyl may be substituted for the methyl group, the benzoyl radicle may be replaced by various others, such as cinnamyl, and so on. Many artificial cocaines have been formed in this way, and several of these have since been found in the cultivated plant, as for example *Cinnamyl-cocaine*, in which cinnamyl occupies the position of benzoyl in the above formula Various other alkaloids, such as *Cocamine*, *Isococamine*, *Homococa-*

mine and *Homoisococamine* are also present; all of these contain the ecgonine molecule in combination with various acids, and cocaine may be formed from all of them by isolating the ecgonine and combining it with benzoic acid and methyl. These alkaloids are present in the plant in very small quantities compared with cocaine and have not been used therapeutically.[1] Another alkaloid which has been found in the Java coca is *Tropacocaine*, which is a combination of benzoic acid and a base ($C_8H_{15}NO$) which was formerly supposed to be identical with the pseudotropine derived from hyoscine, but has been shown to be of different constitution. It will be observed that the formula of ecgonine resembles very closely that of atropine, each containing the same nucleus, but differing slightly in the radicles attached to it.

The most important effects of cocaine are those on the central nervous system and on the sensory nerves.

Symptoms.—The symptoms of cocaine poisoning in man vary a good deal in different individuals. In most cases small quantities produce some excitement, pleasurable or disagreeable. The patient is generally restless and more garrulous than in ordinary life, often somewhat anxious and confused. But very often a small dose is followed by a calm, languorous state, somewhat resembling that induced by small quantities of morphine, but differing from it in there being less tendency to sleep. The pulse is accelerated, the respiration is quick and deep, the pupil generally dilated, and headache and dryness of the throat are often complained of. The reflexes may be found somewhat more easily excited than usual and tremors or slight convulsive movements often occur. Later powerful tonic or clonic convulsions supervene, the heart becomes extremely accelerated, the breathing becomes rapid and dyspnœic and may be finally arrested during a convulsion. In other cases the convulsive seizures are almost entirely absent and fainting and collapse occur. The skin is cyanotic and cold, the heart slow and weak; the respiration is very much depressed and death follows from its gradual cessation. Vomiting is occasionally seen at an early stage, but is not by any means common.

In the dog, cat and rabbit the symptoms are invariably those of stimulation of the central nervous system. Soon after the injection, the animal shows symptoms of great restlessness and excitement; it seems unable to keep still, the dog at first showing all the signs of affection and excitement which he displays on ordinary occasions on being unchained or taken for a walk, but afterwards running continually in a circle and paying but little heed to anything around him. Still later regular convulsions occur, and these are at first clonic but may afterwards become tonic, and then resemble those seen in strychnine poisoning. Even before the convulsions appear the animal seems partially unconscious, and in the intervals between them he lies in an apathetic state, which soon deepens to coma and death from asphyxia.

In the frog a certain amount of stimulation of the central nervous system is often displayed after small doses—increased movement, exaggerated reflex and occasionally convulsions—but these soon pass into

[1] *Hygrine*, which was formerly supposed to be present in coca leaves, has been shown not to exist in them.

depression and eventually total paralysis of the central nervous system, while the peripheral nerves still maintain their functions.

General Action.—Many of these symptoms point to a stimulant action on the **Central Nervous System**, resembling closely that seen in atropine poisoning. Thus the garrulity which is so often produced by cocaine, indicates an increased activity of the cerebrum, and the increased movement in the lower animals distinctly points to an affection of this part of the brain, for the movements are perfectly coördinated, and, in fact, in the early stages resemble exactly those performed by the normal animal in a condition of excitement. Further evidence of the action of cocaine on the cerebrum is offered by its effects on muscular work. The natives of Peru and Bolivia have used it for centuries to increase their endurance of fatigue. The bearers of the Andes, for example, march for hours and days with very little rest or food when they are supplied with coca leaves to chew. The effects of cocaine on the muscular power and on fatigue have been investigated also by means of the ergograph and dynamometer, and all observers are at one in asserting that much more work can be done after cocaine than before it, and that it has a surprising potency in removing fatigue. As regards mental work, its effects are less known, but on the analogy of caffeine it may be supposed to increase the mental powers also when taken in small quantities. Some travellers in South America relate marvellous tales of its producing feelings of the highest bliss and power, but these have not been confirmed by experience in the action of cocaine in less romantic regions of the globe. Cocaine in small quantities, then, increases the higher functions of the cerebrum, while in somewhat larger doses the stimulant effect spreads to the lower areas and produces a very great increase in movement, accompanied, it would seem, by a depression of the consciousness. At the same time, the coördinating or balancing powers seem affected, so that the animal generally moves in a circle, the symptoms resembling the forced movements often seen in affections of the cerebellum.

The motor areas of the cerebrum have been found to be more easily stimulated by the electric shock when cocaine is injected, though when it is painted on the surface of the brain it lowers the irritability, owing to its action as a general protoplasm poison. Still larger quantities induce convulsions, which are not of spinal origin, but point rather to action on some undetermined part of the hind brain. At an early stage the medulla oblongata is affected, as is shown by the quickened respiration, and the exaggerated reflexes indicate stimulation of the spinal cord, which may be so great after very large doses as to cause convulsions like those produced by strychnine. The action of cocaine on the central nervous system is primarily a descending stimulation, the cerebrum being first affected, then the hind brain and medulla oblongata, and last of all the spinal cord. Perhaps it might be better expressed by saying that after small quantities the chief symptoms arise from the cerebrum, but as the dose is increased those from the lower parts of the central axis tend to become more prominent. After the stimu-

lation there succeeds depression, which follows the stimulation downwards, affecting first the cerebrum and then the lower divisions. The two stages are not definitely divided, however, one part of the cerebrum often showing distinct depression, while another is still in a condition of excessive activity. In some cases, especially in man, the stage of excitement may be very short or apparently entirely absent, and the whole course of the symptoms then points to depression.

The **Respiration** after cocaine is much accelerated owing to central stimulation. At first the depth of the movement is not changed, but as the acceleration progresses, the air inspired with each breath gradually becomes less. During the convulsions the respiration is irregular or ceases, but it recovers again in the intervals, until after a very violent paroxysm it fails to be reinstated. In other cases the breathing becomes slower and weaker after a time, and eventually stops from paralysis of the centre. Periodic respiration is frequently seen, of the form generally known as Cheyne-Stokes'. (See Morphine, p. 213.)

The **Circulation** is altered by cocaine owing to its action on the heart and on the vessels. The heart is much accelerated in mammals, while in the amphibians this is less often observed. The quickening has been ascribed to paralysis of the inhibitory terminations, but this seems not to be the case, for stimulation of the vagus slows the heart even late in the poisoning. The heart is accelerated, then, either by direct action of the muscle or by stimulation of the accelerator mechanism. It is often slow before death, but apparently not invariably, and this is probably due to direct action on the muscle. In the frog's heart the inhibitory apparatus is paralyzed, the ganglia being affected in the same way as by coniine and other drugs.

The vessels are much contracted in the earlier stages of poisoning, and this, together with the increased rate of the heart, leads to a very considerable rise in the blood-pressure. The constriction of the vessels seems partly due to stimulation of the vaso-constrictor centre, for section of the splanchnic nerves leads to an immediate depression of the arterial tension. But cocaine also exercises a direct action on the vessel walls, for its local application leads to constriction of the vessels and blanching of the mucous membranes. It has not been determined as yet how far this direct action on the vessel walls affects the blood-pressure when cocaine is absorbed or when it is injected intravenously. The blood-pressure subsequently falls, apparently from peripheral action, if Anrep's assertion that stimulation of the splanchnic then produces no further rise of pressure be correct.

The effects on the peripheral **Nerves and Muscles** are disputed, for Mosso states that small quantities increase the strength of the muscular contractions on electrical stimulation both in man and animals, while others have failed to obtain any such effect.

After the injection of cocaine, Anrep observed marked pallor of the **Intestine** and powerful peristalsis, while very large doses caused dilatation of the mesenteric vessels and lessened the movements of the bowel probably through paralyzing the local nervous mechanism.

The **Urine** is sometimes said to be increased by cocaine, while in other instances its injection has been followed by total anuria lasting for several hours. This suggests that the action is not a direct one on the kidney, but is caused merely through the changes in the calibre of the vessels.

The other **Secretions** seem rather decreased than augmented, but no very marked effects are produced on them.

The **Temperature** is generally increased in cases of poisoning, sometimes rising as much as 3–5° C. above the normal, apparently from some disorder of the heat-regulating centres of the brain. Langlois and Richet observed that the higher the temperature of the animal, the more easily were convulsions produced by cocaine and the more severe their type.

It used to be supposed that cocaine retarded the **Tissue Change** and that less food was required when it was supplied. This was based on the statement of the endurance of the natives of South America when they were allowed to chew coca leaves, and on the discovery that the leaves also allay hunger to some degree. But the increase in the working power is due to the effects on the central nervous system, while the craving for food is probably lessened owing to the cocaine inducing numbness of the sensory nerves of the stomach through its local action.

A curious effect of cocaine, noted by Ehrlich in mice, is a widespread destruction of the hepatic cells, which become vacuolated and often necrosed. The liver is much increased in size and looks pale from fatty infiltration, which is also present, but which is not so characteristic as the vacuoles.

Some cocaine is **Excreted** by the kidney in the dog when it is absorbed into the blood, but 95 per cent. of that ingested is destroyed in the tissues, and this is the fate of all of it in the rabbit, in which this oxidation proceeds very rapidly. It is unknown whether it is oxidized in man, who is much more susceptible to its action than these animals.

Local Action. — Cocaine applied locally in most parts of the body produces a loss of sensation through its paralyzing the **Terminations of some of the Sensory Nerves**, particularly those conveying impressions of pain and touch. It is often stated that the end organs of the nerves concerned with the feeling of heat and cold are also disorganized, but the exact researches of Kiesow show that this is incorrect, and that heat and cold are recognized as readily as in the unaffected parts of the body. Cocaine applied to the tongue removes the taste of bitter substances, while sweet and acid fluids lose their taste only partially, and salt is recognized as easily as usual.[1] A solution applied to the nasal mucous membrane paralyzes the sense of smell entirely. The anæsthesia or insensibility to pain and touch may be induced in any of the mucous membranes that can be reached by cocaine in sufficient concentration, pharynx, larynx, œsophagus, stomach, nose, eye, urethra, bladder,

[1] A curious contrast is presented in this respect by gymnemic acid, which is obtained from the Gymnema silvestre, and which removes the sensation of sweetness, while "bitter" is less affected and "acid" and "salt" are recognized as readily as usual. Gymnemic acid does not affect any other sense organs, as far as is known, and is, in fact, devoid of interest, except as regards its effect on taste.

vagina and rectum. Applied to the unbroken skin its effects are less marked, as it penetrates but slowly through the horny epidermis ; but when the epidermis is removed by abrasions or by skin disease, the cutaneous organs of sensation are acted on in the same way as those of the mucous membranes. The deeper sensory terminations can also be acted on by hypodermic injection, which causes a feeling of numbness and the relief of pain in the part. Hypodermic injection reaches not only the nerve terminations of the subcutaneous tissues, but also the finer nerve bundles, and these too are rendered insensible as far as the solution extends to them. The part may therefore be cut into or be subjected to other surgical treatment without pain, as long as the knife does not pass beyond the area to which the drug has penetrated, and numbers of grave surgical operations have been performed under the local anæsthesia produced by cocaine. Injected into the neighborhood of a nerve trunk, cocaine penetrates into the fibres and induces anæsthesia of the organs supplied by the nerve, and injected into the spinal canal, causes anæsthesia over large areas of the body, sometimes over almost the whole body ; this is probably due to its acting on the posterior roots of the cord. It must be noted that the anæsthesia is only produced by the local application of the drug. The internal administration only leads to a partial loss of sensation in the throat and stomach, and no anæsthesia is induced by its action after it reaches the blood vessels. The reason for this evidently is that in order to paralyze the sensory fibres and terminations a considerable amount of the drug is required, but much less is necessary to paralyze the central nervous system. Even in the frog, the sensory terminations are not fully paralyzed until all symptoms of reflex excitability have disappeared and total paralysis has supervened.

A good deal of discussion has arisen as to whether the action on the sensory terminations is a specific one, or whether they are paralyzed before the motor endings simply because the cocaine comes in contact with them first—whether, in fact, if both endings were exposed equally to the action of the drug, as occurs when it is distributed by the blood vessels, the sensory terminations would be specifically attacked and the motor left unaffected. The action was at first supposed to be a specific one on the sensory terminations, and it was stated that cocaine acted on the sensory terminations in the same selective way as curara does on the motor endings. There seems, however, to be no ground for supposing that this is the case. At the same time cocaine possesses a distinct selective power for the sensory nerve trunks conveying sensations of pain, for when it is injected into the spinal canal, there is often complete insensibility to pain while warmth, cold and touch sensations are still perceived and the motor functions are unchanged.

When cocaine is applied locally to a mucous membrane it produces, besides a loss of sensation, a feeling of constriction and a distinct pallor and contraction of the vessels, which points to a local action on the vessel walls.

The anæsthesia produced by cocaine is comparatively short, but varies with the strength of the solution applied and with the vascularity of the part ; as soon as the cocaine is absorbed, the local action disappears and sensation returns.

Cocaine is applied to the **Eye** more frequently than to any other part. It produces local anæsthesia here, along with contraction of the conjunctival vessels, and this is followed by dilatation of the pupil and often by partial loss of the power of accommodation. The dilatation of the pupil is much less than that produced by atropine, and differs from it in several respects. Thus, the light-reflex is preserved, the pupil contracting in bright light and dilating further in the dark; a number of drugs which have little or no effect after atropine, contract the cocainized pupil (pilocarpine, muscarine, physostigmine), while atropine dilates it still further, and cocaine produces some dilatation after the full atropine action has been elicited. It is evident, then, that the two drugs produce dilatation by acting on different mechanisms, and although the way in which cocaine dilates the pupil has been

FIG. 28.

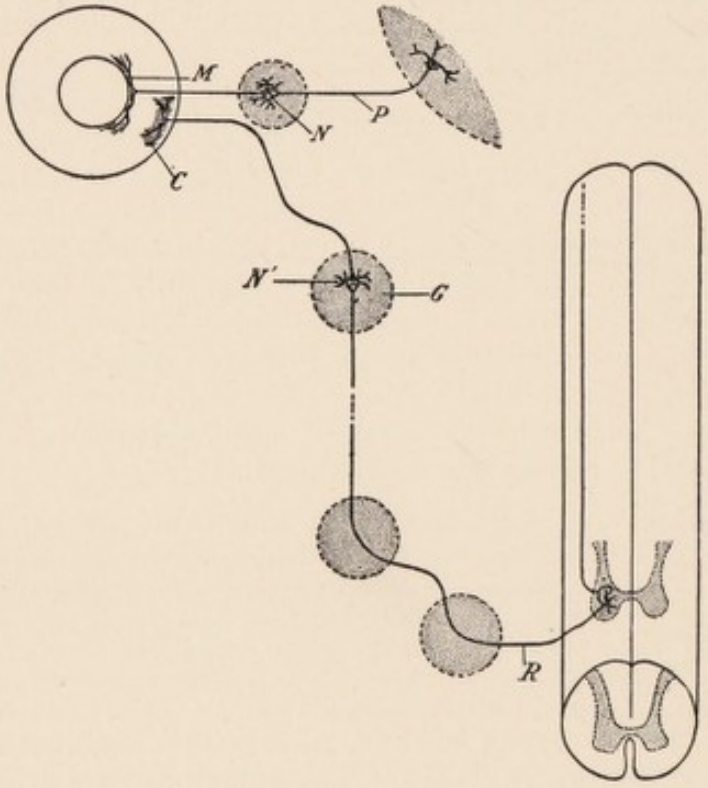


Diagram of the innervation of the iris. *P*, a fibre of the motor oculi passing from the brain to the ciliary ganglion *N*, in which it terminates around a nerve cell, which sends an axis cylinder to terminate, *M*, in the circular fibres of the iris. *R*, a spinal nerve fibre issuing from the lower cervical cord, running through the stellate and inferior cervical ganglia and terminating around a ganglion cell in the superior cervical ganglion, *G*. The axis cylinder from this nerve cell runs to the iris (passing the ciliary ganglion) and terminates in fibrils *C*, on the radiating fibres. *C*, is the point which cocaine stimulates and the resultant contraction of the muscle fibres causes dilation of the pupil, but when strong impulses descend to *M*, as happens when the eye is exposed to bright light, the circular muscle overcomes the weaker radiating fibres, and the pupil is contracted. In the same way strong stimulation of *M* by muscarine overcomes the stimulation of *C* by cocaine, while, on the other hand, when *M* is paralyzed by atropine and the circular fibres are thus thrown out of action, the radiating muscles are unopposed, and cocaine causes a greater dilatation than in the normal eye.

a matter of dispute, the great majority of investigators now hold that it stimulates the terminations of the dilator fibres. (Fig. 28.) The motor oculi is not involved in its effects, unless very large quantities are applied, when its terminations may be depressed in the same way

as by atropine (Schultz). A strong argument in favor of the view given above has been found in the observation that when the dilator nerves degenerate, owing to removal of the superior cervical ganglion, cocaine fails to cause dilatation of the pupil.

Several other symptoms are produced by the local application of cocaine to the eye, at any rate in some instances. Thus, the iris vessels are sometimes much constricted, the eye is more widely open than usual, so that the white sclerotic is seen above and below the iris, the whole eyeball is pushed forward (exophthalmos), and the intraocular tension is said to be considerably reduced. All of these features are produced only after cocaine has been applied in considerable quantity and for some time, and may be due, at any rate in part, to its absorption. They may all be observed in the unpoisoned animal when the cervical sympathetic trunk is stimulated, and therefore seem to indicate a special action of cocaine on the centres or terminations of this nerve. All of these symptoms, except the anæsthesia and the pallor of the conjunctiva and iris, are produced by the injection of cocaine as well as by its local application, but in this case are prevented by previous section of the cervical sympathetic. Cocaine does not produce any dilatation of the pupil in birds.

Cocaine brought into immediate contact with nerve terminations paralyzes them, but this is true for so many other forms of living matter that it may be regarded as a **General Protoplasm Poison.** Thus muscles, nerves, and nerve ends cease to contract or to conduct stimuli when they are exposed to even very dilute solutions of cocaine; the ciliated epithelial cells, leucocytes, and spermatozoa become motionless; the cortical nerve cells lose their excitability, and many of the invertebrates are killed by even a short exposure to cocaine. The movements of protoplasm in plants are also retarded or entirely suppressed by this poison, and the process of putrefaction is delayed considerably. In some cases, notably in the higher invertebrates, the final depression is preceded by a stage of increased movement, and it is said that the irritability of nerve is also augmented at first. In other instances, however, cocaine induces only depression and paralysis.

Other examples of this destructive action are also seen in the therapeutic use of cocaine, for the cornea is often rendered somewhat cloudy from its application, and its subcutaneous injection is sometimes followed by necrosis. Victims of the cocaine habit often show numerous scars on the arms and legs from this local gangrene, although this is probably often due to unsterilized syringes rather than to the solution.

Most of the other natural alkaloids resemble cocaine in many points of their action, as far as they have been investigated, but some of the artificial compounds present divergences from the general type. Thus a number of them do not produce anæsthesia, although most of the nearly allied forms cause the characteristic changes in the liver cells; some of them depart entirely from the typical cocaine action.

Cocamine is often said to be a cardiac poison, but its action on the heart seems to resemble in general that of cocaine. It has, however, a much more

intense action on muscular tissue, which it, like caffeine, throws into rigor mortis. Its anæsthetic power is very small.

Benzoylecgonine is a comparatively weak body, which produces symptoms resembling caffeine—increased reflex excitability, muscular stiffness, and rigor—and *ecgonine* is still less active, but elicits in frogs similar effects.

Some authorities regard the muscular action of caffeine as an important factor in its preventing fatigue, and the presence of cocaine in the coca leaves might be used to explain the similar effects induced by these, but the quantity is probably too small to have any noticeable action.

Tropacocaine resembles cocaine very closely in its general action, but is less poisonous. It produces local anæsthesia more rapidly but for a shorter time than cocaine, and causes less dilatation of the pupil.

Preparations.

Coca (U. S. P.), the dried leaves of Erythroxylon coca, containing $\frac{1}{5}$–1 per cent. of cocaine.

Extractum Cocæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 2–4 c.c. ($\frac{1}{2}$–1 fl. dr.).

Extractum Cocæ Liquidum (B. P.), $\frac{1}{2}$–1 fl. dr.

Cocaina (B. P.), an alkaloid ($C_{17}H_{21}NO_4$) obtained from the leaves of Erythroxylon coca and its varieties, forming colorless crystals with a bitter taste followed by numbness; insoluble in water, soluble in alcohol.

Cocainæ Hydrochloras (U. S. P.), Cocainæ Hydrochloridum (B. P.) ($C_{17}H_{21}NO_4HCl$), colorless crystals, very soluble in water and in alcohol; watery solutions cannot be boiled as the alkaloid tends to decompose, 0.01–0.06 G. ($\frac{1}{6}$–1 gr.).

Lamellæ Cocainæ (B. P.), each contains $\frac{1}{30}$ gr. of the hydrochloride.

Injectio Cocainæ Hypodermica (B. P.), 10 per cent., 2–5 mins.

Unguentum Cocainæ (B. P.), 4 per cent.

Trochisci Krameriæ et Cocainæ (B. P.), each contains $\frac{1}{20}$ gr. of the hydrochloride.

The Therapeutic Uses of cocaine are almost all dependent on its anæsthetic action. It has been suggested as a brain stimulant in various conditions of mental depression, but has not been widely used for this purpose, which is better served by the less dangerous caffeine. A wine containing coca extract is often used in domestic medicine as a "general tonic," and has repeatedly given rise to the cocaine habit.

Its anæsthetic properties render it extremely important. In ophthalmic surgery it is used very largely both during operations and to alleviate pain, and occasionally to constrict the vessels of the iris in inflammatory conditions. For complete anæsthesia a 4 per cent. solution may be employed, while to allay pain one of 1–2 per cent. is all that is necessary. The anæsthesia is of short duration, generally setting in after 5–7 minutes and passing off 20–30 minutes after the application of the drug. Occasionally cocaine, especially in strong solution, produces a certain amount of opacity of the cornea, and it is stated that wounds heal less readily, and irritant antiseptics are more dangerous with cocaine than without it. This may sometimes be due to the use of impure cocaine, but it may be noted that cocaine is a protoplasm poison, and may therefore lessen the resistance of the tissues with which it comes in contact. The usual explanation given that cocaine paralyzes sensation in the cornea, and thus prevents the reflex winking

which removes foreign bodies from the surface and keeps the eye moist, is obviously insufficient, as the anæsthesia is of but short duration. The dilatation of the pupil produced by cocaine is much less complete than that under atropine, and can only be taken advantage of in diagnosis by using very dim light, as the pupil contracts in bright light almost to its normal size. On the other hand cocaine is much less injurious in glaucoma and the dilatation can be removed at once by the instillation of a few drops of physostigmine.

In the nose, throat and larynx, cocaine is used in a solution of 4 per cent., sometimes 10–20 per cent., and anæsthesia is obtained with greater difficulty than in the eye, but the local contraction of the vessels is often of great service. Cocaine is used largely in operative procedure here and also in the treatment of irritable conditions of the respiratory passages, such as hay fever. In the urethra, rectum and vagina, cocaine may also be used either as an anæsthetic or to relieve pain temporarily. It is sometimes of service in painful or itching skin diseases, but care must be taken not to apply it to large broken surfaces, otherwise symptoms of poisoning may follow. The local action on the stomach is often valuable in checking vomiting due to gastric irritation.

For many years after its introduction as a local anæsthetic in 1884, its use was practically limited to minor operations in the nose and throat and to ophthalmic surgery, few general surgeons venturing on its application in other fields. Within the last few years, however, its use has undergone a wide extension, so that almost all the major surgical operations have been performed under it and local anæsthesia by means of cocaine or eucaine has now become a rival of ether and chloroform. Occasionally partial local anæsthesia is combined with the administration of small quantities of chloroform or ether, which are insufficient to produce complete unconsciousness, but cause a numbing of the sensation, which, together with the local action, permits of a painless operation. At first strong solutions were injected to prepare the way for the knife, each step forward in the operation being preceded by an injection of cocaine to induce anæsthesia of the layer of tissue to be incised. But this method, which has been used chiefly by Reclus, required dangerous quantities of the drug, and is now scarcely used except for minor operations in which a single injection is sufficient. A more satisfactory method of local anæsthesia for operative purposes has been introduced by Schleich under the name of "infiltration anæsthesia." A large quantity, sometimes as much as 200 c.c., of a solution containing 0.01 per cent.[1] of cocaine and 0.8 per cent. of sodium chloride is allowed to permeate the tissues through a fine hypodermic needle. Only very slight pressure is required and the whole of the surrounding structures become swollen and œdematous and can be cut into without pain. Much of the fluid escapes through the incisions and no symptoms of poisoning arise. Schleich attributed the anæsthesia partly to the pressure exerted by the solution and partly

[1] Some operators use a 0.1 per cent. solution and then less is injected.

to the imbibition, but later investigators have found it to be dependent on the cocaine alone.[1] Another method suggested by Oberst is the injection of cocaine into the immediate neighborhood of the nerve supplying the part to be operated on. Complete local anæsthesia is obtained and the absorption may often be prevented or retarded by an Esmarch ligature being applied above the point of injection. This method has been used extensively in operations on the foot and hand for which it is admirably suited. It is difficult to adapt it to other parts of the body and it has been generally relegated to the minor surgery of the extremities.

After it was found that the nerve impulses from the periphery to the central nervous system could be blocked by the injection of cocaine into the peripheral nerves, the next step was to obstruct them higher in their course by applying the alkaloid to the spinal roots in the vertebral canal. The first to attempt this was Corning of New York, but the development of the procedure is due to Bier and Tuffier. A long hollow needle is passed into the spinal canal between the laminæ of the lumbar vertebræ and 1 c.c. of a 2 per cent. solution of cocaine hydrochlorate is injected, after the withdrawal of an equivalent amount of cerebrospinal fluid. The actual amount of cocaine injected is thus 0.02 G. ($\frac{1}{3}$ gr.). Within a few minutes numbness begins, generally in the feet at first, but sometimes in the lower part of the trunk; it spreads upwards rapidly until sensibility to pain is lost everywhere below the diaphragm and sometimes in the thorax; in some cases even the head has been found anæsthetized. The sensations induced by warmth and cold are less quickly affected, touch is preserved to some extent and the limbs can be moved readily, though the movements are carried out more slowly than usual; the consciousness is unimpaired. This condition lasts from half an hour to an hour and then sensation returns gradually. In the beginning of the action some muscular twitching is often seen, and the muscles are never relaxed as they are under chloroform or ether. Vomiting occurs in a large proportion of cases either during or after the operation, and persistent headache is generally present. The cocaine is believed to act on the posterior nerve roots and not on the cord itself. The cerebrospinal fluid has been found to contain a large number of polynuclear leucocytes after the injection and resumes its normal limpid character only after several days. This method of anæsthesia has been used in a large number of operations, some of them of the gravest nature; it has also been substituted for general anæsthesia in labor.

Of these methods, Schleich's infiltration has been most widely adopted and is admirably suited for minor operations. It is the safest method available for most of these, for the amount of cocaine injected ought not to be sufficient to induce poisonous symptoms, and should never exceed 20 mg. ($\frac{1}{3}$ gr.) and much of this escapes by the incision. It requires some experience to induce complete insensibility to pain by

[1] Heinze showed that the morphine contained in Schleich's original fluid was superfluous.

this method and the operation has to be interrupted at intervals to permit of further injections. Some headache and nausea are occasional sequelæ. When general anæsthesia is contraindicated, infiltration may be adopted in major operations, while on the other hand it is often contraindicated in minor operations where there is any possibility of complications, or where the anxiety and nervousness of the patient are likely to interfere with the proceedings. Subarachnoid or intraspinal cocainization is still on trial, and while it has been enthusiastically praised by some of its sponsors, it has in general been regarded as a hazardous method. As a matter of fact, no fatality can as yet be certainly affirmed to have resulted from it, although it has been employed in over 2000 cases, and no permanent injury to the nervous system has hitherto been observed from it. It seems probable, however, that it will in the future attract less attention than it has recently, and will be regarded as a last resort to be used when special circumstances contraindicate the general anæsthetics and operation is imperative.

Cocaine Habit. — Since the introduction of cocaine into general therapeutic use, numerous cases of the formation of a habit similar to that of opium or morphine, have been recorded. Some of these have been due to the attempt to substitute cocaine for morphine in the treatment of chronic morphinism, the treatment often resulting in the development of an irresistible craving for both alkaloids. The symptoms of cocainism generally begin with digestive disorders, loss of appetite, salivation and emaciation, but the more important changes occur in the central nervous system, which apparently undergoes degeneration similar to that seen in chronic morphine poisoning. Sleeplessness, tremors and occasionally convulsions, hallucinations, insanity and delirium have been noted after long abuse, along with indefinite disturbances of sensation and motion. The treatment of these cases is the withdrawal of the drug, and this can generally be done without the production of any special symptoms, though it is sometimes followed by great depression. This treatment is much facilitated by sending the patient to a special resort, and, in fact, is almost hopeless without his isolation.

Acute Cocaine Poisoning is treated purely symptomatically. Amyl-nitrite has been advised when the blood-pressure seems much elevated, while for the convulsive attacks small quantities of chloroform or ether may be necessary. Of course, the stomach ought to be evacuated first of all if the drug has been taken by the mouth.

Substitutes for Cocaine.

Some artificial alkaloids have recently been introduced as local anæsthetics instead of cocaine. The best known of these is **Beta-eucaine** ($C_{15}H_{21}NO_2$),[1] which is much less poisonous than cocaine and differs from it in many points in its general action. In animals poisoned with large doses the central nervous system is first stimulated and then paralyzed ; the pulse is slowed from direct action on the cardiac mus-

[1] Alpha-eucaine ($C_{19}H_{27}NO_4$) was formerly used as a substitute for beta-eucaine, but induces irritation at first, and is now seldom met with.

cle, and the blood-pressure falls. The terminations of the motor nerves are paralyzed in frogs, but only after the central nervous system. As a local anæsthetic it is almost as efficient as cocaine, and differs from it in not constricting the vessels or dilating the pupil. The intraocular pressure is said to be lessened, but this is not yet satisfactorily determined. A 1–2 per cent. solution of the hydrochlorate is used in the eye, 2–5 per cent. for other mucous surfaces and for subcutaneous injection. Eucaine may be employed in 1 per cent. solution instead of cocaine for infiltration anæsthesia, and is less poisonous and can be disinfected by boiling.

Orthoform is a still more recently introduced local anæsthetic, which may be mentioned here, although it resembles cocaine only in its action on the sensory terminations. It is the methylester of amidooxybenzoic acid ($C_6H_3OH(NH_2)(COOCH_3)$), and is thus entirely different in chemical structure from cocaine. Several other aromatic derivatives have long been known to have some numbing or anæsthetic properties, but have scarcely been used in therapeutics for this purpose. Even carbolic acid has a distinct numbing effect, and some of the antipyretics have been proposed for use in ophthalmology. The effects of orthoform would therefore seem due to its being an aromatic derivative rather than to any relation it bears to cocaine, and Einhorn and Heinz state that all esters of amidooxy-acids of the aromatic series have more or less anæsthetic action. Orthoform is a white, crystalline powder, which has no taste or smell and is only very slightly soluble in water. It is used as a dusting powder or in ointment, and is applied to painful surfaces, such as abrasions, ulcers or burns, either on the skin or on the visible mucous membranes. In ulcer or cancer of the stomach, it has also been taken internally, and gives relief from the suffering. It is somewhat antiseptic and seems to be practically devoid of poisonous properties. It has little or no effect on the sensibility of the unbroken skin, and its insolubility precludes its use by subcutaneous injection. The anæsthesia begins almost as soon as that induced by ordinary cocaine solutions, but lasts very much longer, because orthoform is dissolved and removed from the surface very slowly ; thus a single application of the powder causes anæsthesia for many hours, or even for some days. On the other hand, orthoform fails to penetrate the mucous membranes as cocaine does, and therefore only anæsthetizes when it comes into actual contact with exposed nerve ends. In some cases some dermatitis has occurred after the use of orthoform.

Another series of local anæsthetics has been introduced by Trolldenier under the name of **Acoines**. They are derivations of phenylguanidin and are said to be much less poisonous than cocaine and to induce complete anæsthesia of the cornea and conjunctiva and also to be available for infiltration anæsthesia. **Holocaine**, a derivative of phenacetine, has been recommended in ophthalmological operations, but is more poisonous than eucaine, and presents no equivalent advantages.

Bibliography.

v. Anrep. Pflüger's Archiv, xxi., p. 38, 1880.
Mosso. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxiii., p. 153. Pflüger's Archiv, xlvii., p. 553.

Alms. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1886. Supplement, p. 293.
Kiesow. Wundt's Philosoph. Studien, ix., p. 510.
Stockman. Brit. Med. Journal, 1889, i., p. 1043.
Poulsson. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvii., p. 301.
Ehrlich. Deutsch. med. Wochenschr., 1890, p. 717.
Ehrlich u. Einhorn. Bericht. der deutsch. chem. Gesellsch., 1894, p. 1870.
Filehne. Berl. klin. Woch., 1887, p. 107.
Limbourg. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxx., p. 93.
Schultz. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1898, p. 58.
Danilewsky. Pflüger's Archiv, li., p. 446. (Invertebrates.)
Mannheim. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xviii., p. 380.
Albertoni. Pflüger's Arch., xlviii., p. 307.
François-Franck. Arch. de Phys. (5), iv., p. 562.
Chadbourne. Brit. Med. Journ., 1892, ii., p. 402. (Tropacocaine.)
Vinci. Virchow's Arch., cxlv., p. 78. (Eucaine.) Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1897, p. 163. Virchow's Arch., cxlix., p. 217; cliv., p. 549.
Einhorn u. Heinz. Münch. med. Woch., 1897, p. 931. (Orthoform.)
Soulier et Guinard. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., vi., p. 1.
Wiechowski. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlvi., p. 154.
Heinze. Virchow's Arch., cliii., p. 466.
Biberfeld. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., vi., p. 385.
Trolldenier. Therap. Monatsh., 1899, p. 36. (Acoines.)
Braun. Arch. f. klin. Chir., lvii., p. 370.
Gottstein. Ibid., lvii., p. 409.
Mikulicz. Ibid., lxiv., p. 757.
Bier. Ibid., lxiv., p. 236.
Lea. Journ. of Obstet. and Gynecol., i., p. 71.
Terrett. American Medicine, 1901, ii., p. 417.

XV. PILOCARPINE AND MUSCARINE.

Pilocarpine and muscarine, two alkaloids of very different chemical constitution, possess similar properties from a pharmacological point of view. *Pilocarpine* ($C_{11}H_{16}N_2O_2$)[1] is found along with *Isopilocarpine* in the leaves of several species of Pilocarpus.

Muscarine, the alkaloid of one of the poisonous mushrooms, Agaricus muscarius, is a derivative of the methane series, very closely related chemically to choline, which is a constituent of several animal tissues. Its exact constitution is somewhat doubtful, but it may probably be represented by the formula

$$\begin{array}{l} CH-(OH)_2 \\ | \\ CH_2-N(CH_3)_3OH \end{array}$$

It occurs in the mushroom associated with cholin, and sometimes apparently with a base which acts like atropine. A substance almost identical with muscarine from the chemical standpoint has been prepared by the oxidation of cholin, but this synthetic muscarine differs in its action from the natural alkaloid in several respects. A number of other nearly related bodies (trimethylammonium bases) resemble muscarine in some points of their action, but are not so poisonous, and fail to act on several of the organs affected by the base derived from the mushroom.

[1] The structural formula of pilocarpine is not yet definitely determined. Pilocarpidine has been isolated from the leaves of Pilocarpus Jaborandi only and is practically inert. *Jaborine* was formerly stated to occur with pilocarpine and to possess an action resembling that of atropine, but more recent investigators have failed to confirm either of these statements.

Muscarine, pilocarpine and isopilocarpine resemble each other in action; muscarine is much more poisonous than pilocarpine, which is again eight times as active as isopilocarpine.

Pilocarpine and muscarine stimulate the terminations of certain nerves supplying unstriated muscle (except that of the vessels), the heart and secretory epithelium. Their effects are therefore diametrically opposed to those of atropine in the peripheral organs.

Symptoms.—The symptoms of poisoning in man commence with a very marked secretion of saliva, followed soon after by excessive perspiration and a flow of tears. After muscarine and sometimes after pilocarpine, nausea, retching and vomiting, pain in the abdomen and violent movement of the intestines causing profuse watery evacuations, are next observed. The pulse is sometimes quickened, sometimes very slow and irregular; the pupil is contracted, and the sight is accommodated for near objects. The respiration is often quick and dyspnœic, and râles may be heard over the bronchi, denoting an accumulation of mucus in them. Giddiness and confusion of ideas are complained of, and after pilocarpine tremors and feeble convulsive movements are sometimes observed, but the nervous symptoms are not so conspicuous as those from the peripheral organs. Eventually the respiration becomes slower and great weakness in the movements manifests itself, but the consciousness remains more or less perfect till the breathing ceases.

Action.—The salivary and lachrymal **Glands**, the mucous glands of the mouth, throat, nose and deeper respiratory passages, the gastric secretory glands, the pancreas, and probably the intestinal glands, all secrete copiously after muscarine and pilocarpine. The sweat glands and the ceruminous glands of the ears are likewise roused to unwonted activity, and many other glandular structures are also stimulated.[1]

In most cases the solids of the secretions are increased as well as the fluids, although to a somewhat less extent. The bile, the urine and the milk do not seem to be affected directly by pilocarpine and muscarine, although they may be reduced in amount or otherwise modified by the withdrawal of large quantities of fluid from the body by other channels.

After a small quantity of atropine, pilocarpine and muscarine in ordinary quantities produce no increase in any of the secretions. This indicates that the seat of action of these poisons is not the secretory cells, for it has been shown that atropine paralyzes only the terminations of the secretory nerves and leaves the cells uninjured. On the other hand, section of the secretory nerves does not alter materially the action of pilocarpine or muscarine, for the secretion of perspiration in the foot of the cat is increased by pilocarpine even after section of the sciatic nerve. The seat of action of pilocarpine and muscarine is therefore the terminations of the secretory nerves—the minute fibrils which ramify between the epithelial cells and perhaps even enter them.

[1] A curious example of this has been shown by Dreser to occur in the fish, in which the swimming bladder secretes more oxygen than usual.

These fibrils are stimulated by the members of this group and paralyzed by atropine, and these two series therefore form antidotes to one another.

The salivary secretion may amount to half a litre or more in the course of 2–3 hours after an injection of pilocarpine, while the skin and lungs excrete even a larger quantity of fluid in the same time. The weight is thus considerably reduced by pilocarpine owing to the loss of fluid, which may, according to some authors, amount to 2–4 kilogrammes (4½–9 lbs.) after a single dose.

The secretion of the milk is not increased by pilocarpine, but the percentage of sugar in it is stated to be larger than usual. The sugar of the blood has been found increased by pilocarpine, and this has been attributed to its acting on the terminations of the nerves in the liver which regulate the glycogenic functions of that organ.

The increased activity of the glands is accompanied by an acceleration of the blood current through them, but this is a result of their stimulation from any cause whatever, and is probably not due to the direct action of the alkaloids on the vessels. The redness of the skin, especially of the face, so often observed after pilocarpine, may perhaps be explained in this way, as an accompaniment of the augmented activity of the sweat glands.

It was formerly supposed that pilocarpine acted on the same structures as nicotine—the sympathetic ganglia—but this is disproved by the sweat secretion of the foot after section of the sciatic, for no sympathetic ganglia have been found in connection with these sweat glands except those in the pelvis. Another question which has been the subject of prolonged and somewhat bitter discussion is whether pilocarpine and muscarine can act at all after atropine. It seems now to be admitted that while minute quantities of the latter stop secretion set up by ordinary doses of pilocarpine and muscarine, yet either of these in very large quantities will reinstate it, and this alternation of stimulation and depression may be repeated a number of times.

After a prolonged stage of stimulation large quantities of pilocarpine or muscarine eventually paralyze the nerve terminations, and the secretions are therefore diminished or stopped entirely. But this never occurs save in experiments on animals, for, as a general rule, the respiration is paralyzed by smaller quantities than are necessary to elicit this feature.

Muscle.—Nausea and discomfort in the *stomach*, followed by retching and vomiting, are rarely seen after pilocarpine, but form some of the earliest symptoms of muscarine poisoning. They are not produced by the saliva swallowed, as was formerly supposed, but by a stimulation of the terminations of the pneumogastric in the muscular coats of the stomach, similar to that of the terminations of the secretory nerves. This is, perhaps, incapable in itself of producing complete evacuation of the stomach, but may set up a reflex contraction of the muscles of the abdominal wall which accomplishes it.

The *intestines* are also set in unusually active movement by a similar process, and repeated evacuation of their contents follows. These are at first of firm consistency, but later, as the continued peristalsis

carries down the contents of the small intestine, which have not lain long enough in the bowel to allow of the absorption of their fluid, the fæces contain more water than usual. This fluidity of the stools may also be due in part to an augmentation of the intestinal secretion, but this has not been satisfactorily demonstrated. Even after the bowel has been completely evacuated, the persistent peristalsis betrays itself in painful straining.

The muscle of a number of other organs contracts after pilocarpine or muscarine, also, it is believed, from stimulation of the nerve terminations. Thus the *spleen*, *bladder*, *bronchial muscles*, and possibly the *uterus*, are contracted, and in the case of the bladder repeated evacuation and straining may occur. Of much greater importance than these is the effect of pilocarpine and muscarine on the eye. In poisoning with these and also on local application, the *pupil* becomes extremely narrowed, and at the same time the *ciliary muscle* contracts so that the lens is accommodated for short distances. Both of these phenomena are due to stimulation of the terminations of the motor oculi in the intraocular muscles (see Fig. 26, p. 287); they are not equally easily elicited, however, for according to Krenchel, muscarine acts on the ciliary muscle much more readily than on the pupil, so that occasionally the sight may be accommodated for short distances while the pupil remains fairly wide. The intraocular pressure is reduced by muscarine and pilocarpine, although they may increase it at first. This has not been explained, but is often said to be associated with the changes in the pupil, myosis (contraction of the pupil) being generally attended by a reduced tension. The stimulant action of pilocarpine on the terminations of the motor oculi terminates in depression and consequent slight widening of the pupil.

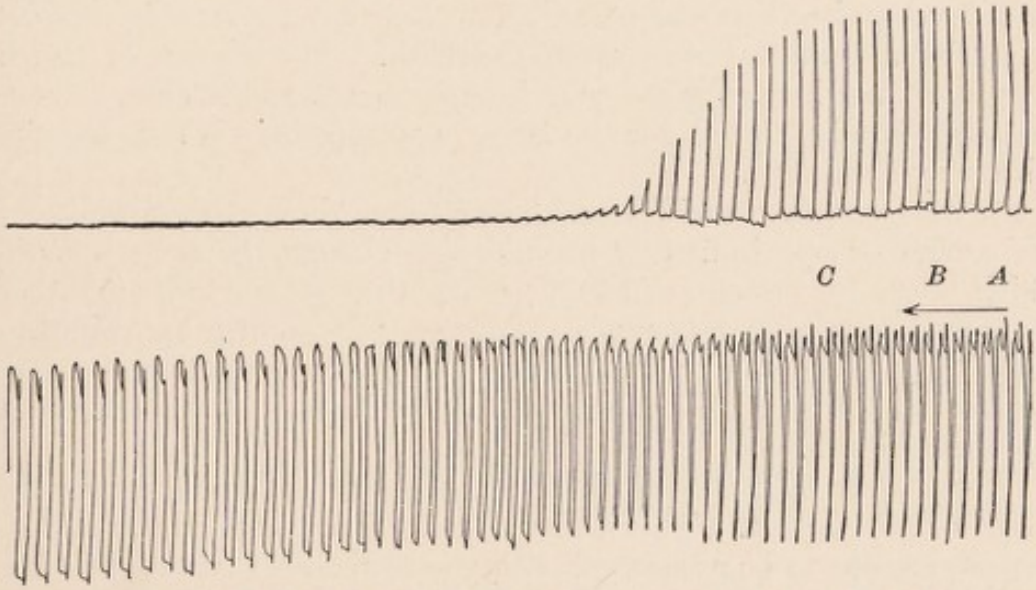
All these muscular phenomena are prevented by the previous administration of atropine. This antagonistic action has been carefully studied in the eye, where it is found that after pilocarpine has produced contraction of the pupil, the administration of very small quantities of atropine is followed by dilatation. Strong pilocarpine solution again dropped into the eye will again reduce the size of the pupil, but the quantity required is vastly more than in the normal eye, and this second contraction may again be removed by comparatively small quantities of atropine. In the bird's pupil, in which the muscle is striated, muscarine and pilocarpine have no effect, the terminations of the nerves being evidently different from those in mammals.

The action of pilocarpine and muscarine on the **Circulation** presents some differences in different species of animals. On the application of either to the frog's heart, its rhythm is at once slowed, the diastolic pause being much increased in length and the contractions lessened in force. Soon the heart ceases to beat entirely, although irritation of its muscle by mechanical or chemical means elicits one or more contractions. A number of drugs which stimulate the heart muscle, such as physostigmine or digitalin, induce weak rhythmical contractions, but atropine in the minutest quantities restores the heart

to its normal rhythm and strength. The symptoms produced are exactly those seen on stimulation of the vagus by electrical shocks, and muscarine has long been believed to act by stimulation of the inhibitory mechanism in the heart. It is generally stated that the site of its action is the ganglia on the course of the vagus, but this is incorrect, for muscarine acts on the apex of the frog's ventricle, in which no ganglia whatever have been found. Muscarine, therefore, stimulates the terminations of the vagus fibres in the heart muscle, and thus produces slowing and eventually standstill. Atropine removes this standstill by paralyzing the terminations, but larger quantities of muscarine or pilocarpine will again overcome the atropine action and restore the standstill or, at any rate, the slow pulse. Physostigmine and digitalin remove the standstill by increasing the irritability of the muscle until the inhibition can no longer hold the heart in check, but throughout the rhythm caused by these the activity of the vagus can be seen in the slowness of the beat and the prolongation of the diastole. The vagus ends are eventually paralyzed by pilocarpine and the heart resumes its normal rate. Larger quantities, however, again slow it owing to direct action on the cardiac muscle.

In rabbits and cats similar changes are seen in the circulation after muscarine. The heart is slowed or brought to a complete standstill,

FIG. 29.



Tracings of the movement of the auricle (upper) and ventricle (lower) of the dog under muscarine. During contraction the levers move upwards; during relaxation downwards. *A–B*, normal. At *B*, muscarine was injected intravenously and at *C* it began to act. The movements of the ventricles are slower and a distinct pause is seen in diastole. The contraction is less complete, while the heart relaxes more than usual during diastole. The auricle soon comes to a standstill in diastole. Compare the effects of stimulation of the vagus in the first part of Fig 27, page 289.

the blood pressure falls, and all the symptoms produced by anæmia of the brain may follow, but the animal becomes again perfectly normal on the administration of small quantities of atropine. The fall in blood-pressure is often greater than is accounted for by the slowing of the heart, and the peripheral vessels are extremely congested. This

may possibly be due to the dilatation of the vessels which, as already stated, accompanies the increased activity of the glands. Pilocarpine differs from muscarine here in several particulars, for it soon depresses the inhibitory fibres and the heart regains its former rhythm, but the cardiac muscle is then affected, so that the contractions rapidly become weaker and slower again, and this secondary slowing is not removed by atropine; the vaso-motor centre also becomes gradually weakened by large doses, so that the blood vessels remain somewhat dilated, and the arterial tension remains low even after atropine.

In dogs, the stimulation of the inhibitory fibres seems sometimes to be entirely absent after pilocarpine and muscarine, and in man this is very frequently the case. Instead of a slow pulse and lessened tension in the arteries, acceleration and increased blood-pressure are then observed. This is accompanied in man by marked palpitation and discomfort in the region of the heart and by dilatation of the skin vessels, especially of those of the face. In other cases, however, the same circulatory disturbances are produced as in the cat and rabbit. (Fig. 29.) No explanation of the acceleration of the heart has been offered, but Howell has found acceleration constantly produced by muscarine in the crab's heart.

In embryo hearts, muscarine, in ordinary quantities, produces no change whatever during the first 150 hours of life (in the chick). The explanation of this phenomenon is that the inhibitory nerves have not been developed at this stage, and after their development is complete, muscarine acts on the heart as in the adult. The absence of slowing in some of the invertebrates may be due to a similar cause, although this does not held good for the crab, in which there is a well-defined inhibitory apparatus.

The **Respiration** is unaffected by small quantities of the members of this series except indirectly through the changes in the circulation, which lessen the amount of blood passing through the lungs and therefore produce asphyxial dyspnœa. Large quantities of pilocarpine cause a tendency to convulsive movements and a more rapid and labored respiration. Eventually the respiration becomes slow and weak and asphyxia follows.

Occasionally œdema of the lungs occurs in animals poisoned by muscarine or pilocarpine. This is more especially the case in cats and rabbits, and seems to be associated with the inefficiency in the circulation in the lungs rather than with the stimulation of the bronchial secretory glands. It has also occurred in cases of fatal poisoning in man.

It has been found that pilocarpine increases the **Leucocytes** of the blood, and this is generally attributed to its acting on the tissues which form leucocytes, an explanation which is supported by the statement of Ruzicka, that the Malpighian corpuscles of the spleen are increased in number after pilocarpine. The leucocytosis leads to an augmentation of the uric acid in the urine.

The **Temperature** is often said to be increased by pilocarpine, although only to a very small extent, but this has been shown to occur only

when the thermometer is applied to the skin, and to be absent when the rectal temperature is taken. The explanation, therefore, seems to be the increased blood flow in the skin, which has been already mentioned. After the perspiration is fully developed the internal temperature is generally reduced, especially in fever.

Some symptoms occur in cases of poisoning which point to some action of the alkaloids on the **Central Nervous System.** Thus frogs develop well-marked convulsions, and even in the higher animals and man tremor and slight convulsive movements, such as hiccough, have been observed. In the later stages muscular weakness is developed, and the slow respiration and the fall in blood-pressure also indicate a central action, which seems to be confined to the lower parts of the nervous system, however, for consciousness remains little altered. These symptoms may be complicated by marked convulsions which appear to be due to the anæmia of the brain and do not denote any direct action on that organ.

Pilocarpine and muscarine, while resembling each other in general, present some points of difference, which are of the greatest importance as regards their use in therapeutics. Muscarine has practically never been introduced into medical practice, because, while its action on the secretions is quite equal to that of pilocarpine, the gastric symptoms are produced much more readily by it. It is also a very much more powerful poison than pilocarpine, and is much less easily prepared in pure form.

Preparations.

(Muscarine is not used in therapeutics.)

Pilocarpus (U. S. P.), **Jaborandi Folia** (B. P.), the dried leaflets of Pilocarpus Jaborandi[1] (and of P. Selloanus, U. S. P.).

Extractum Pilocarpi Fluidum (U. S. P.), ½–2 c.c. (8–30 mins.).

Extractum Jaborandi Liquidum (B. P.), 5–15 mins.

Tinctura Jaborandi (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Pilocarpinæ Hydrochloras (U. S. P.) ($C_{11}H_{16}N_2O_2HCl$), the hydrochlorate of an alkaloid obtained from Pilocarpus, forms small, white crystals, odorless, with a slight bitter taste, deliquescent in the air, very soluble in water and alcohol. 0.003–0.03 G. ($\frac{1}{20}$–½ gr.).

Pilocarpinæ Nitras (B. P.) ($C_{12}H_{16}N_2O_2HNO_3$), the nitrate of an alkaloid obtained from Jaborandi leaves, forms a white crystalline powder, which is soluble in 8–9 parts of cold water, and is freely soluble in hot alcohol. $\frac{1}{20}$–½ gr.

The preparations of the crude drug are but little used, as they vary greatly in their activity and cause nausea and vomiting more readily than the alkaloidal salts. This is explained by the fact that they are absorbed more slowly from the alimentary canal, and therefore have longer time to produce their characteristic effects upon it.

Therapeutic Uses of Pilocarpine. — Its action on the sweat glands renders pilocarpine much the most powerful diaphoretic in the pharmacopœia, and it is used internally almost exclusively for this purpose. In various conditions in which excess of fluid accumulates in the body,

[1] Pilocarpus jaborandi leaves are now extremely scarce and have been supplanted by those of Pilocarpus pinnatifolius and P. microphyllus.

pilocarpine may be exhibited to remove it. In dropsy, especially that due to renal disease, a few injections frequently reduce the fluid and remove the effects of the accumulation, although they do not, of course, affect the diseased tissues directly. By unburthening the blood and tissues of their excessive fluid, however, pilocarpine may improve the nutrition of the kidney, and thereby promote its recovery. In dropsy due to heart disease pilocarpine must be used with caution, owing to its exercising a depressant action on the circulation, perhaps on the heart itself. In some other pathological exudations pilocarpine has also been advised, as in pleural, pericardial and subretinal effusion. It must be remembered that after the diaphoresis produced by pilocarpine there usually sets in a period of depression, weakness and languor, and this may be sufficient to counteract the improvement obtained by the removal of the fluid. It is still a disputed point whether pilocarpine possesses any advantage as a diaphoretic over the other means of producing sweating, such as hot or cold packs. Its advocates point to the fact that much less disturbance of the patient is required, and that the subsequent depression is not greater, while its opponents assert that the hot or cold pack produces less depression and is not accompanied by the unpleasant salivation and occasional nausea of pilocarpine. Accumulations of fluid in the body may also be removed by way of the bowel by the use of a hydragogue cathartic or preferably a saline purgative, or the kidney may be stimulated to special activity by the use of such diuretics as theobromine and caffeine. The last method of treatment is that generally preferred as it induces less weakness and depression subsequently than either of the others.

In uræmia pilocarpine sometimes proves of great benefit if exhibited early, and it has been supposed that this was due to the skin taking up the renal function vicariously and eliminating the poison. Some support has been given this explanation by the discovery of traces of urea in the perspiration after pilocarpine, but it is now recognized that the urea is not the poisonous principle in uræmia, and the beneficial effects are probably due rather to the removal of fluid and the relief of the overstrained circulation. It has also been suggested that pilocarpine acts directly on the kidney, and an increase in the urine is not infrequently seen after several injections; but this is to be ascribed rather to the changes in the circulation following the removal of the fluid than to any direct action on the renal epithelium, for which there does not exist any satisfactory experimental evidence.

Pilocarpine has been used in a number of fevers and in diphtheria and syphilis, but no sufficient evidence of improvement in those conditions has been brought forward.

In ophthalmic surgery pilocarpine has been employed as a substitute for physostigmine, to contract the pupil and reduce the intraocular pressure. For this purpose a very dilute solution of the salts (2 per cent.) may be used, or lamellæ of gelatin may be prescribed, each containing $\frac{1}{4}$ mg. ($\frac{1}{250}$ gr.), to be laid on the conjunctiva. The contraction of the pupil generally attains its maximum in about $\frac{1}{2}$–1 hour, and

passes off in 3–5 hours; it is generally less complete and of shorter duration than that seen after physostigmine. Pilocarpine first increases and then lowers the intraocular tension.

In various diseases of the ear, pilocarpine has been used with good effects in some cases, but it is quite unknown how it acts here. The conditions in which it is of service are various forms of labyrinthine disease, and some forms of effusion into the tympanic cavity.

Pilocarpine was at one time recommended us an ecbolic [1] and several cases of abortion have been ascribed to its use. Further experience has led to the conclusion, however, that if it possesses any action whatsoever on the pregnant uterus it only does so when administered in quantities which produce undesirable secondary symptoms.

Pilocarpine is frequently prescribed in lotions for the hair, and a renewed growth of the hair has been frequently seen in alopecia treated in this way. This has been explained by its action on the glands of the skin, increasing the moisture of the scalp and improving its circulation and nutrition, but Tappeiner found that the local application of pilocarpine to the skin produced no increase in the secretion of the glands.

In cases of atropine poisoning, large doses of pilocarpine have been ordered with alleged good results. In animal experiments, however, the quantity of pilocarpine necessary to antagonize even small doses of atropine has been found to be so large that there is little reason to hope for improvement from its administration in poisoning in man, especially as the action of atropine on the central nervous system is not antagonized by pilocarpine. In poisoning from pilocarpine or muscarine small quantities of atropine are the antidote recommended alike by pharmacological experiment and by clinical experience.

Muscarine Intoxication. — In Siberia the Agaricus muscarius is used to form an intoxicating beverage. The symptoms produced are hilarity and jollity, and the victims declare themselves to be more capable of fatiguing exertions than they would be without the preparation. Eventually giddiness and somnolence are produced, and after large quantities vomiting and convulsive attacks may follow and eventually prove fatal. The absence of marked symptoms of poisoning in those people seems due to a tolerance having been produced by frequent use of the drug, for a similar result is seen in the absence of symptoms of nicotine poisoning in habitual smokers.

Bibliography.[2]

Muscarine.

Schmiedeberg u. Koppe. Das Muscarin. Leipzig, 1869.
Prevost et Monnier. Gaz. med. de Paris, 1874, p. 243.
Krenchel. Arch. f. Ophthalm., Bd. xx., p. 135.
Seth Jordan. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., viii., p. 15.

[1] An ecbolic is a drug used to evacuate the contents of the uterus.

[2] The literature of muscarine and pilocarpine is so mixed with that of atropine, nicotine and physostigmine, that a complete list would involve numerous repetitions. I must, therefore, refer those interested to the bibliography given under those groups, and shall mention here only the papers which deal very largely with muscarine and pilocarpine.

Harnack. Ibid., iv., p. 168.
Schmiedeberg u. Harnack. Ibid., vi., p. 101.
Trumpy u. Luchsinger. Pflüger's Archiv, xviii., pp. 501, 587 ; xv., p. 482.
Hammerbacher. Pflüger's Archiv, xxxiii., p. 228.
Kobert. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xx., p. 92.
Cushny. Ibid., xxxi., p. 432.
Krehl u. Romberg. Ibid., xxx., p. 49.
Ringer. Journ. of Phys., iii., p. 115.
Gaskell. Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc., 1882. Journal of Physiol., iii., iv., viii.
Weinzweig. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1882, p. 527.
Grossmann. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xii., p. 550.
Nothnagel. Berichte der Berl. Chem. Gesellsch., 1893, i., p. 801.
Horbaczewski. Sitzungsber. d. Wiener Akad., 1891.
Ruzicka. Allgem. Wien. med. Zeitung, 1893, p. 345.
Schultz. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1898, p. 73.

Pilocarpine.

Langley. Journ. of Anatomy and Physiol., x., p. 187. Journ. of Physiol., i., iii. Cf. Nicotine.
Luchsinger. Pflüger's Archiv, xv., p. 482 ; xviii., p. 501.
Lewin. Charite-annalen, v., p. 489.
Kahler u. Soyka. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., vii., 435.
Pilicier. Dissertation, Bern, 1875.
Ringer and Murrell. Journ. of Physiol., ii., p. 135.
Albertoni. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xi., p. 415.
Nawrocki. Centralb. f. d. med. Wissensch., 1878, p. 97.
Harnack u. Meyer. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xii., p. 366.
Harnack. Ibid., xx., p. 439.
Ringer. Practitioner, xxvi., p. 5.
Schlegel. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xx., p. 271.
Schiff. Archiv f. Verdauungskrh., vi., p. 107.
Marshall and Jowett. Brit. Med. Journ., 1900, Oct. 13th.

XVI. PHYSOSTIGMINE.

Physostigmine or Eserine is the chief alkaloid of the Calabar bean, or Ordeal bean (Physostigma venenosum), which grows in Western Africa and was employed there by the natives in the trials by ordeal for witchcraft. Either physostigmine itself, or a nearly allied alkaloid, occurs also in the Kali or Cali nuts, the seeds of Mucuna urens. The constitution of physostigmine ($C_{15}H_{21}N_3O_2$) is still unknown. Two other alkaloids have been found in the extract of the Calabar bean and are probably products of the decomposition of physostigmine, which is a very unstable body. These are *Calabarine*, which resembles strychnine in its effects, and *Eseridine*, which acts in the same way as physostigmine, but is much less poisonous.

Physostigmine produces a number of symptoms resembling those of muscarine and pilocarpine poisoning, and many authors describe all three together, but it departs in certain points from the type of these two drugs, and according to one theory acts upon a different set of tissues.

Symptoms.—The symptoms of poisoning vary but little in different animals; in the dog and rabbit the first results of a large dose of physostigmine are weakness in the voluntary movements and a curious tremor and muscular twitching, beginning in the hind legs, but soon extending over the whole body. The animal falls on one side and can not raise itself again, although it makes efforts to do so when touched.

The saliva and tears are increased, the bowel is often evacuated and in the dog vomiting is common. The respiration is at first rapid and deep, and later slow and dyspnœic, the heart is weak and slow, and the pupil is contracted to a small point. These symptoms become more marked as more of the poison reaches the blood, until the respiration ceases. In cats these symptoms of depression and paralysis are preceded by a stage of increased movement and evident anxiety, but the later symptoms resemble those in the dog. In man physostigmine elicits practically the same results as in the dog, vomiting and pain in the stomach region, dyspnœa, giddiness and muscular weakness, contraction of the pupil, salivation and perspiration. The heart is slow, muscular twitching may be present and complete collapse follows. In frogs the voluntary movements disappear soon after the injection of physostigmine, the respiration ceases, and last of all the reflexes are paralyzed.

Action. — Many of these symptoms evidently arise from depression of the **Central Nervous System**, and the cause of death is the failure of the respiration from paralysis of the medullary centre. Some doubt exists as to what parts of the nervous system first undergo depression. Thus according to Harnack and Witkowsky, the higher centres are weakened earlier than the lower ones, but in man at any rate, the consciousness remains unimpaired after grave derangement of the respiration has manifested itself and after the muscular power is considerably depressed. This would indicate that some of the higher cerebral areas preserve their functions after others have been weakened, and several authors have therefore maintained that the depression commences in the cord and medulla oblongata, and only spreads to the cerebrum after large doses.

Another unsettled question is whether the stage of depression is preceded by one of direct stimulation of the nervous centres. Some symptoms undoubtedly point to an increase in their irritability ; for example the increased respiratory movements, and to some extent the changes in the blood-pressure can scarcely be explained save by stimulation, direct or indirect.

Further evidence of the stimulant action of physostigmine on the central nervous system has been offered by its effects in epileptics, in whom the number and intensity of the seizures are increased by its use. Guinea-pigs rendered epileptic by operative procedures are also said to be more frequently attacked when physostigmine is exhibited, and even in the dog epileptiform convulsions occur occasionally, while in the cat a stage of excitement is a regular precursor of the depression. These symptoms have been explained by some writers as due to stimulation of the central nervous system, but, on the other hand, may be due to the peripheral effects of the poison, such as the constriction of the air passages by contraction of the bronchial muscles. The question as to whether any general stimulation of the central nervous system occurs in physostigmine poisoning must be left open for the present.

The muscular twitching seems to be entirely independent of the central nervous system, for it is not prevented by division of the motor nerves. This symptom is not marked in frogs, but may be so developed in mammals as to simulate convulsions, and is due to stimulation

of the nerve terminations in the muscles, for it is prevented by curara, which paralyzes these. The antagonism between these two alkaloids is mutual, for the paralysis of the motor nerves induced by curara may be removed by physostigmine applied in somewhat large doses, and animals may thus be recovered from quantities of curara which would otherwise prove fatal.

The **Respiration** is at first somewhat accelerated and then becomes slow and weak. The preliminary acceleration was explained by Bezold and Götz as due to stimulation of the sensory terminations in the lungs, while others regard it as evidence of central stimulation. The subsequent weakness and slowness of the breathing is undoubtedly of central origin, and death follows from the failure of the respiratory centre.

The changes in the **Circulation** require further investigation. Small doses slow the pulse and increase the blood-pressure, while larger are followed by greater slowing of the heart and a fall in the blood-pressure. The slowness of the pulse is due to the poison acting on the heart directly and not to any inhibitory interference, for it occurs after large quantities of atropine. The action of physostigmine on the inhibitory nerves has never been satisfactorily decided, for according to some authors they are unaffected, while others assert that their irritability is increased, and Arnstein and Sutschinsky even state that the paralyzing effects of atropine may be removed by it. The contractions of the mammalian heart are sometimes said to be strengthened by physostigmine, but this is erroneous; the increased amplitude of the movements mentioned by Hedbom may be due to the slow rhythm.

The increased blood-pressure has also been the subject of some discussion. It seems independent, in part at least, of the vaso-motor centre, for it is not prevented by section of the spinal cord or of the splanchnic nerves, operations which prevent impulses from the centre reaching the vessels. It may be partly due to the powerful contraction of the intestines expelling the blood from the mesenteric area, or to direct action on the muscular coats of the arterioles causing contraction and thus narrowing their calibre, or perhaps to both of these, along with some increase in the activity of the vaso-motor centre.

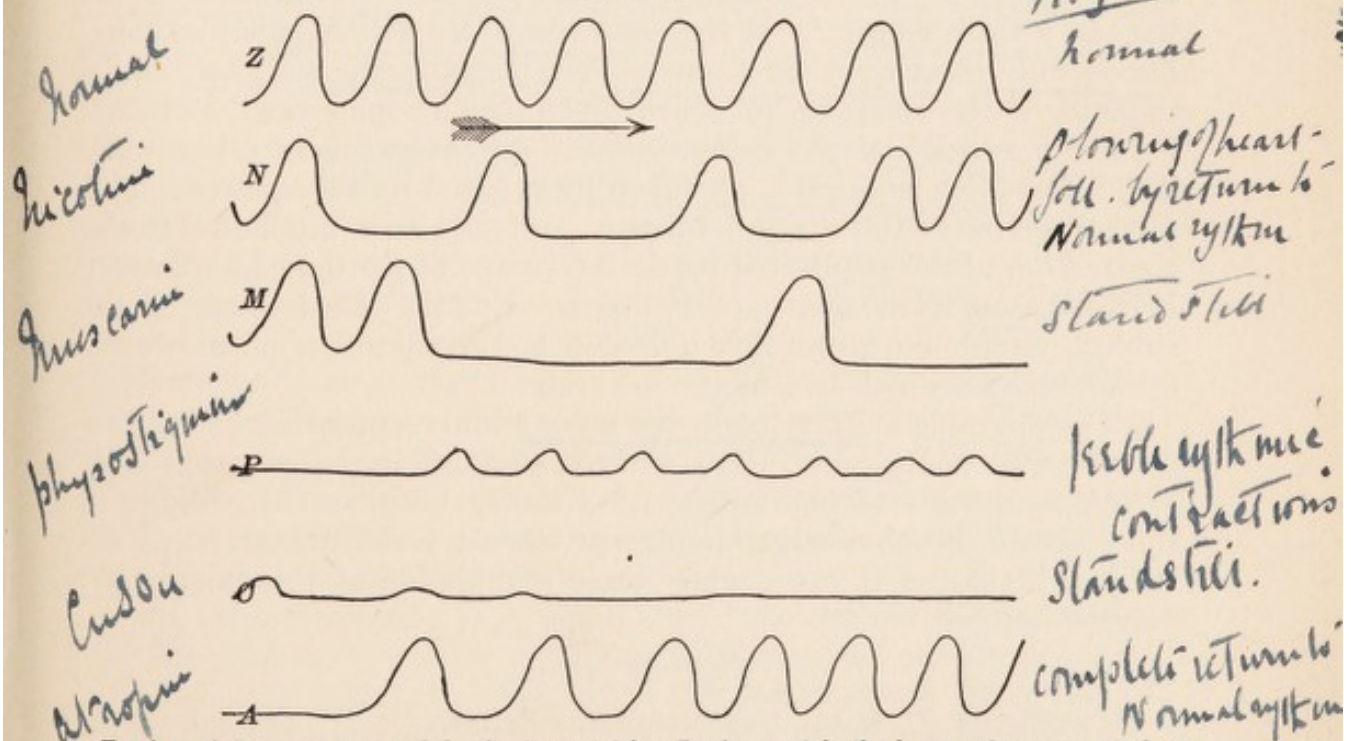
The frog's heart beats more slowly after physostigmine, but here the individual contractions are said to be strengthened and prolonged, and there is definite evidence of stimulation of the heart muscle, which is not seen in mammals. If the vagus be stimulated in the frog after physostigmine, it produces slowing but no complete standstill of the heart, because the irritability of the muscle is so much augmented that the inhibitory apparatus can no longer entirely control it. It has been supposed that physostigmine depresses the endings of the inhibitory nerves, but this has been shown to be incorrect. If such a poison as muscarine produces complete standstill, physostigmine removes it, not by inducing depression of the inhibitory apparatus, but by increasing the irritability of the muscle.

The following experiment, which is mainly a repetition of one devised by Harnack, may serve to show the relationship between the effects of a whole series of poisons, which generally present some difficulties to the student. A frog, with brain and spinal cord destroyed, is stretched on a board, and its heart is exposed by the removal of a triangular piece of skin and division of the sternum. The poisons are then applied in succession by injecting them into the lymph sac, and the vagus may be exposed and placed on electrodes.

The injection of *nicotine* causes slowing of the heart (Fig. 30, *N*), followed by a return to the normal rhythm, after which vagus stimulation has no effect, while stimulation of the sinus still slows the heart. (Nicotine first stimulates and then paralyzes the ganglia on the course of the inhibitory fibres.) *Muscarine* now brings the heart to a standstill (Fig. 30, *M*), through stimulation of the terminations of the inhibitory fibres in the muscle. *Physostigmine* restores the heart to feeble rhythmic contractions (Fig. 30, *P*), through stimulation of the muscular fibres, which leads to a partial loss of control by the inhibitory apparatus. Copper salts or other muscular depressants cause a return of the standstill (Fig. 30, *C*), through neutralizing the stimulant action of physostigmine, and thus allowing the stimulated inhibitory endings to regain control. Atropine finally induces an almost complete return to the normal rhythm (Fig. 30, *A*) by paralyzing the terminations of the inhibitory nerves and thus removing the effects of the muscarine.

Here there is distinct evidence of an increase in the irritability of the cardiac muscle of the frog after physostigmine, and this is difficult to reconcile with the slow pulsation generally seen when physostigmine is given alone. In the mammalian heart no such evidence of an increase in the muscular irritability has been adduced, and the vagus arrests it as easily as before the administration of the poison; according to some investigators even more easily.

FIG. 30.



Tracing of the movements of the frog's ventricle. During systole the lever makes an up-stroke. *Z.* Normal, *N.* After nicotine. *M.* After muscarine. *P.* After physostigmine. *C.* After a copper salt. *A.* After atropine. (See text.)

Physostigmine produces powerful contractions of the **Stomach** and **Intestine** exactly resembling those elicited by muscarine and pilo-

carpine. It differs from these, however, in causing these movements after small quantities of atropine, while larger doses of atropine again stop the contractions set up by physostigmine.

The **Secretions** are also increased by physostigmine as by pilocarpine and muscarine, and here again small quantities of atropine do not prevent the action, while larger quantities arrest it. Thus, the saliva, the tears, the perspiration, the mucous secretions and the pancreatic juice are all augmented by physostigmine.

Besides the intestine and stomach, a number of other muscular organs are thrown into contraction by physostigmine — ureter, bladder, uterus and bronchial muscle. The **Intraocular Muscles** also undergo contraction, and their movements under physostigmine have been the subject of a large number of investigations and of a good deal of controversy. The pupil contracts when physostigmine is employed either locally or internally, and this contraction may be lessened by the subsequent application of atropine, but is not altogether removed except by large quantities. On the other hand, the dilatation of the pupil produced by small quantities of atropine may be diminished by physostigmine, but the resulting contraction is much less than that caused by physostigmine applied to the normal eye. The ciliary muscle is acted on in the same way as the pupil, so that the eye becomes accommodated for near distance, and atropine induces the same modifications. The effects of physostigmine, then, on the intestine, secretory organs, pupil and ciliary muscle are strictly analogous, and are generally attributed to the alkaloid stimulating the terminations of the nerves in these organs.[1] It therefore resembles pilocarpine and muscarine but its antagonism to atropine is much more complete, and a renewal of the secretion or contraction after atropine can be elicited much more easily by physostigmine than by muscarine or pilocarpine. The intraocular pressure is considerably reduced by the application of physostigmine to the eye and this has generally been attributed to the contraction of the pupil facilitating the escape of the fluid by allowing it freer access to the spaces of Fontana. But the latest writer on the subject, Grönholm, states that it is due to a contraction of the intraocular vessels, which lessens the secretion.

Physostigmine is **Excreted** in the urine mainly, appearing in it a few minutes after its injection. It has also been found in the saliva and bile.

The symptoms of poisoning with Calabar bean are identical with those caused by physostigmine, except when an old preparation containing calabarine is used, when some stimulation of the spinal cord may be induced.

Preparations.

Physostigma (U. S. P.), **Physostigmatis Semina** (B. P.), Calabar or Ordeal bean, the seeds of Physostigma venenosum.

Extractum Physostigmatis (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.015–0.06 G. (¼–1 gr.).

[1] Another theory formulated by Harnack is that, while atropine acts on the terminations of the nerves in these organs, physostigmine acts upon the organs themselves — on the secretory cells of the glands and on the muscle fibres of the intestine, pupil, etc.

Tinctura Physostigmatis (U. S. P.), 1–3 c.c. (15–45 mins.).

PHYSOSTIGMINÆ SALICYLAS, eserine salicylate (U. S. P.), 0.003 G. ($\frac{1}{20}$ gr.).

PHYSOSTIGMINÆ SULPHAS, eserine sulphate (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.001–0.003 G. ($\frac{1}{60}$–$\frac{1}{20}$ gr.).

Lamellæ Physostigminæ (B. P.), each containing $\frac{1}{1000}$ gr. of physostigmine sulphate.

The sulphate and salicylate of physostigmine are colorless or faintly yellow crystals, without odor, but possessing a bitter taste. The sulphate is deliquescent in the air and is very soluble in both alcohol and water. The salicylate is not deliquescent, has usually a slight acid reaction, and is soluble in 150 parts of cold, or 30 parts of boiling water. Both salts undergo decomposition when kept in solution and then assume a reddish-brown color; the addition of boric or sulphurous acid to the solution is said to retard this decomposition. Preparations of the crude drug also lose their activity when kept for some time, but these are very seldom prescribed.

Therapeutic Uses.—Physostigmine has been used for its depressant action on the central nervous system in cases of abnormal excitability of the cerebral cortex. In epilepsy and chorea it has received a fairly extensive trial, but has proved of little or no service in most cases, and is positively deleterious in some. The results in the treatment with it of other diseases of the central nervous system, such as tetanus, have been no more favorable, so that it has fallen into disuse.

Its pharmacological action suggests no internal application of physostigmine for which pilocarpine is not equally well fitted, and, as a matter of fact, physostigmine is now used only for its action on the intraocular muscles and tension. For this purpose a solution of $\frac{1}{3}$–1 per cent. is dropped in the eye, 2–4 drops at a time, or small discs of gelatin impregnated with the alkaloid may be applied to the conjunctiva (B. P.). The pupil begins to contract in 5–15 minutes, and attains its smallest size in half an hour. It remains contracted 12–14 hours, and according to some observers a difference in the size of the two pupils may be made out for several days. The ciliary muscle contracts along with the iris, and the eye becomes accommodated for short distances. This action on the accommodation passes off in 2–4 hours, but the sight is often rendered indistinct for some hours longer by alternate contraction and relaxation of the ciliary muscle. The action of physostigmine on the eye differs from that of muscarine for the former acts more on the pupil, the latter on the ciliary muscle, and the pupil is often contracted by physostigmine while the accommodation is practically unchanged. The intraocular pressure is somewhat increased at first and subsequently sinks. Its action in narrowing the pupil after atropine has been made use of to remove the dilation produced so frequently in ophthalmic surgery, but some newer tropeines, which produce a shorter mydriasis than atropine, have almost driven it from this field. It antagonizes the dilatation of the pupil after homatropine and cocaine much more successfully than that due to atropine. It has also been used in cases of synechia (attachment of the iris to the lens) alternately with atropine. The alternate contraction and dilatation of the pupil would, it was hoped, break down the attachment, but the condition is now generally treated by operation.

Physostigmine is now chiefly employed to reduce the intraocular pressure in glaucoma.

Physostigmine Poisoning has occurred only from eating the bean as yet, and is to be treated by the usual methods of evacuation of the stomach and other general measures. It has been found by Fraser that atropine acts as an antidote to physostigmine in animals, and it might be tried in cases of poisoning. The full dose of atropine is required.

Bibliography.

Fraser. Edinburgh Medical Journal, ix., p. 36, 1864. Journal of Anat. and Physiol., 1867, p. 323. Practitioner, iv., p. 65.
Bezold u. Götz. Centralbl. f. d. med. Wissenschaft, 1867, p. 241.
Arnstein u. Sustschinsky. Untersuch. a. d. physiol. Laborator. zu Würzburg, ii., p. 81.
Rogow. Ztschr. f. rationelle Heilkunde, xxix., p. 1.
Heidenhain. Pflüger's Arch. f. Physiol., v., p. 309.
Laschkewich. Virchow's Archiv, xxxv., p. 291.
Harnack u. Witkowski. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., v., p. 401.
Harnack u. Meyer. Ibid., xii., p. 366.
Turtschaninow. Ibid., xxxiv., p. 208.
Schweder. Inaugural Dissertat., Dorpat, 1889.
Hedbom. Skandinav. Arch. f. Physiol., viii., p. 209.
Schultz. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1898, p. 66.
Rothberger. Pflüger's Arch., lxxxvii., p. 117.
Grünholm. Arch. f. Ophthalmol., xlix., p. 620.

Résumé.—A number of the groups of alkaloids discussed up to this point act on the same peripheral organs and generally present some difficulty to the student, so that a few general remarks regarding them may be of service. These drugs acts at two distinct points—the peripheral ganglia and the terminations of the nerves in the muscular or glandular tissues. Nicotine, curara and coniine affect the ganglia (Fig. 31, *N*); muscarine, pilocarpine, physostigmine and atropine the terminations in the organs (*M*, Fig. 31). Curara, coniine and atropine are purely depressant in their peripheral action; nicotine is first stimulant and subsequently depressant, while muscarine, pilocarpine and physostigmine are practically purely stimulant. The action on the ganglia is quite independent of that on the nerve ends, and either may be stimulated or depressed after the others have been paralyzed. If, however, the nerve ends be paralyzed (Fig. 31, 2) as by atropine, changes in the ganglia will have no apparent effect, as the impulses arising from their stimulation are blocked in the nerve ends, and, on the other hand, their paralysis does not cause any further retardation of centrifugal impulses which are completely blocked already. After paralysis of the ganglia (Fig. 31, 3) the stimulation of the nerve ends is followed by the usual symptoms, because the impulses pass from the nerve ends to the epithelium directly without the intervention of the ganglia. Thus muscarine, pilocarpine and physostigmine act after the paralysis of the ganglia by nicotine or coniine. If the ganglia be paralyzed first, the paralysis of the nerve ends by atropine is followed by no change unless the latter have been in a state of activity. While it is universally acknowledged that atropine arrests the action of muscarine and pilocarpine by paralyzing the points at which these unfold their action,

the subsequent stimulation of the paralyzed terminations by further administrations of muscarine or pilocarpine is by no means so generally believed. The statement that a paralyzed organ cannot be further stimulated seems to have assumed almost the authority of a theological dogma, although numerous points not only in the peripheral action of these drugs, but also in that of others on the central nervous system cannot be easily explained except on the opposite assumption. Some of the difficulties confronting the advocates of this theory have been already mentioned, and others will be met with in the course of this work. If it be granted that a paralyzed tissue may be restored by the action of stimulant drugs, the action of the foregoing alkaloids is much simplified. Thus atropine paralyzes the nerve terminations, but these may be restored to activity by very large quantities of muscarine or pilocarpine, unless the quantity of atropine given has been too large. The quantity of physostigmine required to restore them is much smaller than that of pilocarpine, and its application is therefore much more successful in reinstating the condition of active stimulation. These differences between pilocarpine and physostigmine may perhaps be explained on the analogy of the chemical theory of mass action; the "affinity" of atropine for the nerve endings is then greater than that of any of the other alkaloids under discussion, that of physostigmine next, and that of pilocarpine and muscarine least. The last mentioned are therefore expelled from their combination with the protoplasm by very small quantities of atropine, and have to be given in very large quantities to remove the atropine from its combination. On the other hand, the attraction of physostigmine for the nerve ends seems much greater; larger quantities of atropine are required to displace it, and smaller quantities of physostigmine restore the activity of the nerve ends.

FIG. 31.

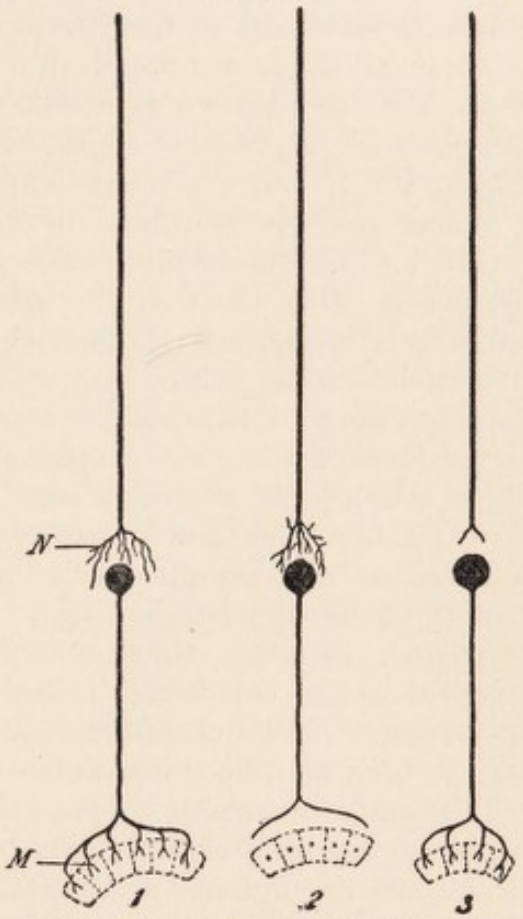


Diagram of a nerve fibre supplying a secretory gland. *N*, terminations of the cerebrospinal nerve round a ganglion cell. *M* the terminations in the epithelium of the sympathetic fibre from the ganglion cell. In *1* the connection between the central nervous system and the secretory cells is intact, and secretion may be induced by impulses from the centres, by stimulation at *N* or at *M*. In *2* all connection between the nerve and the epithelium is broken off, and secretion can be induced only by stimulation of the secretory cells or by restoring the connection. In *3* the connection is interrupted in the ganglion, and secretion can be caused only by drugs acting directly on the epithelium or on the terminations *M*.

XVII. ACONITINE.

This series embraces a number of alkaloids, which resemble each other so closely in their chemical and pharmacological properties as to allow of their being treated together. Some of them which were formerly believed to be perfectly distinct, are now said to be identical, and it is not improbable that future investigation will still further reduce the numbers of the group.

These alkaloids are found in a number of species of the Aconitum genus, the best known of which are Aconitum Napellus containing *Aconitine* ($C_{33}H_{45}NO_{12}$ or $C_{34}H_{47}NO_{11}$), Aconitum ferox, *Pseudaconitine* ($C_{36}H_{49}NO_{12}$), and Aconitum Japonicum, *Japaconitine* ($C_{34}H_{49}NO_{11}$).

When aqueous solutions of these alkaloids are heated, they are broken up into one or more acids and simpler bases, so that they may be classed with those of the atropine and cocaine series, which are similarly decomposed. Aconitine forms acetic acid and *Benzaconine* (or picroaconitine), which may again be broken down into benzoic acid and *Aconine* so that aconitine is acetyl-benzaconine. Pseudaconitine forms *Pseudaconine*, and Japaconitine *Japaconine* in the same way. These decomposition products are found in the plant and in the ordinary preparations, and in many of the commercial "aconitines" benzaconine and aconine occur in varying proportions, so that their toxicity varies very considerably.

Another alkaloid which resembles aconitine closely in its pharmacological action, but which is less known, is *Delphinine*. It is found in stavesacre (Dephinium Staphisagria), along with a number of other bases, which may be the products of its decomposition.

The symptoms caused by aconitine, pseudaconitine, japaconitine, and delphinine are very similar, differing mainly in degree and not in kind. Pseudaconitine is more poisonous than japaconitine which in turn is slightly more active than aconitine. Delphinine is much less poisonous.

Symptoms. — After very large quantities of aconitine death may result instantaneously, apparently from simultaneous failure of the heart and central nervous system.

If smaller quantities be swallowed there is noted, after the ordinary bitter taste of the alkaloid, a feeling of warmth in the mouth and throat, which, agreeable at first, soon becomes prickling and tingling, and extends to the stomach and eventually to the skin. This is accompanied by a profuse flow of saliva, and often by vomiting. The pulse is very slow, and may be irregular, and later becomes weak and imperceptible, when symptoms of collapse appear. The respiration is slow and labored, and great muscular weakness is complained of. After a time the smarting and tingling of the skin are no longer felt, and on examination the cutaneous sensibility is found to be much reduced. The intelligence remains unimpaired to the last in many cases, although unconsciousness sometimes occurs, and death is generally,

but not invariably, preceded by convulsions. The pupil is unaffected except when convulsions supervene, when it is dilated. The prickling of the throat and skin is the most characteristic symptom, and is practically diagnostic in cases of poisoning, no other drug excepting veratrine having this effect. Death is due to paralysis of the respiratory centre from the direct action of the poison, although this may be aided by anæmia of the medulla from the imperfect circulation.

In small doses aconitine induces slowing of the heart and slight muscular weakness, which is often accompanied by tingling of the lips, tongue and throat.

Action.—The prickling, tingling sensation is due to an affection of the **Terminal Organs of the Sensory Nerves**, as is shown by its appearing first at the point of application of the drug. Thus, when aconitine is swallowed the prickling and warmth is felt in the lips, tongue, and throat, and after small doses may be confined to these parts, while if an ointment containing aconitine be rubbed on the skin, the same sensation is induced locally. But no redness or swelling of the skin is induced, nor are blisters formed, so that aconitine differs entirely from the class of skin irritants (page 78). It evidently acts by stimulating the terminations of the sensory nerves, more especially those of common sensation, while the other sensory end organs have not been shown to be involved. Thus, apart from the bitter taste which it possesses in common with all alkaloids, aconitine has no effect upon the taste organs during this stage. The stimulation afterwards passes into depression, which induces a sense of numbness at the point of application, and in cases of poisoning, in all the surfaces of the body. The taste nerves seem to be involved in this effect, if Laborde's statement be correct that sweet substances have no taste after aconitine. The irritation of the sensory terminations often causes a number of reflexes, such as sneezing, coughing, increased secretion of saliva and vomiting, although some of these may be due in part to stimulation of the medullary centres. Evidence of the stimulation of **Other Terminations** is presented in fibrillary twitching of the muscles in the frog and sometimes in mammals. This is prevented by curara, but not by section of the nerves, and is therefore attributed to stimulation of the terminations of the motor nerves in muscles. The muscles themselves are comparatively little affected. Waller states that even minute quantities of aconitine abolish the irritability of nerve fibres when it is directly applied to them.

The effects of aconitine on the **Circulation** are somewhat complex, as the heart is affected directly by it, as well as through its inhibitory nerves, and the vaso-motor centre is stimulated in addition. The frog's heart is first accelerated from the direct action of the poison, but this soon passes into the slow pulse and prolonged diastole which are characteristic of inhibitory action. The subsequent standstill may at first be removed by atropine, but somewhat later this remedy fails, as the drug begins to act directly on the heart. A second acceleration may be thus induced, but the contractions soon become irregular, and

groups of almost normal beats alternate with peristaltic movements which fail to expel any blood from the heart. Later, the large contractions may alternate with periods of complete quiescence in the ventricle, while the auricles continue to beat, and stimulation of the accelerans nerve is followed by periods of regular contraction. The heart muscle seems to have lost in great part its power of conducting impulses, so that the contraction of the auricle often fails to excite a ventricular systole; but if the conductivity be increased by stimulation of the accelerator nerve, or if the ventricle be excited by a series of electric shocks, it responds by rhythmical contractions.

In mammals, the preliminary quickening of the heart is masked by the strong stimulation of the vagus centre. This produces marked slowing of the pulse, an increased dilation in diastole and a lessened systolic contraction; the amount of blood leaving the heart is considerably reduced and the circulation is slackened. These symptoms are the only ones seen in the heart except with very large doses of the drug. They are shown to be due to the action on the inhibitory centres in the medulla by the fact that section of the vagus brings the heart back to its normal rate and extent of contraction. In medicinal doses, then, the only effect of aconitine on the heart is due to the vagus stimulation, the direct cardiac action not coming into play, and the administration of aconite in therapeutics is one of the best methods of eliciting pure and unmixed inhibition.

In fatal doses, aconitine exerts a further action on the heart, however, for the direct muscular action now comes into play and the heart suddenly accelerates from the slow vagus rhythm to one far above the normal. At the same time it becomes irregular, with a tendency towards the formation of groups of imperfect contractions and of contractions originating in the ventricles independently of the auricles. As the action becomes more intense, the irregularity increases, and eventually the heart passes into delirium. A curious fact has been noted by several observers — that after section or paralysis of the vagus, a much larger quantity of aconitine is required to produce the acceleration and final delirium than when the nerves are intact. It has generally been stated that the cause of the acceleration is paralysis of the vagus terminations, but besides this there is evidently strong stimulation of the cardiac muscle, for the acceleration occurs after division of the vagi and even in the excised heart. The auriculo-ventricular rhythm is disturbed, the auricle often beating at a different rate from the ventricle, and the alternate consonance and dissonance of their contractions partly explains the variations in the ventricular rhythm and strength.

The blood-pressure in mammals falls rapidly from the lessened output of the heart in the stage of vagus stimulation. There is some evidence of an action on some part of the vaso-motor mechanism as well, for some observers have noted a rise in arterial pressure after aconitine in animals in which the vagi had been divided or paralyzed before the exhibition of the drug. The fact that the vagus centre is so strongly stimulated would also suggest the probability of some increase

in the activity of the vaso-motor area. After the stage of acceleration has set in, the blood-pressure becomes extremely irregular, alternately sinking to zero and remaining at that point for some seconds and again attaining a fair height. These variations are evidently due to the alternations in the heart's movements. The vaso-motor centre seems eventually to become paralyzed, for it has been found that stimulation of an afferent nerve produced no change in the tension, while stimulation of the efferent vaso-motor nerves still caused a marked increase. The vaso-motor nerves and their terminations in the periphery seem to be unaffected by this poison.

The **Respiration** is early affected by aconitine; it becomes much slower, the movements are more labored than normally, and the animal suffers from marked dyspnœa. The accessory respiratory muscles contract vigorously, and the movements of the abdominal expiratory muscles are so powerful as to suggest the movements of vomiting rather than of respiration. In fatal cases the respiration soon becomes interrupted by convulsions, and in the intervals between these becomes weaker and eventually ceases. Various explanations of the respiratory phenomena have been given. It is certainly not due to action on the phrenic terminations, for the diaphragm contracts on electrical stimulation of these nerves after its spontaneous movements have ceased. The dyspnœa resembles somewhat that seen on stimulation of the centripetal fibres of the vagus, and the theory has been propounded that aconitine stimulates the vagus terminations in the lungs in the same way as the sensory terminations in the skin. The same dyspnœa is seen, however, when aconite is given after section of the vagi, so that it seems to be due to some action on the respiratory centre.

The action of aconitine on the **Central Nervous System** is still a matter of dispute, as the effects on the peripheral nerve-ends tend to obscure the symptoms, but there can be no doubt that certain parts are stimulated. Thus, the vagus centre is undoubtedly thrown into a condition of increased irritability, for inhibition of the heart is a marked feature of the action. Probably the vaso-constrictor centre also undergoes some stimulation, and the vomiting so often seen may be caused, at least in part, by increased irritability of the medullary centres. The convulsions seen in both cold- and warm-blooded animals also point to central stimulation, and the respiratory symptoms are certainly of central origin, though their explanation is still unknown. The higher centres seem to be almost unaffected by the drug, for consciousness has often remained to the end, and when this is not the case, the mental symptoms are to be ascribed to the changes in the heart and respiration. The stimulation produced by aconitine is therefore confined to some of the lower divisions of the central nervous system — more particularly to the medulla oblongata. Some authors suppose that the paralyzing action which succeeds the stimulation, is more marked in the sensory than in the motor sphere and as evidence of this it has been pointed out that in frogs the reflexes disappear before the

voluntary movements, but this is explained by the anæsthetic action of aconitine on the skin and cannot be accepted as evidence. The paralysis advances much more rapidly in the respiratory centre than elsewhere and death occurs from asphyxia, while the rest of the central nervous system is shown to be still irritable by the occurrence of convulsions.

The muscular weakness often complained of after comparatively small quantities may be due to the depression of the circulation through the inhibitory action, or to nausea.

Secretion of saliva is greatly increased by aconitine from the irritation of the sensory terminations in the mouth and from the nausea. The cold perspiration observed in poisoning may be ascribed to the collapse rather than to any direct action on the sweat glands, although Aubert states that aconitine is a powerful diaphoretic in itself.

Aconitine causes a marked fall of **Temperature** both in fever and in normal animals, but the precise way in which this action is elicited is unknown. Brunton and Cash found that after aconite the temperature fell more rapidly than usual if the animal was kept in a cool bath, but rose more readily if it was subjected to external warmth. The fall in temperature is generally ascribed to the depression of the circulation from the inhibitory action, but this observation would seem to indicate that aconite also acts upon the centres regulating the temperature of the body.

In cases of **Poisoning** in animals atropine has been found to alleviate the symptoms and not infrequently to lead to recovery after doses which would otherwise have been fatal. This improvement is more especially marked in the respiration which may resume its normal character and persist until heart paralysis sets in. Boehm explained this by a supposed action on the terminations of the vagus in the lung, but it is more probably to be ascribed to the stimulant action of atropine on the respiratory centre. In those cases the cause of death is said to be cardiac paralysis, but the stage of irregularity and the final delirium cordis is certainly retarded very considerably by atropine. Atropine appears to be the antidote from which most is to be hoped for in cases of aconite poisoning.

Aconitine is **Excreted** mainly by the urine. Minute quantities have also been found in the saliva and bile.

Benzaconine is very much less poisonous than aconitine and, in fact, can scarcely be included among active poisons, though very large quantities act on the heart, slowing it and rendering it irregular, and also depress the respiration. It has no effect on the sensory terminations. **Aconine** itself is almost inactive, but large quantities strengthen the heart beat and paralyze the terminations of the motor nerves like curara. It seems unlikely that these alkaloids have any influence on the action of the aconite preparations, although the possibility cannot be excluded at present.

The alkaloids obtained from some other species of Aconitum have been found to differ considerably from aconitine and pseudaconitine in their action. In Aconitum septentrionale three bases *lappaconitine*, *septentrionaline* and *cynoctonine* have been discovered. Lappaconitine causes clonic convulsions, vomiting, dyspnœa and finally paralysis of the respiration and heart,

and in the frog lessens the sensibility of the skin. Septentrionaline does not cause poisoning when taken internally, but injected subcutaneously induces local anæsthesia and later paralysis of the motor terminations like curara. Cynoctonine is also inactive when swallowed and is less poisonous than the others when applied by hypodermic injection when it causes tonic and clonic convulsions which are not generally followed by paralysis. Two alkaloids, *lycaconitine* and *myoctonine*, have been found in Aconitum lycoctonum, and induce almost identical symptoms. They increase the reflex excitability, and this is followed by convulsions and later by paralysis of the terminations of the motor nerves and by failure of the heart.

Preparations.

Aconitum (U. S. P.), **Aconiti Radix** (B. P.), the root of Aconitum Napellus, monk's-hood.

Tinctura Aconiti (U. S. P.), 1–5 drops every 1–3 hours.

Tinctura Aconiti (B. P.), 5–15 mins. If frequently repeated, 2–5 mins.

Extractum Aconiti (U. S. P.), 0.01–0.06 G. ($\frac{1}{6}$–1 gr.).

Extractum Aconiti Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.05–0.1 c.c. (1–2 mins.).

Linimentum Aconiti (B. P.).

Aconitina (B. P.), an alkaloid obtained from aconite root and having the formula $C_{33}H_{45}NO_{12}$. It is almost insoluble in water but is freely soluble in alcohol. Commercial aconitine very often contains large amounts of aconine and benzaconine and therefore varies considerably in activity.

Unguentum Aconitinæ (B. P.), 2 per cent.

Staphisagria (U. S. P.), **Staphisagriæ Semina** (B. P.), the dried ripe seeds of Delphinium staphisagria, stavesacre.

Unguentum Staphisagriæ (B. P.).

Therapeutic Uses. — Aconite is employed to a considerable extent in England, the United States and France, while it has fallen into disuse in some other countries. Its pharmacological action suggests its use to slow and weaken the heart and circulation, to lower the temperature and to benumb the terminations of the sensory nerves in the skin. Digitalis is often prescribed to slow the pulse, but it has other effects on the heart and circulation, and where these are not indicated, aconite may well be used. Both drugs slow the pulse in the same way, but while aconite slackens the circulation and lowers the blood-pressure, digitalis accelerates the blood current and increases the arterial tension.

The temperature is also reduced by aconite, but the newer antipyretics have supplanted it for this purpose, as they are more certain and more powerful in their effects. The tincture is still prescribed however, and ought to be given in small repeated doses. When fever is attended by a very quick pulse, aconite is especially likely to be of service, but it ought to be avoided when the heart is very weak.

The action of aconitine on the sensory nerve terminations has been taken advantage of in cases of neuralgia, and there is decidedly much more reason for its use than for that of the great majority of drugs reputed to be beneficial in this condition. Either the tincture, or a 2 per cent. solution of the alkaloid in oil, or the ointment of the B. P. may be employed externally. Aconitine has also been injected subcutaneously ($\frac{1}{100}$–$\frac{1}{10}$ mg.) in neuralgia, but this mode of application is not to be recommended, as it causes very severe pain, which in some

cases lasts a long time. The internal administration of aconite in neuralgia does not seem to be followed by any improvement. Staves-acre is scarcely used in medicine at present.

Bibliography.

Liegeois et Hottot. Journ. de la Physiol., 1861, iv., p. 520.
Plugge. Virchow's Arch., lxxxvii., p. 410.
Ringer and Murrell. Journ. of Physiol., i., p. 232.
Schellong. Inaug. Diss., München, 1884.
Giulini. Inaug. Diss., Erlangen, 1876.
Boehm u. Wartmann. Verhandl. d. phys.-med. Gesellsch. zu Würzburg, 1872, p. 63.
Ewers. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., i., p. 385.
Mennicke. Inaug. Diss., Halle, 1883.
Anrep. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1880. Supplem., p. 161.
Lubbe. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1890.
Dohrmann. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1888.
Rosendahl. Arb. a. d. pharmak. Instit. Dorpat, xi., p. 1 (very complete bibliography up to 1895).
Matthews. Journal of Exp. Medicine, ii., p. 593.
Cash and Dunstan. Transactions of the Royal Society, cxc., p. 239 ; ccviii., p. 39 and ccix., p. 97.

XVIII. VERATRINE.

Several species of the genus Veratrum have been found to contain alkaloids, the most important of which resemble each other in many respects, and also present many points of analogy to those of the preceding group.

The chief members of this series are *Veratrine* (cevadine) and *Protoveratrine*, the former of which is found in Veratrum Sabadilla (Asagræa officinalis or Schœnocaulon officinale), cevadilla, and in Veratrum viride, Green Hellebore,[1] while the latter is the chief active principle of Veratrum album, White Hellebore.[1]

Each of these alkaloids is accompanied by a number of others, most of which are entirely inactive, while several of them are only weak poisons and possess little interest. In cevadilla, in addition to *Veratrine*, there are found *Cevadilline*, *Sabadine*, *Sabadinine* and another base, which is known as the *Veratrine of Wright or Couerbe*. In white hellebore *Protoveratrine* is accompanied by *Jervine*, *Pseudojervine*, *Rubijervine*, *Protoveratridine* and others. Green hellebore contains a little *Veratrine* along with *Jervine*, *Pseudojervine* and *Rubijervine*. Jervine, Sabadine and Sabadinine are known to possess some action on the organism ; cevadilline and Wright's veratrine have not been examined, while the others are said to be inactive.

Veratrine ($C_{32}H_{49}NO_9$) and protoveratine ($C_{32}H_{51}NO_{11}$) are both powerful alkaloids, the latter almost rivaling aconitine in its toxicity. Veratrine can be decomposed into angelic acid and a base, cevine, which seems to be nearly related to aconine. Protoveratine is probably a combination of isobutyric acid and a similar base. Veratrine occurs in two forms, one crystalline, the other amorphous ; the one passes easily into the other, and their effects are identical in animals.

[1] Hellebore is also the popular name of Helleborus niger, which differs entirely from Veratrum in its principles and also in its action.

The effects of veratrine on the central nervous system and the sensory terminations resemble those of aconitine very closely. On the other hand the muscles present a curious reaction to veratrine, which is entirely absent in aconitine poisoning.

Symptoms. — The symptoms in man and other mammals commence with prickling and burning in the mouth followed by a sensation of warmth in the stomach, marked salivation, nausea, and vomiting. The bowel is more involved in the effects, than is the case in aconitine poisoning, for violent purging accompanied by severe colic is a common symptom. The prickling sensation soon spreads from the mouth and throat to the skin, and is generally followed by profuse perspiration. The pulse becomes slow and irregular, the respirations slow and labored. Fibrillary contractions of the muscles and convulsions are generally observed, and after some time collapse sets in and is followed by unconsciousness and eventually by respiratory failure.

Action. — When veratrine is applied in ointment to the **Skin** the same prickling, warm sensation may be elicited locally, and some of the poison is absorbed, as is shown by these symptoms sometimes occurring in other parts of the body. The cause of this is, as in the case of aconite, stimulation of the terminations of the sensory nerves. This action causes violent sneezing and coughing when small quantities of veratrine come in contact with the sensitive mucous membranes of the nose and throat and the Sabadilla is therefore known popularly in Germany as Nieswurz (Sneeze-wort). After the irritant action has lasted for some time, the sensory terminations in the skin become less sensitive, and a feeling of numbness and of cold is noted. Protoveratrine seems to cause less irritation of the sensory terminations than veratrine, and the subsequent local anæsthesia is more complete.

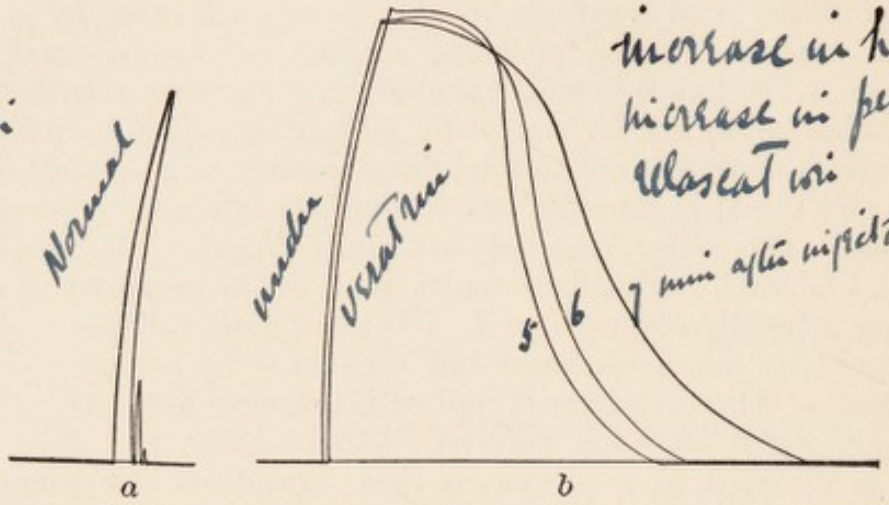
The **Terminations of the Motor Nerves** are paralyzed in the frog by large quantities of veratrine, but this paralysis is not preceded by an increase in their irritability, as was formerly supposed.

The **Nausea** and **Vomiting** which are invariably present in veratrine poisoning, may be due in part to the irritation of the sensory terminations of the stomach, but must probably be attributed for the chief part to central action. The salivation may be merely secondary to this emetic effect, or the poison may act on the salivary gland directly. Nothing is known with certainty regarding the cause of the **Purgation**, but it is presumably induced by some action on the nervous mechanism of the intestine. The profuse **Perspiration** which follows the injection of large quantities of veratrine, and the cutaneous secretion noted in the frog, have been attributed to stimulation of the terminations of the nerves regulating the activity of the glands.

The most characteristic action of veratrine, however, is that on the **Striated Muscles**. If a small quantity be injected into the lymph-sac of a frog a curious clumsiness and awkwardness in the movements becomes apparent, and after a few minutes it is evident that this is due to inability to relax its muscles. When a muscle is exposed, it is seen to contract as rapidly as usual, but instead of immediately relax-

ing again, it remains shortened and offers resistance to the contraction of the opposing muscles. The animal can no longer coördinate its movements therefore; for example, it can no longer extend a limb

FIG. 32.



Tracings of muscular contractions from the gastrocnemius of the frog. *a*, normal. *b*, three successive contractions taken at intervals of one minute, five minutes after the injection of veratrine. The contraction is higher and much more prolonged than in *a*, and the lever returns very slowly to the base line.

immediately after flexing it, as it does ordinarily in crawling, and locomotion becomes very slow and ungainly.

This characteristic action is most easily seen on comparing the tracings obtained from a muscle stimulated directly by single induction shocks before and after the application of veratrine (Fig. 32). In the first part of the tracing it will be observed that the height of the contraction is increased by veratrine, but this feature sinks into the background before the marked prolongation of the second part of the curve. Instead of the almost instantaneous return to the base line seen in the normal tracing, the curve shows generally a slight undulation, and then a very slow fall, the period of relaxation generally being 20–30 times as long as that in the unpoisoned muscle, and the whole contraction lasting 5–10 seconds in favorable circumstances. If, however, the muscle be stimulated repeatedly at short intervals, so as to induce fatigue, the length of the curve decreases until it cannot be distinguished from the ordinary muscle tracing; a similar effect is produced by subjecting it to cold, or by heating it beyond a certain point, while moderate heat increases the abnormalities of the tracing. If an unpoisoned muscle be stimulated repeatedly, so as to induce fatigue, and veratrine be then injected, it is found that a marked improvement in the contraction occurs, so that while fatigue lessens the prolongation of the veratrine curve, veratrine removes to some extent the effect of fatigue. In the prolonged contraction more energy is used up than usual, and the amount of heat formed during muscular contraction is therefore increased by veratrine. Besides the alterations seen in the tracing, veratrine increases the irritability and absolute strength, so

that the muscle reacts to weaker stimuli and contracts against a greater weight than usual.

The muscular phenomena are best observed in the frog, but can also be elicited in warm-blooded animals, although in the latter they do not play such an important rôle in the symptoms of poisoning. In the frog, the muscle is finally paralyzed, but this does not occur in mammals, as here the respiratory centre fails long before the quantity of veratrine necessary to induce this effect has been absorbed.

The first explanation that suggests itself for the curious muscular phenomena, that they are due to some change in the nervous system, is negatived by the fact that excised muscles show exactly the same reaction. Bezold explained the prolongation by supposing that a change was produced in the muscle substance, by virtue of which a single stimulus was enabled to set up a tetanic contraction; but this is shown to be incorrect, for if the nerve of another nerve-muscle preparation be laid on the veratrinized muscle, no secondary tetanus is set up in it, as would be the case if the first muscle were undergoing tetanic contraction. The generally accepted view is that veratrine increases the catabolic changes in muscle, and thereby induces a prolongation of the period of active contraction, as well as an increase in the height of contraction and in the absolute strength. Fatigue, by reducing the amount of substance capable of undergoing catabolic change, and cold, by increasing its stability, counteract the effects of veratrine.

In the tracing of veratrinized muscle a curious undulation is frequently seen at the top of the contraction, or the ascent may at first be rapid, then slower, and then again more rapid. This has been ascribed to veratrine acting differently on the two forms of muscle fibre, the gray and the red, but this explanation has recently been shown to be erroneous (Carvallo and Weiss). Botazzi supposes that the initial contraction is due to the anisotropous substance, while the secondary slower and prolonged contraction is induced by increased activity of the sarcoplasm. The electrical organ of the torpedo is apparently affected by veratrine in the same way as striated muscle.

Waller has recently shown that veratrine abolishes the irritability of the peripheral nerves when a solution is applied to them directly.

Protoveratrine differs entirely from veratrine in its effects on the muscles and the terminations of the motor nerves. The latter are not paralyzed even by the largest quantities, while the contraction of the muscle is rather shortened than prolonged. The contraction is higher and the absolute strength is increased, but fatigue is induced more readily than in the unpoisoned muscle, so that protoveratrine appears to increase the muscular force temporarily, but leads to its early exhaustion.

Circulation.—The ventricular muscle of the frog's heart is affected by veratrine in very much the same way as the ordinary striated muscle, while the auricular muscle, consisting chiefly of unstriated fibres, is much less altered. The ventricular systole is at first stronger and more prolonged; somewhat later one part of the ventricle is seen

to remain contracted during the alternate diastoles of the rest, and waves of contraction spread over the heart resembling the peristaltic movements of the intestine rather than the ordinary contractions of the heart. The whole ventricle is smaller than usual, and but little blood is expelled into the aorta. Still later the persistent contraction spreads over the whole ventricle, so that it dilates only half as often as it did at first, while the auricles maintain their original rhythm. This is evidently due to action on the muscle; the contraction is so prolonged as to limit the number of diastoles, and the ventricle can therefore react only to every alternate contraction of the auricle. After this "half-rhythm" has persisted for some time, the contractions become slower and weaker, and the heart finally comes to a standstill. The behavior of a frog's heart under veratrine resembles closely that characteristic of the digitalis series.

In mammals, the chief circulatory symptoms arise from stimulation of the medullary centres resembling that seen in the earlier stages of aconite poisoning. The stimulation of the cardiac inhibitory centre produces slowing of the heart and a decrease in its output, while at the same time the peripheral vessels are contracted by the increased activity of the vaso-motor centre. After larger quantities the terminations of the vagus are paralyzed, and the vaso-motor centre is at the same time depressed, so that the pulse becomes quicker, but the blood-pressure is somewhat lowered. In the mammalian heart no such prolongation in the systole is seen as in the frog's, but that a slight stimulant action is exercised by veratrine is shown by the fact that very large doses quicken the rhythm even after atropine. Veratrine, therefore, seems to resemble aconitine in its effects on the mammalian circulation, but much larger quantities are required to produce the same effects, and the more evident symptoms of stimulation of the myocardium are not elicited.

The **Respiratory Changes** under veratrine also resemble those under aconitine, and in both the cause of death is the same — paralysis of the respiration.

The **Central Nervous System** seems to undergo stimulation under veratrine as under aconitine. This is evidenced by the convulsions seen in mammals as well as by the stimulation of the medullary centres already noted. After large quantities of the poison this stimulation gives place to paralysis, terminating in failure of the respiration. The highest centres seem less affected than the spinal cord and medulla oblongata, for complete consciousness has remained until immediately before death in several fatal cases.

The **Temperature** is sometimes found lower than the normal after veratrine, probably owing to the slowing of the circulation. In other cases, when the convulsive movements are very marked and the heat production is therefore much increased, the temperature has been found somewhat higher than usual. In cases of poisoning in mammals atropine is said by Lissauer to have some value, probably owing to its action on the respiratory centre and on the vagus terminations in the heart.

As regards the other alkaloids of this series, jervine, sabadilline and sabadinine seem to possess the same action as veratrine, but are much less poisonous. Protoveratrine, which as has been said, differs from veratrine chiefly in not prolonging the muscular contraction and in the effects on the sensory terminations, is much more poisonous. Its action resembles that of aconitine as much as that of veratrine, and it may therefore be regarded as a link connecting the two groups.

Preparations.

Veratrina (U. S. P., B. P.), a mixture of alkaloids obtained from the seeds of Asagræa officinalis (U. S. P.); a mixture of alkaloids prepared from cevadilla, the dried, ripe seeds of Schœnocaulon officinale (B. P.), forms a white or gray, amorphous or semi-crystalline powder without odor, but causing intense irritation of the nostrils, with an acrid taste and leaving a sensation of tingling and numbness on the tongue. It is insoluble in water but soluble in alcohol. It contains veratrine and the other alkaloids of the plant.

Unguentum Veratrinæ (U. S. P., B. P.).

Oleatum Veratrinæ (U. S. P.).

Veratrum Viride (U. S. P.), American, or Green Hellebore, the rhizome and roots of Veratrum viride.

Extractum Veratri Viridis Fluidum, 0.2–0.5 c.c. (3–6 mins.).

Tinctura Veratri Viridis, 0.2–0.5 c.c. (3–6 mins.).

Therapeutic Uses. — The therapeutic uses of the members of this series are extremely limited. Veratrine is used in the form of the oleate or ointment as an external application in cases of neuralgia, and is certainly a safer remedy than aconite. Neither its pharmacological action nor therapeutic experience supplies any indications for its internal use. Veratrum viride is used internally in the same class of cases as aconite, but as its activity is due to veratrine it might well be discarded from the pharmacopœia. Veratrum album is also a superfluous drug.

Bibliography.

Bezold u. Hirt. Untersuch. aus dem phys. Laborat. zu Würzburg, i., p. 75.
Kölliker. Virchow's Archiv, x., p. 257.
Boehm. Studien über Herzgifte, 1871.
Fick u. Boehm. Würzburger Verhandlungen, iii., p. 198.
Rossbach. Pflüger's Archiv, xiii., p. 607.
Lissauer. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxiii., p. 36.
Brunton and Cash. Journ. of Physiol., iv., p. 1.
Overend. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvi., p. 1.
Eden. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxix., p. 440. (Protoveratrine.)
Schenk. Pflüger's Archiv, lxi., p. 494.
Hedbom. Skand. Arch. f. Phys., viii., p. 197.
Carvallo et Weiss. Journ. de Phys. et Pathol., i., p. 1.
Botazzi. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1901, p. 377.
Garten. Pflüger's Arch., lxxvii., p. 485.
Buchanan. Journ. of Physiol., xxv., p. 137.

XIX. EMETINE (IPECACUANHA).

Ipecacuanha (Cephælis Ipecacuanha) has long been used for its emetic and expectorant virtues, and was until recently believed to contain only one alkaloid, *Emetine*. Paul and Cownley have shown, however, that this so-called principle is really made up of two distinct alkaloids, *Cephæline* ($C_{14}H_{19}NO_2$) and *Emetine* ($C_{14}H_{18}(CH_3)NO_2$), both

of which are quinoline derivatives and produce almost identical effects. It seems probable that one or both of them are formed by a number of other plants, some of which have been used as emetics in former times, and among which may be mentioned several species of violet. Their chief action is exerted on the alimentary canal, although they are also local irritants.

Symptoms and Action. — When administered internally emetine has a bitter, acrid taste, and produces a copious, salivary secretion, followed later by nausea and vomiting with the usual attendant symptoms. The drug is generally largely eliminated by vomiting, so that no further effects are observed. When injected hypodermically, however, it induces nausea, vomiting and purging, and blood is frequently voided in the stools, a condition of collapse follows, and the animal generally dies of exhaustion in the course of a few hours after the onset of the symptoms. Very large quantities injected subcutaneously or intravenously may fail to elicit vomiting, but the collapse symptoms appear, and after some weak convulsive movements, the animal dies of cardiac failure. In those cases in which death follows rapidly on the injection, no pathological lesions may be found after death, but in experiments where smaller quantities are injected, and the animal survives for 18–24 hours, the stomach and intestine often exhibit the appearances of an acute gastro-enteritis. The mucous membrane is swollen, congested and often covered with a muco-purulent secretion or studded with ecchymoses, and in dogs ulceration is often present. A lesion which is not by any means constant, but which occurs in a considerable number of animals and especially in rabbits, is œdema of the lungs.

Emetine possesses a powerful **Irritant Local Action**, which is, however, much more marked in certain individuals than in others. The smallest quantity of the powdered root of ipecacuanha is sufficient to induce in the subjects of this idiosyncrasy considerable swelling and injection of the conjunctival and nasal mucous membranes, with salivation, tears, sneezing, coughing and bronchial catarrh. When applied to the skin as a liniment, it produces redness, itching and occasionally a pustular eruption, and injected subcutaneously it causes pain and inflammation, often terminating in abscess. Its action on the alimentary canal also indicates its irritant properties. It has been much discussed whether the emesis is wholly due to this irritant action on the gastric mucous membrane, or whether emetine, like apomorphine, has a specific action on the centres in the medulla oblongata controlling vomiting. In view of the fact that emetine, like many other irritants when injected subcutaneously, has a specific action on the alimentary canal it seems unnecessary to have recourse to any action on the central nervous system, and almost all the facts brought forward as evidence of this supposed central action have been disproved.

It is sometimes stated that section of the vagus nerves does not prevent ipecacuanha from causing vomiting, whereas if it only irritated the stomach, the division of these nerves (which are probably the chief sensory nerves of

the stomach) ought to prevent it by hindering the impulses reaching the medulla and setting up reflex processes there. But this statement has been contradicted, and no great weight can be laid on the argument in any case, because section of the vagus alone causes violent and persistent vomiting very often. Thumas states that the application of emetine solutions to the medulla provokes vomiting, but this method is so open to objection that his inference that the alkaloid acts on the vomiting centre, can hardly be regarded as justifiable. On the other hand, it may be urged that if emetine acted on the medullary centre, vomiting ought to follow after smaller doses and more quickly when it is injected subcutaneously, being thus more rapidly absorbed, than when it is taken up from the stomach. But this is not the case, for ipecacuanha causes emesis as soon and in as small quantities when it is administered by the stomach, whereas apomorphine which acts on the centre directly, acts much more rapidly and efficiently when it is injected subcutaneously. While the question cannot be said to be definitely settled, almost all the facts point to peripheral gastric, and not to central action.

Emetine injected into a vein weakens the heart's action, and induces a fall of blood-pressure, but when it is injected subcutaneously or given by the mouth the heart is much less affected.

In the frog, emetine does not cause vomiting, but a slowly advancing central paralysis follows its injection, the spontaneous movements ceasing early, and later the reflex excitability disappearing. The contractions of the heart are rendered weak and irregular, and eventually cease from paralysis of the cardiac muscle.

The striated muscle of the frog has been said to be weakened and paralyzed by emetine, but this has been disputed, and the muscular action is in any case slight and unimportant in frogs poisoned with the alkaloid.

The nausea and vomiting are accompanied by the usual symptoms — muscular weakness and depression, increased secretion of saliva and of mucus by the glands of the throat and respiratory passages, often perspiration and generally temporary acceleration of the pulse. (See apomorphine, p. 235.) Most of the researches on which the above statements are based have been performed with "emetine," which, according to Paul and Cownley, contains pure emetine and cephæline. The two constituents seem to resemble each other very closely in their effects, however, cephæline being somewhat more powerful than pure emetine.

Emetine and cephæline have not been used in practical therapeutics, various preparations of the crude drug being prescribed instead. Their isolation is so difficult that it seems unlikely that the pure alkaloids will be made use of in the near future, and from a comparison of their effects with that of ipecacuanha it scarcely seems desirable that they should be introduced. For ipecacuanha is much less liable to produce purging than emetine, probably because the solution of the alkaloids is retarded by the presence of large quantities of tannic acid and other impurities, while at the same time the emetic action is but little slower than that of emetine. Neither emetine nor ipecacuanha preparations are suitable for hypodermic injection owing to their irritant properties.

Preparations.

U. S. P.—**Ipecacuanha**, the root of Cephælis Ipecacuanha. The powdered root is prescribed in dysentery in quantities of 2 G. (30 grs.); emetic, 2 G. (30 grs.); expectorant, 0.06–0.3 G. (1–5 grs.).

Extractum Ipecacuanhæ Fluidum, expectorant, 0.2–0.5 c.c. (3–8 mins.); emetic, 2 c.c. (30 mins.).

SYRUPUS IPECACUANHÆ, } expectorant, 0.1–1 c.c. (2–15 mins.); emetic,
VINUM IPECACUANHÆ, } 2–4 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.); for a child.

Trochisci Ipecacuanhæ.

TROCHISCI MORPHINÆ ET IPECACUANHÆ; each contains 0.0016 G. ($\frac{1}{40}$ gr.) of morphine sulphate.

TINCTURA IPECACUANHÆ ET OPII contains 10 per cent. opium, *i. e.*, is of the same strength as laudanum, 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

PULVIS IPECACUANHÆ ET OPII (10 per cent. opium), Dover's Powder, 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

B. P.—**Ipecacuanhæ Radix,** the dried root of Psychotria Ipecacuanha, expectorant, ¼–2 grs.; emetic, 15–30 grs.

Extractum Ipecacuanhæ Liquidum, expectorant, ½–2 mins.; emetic, 15–20 mins.

Acetum Ipecacuanhæ, 10–30 mins.

VINUM IPECACUANHÆ, expectorant, 10–30 mins.; emetic, 4–6 fl. drs.

Trochiscus Ipecacuanhæ, contains ½ gr. of the powdered root.

TROCHISCUS MORPHINÆ ET IPECACUANHÆ, each contains $\frac{1}{36}$ gr. of morphine hydrochloride.

PULVIS IPECACUANHÆ COMPOSITUS, Dover's Powder, 10 per cent. opium, 5–15 grs.

Pilula Ipecacuanhæ cum Scilla, 4–8 grs. This pill is formed from Dover's Powder, and contains about 5 per cent. of opium.

Therapeutic Uses. — Ipecacuanha has been largely employed as an emetic, and although it has been replaced for some purposes, notably in cases of poisoning, by apomorphine, it still has a certain field of usefulness in cases in which an emetic is indicated but in which the hypodermic method is objectionable, as in children. At present, ipecacuanha is used chiefly as an expectorant in the treatment of inflammatory conditions of the respiratory passages. For this purpose it is prescribed in very much less quantities than those necessary to produce emesis. It acts indirectly through its nauseating properties, and has the advantage that its action is much more prolonged than that of apomorphine, and at the same time is not so depressant as that of several metallic substances, such as tartar emetic, which are used for the same purpose. It increases the secretion of the bronchial mucous membrane, and further tends to render it more fluid, so that the mucus can be coughed up more easily. The increased secretion may also be of service by protecting the inflamed and irritable membrane from the cold air and thereby lessening the cough, and in order to strengthen this action ipecacuanha may be prescribed in combination with opium, either as a lozenge or in the famous Dover's powder. When the secretion of the bronchi is already excessive, and the cough is rather to be encouraged than repressed, these preparations are of course contraindicated.

Ipecacuanha is also employed as a diaphoretic, either alone or more commonly as Dover's powder. The perspiration is not so copious as that following pilocarpine and other diaphoretics, but resembles rather that produced by warmth applied to the skin. Dover's powder is therefore a common remedy in chills and in commencing catarrh of the respiratory passages.

Ipecacuanha is used very largely in dysentery, particularly in tropical dysentery, in which it seems to act almost as a specific. Its effect is attributed by some authorities to the large amount of tannic acid contained in the root, and a preparation of ipecacuanha from which the alkaloids have been removed (*Ipecacuanha Deemetinisata*) is said to be as valuable in these cases as the unaltered drug. Others are inclined to ascribe some of the virtues of ipecacuanha to the alkaloids, and deny that the same results are obtained by the use of this preparation. The purified powder has the advantage of not causing any nausea or vomiting, and is certainly to be preferred to the crude root if the claims of its advocates prove to be well founded. Very large quantities of the powdered root are generally required in dysentery. Many prescribe enough to cause vomiting at first, and then follow this up with smaller quantities which are used along with morphine or ice, or with sinapisms to lessen the nausea and vomiting. Others give a few drops of laudanum at once, and when the medullary irritability is thus reduced, and there is less danger of vomiting, prescribe 30–60 grs. (2–4 G.) of the powdered root, and continue the treatment with smaller doses.

Ipecacuanha has been recommended in very small quantities as a stomachic, even in cases of vomiting, and its action on the mucous membrane might be expected to be of value in some cases ; but it very often fails to have any effect, and is not widely used for this purpose.

Bibliography.

Dyce Duckworth. St. Bartholomew Hospital Reports, v., p. 218 ; vii., p. 91.
Podwyssotzki. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xi., p. 231.
Thumas. Virchow's Arch., cxxiii., p. 66.
Wild. Lancet, 1895, ii., p. 1274.

XX. COLCHICINE.

Colchicine and *colchiceine* are two nearly related bodies found in the seeds and corm of Colchicum autumnale, which owes its activity to their presence. They are generally included among the alkaloids, but differ from the other members of this class in possessing an acid reaction. Their chemical structure is still imperfectly known, but they do not seem to contain a pyridine ring ; colchicine [$C_{15}H_9(OCH_3)_3$-$(NHCOCH_3)COOCH_3$] is the methyl ether of colchiceine [$C_{15}H_9$-$(OCH_3)_3(NHCOCH_3)COOH$]. These two principles are apparently identical in their effects, which are observed chiefly in the alimentary canal.

Symptoms. — No symptoms whatever follow the use of colchicum in ordinary therapeutic quantities. After the administration of a poisonous dose to man or animals several hours elapse before any symptoms are elicited, and the amount injected has but little influence on the duration of this preliminary stage. Whether given by mouth or hypodermically, colchicine produces symptoms of discomfort in the stomach

and intestine. Pain in the gastric region is followed by salivation, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhœa. At first the evacuations are the ordinary contents of the stomach and intestine, but afterwards a quantity of sticky mucous fluid may be ejected, often streaked with blood. Later, a condition of depression, apathy and collapse follows, and the movements become slow and difficult, more especially in the posterior extremities, which eventually become completely motionless; the paralysis then progresses upwards until the movements of the fore limbs and respiratory muscles are involved, when death occurs from asphyxia. In man, the intelligence remains until death, though there is generally some giddiness and precordial anxiety, and occasionally some confusion or even delirium preceding the collapse.

In mammals poisoned with colchicine, the alimentary canal exhibits all the appearances of acute gastro-enteritis, with numerous ecchymoses especially in the upper part of the bowel. In less acute cases these inflammatory symptoms are less marked, and in man there is seldom more than catarrh of the duodenum.

The **Circulation** is but little affected apparently. In animals the blood-pressure and heart rhythm remain normal, and though a small, rapid pulse may be one of the features of the poisoning in man, this is due to the collapse rather than to any direct action on the circulatory organs.

The **Respiration** is slow, but is deep and full at first. Later it becomes shallow, and the failure of the centre is the cause of death, the heart continuing to beat for some time afterwards.

The **Movements of the Bowel** are much hastened when the symptoms set in, and Jacobj believes that this is due to an increase in the irritability of the nervous mechanism, which accordingly reacts more strongly than usual to the natural stimuli; but this is entirely inadequate to explain the acute inflammatory appearances, which are evidently due to an irritant action on the mucous membrane.

When **Locally Applied** to sensitive mucous membranes, or when injected hypodermically, colchicine is intensely irritating, producing redness and prickling in the skin, and a burning sensation in the mouth and throat.

The **Nervous Symptoms** are supposed by some to be due to a direct action on the central nervous system, but may probably be ascribed rather to a condition of collapse produced indirectly through the action on the abdominal organs. It is true that in many cases, especially in man, the post-mortem appearances do not indicate any marked alteration of the stomach and intestine, but the symptoms throughout indicate that the nervous effects are indirect in their origin, and not due to any direct depression of the brain cells. When the collapse symptoms appear, a certain degree of insensibility to external impulses may be made out in the integument, but this seems due rather to the general depression than to any real anæsthesia of the skin.

The influence of colchicine on the **Kidneys** varies, for in some cases complete anuria is produced for many hours, while in others the urine

is slightly increased. The constituents of the urine are not materially altered by ordinary therapeutic doses of colchicum, and, in particular, the uric acid shows no constant change in amount. In animals bloody urine is sometimes passed after colchicine.

All of those symptoms are exactly those caused by a large number of poisons, including some of the bacterial toxines and the heavy metals. Many local irritants when injected into the blood or when absorbed from the subcutaneous tissue or the alimentary canal, exercise an immediate, local action, which betrays itself in pain, or ecchymosis and swelling at the point of injection, but these symptoms pass off in a short time and the animal becomes apparently normal for many hours or even days. At the end of this time, however, symptoms begin to develop at two points — in the alimentary canal and in the kidneys. The reason probably is that the poisons are excreted at these points and are either freed from some harmless combination in which they have circulated in the tissues, or perhaps collect in larger quantities in the excretory organs. At any rate, irritation and later acute inflammation are set up at these points. At first the irritation excites only diarrhœa and diuresis, but as it goes on gastro-enteritis and anuria or hæmaturia may be produced. The symptoms from the intestine and kidney may not be equally well marked; at one time the one becomes inflamed while the other is only subjected to mild stimulation, while at other times both are the seat of acute inflammation. The inflammation of the bowel produces a condition of collapse, which is seen also in various intestinal diseases, such as cholera. Sometimes the poisons (and also cholera) produce no very marked symptoms of gastro-intestinal disorder, but rather those of collapse, but there is no reason to believe that the collapse is due to any direct action on the central nervous system.

In the frog, colchicine has little or no effect, but if the solution be exposed for some time to the air, it causes a prolongation of the muscular contraction similar to that seen after veratrine, and eventually a tetanus resembling that due to strychnine. Jacobj therefore believes that in mammals the effects are not produced by colchicine itself, but by a substance formed by its oxidation in the tissues, oxydicolchicine. The frog's tissues are unable to oxidize colchicine, but if oxydicolchicine be formed by the exposure of colchicine to the air, it produces these symptoms. Oxydicolchicine causes the same symptoms in mammals as colchicine.

Preparations.

Colchici Radix (U. S. P.), **Colchici Cormus** (B. P.), the corm or bulb of Colchicum autumnale, 0.1–0.3 G. (2–5 grs.).

Extractum Colchici Radicis (U. S. P.), 0.03–0.1 G. (½–2 grs.).

Extractum Colchici (B. P.), ¼–1 gr.

Extractum Colchici Radicis Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.1–0.2 c.c. (2–3 mins.).

Vinum Colchici Radicis (U. S. P.), 0.5–1 c.c. (8–15 mins.).

Vinum Colchici (B. P.) (10–30 mins.).

Colchici Semen (U. S. P.), **Colchici Semina** (B. P.), the seed of Colchicum autumnale.

Extractum Colchici Seminis Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.1–0.3 c.c. (2–5 mins.).

Tinctura Colchici Seminis (U. S. P.), 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).
Tinctura Colchici Seminum (B. P.), 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).
Vinum Colchici Seminis (U. S. P.), 2–5 c.c.
The Vinum Colchici Radicis is the preparation usually prescribed.

Therapeutic Uses. — Colchicum has long been used in gout on purely empirical grounds. In fact, the pathology of gout is so obscure that no rational treatment for it can be looked for at the present day, and the efficacy of colchicum in this disease can, therefore, be argued solely from clinical experience, which here gives only uncertain indications. Up to a few years ago the routine treatment was wine of colchicum, but of late many physicians have denied that any benefit whatsoever was obtained from its use. Others maintain that colchicum is at any rate the most efficacious drug available in many cases, and here the matter stands, but the use of colchicum in gout is not universal now, as it was formerly. Some attempt has been made to place the practice on a rational basis by showing that it increased the excretion of uric acid. But a number of other intestinal irritants have the same effect, and it now seems to be proved that gout is not due to a deficient excretion of uric acid, so that its increased elimination would not explain the alleged beneficial effects of colchicum. Besides this increase in the uric acid excretion is by no means a constant result of colchicum medication, for it not infrequently has the opposite effect. And in gout the uric acid excretion does not seem to be modified at all by colchicum.

Colchicum has also been used in chronic rheumatism but here it is of little or no benefit.

Bibliography.

Jacobj. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvii., p. 119.
N. Paton. Brit. Med. Journ., 1886, i., p. 377, and Journ. of Anat. u. Phys., xx., p. 267.
Fawcett. Guy's Hospital Reports, lii., p. 115.

XXI. SAPONIN, SAPOTOXIN AND SOLANINE.

Under this group are arranged a number of glucosides which have many features in common both in their chemical properties and in their pharmacological action. Many of them have not yet been completely isolated, and it seems not unlikely that several which are now believed to be distinct, will prove to be identical. Kobert has found that many of them may be arranged in a chemical series $C_nH_{2n-8}O_{10}$. Some have an acid reaction and form salts with the alkalies, while all possess the characteristic glucosidal reaction, being decomposed by acids and ferments into sugars and unknown inactive substances. The most poisonous among them are designated by the general term of *Sapotoxins*, while *Saponin* may be used to include the less active ones and certain innocuous isomers of the sapotoxins which are formed from them by boiling with alkalies. These terms as well as the popular names of several of the plants from which the active principles are derived,

refer to the property they possess of forming frothy, soap-like solutions in water and of holding insoluble bodies in suspension in it. Very often several of these bodies are found in a single plant, either several powerfully poisonous ones (sapotoxins), a mixture of sapotoxins and saponins, or saponins only.

Saponins or sapotoxins are found in about 150 species of plants. The chief of these are:

Quillaja saponaria, or soapbark (containing *quillaja-sapotoxin* and *quillajac acid*).

Saponaria officinalis, or soapwort (*saporubrin* and *saponin*).

Cyclamen Europeum, or sowbread (*cyclamin*).

Polygala senega (*senegin* and *polygalic acid*).

Agrostemma githago, or corncockle (*agrostemma-sapotoxin*).

Gypsophila struthium and other species (*gypsophila-sapotoxin*).

Chamælirium luteum, or blazing star (*chamælirium-sapotoxin*).

Smilax, various species, including those known as sarsaparilla (*sarsaponin*, *sarsaparilla-saponin* and *parillin* or *smilacin*).

In addition to these plants, which owe their action to the presence of these bodies, a number of drugs contain saponins along with other more important principles. Thus, an almost inactive saponin (*digitonin*) is met with in digitalis, and similar saponins probably occur in several others of the digitalis series although they have not yet been isolated.

The most poisonous of these are the sapotoxins of quillaja, agrostemma and gypsophila, quillajac acid, and cyclamin. Senegin is only about one tenth as poisonous as quillaja-sapotoxin, and the saponins prepared from the sapotoxins are still less dangerous.

Another body closely resembling the saponin in action is *Solanine*, a glucosidal alkaloid found in many species of **Solanum**, such as S. nigrum (black nightshade), S. dulcamara (bittersweet), S. tuberosum (potato), and probably in some species of Scopolia. In Solanum nigrum and S. dulcamara it is accompanied by small quantities of one or more bases resembling atropine, while in dulcamara a glucosidal body, *Dulcamarin*, has been found also belonging to the sapotoxin series. *Solanine* is said to be generally accompanied by *Solaneine*, a nearly related alkaloid. Solanine breaks up on being heated with acids into sugar and a base, *Solanidine*, which retains the poisonous action. In some plants both solanine and solanidine seem to be present.

Its chief importance arises from its occurrence in the potato, which has given rise to widespread poisoning in several instances. The amount of solanine in the potato is in general too small to provoke poisonous symptoms, even when enormous quantities are eaten, but when the potatoes begin to sprout in damp cellars, the percentage of solanine rapidly increases, especially in the green buds and the small young tubers. In old, rotting potatoes it may also become dangerously high, but cases of poisoning are more likely to arise from the use of the green, unripe potatoes than from those which are obviously unfit for use. Weil states that the increase in solanine seen in potatoes that

have been kept too long is due to the presence of bacteria which form this alkaloid from the potato.

In any case the potato skins contain nearly half of the solanine, and if these be removed before boiling, a considerable part of the alkaloid contained in the edible part is extracted by the water.

Action. — The sapotoxins possess a very irritant, local action, and produce acute inflammation of the alimentary canal and extravasations in various organs, when they are carried to them by the blood. They also destroy the red blood cells when brought into contact with them.

They have a harsh, acrid, unpleasant taste, and when swallowed provoke nausea and often vomiting, with pain and colic, and less frequently diarrhœa. They are not absorbed by the normal epithelium of the alimentary canal, and therefore fail to produce general symptoms, unless some lesion, such as gastric ulcer, is present. Thus pigs feed with avidity on Cyclamen and are unharmed by it unless some lesion of the intestine is present. The unbroken skin is not affected by a single application as a general rule, and absorption is extremely slow from the subcutaneous tissues, in which they act as irritants, however, and produce inflammation and suppuration. The sapotoxin derived from Agrostemma differs from the others in being absorbed fairly rapidly from the alimentary canal and from the subcutaneous tissues, so that more dangerous symptoms may arise from it than from the other members of the series.

In an epidemic of solanine poisoning from potatoes described by Schmiedeberg, the symptoms consisted of headache, colic, vomiting and diarrhœa, general depression and weakness, and some mental confusion. In severe cases pallor or cyanosis, dilated pupils, short periods of unconsciousness with acceleration and then slowing of the pulse were observed. All the patients recovered in the course of ten days. In many cases some rise of temperature was noted. In experiments on animals, Perles found almost the same symptoms and the same post-mortem appearances as after sapotoxin. Diarrhœa was not so easily induced by solanine as by the poisonous potato, perhaps because the pure poison was absorbed from the stomach, while it was carried into the bowel when mixed with the other constituents of the potato. Solanine, on the other hand, seems more liable to cause nephritis than most sapotoxins, and albumin and hæmoglobin are generally found in the urine. When solanine is administered by the mouth, most of it is decomposed in the tissues, for very little reappears in the stools and urine as solanine and solanidine.

When these bodies are injected directly into the blood vessels, they induce much more characteristic changes, which very often prove fatal after a longer or shorter interval. Very large quantities thus injected may kill animals within a few minutes from respiratory paralysis, and no characteristic appearances are to be found post mortem. Smaller doses induce depression, loss of appetite, sometimes vomiting and diarrhœa, general weakness and collapse, with some dyspnœa and irregular,

feeble pulse. Weak convulsions appear just before the failure of the respiration, while the heart continues to contract for some minutes longer. In these cases ecchymoses are found in the serous membranes, pericardium, pleura and peritoneum, and occasionally in the kidneys. Endocarditis has been observed in some instances, but the most important alterations occur in the stomach and intestines, the mucous membrane of which is swollen and congested and contains numerous blood extravasations. The lymphatic glands of the abdominal cavity are also swollen and congested and often filled with hæmorrhages. Occasionally the kidneys are found to contain numerous blood casts filling the lumen of the tubules, and in these cases albumin and hæmoglobin appear in the urine before death. In Cyclamen poisoning (from intravenous injection) hæmoglobinuria is one of the earliest symptoms.

The saponin bodies are general protoplasmic poisons, destroying life wherever they come in contact with living tissues in sufficient concentration. Their irritant action on the mouth, throat, and stomach is the cause of the nausea and vomiting observed when they are administered in this way, and they cause sneezing and coughing from the same action in the nose and throat. On other mucous membranes, such as the conjunctiva, and in wounds, they cause similar irritation and inflammation, which may be followed by suppuration. A form of local anæsthesia often follows this irritation, the terminations of the sensory nerves apparently being benumbed, but the preliminary irritation precludes their use for this purpose.

Even the unbroken skin may be irritated when they are applied repeatedly or rubbed on in the form of ointment. This irritation is betrayed by redness, heat, itching, and eventually by the formation of pustules. Their local effects when injected subcutaneously also indicate their irritant properties.

When the individual organs are exposed to the action of saponin bodies by the direct application of solutions to them, a similar poisonous action is elicited. Muscle contracts more weakly even in dilute solutions, is eventually entirely paralyzed, and is altered in structure, the transverse striæ of voluntary muscle and of the heart becoming very indistinct. Nerves exposed to solutions are also paralyzed in the same way, and the movements of cilia cease at once when they are exposed to sapotoxin bodies. The blood undergoes characteristic changes when it is acted on by saponin either in the vessels or in the test-tube. The coagulation is said to be accelerated by small quantities of cyclamin, and is certainly retarded by larger, but the most striking effect is the destruction of the red corpuscles and the liberation of the hæmoglobin, which forms "laky" blood. Even one part of cyclamin added to 100,000 parts of diluted blood completely destroys the red blood cells, while hæmoglobin appears in the serum when considerably less poison is added. The other saponin bodies act less powerfully in this direction than cyclamin, but still produce distinct solution of the substance of the red corpuscles. When a saponin is injected

into the blood of a living animal this destruction of the red blood cells takes place to some extent, and the plasma contains hæmoglobin, while the blood corpuscles are considerably diminished in number. This hæmolytic action of the bodies of the group occurs after the corpuscles have been hardened and killed by histological fixatives (Stewart) and is therefore not dependent on the life of the blood cells; it has recently been shown that saponin acts more powerfully on the red blood corpuscles in the absence of serum and that the stromata of the corpuscles are the parts affected and not the hæmoglobin; finally, it appears extremely probable that the hæmolysis is due to the affinity of saponin for the cholesterin and other lipoids of the corpuscles, the changes in the physical condition of the cholesterin through the permeation of the glucoside resulting in the rupture of the cell and the liberation of the hæmoglobin. The serum retards the action of saponin on the corpuscles by fixing some of it in combination with its lipoid constituents (Ransom, Hedon).

The circulation in mammals is comparatively little affected until just before death, when the blood-pressure falls rapidly and the pulse becomes weak and slow. The heart continues to beat for a short time after the respiration ceases, but is very weak, and finally stops, even although artificial respiration is maintained. The isolated frog's heart is paralyzed by sapotoxins in the same way as the isolated muscle.

In many experiments, death would seem to be caused by collapse following the changes in the alimentary canal. In others, however, when only small quantities of the poison have been injected, no such changes are observed, but the animal dies after a few days, presenting no distinct symptoms except general weakness and depression. On the other hand, very large quantities injected into a vein may prove fatal within a few minutes, and here again no symptoms of intestinal action may appear. It is therefore believed that in addition to their irritant effects these bodies have a special action on the central nervous system, although it is impossible at present to specify its nature. The respiration is in all cases the first vital function to be suspended. Sapotoxin applied directly to the spinal cord in the frog first provokes convulsive twitching and clonic spasms and then paralyzes the animal, but it may be questioned whether it would have the same effect when carried in the blood.

The sapotoxins are poisonous to invertebrates apparently, unless they are protected by a shell, through which they can not penetrate. Thus the amœba and other simple organisms cease their movements, while intestinal worms are first excited and then paralyzed in the presence of some of the group.

It has been suggested that the action of the sapotoxins on protoplasm is due to their acting on the proteids, and in some cases a precipitation of albumin occurs. But the majority of these bodies do not appear to affect the isolated proteids, but only the living substance.

Preparations.

Quillaja (U. S. P.), **Quillaiæ Cortex** (B. P.), Panama bark, Soap bark, the inner bark of Quillaja saponaria.

Tinctura Quillajæ (U. S. P.), *Tinctura Quillaiæ* (B. P.), 2–4 c.c. (30–60 mins.).

Sarsaparilla (U. S. P.), the root of Smilax officinalis, S. medica, S. papyracea and of other species of Smilax.

Decoctum Sarsaparillæ Compositum (U. S. P.) contains, besides sarsaparilla, sassafras, guaiac, liquorice and mezereum. 100 c.c. (3–4 fl. oz.).

Extractum Sarsaparillæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 4 c.c. (1 fl. dr.).

Extractum Sarsaparillæ Fluidum Compositum contains the same constituents as the decoction, except guaiac. 4 c.c. (1 fl. dr.).

Syrupus Sarsaparillæ Compositus (U. S. P.) contains liquorice, senna and the oils of sassafras, anise and wintergreen. 10–15 c.c. (2–4 fl. drs.).

Sarsæ Radix (B. P.), sarsaparilla, the dried root of Smilax ornata, imported from Costa Rica and known as Jamaica sarsaparilla.

Liquor Sarsæ Compositus Concentratus (B. P.) is formed from sarsaparilla, sassafras root, guaiacum wood, liquorice and mezereum. 2–8 fl. drs.

Extractum Sarsæ Liquidum (B. P.), 2–4 fl. drs.

Senega (U. S. P.), **Senegæ Radix** (B. P.), the root of Polygala Senega.

Extractum Senegæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.5–1 c.c. (10–15 mins.).

Syrupus Senegæ (U. S. P.), 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

Tinctura Senegæ (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Liquor Senegæ Concentratus (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Infusum Senegæ (B. P.), ½–1 fl. oz.; as a draught, 2 fl. oz.

Caulophyllum (U. S. P.), Blue Cohosh, the rhizome and roots of Caulophyllum thalictroides. It contains a saponin substance, to which it probably owes any virtues which it may possess.

Hemidesmi Radix (B. P.), the dried root of Hemidesmus Indicus.

Syrupus Hemidesmi (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Dulcamara (U. S. P.), bittersweet, the young branches of Solanum dulcamara.

Extractum Dulcamaræ Fluidum, 4 c.c. (1 fl. dr.).

Therapeutic Uses.—The drugs of this group are all quite superfluous. They may be used to increase the bronchial secretion in cough through the nausea caused by their slight irritant action in the stomach, but they have no advantages over such drugs as ipecacuanha or apomorphine; the syrup of senega is often prescribed in expectorant mixtures for this purpose. Sarsaparilla has been supposed to have an obscure action on the nutrition, and has some reputation in the treatment of syphilis, but there is no reason to believe that it is of any service here or in any other condition, although it may be used as a vehicle for the administration of mercury and iodide of potassium. For this purpose the compound syrup U. S. P. or compound liquor B. P. is the best preparation. Quillaja has been used to some extent as an expectorant, more largely to form emulsions and to suspend insoluble powders. Its poisonous action ought, however, to preclude its use for this purpose. It is frequently stated that members of the sapotoxin series are antidotes in digitalis poisoning; but this is founded on experiments in which both drugs were applied directly to the frog's heart, and there is no reason to suppose that they would oppose each other in man, especially if given by the mouth, as sapotoxin is absorbed only with great difficulty.

Dulcamara has been used to a limited extent as a sedative and hypnotic and also as a diuretic and diaphoretic and in some skin diseases. It does not seem to possess any properties which would render it of value in medicine, and might well be dispensed with.

Another series of bodies resembling the saponin series in their effects are known as **Solvines, Oleites, Polysolve,** etc., and are derived from oleic and other similar acids by the action of sulphuric acid. The best known is that formed from ricinoleic acid. According to Kiwull, solvines have the same destructive action as sapotoxin. They have been used in medicine to form emulsions, but their use here is to be deprecated on the same grounds as that of quillaja.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Kobert. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxiii., p. 233.
Stewart. Journ. of Exp. Med., vi., p. 257.
Hedon. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., viii., p. 381.
Ransom. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1901, p. 194.
Pachorukow, Atlass u. Tufanow. Arbeiten a. d. Pharm. Inst. zu Dorpat, i.
Kruskal. Ibid., vi., p. 1.
Kiwull. Ibid., iii., p. 1. (Solvin.)
Schulz. Ibid., xiv., p. 1.

Solanine.

Husemann u. Balmanya. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iv., p. 309.
Perles. Ibid., xxvi., p. 88.
Meyer u. Schmiedeberg. Ibid., xxxvi., p. 361.
Pfuhl. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1899, p. 753.
Weil. Arch. f. Hygiene, xxxviii., p. 330.

XXII. ASPIDOSPERMA, OR QUEBRACHO.

The bark of Quebracho blanco (Aspidosperma quebracho) contains a number of alkaloids which are probably very similar in chemical composition and which seem to possess almost the same action. They are *Aspidospermine, Aspidospermatine, Aspidosamine, Hypoquebrachine, Quebrachine and Quebrachamine.* Another species of Aspidosperma, Payta, contains two alkaloids, *Paytine and Paytanine,* of which Paytine resembles closely the Quebracho alkaloids in its pharmacological action.

These alkaloids all produce nausea but even after large doses vomiting does not occur except after Aspidosamine. The nausea is accompanied by the usual concomitant symptoms—salivation, increased secretion of mucus in the respiratory tract, depression and alternately rapid and slow pulse. Large quantities often cause symptoms of central nervous stimulation, tonic contractions and convulsions. The respiration is quicker and deeper after small quantities, but after lethal doses becomes slow and weak, and finally ceases. Periodic respiration often occurs before the final standstill, a series of deep dyspnœic movements alternating with several shallow, insufficient ones. The failure of the respiration is the cause of death in mammals, the heart continuing to contract for some time longer. After Aspidosamine, there is no stage of quick and deep respirations, but the breathing is rendered slow at once and soon becomes periodic.

These symptoms are generally ascribed to a direct action on the central nervous system, which is first stimulated and then depressed. The chief seat of action seems to be the medullary centres and the spinal cord, although the basal ganglia may also be more or less involved. The stimulation of the medullary centres explains the nausea and vomiting and also the changes in the respiration, while the convulsions and increased reflex excitability point to the spinal cord.

The terminations of the motor nerves in voluntary muscles are paralyzed

by aspidosamine and quebrachine in the frog, not by the other alkaloids; but all of them lessen the strength of muscular tissue and eventually paralyze it in these animals. Neither of these results has been observed to follow the injection of the alkaloids in mammals.

The circulation in mammals is affected indirectly through the nausea, and the heart may be slowed by very large doses; in the frog the heart is weakened and eventually paralyzed in the same way as the other muscular organs.

Eloy and Huchard observed diarrhœa and an increased secretion of urine occasionally follow the administration of the alkaloids, and they also describe a curious coloration of the blood which they ascribe to a diminution of the hæmoglobin. Penzoldt attributed the asphyxia to changes in the red cells, but the subject of the action of these alkaloids on the blood requires further investigation.

None of the quebracho alkaloids is very poisonous, but of the series quebrachine is the most toxic, and aspidosamine and aspidospermatine follow it closely. Aspidospermine, quebrachamine and hypoquebrachamine are comparatively weak.

Preparations.

U. S. P.—**Aspidosperma**, Quebracho, the bark of Aspidosperma Quebrachoblanco.

Extractum Aspidospermatis Fluidum, 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.).

Commercial "aspidospermine" is a mixture of all the alkaloids along with other bodies. It is sometimes prescribed in doses of 1–2 mgs. ($\frac{1}{60}$–$\frac{1}{30}$ gr.).

Aspidosperma was advised by Penzoldt in the treatment of dyspnœa from a variety of causes, and his statements have received a certain amount of support from clinicians. The special conditions in which it has been advised are dyspnœa from pulmonary disease, especially emphysema, and from cardiac weakness and asthma. Its action on the respiratory centre may explain to some extent the benefits derived from it, but the increased secretion of the bronchi produced by the nausea may also be of some importance.

It has also been employed as an antipyretic, and has been shown by Eloy and Huchard to lower the temperature in animals.

Bibliography.

Harnack u. Hoffman. Zeitschr. f. klin. Med., viii., p. 471.
Eloy u. Huchard. Arch. de Phys. [3], vii., 1886, p. 236.
Gutmann. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xiv., p. 451.

XXIII. QUININE.

The barks of various species of Cinchona and Remijia (Cuprea) contain numerous alkaloids which seem to resemble each other closely in their chemical and pharmacological properties. The best known of these are *Quinine, Quinidine,* or *Conquinine, Cinchonine* and *Cinchonidine;* the others, amounting to some twenty in number, are believed to resemble these in their effects on the organism, but very little has been done to determine this, and nothing is known regarding their relative activity.

The cinchona alkaloids are derivatives of quinoline. Cinchonine and cinchonidine are isomeric ($C_{19}H_{22}N_2O$) and perhaps contain two quinoline molecules, while quinine and quinidine ($C_{20}H_{24}N_2O_2$) are methoxyl compounds of cinchonine.[1]

[1] The other alkaloids of this series which have been identified are homocinchonidine, conquinamine, quinamine, cusconine, concusconine, aricine, cusconidine, cuscamine, cuscamidine, hydroquinine, hydroquinidine, hydrocinchonine, cinchonamine, quaira-

Cinchona bark contains besides these alkaloids several acids, including tannins, and some neutral substances.

The cinchonas are natives of Western South America, but are now cultivated in India and Java. It seems questionable whether the virtues of the bark were known by the native Indians before the invasion of the Spanish, and its introduction into medicine dates from about 1630–1640; its name bears testimony to its efficacy in the case of the Countess of Chinchon in 1638.

Action.—Quinine differs from most of the other important alkaloids in acting not on some specialized form of living matter, but on the general nutrition of almost all forms of protoplasm. Other alkaloids, such as strychnine, are also possessed of similar effects as regards nutrition, but their strong affinity for, and intense action on some special tissue, prevent their effects on the fundamental properties of living matter from being elicited in the higher animals. Quinine is therefore often termed a protoplasm poison because its action extends with but little variation throughout most forms of living matter; on the other hand the marked effect of strychnine on the nerve cell causes it to be classed among nerve poisons, although in organisms devoid of a nervous system it resembles quinine in its effects. The effects of quinine on protoplasm generally consist in transitory augmentation of its activity, followed by depression and death.

The action of quinine on **Undifferentiated Protoplasm**, such as is found in the unicellular organisms and in the ovum, is therefore of greater interest than that of most alkaloids. Binz found that while very minute quantities sometimes increase the movements of the amœba and infusoria at first, large amounts paralyze them immediately, and the protoplasm assumes a darker granular appearance. The rhythmic movements of ciliated organisms are rendered slow and finally arrested by very dilute solutions. The microbes of putrefaction are also acted upon by quinine, although they seem more resistant than the protozoa; still, quinine solutions have considerable antiseptic power, equalling that of carbolic acid, according to some observers. The alcoholic, lactic and butyric fermentations are retarded, or entirely prevented by quinine through its effects on the organisms, but it is apparently devoid of action on some of the lower forms, for moulds (Penicillium) grow freely in solutions of the salts; so that the alkaloid seems to have a selective action here, such as is observed also in its effects on the ferments of the higher animals. Another example of its action on the vegetable cell is that discovered by Darwin in some insectivorous plants (Drosera), in which the movements seem to be first excited and later paralyzed by the quinine salts.

The influence of quinine on the reproductive cells of animals has been carefully studied by O. and R. Hertwig, who found that both the

mine, conquairamine, quairamidine and conquairamidine, while several others are said to have been separated by some authorities, but are rejected by others. The acids generally acknowledged to be present in cinchona are quinic, quinovic, quinotannic, quinovatannic, caffeotannic and oxalic, while the neutral bitter substances have been named quinovin, quinova-red and cinchona-red.

spermatozoön and the ovum of the sea-urchin are injured by the addition of quinine to the sea-water, the movements of the former being paralyzed, and the stages preceding impregnation in the latter progressing more slowly, or actually retroceding. When quinine is applied after the male nucleus has entered the ovum, the complete conjugation is delayed and the whole process is rendered abnormal by the admission of several spermatozoa. Quinine applied still later prevents or delays the division of the ovum through its effects both on the nucleus and on the general protoplasm of the cell.

The individual cells of more complex organisms are affected in the same way as these more simple ones. This was first demonstrated in the leucocytes by Binz, and after some opposition has been generally accepted. When a drop of blood is examined under the microscope, the white cells are observed undergoing constant changes of form and position exactly similar to those of the amœba, but minute quantities of a quinine salt are sufficient to stop all movements at once, and the leucocytes assume a spherical form, become darker in color and granular, and soon break up into débris. In the blood vessels similar changes occur when quinine is applied locally, as to the frog's mesentery; the leucocytes again become darkly granular, and ceasing their creeping movements, are carried along by the current much more rapidly than usual. They are no longer observed to push their way through the vessel walls, and if they have already penetrated into the tissues their movements are arrested. If irritation be applied to the part, no such accumulation of leucocytes occurs in the tissues as in the unpoisoned animal, and if an irritant has been applied first and the leucocytes have poured out of the vessels before the quinine is applied, the process is arrested at once on its application. This effect was explained by Binz as due to the poison acting on the leucocytes, and although attempts have been made to explain it by some change produced on the vessel wall by the drug, there now seems no reason to question the correctness of his view. Similar results are observed when the drug is not applied locally, but carried to the part by the vessels; the movements of the leucocytes in the vessels are less distinct; they are carried along passively in the general current, assume a spherical form, and have much less tendency to escape into the general tissues, and at the same time the number of the leucocytes in the blood undergoes a considerable diminution. It would be unjustifiable to infer from these experiments that the therapeutic dose of quinine inhibits the movements of the white blood cells in the human body, and it is no part of Binz's theory that this occurs. The effect of quinine on the leucocytes is merely an example of its effects on the tissues generally. At the same time, the number of leucocytes in the human blood is diminished by ordinary quantities of quinine, showing that the action on the frog's leucocytes extends also to those of man, even when the quinine is absorbed from the stomach and intestine.

Other evidence of the action of quinine is gained from processes which may be regarded as due to **Unorganized Ferments.**

Quinine hinders the oxidizing ferment of the blood & lessens it. Quinine prevents guaiac reaction for blood.

Thus the oxidizing action of drawn blood was shown to be diminished in several experiments performed by Binz. Immediately after its issue from the vessels the unpoisoned blood undergoes a diminution of its alkalinity, from the oxidation of some unknown substances at the expense of the oxyhæmoglobin, which is partially reduced. This acid fermentation is prevented by the addition of quinine to the blood. Even when pieces of tissues are added and the reduction of the arterial blood would ordinarily be much accelerated, quinine prevents or retards the change. A similar inhibition of the oxidizing action of the blood is shown by its failure to form the blue oxidation product of guaiac, or to decolorize indigo when it is applied to it along with quinine.[1] Or instead of blood a slice of potato or a watery extract of a living plant may be used. From these experiments the inference is drawn that quinine hinders the action of the oxidizing ferment of the blood and tissues. On the other hand, Jacquet found that it had little or no effect on the oxidation of substances passed through the vessels of excised organs. Another ferment action which is said to be retarded by the presence of quinine is the coagulation of the blood. The gastric and pancreatic ferments are also said to be rendered less active by the addition of quinine in artificial digestion experiments (Rossbach), while the ptyalin of the saliva, emulsin and diastase are unaffected (Binz).

Said to delay coagulating of blood

These experiments indicate that quinine hinders some, if not all, of the processes which normally occur in living matter, and which are expressed in movement and in various chemical products; they indicate in addition that this action is not confined to the intact protoplasm, but extends to some of the ferments. When very minute quantities of the drug are applied, the stage of depression is sometimes preceded by one of augmented activity. Rossbach found that quinine and several other alkaloids exercise some influence on solutions of the proteids, which coagulate at a lower temperature than usual, but it is impossible to determine at present whether this fact is connected with their effects on living tissue or is merely a coincidence.

Among the **Vertebrates**, also, small quantities of quinine give rise to disturbances of the nutrition, but before discussing these, it may be well to indicate the symptoms induced by poisonous doses.

In the frog, a short stage of increased reflex excitability is followed by the loss of spontaneous movements, the arrest of respiration and paralysis of the spinal cord. In mammals, the spinal cord is said to be stimulated by small quantities and then to be depressed. The respiration is sometimes accelerated in the beginning, but is afterwards weakened, and its failure is the cause of death. General depression and muscular weakness are usually the only cerebral effects noted, and the tremor and convulsions said to occur in some instances may be due to the use of impure quinine. The heart is

[1] The well-known guaiac experiment is performed as follows: A fresh solution of guaiac resin in alcohol, to which some peroxide of hydrogen has been added, is divided into two parts. To the one a minute quantity of quinine is added, and one or two drops of blood are then allowed to flow into each part. The one containing the quinine remains uncolored, while the other assumes a blue tint from the oxidation of the guaiac by the unpoisoned blood.

often accelerated at first, but is afterwards slow and weak, while the blood-pressure, after a slight increase, declines progressively. According to Santesson, quinine given by the stomach has comparatively little effect on the heart and blood-pressure in mammals. These symptoms point to a preliminary stage of stimulation, followed by depression of the **Central Nervous System** and heart in the vertebrates, corresponding to the two stages observed in the simpler organisms. They are only elicited by very large quantities of the drug and have perhaps received greater attention than they merit at the hands of experimental pharmacologists. The depression of the reflexes of the frog was at one time attributed to a stimulation of the inhibitory centres of Setschenow, and this was supported by the fact that it could be removed at first by division of the medulla oblongata. It seems more probable, however, that the local irritation of the acid salts usually injected caused the temporary depression indirectly, and that the action on the central nervous system consists in a transient stimulation followed by lasting depression. The statement that the depression is due to the weakness of the heart seems incorrect.

The changes in the **Circulation** in mammals are caused by a preliminary contraction of the arterioles and acceleration of the heart, followed by dilation of the former and slowing and weakening of the latter. In both cases the action is probably a direct one on the muscle of the arterioles and heart, although some investigators consider the acceleration due to depression of the inhibitory mechanism in the heart or in the medulla oblongata. The effects of quinine on the isolated frog's heart have been studied carefully by Santesson, who found that the action was entirely muscular and consisted in slowing, accompanied by marked decrease in the strength of the contractions.

In fatal poisoning in mammals the heart is generally very much weakened when the respiration ceases, but continues to beat for some time afterwards.

Quinine acts upon **Muscle** in the same way as upon the simple organisms, temporarily increasing its power and subsequently weakening it. Thus Santesson found that the strength of the individual contractions was increased, and that a contraction occurred against greater resistance than normally, but when the stimulation was repeated, fatigue set in sooner than in the unpoisoned muscle. Large quantities of quinine throw the muscle into rigor, which resembles that produced by caffeine, and is probably associated with its action in accelerating the coagulation of myosin (Fürth).

The **Nerve Trunks** are said to be remarkably tolerant to solutions of quinine, which do not lessen their irritability when applied locally in sufficient quantity to cause marked abnormalities in the muscular contraction. No sufficient evidence has been brought forward that quinine affects the peripheral ends of the motor or sensory nerves. The number of **Leucocytes** in the blood is much diminished by the administration of quinine in man and the lower mammals, but it is unknown how this is effected. The statement that the normal **Spleen** undergoes a contraction in size and partial atrophy after quinine, while not improbable in itself, is not supported by experiments in which accurate methods were used.

A slight increase in the amount of **Urine** excreted has been observed sometimes, but does not seem constant. It is attributed to the action of the quinine on the renal epithelium, by which it is excreted. The other secretions do not seem to be altered by quinine unless it is applied directly to the cells in large quantity by injecting solutions into the duct of the gland. The statement is made that the glycogenic function of the liver is altered so that less sugar than usual is supplied to the blood, and there is some evidence that other hepatic functions are less active than usual.

Cinchona preparations and quinine have the same action on the appetite and digestion in man as the simple bitters and nux vomica. Or-

dinary therapeutic doses often produce no very obvious symptoms, the most frequently observed effect consisting in derangement of the **Sense of Hearing**, less frequently of that of **Sight**. Ringing or roaring sounds in the ears, accompanied by slight deafness, are produced by moderate quantities and large doses are not infrequently followed by complete loss of hearing for a time. Contraction of the field of vision is observed less often, but in some cases total blindness has been produced and has lasted for several days or even weeks. Color-vision is especially liable to be rendered imperfect or temporarily paralyzed by quinine. There is every reason to believe that the defects of hearing are due to congestion of the auditory canal and not to any brain effects, for congestion of the membrana tympani has been observed in several cases in man, and Kirchner has produced congestion, inflammation and ecchymosis in the tympanum and labyrinth of animals by the administration of quinine. This inflammation may become chronic and produce lasting impairment of hearing. On the other hand, the disorders of sight are accompanied by a very marked contraction and even obliteration of the retinal vessels, which may be followed by degenerative changes in the retinal nerve cells and in severe cases by some atrophy of the optic nerve. No explanation has been offered for these opposing vascular effects in the ear and eye. Quinine possesses some irritant action which betrays itself in discomfort in the stomach and eructation after large and repeated doses by the mouth, and by pain and tenderness when it is injected subcutaneously; but this drawback is not of so much importance as in the case of many other drugs.

Large doses of quinine produce some confusion and depression with a sense of fulness and heaviness in the head from their action on the **Cerebrum**, and this is sometimes accompanied by uncertain gait and slow pulse. Very few cases of fatal poisoning have been satisfactorily determined to be due to quinine, although a considerably larger number have been attributed to it. In these cases marked weakness of the heart and collapse accompanied by loss of sight and hearing, muscular weakness, apathy, slow, gasping respiration and finally unconsciousness and total failure of the respiration were observed. In some cases delirium and convulsions have been noted, but it may be doubted whether the preparation did not contain other members of the cinchona alkaloids. Enormous doses of quinine sulphate have been swallowed without any serious results. Thus in one case thirty grammes (one ounce) produced only some confusion and noises in the ears. Probably only a small quantity of the drug was absorbed, as the sulphate, which is generally used, is exceedingly insoluble.

The extensive use of quinine in therapeutics has demonstrated that many persons have curious **Idiosyncrasies** in regard to it. This is betrayed in many cases by the development of ear symptoms after comparatively small doses, but in others symptoms arise which do not appear in the great majority of people even after large doses. The commonest of these are skin eruptions, of which a large variety have been described, and which can be distinguished from ordinary diseases

of the skin only by the history or by the detection of quinine in the urine and other excretions. These exanthemata are often accompanied by some rise in temperature, which has received more attention than it appears to deserve, for it is rare and even when present is of insignificant extent. Other less important effects, which have been occasionally noted, are gastric discomfort and diarrhœa, while albuminuria and hæmaturia have been met with in a very few cases and hæmorrhages from various surfaces have been noted occasionally.

The action of quinine on the **Uterus** is the subject of a large number of memoirs, but is still quite uncertain. Abortion certainly occurs occasionally after its use in malaria, while in other cases labor pains may be induced by quinine. Many physicians use it during labor if the pains cease or if they seem to be too weak to expel the child. But opinions differ as to its efficiency, for while some regard it as the most useful of remedies for this purpose, others have found it to fail in the great majority of cases and regard this action as an idiosyncrasy confined to a small proportion of individuals. It is quite impossible to state how quinine acts here, but is seems most likely that the uterine muscle is affected directly.

In the **Alimentary Tract**, quinine and the cinchona preparations act in the same way as the simple bitters (page 56). Quinine delays proteolysis in experiments in artificial digestion.

The constant effects of quinine on the **Metabolism**, which are produced by quantities of the drug too small to have any further action except in specially susceptible individuals, are of much greater interest and importance than the symptoms already mentioned. This alteration of the tissue change occurs throughout the mammalia, and consists in a marked diminution in the destruction of the nitrogenous constituents of the tissues. After the administration of quinine, the nitrogen in the urine is found at first slightly augmented for a few hours, but then undergoes a diminution of considerable extent, due to a restricted production of all the nitrogenous constituents of the urine, but especially of the urea and the uric acid. The latter might be expected to be lessened from the diminished number of leucocytes in the blood, while the falling off in the urea and total nitrogen and sulphur indicates that the metabolism of the proteid tissues in general is retarded by quinine. The phosphates and sulphates undergo a corresponding alteration, but all of the metabolic changes are not affected by quinine, for the carbonic acid exhaled and the oxygen absorbed by the lungs present no marked alteration in amount, so that the oxidation of the tissues cannot be said to be altered, but only the breaking down of the nitrogenous bodies. This absence of effect on the oxidation of the body is not what might have been expected from the experiments of Binz and others on the simpler tissues, for these showed that oxidation of all kinds was retarded by quinine. On the other hand, it corresponds with Jacquet's experiments on the oxidizing ferment of the tissues, and has been attested by too many observers to allow of any doubt as to its correctness. In the case of several other drugs the diminution of the urea is

compensated for by the increase in the other nitrogenous bodies in the urine, but the fall in the total excretion of nitrogen after quinine points to an alteration of the metabolism of the body in general, and not to the paralysis or destruction of the organs which change the first products of the nitrogenous metabolism to the simpler forms in which they are finally excreted. The oxygen absorbed and the carbonic acid excreted by the tissues are generally held to measure the amount of work done and heat formed by the muscular and other movements of the body, and quinine therefore does not seem to affect these functions, while it would appear that some other processes, perhaps the death, growth and repair of the tissues, are less active than normally. At any rate the nitrogenous food is not dissipated so rapidly, but is stored up in the body in some unknown form, for v. Noorden found that under constant diet the nitrogen excretion diminished under quinine and this diminution continued for two days after the treatment was stopped. The nitrogen absorbed from the alimentary canal remained unchanged, and a certain amount of proteid food must therefore have been added to the body and saved from the decomposition which it would have undergone in ordinary circumstances.

The influence of quinine on the metabolism is closely connected with its effects on the body **Temperature.** It was early observed that besides its specific effects in malaria, quinine often depressed the temperature and improved the condition in a number of other fevers. This was long supposed to be due to some action that it exercised on the central nervous system, but when the nervous theory of fever fell into disrepute, this explanation also came to be looked upon with suspicion, and was finally disposed of by the experiments of Binz and others, who showed that quinine lowered the fever temperature after division of the spinal cord. Binz therefore attributed the antipyretic effects of quinine to its direct action on the tissues, and this explanation is generally held to be correct. It is to be remarked that while there is no question as to the reduction of the temperature effected by quinine in many cases of fever, it has little effect upon the normal temperature. In some cases a slight fall in the thermometer is observed, but it is never very considerable, and often no results follow its administration, or a rise of 0.1–0.2° C. may occur.

Gottlieb found that the fever temperature produced in rabbits by injury of the region of the corpus striatum was reduced by quinine, and that the regulation of the heat production according to the temperature of the surrounding air was not impaired by it. Thus, when the temperature of the cage was kept at about 30–32° C., and animals poisoned with morphine and some other drugs had fever temperature, the rabbit to which quinine had been administered, showed little change from the normal. From this he infers that the heat-regulating mechanism of the brain is not affected by quinine, and that the reduction of temperature, when it occurs at all, is due to alteration in the metabolism. In a later research the same author found by calorimetric experiments that the warmth production was lessened by quinine, both in normal

animals and in those in which fever had been induced by injury of the corpus striatum. This lessened production is accompanied by a lessened output of warmth, as occurs in unpoisoned animals when for any reason the heat formation is retarded. The lessened heat formation after quinine he again regards as evidence of its effects on the metabolism.

This explanation of the antipyretic effects of quinine is not without difficulties, however. As has been stated above, the modern theory of warmth production in the body is that the oxidation of the carbon compounds is the chief if not the only source of heat; but quinine does not lessen the amount of oxygen absorbed nor of carbonic acid excreted by the lungs, as it might be expected to do if it acted only through the metabolism, and this has led some investigators to deny that the heat production is lessened in the body. This reduces the antipyretic action of quinine to a paradox; on the one hand, there is no question that the temperature falls, while, on the other hand, the combustion is certainly not reduced to any notable extent, and at the same time there is no reason to suppose that the output of warmth is increased.[1] While no solution of this dilemma has been offered as yet, it seems extremely probable that the antipyretic action of quinine is due to its retarding the metabolism; it has been suggested that while the combustion in the normal tissues is not affected by quinine, the presence of fever poisons throws them into a state of augmented activity in which they are more susceptible to its sedative action, and that even in the normal organism a reduction of the temperature might be induced if sufficient of the drug could be ingested without exciting other symptoms. In this connection it is of interest to remember that in fever the nitrogenous decomposition is much increased, while quinine has a directly opposite effect. The diminution in the nitrogenous metabolism may also lead to an increased resistance being offered by

FIG. 33.

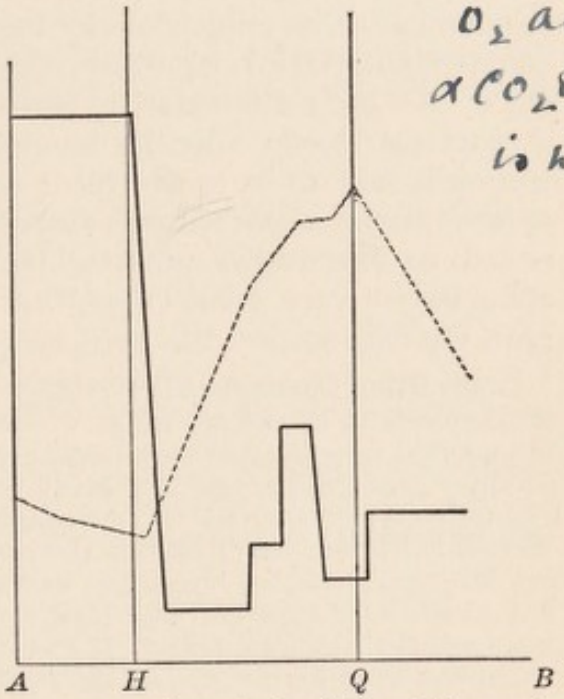


Diagram to illustrate the relation of the warmth output and internal temperature (after one of Gottlieb's experiments). The unbroken line represents the changes in the warmth output, which may be estimated by measuring its distance from the abscissa *AB*. The dotted line represents the internal temperature. From *A* to *H*, normal. At *H* an injury to the brain caused a marked diminution in the heat output and a corresponding rise in the internal temperature. At *Q* quinine was administered and was followed by an immediate fall in the internal temperature, while the heat output was practically unchanged. Contrast Fig. 35.

[1] It is true that Maragliano states that quinine dilates appreciably the peripheral vessels in fever; but as it has the same effect in health this dilation cannot be held to explain the fall in temperature, for in health quinine has no such antipyretic action.

the tissues to the cause of the fever, or may lessen the poisonous products circulating in the blood. In addition, the microbes of fever may themselves be rendered less active by the drug, although this antiseptic action would appear to be of subordinate importance, as many of the pathogenic forms have been found to offer great resistance to it.

Quinine has much more effect in reducing temperature when it is administered in the beginning of a natural remission than when it is given during a rise of the thermometer. This property is shared by most antipyretics and will be treated of at greater length under the antipyrine series.

Excretion. — Quinine appears in the urine within a short time (30 minutes) after its exhibition by the mouth, and about one half of the quantity absorbed is excreted within six hours. After this it passes out of the body more slowly, and traces may be detected in the urine seventy-two hours after its administration. In some fevers the excretion is said to be considerably retarded. Kerner found that some of the quinine absorbed was partially hydrated in the tissues and excreted as dihydroxyl-quinine, but if any such change occurs, it can affect only a very small proportion of the alkaloid, as over ninety per cent. of that ingested has been recovered unaltered from the urine.[1]

Of the **Other Cinchona Alkaloids**, quinidine or conquinine resembles quinine most closely in its effects, which are somewhat weaker, however. Cinchonine, while very similar to quinidine in most points, has some tendency to produce convulsions, but this effect is much more liable to occur under cinchonidine which save for its resemblance in other features to quinine, would be entitled to be classed among the convulsive poisons.[2] These convulsions are of an epileptiform character, and are only produced by very large doses, but Albertoni discovered that even small quantities administered to epileptics increased the number of the attacks. He found that these epileptiform seizures were not prevented by the removal of the cerebral cortex in dogs, and that the irritability of the motor areas was not altered by cinchonidine, and therefore concluded that the poison produced these symptoms by acting on some lower division of the central nervous axis. It is believed by many, however, that epileptic attacks can be elicited only when the cerebral cortex is intact, and although no results directly opposed to those of Albertoni have been recorded, the question must still be regarded as an open one.

In other respects cinchonine and cinchonidine differ from quinine only in the degree and not in the kind of their action. Cinchonamine possesses an even more marked convulsant action than cinchonidine.

The effects of the other alkaloids have not been the subject of much investigation, but they seem to differ from quinine chiefly in their effects on the central nervous system. These are not entirely absent in quinine itself, for, as has been stated already, the reflex irritability is at first increased and then diminished in both frogs and mammals, and in some cases even convulsions are stated to have occurred in quinine poisoning, although these are so rare that the suspicion is aroused that the preparation was contaminated with cinchonidine or some other alkaloid.

Cinchonidine seems the most poisonous of the four chief alkaloids, quinine following next, and then cinchonine and quinidine.

[1] Further investigation regarding the fate of quinine in the human tissues is desirable, since Merkel has found that seven-eighths of that administered to dogs is completely oxidized and the remaining eighth undergoes extensive chemical change.

[2] These convulsions are not confined to the vertebrate kingdom, but have also been observed in the crab by Langlois and Varigny.

Preparations.

U. S. P.—**Cinchona,** the bark of Cinchona calisaya and of C. officinalis and of hybrids of these and of other species of Cinchona, yielding not less than 5 per cent. of total alkaloids and at least 2.5 per cent. of quinine.

Cinchona Rubra, red cinchona, the bark of Cinchona succirubra, containing at least 5 per cent. of alkaloids.

Infusum Cinchonæ, 60 c.c. (2 fl. oz.).

Extractum Cinchonæ, 0.5–2 G. (10–30 grs.).

Extractum Cinchonæ Fluidum, 4 c.c. (1 fl. dr.).

Tinctura Cinchonæ, 4–15 c.c. (1–4 fl. drs.).

Tinctura Cinchonæ Composita is the only preparation of red cinchona, and contains in addition serpentaria and bitter orange peel. 4–15 c.c. (1–4 fl. drs.).

These preparations of cinchona were formerly much more in vogue than at the present day, in which they have been replaced for most purposes by the alkaloids. They are still prescribed alone or together with other remedies as stomachic bitters.

Quinina,
Quininæ Sulphas,
Quininæ Bisulphas,
Quininæ Hydrobromas,
Quininæ Hydrochloras,
Quininæ Valerianas,
} 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.); to be increased when necessary.

Ferri et Quininæ Citras, 0.3–0.6 G. (5–10 grs.).

Ferri et Quininæ Citras Solubilis, 0.3–0.6 G. (5–10 grs.).

Syrupus Ferri, Quininæ et Strychninæ Phosphatum, Easton's syrup, 4 c.c. (1 fl. dr.).

B. P.—**Cinchonæ Rubræ Cortex,** red cinchona bark, the dried bark of the stem and branches of Cinchona succirubra. It ought to contain 5–6 per cent. of total alkaloids, of which one half should consist of quinine and cinchonidine.

Extractum Cinchonæ Liquidum, 5 per cent. of alkaloids, 5–15 mins.

Tinctura Cinchonæ, 1 per cent. of alkaloids, ½–1 fl. dr.

Tinctura Cinchonæ Composita, containing bitter orange peel, serpentary and coloring matters, ½–1 fl. dr.

Infusum Cinchonæ Acidum, containing aromatic sulphuric acid, ½–1 fl. oz.

Quininæ Hydrochloridum,
Quininæ Hydrochloridum Acidum,
Quininæ Sulphas,
} 1–10 grs.

Tinctura Quininæ, formed from the hydrochloride and flavored with orange, ½–1 fl. dr.

Tinctura Quininæ Ammoniata, formed from the sulphate, ½–1 fl. dr.

Vinum Quininæ, ½–1 fl. oz.

Pilula Quininæ Sulphatis, 2–8 grs.

Syrupus Ferri Phosphatis cum Quinina et Strychnina, Easton's syrup. Each fl. dr. contains ⅘ gr. of quinine sulphate and $\frac{1}{32}$ gr. of strychnine. ½–1 fl. dr.

Ferri et Quininæ Citras, 5–10 grs. (See Iron.)

Quinine is practically insoluble in water and several of its salts are only dissolved sparingly. Thus, the sulphate requires 800 times its own weight of water, the hydrochlorate 35, the hydrobromate 54, and the valerianate 100. The presence of acid in excess renders them much more soluble, and the acid hydrochlorate is dissolved in less than its own weight of water, the bisulphate in 10 parts. They all form crystalline powders with a very bitter taste, and their solutions in water have a blue fluorescence when sulphuric acid is present. The

acid hydrochloride and the bisulphate have an acid reaction, the others are neutral.

The sulphate of quinine is the salt generally prescribed, although the hydrochlorate is more soluble and ought to be preferred. The hydrobromate and valerianate are comparatively seldom used. Instead of the acid salts being prescribed, some sulphuric acid or hydrochloric acid may be ordered to be added to the neutral salts in order to facilitate their solution.

The salts of quinine are frequently given in the form of pills, cachets or capsules, which have the advantage of avoiding the bitter taste, but from which the alkaloid is more slowly absorbed than from solutions. Care must be taken that the pills are soft and freshly prepared, as when kept for any length of time they become hard, and in this condition frequently pass through the bowel unabsorbed. The salts or the pure alkaloid may also be given as powders, or the former in solution, but these are objected to by many patients on account of the bitter taste. When a rapid absorption is desired, solutions should be used, flavored, if necessary, with syrup and volatile oils. Solutions of the salts are occasionally injected as enemata, but are liable to set up irritation and be rapidly evacuated. The hypodermic method has also been advised in cases of emergency, or where the salt cannot be retained or absorbed from the stomach; for this purpose a solution of the hydrochlorate with hydrochloric acid in excess or of the sulphate is injected deeply into the muscular tissue. This form of medication is painful, but does not seem to induce more serious results if ordinary care is used. The neutral hydrochlorate may be dissolved in hot water and injected when the solution reaches body temperature with less pain than is elicited by other salts. In this way about two parts of water are required to dissolve one of quinine. The intravenous injection of quinine has been practised by Baccelli with success in cases of pernicious malaria. He uses the hydrochlorate in a solution of common salt and injects into one of the veins of the arm.

Many other salts of quinine have been proposed, and have enjoyed a certain reputation for some time. Among the better known of these is the *tannate*, which is exceedingly insoluble and almost tasteless, and is prescribed in powder in doses of 1–3 G. "Tasteless" quinine seems to be used to designate either the tannate or the pure alkaloid. Other salts which have been recommended are the *tartrate* and the *lactate*. The double hydrochlorate of quinine and urea has been used for hypodermic injection and is said to be less irritant than the other preparations. *Euquinine* is the ethyl-ether of quinine-carbonic acid ($CO(OC_2H_5)(OC_{20}H_{23}N_2O)$) and is said to possess the therapeutic virtues of quinine without its bitter taste and without inducing ringing in the ears and other symptoms. Quinine is very easily dissolved in water when it is mixed with antipyrine in the proportion of three parts of quinine to two of antipyrine, and this solution is said to be less painful when it is injected hypodermically than others. A chemical combination seems to be formed between the natural and the artificial alkaloid (Santesson).

A famous preparation of quinine is *Warburg's tincture*, which has been extensively used in India in the treatment of malaria. It contained a very large number of ingredients, many of which were certainly entirely superfluous. Among the more important constituents were aloes, rhubarb,

gentian, camphor, and various volatile oils ; it is possible that some of these may have aided the quinine through their effects on the stomach. Various drugs, such as capsicum and piperine, have long had some reputation as adjuvants in quinine treatment for a similar reason.

Quinidinæ Sulphas,
Cinchonina,
Cinchoninæ Sulphas,
Cinchonidinæ Sulphas,
} (U. S. P.), 0.5–1.5 G. (8–20 grs.).

These alkaloids have been used occasionally as substitutes for quinine, but have somewhat less therapeutic effect, while cinchonidine is more liable to produce symptoms of poisoning. They might all be dispensed with, without loss to therapeutics.

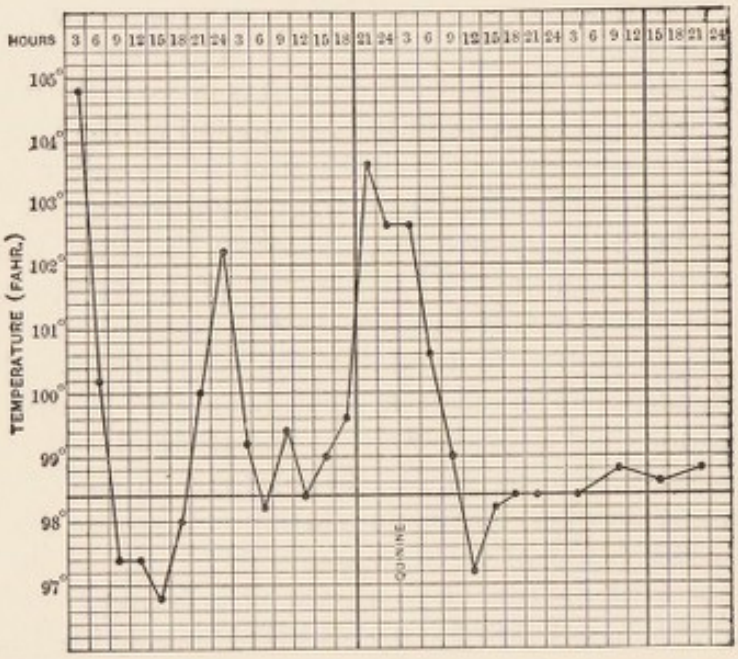
Quinoidine and *quinetum* were formerly used as substitutes for quinine at a time when the price of the latter was very high. They were mixtures of the other cinchona alkaloids and have fallen into disuse.

Therapeutic Uses. — The introduction of cinchona into therapeutics was due to the discovery of its efficacy in ague or **Malaria**, and with growing experience in the disease and its treatment, the confidence in the drug, or rather in its chief alkaloid, has constantly increased, until the action of quinine in malaria is now quoted as the best example of a specific in therapeutics. The explanation of its action has only been arrived at within the last few years with the discovery of the cause of malaria, the plasmodium malariæ, although in 1868 Binz suggested that the then unknown malarial poison was probably rendered inert by quinine. The plasmodium belongs to the group of protozoa, and in one of its stages comes to resemble somewhat the amœba, on which Binz experimented. The effect of quinine seems similar in the two organisms, although it is probable that the alkaloid acts more strongly on the malarial organism in the blood than on the common amœba living in water ; another organism closely related to that of malaria and found in the blood of birds appears to be unaffected by quinine. When quinine is administered to a patient suffering from malaria, the organism in the blood breaks up and disappears, leaving only a few more resistant forms ; these, however, may continue to grow and multiply until they cause a second attack, unless the treatment be continued and the surviving organisms, changing into less resistant forms, are destroyed by the drug.

In a drop of malarial blood the plasmodia may be seen in active movement, but a minute drop of quinine solution paralyzes and kills them, exactly as it kills the amœba. The explanation of the action of quinine on malaria lies in its effects as a protoplasmic poison, therefore, which acts more strongly (specifically) on the lower forms of life than on the higher, and can consequently be introduced into the human body with impunity in doses which are destructive to the simpler organisms which may have invaded it. An attempt has been made to explain the effects of quinine in malaria by a tonic or strengthening effect on the tissues whereby they are rendered more resistant to the invasion, but its rapid effects would seem to be more easily explained by a specific action on the plasmodium. Experience has shown that quinine is most effective when it can act immediately after the paroxysms

of ague, and this is now explained by the fact that the organisms are in their least resistant form — the amœboid — at this time. If quinine is given at the beginning of an attack, sufficient will remain in the blood when the temperature begins to fall to destroy the unprotected spores of the parasite, or the same result may be obtained by a dose given as the temperature begins to fall provided the drug is rapidly absorbed, as is ordinarily the case. It may be ordered in one dose of about 1 G. (15 grs.), or in divided doses given at intervals during the fall of the temperature. This frequently prevents the next attack, but if any rise of temperature occurs, a smaller dose should be administered. After this a dose of 1 G. should be given every six days, in order to complete the destruction of the organisms which have developed from the

FIG. 34.



Temperature chart in a case of malaria in which quinine (10 grains) was administered in the third paroxysm as the temperature was falling. On the following day no rise of temperature occurs. The temperature was taken every three hours. (DOCK.)

resistant forms left alive after the first administration. Quinine is generally administered by the mouth in malaria, but its intensely bitter taste renders this treatment disagreeable, and in children and in cases of persistent vomiting it may be impossible; in such circumstances it may be given in an enema or suppository, or in children the tasteless forms may be employed. In recent years good results have been obtained by the hypodermic method, and in the severe form known as pernicious malaria, Baccelli found the intravenous injection superior to any other method of administration. A great deal of weight was formerly laid on the use of purgatives and emetics as preliminaries to the treatment of malaria with quinine, and the former are undoubtedly of service sometimes, although it is unnecessary to delay the quinine treatment by waiting for the intestines to be evacuated.

Quinine is used not only as a remedy, but also as a prophylactic

against malaria. Its value for this purpose has been attested by long experience, but there is still no unanimity of opinion as to the best method of administration and the dose required. Plehn found that one gramme of the sulphate given in one dose every seven days was sufficient to prevent the disease, which is believed to have an incubation period of a week, while others recommend doses of 0.1–0.2 G. (2–3 grs.) every morning.

One of the results of quinine medication in early cases of malaria is the reduction of the enlarged spleen, and this has led to its use in other **Diseases of the Spleen** with enlargement. In malaria the effect on the spleen is only secondary to the removal of the cause of the disease, but the action of quinine in lessening the number of leucocytes in the blood might explain some alteration in the spleen. In some cases of leucæmic enlargement encouraging results have been obtained from the continued use of quinine.

Various other **Febrile Conditions** have been treated with quinine, partly for the sake of its antipyretic effects and partly in the belief that it acts as an antiseptic in the blood. As regards its effect on the temperature in non-malarial fever, it not infrequently causes a considerable fall, and has the advantage of possessing a more prolonged action and of causing less risk of depression and collapse than the newer antipyretics. On the other hand, the fever is not reduced so rapidly and generally not to the same extent as by the latter, and the large quantities of quinine required are liable to cause discomfort from their effects on the brain and hearing. Typhoid fever, scarlatina and other acute pyrexias are sometimes treated with quinine for this effect. The best results are obtained when it is exhibited in maximal doses when the temperature is falling or when it has been temporarily reduced by other means, such as cold baths. Perhaps, however, the beneficial action of quinine in those cases ought to be measured not so much by the reduction of the body temperature as by the lessened destruction of the tissues. It would be interesting to know whether in those cases in which quinine treatment is successful, the nitrogen of the urine is diminished in proportion to, or in excess of the fall of the temperature. In general, antipyrine and its allies have succeeded in ousting quinine from its former position as the best of the antipyretics. The use of quinine has been recommended in septicæmia, largely from a belief in its antiseptic action in the blood. In this connection it is to be remarked that the microbes of septic fever are very much more resistant to the action of quinine outside the body than are the protozoa, and the question therefore arises whether the blood and tissues are not liable to be seriously injured by the quantity of quinine required to act on the parasites they contain. In many cases of septicæmia in which beneficial results are said to have been obtained by the use of quinine, the quantity administered was obviously too small to have any effect either on the temperature or on the microbes.

Quinine has been used in various forms of **Neuralgia and Headache**, especially when they were periodic in their appearance, and good re-

sults have been obtained in these cases and also in others where no periodicity could be observed. Many of these were certainly not of malarial origin, and no explanation of the action of quinine here has been proposed. Perhaps the lessened formation of uric acid and other poisonous products may be suggested as a possible cause of the improvement.

The tinctures of cinchona are often prescribed as **stomachic bitters** and for this purpose are generally fortified by preparations of nux vomica or of the simple bitters.

Quinine has been advised in whooping-cough, hay fever and influenza, and in fact is regarded by many as a specific in these diseases, though others have found it unreliable. It is often difficult to induce a child to take the bitter salts, and recourse may be had to the alkaloid itself, euquinine, or the tannate disguised with sugar or chocolate. The use of a solution as a wash for the nose in hay fever was brought into prominence by Helmholtz, who gained relief in this way, but it has not proved very efficacious. The local use of quinine solutions and of cinchona preparations is also advised in relaxed throat (gargle) and in gonorrhœa (urethral injection). It has sometimes been used as an antiseptic externally, but is too expensive for ordinary use.

Quinine has been advised as an **ecbolic** to increase the contractions of the uterus during labor. This was suggested by the observation that in malarial regions, abortion occasionally occurred after quinine, but many regard this as one of the rarer idiosyncrasies rather than as a fact upon which the therapeutic use of the drug is to be based. At the same time others report the most satisfactory results from the treatment of uterine inertia with quinine, and prefer it to ergot in this condition. The movements of the uterus induced are said to be practically identical with those occurring naturally.

Contraindications.—Where a special idiosyncrasy exists, quinine may be unsuitable, but these cases are far rarer than is generally believed. A moderate action on the hearing, for example, is not to be considered a contraindication, although in those cases a small dose is often found sufficient in malaria. Where an inflammatory condition of the membranes of the ear already exists, quinine ought to be administered with care, or avoided entirely if possible. The addition of bromides is often found to lessen or remove the discomfort arising from the disordered hearing, but the quantity of bromide contained in the hydrobromate of quinine is insufficient to effect this, and the ordinary potassium salt ought therefore to be prescribed. Where very marked disturbance of the digestion exists, quinine is often liable to augment it, owing to its irritant properties, and must therefore be given with caution by the mouth, or perhaps, is better applied hypodermically. Abortion so seldom occurs after quinine that pregnancy is no objection to its administration. In general, it may be stated that quinine is often credited with many disadvantages which it does not possess, and that in cases of malaria, in which it is practically without a rival or substi-

tute, only the most pronounced idiosyncrasy can justify withholding it. In other cases, as in septic fever, it may be a question whether it does not aggravate the condition when it is administered to very weak patients.

Bibliography.

Binz. Arch. f. mikros. Anat., iii., p. 383. Virchow's Arch., xlvi., p. 67; li., p. 6. Experimentelle Untersuch. ueber das Wesen der Chininwirkung, Berlin, 1868. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., i., p. 18; v., p. 39; vii., p. 275.
Prior. Pflüger's Arch., xxxiv., p. 237.
Strassburg. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., ii., p. 334.
Heubach. Ibid., v., p. 1.
Eulenburg. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1865, p. 423.
Jerusalimsky. Central. f. med. Wissen., 1876, p. 476.
Horbaczewski. Monatshefte f. Chemie, xii., p. 221.
Kerner. Pflüger's Arch., ii., p. 200; iii., p. 93; vii., p. 122.
Wild. Brit. Med. Journ., 1887, ii., p. 500.
Cerna. Philadelp. Med. Times, x., p. 493.
Kirchner. Berl. klin. Woch., 1881, p. 725.
Liebermeister. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., iii., p. 23.
Husemann. Therap. Monatsheft., 1888, p. 7.
Appert. Virchow's Arch., lxxi., p. 364.
Gottlieb. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvi., p. 419; xxviii., p. 167.
Hertwig. Jena. Ztschr. f. Med. u. Naturwiss., xx., pp. 120 and 477.
Merkel. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlvii., p. 165.
Santesson. Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharm., xxx., pp. 411 and 448; xxxii., p. 321. Skand. Arch. f. Physiologie, vii., p. 385.
Lewizky. Virchow's Arch., xlvii., p. 352.
Unruh. Ibid., xlviii., p. 227.
Speck. Centralb. für d. med. Wissen., 1876, p. 295.
Bœck u. Bauer. Ztschr. f. Biol., x., p. 336.
v. Noorden u. Zuntz. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1894, p. 203.
Talma u. v. d. Weyde. Zts. f. klin. Med., ix., p. 276.
Albertoni. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xv., p. 248.
Schumacher. Arb. a. d. pharm. Inst. zu Dorpat, x., p. 1.
See et Bochefontaine. Comptes rendus, xcvi., pp. 266 and 503; c., p. 644.
Bochefontaine. Arch. de Phys., 1873, p. 389.
Langlois et Varigny. Journ. de l'Anat. et Phys., 1891, p. 273.
Langlois. Arch. de Phys. [5], v., p. 377.
Rossbach. Pharmakol. Untersuch., i., p. 145.
Kumagawa. Virchow's Arch., cxiii., p. 134.
Grethe. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., lvi., p. 189.
Maragliano. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xiv., p. 309; xvii., p. 291.
Liepelt and Stuhlinger. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xliii., pp. 151, 168.
Hedbom. Skandin. Arch. f. Physiol., ix., p. 33.
Pohl. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xli., p. 111.
Hare. Therapeutic Gaz., 1897, p. 433.
De Schweinitz. Amer. Jour. of the Med. Scien., cxiv., p. 282.
Cavazzani. Arch. Ital. de Biol., xxxii., p. 350.
Ellram. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., ix., p. 289. (Cinchonamine.)
Birch-Hirschfeld. Arch. f. Ophthalmol., lii., p. 358.
Ward Holden. Arch. of Ophthal. and Otology, Nov., 1898.

XXIV. THE ANTIPYRETICS. (ACETANILIDE AND ANTIPYRINE SERIES.)

The antipyretics are a very recent addition to therapeutics, the oldest of this group now in use dating only from 1884. Up to 1875 the only means of combating high temperature were baths, vegetable alkaloids such as quinine and aconitine, or alcoholic preparations, but in that year Buss discovered that salicylic acid produced a fall in the fever

temperature, and soon afterwards carbolic acid and resorcin and its isomers were introduced as antipyretics. In the meantime it had been shown that quinine is a quinoline derivative, and quinoline itself, as well as some of its simpler compounds, were found to have powerful antipyretic properties. *Quinoline* (C_9H_7N) was soon found to be dangerous from its producing collapse, but its derivatives *Kairine* ($C_9H_9(OH)N - C_2H_5$), *Kairoline* ($C_9H_8(CH_3)(OH)NH$) and *Thalline* ($C_9H_9(OCH_3)NH$) were used extensively, although they have now been almost entirely abandoned. In fact the only quinoline bodies now used as antipyretics are *Analgen* and *Thermifugine*, which are still prescribed to a limited extent.

A new antipyretic was introduced in 1884 under the name of **Antipyrine**, which is derived from phenylhydrazine by a series of reactions and has proved superior to all of the earlier drugs. *Phenylhydrazine* ($C_6H_5 - NH - NH_2$) produces a fall in the fever temperature, but this is frequently accompanied by collapse and changes in the blood, which prevents its use in medicine. Several of the simpler compounds such as *Pyrodine* (acetylphenylhydrazine) and *Antithermine* (phenylhydrazine and lævulinic acid) have received a more or less extensive trial as antipyretics, but have proved dangerous and inferior to *Antipyrine*, phenyl-dimethylpyrazolon, $C_6H_5 - N < \begin{matrix} N(CH_3) - C(CH_3) \\ CO \quad - \quad CH \end{matrix}$. The latter is still very largely used as an antipyretic, either in its original form or as a constituent of numerous combinations which have been introduced of late years. Among these may be mentioned *Resopyrine* (resorcin and antipyrine), *Hypnal* (chloral and antipyrine), *Salipyrine* (salicylic acid and antipyrine).

Antipyrine early found a rival in **Antifebrine** or **Acetanilide** which was advised as an antipyretic in 1886 by Cahn and Hepp. *Aniline* ($C_6H_5NH_2$), from which it is derived, has also some action on the temperature, but like phenylhydrazine produces dangerous collapse and destruction of the blood cells. Acetanilide ($C_6H_5NHCOCH_3$), the first of its derivatives to be introduced, is not entirely devoid of this poisonous action, and has been supplanted to a considerable extent by more complex and less poisonous bodies. One of these, *Exalgine* ($C_6H_5NCH_3COCH_3$), differs from antifebrine only in possessing a methyl group in the side chain, and seems to resemble it closely in its effects. Another which enjoyed a short trial is *Benzanilide* ($C_6H_5NHC_7H_5O$) in which the acetyl radicle of antifebrine is replaced by benzoyl. It was soon found that both aniline and antifebrine underwent a partial oxidation in the body, with the formation of amidophenol or its derivatives, and the belief that the antipyretic effects were due not so much to the original substance as to these oxidation products led to the introduction of numerous derivatives of paramidophenol $\left(C_6H_4 < \begin{matrix} OH \\ NH_2 \end{matrix}\right)$. This body has antipyretic properties but suffers under the same disadvantages as aniline. Among its derivatives the most satisfactory antipyretics are those in which the hydrogen of the hydroxyl is sub-

stituted by an alkyl, while an acid radicle is added to the amido-radicle. The first of its compounds to be introduced was **Phenacetine** ($C_6H_4<^{NHCOCH_3}_{OC_2H_5}$) which differs from antifebrine only in the addition of ethoxyl in the para position. *Methacetine*, which resembles phenacetine in all points save in methoxyl being substituted for ethoxyl, appeared about the same time. Phenacetine was found to be much less dangerous than acetanilide and antipyrine, and has therefore been largely used, and has been followed by other bodies which are identical with it, except in the acid radicle attached to the nitrogen. Among these phenetidines may be mentioned *Lactophenine* (lactyl-phenetidine), *Malakine* (salicylphenetidine) and *Saliphen* and *Salophen*, which contain similar constituents, *Apolysine* and *Citrophen* (citryl-phenetidine), *Kryofine* (methylglycolic-phenetidine) and *Phenocoll* (glycocoll-phenetidine), with its compound with salicylic acid, *Salocoll*.

Several urethane derivatives have also received a trial as antipyretics, among them being *Euphorine* (phenylurethane), which is somewhat poisonous, however, *Thermodine* (phenacetine-urethane) and *Neurodine* (acetoxyphenyl-urethane).

With the exception of antipyrine and the quinoline compounds, all the antipyretics at present in use probably owe their activity to the formation of simple derivatives of paramidophenol in the tissues, and differ chiefly in the rapidity with which this decomposition occurs. A rapid formation of paramidophenol produces destructive blood changes and a tendency to collapse, while the antipyretic effects pass off very rapidly. Those drugs are found the most satisfactory antipyretics in which the decomposition proceeds gradually so that the temperature falls slowly and remains low for a longer time. The simpler antipyretics, such as antifebrine, have given way largely therefore to the phenetidine compounds.[1] Among these it is impossible to determine the most suitable antipyretic. The question is a purely clinical one, and these drugs are thrown on the market in such profusion at the present time that clinical observers are unable to compare their effects satisfactorily, and in many cases seem satisfied to use one exclusively. Where the merits seem so equally divided, it is perhaps more important to learn to use one of them with judgment than to hurry after each new product without sufficient experience of its predecessor.

Symptoms. — The most interesting effect of these drugs is the depression of the body temperature in fever, and in many other respects their action is not very definitely known at present. They are by no means very poisonous, normal animals showing no reaction to doses which are sufficient to cause marked changes in fever. In the frog, **Antipyrine** causes an increase in the reflex irritability, which sometimes leads to tetanic convulsions and is followed by depression, loss of the voluntary movements and eventually by complete paralysis and death.

[1] For a detailed discussion of these principles see *V. Mering*, Therap. Monatsh. 1893, p. 577, and *Hinsberg & Treupel*, Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiii., p. 216.

In mammals, its injection is followed at first by a period of quiet and sometimes of somnolence, which is said by some authors to occur also in the frog previous to the increase in the reflex irritability. Some rise in the reflex irritability may be made out in the mammal at this stage, and large doses cause convulsions and tremors, and subsequently unconsciousness and collapse, ending in complete paralysis. The pulse is accelerated by small doses, while in the later stages of poisoning it may be slow, and some dilatation of the skin vessels and flushing have been observed. The respiration is at first accelerated, and then becomes slow and irregular when large doses are injected. In dogs, vomiting and dilatation of the pupil generally occur.

Antifebrine is more poisonous than antipyrine in both frogs and mammals, but resembles it in its general effects, producing first a more or less marked stage of lessened activity, followed by convulsive movements. The respiration is not so much accelerated as by antipyrine, and, according to some observers, is slow from the beginning of the action. The heart is first accelerated and then slow and irregular, and cyanosis and collapse are more frequently observed than under antipyrine. **Phenacetine** and its allies are much less poisonous than the two foregoing, but in large quantities produce almost identical effects — somnolence followed by convulsions, cyanosis and collapse symptoms, first rapid, then slow respiration and heart. **Analgen**, which may be taken as a type of the quinoline derivatives, acts in a very similar way to the others, and is more toxic than phenacetine, and, according to some writers, than antipyrine. Some depression of the spontaneous movements and of the reflexes is described as following its administration to mammals, and large doses produce convulsions and cyanosis. **Lactophenine** is said to have a more sedative effect than the other antipyretics, and to induce complete narcosis in the rabbit.

The **Effects** of the antipyretics **in Man** vary exceedingly, not only with the dose but with the individual patient. Many persons can take very large doses without apparent effect, while in others comparatively minute quantities produce symptoms of greater or less importance. The effects are not always the same even in one individual under the same dose of the antipyretic, and it is impossible to state at present what are the conditions that involve the peculiar train of symptoms. A very large number of disorders have been attributed to the antipyretics in man, but it is impossible to consider any here except those more commonly observed. Among these are *skin eruptions* of various forms, such as red, erythematous, itching patches or more widely diffused hyperæmia resembling the onset of measles or scarlatina; urticaria occurs not uncommonly, while eczema and bullæ are rarer. In some cases an œdematous swelling has been observed. Some *fever* occasionally accompanies the eruption and renders the diagnosis from the infectious exanthemata even more difficult. These skin affections seem to be elicited more frequently by antipyrine than by antifebrine and the phenetidine compounds. They have been attributed to dilatation of the cutaneous vessels, but this in itself is insufficient to explain

their appearance, although it may be a favoring condition. Profuse *perspiration* not infrequently follows the use of the antipyretics in fever, and if the fall in temperature be rapid, and the action of the drug passes off soon, the subsequent rise of temperature may be accompanied by *shivering and rigor*, but these symptoms are scarcely to be looked upon as direct effects of the drug, but rather as resulting from the rapid changes in temperature. They are produced much more frequently by the older and simpler antipyretics than by those of more recent introduction.

Sometimes *catarrh*, burning and swelling *of the throat* and *mouth* are observed after antipyrine, and more rarely *nausea* and *vomiting*. *Cerebral symptoms* are rarely elicited beyond slight dulness, confusion or apathy. Alterations of the hearing similar to those described under quinine have been observed in some cases. More serious symptoms are those of *collapse*, which are occasionally produced in susceptible persons, especially by large doses. Antifebrine is much more liable to elicit these than antipyrine, which in turn is more dangerous than phenacetine and the other phenetidine derivatives. In the milder cases of collapse the skin is cool, the pulse is rather small and rapid, and some anxiety and alarm is felt by the patient, but the condition passes off in a short time. In more severe cases the skin is cold and covered by a clammy perspiration, the heart is weak, irregular and sometimes fluttering, the temperature may be subnormal and the pupils are slightly dilated. The patient may be conscious, fainting may occur, or an apathetic, confused condition may be produced. The weakness of the heart is the chief source of anxiety, and the total failure of the circulation seems to be the cause of death. These cases of collapse occur more frequently when a rapid fall of temperature has been produced than under other circumstances, but may be observed in cases in which no fever has been present.

Marked *cyanosis* occurs occasionally under all the antipyretics, but more frequently under antifebrine and the earlier members of the series than under antipyrine and the phenetidine compounds. Its cause is not satisfactorily explained as yet. According to some observers it is due to the formation of methæmoglobin in the blood, but although this may often be a contributing factor, it is not the only cause, for cyanosis has been observed in cases in which no methæmoglobin was formed, and it is much more intense than that caused by the formation of the same amount of methæmoglobin by other poisons. It is often accompanied by dyspnœa and acceleration of the pulse, and it lasts for a varying length of time, sometimes passing off in a few hours, at other times persisting for several days.

Occasionally a certain *tolerance* is gained, and larger doses of the antipyretics are required to produce effect than were necessary at the beginning of the treatment. A few cases of *chronic poisoning* are recorded from the habitual use of these drugs in neuralgia. The symptoms consisted in disturbance of the digestion, tremor, excitability and irritability, and disappeared when the drug was given up.

Action. — The action of these drugs on the various organs is very imperfectly understood. They are generally supposed to have some depressant effect on the **Nerve Centres**, as is shown by the lessened movements and slight somnolence produced in man and animals. This effect is very slight in many cases, however, and it seems impossible to suppose that the action is in any way comparable to that of the true narcotics, for cerebral action may be induced by small doses which do not apparently influence the mental activity. Thus, neuralgic pain is often relieved by the antipyretics without causing somnolence or any appreciable depression, and it would therefore appear that if the ordinary doses influence the activity of the nerve cells, they must do so to a very slight extent, or perhaps their action may be confined to some special areas of the brain. Most of the antipyretics increase the excitability of the spinal cord at first, and this may lead to convulsions in the frog. The origin of the convulsions in mammals is still somewhat doubtful; in general, they seem to be of cerebral origin, but when large quantities are injected, they are seen even when the spinal cord is divided from the brain, so that the cord appears to be thrown into a condition resembling that discussed under strychnine poisoning. In considering the cause of these convulsions perhaps too little weight has been laid by some writers on the changes in the blood, respiration and circulation, for it is possible that the convulsions in some cases are asphyxial in character, and not due to the direct action of the poisons on the brain. In ordinary poisoning the peripheral **Nerves** and nerve ends do not seem to be seriously involved and the final paralysis in both frogs and animals is undoubtedly central. Santesson found that antipyrine tended to increase the power of the frog's **Muscles**, and several observers have noted that the nerves and motor terminations are paralyzed by the direct application of this drug. Antipyrine has some effect as a local anæsthetic when applied to the mucous membranes.

The **Heart** in the frog and mammals is first accelerated and then slowed by the antipyretics in general, these alterations being entirely independent of the inhibitory mechanism and due to a direct effect on the cardiac muscle. The increased rhythm of the heart leads to a slight rise in the blood-pressure, which sinks again as the pulse becomes slower. There is no satisfactory proof that the vaso-motor centres are involved in the rise of pressure, although it is not unlikely that they undergo a primary stimulation at the same time as the respiratory centre. The vessels are said to be dilated by the perfusion of antipyrine solutions, but it seems improbable that this plays any rôle in ordinary methods of application.

Most of this series except antipyrine and its compounds tend to cause alterations in the **Red Blood Cells** when they are given in large quantities. This action is manifested especially by the simpler bodies of the series, and is still more marked in poisoning from aniline, phenylhydrazine, paramidophenol or quinoline. On the other hand, most of the phenetidine compounds produce it much more rarely, and antipyrine seems devoid of this action. The alteration consists in the

formation of methæmoglobin, which may be readily detected by its characteristic spectroscopic appearance. Small quantities of the antipyretics cause its formation within the blood-cells, which remain intact, but larger doses, especially of the more poisonous members, destroy the red blood cells and free the methæmoglobin in the plasma. In the blood various distorted, shrunken red cells may be observed, often entirely devoid of coloring matter, while part of the methæmoglobin seems to escape through the kidneys, and nephritis occurs in some cases with albumin, hæmoglobin and even blood in the urine. This effect on the blood seems due to the decomposition of the antipyretics and the flooding of the tissues with paramidophenol, or the corresponding quinoline derivative. This decomposition proceeds more slowly in phenacetine and its allies and is absent after antipyrine, which explains the rarity of the symptoms after these drugs. When the antipyretics are added to blood outside the body no methæmoglobin is formed. Whether the simpler bodies, such as paramidophenol, are equally inert in the test-tube is unknown.

All of the antipyretics have some **Antiseptic** action, which varies in the different members with their solubility and stability. Antipyrine is found to preserve blood from putrefaction for some days when added to it so as to form a solution of 2–5 per cent. Watery solutions of this strength destroy protozoa and stop the movements of the leucocytes, but antipyretics administered to the higher animals have no such effect on the emigration of the leucocytes from the vessels as is seen under quinine.

The action of the antipyretics on the **Metabolism** of healthy men and animals has been the subject of a number of investigations which have given by no means uniform results, especially in regard to the nitrogen elimination. *Antipyrine* is said by Umbach, Hartmann, Engel, and Korner to lessen the urea and nitrogen excreted in health, but this diminution is comparatively small, and the exhaustive researches of Kumagawa failed to corroborate their statements, for he found with Coppola that antipyrine in either small or large quantities had no appreciable effect on the nitrogenous metabolism in health. The absorption of oxygen and the excretion of carbonic acid is unchanged by it, and a consideration of the whole of the evidence leads to the conclusion that antipyrine has either no influence or only an insignificant one on the metabolism of the healthy tissues.

Antifebrine, on the other hand, has a distinct effect on the nitrogen eliminated, although this is only elicited by large doses. After ordinary quantities the urea and total nitrogen of the urine may be slightly augmented, but in large doses antifebrine causes an increase of 30–35 per cent. in these, which indicates a large increase in the tissue waste. Kumagawa found that after the administration of the drug had ceased, the organism economized its tissue waste, so that in the course of time the excessive metabolism during the antifebrine treatment was entirely compensated. The *other antipyretics* have not been examined so carefully. Thalline is said by Kumagawa to increase the nitrogen elimi-

nated like antifebrine, while some others have been said to lessen the metabolism in health, but these statements require confirmation. As regards the oxidation in the tissues as measured by the exchange of gases in the lungs, the antipyretics have not been shown to have any effect in healthy animals.

The excretion of uric acid under the antipyretics has also been the subject of examination. According to Kumagawa, Tauszk and Vas it is increased by antipyrine, but Horbaczewsky found it diminished to some extent, while the number of leucocytes in the blood was increased. He considers it probable that both antipyrine and antifebrine increase the uric acid when given in large quantities, but Tauszk and Vas state that antifebrine has no effect on the uric acid excretion in health. The glycogen of the liver and muscle is increased by antipyrine according to a recent statement of Lepine and Porteret, and Iwanoff has described some obscure changes in the liver cells of the frog under antipyrine.

The specific effects of the antipyretics on the **Temperature**, while recognized by all, have been the subject of endless discussion, owing to the complex mechanism through which they are elicited. In the normal animal the temperature is but little altered, except by doses large enough to produce collapse, but when it is abnormally high, as in fever, the antipyretics cause a fall of greater or less extent. This fall in temperature occurs at varying intervals after the ingestion of the drug, but, except in refractory cases, always begins within 2–3 hours. Its extent varies, the temperature sometimes reaching the normal or even a subnormal point, while in others the change is insignificant. Continuous fever without any natural rise and fall is much less affected, as a general rule, than one with alternate rise and fall of the temperature, and in the latter form the result is much greater if the drug be given at the beginning of one of the natural remissions.

The fall in temperature is often accompanied by flushing of the skin and perspiration. The oxygen absorbed and the carbonic acid excreted are lessened, and the urea and nitrogen of the urine are also diminished after antipyrine, while they are not infrequently increased after antifebrine, especially when administered in large quantities. The heart is often reduced in rate, and the pulse improves in strength, but these changes are due to the fall in the temperature and not to the direct action of the drugs. Some remedies owe their antipyretic properties to their increasing the secretion of the sweat glands, but although perspiration not infrequently occurs during the fall of temperature under the new antipyretics, this is merely a secondary result here, for when the perspiration is checked by atropine or agaricin, the fall of temperature proceeds uninterruptedly.

The temperature in healthy warm-blooded animals is kept uniform through a balance being established between the heat formation and its dissipation through the lungs, skin and other organs. If an excessive formation occurs, as during muscular exertion, this is counterbalanced by an increase in the output from the skin through the dilation of the vessels and by the perspiration. If, on the other hand, more heat is

dissipated than usual through exposure to cold, the combustion of the tissues is increased and more heat is formed. The output of heat is thus determined by the degree of dilatation of the cutaneous vessels and the activity of the sweat glands, while the amount of heat formed varies with the voluntary and involuntary contractions of the muscles. In order to preserve a balance between these two factors, there must exist a coördinating mechanism, and this is supposed to be located in the basal ganglia of the cerebrum, in the region of the corpus striatum. Lesions in this neighborhood generally cause a very marked rise in the temperature, often without further disturbance, and it is of interest to learn that as long as the cerebrum is intact, shivering is produced by cold, while after the section of the peduncles the animal offers no resistance to a fall of temperature produced by cooling of the surface.

Other facts might also be adduced to show that in the normal animal the temperature is kept uniform by this coördinating mechanism, which controls both the output of heat through the skin and its formation by the contractions of the skeletal muscles. In many individuals this coördination is not perfect in health, and in all it may be disorganized by poisons, such as those formed in fever. The more perfect the coördination, the smaller is the divergence from the normal temperature necessary to elicit a protective increase in the combustion or in the dissipation. The efficiency of the mechanism may therefore be measured by observing what fall of the body temperature occurs before shivering sets in, what rise produces dilation of the cutaneous vessels and perspiration. In this way it has been found that during fever the coördination is quite as perfect as in health, but that the protective reactions are induced at a higher temperature. Thus, Richter found that a normal dog (temperature 38.6° C.) protected itself by shivering when its temperature was reduced by cold to 37.9°, while profuse perspiration broke out when its temperature was raised to 39.1°. The same dog suffering from fever (temperature 40.4° C.) reacted by shivering when its temperature was reduced to 40.2° and by perspiration when it rose to 40.9°. The coördination is not destroyed or paralyzed by fever therefore, for it is in this case more sensitive to alterations of the body temperature than in the normal animal. The same measures are taken to preserve a uniform temperature as in health, but the temperature maintained by these means is higher. If a comparison be made with the thermostat of the laboratory, it may be said that in fever the mechanism is "set" for a higher temperature than in normal life, but that the apparatus acts efficiently for each temperature. This higher temperature is maintained by an increased metabolism or heat formation, and also in most cases by a lessened dissipation. The fever temperature itself seems to increase the metabolism, the tissues undergoing more rapid waste under it than in normal conditions.[1]

[1] It must not be supposed from the foregoing statements that fever consists only in an alteration of the normal temperature. This is only one of the symptoms produced by the poisons of fever, but is the only one affected by the antipyretics.

The first explanation of the antipyretic action of this series was that they lessened the metabolism in the same way as quinine, and thus lessened the heat production. This view was suggested by the fact that some of them, such as kairine and thalline, are derivatives of quinoline, like quinine, and it was supported by the observation that the nitrogen eliminated and the oxygen absorbed were reduced in amount by their action in fever, and by a series of calorimetric experiments in which it appeared that the output of heat was lessened by their use. This explanation has of late years been abandoned by the great majority of the investigators of the subject. The lessened tissue waste which is observed under the action of the antipyretics in fever is not due to their direct action on the tissues, but to the fall of temperature, the metabolism proceeding more slowly when the heat is reduced. If they acted on the tissues directly in fever, they would have a similar effect in health (cf. quinine), whereas antipyrine has no appreciable effect here, and antifebrine actually increases tissue waste.

The earlier experiments in which the dissipation of heat was measured directly by the calorimeter indicated that it was lessened by the antipyretics, in fever, while the results varied in health. Renewed investigations with more attention to detail and with improved apparatus have shown, however, that the dissipation of heat in fever is much increased by the antipyretics, while in health they seem to have little effect. This augmentation in the output is due to dilatation of the cutaneous vessels, which exposes a large amount of blood to the cold air. The dilatation is great enough to be recorded by the plethysmograph in many cases, while in others flushing of the skin may be observed. The increased dissipation of heat is accompanied by a lessened formation which, however, is much less important and which is generally attributed to the metabolism proceeding less actively at the lower temperature. In other words, the antipyretics reduce the temperature by increasing the output of heat, and the cells of the body grow and change

FIG. 35.

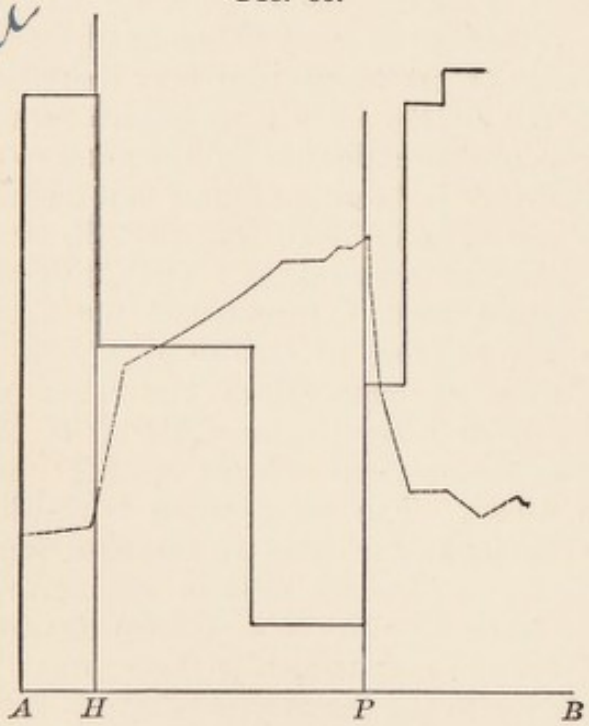


Diagram to illustrate the relation between the warmth output and the internal temperature. The unbroken line represents the changes in the warmth output, which is estimated at different times by measuring the height of this line from the abscissa *AB*. The broken line is that of the internal temperature. *A* to *H* normal; at *H* an injury of the brain caused a marked fall in the output and an increase in the internal temperature, which persisted until at *P*, antipyrine was administered. The internal temperature then fell rapidly while the output rose to beyond the normal. Contrast Fig. 33. (After one of Gottlieb's experiments.)

less when removed from the hot-house temperature to which they have been exposed previously. It must be added, however, that some observers hold that the fall in heat formation is too great to be explained in this way, and suppose that the antipyretics lessen the combustion through some other action, but not by affecting the tissues directly.

It has been stated already that the fevered animal resists any change in its temperature in the same way as the normal, and it might therefore be expected that when the temperature is reduced by antipyretics the organism would at once increase its heat formation. The fact that this does not occur, but that, on the contrary, the metabolism is lessened, indicates that some further change occurs, that the antipyretics do not only reduce the temperature by allowing the heat to escape, but also alter the condition of the coördinating mechanism by which the temperature is kept uniform. To return to the comparison with a thermostat, the body temperature is set at a lower point by the antipyretics, while it is set higher by the fever poisons.

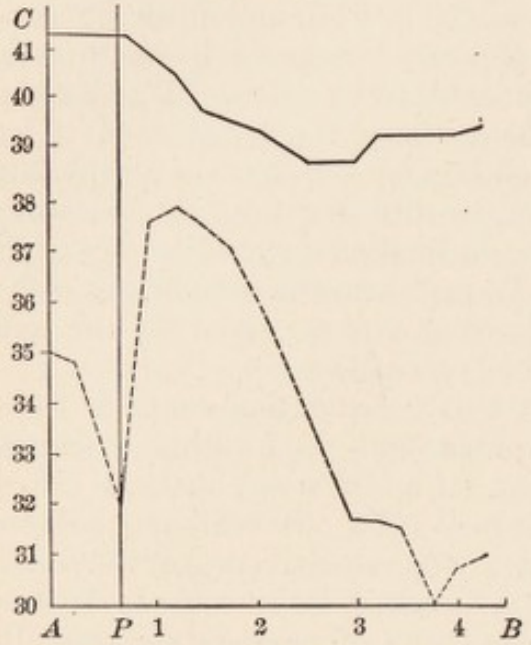
The action of the antipyretics on this coördinating centre is therefore of interest, and has been examined both in health and disease. In healthy men the temperature does not undergo any marked change under the antipyretics for though it may fall a few tenths of a degree in some cases, this is of no significance. The sensitiveness of the coördinating centre is increased apparently, however, for in some individuals in whom hard muscular work causes a rise of temperature normally, this is absent or less marked after the antipyretics. In the same way the rise of temperature which occasionally is caused by very hot baths, is absent or diminished when antipyrine has been administered previously. When the basal ganglia are cut off from their connections with the lower part of the body, neither septic injections nor antipyretics have any effect on the temperature, while after section above the basal ganglia, fever is caused, and the antipyretics induce the usual fall of temperature (Sawadowsky). In experiments in which a high fever was produced by lesions in the neighborhood of the ganglia, Gottlieb found that the antipyretics reduced the temperature and increased the output of heat to a marked extent, while the formation was increased to a less degree.

Finally, the condition of the centre has been examined by Stern and Richter after the temperature had been reduced by antipyretics. They both found that the protective mechanism was called into play when the temperature was slightly raised, and generally when it was depressed. For example, a fevered dog (temperature 40.9° C.) received a dose of kairine, and its temperature was reduced to 37.6.° Attempts were now made to raise the temperature by external heat, but the animal resisted this by increasing the output as soon as the temperature rose to 37.8°. The coördination which maintained the temperature at 40.9° before the drug was administered now attempted to keep it at 37.6°.

The results of these researches may be summed up shortly as follows: The antipyretics reduce the temperature in fever through alter-

ations effected in the heat-regulating nervous mechanism, which result in lowering the point at which the temperature is maintained. As a consequence of this action, a great increase in the dissipation of heat must occur in order to free the body from the warmth which it has accumulated, and this increased output is attained by dilatation of the cutaneous vessels. The seat of action of the antipyretics is probably situated in the base of the cerebrum.

FIG. 36.



Curve of the internal temperature (unbroken line) and of the skin temperature (dotted line) in fever treated with antipyrine (Rosenthal). The abscissa *AB* represents the time in hours, the vertical, *AC*, the temperature Centigrade. At *P* antipyrine was given, and the skin temperature rose at once (augmented heat output). The internal temperature soon began to fall, and after it had reached a certain point, the skin temperature fell again as the capillaries contracted.

The precise nature of the changes wrought by the antipyretics in the coördinating mechanism is unknown. Gottlieb and Harnack suggest that it is depressed by them and this would accord with the widely held idea that fever temperature is due to some form of brain irritation; but their reasoning is open to objection, and speculation seems useless until more is learned regarding the normal function of this organ.

When the temperature is depressed too rapidly by these remedies, a condition of collapse is often produced, while in other cases the loss of heat caused by the dilatation of the skin vessels seems to be excessive, and shivering and rigor follow in order to increase the production.

When the temperature has reached the new point fixed by the coördination under the influence of the antipyretic, the heat dissipation rapidly diminishes and may become less than normal, because the new temperature is maintained at a constant point by the same mechanism as the normal.

The antipyretics are rapidly absorbed, and as rapidly **Excreted** by the kidneys, so that they disappear from the body within 24–30 hours after their administration.

The fate of antipyrine seems to differ in different animals. In the dog it is found to be partially oxidized to oxyantipyrine which is excreted in the urine in combination with glycuronic and sulphuric acids. In others it is said to be excreted in the urine unchanged. Antifebrine undergoes a partial oxidation, the final product differing in different animals, but none of the original body appears in the urine except after very large doses. In man it appears as acetylparamidophenol $\left(C_6H_4 < \begin{matrix} NHC_2H_3O \\ OH \end{matrix}\right)$ and as paramidophenol or another of its compounds, both being in combination with sulphuric and glycuronic acids. In the rabbit's urine paramidophenol alone is found, while

in the dog this is accompanied by oxycarbanil ($C_6H_4 < \overset{NH}{O} > CO$); in each case it forms a double sulphate or glycuronate. The fate of the other antipyretics resembles that of antifebrine, the quinoline derivatives undergoing a partial oxidation resulting in a body analogous to paramidophenol, while the phenetidine compounds are partially decomposed and appear in the urine as glycuronates of phenetidine. The combinations containing salicylic acid break up in the body, and the acid appears in the urine as salicyluric acid, while the rest of the molecule undergoes the usual partial oxidation.

The presence in the urine of these bodies, or rather of further products of their oxidation, gives it a dark reddish-brown color, which may be observed when it is passed, or more frequently after it has been exposed to the air for some time.

Preparations.

Acetanilidum (U. S. P., B. P.), acetanilide or antifebrine.

Acetanilide is a colorless, crystalline body insoluble in water, soluble in alcohol, ether and chloroform. It has no odor when pure, but has a slight burning taste. It may be prescribed in powder, suspended in mucilage, or in cachets or lozenges. The B. P. gives as the dose 0.006–0.2 G. (1–3 grs.), but is often given in larger doses, up to 0.6 G. (10 grs.).

Phenazonum (B. P.), phenazone, or antipyrine, forms colorless inodorous crystals, with a bitter taste, very soluble in water, alcohol and chloroform. 0.3–1.3 G. (5–20 grs).

Phenacetinum (B. P.), colorless, tasteless crystals, insoluble in water, 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.), in the same forms as acetanilide.

Non-official.

Thalline is generally seen as thalline sulphate, a colorless crystalline substance, of a weak aromatic odor and slightly bitter taste, soluble in 7 parts of water. 0.2–0.5 G. (3–8 grs.).

Exalgine resembles acetanilide except in its greater solubility in water, and may be given in the same quantity.

Malakine, *Lactophenine*, *Thermodine*, *Neurodine*, *Saliphen* and *Salophen* all resemble each other in being insoluble in water, colorless and crystalline, and are prescribed in the same way as acetanilide and in doses of 0.5–1 G.

Phenocoll is generally used as the hydrochlorate, which is fairly soluble in water, while *Salocoll* is insoluble. 0.5–1 G. (8–15 grs.).

Malakine, *Saliphen*, *Salocoll* and *Salophen* all break up in the body, freeing salicylic acid, so that, in addition to the antipyretic action, the characteristic effects of this acid may be elicited by them.

The antipyretics are almost invariably given by the mouth. Antipyrine has been injected hypodermically, but is somewhat painful, because much larger quantities have to be used than are generally given by this method, and the solutions have, therefore, to be more concentrated (30–50 per cent.).

Therapeutic Uses.—The antipyretics are used chiefly to **Reduce the Fever Temperature.** The most satisfactory results are obtained from those which act somewhat slowly, but which preserve a low temperature for some time, and antipyrine and the phenetidine compounds are thus preferable to the earlier remedies, which produce a more abrupt fall, after which the temperature soon regains its former height. The best effects are obtained when the antipyretic is given at the commencement of a natural remission, the temperature often falling 2–4 degrees in the course of the next 2–3 hours, and only rising slowly afterwards. In some

fevers the antipyretics have much less tendency to lower the temperature than in others. Thus in septicæmia larger doses are required than in typhoid and not infrequently no satisfactory reduction of the temperature follows the administration of the maximal quantity. Pneumonia is also said by some writers not to be affected so easily as some other febrile conditions in which the heat-regulating centre appears to be in a less stable condition, as is manifested by the occurrence of large spontaneous variations of temperature. The reduction of the temperature by the antipyretics lasts only as long as the drug is present in sufficient quantity in the body, and accordingly as soon as sufficient has been excreted, the intoxication of the regulating mechanism begins again, and the temperature soon rises to its former height. The antipyretics do not act on the cause of the disease, but only remove one of the symptoms, but this in itself is not an argument against their use, as is apparently believed by some writers, because as long as the physician is unable to treat the cause directly, he is justified in taking such measures as are possible to remove the symptoms, rather than in adopting an expectant treatment, pure and simple. The extensive use of these remedies shows very clearly that the high temperature is merely a symptom of disease, and not the disease itself, and the question has been much debated as to whether the reduction of fever is in any way beneficial. No one questions that some antipyretic measures should be taken when the temperature rises so high as to form a danger in itself, but their use in ordinary fever cases is more doubtful. In the early days of treatment with these remedies, von Jaksch asserted that the antipyretics, far from aiding the patient in fever, prolonged and retarded convalescence, but this does not seem to be correct for the less violent modern ones. It has recently been shown by Schutze that the use of the antipyretics does not retard the formation of the protective substances (antitoxins) to which the recovery from fever is attributed, for in infected animals treated with enormous quantities of antipyrine the serum displayed the same agglutinating properties towards the bacilli as that of controls which were not subjected to any medication. A more serious argument against their use in fever is that the course of the disease is less readily followed, because one of the guiding symptoms — the temperature variations — is no longer dependent solely upon the severity of the intoxication with the fever poisons, and both diagnosis and prognosis are thus rendered more difficult. For example, in typhoid fever a sudden fall of temperature often gives the first indication of such a complication as hæmorrhage, but if an antipyretic has been given beforehand, this indication may be entirely absent. On the other hand, it is urged in favor of the antipyretic treatment that the patient feels more comfortable and easier when the temperature is reduced, and that this alone may favorably influence the course of the disease. Besides, the high temperature in itself increases the tissue waste, and causes larger draughts on the resources of the patient than would be made with the same amount of poison in the tissues at a lower temperature ; and although the influence of the high temperature

on the metabolism was undoubtedly exaggerated at one time, this consideration is by no means devoid of weight. The theory that fever is a defensive measure taken by the organism against the causes of disease and ought not to be interfered with therefore, is now seldom mentioned. The antipyretic treatment of fever is of value, then, in cases where the temperature is so high as to endanger life, in cases in which the rise of temperature is the chief cause of distress and no complications are to be apprehended, and, in general, in cases in which the increased comfort of the patient produced by them is not counterbalanced by their obscuring the diagnosis and prognosis. On the other hand, there is no reason to suppose that it shortens the course of most fevers, or that it prevents complications of any kind, except excessively high temperature, and the routine treatment of fever with antipyretics is to be deprecated.

The chief rival of the antipyretics in the treatment of fever in the present day is the so-called cold-bath treatment, in which the fever patient is bathed frequently in water the temperature of which varies from 70–90° F. in different hospitals. The temperature generally falls to a considerable extent under this treatment, and very often a general improvement in the symptoms occurs. The effect on the temperature is mainly due to the abstraction of heat from the body, and thus far corresponds to that of the antipyretics. In the cold-bath treatment, however, the loss of heat is not immediately due to the dilatation of the skin vessels, for it may be questioned whether even water at 90° F. is sufficient to produce this, and baths at 70° F. have rather the effect of constricting the vessels primarily, whatever may be the subsequent effect. The heat output increases here from the change in the external medium, and not from any alteration in the skin itself. The fall of temperature is generally not so great as under the antipyretics, and the regulation is not directly affected, for the patient shivers and becomes cyanotic long before the normal temperature is reached. The therapeutic virtue of the cold bath was formerly believed to lie exclusively in the abstraction of heat and the fall of temperature, but many advocates of the treatment now hold that this is of less importance than the effects on the circulation and the brain, which are elicited reflexly by the cold water applied to the skin, and which are not now believed to be due to the fall in temperature. Whether this view is correct or not, the whole nature of the fall in temperature is different from that produced by the antipyretics, and the metabolism, instead of becoming less active as it does under the latter, rather tends to increase under the cold baths, at least as far as the tissue change can be measured by the nitrogen excreted. The relative therapeutic value of the two methods of treating fevers can only be determined by clinical experiment, and the present attitude of the clinicians, which tends to favor the cold-bath treatment, may be reversed in course of time. However the matter may stand in hospital practice, in which trained assistance is available, the antipyretics have a great advantage in many cases in which treatment has to be carried out without any such facili-

ties, for the administration of these drugs may, of course, be entrusted to ordinary persons, whereas the cold bath can be given only by the physician himself or by trained attendants. Particularly in the milder fevers, where no complicated measures, such as the cold bath, are considered necessary, the antipyretics give relief to the patient by removing the feeling of heat and discomfort.

Other antipyretic drugs are quinine, aconite, digitalis, and alcohol, but none of these produce an equal fall of temperature unless with the presence of alarming and dangerous symptoms. Aconite and digitalis are generally supposed to reduce the temperature through their effects on the circulation, although it is not impossible that they may also affect the centres for heat regulation. Quinine acts probably through reducing the metabolism, and alcohol by dilating the skin capillaries, and perhaps by lessening the movements and thereby the formation of heat. All of these drugs are used very much less as antipyretics now than formerly, as, besides their undesirable secondary effects, the fall of temperature is less certain and less profound than under the modern antipyretics.

The antipyretics are also used very largely to relieve **Neuralgic Pain and Headache**, often with complete success. So little is known regarding the pathology of these diseases that it would seem premature to discuss the method in which these remedies act. By many they are supposed to have a sedative or depressant effect on the central nervous system, but this must be limited in its range, for quantities sufficient to remove pain often leave the mind perfectly clear. The analgesic action of these bodies is apparently quite different from that of morphine, for in many instances in which the latter is successful they fail to alleviate the condition. On the other hand antipyrine and its allies can often be used where morphine is contraindicated, either from the danger of the habit being formed, or from the somnolence it induces. The antipyretics appear to be of little or no value in relieving the pain caused by acute inflammatory conditions, while on the other hand they are almost specific in some neuralgic cases. Almost all of the antipyretics are efficient in these cases, but larger doses are generally required than to reduce fever, and the more powerful, such as antifebrine, are often preferred to the safer and more slowly acting phenetidines.

Several of the antipyretics have been used as **Substitutes for Quinine** in the treatment of malaria, but none of them seem to have the specific action of the latter on the organism of malaria, and, although they may reduce the temperature, they do not prevent the other symptoms and do not remove the cause of the disease. In the same way they do not seem to equal salicylic acid in efficiency in acute rheumatism, although here again they reduce the temperature. This does not apply, of course, to those of the antipyretics, such as malakine, which form salicylic acid in their decomposition in the body. It is to be noted that the amount of salicylic acid thus formed from the ordinary dose of the antipyretics, is considerably smaller than would be given if the acid itself were prescribed.

The antipyretics are used to a considerable extent in cases of diabetes insipidus and mellitus and appear to relieve the discomfort and in some cases to improve the general condition. In whooping cough antipyrine often lessens the severity of the attacks and also renders them less frequent, and is said to shorten the course of the disease.

The use of antipyrine and other members of this series as sedatives in hyperactivity of the motor functions of the brain, such as epilepsy and chorea, has not been attended with great success, although temporary improvement has occasionally been noted as after so many other remedies.

Antipyrine and several others of this series have been advocated as local sedatives or anæsthetics, and have been used occasionally to lessen the irritability of the throat and larynx and thus to permit of the minor manipulations of laryngology. Holocaine, a body closely related to phenacetine, has been employed to a limited extent as a local anæsthetic in ophthalmology, but appears to be more poisonous than other equally efficacious drugs, such as eucaine.

Thalline has been advised as a urethral injection in gonorrhœa.

The occurrence of collapse and other symptoms has led to a considerable amount of distrust of the antipyretics among many of the medical profession. In justice it has to be remembered that in many cases these symptoms were produced only by very large doses, and that since experience has shown that beneficial results may be obtained by smaller quantities, these cases have notably diminished in medical practice. Unfortunately, this distrust is not entertained by a large class of the laity, and numerous cases of poisoning arise from the impression that the antipyretics are not dangerous drugs. For the most part, poisoning seems to be due to a peculiar sensitiveness or idiosyncrasy, which cannot be foreseen, but in cases of great exhaustion and asthenia, especially when accompanied with anæmia, these drugs have to be used with great care or avoided entirely.

Bibliography.

Umbach. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxi., p. 161.
Riess. Ibid., xxii., p. 127.
Sawadowsky. Centralbl. f. med. Wiss., 1888, p. 145.
Martin. Therap. Gazette, xi., 1887, p. 289.
Lepine u. Porteret. Comptes rendus, cvi., p. 1023, and cvii., p. 416.
Jaffe u. Hilbert. Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem., xii., p. 295.
Mörner. Ibid., xiii., p. 12.
Gressly. Inaug. Diss., Bern, 1891.
Nencki. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxx., p. 306.
v. Mering. Therap. Monats., 1893, p. 577.
Hinsberg u. Treupel. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiii., p. 216.
Treupel. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1895, p. 222.
Pellacani. Arch. Italien. de Biologie, viii., p. 76.
Lepine. Revue de Medicine, 1887, p. 306.
Cahn u. Hepp. Berl. klin. Woch., 1887, p. 4.
Henrijean. Maly's Jahresber. u. Thierchemie, xvii., p. 351.
Filehne, Liebermeister, etc. Congress f. inn. Med., 1885, pp. 118–185; 1896, pp. 3–100.
Müller. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1887, p. 27.
Kumagawa. Virchow's Arch., cxiii., p. 134.
Tauszk u. Vas. Ungar. Arch. f. Med., i., p. 204.
Hinsberg u. Kast. Cent. f. d. med. Wiss., 1887, p. 145. (Phenacetine.)
Maass. Zts. f. klin. Med., xxviii., p. 139. (Analgen.)

Filehne. Berl. klin. Woch., 1882, p. 681; 1883, p. 77.
Stern. Zts. f. klin. Med., xx., p. 82.
Hildebrandt. Virchow's Arch., cxxi., p. 1.
Richter. Ibid., cxxiii., p. 118.
C. Rosenthal. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1888, p. 1.
W. Rosenthal. Ibid., 1893, Suppl., p. 243.
Simon and Hock. Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin, 1890.
Maragliano. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xvii., p. 291, and xiv., p. 309.
Evans. Therap. Gaz., 1887, pp. 237 and 379.
Gottlieb. Arch. f. exp. Path., xxvi., p. 419, and xxviii., p. 167.
Kraus. Wien. klin. Woch., 1894, pp. 229 and 275.
Harnack. Therap. Monats., 1894, p. 101.
Horbaczewski. Monats. f. Chem., xii., p. 221.
Fraenkel. Zts. f. klin. Med., xvii., Suppl., p. 239. (Pyrodine.)
Riedel. Zts. f. Heilkunde, xvi., p. 55.
Penzoldt. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvi., p. 313.
Lispelt u. Stuhlinger. Ibid., xliii., pp. 151, 168.
Tappeiner. Ibid., xxviii., p. 295, and xxx., p. 231.
Heinz. Virchow's Arch., cxxii., p. 112.
Schutze. Zeitschr. f. Hygiene, xxxviii., p. 205.
Lawrow. Zeitschr. f. phys. Chemie, xxxii., p. 111.
Riethus. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xliv., p. 239.

XXV. ANTISEPTICS OF THE AROMATIC SERIES (CARBOLIC AND SALICYLIC ACID SERIES).

Various balsams and wood-tar and some of its derivatives have long enjoyed a certain reputation in surgery, but the true value of the bodies of the aromatic series has only been realized since the systematic treatment of wounds with antiseptics was introduced by Lister some thirty years ago. The first antiseptic proposed by him was carbolic acid, and this held its position for several years, when it was discovered that bodies of similar origin, and others of entirely different composition possessed equally great advantages as antiseptics with less liability to induce poisoning. Of late years a very large number of antiseptics belonging to the aromatic chemical series have been introduced, and have been discarded, often, it would appear, without sufficient examination. It is not within the scope of such a work as this to examine all of these, especially as the effects of many of them differ only in detail, but the chief, active principles will be mentioned.

The great mass of the aromatic antiseptics are obtained from coal- or wood-tar by more or less complicated reactions, and are often known as the coal-tar or tar antiseptics.

The hydrocarbons *benzene or benzol*, *toluol*, *xylol* are too volatile for use as antiseptics, and the only hydrocarbon used for this purpose is **Naphtalin** ($C_{10}H_8$).

Among the hydroxyl compounds of benzol, **Carbolic Acid** or Phenol (C_6H_5OH) is the best known. The dioxybenzols ($C_6H_4(OH)_2$), three in number, *hydroquinone*, *pyrocatechin*, and *resorcin* have also been used in medicine, and resorcin was at one time a popular antiseptic, although it has latterly fallen into disuse.

Among the trioxybenzols, **Pyrogallol** ($C_6H_3(OH)_3$) alone has been used extensively as an antiseptic in skin diseases, and is still considered of value in certain conditions.

Hydroxyl derivatives of other hydrocarbons are the two **Naphtols**, α- and β-, ($C_{10}H_7OH$) which are used as intestinal disinfectants. *Thymol* ($C_6H_3(CH_3)$-

(C_3H_7)OH), obtained from thyme, was introduced as a substitute for carbolic acid, but has fallen into disuse. More recently the *cresols*, $C_6H_4(OH)(CH_3)$, of which three are known, have attained some prominence as antiseptics.

The phenol ethers, *anisol* and *phenetol* ($C_6H_5OCH_3$ and $C_6H_5OC_2H_5$) have never been introduced into therapeutic use, but *guaiacol* ($C_6H_4(OH)(OCH_3)$), the methyl ether of pyrocatechin, has had some use of late years as an antiseptic and antipyretic. A combination of guaiacol and carbonic acid known as *guaiacol carbonate* ($CO(OC_6H_4OCH_3)_2$) has also been used. Other dioxy-derivatives are the *creosols* ($C_6H_3(CH_3)(OH)(OCH_3)$), which are important constituents of wood-tar and of creosote.

The substitution of chlorine for hydrogen in the benzol ring seems to increase its antiseptic power, and *monochlorophenol* (C_6H_4ClOH) and *trichlorphenol* ($C_6H_2Cl_3OH$) have been suggested as antiseptics. A similar intensified action is obtained by the substitution of chlorine in the members of the methane narcotics. (See page 129.)

The presence of the carboxyl group (—COOH) lessens the poisonous action of the aromatic series exactly as in the case of the methane series. Several acids have been suggested as internal antiseptics, therefore, and one of them, **Salicylic acid** ($C_6H_4OHCOOH$), is perhaps the most important of all the benzol compounds at the present time. **Benzoic acid** (C_6H_5COOH) is an equally powerful antiseptic, but is comparatively seldom used as such. It is the chief constituent of several of the "balsams," in which it is often accompanied by *cinnamic acid* ($C_6H_5CH{=}CHCOOH$).

Salicylic acid is the only one of three isomeric acids that has been found of value. It is used either as the pure acid or more frequently as the **Salicylate of Sodium,** or in the form of an ester. One of these, *methylsalicylate*, has long been known as the *oil of wintergreen* and as *sweet oil of birch.* Another well-known ester is the phenyl salicylate or **Salol,** ($C_6H_4OHCOOC_6H_5$), while others of less widespread reputation are *cresalol* (salicylate of cresol), *betol* (salicylate of β-naphthol), *salithymol* (salicylate of thymol). Several other salicylic compounds are used as antipyretics as well as for their action as salicylates and are mentioned among the antipyrine series. (Page 374.) The most recent substitute for salicylic acid is *aspirin* or acetylsalicylic acid ($C_6H_4OC_2H_3O.COOH$).

Another acid which has been used as a substitute for salicylic acid is *cresotinic acid* ($C_6H_3(CH_3)(OH)(COOH)$), and the *oxynaphtoic acids* ($C_{10}H_6(OH)$-$(COOH)$) have been suggested as antiseptics.

Instead of carboxyl, the sulphon radicle has been attached to phenol in order to lessen its toxicity, and in this way the so-called *sulphocarbolates* were formed. They must be distinguished from the ether-sulphuric acids or double sulphates in which the $—HSO_3$ is attached to the carbon of the ring by oxygen, while in the sulphocarbolates the connection between the sulphur and the carbon is direct. (Sulphocarbolate of sodium, $C_6H_4{<}^{OH}_{SO_3Na}$, sodium-phenol double sulphate, $C_6H_5OSO_3Na$.)

When two hydrogen atoms of the benzol molecule are substituted by other elements or radicles, three different chemical products may result, and these are known as ortho-, meta- or para-compounds, according to the relation the two substituted atoms bear to each other. These three isomeric forms very often differ in toxicity and also in their antiseptic power, but no general statement can be made as to their relative position, for the ortho-compound is sometimes the most powerful antiseptic, as in salicylic acid; in others the meta-compound, as in metacresol, while parachlorphenol is more strongly antiseptic than either ortho- or metachlorphenol.

Many crude preparations of these bodies are still in use and have the advantage of cheapness over the pure principles, and are therefore preferred where disinfection has to be carried out on a large scale.

Wood-tar varies in its composition with the wood from which it is obtained. The most important constituents are generally guaiacols and creo-

sols and their homologues, while carbolic acid and the cresols are less largely represented. Along with other only partially known substances, some hydrocarbons and acids such as acetic acid, also occur.

Creosote is obtained from beech tar and consists chiefly of guaiacol and creosols with very little carbolic acid or cresol, which latter have a lower boiling point and are removed in the course of preparation.

The *volatile or ethereal oils* have also antiseptic properties, and, in fact, no line of demarcation can be drawn between the volatile oil series and the antiseptics proper, for many bodies occur in both groups, and the great majority of the constituents of the volatile oil series belongs to the benzol compounds. The earliest antiseptics known were those occurring in plants, as is shown by the use of various herbs in embalming in Egypt. In later times several of the balsams, which contain benzoic and cinnamic acids dissolved in volatile oils, were credited with beneficial effects in the treatment of wounds.

Ichthyol is the ammonia salt of a sulphonic acid derived from the tar of a bituminous shale which is found in the Tyrol, and which contains the remains of many fossil fishes. The constitution of ichthyol is still doubtful and it is even undecided whether it is not really a mixture of a number of bodies. It contains a high percentage of sulphur, which seems to be only in part in the form of sulphons, in part in tha of mercaptans and sulphides. *Thiol* is an artificial product formed as a substitute for ichthyol by the action of sulphur and afterwards of sulphuric acid on the tar obtained from brown coal. It seems to consist chiefly of sulphons, and is very soluble in water. *Tumenol* is another artificial substitute for ichthyol. *Naphtalan* is prepared from raw naphtha by distillation and is used instead of ichthyol.

Action. — The simpler bodies of the aromatic series produce symptoms in the living organism which present great similarity in their general features, although they differ in details. As a general rule it is found that the simpler members of the series are much more poisonous to the higher animals than the more complex ones, while the latter are equally or more efficient as poisons in the lowest living forms. They are all possessed of a more or less marked action on the central nervous system which is entirely different from that of the methane narcotics however. The brain and spinal cord are thrown into a condition of abnormal irritability, which is betrayed by an increase in the reflex movements, and tremor and convulsions, and which is not due to the removal of inhibition as in the case of the methane compounds. Later, a stage of prostration and collapse is developed, which may simulate that seen in the narcosis of the fatty series, but does not seem to be identical with it, for though in man the consciousness is often lost in this stage, the collapse in animals is in many cases not accompanied by loss of sensation or of the voluntary movements. The symptoms are generally those of great muscular weakness and indicate depression of the vital centres of the medulla oblongata and of the heart rather than complete loss of the cerebral functions. They resemble surgical shock more than the anæsthesia following the use of chloroform and ether, and are probably of a different nature from the latter.

Many of the members of the benzol series tend to destroy the red cells of the blood and to form methæmoglobin; this effect is especially developed in the case of pyrogallol and will be described under it in detail. Most of these antiseptics reduce the temperature in fever,

while they have little effect on that of the normal body unless when given in large enough quantities to produce collapse. The cause of the fall of temperature in fever under the action of these drugs is not satisfactorily explained, although it seems probable that the process is the same as in the antipyrine series, with which they are nearly allied.

The aromatic poisons differ from the typical members of the methane series in their effects on protoplasm in general. Alcohol and ether destroy life in all forms of protoplasm when they are brought in contact with it in sufficient concentration, but the phenols and acids of the aromatic series do so in more dilute solutions, and in fact owe their importance in medicine to their activity as general protoplasm poisons.

Small quantities of the aromatic bodies seem to increase the activity of living matter, at any rate under some conditions, for the alcoholic fermentation is said to be accelerated by the presence of minute proportions of these poisons, and in the higher animals some of them increase the nitrogenous metabolism, while larger doses destroy the yeasts and also the tissues of the body. The evidence of central nervous irritation might also be cited in support of the view that the members of the aromatic series first accelerate and then retard protoplasmic activity, but the evidence is too limited as yet to admit of such a generalization.

Therapeutic Uses. — The members of the aromatic series are used in therapeutics chiefly as disinfectants and antiseptics, that is, to destroy or retard the growth of pathogenic and putrefactive microörganisms and yeasts. Their introduction by Lister to prevent the infection of wounded surfaces in surgery was followed by a revolution in surgical methods, which can only be paralleled by that which followed the introduction of anæsthetics some twenty years earlier.

The successful treatment of local infections by means of antiseptics encouraged the hope that general septic diseases might be as favorably influenced by them, but the two conditions are obviously entirely different, for in the case of a local infection the remedy may be applied at the diseased point, and, although it may destroy the life of the superficial cells in the neighborhood, this is not of vital importance. On the other hand, a disinfectant, acting throughout the tissues of the body in sufficient quantity to destroy the microbes of infection, must have an equally unfavorable effect on the cells of the host, unless it has a specific action on the parasite, and this is very exceptional.

A disinfectant in the strict use of the term is a substance used to destroy microbes, while an antiseptic, while not actually killing the germs, prevents their growth as long as it remains in contact with them. A disinfectant is accordingly only intended to act for a short time, for if the infected matter be once rendered sterile it can only become dangerous by being again contaminated. For example, a room requires only to be disinfected after a case of infectious disease. A wound, on the other hand, even though completely disinfected may become contaminated again very easily and an antiseptic may be required to prevent the further growth of microbes. Many substances are disinfectant in

large quantities and antiseptic in more dilute solutions, but others are too weak to disinfect thoroughly though they retard the growth of pathogenic organisms, and still others may be employed to disinfect but are unsuitable for use as antiseptics, either because they are too poisonous to be applied for a sufficient time or because they lose their effects on the microbes (peroxide of hydrogen group).

The uses of the antiseptics and disinfectants may be stated as follows:

1. **To Disinfect Rooms, Furniture, Clothes,** etc. — For these purposes, the strongest and cheapest drugs which do not actually injure the objects may be employed. None of the aromatic series is very trustworthy here, although carbolic solution has been employed; the gaseous disinfectants, formaldehyde and sulphurous acid, are much more efficient. For the disinfection of the excrementa, crude carbolic acid and tar have been advocated.

2. **To Prevent the Infection of Wounds** in surgery. This was first attained by Lister's carbolic acid dressing and operative procedure, but many other antiseptics have since been substituted for carbolic acid, and the use of antiseptics during operations on uninfected organs has given way to the aseptic method. For use during operations on infected wounds, the disinfectant must be soluble or miscible in water, and ought to produce as little irritation as possible, but there is less likelihood of serious poisoning or irritation from the use of antiseptics here than from their subsequent application to the wounded surface as dressings. The importance of avoiding the use of irritant antiseptics in operations on delicate structures, such as the peritoneum, has only been fully recognized of late years. Where a dressing has to be applied for some time, and especially when the wounded surface is large, as in the case of burns or large abscesses, the danger of absorption has to be taken into consideration, and antiseptics ought therefore to be chosen which are either absorbed slowly or are not very poisonous to man. The frequent occurrence of more or less severe carbolic intoxication has led to its employment being much more restricted than formerly, while the less soluble or less poisonous antiseptics have taken its place.

3. **In the Treatment of Skin Diseases** the danger of absorption is even greater than in the dressing of wounds, as the absorbing surface is often very much more extensive, and in addition the more irritant antiseptics are obviously not admissible here. In many cases of successful treatment with bodies of the aromatic series, the remedy seems to act not only as an antiseptic but also as a mild irritant and astringent. Pyrogallol is believed by some dermatologists to be of value only from its reducing action depriving the superficial tissues of their oxygen.

4. The antiseptics have been frequently employed for their **Disinfectant Action on the Bowel,** and as far as the putrefaction of the intestinal contents is concerned, with success. The disintegration of the food by microbes in the bowel may be estimated by the amount of double sulphates appearing in the urine, and in several series of experiments these have been found to be notably diminished by bodies of the aromatic series. Fewer microbes have been found in the fæces

also after these antiseptics have been administered. When, however, bacterial infection of the wall of the bowel is treated with these antiseptics, the results are less favorable. In typhoid fever, in which the subject has been most frequently examined, the number of the typhoid bacilli in the stools has not been lessened to any noticeable extent, and the majority of clinical observers seem to be very sceptical as to any relief of the symptoms being attained or of the duration of the disease being shortened by their use.

Any drug used for the disinfection of the intestine must not be irritant, nor very poisonous. It must not be too soluble, since otherwise it may be absorbed from the stomach and fail to reach the bowel, and on the other hand it must be soluble to some extent, or it cannot mix very intimately with the contents of the intestine. Carbolic acid is scarcely fitted for this purpose, for it irritates the stomach and is also rapidly absorbed. Some of the cresols have been recommended of late years, and the naphtalin preparations have also enjoyed some reputation. Salol and its congeners have the advantages of being almost completely insoluble and harmless in the stomach and of being dissolved and rendered active by the intestinal juices, and have been found of value in excessive putrefaction of the contents of the bowel. It has to be added that putrefaction in the bowel is best treated by its evacuation by a purgative, such as one of the mercurial preparations, which also have a high antiseptic value.

5. The antiseptics of the benzol series are excreted in great part by the kidneys, and the urine is thus rendered weakly antiseptic and irritant. This fact has been taken advantage of in the treatment of **Septic Diseases of the Bladder and Urethra**; the drugs used for this purpose must not be too irritant to the gastric mucous membranes, and must be easily absorbed, and not dangerously poisonous. Here, again, salol has been found of value as well as salicylic acid. The forms in which the benzol derivatives are excreted by the kidney are generally much less irritant and antiseptic than that in which they are administered. In estimating the value of each as a urinary disinfectant, it must also be remembered that many of them are liable to undergo oxidation in the urine itself.

6. Small quantities of some of the more volatile members of this series, especially of the hydrocarbons, escape by the lungs, and this has led to their use in **Pulmonary Disease**, especially in phthisis. It may be stated at once that careful observers are almost all united in the belief that the internal administration of these remedies has practically no antiseptic effect on the microbes in the lungs. Some relief is often obtained, but, it is believed, only through their disinfectant action in the stomach and bowel. Antiseptic remedies have also been inhaled in vapor or spray and have been injected into the trachea and even into the lung directly, but as far as the tubercle bacillus is concerned, they have had no result in the hands of the vast majority of physicians. In cases of gangrene of the lung, fœtid bronchitis, etc., the inhalations relieve the patient to some extent, and certainly lessen the offensive odor.

7. The use of antiseptics to **Destroy Pathogenic Germs in the Tissues after Absorption** is very limited. It is now recognized to be hopeless to attempt to find a single body which will destroy all forms of bacteria in the tissues, while leaving the host uninjured, but there is still reason to believe that in the future specific antiseptics may be found for at least some of the constitutional diseases. Such a specific action is seen in the effects of quinine on the organism of malaria, of salicylic acid in rheumatic fever, and of mercury in syphilis, all of these apparently acting more strongly on the cause of the disease than on the tissues of the patient. While it may be hoped that the antiseptic treatment of internal maladies has not reached its final limit, the only constitutional disease in which the aromatic series has been shown to be of incontestable value is acute rheumatism, and in many other conditions which were formerly treated with benzol antiseptics, they have proved rather injurious than otherwise. Even the least dangerous cause symptoms of poisoning in much smaller quantities than would be necessary to render the blood an antiseptic solution.

There is reason to believe that solutions containing several of the benzol series are more strongly antiseptic than those containing an equal percentage of the individual pure bodies, and that the mixture of such a body as carbolic acid with an antiseptic of another kind, *e. g.*, mercuric perchloride, is still more efficient than the corresponding proportion of either alone. This appears to be due to a change in the solubility of the disinfectant, at any rate in some cases. If a poison is to penetrate into the interior of an organism in quantity it must be as soluble in the protoplasm as in the fluid in which it is applied, for it is obvious that it will not leave a medium in which it is readily soluble for one in which it is dissolved with difficulty. Accordingly it is found that fats and oils in which the members of the aromatic series are very soluble are not suitable as media for their application, for the poisons remain in the oily menstruum and fail to penetrate the microbes in which they are less soluble. On the other hand, the addition of inorganic salts to an aqueous solution of carbolic acid often increases its antiseptic power, because the poison becomes less soluble in the water and shows a greater tendency to escape from it into the interior of the microbes.

Fate in the Tissues.—The fate of the members of the aromatic series in the body is very uniform in one respect — the benzol ring is ruptured only with great difficulty. In the great majority of cases the changes which these substances undergo in the tissues affect only the hydrogen or the side chains attached to the carbon atoms, and leave the form in which these last are attached to each other unchanged. The chief exceptions to this rule are pyrogallol and gallic acid, which seem to undergo more or less complete oxidation to carbonic acid and water. Some oxidation takes place in the aromatic series, however, the simpler forms, such as benzol and aniline, tending to form hydroxyl compounds, while those with a side chain formed of methane derivatives tend to oxidize it to carboxyl. The oxidation of the benzol com-

pounds, in the tissues therefore results in the formation of oxybenzols and aromatic acids, and this oxidation is probably not limited to any one particular tissue or organ. These bodies are not, however, excreted in this form in ordinary cases, but enter into secondary combinations in which they appear in the urine. The hydroxyl bodies unite with sulphuric and glycuronic acids to form double sulphates (ether-sulphuric acid salts) and glycuronates, while the aromatic acids are excreted in combinations with glycocoll, which are known as hippuric, salicyluric, etc., acids. The last synthesis probably occurs chiefly in the kidney, while the double sulphates are said to be formed in the liver.

A few examples of the changes undergone in the tissues may elucidate the above statement. Benzol (C_6H_6) is oxidized to phenol (C_6H_5OH), and to dioxybenzols $\left(C_6H_4{<}^{OH}_{OH}\right)$, which combine in the kidney with sulphuric and glycuronic acids to form phenol-sulphuric ($C_6H_5O—SO_3H$) and phenol-glycuronic acids, and the corresponding dioxybenzol compounds. Toluol ($C_6H_5—CH_3$) is oxidized to benzoic acid ($C_6H_5—COOH$), which combines with the glycocoll of the body to form hippuric acid ($C_6H_5CO—NHCH_2COOH$). Xylol $\left(C_6H_4{<}^{CH_3}_{CH_3}\right)$ is oxidized only in one side chain and forms toluic acid $\left(C_6H_4{<}^{CH_3}_{COOH}\right)$, which is excreted in combination with glycocoll as toluic acid.

Although a general resemblance exists in the oxidation products of these bodies in the tissues and in the forms in which they are excreted, considerable differences are noted in the details. Thus, naphtalin undergoes the same oxidation as benzol, forming naphtol in place of phenol, but while the phenol appears in the urine in combination with sulphuric acid almost entirely, the naphtol combines with glycuronic acid for the most part.

Bibliography.

Consult that given under the individual members—Carbolic Acid, Salicyclic Acid, etc.

Antiseptic Action.

Dougall. Med. Times and Gazette, 1872, i., p. 495.
Grace Calvert. Ibid., p. 176.
Bucholtz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iv., p. 1.
Haberkorn. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1879.
Krajewski. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xiv., p. 139.
Koch. Mittheilung aus dem Kaiserlich. Gesundheitsamt., i., p. 234.
Jalan de la Croix. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xiii., p. 175.
Cash. Reports of British Local Government Board, 1886.
Sternberg. Bull. of National Board of Health, 1881.
Schulz. Pflüger's Arch., xlii., p. 517.
Biernacki. Ibid., xlix., p. 112.
Krönig u. Paul. Ztschr. f. Hygiene, xxv., p. 1.
Spiro u. Bruns. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xli., p. 353.

General Action.

Brunton and Cash. Proc. Roy. Soc., xlii., p. 240.
Schultzen u. Graebe. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1867, p. 166.
Schultzen u. Naunyn. Ibid., p. 349.
Nencki. Ibid., p. 399, 1870.
Baumann. Pflüger's Arch., xiii., p. 285.
Baumann u. Preusse. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1879, p. 245.
Baumann and pupils. Zts. f. phys. Chem., i.–vii.
Bokorny. Pflüger's Arch., lxiv., p. 306.
Nencki u. Giacosa. Zts. f. physiol. Chem., iv., p. 325.
Nencki. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., i., p. 420; xxx., p. 300.
Karpow. Arch. des Sciences Biolog., ii., p. 305.
Ziegler. Arch. f. exp. Path., i., p. 65.
Steiff. Zts. f. klin. Med., xvi., p. 311.
Binet. Trav. de Labor. de Therap. exp. de Geneve, ii., p. 143.
Schmiedeberg. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xiv., p. 379.

1. Carbolic Acid.

Carbolic acid or phenol, the first of the modern antiseptics to be introduced, acts like the rest of the simpler benzol compounds as a **General Protoplasm Poison,** although in the vertebrates it acts more powerfully on the central nervous system than on the other tissues.

Its poisonous effects are well seen when it is applied to unicellular organisms such as the *protozoa*. Even dilute solutions cause immediate arrest of all movements; the organism assumes a spherical shape and loses its transparency, and, unless the solution be very attenuated, dies in the course of a few minutes. *Plant cells* are acted on in the same way, and the individual cells of more highly organized animals, such as the *ciliated epithelium* of the air passages and the *spermatozoa*, are killed at once when brought in contact with carbolic acid. There is some evidence, however, that very dilute solutions of carbolic acid, as of other antiseptics, tend to increase the activity of protoplasm. Thus Biernacki and Schulz have found that while solutions of phenol, such as are used as surgical antiseptics, are immediately fatal to the yeast plant, very dilute solutions increase its activity. The effect of carbolic acid on protoplasm has, however, been studied chiefly in the *bacteria*. Its antiseptic power, while always considerable, is found to vary greatly with the species of microbe. Thus, while it is fairly poisonous to the ordinary pyogenic organisms, it has to be present in very concentrated form to destroy the more resistant spores of anthrax, and like other antiseptics, is much less poisonous to the microbes than to the protozoa and other simple forms of life. The development and reproduction of many microörganisms has been found to be much delayed, or altogether prevented, as long as they remained in a solution of one part of carbolic acid in 400–600 parts water, but in order to kill the spores very much more concentrated solutions (5 per cent.) were required, and Koch found that the spores of the anthrax bacilli were destroyed by 5 per cent. carbolic solution only after they had remained in it for two days.

It seems to vary considerably in its action on the *unorganized ferments;* thus it is said not to retard appreciably the fermentations

produced by emulsin, diastase and myrosin, even when present in the solution up to 5 per cent., while pepsin, ptyalin and the rennet ferment are weakened by somewhat smaller quantities.

Carbolic acid precipitates **Proteids** in solution and also in the cells. It does not seem to enter into any such firm combination with them as is formed when tannic acid or a salt of one of the heavy metals is added to a solution of proteid, for it can be washed out of the precipitate with comparative ease. Its action in precipitating albumins may rather be compared to that of alcohol, in which the proteid is precipitated, not because an insoluble compound is formed, but because of a change in the nature of the solvent. It results from this that carbolic acid penetrates more thoroughly than the metallic antiseptics, which are rendered insoluble by the albumin they meet, and whose action therefore tends to remain confined to the surface.

This coagulation of the proteids occurs whenever carbolic acid is brought in contact with the tissues. On the **Skin** a white, opaque scar is formed by concentrated phenol, which becomes red and shining afterwards and then falls off in a few days, leaving a light brown stain which may remain for several weeks. Even a five per cent. solution applied to the fingers produces tingling and warmth, which is often followed by opacity and shrinking of the epidermis and a sense of numbness. This numbness may amount to almost complete anæsthesia if more concentrated solutions are applied, no pain being felt even when the skin is cut through. When applied for some time and prevented from evaporating, carbolic acid may cause extensive dry gangrene of the part from its penetrating through the surface layer and reaching the deeper tissues. Applied to a **Wound** in five per cent. solution, phenol induces pain and irritation and the formation of a white pellicle of coagulated proteids. It causes irritation and necrosis of the **Mucous Membranes**, and if applied in sufficient quantity may be followed by sloughing and acute inflammation. This local effect may prove fatal from shock and collapse when large quantities of the undiluted acid are swallowed, the effect resembling exactly that produced by other corrosive substances.

Apart from its local action, carbolic acid has important effects after its absorption into the blood. The most marked of these are the changes in the **Central Nervous System.** When a small quantity of carbolic acid is injected into the *frog*, the first symptoms, apart from those produced by the pain of the injection, consist in an unusual quiet and in the absence of the spontaneous movements. Later, quivering of individual muscles, and apparently of the individual bundles of muscle fibres, sets in, and this is soon accompanied by an increase in the reflex irritability and eventually by convulsions similar to those seen after strychnine. These movements gradually become weaker, and eventually complete paralysis is induced, while the heart continues to beat and the muscles and nerves react to the electric shock. A dilute solution of carbolic acid applied directly to the exposed spinal cord paralyzes the sensory elements immediately, while leaving

unaffected the motor fibres and the cells of the anterior horn (Baglioni).

In *mammals*, a very similar set of symptoms are produced, save that there is often no noticeable preliminary stage of depression. Some weakness and lethargy may be present, however, and are followed by marked muscular tremor, which resembles the shivering produced by cold. At intervals this is interrupted by sudden twitches in different muscles, and later by clonic convulsions. The respiration and the pulse are at first accelerated, but afterwards are slow, irregular, and weak. The movements become feeble and appear at longer intervals, the respiration is shallow and irregular, and the animal passes into a condition of collapse, in which, however, the sensibility to pain is often preserved. Eventually death occurs from asphyxia. After very large doses the collapse may be immediate, no convulsions being observed, the heart and respiration often ceasing simultaneously. In most cases salivation is a marked symptom, and the temperature often falls far below the normal.

In *man*, convulsions are comparatively rarely seen. When large quantities are taken, immediate unconsciousness may result and death follow within a few minutes. How far this is due to the local corrosion, and how far the direct action on the central nervous system is involved, cannot be determined. In more gradual poisoning, depression and weakness, headache, nausea and vomiting are followed by giddiness, noises in the ears, pallor and collapse, with irregular pulse and respiration, and cold perspiration ; fainting and unconsciousness then lead to failure of the breathing, and death. Delirium and excitement have been observed in some cases. Fatal poisoning may arise from swallowing the concentrated or dilute solution, or from absorption from wounds and abscesses. It has also occurred in man from absorption through the unbroken skin.

The autopsy sometimes gives no special indications of the cause of death, save the local corrosion of the alimentary canal. Inflammation and necrosis of the intestine is said to have been observed in some cases in which the poison was absorbed from skin wounds, and fatty degeneration is sometimes induced in the liver and the renal epithelium, but is not constant.

The cause of the convulsions in the frog seems to be an increase in the irritability of the spinal cord similar to that seen in strychnine, for they are not removed by section of the medulla oblongata. In mammals the sudden contractions of isolated muscles appear due to a similar action on the spinal cord, but the clonic convulsions and the persistent tremors are probably of cerebral origin, and Berkholz found the cerebral cortex abnormally irritable after carbolic acid. The rarity of convulsions in man has not been satisfactorily explained. In some cases the course of the intoxication is too short, the large amount of poison swallowed inducing immediate collapse, while in others their absence may be due to the debility of the patient from disease ; but in a considerable number of cases of poisoning in which neither of

Carbolic ac combines with Sulphuric acid in body & excreted as double sulphate in urine

these conditions was present, no convulsions were observed. A similar contrast between the effects of a poison on the lower animals and on man has been mentioned already under morphine. In all cases, the primary stimulation of the central nervous system is followed by depression and paralysis if large doses are administered.

The acceleration of the **Respiration** and of the **Heart** seen in mammals has been supposed to be an indirect result of the increased muscular movement and convulsions, but this seems to be incorrect, for the heart is found to be accelerated before the convulsive movements and tremor appear, and the frog's heart is accelerated in cases where no movements occur whatever. It would seem probable that the acceleration of the heart is due to direct action on the muscle or on the regulating nerves. The subsequent slowing is undoubtedly due to muscular action.

The acceleration of the respiration precedes the increased movement also, and would therefore seem to be due to action on the medullary centre, which is first stimulated and later paralyzed. The vaso-motor centre is said by Gies to be depressed at once by the injection of carbolic acid into the blood, but it may be questioned whether it too is not first excited when the poison is absorbed more slowly. It is undoubtedly depressed in the later stages of poisoning, and this, together with the weakness and slowness of the heart, causes a fall in the blood-pressure.

The peripheral **Nerves and Muscles** do not seem to be affected in general poisoning in mammals, although in the frog their irritability and the capacity for work of the muscle may be somewhat reduced.

On the direct application of solutions of carbolic acid to the nerves or muscles, these are at once killed, like other forms of living matter.

The increased **Secretion** of saliva, perspiration and tears which is seen in poisoning in mammals is probably of central origin, and may possibly be associated with the nausea and vomiting.

The fall in **Temperature** in carbolic acid poisoning seems, for the main part, to be due to the collapse, although it is impossible to state how far this may be aided by some alteration of the regulating function, such as is seen in the closely related group of the antipyretics.

Carbolic acid added to the defibrinated **Blood** leads to the slow formation of methæmoglobin, but this does not occur in the living animal. Occasionally some destruction of the red blood cells is caused in animals through the injection of carbolic acid directly into the blood vessels, and in one case of poisoning in man hæmoglobin was detected in the urine, indicating that some of the red cells of the blood had been destroyed.

Excretion.—Carbolic acid passes through the tissues unoxidized for the most part, but a certain proportion of it undergoes a partial oxidation to hydroquinone and pyrocatechin. These combine in the body with sulphuric and glycuronic acids, and are excreted in the urine as double sulphates (ether sulphates) and glycuronates of phenol, hydroquinone and pyrocatechin. The two last-named bodies are somewhat

unstable, and tend to undergo further oxidation, through which colored substances are formed. When carbolic acid has been absorbed, therefore, the urine tends to assume a dark, dusky-green color which may change to brown or even black. This change may occur in the body, and the urine is very often passed of a greenish-brown color, but further oxidation takes place on exposure to the air, resulting in deeper coloration which commences at the surface of the fluid and gradually extends downwards. The depth of the shade depends not on the amount of phenol sulphate in the urine, but on that of the dioxybenzols, and a darker urine is often observed, therefore, when the absorption has occurred from an open wound (in which the conditions are especially favorable to oxidation) than from much larger quantities absorbed from the alimentary canal.

The presence of glycuronates in the urine may lead to its reducing Fehling's solution, and thus give rise to the suspicion of glycosuria. On the other hand, the passage of these bodies through the kidney often causes some irritation and albuminuria. The double sulphates of the urine are, of course, much increased, and in the dog the whole of the ordinary inorganic sulphates may disappear, the urine containing only double sulphates.

The **Chlorphenols**, in which chlorine is substituted for one or more of the hydrogen atoms of carbolic acid, are much more poisonous to microörganisms than the original substance, but are also somewhat more poisonous to mammals, so that they have not been much used. A similar intensifying effect is seen in the chlorine substitution products of the narcotic series, *e. g.*, chloroform. The most poisonous of the monochlor-phenols is parachlorphenol. Bromol or tribromphenol has been used to a limited extent in therapeutics as a disinfectant and caustic.

Preparations.

Acidum Carbolicum Crudum (U. S. P.) contains other phenols and cresols, as well as carbolic acid.

Acidum Carbolicum (U. S. P., B. P.), carbolic acid or phenol (C_6H_5OH) forms colorless, deliquescent crystals when recently prepared, but often assumes a reddish tinge from oxidation. It has a characteristic odor and is intensely corrosive. It is soluble in about 15 parts of water, but becomes liquid when 10 parts of water are added to 90 of the crystals, forming the *Acidum Carbolicum Liquefactum* of the B. P. This must be carefully distinguished from the ordinary solution of carbolic acid, which contains only about 5 per cent. of phenol, while the liquefied carbolic acid contains 90 per cent.

Carbolic acid, 0.03–0.2 G. (½–3 grs.).

Liquefied carbolic acid, 1–3 mins.

Glyceritum Acidi Carbolici (U. S. P.), *Glycerinum Acidi Carbolici* (B. P.), 20 per cent. of carbolic acid in glycerin.

Unguentum Acidi Carbolici, U. S. P., 5 per cent.; B. P., 4 per cent.

Trochiscus Acidi Carbolici (B. P.), each containing 1 gr.

Suppositoria Acidi Carbolici (B. P.), each containing 1 gr.

Therapeutic Uses. — Carbolic acid is used as an antiseptic in surgical operations in 2–5 per cent. solution in water. It now plays a much less important rôle in surgery than it did in the first days of anti-

sepsis; in fact, in many clinics in which it was once the only antiseptic used, and in which it was applied in all the manifold preparations then known, carbolic acid is now employed only to preserve the instruments from infection. This change is no doubt partially due to apprehension of its irritant action, and to the occasional cases of poisoning which occurred from its use, but chiefly to the alterations in surgical technique which have been introduced since the antiseptic method was first invented. The tendency now is to reduce the use of antiseptics to a minimum and to trust instead to stricter cleanliness and asepsis. Its irritant action and the danger of absorption have also rendered it unpopular as a dressing or lotion after operations or injuries, where there is any large absorbent surface, or where irritation is liable to be injurious, as in most forms of skin disease.

It is still used as a disinfectant in septic wounds, though greater reliance is now placed on corrosive sublimate and the oxidizing antiseptics such as hydrogen peroxide. Strong carbolic acid has been applied to disinfect wounds, its poisonous effects being avoided by immediately washing it off with alcohol.

Harrington has recently drawn attention to the danger of applying dilute solutions in bandages to injured fingers and hands; he found records of over a hundred cases in which this had led to gangrene necessitating amputation.

Carbolic acid has also been employed as a caustic, the liquefied preparation being preferred for this purpose. It is less painful than other caustics owing to its anæsthetizing action, but it is also less efficient.

Its local action on the sensory nerve terminations has been utilized in itching skin diseases and it may be noted that some recent local anæsthetics are benzol derivatives (see page 314). The treatment of deep-seated abscesses and inflammation by the local injection of carbolic acid solutions has passed into desuetude, and a similar fate has befallen its use to limit the extension of erysipelas. The spray of carbolic acid has been advised in laryngeal and pulmonary disease, but is scarcely met with in recent years. A solution of carbolic acid has been employed as an irritant to cause inflammatory reaction, cicatricial adhesion and consequent obliteration of small cysts, such as hydrocele, and in nævus.

Internally carbolic acid was tried as an intestinal disinfectant, and in many infectious fevers. It causes marked irritation of the stomach, however, and probably little of it reaches the bowel, as it is rapidly absorbed, and other less irritant and less soluble bodies have therefore been substituted for it. Its use as a remedy in constitutional diseases is entirely obsolete.

It may be prescribed as a pill or in capsules for internal use, as the solutions are more liable to cause irritation; only the pure acid is prescribed either for internal or external application. Crude carbolic acid may be employed to disinfect stools, latrines, etc., and is quite unsuited for therapeutic use. The ointment is comparatively seldom

prescribed, as it is found more irritant than many other equally powerful antiseptics. The glycerite may be used as a very weak caustic. Solutions of carbolic acid in oil have little or no antiseptic action, because they fail to penetrate into the microbes.

Poisoning. — In carbolic acid poisoning, when it has been taken by the mouth, the first treatment is the removal of the poison by the stomach tube, and the administration of demulcents such as white of egg; when absorption has occurred from the skin or from a wound, the dressing should be removed at once. Lime suspended in syrup has been recommended in cases in which the acid has been swallowed, in the hope that an insoluble combination may be formed in the stomach. The combination of phenol with sulphuric acid in the tissues forms a comparatively harmless body, and Baumann and Preusse therefore suggested the administration of sodium sulphate in large quantities. It is found, however, that this is of little or no use, either because the tissues in which the synthesis occurs are entirely paralyzed by the excess of phenol, or more probably because the phenol does not combine with sulphates as such in the body, but with organic sulphur compounds which are only in process of being oxidized to sulphuric acid. When coma and collapse set in, the patient is to be sustained by the application of warmth externally, and by the administration of such central nervous stimulants as caffeine, atropine, or camphor; artificial respiration may eventually be used, although there is little prospect of resuscitation if the intoxication has advanced so far. The corrosion induced by carbolic acid locally may be treated by washing the part with alcohol which dissolves the acid readily. This treatment has been suggested for cases in which the poison has been swallowed, but it does not seem to prevent poisoning in animals.

Bibliography.

Lemaire. L'acide phenique, de son action sur les vegetaux, etc. Paris, 1865.
Neumann. Arch. f. Dermat. u. Syphilol., i., p. 425.
Husemann. Deutsche Klinik, 1870, 1871. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iv., p. 280.
Gies. Ibid., xii., p. 401.
Baumann and his pupils. Pflüger's Arch., xiii., p. 285. Zts. f. phys. Chem., i., p. 244; ii., pp. 273, 350; iii., pp. 156, 177. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1879, p. 245.
Bill. Amer. Jour. of Med. Sci., lxiv., p. 17.
Salkowsky. Pflüger's Arch., v., p. 335.
Hoppe-Seylor. Ibid., v., p. 470.
Plugge. Ibid., v., p. 538.
Prudden. Am. Jour. of Med. Sci., lxxxi., p. 82.
Tauber. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvi., p. 197.
Schmiedeberg. Ibid., xiv., p. 288.
Turtschaninow. Ibid., xxxiv., p. 208.
Berkholz. See *Unverricht*, Centralb. f. inn. Med., 1895, p. 4.
Baglioni. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1900, Supplem., p. 193.
Minervini. Arch. f. klin. Chirurg., lx., p. 687.
Harrington. Am. Jour. of Med. Sci., cxx., p. 1.

Cresol.

The three cresols are nearly related to carbolic acid chemically, and resemble it very closely in their effects. Metacresol is less poisonous to mam-

mals and less irritant, and at the same time seems to be more destructive to microbes than carbolic acid. Orthocresol is more dangerous than carbolic acid, and paracresol is the most powerful poison of all. The symptoms produced by these bodies are identical with those of phenol. They are excreted as cresol double sulphates mainly, but some appears in the urine as the sulphate of a more highly oxidized form, dioxytoluol. The cresols are constituents of the tars and other crude antiseptic substances. They are only slightly soluble in water, and there has been some difficulty in rendering them available for surgical use, but this has been overcome by forming emulsions (*creolin*), or by dissolving them with the aid of salts (*solveol*, *solutol*) or suspending them by means of soap (*lysol*). These are not claimed to be pure preparations of cresol, but the three isomeric cresols have recently been introduced as *tricresol*, which dissolves in water to the extent of 2½ per cent. These preparations are not devoid of poisonous properties, as is often stated by interested individuals, but they are not so dangerous as carbolic acid. They are used chiefly as surgical antiseptics, but creolin has also been given as an intestinal disinfectant, although with indifferent results. Their value as surgical antiseptics has been denied by some writers and there is no question that it has been much overrated by others. *Kresamine* (ethylendiamine and tricresol) is said to be more strongly antiseptic than tricresol, and has been recommended in diseases of the skin as an ointment or solution.

Anisol and **Phenetol**, the ethers of carbolic acid, resemble it in their effects and have no practical or theoretical interest.

Bibliography.

Seybold. Ztschr. f. Hygiene, xxix., p. 377.

Thymol.

Another phenol homologue is thymol, which resembles carbolic acid closely in its action, though it causes less central nervous stimulation. Convulsions and tremors are rarely induced in either frogs or mammals, and when present, are very much less intense than those following carbolic acid. The animal generally sinks into a condition of apathy and weakness, which gradually passes into collapse and death. Thymol is less soluble in the fluids of the body, and is therefore absorbed more slowly than carbolic acid. It is also less irritant to wounded surfaces and is, according to most observers, considerably more poisonous to putrefactive organisms, while less poisonous to the higher animals. In poisoning from its use, fatty degeneration of the liver, marked congestion and even consolidation of the lungs, and irritation of the intestines have been observed. It is excreted in the urine in combination with sulphuric and glycuronic acids, partly unchanged, partly oxidized to thymolhydroquinone. There is also found in the urine a green coloring substance, which becomes blue on the addition of acid, and which seems nearly related to, but not identical with indigo. Thymol is said to be more liable to cause renal irritation than carbolic acid and albumin and even blood have been repeatedly observed in the urine after its absorption.

Thymol (U. S. P., B. P.) ($C_6H_3C_3H_7CH_3OH$) occurs in common thyme and several other plants, and forms large, colorless crystals, which have the odor of thyme and are very insoluble in water. 0.03–0.2 G. (½–3 grs.) in pills or in solution in dilute alcohol.

Thymol seems to have some advantages over phenol as a surgical disinfectant, but has never attracted much attention, though it has been used occasionally as an antiseptic lotion in $\frac{1}{10}$ per cent. solution. As an internal remedy it has proved a failure in the treatment of various constitutional diseases, such as acute rheumatism, phthisis and typhoid fever. It is said to have some value as an intestinal disinfectant and anthelmintic, and has been used as an antiseptic mouth-wash and gargle, for which carbolic acid is rendered unsuitable by its unpleasant odor and its corrosive action.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Husemann. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iv., p. 280.
Blum. Zts. f. physiol. Chem., xvi., p. 514. Deutsche med. Woch., 1891, p. 186.
Lewin. Virchow's Arch., lxv., p. 164.
Baelz. Arch. der Heilkunde, xviii., p. 60.
Kuessner. Habilitationschr., Halle, 1878.

Eucalyptol.

Eucalyptol ($C_{10}H_{18}O$) is the chief constituent of oil of eucalyptus, which is obtained from Eucalyptus globulus and some other species. It is also contained in the oil of cajuput and in other volatile oils. It has been recommended as a surgical antiseptic and in the same class of internal diseases as thymol, but does not seem to have any special virtues distinguishing it from the general class of volatile oils.

Eucalyptol (U. S. P.), a colorless fluid, having a characteristic, camphoraceous odor and a pungent, spicy, cooling taste. It is almost insoluble in water, but is miscible with alcohol in all proportions.

Resorcin.

The three dioxybenzols — resorcin, pyrocatechin and hydroquinone — resemble carbolic acid in their effects, but produce a more intense stimulation of the central nervous system, for convulsions have been observed in man after their use. This is especially true for the two last, resorcin being much less toxic than these. Resorcin seems to be equally or more strongly antiseptic than phenol, and is somewhat less poisonous, while the others are more dangerous; it is less irritant and caustic than carbolic acid. All three dioxybenzols are excreted in the urine in combination with sulphuric and glycuronic acids. They are in part subjected to further oxidation, leading to coloration of the urine similar to that seen in carbolic acid poisoning. Pyrocatechin and hydroquinone when added to blood form methæmoglobin much more readily than phenol, and also tend to form it in the body when the intoxication does not progress too rapidly to allow of this alteration in the living animal. They cause a much greater destruction of the red blood cells than phenol.

Resorcinum (U. S. P.), resorcin, metadioxybenzol ($C_6H_4(OH)_2$), colorless, very soluble crystals, with a faint aromatic odor. 0.3–0.6 G. (5–10 grs.); 3 G. (45 grs.) in 24 hours.

Resorcin is a remedy which has fallen into almost complete disuse. At first introduced as an antiseptic, it was prescribed for a short time as an antipyretic, but has proved as unsuitable for this purpose as carbolic acid or aniline, which reduce fever temperature, but cause symptoms of collapse very readily. It has been used as an intestinal antiseptic and in rheumatic fever, but has here again been supplanted by less dangerous remedies. As an external application, it has been applied in ointment (5–10 per cent.) in skin diseases, and has been injected in cystitis and gonorrhœa in solution (1–3 per cent.) but in both cases is liable to produce irritation and pain. As an internal remedy it should be prescribed in dilute solution (1–2 per cent.).

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Andeer. Centralbl. f. d. med. Wis., 1881–1889.
Baumann. Zts. f. phys. Chem., i., p. 244. (See Carbolic Acid.)
Brieger. Zts. f. klin. Med., iii., p. 25. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1879, Suppl., p. 61.
Martin. Therap. Gaz., 1887, p. 289.
Surbeck. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xxxii., p. 515.
Danilewsky. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxv., p. 105.

2. Pyrogallol.

Pyrogallol, the only trioxybenzol that has been largely used, produces nervous symptoms resembling those of carbolic acid, when given in very large doses to animals. In the cases of poisoning which have been observed in man, the symptoms of which closely resemble those caused by smaller quantities in animals, these nervous symptoms have been almost entirely absent, and the poison acted not so much directly on the central nervous system, as upon the blood corpuscles. Many of the other members of this series cause some destruction of the red cells, but none of them approach pyrogallol in the intensity of their effects. The red blood cells become shrunken and angular and lose most of their hæmoglobin, which escapes into the plasma and is changed into methæmoglobin ; the blood therefore assumes a brownish-red color, which may be detected in the living animal by the discoloration of the skin and mucous membranes. If the intoxication is not too acute, icterus follows, and hæmoglobin and methæmoglobin are excreted in the urine. In the blood, fragments of red cells and "shadows," or red cells deprived of their coloring matter, are seen in large numbers, and the spectrum of methæmoglobin can be obtained easily. The kidneys are also affected, and the resulting nephritis is indicated by the presence in the urine of albumin, epithelium, and casts, along with the products of the decomposition of the blood. The nephritis may lead to uræmic convulsions, which are sometimes accompanied by the nervous tremors characteristic of this series, and also by dyspnœa and cyanosis from the lack of hæmoglobin in the blood. The formation of methæmoglobin is generally believed to be connected with the well-known reducing properties of pyrogallol, but whether the methæmoglobin is a direct result of the reduction caused in the hæmoglobin, or whether a secondary oxidation accompanies this action, is unknown. Pyrogallol is excreted in part in combination with sulphuric acid in the urine, in part as unknown oxidized products, which give the urine a dark brown or black color, even when no blood pigments are contained in it. In fatal poisoning death seems to be due to the blood changes, and the consequent nephritis and jaundice, rather than to the direct effect of the drug on the central nervous system. It has been stated that the débris of the red blood cells fails to pass through the capillaries and thus leads to thrombosis, but this has been denied by later investigators.

The skin is dyed brown when pyrogallol is applied to it, from the products of oxidation formed.

Pyrogallol (U. S. P.), pyrogallic acid ($C_6H_3(OH)_3$), light, colorless crystals or laminæ when freshly prepared, which rapidly assume a darker color on exposure to light and air. It is very soluble in water and reduces the salts of the heavy metals even in the cold. It is used only externally.

Pyrogallol is used in the treatment of several forms of skin disease, especially in psoriasis, in which it is applied in ointment (5–20 per

cent.). It is dangerous to apply it to very large surfaces, however, and many authorities therefore advise the use of chrysarobin in its stead. Pyrogallol ought never to be used internally. Its curative action in skin diseases may be due to its slight irritant and antiseptic properties, but is referred by some to its reducing action. *Gallacetophenone* ($CH_3—CO—C_6H_2(OH)_3$) has been recommended as a substitute for pyrogallol in skin affections.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Wedl. Wiener Sitzungsber., lxiv., p. 405.
Neisser. Zts. f. klin. Med., i., p. 88.
Weyl u. Anrep. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1880, p. 234.
Rekowski. Therap. Monatsch., 1891, p. 487. (Gallacetophenone.)

3. Naphtalin and Naphtol (Naphthol).

Naphtalin and its compounds alpha- and beta-naphtol differ in some respects from the other members of the series. They are all insoluble in water, but the naphtols are dissolved in the alkalies. Some question has arisen as to whether **Naphtalin** is really an antiseptic in itself, or whether it owes its activity to the formation of the more soluble naphtols. Animals poisoned with it do not exhibit the ordinary symptoms of poisoning with an aromatic body, even when it is administered for several weeks, but suffer from diarrhœa and lose flesh rapidly, either from disturbance of the alimentary canal or from renal disorder. The urine soon contains albumin, casts and epithelium, and the kidney is found in a condition of parenchymatous nephritis. The changes in the eye caused by naphtalin and naphtol have excited some interest. The retina is seen with the ophthalmoscope to be dotted over with numerous bright points, or sometimes to contain large yellow plaques, and after large doses subretinal effusion has been observed. At the same time, atrophy of the optic nerve may occur, and bright points are seen in the vitreous humor similar to those in the retina. A slight cloudiness appears in the lens and increases rapidly until it becomes quite opaque and resembles an ordinary cataract in man. This does not seem to be secondary to the retinal changes, but is the result of an inflammatory infiltration beginning in the ciliary body and iris and extending into the lens and finally into the posterior surface of the cornea. These changes in the eye have generally been observed in animals treated with large doses of naphtaline or naphtol, and have not occurred in such intensity in man; but v. d. Hoeve states that commencing retinal degeneration may be induced in man by the use of naphtol internally or externally and cautions against its prolonged administration.

Large doses of the **Naphtols** induce symptoms similar to those of carbolic acid poisoning, except that in the dog no convulsions have been observed, and in the other mammals they seem less pronounced. They are irritating to the mucous membranes when they come in contact with them in solution or in vapor; thus they cause sneezing and

coughing when applied to the respiratory passages, and in the course of excretion induce pain in the bladder and urethra with strangury and swelling of the mucous membrane. Injected subcutaneously or absorbed from the alimentary canal in animals, they induce acute nephritis with the appearance of albumin and hæmoglobin in the urine, and some nephritis has been caused in man from their external application. They seem to have less effect on the circulation and respiration than the other aromatic antiseptics, but resemble them in tending to destroy the red cells of the blood. Alpha-naphtol has been found to be more strongly antiseptic than the beta compound, and may be more poisonous, as is generally stated, but no satisfactory investigation has appeared regarding this point. Beta-naphtol is several times as strongly germicidal as carbolic acid, and is the form used in therapeutics.

Naphtalin is partly oxidized in the tissues and appears in the urine as alpha- and beta-naphtol and naphtoquinone, all in combination with glycuronic and sulphuric acid. The naphtols are excreted in combination with glycuronic acid mainly. These bodies and their oxidized products give the urine a reddish-brown tint, which may become deeper on exposure to the air, but in some cases it retains its ordinary color.

Preparations.

Napthalinum (U. S. P.), naphtalin or naphtalene ($C_{10}H_8$), colorless, insoluble crystals with a coal-tar odor and a hot aromatic taste. 0.06–0.3 G. (1–5 grs.).

Naphtol (U. S. P.), Naphthol (B. P.), Beta-naphtol ($C_{10}H_7OH$), white or yellowish-white, insoluble crystals or powder, with a faint phenol odor and a hot taste. 0.2–0.6 G. (3–10 grs.).

Therapeutic Uses. — Naphtalin and naphtol were at first introduced as external applications in parasitic skin diseases of various forms, but have been more extensively prescribed as intestinal disinfectants. In some disorders, such as diarrhœa, in which the walls of the intestine are only secondarily affected by the putrefaction of the contents, they have proved very efficacious, but when the intestinal walls themselves are the seat of the primary disease, as in typhoid fever and dysentery, they are of more doubtful value. They have been employed as anthelmintics to a limited extent, and apparently with some success, though they have not proved so reliable as some of the older drugs used for this purpose. Naphtol is more largely used than naphtalin in internal medication, and may be prescribed as a powder or in capsules. They are used externally as ointments (5–10 per cent.). Naphtalene and naphtol ought to be avoided in irritation of the kidneys, bladder or urethra.

Bibliography.

Rossbach. Berl. klin. Woch., 1884, pp. 665, 729.
Willenz. Therap. Monatsheft, 1888, p. 20.
Neisser. Centralbl. f. med. Wiss., 1881, p. 545.
Baatz. Centralbl. f. inn. Med., 1894, p. 857.
Lesnik. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxiv., p. 168.
Bouchard u. Charrin. Therap. Monatsheft, 1887, p. 119.
Kolinski. St. Petersburg med. Woch., 1889.

Magnus. Therap. Monats., 1887, p. 387.
Klingmann. Virchow's Arch., cxlix., p. 12.
Manca and Ovio. Arch. Ital. de Biologie, xxxiv., p. 265.
v. d. Hoeve. Arch. f. Ophthalmol., liii., p. 74.

4. Tar.

The action of the various crude preparations of the antiseptic series resembles that of the pure principles but as in most of them the creosols, guaiacols and other less poisonous aromatic compounds are present in larger quantity than the phenols and dioxybenzols, they are less poisonous than carbolic acid and its simpler homologues. At the same time these higher combinations do not seem to be much less antiseptic than the simpler benzol derivatives, so that several of the crude preparations possess considerable value in surgery and medicine.

Preparations.

Pix Liquida (U. S. P., B. P.), tar, is obtained from the wood of Pinus palustris and other species of Pinus by destructive distillation and contains a very large number of aromatic bodies mixed with others of less importance.

Oleum Picis Liquidæ (U. S. P.), oil of tar, is a volatile oil distilled from tar, and is similar to creosote, except that it consists almost entirely of guaiacols and their compounds. 0.05–0.3 c.c. (1–5 mins.).

Syrupus Picis Liquidæ (U. S. P.), syrup of tar, 4–12 c.c. (1–3 fl. drs.).

Unguentum Picis Liquidæ (U. S. P., B. P.).

Pix Carbonis Præparata (B. P.), prepared coal-tar.

Liquor Picis Carbonis (B. P.), a solution of coal-tar in tincture of Quillaia bark.

Oleum Cadinum (U. S. P., B. P.), oil of cade or empyreumatic oil of juniper. Juniper tar oil is the tar distilled from the juniper, and contains dioxybenzol and guaiacol combinations. It is less strongly disinfectant than the other tars.

Tar is a valuable disinfectant, which is very generally available and is much cheaper than the purer bodies of the aromatic series. It may be used for the disinfection of excrementa, latrines, etc., where the cost of even crude carbolic acid would be prohibitive.

Tar has also been used with considerable success as an antiseptic in skin diseases, in which it may be applied either alone or as an ointment. It is only slightly irritating to the skin, and some absorption occurs, as is often seen by the dark color of the urine. Internally it has been used occasionally as an anthelmintic and intestinal disinfectant, much more frequently as an "expectorant" in cough mixtures. Whether it has any effects on the lungs or not in these cases may be questioned. It is generally given as the syrup, sometimes as tar water.

Bibliography.

Nencki u. Sieber. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiii., p. 1.
Ström. Arch. d. Pharmacie, ccxxxvii., p. 525.

Creosote.

Creosote may be regarded as a wood-tar from which the more poisonous phenols and the less volatile bodies have been eliminated, leaving guaiacols and creosols as the chief constituents. Its action is similar to that of carbolic acid, except that it has less tendency to induce nervous symptoms, and is less irritant and poisonous. On the other hand, it seems at least as strongly antiseptic as carbolic acid, and according to some investigators, far excels it as a germicide.

Preparations.

Creosotum (U. S. P., B. P.) is obtained from wood-tar, preferably from beech tar, and is an almost colorless oily liquid with a smoky odor and hot, burning acrid taste. It is slightly soluble in water, but mixes readily with alcohol. It tends to darken in color when exposed to the light. 0.05–0.3 c.c. (1–5 mins.).

Aqua Creosoti (U. S. P.), a very dilute solution of creosote in water, less than one per cent. 2–8 c.c. (½–2 fl. drs.).

Mistura Creosoti (B. P.) containing spirits of juniper, ½–1 fl. oz.

Unguentum Creosoti (B. P.).

Creosote may be administered in pills, capsules, in solution in alcohol or cod-liver oil, or as a mixture (B. P.). The wine of creosote, which has been a popular remedy, contains it dissolved in wine along with some brandy and tincture of gentian. It ought not be allowed to reach the mucous membranes in a concentrated form, as it is liable to irritate them.

Therapeutic Uses. — Creosote is comparatively seldom used except in the treatment of pulmonary phthisis and gangrene, and chronic bronchial inflammation. It is generally given by the mouth in these cases, but has also been injected hypodermically or into the rectum ; the vapor is recommended as an inhalation, and some practitioners have injected creosote solution into the trachea, in order to ensure its reaching the lungs. None of these methods are believed to give such good results as the ordinary administration by the mouth.

The results of creosote medication are still disputed. Many clinicians state that a general improvement follows it in phthisical patients, that the appetite is improved, the cough and expectoration lessened, and that the patient feels stronger and better. On the other hand, others are extremely sceptical as to any benefits arising from creosote, and regard it as merely one of the countless remedies which have been recommended in this condition, and which after a shorter or longer period of popularity have passed into oblivion.

It is generally supposed by the advocates of the creosote treatment that the remedy destroys the tubercle bacillus in the lungs through its antiseptic properties. On the other hand, animals infected with tubercle and treated with creosote die as soon as controls which are untreated, and the sputum of phthisical patients treated with creosote is as virulent as that of others not so treated. Besides, the administration of creosote by other ways than by the mouth is said to be very much less efficacious. Another explanation of the creosote action is that it acts

as an intestinal antiseptic and prevents the secondary infection of the bowel; but it has been objected to this that the other intestinal antiseptics are of little value in tuberculosis. It seems useless to speculate on the method of action until it has been definitely determined that creosote is of value in phthisis, and this can be done only by careful statistical inquiry. The medical profession seems to have much less faith in the efficacy of the creosote treatment than it had a few years ago, when it was not generally recognized that pulmonary tuberculosis is curable by hygienic measures in a considerable proportion of instances.

Creosol, an ether of dioxytoluol, is contained in creosote and other wood-tar, and has, as far as is known, effects similar to those of the allied bodies, but has not been investigated so carefully as some of the others.

Guaiacol, the methyl ether of pyrocatechin, seems to be somewhat more poisonous than carbolic acid according to Marfori, whose preparations, however, were by no means pure. The symptoms induced were those characteristic of the series, but it is desirable that the toxicity of guaiacol should be ascertained more accurately, as it forms an important ingredient of tars and other crude remedies.

Guaiacol Carbonate seems to have the same effects as guaiacol, as far as they have been investigated.

It was found a few years ago that guaiacol applied to the skin over a sufficiently wide area produced a marked fall of temperature in fever, but this does not seem to be any specific effect of guaiacol, and would probably have resulted from the application of any other equally volatile member of the group. The explanation is that a certain proportion of the guaiacol applied is absorbed from the skin, and the fall of temperature is one of the symptoms of poisoning. Considerable quantities of guaiacol have been recovered from the urine after this method of medication. At the same time, it is probable that the irritation of the skin may also produce an alteration of the output of heat through a reflex effect on the vaso-motor centres. The fall of temperature is generally abrupt and is accompanied by some exhaustion and weakness, and by profuse perspiration. The temperature soon rises again to its former height with shivering and rigors, and there seems good reason, therefore, why guaiacol should not be classed among the more satisfactory antipyretics.

Guaiacol has been administered as a substitute for creosote in tubercular disease. It is generally given in solution in alcohol or cod-liver oil, or in pills. Dose, 0.05–0.2 G. (1–3 grs.). It has also been injected hypodermically, but has not had such good results.

Ichthyol.

Ichthyol, thiol, and similar bodies possess some antiseptic action, although they are believed to be less powerful than carbolic acid. Applied to the skin, ichthyol causes slight irritation, which is apparently of benefit in some cutaneous diseases, and it has therefore been used extensively for this action. It is said to cause marked contraction of the vessels when it is applied locally, but this requires confirmation. A certain amount of absorption occurs when it is rubbed into the skin, for the sulphur of the urine has been found to be augmented. Taken internally in large quantities, it acts as a gastric and intestinal irritant and produces diarrhœa, but it is only very feebly poisonous. It has been said to lessen to a marked extent the nitrogenous metabolism, but this seems incorrect, for Helmers found only a very

slight and inconstant fall in the nitrogen of the urine in man. It is excreted in the urine and probably by the intestinal wall.

Ichthyol has been strongly recommended in the treatment of a number of skin diseases, including erysipelas. It is generally used as an ointment containing equal parts of ichthyol and of vaseline, but may be used in ten per cent. or even weaker dilution. It has also been advised as an application over inflamed and rheumatic joints, indurated glands and swellings, and chronic inflammations of the pelvic viscera, and is said to cause the absorption of the products of inflammation. Its effects can be explained in these cases only by the slight irritant action on the skin. It has been given internally in pills or capsules in doses of 0.2–0.5 G. (3–8 grs.) in cases of rheumatism, erysipelas, and in many chronic diseases, but seems of very doubtful benefit. In fact, ichthyol has in the last few years been enthusastically praised as a remedy in the most diverse conditions, and it seems probable that its sphere of utility will be very much more restricted in the future, if it does not disappear from therapeutics entirely.

Bibliography.

R. Abel. Centralbl. f. Bacteriologie, xiv., p. 413.
Zuelzer. Monatsh. f. prakt. Dermatologie, 1886, p. 547.
Helmers. Virchow's Arch., cxxxv., p. 135.

5. Salicylic Acid.

Salicylic acid differs from phenol chiefly in being very much less poisonous to the higher animals, while it is practically of equal antiseptic value, provided the conditions are favorable. The salicylates produce the same effects as the free acid, excepting that they are much less irritant to the skin and mucous membranes. It was formerly stated that the salicylate of soda, which is the only salt that has been largely used, was devoid of antiseptic action, but this has been shown to be incorrect.

Antiseptic Action. — Salicylic acid retards the digestion of proteids by the gastric and pancreatic juices, and the decomposition of glucosides by the unorganized ferments, but how far this effect is due to the free acid, and how far to a specific antiferment-action, cannot be definitely stated. The putrefaction of proteid solutions, and the alcoholic and acetic acid fermentations are also retarded, or entirely prevented by the presence of comparatively small quantities of salicylic acid or of the salicylates. They offer some points of contrast with carbolic acid, however, for it is found that if much proteid be present the salicylic preparations are generally less efficient than phenol; this is perhaps due to the phenol being volatile and therefore penetrating more readily and forming less stable combinations with the proteid. Salicylic acid on the other hand does not evaporate, and therefore preserves bodies which are exposed to the air for a longer time than carbolic acid, which is soon dissipated. These considerations may perhaps explain the very different results which have been obtained by different observers in regard to the comparative germicidal power of these substances. The movements of plant protoplasm, protozoa and leucocytes are prevented by salicylic acid as by quinine and the other aromatic antiseptics.

Irritant Action. — Salicylic acid is much less irritant than phenol, but when it is applied for some time as a powder to wounds, mucous membranes, or even the skin, it may induce the same corrosion and necrosis as have been mentioned under carbolic acid. In solution it has a destructive action on the horny layer of the epidermis, which becomes softened and easily removed, without any noticeable irritation having been induced. It sometimes causes soreness and irritation of the mouth and throat when swallowed in powder, and congestion and even erosion of the mucous membrane of the stomach have been observed. In dilute solution, however, the acid has no such effect, and even comparatively concentrated solutions of the salts seem almost devoid of corrosive properties.

Symptoms. — Salicylic acid and its salts are rapidly absorbed from the stomach and intestine, and as a general rule produce no symptoms, unless when given in very large doses. Some individuals, however, are peculiarly sensitive to the action of salicylic acid, and in these, comparatively small doses are followed by symptoms which are generally of only slight importance, but which are sometimes sufficiently grave to cause anxiety, and in very rare cases have been followed by death.

The ordinary symptoms are a feeling of heaviness and fulness in the head, with hissing or roaring sounds in the ears exactly resembling those produced by quinine. These may be followed by some confusion and dulness, and by indistinct sight and hearing. Very often the patient complains of excessive perspiration and a sense of warmth all over the body. Dyspnœa, marked by exceedingly deep and labored respiration, has been noted in more serious cases of poisoning, and a condition of collapse with slow weak pulse, subnormal temperature, and partial or complete unconsciousness may follow. In others, delirium and hallucinations of sight and hearing have occurred, these being more frequently seen in chronic alcoholic patients and in cases of diabetes than under other conditions. Albumin and even hæmoglobin and blood in the urine have also been noted as sequelæ. Various forms of skin eruptions have been described as occurring under the use of salicylic acid, sometimes after a single dose, but much more frequently after prolonged treatment. They resemble those seen under the antipyretics, but seem to be less frequently elicited by salicylic acid. Abortion has been repeatedly observed under salicylate treatment, but, as in the case of quinine, it seems open to question whether this was due to the remedy or to the disease. Hæmorrhages from the uterus, nose, mouth and intestine have also been credited to the action of this drug, and, in fact, nose-bleeding has been said to occur in a considerable proportion of the cases treated with it. Numerous other symptoms have been noted after salicylic acid, but so rarely that a doubt may be entertained as to whether they were not due to some special condition, or perhaps to some impurity in the drug.

In animals, salicylic acid injected intravenously causes some acceleration of the pulse and respiration, followed by slowness and weakness

of the heart, and often by marked dyspnœa. Depression of the central nervous system is shown by slowness, weakness and incoördination of the spontaneous movements, and eventually by stupor and arrest of the respiration, which is generally preceded by convulsions. Photophobia and clonic spasms have been observed in some dogs. Hyperæmia of the kidney, liver, brain and tympanum are sometimes found at the autopsy on dogs poisoned with salicylic acid, and when the drug has been given in powder, congestion, irritation and necrosis of the gastric mucous membrane. This irritation of the stomach often causes vomiting in dogs, and the poison being thus eliminated, no further symptoms appear.

In the frog, salicylic acid produces quickened respiration and increased reflexes, followed by depression of the spontaneous movements, tremor and clonic contractions. The heart is slow, dilated and weak.

The symptoms elicited by salicylic acid and its salts are therefore very indefinite, and with few exceptions occur so seldom in man that they may be discussed very shortly.

The **Disorders of Hearing** have been shown, as in quinine, to be due to congestion of the tympanum, sometimes with ecchymoses and perhaps inflammatory reaction. As a general rule they pass off in the course of a few hours or days, but they sometimes leave a more or less permanent impairment of the sense of hearing. The **Dimness of Sight**, sometimes amounting to complete blindness, may perhaps be due to a constriction of the vessels of the eye (see quinine), and some disturbance of the circulation of the brain and head may be the cause of the dulness and fulness of the head complained of, and of the not infrequent epistaxis. Maragliano showed by plethysmographic measurements that the **Vessels of the Skin** are dilated by salicylic acid in the same way as by the antipyretics. The exact mechanism by which these alterations in the distribution of the blood are produced is unknown, but the most probable explanation would seem to be that the vasodilator centres in the medulla controlling these areas are excited.

The general **Blood-Pressure** is found to be increased by small quantities of the salicylates from stimulation of the vaso-constrictor centre, while after very large injections into the blood vessels, the pressure is lowered, partly perhaps from depression of the centre, but mainly from the cardiac action of the drug.

Small quantities are found to accelerate the **Heart** in animals in the same way as small doses of the other aromatic bodies, apparently from direct action on the cardiac muscle. Very large doses produce a slow, weak, and dilated heart, and a corresponding fall in the blood-pressure.

The acceleration of the **Respiration** and the dyspnœa, which have been noted occasionally in man, seem to be due to some central action. In animals the respiration is first accelerated to some extent, and then slowed, and some observers have attributed the acceleration to irritation of the endings of the pneumogastric nerves in the lungs, without, however, bringing forward any satisfactory evidence in support of this explanation. It is more probable that the respiratory centre is first

excited and then depressed, and eventually paralyzed by very large quantities of the drug. Death seems to be due to this paralysis, the heart continuing to beat for some time afterwards.

The effects of salicylic acid on the **Central Nervous System** seem to be comparatively slight, except in cases in which a special idiosyncrasy exists. No such convulsive action as occurs under others of the aromatic series has been observed under it, and in animals there seems no marked depression save in the medulla oblongata. The convulsions which are observed before death, are probably not due to the direct action of the drug, but to the asphyxia. In the medulla oblongata the respiratory and vaso-constrictor centres, and probably the vaso-dilator, seem to be first stimulated and then depressed. In the frog depression and paralysis of the spinal cord are produced by large doses.

The **Perspiration** which so often follows the administration of salicylic preparations, may be due in part to the dilation of the skin vessels, but is probably to be ascribed rather to increased activity of the sweat centres. Some of the **Skin Rashes** may also be caused by the dilation of the cutaneous vessels, and perhaps in all cases this may be looked upon as a favorable condition, which leads to eruptions in individuals who are predisposed to them.

The peripheral **Muscles and Nerves** do not seem to be more affected by salicylic acid than by the other members of the series.

Salicylic acid and its salts increase to some extent the **Secretion of the Urine**, probably through a direct action on the renal epithelium, although the increased formation of urea may also play a part in the slight diuresis. Irritation of the kidney and nephritis are observed in some cases, with the appearance of albumin and blood in the urine.

The salicylic preparations produce a slightly augmented flow of **Bile**, apparently from some specific action on the liver cells. The increase is so small, however, that some doubt is expressed by most writers on the subject. Pfaff found that in one case of biliary fistula in man the concentration of the bile was also increased, the solids being augmented in greater proportion than the fluid.

Salicylates have been said to lower the normal **Temperature**, but this seems to be erroneous, except when very large quantities produce a condition akin to collapse. Some of the results may also be due to the use of impure preparations. In fever patients, however, it often causes a marked fall of temperature, and it was formerly used as an antipyretic for this reason. The action is probably explained by the dilation of the cutaneous vessels and the increase in the output of heat. (See Antipyretics.) Dilation of the skin vessels also occurs in normal persons after salicylates, but this is probably counterbalanced in them by increased heat formation. The fall in temperature after salicylic acid is generally less in extent and of shorter duration, than that following the members of the antipyrine series.

In its passage through the tissues, salicylic acid modifies the **Metabolism**, as is shown by an increase of 10–12 per cent. in the nitrogen and sulphur of the urine. This indicates a considerably augmented

mostly excreted in the urine as in combination with Glycocoll.

decomposition of the proteids of the body, but whether it is accompanied by increased oxidation is unknown. A still more notable augmentation of the uric acid excreted has been observed, different authors estimating it at 30–45 and even 100 per cent. The number of leucocytes in the blood has been found to undergo a corresponding increase.

The form in which salicylic acid circulates in the blood was formerly the subject of some discussion, owing to the erroneous belief that its salts were devoid of antiseptic action. It is now known to exist in the blood as the salicylates of the alkalies. Gaglio states that it is taken up from the blood by the synovial membranes and rapidly excreted into the cavities of the joints, and is thus capable of exercising a specific action in acute rheumatism. It is **Excreted** by the kidneys, for the most part in a combination with glycocoll, which is known as salicyluric acid, and which is strictly analogous to hippuric acid. Some of the salicylic acid is excreted uncombined.[1] It has also been found in the milk, perspiration and bile, but does not appear to be excreted into the stomach.

Several compounds which owe their virtues to the salicylic acid radicle are used in medicine, and all produce similar results after absorption, but vary in their local action. **Methyl Salicylic Ester**, which occurs in many plants and forms some 90 per cent. of the oil of wintergreen, and almost the whole of the volatile oil of birch, has a hot, burning taste, and like other volatile oils produces a feeling of warmth in the stomach. In many cases it is well borne, but some patients complain of pain in the stomach, loss of appetite and even nausea and vomiting. It is rapidly absorbed and produces the characteristic symptoms of salicylic acid in large doses, roaring sounds in the ears and more or less deafness. It is partly excreted as salicyluric acid, the decomposition probably occurring mainly in the intestine.

Salol, the phenyl salicylic ester, is a very insoluble, crystalline body, which has little or no local action in the mouth or stomach, but is decomposed in the intestine by the fat-splitting ferment of the pancreatic juice. Some decomposition also appears to occur in the stomach, at any rate under certain conditions. The products of its decomposition, salicylic and carbolic acids, are absorbed and produce their usual effects. Salol is used chiefly as a substitute for salicylic acid, but the formation of phenol from it in the body must not be overlooked, for in several cases of dangerous poisoning which have been observed under it, the symptoms were those characteristic of carbolic acid, and the urine became dark in color from the phenol oxidation products. In moderate quantities, salol produces the disturbances of hearing observed under salicylic acid, without any symptoms of carbolic poisoning.

Other salicylic acid compounds, similar to salol, are *betol* or *naphtalol* (the beta-naphtol salicylate), *cresalol* (cresol and salicylic acid), *thymosalol* (from thymol), *guaiacolsalol*, while *saliphen*, *malakine*, etc., have

[1] Lesnik is inclined to believe that some of the salicylic acid exists in the urine as a double molecule of the acid combined by means of a tartronic radicle.

been mentioned among the antipyretics. They are less poisonous than salol, and may be used for most purposes as substitutes for salicylic acid. Saliphen, malakine and their allies have a more powerful antipyretic action than salicylic acid. On the other hand, the salicylic esters, including methyl and phenyl salicylates, are less antiseptic than salicylic acid and its salts.

Salicin, a glucoside found in many species of willow and poplar, is decomposed into salicylic alcohol, which is oxidized to salicylic acid in the body, so that its action after absorption is similar to that of the acid. It is unknown whether the decomposition occurs in the alimentary canal or in the tissues, but from the fact that it is excreted mainly as salicin when it is injected intravenously, it would seem probable that the decomposition, like that of the ordinary esters, takes place chiefly in the intestine. It is very bitter, but does not irritate the mucous membranes, and is not so certain in its action as salicylic acid and some of its esters. When administered by the mouth it is excreted in the urine partly as salicin, partly as saligenin or salicyl alcohol, and partly as salicylic and salicyluric acids.

Preparations.

Acidum Salicylicum (U. S. P., B. P.), salicylic acid ($C_6H_4OHCOOH$) small, white, needle-like crystals, or a light crystalline powder, odorless with a sweetish, afterwards acrid, burning taste, slightly soluble in water, very soluble in alcohol or ether. A reddish tinge indicates the presence of carbolic acid or other impurities, and salicylic acid for internal use ought to be entirely colorless.[1] Salicylic acid is much more soluble in solutions of neutral salts, such as the borates or citrates, than in pure water. 0.3–2 G. (5–30 grs.). It is generally given in capsules or tablets.

Unguentum Acidi Salicylici (B. P.), 2 per cent.

Sodii Salicylas (U. S. P., B. P.), sodium salicylate ($C_6H_4OHCOONa$), a white odorless powder with a sweetish taste, very soluble in water, less so in alcohol. 0.6–2 G. (10–30 grs.) in capsules or tablets, or dissolved in syrup.

Lithii Salicylas (U. S. P.), 0.3–2 G. (5–30 grs.).

Oleum Gaultheriæ (U. S. P.), oil of wintergreen, a colorless or yellowish fluid with a characteristic, pleasant odor and a sweetish, aromatic taste, insoluble in water, soluble in alcohol, contains 90 per cent. of methyl salicylate. 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.) in emulsion or in capsules.

Oleum Betulæ Volatile (U. S. P.), oil of sweet birch.

Methyl Salicylas (U. S. P.), artificial oil of wintergreen ($C_6H_4OHCOOCH_3$), is practically identical with the oil of sweet birch and forms 90 per cent. of the oil of wintergreen. It may be prescribed in the same doses and forms as the latter.

Spiritus Gaultheriæ (U. S. P.) is used as a flavor chiefly. 1 c.c. (15 mins.).

Salicinum (U. S. P., B. P.), salicin ($C_6H_{11}O_5OC_6H_4CH_2OH$), a glucoside obtained from several species of willow and poplar, consists of white, silky, crystalline needles, with a very bitter taste, soluble in 28 parts of water. It is decomposed by ferments into glucose and saligenin or salicyl alcohol ($C_6H_4OHCH_2OH$). 0.5–2 G. (8–30 grs.) or more every 3 or 4 hours, given in powder, capsules or in solution, which, however, is very bitter.

[1] Salicylic acid formed synthetically from phenol is often said to be more poisonous than that obtained from the oil of wintergreen (methyl salicylate), but this is due not to any difference in the acid, but to the presence of carbolic acid and other impurities in the artificial preparation.

SALOL (U. S. P., B. P.), phenyl salicylate ($C_6H_4OHCOOC_6H_5$), a white crystalline powder, odorless or faintly aromatic, almost tasteless, almost insoluble in water, decomposed by the pancreatic juice into salicylic acid and phenol. 0.5–2 G. (5–30 grs.) in powder or capsule.

Aspirin or acetylsalicylic acid, is very slightly soluble in water and has a more pleasant acid taste than salicylic acid but offers no further advantages over it. It is decomposed into salicylic acid in the intestine. Dose, 2–3 G. (30–40 grs.).

Therapeutic Uses. — Salicylic acid and the salicylate of soda were at one time used to a considerable extent as antiseptics in surgery, and indeed promised to supplant carbolic acid for this purpose, as they were less irritating and also less poisonous. They have been less used of late years, and although bacteriological experiment has shown that the acid is at least as destructive to the pyogenic organisms as carbolic acid, most surgeons find it less satisfactory in practice.[1]

Salicylic acid is occasionally applied locally in excessive sweating, and has also been used in various skin affections in which it is desirable to soften or partially dissolve the epidermis. Both acids and salts are absorbed too rapidly to act as intestinal disinfectants.

In 1875 it was found to have antipyretic properties, and for a few years it was used as a general antipyretic in fever, but has been entirely supplanted for this purpose by the more recently discovered antipyrine series. It was also suggested as a substitute for quinine, but has no such specific action on the malarial organisms.

The chief sphere of usefulness of salicylic acid at the present time is in the treatment of acute rheumatic fever, in which it seems to have a specific action only excelled by that of quinine in malaria. Other members of the aromatic series have some effect in this condition, but none of them equal the salicylic preparations in efficacy. Under this treatment the pain and swelling in the joints rapidly lessen, the temperature often falls, and the course of the disease is shortened. It is still debated whether the salicylic treatment reduces the liability to endocarditis and pericarditis, which are common complications of acute rheumatic fever; some clinicians even state that it increases the risk of these complications, while others advise the discontinuance of the treatment when any symptoms arise from the heart. The view more generally entertained, however, is that the cardiac affections are less often met with and are less severe under salicylic treatment, and very often it is continued in small quantities even after the heart is undoubtedly involved in the disease. The remedy sometimes fails in rheumatism, as quinine does in malaria, and it sometimes acts more satisfactorily in one joint than in another. Large doses (1–2 G. or 15–30 grs.) repeated every 2–3 hours are necessary in some cases at first, the quantity being reduced as the symptoms abate. Salicylic acid is less frequently used than the salicylate of soda or salol, but some clinicians

[1] Salicylic acid has been used very largely as a preservative in wine and beer. No evil effects have been definitely shown to follow the prolonged use of liquors thus treated, but it is not impossible that they may be injurious, and several governments have found it advisable to prohibit its use for this purpose.

hold that the acid is the most efficient of the three. Oil of wintergreen may also be used here, but, like salicylic acid, is more liable to cause gastric irritation. When high fever is present the antipyretic combinations of salicylic acid, such as malakine, may be used with advantage. Salicin is less disturbing to the stomach than the other preparations, but is less certain in its effects and has to be given in larger quantities.

Salicylic acid has also been used in the various forms of disease which are roughly classified as rheumatic — chronic rheumatism, arthritis, neuralgia, myalgia — but the effects are less satisfactory than in acute rheumatism. The lithium salt is contained in the U. S. P. because lithium is erroneously credited with a special solvent action on the uric acid in these diseases.

In other acute constitutional diseases accompanied by fever, salicylic acid is of less value than in acute rheumatism so that it would appear that it has a specific action on the unknown cause of this malady.

Salicylic acid in some cases promotes the absorption of effusions into the serous membranes, such as the pleura, and also subretinal effusion. It is unknown how this is effected, but it scarcely seems probable that the slight diuretic action of the drug is sufficient to account for it.

The cholagogue action of the salicylates is quite inconsiderable in comparison with that of the bile itself, and in any case in which an increase of the bile secretion is desirable, recourse should be had rather to the latter. (See Bile.)

The solubility of the salicylates and their rapid absorption precludes their use as intestinal antiseptics, but salol has been used to lessen putrefaction in the bowel, and even to act upon the bacilli of typhoid fever and of tubercle infecting the intestinal wall. Kumagawa, however, states that the putrefaction in the bowel as measured by the indican in the urine is unchanged by its administration, and he found enormous numbers of bacteria in the fæces afterwards. It certainly seems of little value in typhoid fever or in tuberculosis of the intestine. Intestinal calculi have been formed in a few instances from prolonged treatment with salol, which failed to be decomposed in the intestine and formed masses of considerable size.

Salol was at one time supposed to be absorbed only after its decomposition in the intestine by the pancreatic juice, and Ewald therefore suggested its use as a means of diagnosing stenosis of the pylorus. He supposed that in cases in which the food was delayed or prevented from passing into the intestine, the reaction of salicylic acid in the urine would appear correspondingly late or be entirely absent. But some salol seems to be absorbed from the stomach, and, on the other hand, the interval between its administration and the appearance of the salicylic reaction in the urine is so variable in normal individuals that the test is of little value. Salol has been used to coat pills and prevent their solution in the stomach.

Salol has some value as a genito-urinary disinfectant, partly owing to the salicylic acid component and partly to the phenol developed.

It is used as a substitute for salicylic acid in rheumatic fever, as has been mentioned, and has the advantage of being tasteless and of producing no irritation in the stomach. On the other hand, the considerable amount of carbolic acid freed by its decomposition has given rise to poisoning in some cases. Externally it is of little or no value as an antiseptic, as it is only active when decomposed by the microbes which it is designed to destroy.

Salicin is used as a substitute for salicylic acid only in rheumatic fever. It has been prescribed as a stomachic bitter.

Salicylic preparations have to be used with care where any symptoms of renal irritation are present. In cases of poisoning, the treatment is determined entirely by the symptoms, and no antidote is known. Glycocoll has been suggested for the same reason as the sulphates in phenol poisoning, but would presumably be of no greater value.

Bibliography.

Kolbe. Journ. f. pract. Chemie, x., p. 89; xi., p. 9; xii., p. 161.
Neubauer. Ibid., xi., p. 1.
Schaer. Ibid., xii., p. 123.
Mayer u. Kolbe. Ibid., xii., pp. 133 and 178.
Laborde. Bull. de Therap., xciii., p. 276.
Quincke. Berl. klin. Woch., 1882, p. 709.
Charteris and McLennan. Brit. Med. Journ., 1889, ii., p. 1208.
Bauer u. Künstle. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xxiv., p. 53.
Wolfsohn. Inaug. Diss., Konigsberg, 1878.
Sassetzky. Virchow's Arch., xciv., p. 485.
Köhler. Central. f. d. med. Wissen., 1876, p. 161.
Lymas. Inaug. Diss., Erlangen, 1876.
Huber. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xli., p. 129.
Kirchner. Berl. klin. Woch., 1881, p. 725.
Maragliano. Zts. f. klin. Med., xvii., p. 291, and xiv., p. 309.
Gottlieb. Arch. f. exp. Path., xxvi., p. 436.
Kumagawa. Virchow's Arch., cxiii., p. 134.
Baumann. Zts. f. phys. Chem., i., p. 253.
Binz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., vii., p. 280, and x., p. 147.
Feser u. Friedburger. Arch. f. wissens. u. practische Thierheilkunde, 1875.
Bohland. Centralb. f. inn. Med., xvii., p. 70.
Nencki. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvi., p. 401.
Bucholtz. Ibid., iv., p. 1.
Bochefontaine. Comptes rendus d. l. Soc. de Biol., 1884, p. 412. Comptes rendus de l'Academie, lxxxv., p. 574; lxxxvii., p. 657.
Mosso. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvi., p. 267.
C. Virchow. Zts. f. physiol. Chem., vi., p. 78.
Buss. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xv., p. 457.
Buchmann. Inaug. Diss., Kiel, 1892.
Baelz. Arch. d. Heilkunde, xviii., p. 60.
Pfaff. Jour. of Exp. Med., ii., p. 49.
Gaglio. Arch. Ital. de Biol., xxxi., p. 304.
Schreiber u. Zandy. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., lxii., p. 242.
Goodbody. Journ. of Physiol., xxv., p. 399.
Ulrici. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlvi., p. 321.

Salol.

Nencki. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xx., p. 367.
Lesnik. Ibid., xxiv., p. 167.
Hesselbach. Practitioner, xlv., p. 12.
Sahli. Therap. Monats., 1887, p. 333.
Ewald u. Sievers. Ibid., p. 289.
Marshall. Brit. Med. Journ., 1897, ii., p. 78.

Betol.

Kobert. Therap. Monats., 1887, p. 164; 1888, p. 220.
Sahli. Ibid., 1887, p. 212.

Salicin.

Marme. Gottingen. Nachricht., 1878, p. 229.
Maclagan. Lancet, 1876, i., p. 342.
Senator. Berl. klin. Woch., 1877, p. 181.

Aspirin.

Dreser. Pflüger's Archiv, lxxvi., p. 306.
Singer. Ibid., lxxxiv., p. 527.
Gazert. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., lxviii., p. 142.

Other Aromatic Oxy-acids.

The two isomers of salicylic acid, *meta-* and *para-oxybenzoic acid*, are said to be almost devoid of antiseptic properties, and, although some doubt may be entertained as to the correctness of this statement, they have never been used in medicine except experimentally.

The *cresotinic acids* resemble salicylic acid in their effects, and the para-cresotinate of soda has been used occasionally as an antipyretic and substitute for salicylic acid. The metacresotinate is very much less active, while the orthocresotinate possesses a dangerous action on the heart. The para-cresotinate is somewhat less poisonous than salicylic acid. The cresotonic acids are found as impurities in some commercial specimens of salicylic acid, but these ought not to be used for internal administration, as the presence of the orthocresotonic acid may affect the heart.

The *alpha-* and *beta-oxynaphtoic acids* are possessed of antiseptic properties, which are said to be somewhat greater than those of carbolic and salicylic acids, but they are less soluble in water, while the sodium salt is less antiseptic. The acids are irritant and produce diarrhœa and symptoms similar to those of salicylic acid. They seem to be at least as poisonous as carbolic acid, and have been used as external antiseptics only to a very limited extent.

Bibliography.

Buss. Berl. klin. Woch., 1876, p. 445.
Demme. Therap. Monats., 1890, p. 191.
Henne. Inaug. Diss., Bern, 1890.
Charteris. Brit. Med. Journ., 1891, i., p. 695.
Ellenberger u. Hofmeister. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxiv., p. 261.
Willenz. Therap. Monatsheft, 1888, p. 20.

Sulphocarbolates.

The sulphon group lessens the toxicity in the same way as carboxyl, and the sulphocarbolates or para-phenol-sulphonates are therefore less poisonous than carbolic acid. The sulphocarbolates of sodium and zinc have been used as external antiseptics, and the sulphocarbolate of sodium has been administered to arrest fermentation in the stomach. The zinc salt possesses some astringent action and has been used with good results as an injection in gonorrhœa. The sodium salt is probably excreted in the urine unchanged. *Aseptol* or *sozolic acid* is a 33 per cent. solution of orthophenol-sulphonic acid in water but very often contains some of the para-acid.

Sodii Sulphocarbolas (U. S. P., B. P.), or sodium para-phenol-sulphonate ($C_6H_4OHSO_2ONa$, $2H_2O$), forms colorless, transparent prisms, without odor, and with a saline taste. Soluble in 5 parts of water. 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Zinci Sulphocarbolas (B. P.), ($Zn(OHC_6H_4SO_3)_2H_2O$) forms colorless, transparent, efflorescent crystals, which are very soluble in water and in alcohol.

Benzoic acid excreted as Hippuric acid

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Serrant. Comptes rendus de l'Academ., c., pp. 1465 and 1544.
Hueppe. Berl. klin. Woch., 1886, p. 609.
Samter. Inaug. Diss., Berlin, 1887.

Benzoic Acid.

Benzoic acid possesses almost the same action as salicylic acid in the body, and like it, is poisonous only in comparatively large quantities. It seems to be equally, or according to some observers, more strongly antiseptic, and like salicylic acid irritates the mucous membranes, while its salts are practically devoid of this last property. Benzoic acid is, however, apparently less stimulant to the central nervous system, and the characteristic affections of the hearing and sight have not been observed under it.

In man, very large quantities of benzoic acid and also of the benzoate of soda sometimes produce nausea and vomiting, the vomited matter rarely being tinged with blood. A certain sedative action on the central nervous system is also said to be observed, and an increased expectoration of mucus is produced in cases of bronchial irritation. The pulse is somewhat accelerated.

In the dog, tremors and convulsions have been observed, but are generally less marked than under carbolic acid. Ataxia, paresis, and eventually complete paralysis of the fore limbs, and later of the hind limbs and trunk follow, the temperature falls, and death occurs from asphyxia. The heart and respiration are first accelerated and then slowed, from a direct action on the heart and on the respiratory centre. Vomiting occurs when the acid or the salts are given by the mouth. Post-mortem the gastric mucous membrane has been found to be eroded and ecchymosed, even when the salts or acid have been injected subcutaneously or intravenously, so that the benzoates and benzoic acid would seem to have a specific action on the gastric mucous membrane quite apart from their irritant effects when applied locally.

In frogs, fibrillary contractions and convulsions are observed, followed by weakness and paralysis of the spinal cord. Hæmorrhages have also been found in the stomach when the drug was injected into a lymph-sac.

Benzoic acid (C_6H_5COOH) combines with glycocoll in the body to form hippuric acid ($C_6H_5CO — NHCH_2COOH$), which is excreted in the urine. Some of the benzoic acid escapes in the urine unchanged, however, the proportion of hippuric acid formed apparently varying with the general health and the condition of the kidneys, and also with the dose administered. After large doses a reducing body has been observed in the urine, presumably glycuronic acid. Traces of benzoic acid are found in the saliva of the dog after its administration, but it does not seem to be excreted here in man. In birds, benzoic acid is excreted by the kidneys as ornithuric acid ($C_{19}H_{20}N_2O_4$), from which benzoic acid can be split off, leaving ornithin. Benzoic acid often increases the nitrogen eliminated in the urine, so that in these cases it

augments the decomposition of the proteids like salicylic acid; in other investigations no material change has been observed. It differs from salicylic acid in its effect on the uric acid excretion, which is much reduced under benzoate treatment.

Some diminution in the double sulphates and the indican of the urine have been observed after the administration of benzoic acid by the mouth, so that it apparently lessens the putrefaction in the intestine.

Cinnamic acid ($C_6H_5-CH=CH-COOH$) seems to resemble benzoic acid in its pharmacological characters, but has not been so carefully examined. It increases the leucocytes of the blood and the uric acid of the urine to a marked degree.

Preparations.

Acidum Benzoicum (U. S. P., B. P.) (C_6H_5COOH), benzoic acid or flowers of benzoin, is prepared from benzoin by sublimation, or from toluol, and consists of white, feathery crystals, almost odorless, with a warm acid taste, very insoluble in water, soluble in alcohol, ether, fixed and volatile oils and in alkaline solutions. 0.3–1 G. (8–15 grs.), in powder or pill.

Trochiscus Acidi Benzoici (B. P.), each contains ½ gr.

Sodii Benzoas (U. S. P., B. P.), easily soluble in water. 0.3–2 G. (5–30 grs.), in solution.

Lithii Benzoas (U. S. P.), 0.3–2 G. (5–30 grs.).

Ammonii Benzoas (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.3–2 G. (5–30 grs.).

Benzoic acid is also contained in paregoric.

The **Balsams** are mixtures of resin, volatile oils, benzoic and cinnamic acids and their esters and small quantities of other aromatic bodies.

Benzoinum (U. S. P., B. P.), benzoin, a balsam obtained from Styrax Benzoin and probably from other species, varies in its composition with its place of origin, but contains much less cinnamic acid than the other balsams.

Styrax (U. S. P.), *Styrax Præparatus* (B. P.), or storax, a balsam prepared from the inner bark of Liquidambar orientalis, contains resins, cinnamic acid and its esters.

Tinctura Benzoini (U. S. P.), 2–4 c.c. (30–60 mins.).

Tinctura Benzoini Composita (U. S. P., B. P.) contains, in addition to benzoin, storax, aloes and balsam of Tolu, and was formerly known as Balsamum Traumaticum. A number of old remedies resembled it in composition, such as Friar's balsam, Turlington's balsam, Jesuits' drops, etc. 2–8 c.c. (30 mins.–2 fl. drs.).

Balsamum Peruvianum (U. S. P., B. P.), Balsam of Peru, a balsam obtained from Toluifera Pereiræ (U. S. P.), or Myroxylon Pereiræ (B. P.), contains cinnamic and benzoic acids (traces) and their esters, and resins. Applied externally, either alone or in alcoholic solution. 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Balsamum Tolutanum (U. S. P., B. P.), Balsam of Tolu, a balsam obtained from Toluifera Balsamum or Myroxylon Toluifera, resembles balsam of Peru in composition, but contains more benzoic acid. 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Syrupus Tolutanus (U. S. P., B. P.), 2–4 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

Tinctura Tolutana (U. S. P., B. P.), 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.).

Therapeutic Uses. — Benzoic acid and its sodium salt have been suggested as antiseptics and seem to be quite as satisfactory as salicylic acid, but have never been widely employed. Benzoin and the balsam of Peru are used extensively in parasitic skin diseases, especially in

scabies. Internally the benzoates have been employed as substitutes for salicylic acid in acute rheumatism, but have not proved so efficient in general. The lessened putrefaction in the bowel after benzoic acid suggests its use as an intestinal disinfectant, and it has been administered as an antiseptic and slight irritant in diseases of the genito-urinary tract, such as cystitis and gonorrhœa. It was formerly supposed that benzoic acid lessened the uric acid excretion and dissolved the uric acid deposits in the bladder and tissues by forming hippuric acid, but this is now recognized to be erroneous, and the treatment of gout and other diseases based on this theory may be considered obsolete. The lithium benzoate of the U. S. P. is a survival of this treatment, lithium being credited with special solvent properties.

Benzoic acid is still used as an ingredient in expectorant mixtures, in which however it is generally prescribed as the simple or compound tincture of benzoin, or as one of the Tolu preparations. It is said to be beneficial in cases in which the mucus is tenacious and is coughed up with difficulty. The syrup of Tolu may be regarded simply as a flavoring ingredient, for it contains too little of the balsam to have any other effect.

Balsam of Peru and pure cinnamic acid have been administered by hypodermic and intravenous injection and by the mouth in pulmonary tuberculosis, in the belief that they would induce irritation, inflammation and subsequent cicatrization of the tubercular nodules, but there is no reason to suppose that they have any such effect, and the treatmen thas never advanced beyond the experimental stage.

When the balsams are administered in large quantities, the addition of an acid to the urine is followed by the formation of an abundant precipitate in some cases, and this has given rise to the belief that they tend to irritate the kidneys. The precipitate appears to be not albumin but the resin in most cases, however, for it is dissolved by the addition of alcohol.

Bibliography.

Okolow. Centralbl. f. Chirurg., 1876, p. 777.
Kobert u. Schulte. Schmidt's Jahrb., clxxxv., p. 12.
Salkowski. Zts. f. phys. Chem., i., p. 45.
C. Virchow. Ibid., vi., p. 78.
Stockman. Brit. Med. Journ., 1890, i., p. 1365.
Kumagawa. Virchow's Arch., cxiii., p. 134.
Bräutigam u. Nowack. Centralbl. f. klin. Med., 1889, p. 409.
Richter u. Spiro. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiv., p. 289.
Wiener. Ibid., xl., p. 313.
Lewandowsky. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xl., p. 202.
Ulrici. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlvi., p. 321.

Nitrobenzol Compounds.

The nitrobenzol bodies are chiefly of interest because they have often given rise to poisoning of late years from their extensive use in chemical manufactures. Nitrobenzol ($C_6H_5NO_2$) has also been used to flavor alcoholic liquors, and has in this way led to poisoning in some cases. In man nitrobenzol causes a grayish-blue, cyanotic color of the skin and visible mucous membranes, often with nausea, vomiting, great muscular weakness, marked dyspnœa, delirium and some convulsive movements of the face and jaws,

less frequently of the whole body. Total unconsciousness and coma are followed by arrest of the respiration.

These effects are due in part to changes in the blood, in part to central nervous action, in which stimulation and paralysis seem to follow one another. The blood is found of a chocolate-brown color, and some of the red cells are either deformed or entirely destroyed. Examined with the spectroscope, methæmoglobin is very often found in it, while in other cases an absorption line is observed between the yellow and the red, which does not seem to correspond to that of any of the ordinary hæmoglobin products, and has therefore been called the nitrobenzol-hæmoglobin line. The blood contains a much smaller amount of oxygen than normally, in some cases only one per cent. instead of seventeen, and artificial respiration or even shaking the blood in air fails to oxidize it further, as the combination of nitrobenzol and hæmoglobin seems to be incapable of absorbing oxygen. Similar changes may be produced in venous blood outside the body by shaking it with nitrobenzol. These changes in the blood are the cause of the cyanosis, and the imperfect oxidation of the tissues leads to the appearance of a number of abnormal products in the urine. (See Phosphorus.) In animals a gastro-intestinal catarrh is almost constantly produced unless the intoxication is very acute, and this occurs even when the poison is inhaled or injected subcutaneously.

Metadinitrobenzol ($C_6H_4(NO_2)_2$) has repeatedly given rise to poisoning in the manufacture of the modern explosives, such as roburite and securite. In action it resembles nitrobenzol, but is more poisonous, and the gastric symptoms are more marked. Amblyopia and a jaundice like coloration of the skin often occur from prolonged exposure to this poison.

Picric Acid ($C_6H_2OH(NO_2)_3$) is an irritant to the skin and mucous membranes, and in large doses causes vomiting and often anuria and strangury. A characteristic symptom is the yellow, icteric color of the skin and mucous membranes, which is due not to true jaundice, but to the staining of the epithelium by the acid. It produces this coloration when taken internally, and itching is often complained of, and some eczema or erythema has been observed. Violent convulsions occur sometimes, in other cases collapse. The urine is yellow or red, and contains some casts but little or no albumin, and no bile, the absence of the last serving to diagnose the intoxication from jaundice. Picric acid tends to destroy the red cells of the blood in animals, but no marked diminution of these has been observed in man. It is excreted as picric and picramic acid ($C_6H_2OH.NH_2(NO_2)_2$) in the urine.

Picric acid has been used as a substitute for quinine in malaria, and as an antipyretic. An ointment containing it has been applied in some forms of eczema, but it gave rise to poisoning in one of the few cases in which it was thus employed.

Bibliography of the Aromatic Nitro-bodies.

Starkow. Virchow's Arch., lii., p. 464.
Hay. Practitioner, xxx., p. 326.
Filehne. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., ix., p. 329.
Lewin. Virchow's Arch., lxxvi., p. 443.
Annino. Schmidt's Jahrb., ccxlviii., p. 127.
Schroeder u. Strassman. Viertlj. f. ger. Med., 1891, i., Suppl., p. 138.
Beck. Charite Annalen, xvii., p. 867.
Munzer u. Palma. Zts. f. Heilk., xv., p. 185.
Huber. Virchow's Arch., cxxvi., p. 240.

Naphthylamine.

Stern has observed a curious and almost unique series of symptoms after the administration of several hydrated derivatives of β-naphthylamine to mammals. The most interesting of these were dilation of the pupil and

protrusion of the eyeball, and a very marked rise in the temperature, amounting in some cases to 4½° C. The dilation of the pupil, which was not observed in the later experiments of Fawcett and White, is ascribed by Stern partly to local action on the dilator fibres or the terminations of the sympathetic nerves in the iris, but mainly to some central stimulation. The rise of temperature is produced in part by the output of heat being lessened through contraction of the cutaneous vessels, in part by increased oxidation in the tissues and augmented heat production. The contraction of the vessels is to be attributed chiefly to stimulation of the vaso-motor centres, although the drug seems to have some direct effect on the muscular walls of the vessels also. Cocaine has a somewhat similar but weaker action, but the naphthylamine compounds do not produce local anæsthesia.

Bibliography.

Stern. Virchow's Arch., cxv., p. 34, and cxxi., p. 376.
Fawcett and White. Journ. of Physiol., xxi., p. 435.

Toluylendiamine.

Toluylendiamine ($C_6H_3CH_3(NH_2)_2$) has never been used in therapeutics, but it is of importance from the light which it has thrown on some forms of jaundice. Stadelmann found that its administration in dogs produced the typical symptoms of icterus, while in cats the icterus was less marked, but very large quantities of hæmoglobin were excreted in the urine. The explanation of this action is the destruction of the red cells in the blood, which leads in the dog to the formation of large amounts of bile pigments in the liver. Some of this pigment is reabsorbed from the bile vessels and leads to typical jaundice. The absorption is promoted by a curious increase in the mucus secretion of the bile ducts, which renders the bile more viscous, and by thus delaying its evacuation into the intestine favors its absorption into the blood. This increased mucus formation is believed to be due to the action of the poison on the secretory cells of the larger bile ducts. The formation of bile pigment from hæmoglobin liberates large quantities of iron, which seems to be stored in the liver, spleen and bone marrow. In the cat the hæmoglobin is not so largely formed into bile pigment, but escapes in the urine. In both animals some methæmoglobin is probably formed.[1]

Bibliography.

Stadelmann. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xiv., pp. 231 and 422; xxiii., p. 427.
Engel u. Kiener. Comptes rend. de l'Acad., cv., p. 465.
Mohrberg. Arb. a. d. pharm. Inst. zu Dorpat, viii., p. 20.

Benzol.

Benzol, or benzene, is much less poisonous than its hydroxyl compounds, but may give rise to symptoms resembling those of phenol when it is inhaled in large quantities. It was at one time suggested as a general anæsthetic, but the preliminary excitement is very much greater than that seen in the use of chloroform or ether, and partakes much more of a convulsive character. Even after unconsciousness and anæsthesia is attained, the characteristic muscular tremor of the aromatic compounds continues. In some animals it produces violent and prolonged convulsions, with only partial loss of sensation, and even large quantities do not cause the complete relaxation of the muscles requisite for surgical operation. It seems to have little or no irritant action on the alimentary canal or kidneys in animals, and is excreted

[1] A somewhat similar action follows the administration of *Cephalanthin*, the active principle of Cephalanthus occidentalis, Button-bush or Swamp dogwood (Mohrberg).

in part by the kidneys as phenol double sulphate, in part unchanged by the lungs.

Santesson states that hæmorrhages occur very frequently in fatal poisoning in man, and found the same result in experiments on rabbits; he ascribes it to fatty degeneration of the arterial walls, which was well-marked in most of his experiments. A number of cases of fatal intoxication are on record, some of them arising from the drug being swallowed by suicides, but most of them from the accidental inhalation of large quantities in india-rubber factories. Animals exposed to benzol vapor do not seem to absorb enough to be seriously poisoned, but when it is injected subcutaneously or applied over a large skin area, it proves fatal to them. The benzol of the B. P. contains toluene and is used only for pharmaceutical purposes.

Bibliography.

Santesson. Arch. f. Hygiene, xxxi., p. 336. Skand. Arch. f. Physiol., x., p. 1.
Chassevant. Arch. de Pharmacodynam., ii., p. 235.

Pyoctanine.

Several of the dyes derived from aniline are used to stain pathogenic germs and to differentiate them from each other. This suggested to Penzoldt the idea that these bodies, having a distinctly greater affinity for the microörganisms than for the tissues surrounding them, might be used as antiseptics or disinfectants, and Stilling introduced several of them into therapeutic use under the name of pyoctanines. Some of these dyes have been found to have a certain antiseptic action, but the hopes that were formerly entertained as to their specific action have proved delusive, and their use in medicine (chromotherapeutics) is now very limited, and promises to fall into oblivion.

XXVI. FORMALDEHYDE.

It has recently been shown by numerous investigators that formaldehyde (HCOH), the aldehyde derived from the oxidation of methyl alcohol, is a very powerful germicide, while it is only slightly poisonous to the higher animals. The aldehyde is a colorless gas and has been used either in solution in water (*formaline*), or as a vapor. As a germicide, it is estimated to be equally efficient with corrosive sublimate, and its volatility enables it to penetrate much more rapidly, so that it may be used for purposes for which the latter is unsuitable.

Action. — The vapor is very irritant when inhaled, causing stinging and prickling in the nose and throat, salivation and tears, and bronchial irritation and catarrh. In the few cases of poisoning in man recorded, the symptoms were those of gastric irritation and consequent collapse. When swallowed by animals the watery solution produces nausea and vomiting, which are followed by narcosis, coma, and in the rabbit by convulsions and opisthotonos. The respiration in the dog is very greatly accelerated some time before death, while in the rabbit this is not so marked or is entirely absent. The blood-pressure is increased at first and the heart is slow, presumably from direct or indirect stimulation of the medullary centres. Part of the formaldehyde absorbed has been shown to pass through the tissues unchanged and to be excreted in the urine, and it is possible that the whole of it escapes in this way.

The powerful action of formaldehyde on microbes and on mucous membranes is believed by Loew to be due to its combining with some amide group in the proteids, and as a matter of fact, a number of changes have been described in the reaction of proteids exposed to formaline. For example, egg albumin and serum to which formaldehyde solution has been added are not precipitated by heat and are less easily digested by ferments, while casein is not coagulated by the rennet ferment. Some of the ferments (pepsin, rennet and diastase) are not affected by the presence of formaldehyde, while trypsin and papain lose their activity wholly or in part.

Benedicenti states that formaldehyde is a blood poison, causing alteration in the form of the cells and leading to the formation of hæmatin. He is disposed to look upon this effect as the chief factor in the intoxication.

Preparations.

Formaline, a solution of formaldehyde in water containing 35–40 per cent. of the gas which may be obtained from it by distillation.

Paraform, a solid polymer of formaldehyde, which is decomposed by heat and liberates the formaldehyde in gaseous form.

Some formaldehyde may be formed by the incomplete combustion of methyl alcohol, and several lamps have been devised with this object in view, but have not proved entirely satisfactory.

Uses. — Formaldehyde is too irritant to admit of its use as an antiseptic in medicine and surgery, but it has been largely employed to disinfect instruments, furniture, clothes and rooms, which cannot be sterilized by heat. Diluted formaline (4 per cent.) may be used for some of these purposes, or the vapor may be disengaged by distillation from formaline, by heating paraform, or less efficiently by the partial combustion of methyl alcohol. Large rooms filled with formaline vapor and left for some hours are found to be almost completely sterilized, so that cultures of the pathogenic microbes exposed in them cease to grow even when removed from the atmosphere. The higher animals are much less affected. Novy recommends that the room to be disinfected be made as nearly air-tight as possible, and the formaldehyde be distilled into it through the key-hole of the door. He states that the gas disengaged from 150 c.c. (5 oz.) of 40 per cent. formaline is sufficient for each 1000 cubic feet of space, if the room be closed for 10 hours. The odor of formaline may then be removed by sprinkling ammonia solution with which it forms a solid combination.

Formaldehyde has frequently been added to food, especially to milk, as a preservative. Tunnicliffe and Rosenheim found that added to milk in the proportion of one to five thousand, formaldehyde did not seem to be deleterious to healthy children, but in the case of a weakly child, the proteid waste was increased, and it is certainly not to be regarded as a harmless method of preserving food.

Formaldehyde is not alone in its germicidal action, although it is much more powerful than the other less volatile and less active aldehydes such as acetaldehyde.

A combination of gelatin and formaldehyde (Glutol) has been employed in surgery as an antiseptic powder. The value of urotropine as a genito-urinary antiseptic is apparently due to formaldehyde being liberated from it. (See Urotropine.)

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Loew. Ein Natürliches System der Giftwirkungen, Munchen, 1893, p. 58.
Aronson. Berl. klin. Woch., 1892, p. 749.
Dieudonne. Arbeit. a. d. Gesundheitsamt., xi., p. 534.
Mosso et Paoletti. Arch. Ital. de Biol., xxiv., p. 321.
Tollens. Bericht. der Deuts. Chem. Gesellsch., 1895, p. 261.
Pohl. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxi., p. 295.
Ermengem et Sugg. Arch. de Pharmacodynam., i., p. 141.
Aronson. Zts. f. Hygiene, xxv., p. 168, 1897.
Strüver. Ibid., p. 357.
Benedicenti. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1897, pp. 210 and 219.
Novy and Waite. Medical News, lxxii., p. 641 (1898).
Bliss and Novy. Journ. of Exp. Med., iv., p. 47.
Tunnicliffe and Rosenheim. Journ. of Hygiene, i., p. 321.

XXVII. CAMPHOR.

Some of the volatile oils deposit crystalline substances or stearoptenes after standing for some time, especially when they are exposed to cold. As a general rule these bodies are present in only small amount, and have not been investigated apart from the volatile oils, of which they form constituents; but a few of them have attracted attention in therapeutics, not only on account of their local effects, which have been described under the volatile oil group (see page 61), but also because of their action in the tissues after absorption. The chief of these is **Camphor**, which has been used in Chinese medicine for many centuries, and which has also played a considerable rôle in Western therapeutics. It is derived from the Cinnamomum camphora of China and Japan, and possesses the formula $C_{10}H_{16}O$. Its exact chemical structure is not yet understood, but there is no question that it is a benzol derivative containing methyl and propyl, in so far resembling the terpenes, from which, however, it probably differs in the presence of a ketone (= CO) link.

Another body closely resembling ordinary camphor is **Borneol** or Borneocamphor ($C_{10}H_{18}O$), which is derived from the Dryobalanops aromatica, and which apparently differs from ordinary camphor in containing the group (= CHOH) instead of (= CO). Ngai camphor, which is obtained from Blumea balsamifera, is very closely related to borneol. Another stearoptene which has been used in medicine apart from the volatile oils, is **Menthol** ($C_{10}H_{20}O$), which is obtained from the oil of peppermint, and apparently contains a CHOH group like borneol, but is more completely hydrated. Borneol has been prepared synthetically from camphor, and menthol from menthane, which occurs in oil of peppermint.

Several derivatives of camphor which have been examined, resemble it closely in pharmacological action. *Monobromated Camphor* ($C_{10}H_{15}BrO$) has been used in therapeutics, while *Camphorol* ($C_{10}H_{16}O_2$), *Camphoric Acid* ($C_8H_{14}(COOH)_2$), *Amidocamphor* ($C_{10}H_{15}NH_2O$), *Bornylamine* ($C_8H_{14}(CH_2)$-$(CHNH_2)$) and some other derivatives have been the subjects of experimental investigation.

All of these resemble each other very closely in the effects which they produce in the organism, although they vary in toxicity to some

extent. Many of the volatile oils induce the same symptoms, but as these are used almost exclusively for their local action, it has been found advisable to treat them separately. The camphor group presents analogies to the simpler bodies of the aromatic series, to which it is so nearly related chemically, and also to picrotoxin.

Symptoms. — Camphor acts as in irritant to the skin and mucous membranes like the volatile oils, and has a hot, bitter taste, and induces in small quantities a feeling of warmth and comfort in the stomach, while after large doses nausea and vomiting may be caused by gastric irritation. It is rapidly absorbed and in large doses induces headache, a feeling of warmth, confusion, and excitement in man, with slowing of the pulse and flushing of the skin. This excitement may be shown in hilarity and delirium with hallucinations, in restlessness, or in sudden violent movements, which pass into epileptiform convulsions. These alternate with pauses of quiet and unconsciousness, which become longer until the patient sinks into complete stupor. In some cases of poisoning no excitement is observed, the patient falling into a condition of drowsiness, unconsciousness and stupor immediately. In the lower mammals, camphor induces very similar symptoms, wild excitement and epileptiform convulsions, followed by depression, stupor, collapse, and death from failure of the respiration. Not infrequently however, the respiration ceases during a convulsion and fails to return when it passes off.

In the frog no excitement is observed except from the local irritation; the animal falls into a condition of depression, in which no spontaneous movements are made, although the reflexes seem to be little affected at first. Later, the reflexes disappear and the animal lies completely paralyzed.

Action: Central Nervous System. — The absence of convulsions in the frog has been attributed to camphor paralyzing the terminations of the motor nerve ends like curara, but is really due to a descending paralysis of the central nervous system. Stimulation of the brain of the frog never induces convulsions such as are seen in mammals after cerebral stimulants, but depression of the brain lessens the spontaneous movements, while the reflexes remain. Camphor first depresses the brain in the frog, later the spinal cord, and last of all the terminations of the motor nerves, and the spontaneous movements cease first, therefore, then the reflexes disappear, and finally the muscles fail to contract when the peripheral nerves are stimulated. The cord is capable of conducting impulses from the brain after the reflexes are paralyzed, so that camphor would seem to interrupt the connection between the sensory and the motor cells earlier than that between the motor columns and the cells of the anterior horn. In this respect its action on the spinal cord of the frog is diametrically opposed to that of strychnine, and in accordance with this, it has been found that camphor acts as an antidote to strychnine in the frog. The exact action of camphor on the spinal cord in mammals is not finally determined, for Stockman found that the reflexes were not increased in mammals by camphor, and

he holds that the spinal cord is not primarily stimulated by ordinary camphor, and is in fact depressed by borneol. On the other hand, Gottlieb and Lapin assert that the reflexes are increased by camphor in mammals in which the medulla oblongata has been divided, and that in the bird this increased irritability may even give rise to convulsions. According to them, the spinal cord is finally depressed in mammals by very large doses of camphor, but only after stupor and coma indicate commencing paralysis of the cerebrum.

The convulsions in mammals are certainly not due to any action on the spinal cord, but to stimulation of the higher areas of the nervous axis. It is often stated that the medulla oblongata is the part primarily involved, but the epileptiform character of the attacks points rather to an affection of the cerebral cortex, and Stockman found that removal of the cortex prevented the convulsions in mammals. On the other hand, Gottlieb observed convulsions after camphor in a pigeon in which the cerebrum had been removed. It is not improbable that the basal ganglia are also thrown into a state of abnormal activity by camphor, as by other poisons which produce similar convulsions. The loss of consciousness and the stupor observed in man and the higher animals point to a final paralysis of the cerebral cortex.

The action of camphor on the central nervous system in mammals consists, then, in stimulation, followed by paralysis of the cerebral areas and probably of other intracranial centres, with less alteration in the spinal cord.

The **Terminations of the Motor Nerves** are paralyzed in the frog by large doses of camphor, but not in mammals. The **Muscles** themselves are weakened and paralyzed when they are directly exposed to its solutions or vapor.

The **Heart** is generally slowed by camphor and its allies in man and in most animals, but is sometimes little affected. The frog's heart also beats more slowly, but the contractions are stronger and fuller according to most observers, although Lewin found both its absolute force and pulse volume lessened. The changes in the heart seem to be due to direct action on the muscle, and to be independent of the regulating nerves. Muscarine fails to induce standstill of the frog's heart after camphor, and this has been ascribed to an increase in the irritability of the heart similar to that observed under physostigmine. The effects of camphor on the mammalian heart are very imperfectly known.

In some mammals the **Blood-pressure** is considerably increased by camphor, in others great variations occur, a very marked rise being observed during the convulsive attacks, while in the interval it falls to the normal height or even below it. These variations persist after the movements are prevented by curara, and would therefore seem to indicate that the vaso-motor centre is either acted on directly by camphor in the same way as the cerebral cortex, or that special impulses pass to it from the latter quite independently of those causing the convulsions. The peripheral vessels have been found to be dilated by

camphor solutions perfused through them, but it may be questioned whether this action comes into play in poisoning; the dilatation of the cutaneous vessels may probably be explained by action on the vaso-dilator centres.

The **Respiration** is somewhat slower and deeper than normal, but this alteration is generally insignificant. During the convulsions it is arrested, and in the intervals may be accelerated from the muscular exertion during the spasms.

The normal **Temperature** is not affected by camphor, but in fever it acts as an antipyretic, like many other aromatic bodies.

Camphor is partially oxidized in the tissues, forming camphorol ($C_{10}H_{16}O_2$), this change perhaps being analogous to that observed in the aromatic hydrocarbons and phenols. It is **Excreted in the urine** in combination with glycuronic acid, as α- and β-camphoglycuronic acid, and also in part in combination with a nitrogenous body, which is probably uramidoglycuronic acid. Camphorol acts like camphor, but its glycuronic acid combinations are inactive, so that the effects of camphor pass off quickly in such animals as the dog, in which these combinations are rapidly formed.

Camphor is possessed of some antiseptic action, although it is much weaker than some of the bodies of the carbolic acid group, and also than many of the volatile oils. Leucocytes cease their movements at once when exposed to camphor solutions or vapor, and Darwin found that it acts as a stimulus to the tentacles of Drosera, an insectivorous plant, and apparently renders them more sensitive to mechanical irritation.[1]

Camphor produces redness and a feeling of warmth when rubbed into the **Skin**. Sometimes, however, a distinct sensation of cold may be experienced, provided the rubbing is not too energetic. Menthol generally induces this feeling of cold, accompanied by more or less prickling, and afterwards by heat and burning. The cold is not due to cooling of the skin, for the vessels of the part are dilated, and the thermometer indicates a higher skin temperature there than in other parts of the body. It has been ascribed to menthol being more irritant to the terminations of certain nerves which convey the sensation of cold than to those of the heat nerves and pain nerves, but this is denied by Rollett who states that menthol acts only on the terminations of the nerves of common sensation or pain. A feeling of numbness and partial anæsthesia follows its application after some time, and a ten per cent. solution has been found to produce anæsthesia of the cornea, which, however, is preceded by pain and smarting.

The action of borneol, menthol, bromated camphor, camphorol and camphoric acid is almost identical with that of camphor itself. Borneol is less irritant locally, and the convulsions are less severe than after camphor, so that animals seldom die during the convulsive stage, and may remain in a state of stupor and collapse for one or two days before the respiration finally

[1] On the other hand, Vogel's statement that the germination of seeds is hastened by the presence of camphor has proved to be incorrect.

ceases. After menthol, the convulsions are even less developed than after borneol. Both of these are excreted in combination with glycuronic acid. Bromated camphor seems to resemble borneol more closely than camphor or menthol, while camphoric acid and amido-camphor produce symptoms similar to those of camphor, but are much less powerful. Camphoric acid lessens the secretion of perspiration by paralyzing the terminations of the secretory nerves in the same way as atropine and agaricin.

Preparations.

Camphora (U. S. P., B. P.) ($C_{10}H_{16}O$), Laurel camphor, a stearoptene obtained from Cinnamomum Camphora, forms white translucent, crystalline masses, which are almost insoluble in water but dissolve readily in alcohol, ether, chloroform, fixed and volatile oils. 0.1–0.6 G. (2–10 grs.), in emulsion or pill.

Aqua Camphoræ (U. S. P., B. P.).

Spiritus Camphoræ (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.3–2 c.c. (5–30 mins.).

Linimentum Camphoræ, camphorated oil (U. S. P., B. P.).

Tinctura Camphoræ Composita (B. P.), paregoric contains 1 part of morphine in 2000, *i. e.*, each fluid drachm is equivalent to ¼ grain of opium. ½–1 fl. dr.

Linimentum Camphoræ Ammoniatum (B. P.), compound camphor liniment.

Camphor is also an ingredient in the camphorated tincture of opium or paregoric (U. S. P.) and in soap liniment and chloroform liniment.

Camphora Monobromata (U. S. P.), monobromated camphor ($C_{10}H_{15}BrO$), consists of colorless crystals which are insoluble in water, soluble in alcohol and ether. 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.), in emulsion or pills.

Menthol (U. S. P., B. P.) ($C_{10}H_{20}O$), a stearoptene obtained from the official oil of peppermint or from Japanese or Chinese oil of peppermint, consists of colorless crystals slightly soluble in water, freely soluble in alcohol or ether. It is used externally in alcoholic solution or moulded into sticks and pencils, which are rubbed on the affected part.

Emplastrum Menthol (B. P.).

Borneol or Borneo camphor ($C_{10}H_{18}O$), a stearoptene obtained from Dryobalanops Camphora, resembles camphor in appearance and solubility, but has not been used in therapeutics and is not official.

Therapeutic Uses. — Camphor is used externally in the form of the liniment or spirit as a mild rubefacient in bruises and sprains, and also to destroy parasites. Internally the spirit is prescribed as a carminative and as an intestinal disinfectant. Its administration for the latter purpose has been shown to be followed by a diminution of the double sulphates of the urine, so that it seems to retard the putrefaction in the bowel to some extent. The spirit is frequently given to prevent "chill," and may relieve the congestion of internal organs through dilating the skin vessels.

It was formerly administered in cases of abnormal irritability of the central nervous system, such as epilepsy and various other forms of convulsions, including those produced by strychnine, but its action would seem to contraindicate its use here and camphor is scarcely prescribed in these cases now.

It has been used, apparently with success, as a stimulant to the central nervous system in unconsciousness and collapse arising from different causes, and in the depression and weakness of acute fevers. In many of these cases, a marked improvement in the pulse has been ob-

served after camphor; this may be due to the direct action on the heart, or may perhaps be explained by its action as a local stomachic irritant producing changes in the circulation reflexly. Solutions of camphor have been injected subcutaneously in these cases, but they cause pain and swelling at the point of injection. Camphor is almost entirely insoluble in watery fluids and is apparently absorbed slowly and with difficulty in some conditions, and this may explain the absence of effect in many cases of collapse treated with it.

Camphor is often prescribed in expectorant mixtures, especially in combination with opium, as in paregoric.

It has been advised in hysteria, and both as an aphrodisiac and as an anaphrodisiac. Any effect in these conditions must probably be ascribed rather to hypnotic suggestion than to the real action of the drug.

Menthol is used almost exclusively for its effects on the sensory nerve terminations, and is applied by rubbing the crystals or sticks on the skin in cases of headache and neuralgia.

Borneol and monobromated camphor are entirely superfluous. The latter was at one time used as a sedative in nervous excitement, but does not seem to have been at all beneficial and has fallen into disuse.

Camphoric acid has been found to lessen the night sweats of phthisis and is given for this purpose in powder in doses of 1–2 G. It possesses the advantage over atropine of acting only on the sweat glands in the dose given, and on the other hand has no such action on the digestion as is sometimes complained of when agaricin has been prescribed. Camphoric acid is slowly absorbed and ought to be given an hour or more before retiring. It has also been used as an antiseptic, but is very much less efficient than salicylic or carbolic acid.

Bibliography.

Hoffmann. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1866.
Huebner. Arch. f. Heilkunde, xi., p. 334.
Harnack u. Wittkowsky. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., v., p. 427.
Binz. Ibid., v., p. 109; viii., p. 50.
Pellacani. Ibid., xvii., p. 369.
Rovighi. Zts. f. phys. Chem., xvi., p. 20.
Schmiedeberg u. Meyer. Ibid., iii., p. 422.
Stockman. Journ. of Physiology, ix., p. 65. Edinburgh Med. Journ., 1897, i., p. 45.
Lewin. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvii., p. 226.
Gottlieb. Ibid., xxx., p. 31.
Meyer. Ibid., xxix., p. 438.
Wiedemann. Ibid., vi., p. 216.
Goldscheider. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1886, p. 555.
Rollett. Pflüger's Arch., lxxiv., p. 418.
Bourneville. Practitioner, xiii., p. 112.
Lawson. Ibid., xiii., p. 324; xiv., p. 262.
Peters. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1880.
Lapin. Ibid., 1893.

Musk, or moschus, is the dried secretion of the preputial follicles of Moschus moschiferus, the musk deer of Thibet. It forms a dark, reddish-brown, crumbling mass, with a very strong characteristic odor. About 10 per cent. is soluble in alcohol, about 50 per cent. in water.

Musk has long been reputed to have a very powerful action in collapse, but is so rarely procurable at the present day, except in a very much adulterated form, that it is comparatively seldom used. Very little is known with certainty as to its composition, and the odoriferous matter, which is believed to be the active principle, has scarcely been examined.

In some early investigations, musk was found to cause headache, giddiness and confusion, with a feeling of weight and uneasiness in the stomach ; later, depression and drowsiness, and eventually sleep. Tremors and even convulsive movements have also been observed, and the pulse is said to be accelerated and strengthened.

Filehne found tremors and contractions of isolated muscle bundles produced in the frog from the action of an extract, and concluded that the motor terminations were stimulated by it. On the other hand, Hermans,[1] who studied the subject more recently, could find no effects from the administration of musk to men or animals.

Moschus (U. S. P., B. P.) has been recommended in hysteria and in collapse, and is prescribed either as a powder, in doses of 0.5–1 G., which may be given per rectum when swallowing is impossible, or in the form of the tincture of the U. S. P., in doses of 5 c.c. It is rarely used at the present time, and may be considered entirely superfluous.

Castoreum, the secretion of the preputial follicles of the beaver, was formerly used for the same purposes as musk, but was never shown to have any effect whatever and has fallen into complete disuse.

XXVIII. PICROTOXIN.

Picrotoxin is the best known member of a group of convulsive poisons, which resemble each other very closely in action, but of whose chemistry little is known beyond the fact that they are devoid of nitrogen. It is obtained from the Anamirta paniculata (Anamirta cocculus, Menispermum cocculus), and is a neutral indifferent body. Picrotoxin ($C_{30}H_{34}O_{13}$) may be broken up into picrotoxinin ($C_{15}H_{16}O_6$), which resembles it in its effects on animals, and picrotin ($C_{15}H_{18}O_7$), which is inactive.

Other poisons resembling picrotoxin are *Cicutoxin*, derived from the Cicuta virosa, or water hemlock, and probably from other species of Cicuta, *Œnanthotoxin*, the active principle of Œnanthe crocata, water dropwort, or dead tongue, and *Coriamyrtin*, which occurs in several species of Coriaria, of which the best known is the Coriaria myrtifolia or currier's sumach. Another species of Coriaria affords the toot poison of New Zealand. *Phytolaccotoxin*, which has been prepared from a Japanese species of Phytolacca, resembles picrotoxin in its action and may probably be contained in the official (U. S. P.) Phytolacca decandra, or pokeberry. Lastly, a number of the members of the digitalis series may be decomposed into bodies which, devoid of the characteristic cardiac action of digitalis, produce the same symptoms as picrotoxin Among these may be mentioned *Toxiresin*, obtained from digitoxin, *Digitaliresin* from digitalin, and *Oleandresin* from oleandrin. These bodies all produce powerful stimulation of the central nervous system, more especially of the areas around the medulla oblongata. The chemical connection between them and the members of the digitalis series has been mentioned already. It may be added that the two groups are similar in action in some respects, for although picrotoxin does not affect the heart and vessels in the same way as digitalis, the latter possesses the characteristic action of picrotoxin on the medulla oblongata, although in a

[1] Inaugural Dissertation, Bonn, 1888.

weaker degree ; in fact, some of the remedies described under the digitalis series act as strongly on the central nervous system as on the heart. Picrotoxin resembles camphor also in its effects. Two alkaloids, *Samandarine* and *Samandaridine*, recently isolated by Faust from the skin of the newt appear to resemble picrotoxin in their effects on animals.

Symptoms. — The symptoms, which are often somewhat late in appearing, are very similar in all classes of vertebrates. In man vomiting is not infrequently observed after members of this series, or the first symptoms may be salivation, acceleration of the respiration, and some slowness of the pulse and palpitation of the heart. A condition of stupor and unconsciousness follows and then a series of powerful convulsions, which, commencing in tonic spasms, soon change to clonic movements of the limbs and jaws. The respiration is interrupted during these spasms, but is reinstated during the intervals of quiet and collapse which follow them. The convulsions return after a short pause, and this alteration of spasm and quiet may continue for some time, although the respiration often fails to return after one of the spasms, and fatal asphyxia results.

Similar effects are observed in the lower mammals. After a preliminary stage in which twitching of the muscles and vomiting often occur, and in which the respiration is accelerated, while the pulse is slow, a violent emprosthotonic convulsion sets in, but soon changes to clonic movements ; these may last for some time, but eventually become weaker and give place to a condition of quiet and depression. An increase in the reflex excitability is noticeable during this interval, the animal is easily startled and occasional twitching of the muscles may be observed. Very soon a second convulsion sets in, and this may be fatal from asphyxia, but the symptoms often continue for an hour or more, violent spasms alternating with periods of depression and collapse. In the frog clonic convulsions are also the chief feature of the intoxication. Very often the animal becomes distended with air during the convulsions, and gives a curious cry in releasing it. The heart is always slowed and may cease to beat altogether for a time.

Action. — The clonic convulsions of picrotoxin poisoning are altogether different from those of strychnine and other similar bodies, which induce prolonged tonic convulsions, and it was early surmised that the members of this series act on a different part of the **Central Nervous System.** The convulsions are found to persist in the frog after the cerebrum has been destroyed, and even when all of the brain above the medulla oblongata has been removed, although they are weakened by the destruction of the optic lobes. On the other hand, they disappear, or at any rate lose their typical character when the medulla oblongata is removed, so that it would seem that picrotoxin and its allies act chiefly on the medulla oblongata, while the spinal cord and the higher parts of the brain are comparatively little affected. Strychnine, on the other hand, exercises its chief action on the spinal cord, while the other parts of the central nervous axis are less affected. It

was formerly supposed that picrotoxin stimulated a "convulsion centre" in the medulla oblongata, but there is no reason to believe that any such definite area exists, and it would rather appear that intense stimulation of the medulla in general leads to clonic contractions of the muscles throughout the body. The effects of the stimulation of the individual centres in the medulla are seen in the acceleration of the respiration, in the slow pulse, which is due to inhibitory action, in a very marked rise of the blood-pressure, and in the vomiting and salivation. The medulla oblongata is not, however, the exclusive seat of action, for in many animals the reflexes are found to be increased when the medulla is severed from the cord, and this indicates that the spinal cord is also more excitable than normally. This action on the spinal cord is best seen in the fish and reptile, and is much less marked in the frog and mammals. In the former, picrotoxin causes convulsions even after the medulla oblongata is removed, but in the higher animals, in which the functions are more differentiated, it merely increases the reflexes or causes very slight convulsive movements; and the higher the position in the scale of the organism, the more closely is the action of this series confined to the medulla oblongata.

It may be questioned whether the higher divisions of the nervous axis are concerned in the picrotoxin intoxication, for though in some animals restlessness and increased spontaneous movements are seen, they may perhaps be the indirect results of the alterations in the respiration and circulation.

The **Heart** is rendered slow by picrotoxin, and in the frog may come to a standstill during the convulsions. This is due principally to stimulation of the inhibitory centre in the medulla, since on division of the vagi the heart returns to almost its normal rate. Some direct depression of the heart is observed after large doses, for the pulse remains slowed even after atropine or division of the vagi. This action on the heart is not similar to that characteristic of digitalis, as has been supposed, but is a paralysis such as is observed after many poisons (*e. g.*, chloral). In some cases acceleration of the heart is seen towards the end of the intoxication, and this has been supposed to be due to stimulation of the accelerating centre. Picrotoxin causes a very marked rise in the arterial tension from stimulation of the vaso-constrictor centres in the medulla and upper part of the cord.

The **Respiration** is accelerated before any convulsions set in, and in the intervals between the spasms is also very rapid, owing to the action on the centre. Late in the intoxication the breathing may become slow and labored, probably from approaching central paralysis. In the frog, spasm of the laryngeal muscles prevents the escape of air from the lungs, so that the animal becomes enormously inflated.

The **Vomiting** often observed in man and the dog under picrotoxin is probably of central origin and not due to gastric irritation.

The peripheral **Nerves** and **Muscles** do not seem to be affected by these poisons, with the exceptions of toxiresin and digitaliresin, which slightly lessen the irritability of the muscles.

The fate of picrotoxin in the body and the way in which it is excreted are unknown. Like other convulsive poisons, it tends to lower the temperature when it is given in small quantities so that no convulsions follow.

The convulsions of picrotoxin and its allies disappear when chloroform or chloral is administered. On the other hand, the respiration, weakened by narcotic poisons such as chloral, is accelerated by picrotoxin, the blood-pressure rises, and the sleep is less prolonged. Animals are not awakened at once from narcosis by picrotoxin, but coriamyrtin has this effect.

Picrotoxin is not antidotal in morphine poisoning in animals, but may possibly be so in man (see page 213). On the contrary, Kossa found that very much smaller quantities of morphine were fatal to rabbits when half the fatal dose of picrotoxin was given at the same time.

Preparations.

Picrotoxinum (U. S. P., B. P.), picrotoxin ($C_{30}H_{34}O_{13}$), a neutral principle obtained from Anamirta paniculata, slightly soluble in water, much more so in alcohol. 0.001–0.003 G. ($\frac{1}{60}$–$\frac{1}{20}$ gr.).

Phytolaccæ Fructus (U. S. P.), the fruit of Phytolacca decandra or poke-berry.

Extractum Phytolaccæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.3–2 G.

Phytolaccæ Radix (U. S. P.), the root of Phytolacca decandra or poke-root.

Therapeutic Uses. — Picrotoxin has been used as an ointment to destroy pediculi, and in some forms of skin disease, but is too poisonous to be recommended for this purpose. It has been proposed to give it by subcutaneous injection in cases of collapse and in narcotic poisoning, but according to Köppen, coriamyrtin is more efficient in animals. It has not been employed for this purpose in therapeutics as yet. It has some reputation in the profuse night-sweats of phthisis, which it diminishes in a certain proportion of cases, probably by increasing the respiration and thus preventing the stimulation of the nervous mechanism of perspiration through the partial asphyxia. Phytolacca has been advised as an emetic, but is slow in action and dangerous. It is seldom prescribed, and appears to be superfluous, at any rate until its action has been ascertained with more certainty.

Bibliography.

Roeber. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1869, p. 38.
Luchsinger. Pflüger's Arch., xvi., p. 530.
Kossa. Ungar. Arch. f. Med., i., p. 24.
Browne. Brit. Med. Journal, 1875, i., p. 409.
Köppen. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxix., p. 327.
Gottlieb. Ibid., xxx., p. 21.
Harnack. Ztsch. f. klin. Med., xxv., p. 16.
Boehm. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iii., p. 224; v., p. 279. (Cicutoxin.)
Pohl. Ibid., xxxiv., p. 259. (Cicutoxin and Œnanthotoxin.)
Perrier. Ibid., iv., p. 191. (Toxiresin, Digitaliresin, etc.)
Faust. Ibid., xli., p. 229; xliii., p. 84. (Samandarin.)

XXIX. THE DIGITALIS SERIES.

The digitalis series embraces a considerable number of substances which are characterized by their action on the heart. They are widely distributed in the vegetable kingdom in very different botanical families, and have long been in use for various purposes in civilized and uncivilized countries. Some of them were employed as remedies by the laity long before their virtues were recognized by the medical profession, while others have been used as arrow poisons by the natives of different parts of Africa and of the Eastern Archipelago.

The most important plants which contain bodies belonging to this group are *Digitalis purpurea* (purple foxglove), *Strophanthus hispidus*, *Kombe*, and *Scilla maritima* (squills). Others which are less frequently used are *Helleborus niger*[1] (Christmas rose), *Convallaria majalis* (lily of the valley), *Apocynum cannabinum* (Canadian hemp), and *Adonis vernalis* (pheasant's eye). Similar effects are obtained from bodies contained in other species of these genera and in a large and ever-growing list of other plants, such as *Antiaris* (Upas tree), *Nerium* (oleander), *Acokanthera* (ouabaio), *Erythrophlœum* (sassy bark or Casca bark), *Thevetia*, *Urechites* and *Coronilla*.[2] Numbers of other plants are said to resemble digitalis in their effects, but until this has been shown by more careful investigation, it is undesirable to add them to the above list, which is already extensive enough. Many of the arrow poisons certainly contain digitalin bodies, but even their botanical origin is unknown in many instances. These bodies are not, however, confined to the vegetable kingdom, for Faust has recently isolated two substances[3] from the skin of the toad, which induce the same changes in the heart, and the *Epinephrine* of the suprarenal capsule (see suprarenal gland) has been recently shown to have very similar effects. Salts of barium also induce many of the changes characteristic of this series.

The active principles of the plants of this group present many points of resemblance, and some of them which are now believed to be distinct may prove to be identical. Their isolation is attended with considerable difficulty, as many are amorphous, and but few of them form combinations with the ordinary chemical reagents. Most of them are glucosides, others are indifferent bodies, and one or two are alkaloids. There are often found in a plant several distinct bodies belonging to this series, and these may again be accompanied by others which induce the same symptoms as picrotoxin or saponin.

Digitalis has been more carefully examined from the chemical point of view than the other plants, but even its active principles are still only partially known, and the subject is yet in an unsatisfactory state; for the amount and character of the active constituents seem to vary

[1] This must not be confused with green and white hellebore (see page 338).

[2] Cactus grandiflorus (Cereus), which has been recommended as a substitute for digitalis, has no similar action and does not belong to this series.

[3] These are named *Bufonin* and *Bufotalin* and appear to be nearly related to cholesterin.

not only in different seasons and in plants grown in different soils, but also in different parts of the same plant. The chief active principles were isolated by Schmiedeberg in 1874 and his statements have more recently been confirmed and extended by Kiliani. There appear to be at least four glucosides in digitalis which possess the characteristic cardiac action — *Digitoxin*, *Digitophyllin*, *Digitalin* and *Digitalein* — and these are accompanied by one or more glucosides (*Digitonin*) which have the irritant action of saponin and like it suspend insoluble bodies in water. The pharmacopœial preparations are made from the leaves, in which digitoxin and digitophyllin are the most important constituents, though a small quantity of another glucoside resembling digitalin is also present. These glucosides are practically insoluble in water when pure, but are taken up from the leaves by water owing to the presence of the digitonins, so that the infusion of digitalis leaves is a very powerful preparation. The active glucosides are more soluble in alcohol, while digitonin is insoluble, so that the tincture contains practically the same constituents as the infusion except digitonin.

The seeds of digitalis are not pharmacopœial, but are extensively used for the preparation of the so-called digitalines of commerce. They contain digitalin and digitalein in large amounts with a small percentage of digitoxin and a larger proportion of digitonins than the leaves. Digitalin is less insoluble in water than digitoxin and digitalein is freely soluble. The preparations from the seeds thus differ entirely from the Galenical preparations which are formed exclusively from the leaves, and most clinicians find them less satisfactory in practice. Digitoxin is much the most powerful constituent, and the small amount in which it is present in the digitalines prepared from the seeds probably accounts for their unsatisfactory effects in therapeutics.

Strophanthus Kombé contains a crystalline glucoside, *strophanthin*, while other varieties of strophanthus such as S. hispidus contain another glucoside, *pseudo-strophanthin*, which is probably nearly related to strophanthin but is about twice as poisonous. Another glucoside — *Ouabain* or *Acokantherin* — is found in Strophanthus glaber and in Acokanthera and is also closely related to strophanthin. Some of the strophanthus genus contain non-glucosidal active bodies. The strophanthin of commerce is generally derived from a mixture of different species and varies much in composition and toxicity.

Scilla maritima or squills is said to contain *Scillain*, a glucoside, very soluble in alcohol, scarcely so in water, but this requires further investigation. Several other active constituents have been described in squills, but none of them have been actually isolated, and they may be merely impure forms of scillain. Saponin bodies are also present.

Helleborus niger contains *Helleborein*, a glucoside, which is very soluble in water, and resembles digitalin in action, and *Helleborin*, which is insoluble in water and has an entirely different effect.

Convallamarin (obtained from Convallaria), *Adonidin* (Adonis), *Oleandrin*, *Neriin* and *Neriodorin* (Nerium), *Euonymin* (Euonymus), *Antiarin* (Antiaris), *Thevetin* and *Cerberin* (Thevetia), *Cheiranthin* (Cheiranthus), *Coronillin* (Coro-

nilla), *Tanghinin* (Tanghinia venenifera), and *Apocynein* (Apocynum), are glucosides, while *Apocynin* (Apocynum) is indifferent and *Erythrophlœine* (Erythrophlœum guinense) is a glucosidal alkaloid.

With the exception of the last, then, the members of this series which have been examined hitherto are either glucosides or indifferent substances, containing carbon, hydrogen and oxygen, but no nitrogen. They are all liable to decompose when kept long in watery solutions, and especially when heated with acids, and then frequently form substances which no longer possess the digitalin action, but are rather to be classed with picrotoxin. (See page 436.) It will be shown later that even digitalin and its congeners have this picrotoxin action to a greater or lesser degree, and it seems probable, therefore, that all of them are derivatives of some common nucleus, which belongs to the picrotoxin series, but which in combination assumes a new character through its action on the heart and vessels.

Erythrophlœine and a more recently isolated alkaloid, *Muawine*, which resembles it in most respects, split off a molecule of sugar when they are boiled with acids. This glucosidal reaction perhaps indicates that they are more closely related to the other members of the series than would appear at first sight.

Action. — The digitalis series possesses a local and a general action. The **Local Effects** consist in primary irritation, followed frequently by paralysis of the sensory nerve endings. Thus in the eye a small quantity of a solution, or a minute particle of the dry poison causes the most intense pain, redness and congestion of the conjunctiva, and all the symptoms of an acute inflammation. On the tongue the bitter taste is followed by burning pain frequently, and if the powder be drawn into the nostrils and larynx, marked swelling of the mucous membrane, sneezing, coughing and hoarseness are produced in many persons. They have little action on the skin, although here too smarting is occasionally produced; but when injected subcutaneously many of them cause marked inflammation, which not infrequently ends in the formation of abscesses, even although the injection has been absolutely aseptic. The same irritant action is produced in the stomach by several of them, and, in fact, by all of them when taken in very large quantities or for long periods. This irritant action is not equally marked throughout the series, however, for digitoxin is much the most powerful in this respect, while digitalin may be injected subcutaneously without danger and without pain. Their local irritant action explains the use of squills as an emetic, and of euonymus as a purgative. The local anæsthetic property is likewise not equally developed in all the members of the series; several of them (strophanthin, ouabain, erythrophlœine) have been suggested as local anæsthetics for the eye, but their primary irritant effect precludes their use for this purpose.

After absorption, the chief symptoms are due to their action on the central nervous system, the heart, and the vessels, more especially on the two last. The action on the **Central Nervous System** is frequently ignored or attributed to the changes in the heart as a secondary effect, but there is undoubtedly a stimulation of some of the nerve centres, quite independent of the action on the heart and vessels. This stimulation, like that of picrotoxin, seems almost entirely limited to the medulla oblongata in many cases. In the frog the excitability of the

reflexes is often lowered by members of this series, probably because of the intense stimulation of the medulla oblongata; but sometimes a distinctly increased irritability is observed. These alterations are much greater than those caused by the interruption of the circulation, and are therefore independent of the action on the heart, to which they have been erroneously ascribed. More marked symptoms are produced in mammals, however, by this central nervous stimulation, for in these vomiting is elicited very soon after the injection of large quantities, long before the heart is very seriously affected, and this is undoubtedly due to action on the medulla oblongata. To the same cause is to be attributed the rapid, deep respiratory movements and convulsions, which are often observed in the later stages of poisoning, and which are evidently not due to cerebral anæmia, as has been supposed, for the brain at this stage receives quite as much or more blood than it normally does. Even small quantities, such as are used therapeutically, cause stimulation of certain parts of the central nervous system, for the activity of the inhibitory cardiac centre in the medulla is the cause of the slowness of the heart which is seen in therapeutics and in experiments on mammals.

The central nervous system, then, undergoes distinct stimulation under digitalis. This stimulation by small quantities seems limited to the inhibitory cardiac and the vaso-constrictor centres in the medulla oblongata, but when larger doses of digitalis and its allies are injected, other parts of the medullary centres become stimulated, and vomiting, increased respiration and eventually general convulsions may be produced.

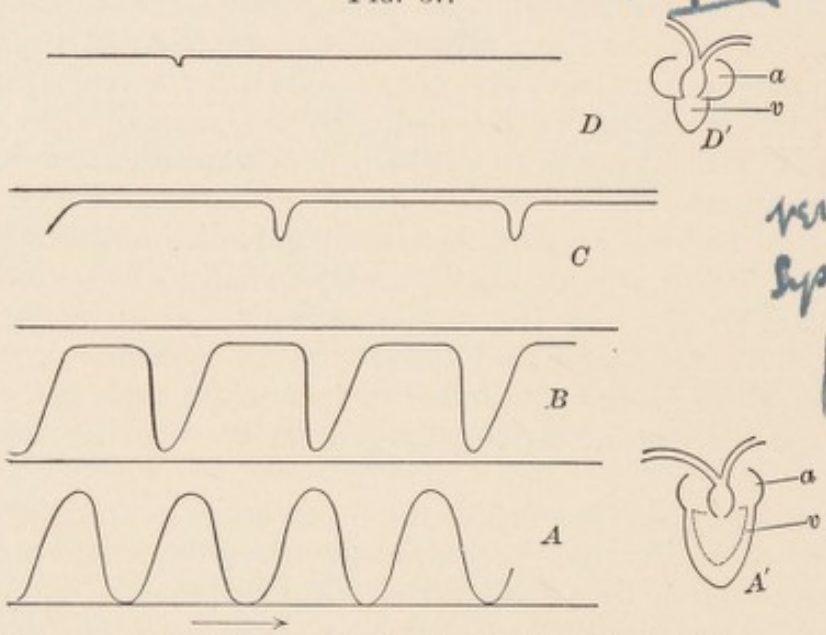
The extent to which the members of this series act as stimulants to the nervous centres varies, erythrophlœine seeming to approach more nearly to picrotoxin than the others, while helleborein is among the least active, but as yet little comparative work has been done in this direction.

The action on the **Heart** is the most important of all, and is what distinguishes digitalis and its allies from all other substances. This action has been studied most carefully in the frog, and is found to be due to an alteration in the cardiac muscular tissue. On exposing the frog's heart, and watching its movements after the injection of digitalis, the muscular action can generally be made out very distinctly (Fig. 27). The heart becomes slower in rhythm, and contracts to smaller dimensions in systole, while it does not dilate so fully in diastole. The ventricle is therefore whiter during systole than normally, while during diastole it does not seem so purple, owing to its containing less blood at each period. The slowing can be seen to be due to the heart remaining contracted longer than usual, while the dilatation is very short and imperfect. Later the apex of the ventricle ceases to dilate during diastole, and remains quite still while the base still dilates after each auricular systole. Or the whole ventricle dilates only once for every two contractions of the auricle, or the two halves of the ventricle may contract alternately so that the blood is thrown from one side to the

other. Meanwhile the duration of systole becomes still more prolonged, and the extent of diastolic dilation diminishes until the ventricle finally ceases to contract, remaining in a position of extreme systole with its cavity obliterated. The auricles come to a standstill also, but they are unable to empty themselves into the contracted ventricle and therefore remain distended with blood. The typical action of digitalis on the muscle of the frog's heart, then, consists in a tendency to increased and prolonged contraction, and diminished and shortened diastole.

In some cases certain other features appear in the frog's heart, for the slow rhythm may be accompanied by a less perfect systole, and instead of the heart ceasing in systole, it may come to a temporary standstill in a state of extreme diastolic dilatation. This is due to stimulation of

FIG. 37.



Tracing of the movement of the frog's ventricle under digitalis. The lever forms an upward stroke during systole. *A*, normal; *B*, the systole is somewhat more complete and is very prolonged, and the rhythm is correspondingly slow. *C*, the ventricle remains in systole with occasional feeble diastolic movements. *D*, the diastoles of the heart have almost entirely ceased. *A'*, diagram of the heart of the frog in its normal dimensions, *a*, auricle; *v*, ventricle with the aortic bulb rising from it. The dotted line in the ventricle represents the outline in systole, the continuous line the outline in diastole. *D'*, outline of the heart in the standstill after digitalis. The ventricle *v* is very much contracted, the auricle *a* distended with blood.

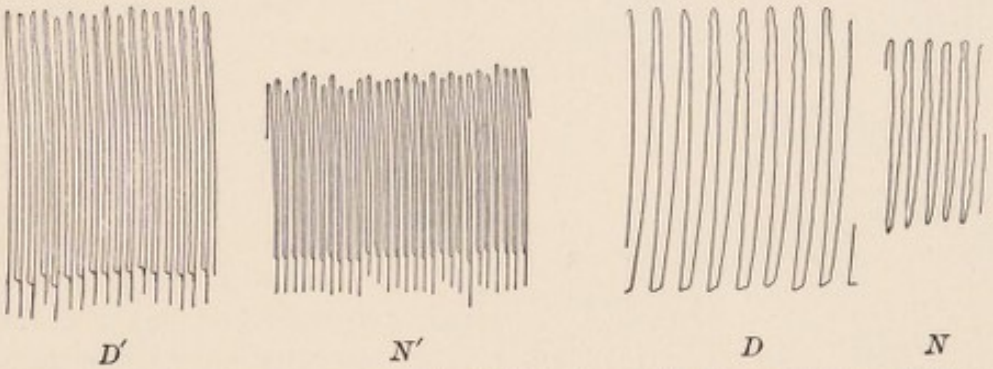
the vagus centre in the medulla, and must be carefully distinguished from the action on the cardiac muscle. Not infrequently the two forms occur in combination. or the symptoms of inhibitory action precede those of the true cardiac change.

The amount of blood expelled by the heart varies according to the degree to which each of these factors comes into play. If the dilatation in diastole is unchanged or increased, while the contraction is greater than normal, the amount of blood expelled by each beat is of course increased, but as the dilatation becomes less, the amount expelled diminishes until it reaches zero. Even though the amount of blood expelled by each beat is increased, one finds not infrequently that the total output per minute is diminished because the rhythm is so much slower than usual.

The irritability of the heart muscle is also found to be considerably increased by digitalis. Thus if the ventricle of the unpoisoned frog's heart be excised, and salt solution be led through it, it ceases to beat after some time. If, however, a small quantity of digitalis be added to the salt solution, rhythmical contractions are often induced and the heart eventually passes into systolic standstill. This increased irritability may explain a temporary acceleration of the cardiac rhythm, which is occasionally seen in frogs and in other cold-blooded animals.

The nature of the action on the cardiac muscle has been a good deal discussed. Schmiedeberg brought forward the theory that it was mainly an increase in the elasticity of the heart muscle, but this has been disputed by Roy, who showed that it was not sufficient to explain the phenomena. With the present knowledge of the molecular changes which occur in the heart, it is impossible to proceed beyond the statement that the muscle tone is increased, and that thereby the relaxation

FIG. 38.



Tracings of the ventricular contractions under digitalis in experiments on two dogs. *N*, *N′*, normal contractions. *D*, *D′*, contractions under digitalis. The levers move upwards during systole. In *D* the rhythm is slower and the movements extend further upwards and downwards than in *N*, *i. e.*, the contractions are more complete and the dilatation during diastole is greater. In *D′* the rhythm is slower, and the tracing extends further upwards than in *N′*, but reaches almost the same point below, *i. e.*, the contraction is stronger, but the dilatation is scarcely changed. Contrast the effects of inhibition alone in Figs. 27 and 29 (pp. 289 and 319).

of the muscle is rendered less perfect and the contraction more complete and prolonged. The inhibitory action of the vagus, on the contrary, tends to render the tone less complete, and to produce less complete contraction and more complete diastole. The direct effects of digitalin on the cardiac muscle of the frog are therefore diametrically opposed to those of inhibitory activity.

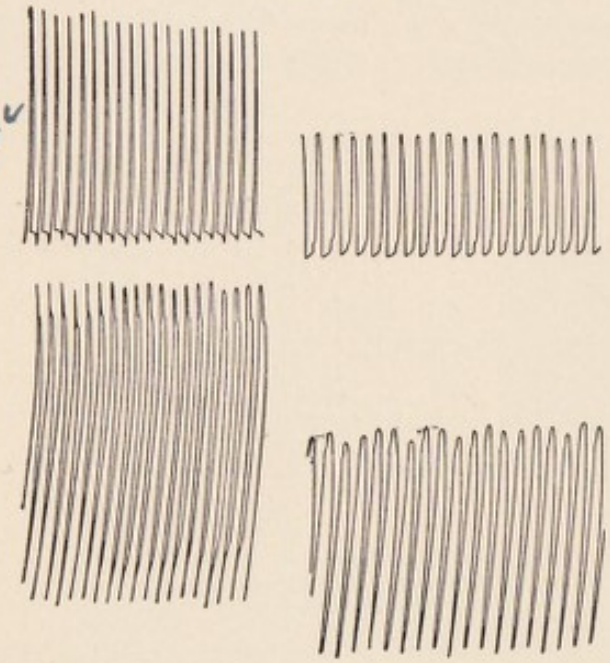
The hearts of some invertebrates, such as of the snail, are said to undergo changes similar to those described in the frog's heart, while the crustaceans seem to be entirely unaffected by digitalis.

The action on the frog's heart is of great interest, because the changes produced by this series on the mammalian heart partake largely of the same character. The inhibitory and the muscular actions are again opposed to each other, but here the inhibitory is almost invariably present to a greater or less degree. The action of digitalis and its allies on the mammalian heart may be divided into three stages, of which the first and the third are always developed when sufficient quantities are

administered. The second stage may be absent in certain circumstances, but is also generally present in poisoning.

In the *first or therapeutic stage* of the action of this series, the rhythm of the heart is changed, and the extent of contraction and relaxation of the ventricle and auricle undergo certain modifications (Fig. 38). The rhythm of the heart is distinctly slower than before giving the drug, for the inhibitory apparatus is set in activity, and the slowing is accordingly due to a prolongation of the pause in diastole. The ventricles contract to a smaller size, that is, they empty themselves much more completely than they normally do. It is now universally recognized that the normal ventricle does not empty itself completely; that even at the end of its systole there still remains some blood in its interior. After the action of this group has begun, however, the blood remaining at the end of systole is much less than before. This increased contraction is, like that in the frog's heart, due to action on the cardiac muscle, and leads to an augmented pressure in the ventricle during systole. The papillary muscles undergo the same changes as the rest of the ventricular wall, contracting more strongly and more completely than before the administration of the drug.

FIG. 39.



B *A*

Tracings of the movements of the ventricle (lower) and auricle (upper) under digitalis. During systole the levers make an upstroke. In this experiment the inhibitory terminations had been paralyzed, so that only the muscular action is developed. *A*, normal; *B*, after digitalis. The rhythm of the heart is slightly accelerated in *B*, and the levers extend further upwards, indicating a more perfect systole in both auricle and ventricle. The ventricular lever does not reach so far downwards in *B*, *i. e.*, the ventricular diastole is less complete.

The relaxation of the ventricle is found to vary in different conditions. If the heart is weak and dilated, digitalis and its allies tend to lessen this dilatation, that is, the relaxation of the ventricle during diastole is less than before the administration of the drug. (See Fig. 39.) If, however, the heart is normal, or does not dilate much during diastole, digitalis increases the relaxation. (Fig. 38, *D*.) The variation in the degree of dilatation of the ventricle depends upon the opposing factors — the inhibition and the muscular action. If the inhibition be the stronger, the ventricle relaxes more completely than before, for vagus stimulation always tends to increase the relaxation of the heart. If, on the other hand, the muscular action predominates, the relaxation is lessened, for here, as in the frog's heart, this series tends to lessen the extent of relaxation. In the normal heart the application of one

of this series causes, as a general rule, an increase in the extent of relaxation.

It must be added that the inhibition is due in part to stimulation of the intra-cardiac inhibitory apparatus, but mainly to the stimulation of the vagus centre in the medulla. This is shown by cutting the vagi before the injection, for the slowing is then much less than when the vagi are intact, or may be entirely absent.

If, then, the ventricles contain more blood at the beginning of systole, *i. e.*, are more relaxed than usual, and if the quantity remaining at the end of systole is less than normal, the heart must expel much more blood at each ventricular contraction than it does normally. (See Fig. 40.) Even though the amount of blood at the beginning of systole is unchanged or slightly diminished (lessened dilatation), as occasionally happens, the amount expelled is increased because the ventricles contract more completely. If the number of beats per minute remained the same, therefore, the amount of blood expelled (or the output) would be much increased; but the rhythm is slower than normal, and although each beat propels a larger amount of blood into the aorta and pulmonary artery than normally, it is not impossible that the output may be less than before the drug was administered. In the therapeutic use of these drugs the slowing is not great enough to counterbalance the increased output per beat, and a larger amount of blood is therefore driven into the aorta and pulmonary artery.

FIG. 40.

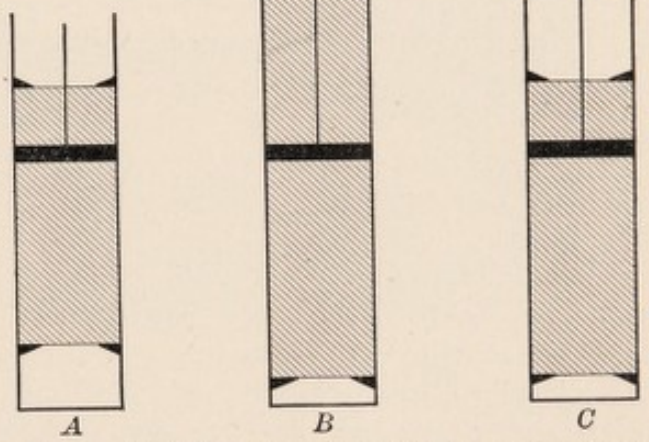


Diagram to illustrate the effect of digitalis on the output of the ventricle. *A*, *B*, *C*, three cylinders with pistons moving up and down in them and driving out fluid. In *B* and *C* (digitalis action), the piston descends lower than in *A* (normal) and in *B* it can also rise higher. The output of each stroke is represented by the shaded part of the cylinder and is greatest in *B*, in which more fluid is present at the beginning of the stroke (diastole) and less at the end of the stroke (systole) than in *A*. It is also greater in *C*, in which the same amount of fluid is present at the beginning of the stroke (diastole) as in *A*, but less is present at the end (systole). If the pistons make the same number of strokes per minute in *A*, *B* and *C*, the amount of fluid pumped will be greatest in *B* and least in *A*, which represents the normal ventricle.

The more complete contraction of the ventricle also causes a higher pressure in its interior than before, and the blood is therefore expelled into the vessels under greater pressure than normally.

The changes in the ventricle, then, are due to inhibitory activity and to direct cardiac action, the first tending to lessen the number of beats, to increase the relaxation of the fibres and to weaken the systole, and thus to diminish the output and efficiency of the heart; the second tending to strengthen the systole and thus to augment the output, while also limiting the dilatation, which may increase or lessen the efficiency of the heart according to circumstances.

In the auricles the same two agencies are found in opposition, the inhibitory stimulation and the muscular action. Stimulation of the inhibitory nerves causes in the auricle no dilatation, or but a very slight one, while it lessens the contraction considerably, and in fact may prevent it entirely. The muscular action of this series is the same here as in the ventricle, causing a tendency towards more complete systole and less complete relaxation. After small quantities, such as are used in medicine, the rhythm of the auricle is slow, like that of the ventricle, owing to the inhibition; the relaxation is little changed, but owing to the muscular action, the contraction is more complete. In but slightly larger quantities, however, the inhibitory action causes a less complete contraction, so that the work done by the auricle is actually less than before the injection.

The rhythm of the different parts of the heart is exactly the same during this stage, and the changes seen in the right auricle and ventricle correspond to those in the left.

If larger quantities be injected, either the inhibitory or the muscular action may become markedly increased, and the appearance of the heart varies according to which of these predominates. It must be distinctly understood that the following symptoms betoken a grave condition of poisoning and are not met with in the therapeutic use of the series.

In the *second stage*, the symptoms are due to excessive inhibitory activity, while the direct cardiac action is less developed. The rhythm of the ventricle, and consequently of the pulse, is very slow and irregular, as is always the case when the inhibitory apparatus is strongly stimulated (see Fig. 27, p. 289). During diastole the ventricle dilates more completely than usual, while its systole varies in strength. If the muscular action is well developed, it continues to empty itself more completely than usual, but very often the inhibition is so powerful that the muscular action is entirely concealed and the systole is weaker and more blood remains at the end of the contraction than before the drug was administered. As a general rule, however, each beat expels more blood than normally, because the heart is engorged before the systole begins; but the rhythm is so slow that the output per minute and the efficiency of the heart as a pump is less than usual. This is the feature which differentiates the first from the second stage, in which the same factors are present; in the first stage the efficiency of the heart, *i. e.*, the amount of blood expelled per minute, is greater, in the second stage less than before the administration of the drug.

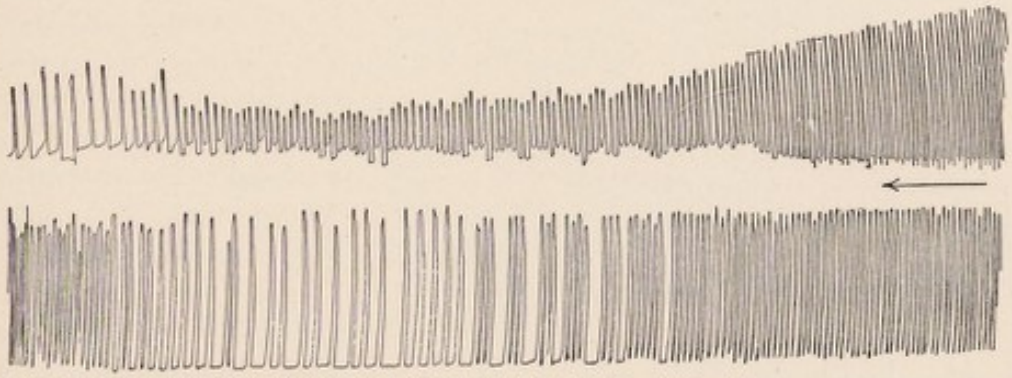
Not infrequently the auricle and ventricle beat in different rhythms, the ventricle developing a spontaneous rhythm which may be either faster or slower than that of the auricle. This is apparently due to the inhibitory action, which blocks the passage of impulses from the auricle to the ventricle, although the effect of the drug in increasing the irritability of the cardiac muscle may contribute to it by facilitating the development of the spontaneous ventricular rhythm.

The auricular contractions are much weaker than in the first stage, and even than in the normal heart, and may cease altogether for some time, while the chambers do not tend to dilate further as a general rule.

Although the rhythms of the auricle and ventricle may differ at this stage, the two ventricles always beat in unison, and the changes in the strength of their contraction and in the extent of the relaxation are similar.

This stage of excessive inhibition is not observed in every case of poisoning in animals, nor probably in man, although in the recorded instances of poisoning with the members of this series, it seems to have been present, as the pulse is said to have been very slow and irregular.

FIG. 41.



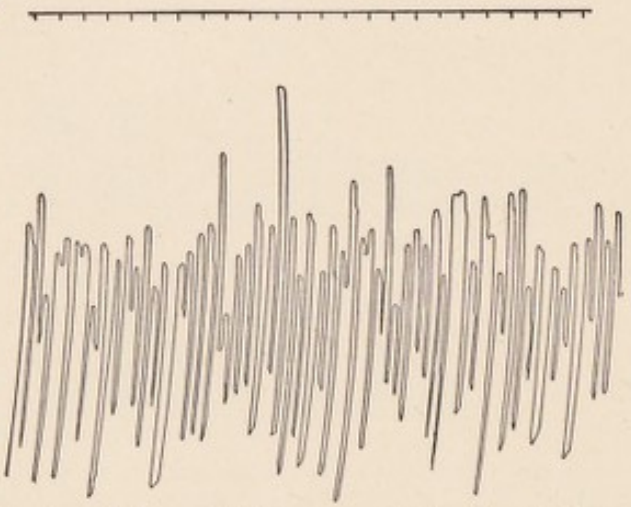
Tracing of the auricular (upper) and ventricular movements (lower) under digitalis, as the first stage passes into the second. During systole the levers move upwards, during diastole downwards. The rhythm of the two chambers is at first the same, but soon changes, the auricle maintaining its rapid beat while the ventricle becomes slow and irregular. At the end of the tracing the ventricle again becomes rapid, while the auricle becomes slow. The strength of the contractions and the extent of relaxation of the ventricle muscle remain little altered, while the auricle rapidly weakens in strength, but improves again at the end of the tracing.

Therapeutic doses of these drugs never induce irregularity in themselves, though the pulse is often irregular from disease in the cases in which they are prescribed. When in their therapeutic use irregularity arises from their effects, the physician is inducing the second stage of poisoning, in which the efficiency of the heart is less than it would be without the drug, and the dose ought to be reduced at once. If the inhibitory mechanism is weak or is paralyzed by the preliminary injection of such drugs as atropine, the second stage is entirely absent.

When very large quantities of any of this series are injected, the *third stage* sets in. It is preceded by the first for a short time, generally by both first and second. In this stage the ventricular rhythm becomes very much accelerated, often beyond the normal, and even beyond that seen after paralysis of the inhibitory nerves. This acceleration has often been supposed to be produced by paralysis of the vagus, but this is not the correct explanation, for stimulation of this nerve sometimes still slows the heart and always causes dilatation. The acceleration is really due to the drug increasing the irritability of the heart muscle to such an extent that the inhibitory apparatus is no longer able to hold it in check.

The auricles also undergo the same changes. They begin to accelerate their rhythm, and if the second stage has not developed, they continue in the same rhythm as the ventricle. If, however, the ventricular rhythm has been independent of the auricular in the second stage, the auricles are often later in being accelerated than the ventricles, because the inhibitory nerves act more strongly on them. The difference in rhythm of the two divisions leads to a very characteristic periodic variation in the strength of the contractions of both auricle and ventricle. This auriculo-ventricular arhythmia may continue for some time, but further irregularities soon present themselves. At intervals, asystole of either ventricle or auricle appears, that is, two contractions follow so rapidly on each other, that the chamber has no time to dilate fully between them and no blood is expelled by the second one. These asystolic contractions become more numerous, and soon form groups of two or three, separated by other groups of ordinary contractions. The rhythm becomes more and more rapid, and other forms of irregularity appear, which it is impossible to describe there. Eventually the auricle generally passes into delirium cordis while the rhythm of the ventricle continues to increase, and the force of its contractions and the output of each beat decrease. The ventricle finally passes into delirium cordis also, and the circulation is arrested, after which the heart dilates to an extreme degree.

FIG. 42.



Tracing of the ventricular movements in the last stage of digitalis poisoning. The lever moves upwards in systole. The characteristic feature is the extreme irregularity, no two contractions resembling each other in form or strength.

All the features of the third stage are due to the poisons increasing the irritability of the heart muscle. This leads to acceleration of the beat, and, eventually, through the muscle of one pair of chambers being acted on more than that of the other, to arhythmia. The asystolic contractions are evidently of the same origin, and the final delirium is also to be ascribed to this action. Almost all the characteristic features of this stage may be imitated in the normal, unpoisoned heart by stimulating the different chambers by electric shocks; the impulses which in the poisoned heart arise from its own excessive irritability are here given by the artificial stimuli, but the effect is the same.

The output of the heart continues much augmented during the first part of the third stage, but, as the irregularity of the ventricles increases, and the asystolic contractions become more numerous, it be-

comes less and eventually falls to zero when the heart passes into delirium. Throughout the whole course of the intoxication the ventricles beat in unison, no interventricular arhythmia, such as has been described by some authors, being noticeable at any stage. The two auricles often differ somewhat in their rhythm in the third stage, and the rhythm of the ventricles may, as has been stated, be entirely different from that of the auricles in either the second or third stage.

The effects of digitalis on the mammalian heart therefore resemble in general those observed in the frog's. The contraction is not prolonged, however, as it is in the latter, and the inhibitory mechanism plays a more important rôle. The irregular stage evidently corresponds in each, and the final delirium cordis in the mammal represents the continued contraction in the frog, the mammalian heart not being capable of a continued systole. The heart in mammals is generally found in a condition of diastole in cases of fatal digitalis poisoning, and this has been supposed to indicate a fundamental difference in the action of digitalis on the amphibian and mammalian heart. The dilatation is not, however, a direct result of the digitalis but is probably induced by the poisons formed in the heart by its own activity.

Another explanation of the cardiac action of digitalis refers much of what has been called muscular action hitherto, to stimulation of the terminations of the accelerans nerve, but no evidence has been brought forward as yet that these nerves are involved in the effects, and it is impossible to explain many of the features of the third stage by accelerans action.

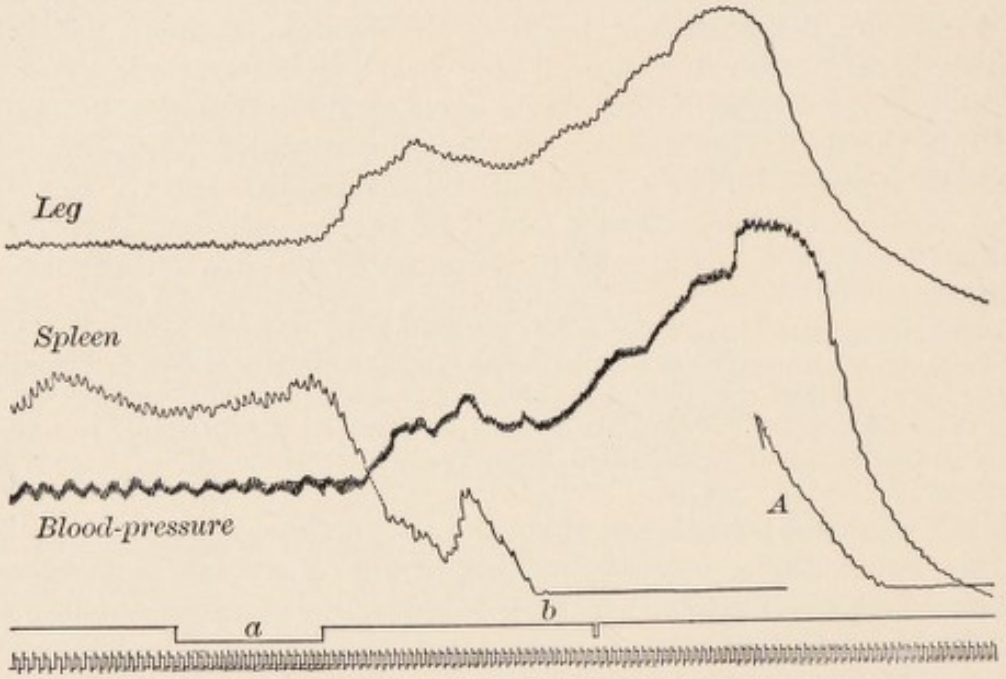
The **Peripheral Vessels** are affected in several ways by the members of this series. The increased output of the heart in the *therapeutic stage* augments the pressure in their interior, and it seems not unlikely that the vaso-motor centre is stimulated and that this causes a contraction of the arterial walls. But in addition to these effects, the muscular wall of the arterioles is constricted by a direct action of the glucosides and the resistance to the flow of blood from the arteries to the veins is increased, which further raises the tension in the aorta and larger arteries. It seems likely that all the members of the group do not act equally at all three points, but very little is known definitely on the subject except that digitoxin acts more powerfully on the vessels than some of the others, and that erythrophlœine acts more on the medulla and less on the heart than any other glucoside hitherto examined.

All the digitalis bodies then increase the arterial blood-pressure partly through changes in the heart, and partly through contraction of the vascular walls. There is on the one side an unusually large amount of blood expelled by the heart, on the other, unusual resistance to its passage out of the arteries. And this appears to be the final result when digitoxin is injected. But when strophanthin, digitalin or convallamarin is used, a further complication arises, for these have a somewhat less marked vascular action, and though the vessels of the abdominal organs are contracted in the same way as by digi-

toxin, those of the extremities dilate. This dilation is partly owing to the increased pressure in the interior overcoming the contraction of the walls, but is mainly to be ascribed to a reflex stimulation of the vaso-dilator centre induced by the contraction of the abdominal vessels. The result is that while the outflow from all the vessels is retarded by digitoxin, the blood current in the splanchnic area alone is slower under strophanthin, while that in the limbs is actually accelerated.

It follows that under all of the series the blood tends to accumulate on the arterial side at the expense of the venous, for more blood is

FIG. 43.



Tracings of the blood-pressure and the volume of the leg and of the spleen of the dog under strophanthus. The volume of the leg increases with the blood-pressure, *i. e.*, the vessels of the leg are dilated; that of the spleen diminishes, *i. e.*, the vessels are contracted; 10 mg. of strophanthus were injected intravenously at *a*, followed by 5 mg. at *b*. (GOTTLIEB and MAGNUS.)

pumped into the arteries and it has greater difficulty in escaping. But while under digitoxin the different regions of the body appear to be equally affected, strophanthin, digitalin and convallamarin not only tend to accumulate the blood on the arterial side, but divert it from the internal organs to the limbs.

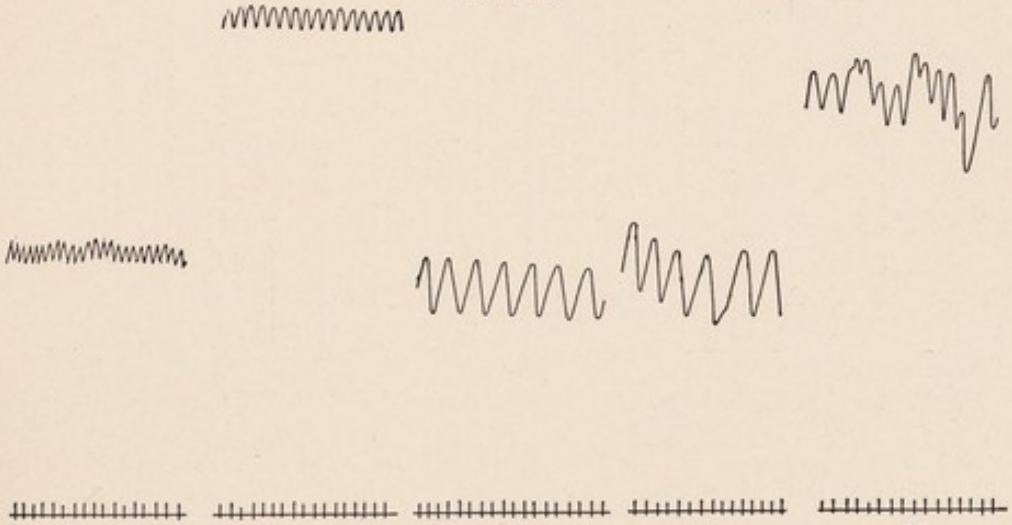
When the extreme slowing of the *second stage* appears, the output of the heart is reduced, and the pressure in the aorta and the velocity of the blood may become subnormal (Fig. 44). When the acceleration of the *third stage* follows, the output is again augmented and may be greater than ever; the blood-pressure and velocity increase, but the heart soon becomes irregular in the force of its contractions, the output varies from second to second, and the pressure and velocity in the aorta falls slowly. The blood-pressure tracing shows the irregularity of the heart more or less accurately, but must not be taken to indicate at all the real condition of that organ, as the constriction of the arterioles

varies at different times. Eventually the pressure falls to zero when the heart ceases.

In the pulmonary circulation the pressure is not raised by some of the series such as strophanthin and helleborein, while after digitalis a very distinct rise in the pressure in the pulmonary artery is seen. Yet all of them increase the output of the right ventricle. The explanation of this paradox probably is that the pulmonary vessels can contain not only the ordinary supply of blood, but also an increased volume without offering any great resistance. If, however, the lumen of the pulmonary vessels be narrowed, as by digitalis, and an increased amount of blood must be accommodated at the same time, sufficient resistance is met with to augment the pressure in the pulmonary artery considerably. In the later stages the pulmonary circulation presents changes similar to those of the systemic.

Action on the **Renal Secretion.** When digitalis was first introduced to the notice of the medical profession by Withering, its action on the heart was not appreciated. Withering used it only to remove accumu-

FIG. 44.



Blood-pressure tracing under digitalis. *A*, normal; *B*, therapeutic stage; *C*, excessive inhibition causing a low blood-pressure from lessened output of the heart. *D*, excessive inhibition with some irregularity in rhythm. *E*, third stage of irregularity, during which the blood-pressure rises again from the increased output of the heart and the further contraction of the vessels.

lations of fluid from the body, which it accomplished by increasing the secretion of urine. This observation of Withering was soon confirmed by further experience in the use of this drug, but it was long disputed whether this diuretic action occurred in health, or whether it was not confined to cases in which pathological accumulations of fluid were present. Digitalis, however, as is now conceded by almost everyone, causes some increase in the quantity of urine secreted by the normal animal, although this is small compared with that in cases of dropsy. The fluid of the urine is much more largely augmented than the solids, which may remain unchanged. The cause of this increase in the renal secretion is not generally believed to be a direct action on the secretory epithelium, such as is met with under caffeine; on the

contrary, the kidneys themselves are supposed to be acted on only indirectly through the changes in the circulation. The renal vessels are contracted by the members of this series in the same way as the vessels of the other abdominal organs (Gottlieb and Magnus), and this might be expected to lessen the secretion of urine, for other agencies which contract the renal vessels have this effect. The diuresis induced by digitalis must accordingly be ascribed to the cardiac changes and not to the vaso-constrictor action. It may be supposed that the accumulation of the blood in the arteries and the consequent fall of the venous pressure, which has been shown to occur, lead to an augmented flow of the lymph into the blood vessels, and that the blood is thus diluted and

FIG. 45.

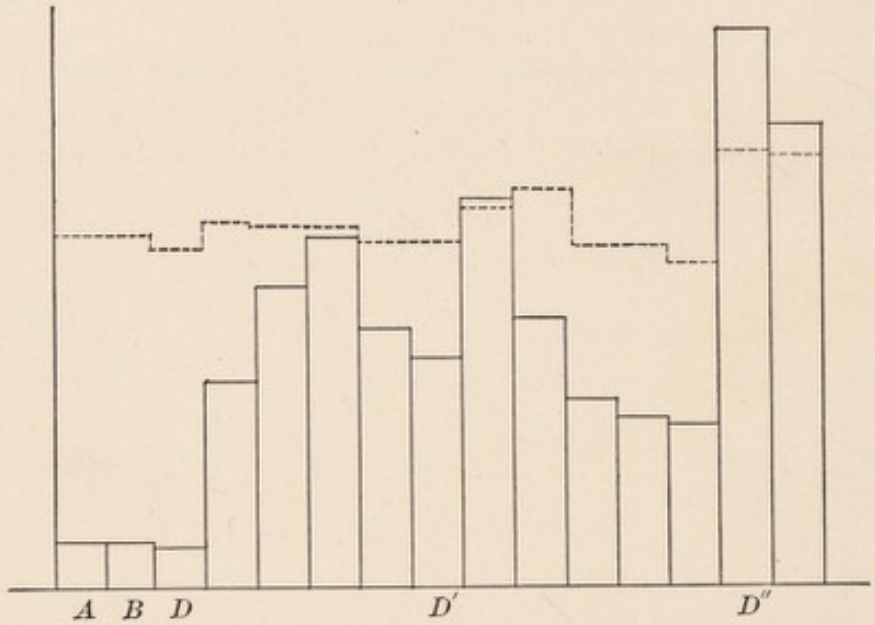


Diagram representing the secretion of urine in a rabbit under digitalis. Each rectangle represents the amount of urine secreted in ten minutes. *A* and *B*, normal secretion. In the next ten minutes a small dose of digitalis *D* was injected intravenously and a rapid increase in the secretion followed. At *D′* and *D″* further injections were made, each being succeeded by a considerably augmented flow of urine. The dotted line represents the average blood-pressure at each period. It will be observed that each injection is followed by some increase in the arterial tension. Contrast Fig. 23 (p. 250) as to the amount of the secretion, and also as to the behavior of the blood-pressure.

the kidneys therefore incited to abnormal activity, while at the same time their nutrition is improved ; and in addition, the increased pressure in the glomerulus must accelerate the filtration through the capsule. It is possible, also, that at any rate some of the members of this series act as slight irritants to the renal epithelium. The appearance of blood and albumin in the urine of animals after large doses of squills and digitalis certainly indicates some local action quite apart from the circulatory changes.

Another organ which has been examined after the injection of digitalis is **The Brain.** It was supposed at one time that digitalis might induce anæmia of the brain from its prolonging the diastolic pause, and that in aortic regurgitation this might be of serious import. It has been demonstrated, however, that the brain is more largely supplied with blood under digitalis than under normal circumstances, provided that only therapeutic doses are used.

The changes in the circulation in man can be followed only imperfectly. The heart rhythm is very distinctly slower, and the apex beat is much stronger than before the administration of the drug; the pulse is slower and stronger and the artery feels more tense. It must be added that the strength of the pulse is not to be regarded as a gauge of the changes in the cardiac muscle, for it is due not only to the increased strength of the cardiac contraction but also to its slow rhythm. When the heart is beating rapidly, the arteries have no time to empty themselves completely, and the pulse is small, while on the other hand, when digitalis slows the heart, the arteries have time to empty their contents into the capillaries before the next contraction occurs, the walls therefore become more flaccid, and a new wave of blood causes a more distinct impulse. In some cases of fever the vagus seems to have less control over the heart than usual, and after digitalis there is no very marked slowing, although the action on the cardiac muscle may be fully developed. The pulse is harder owing to the increased blood-pressure, but it is not much slower, and the impulse does not seem stronger than before. If the physician, judging from the pulse that the drug has been given in too small quantities, prescribes larger doses, the effects on the heart may be disastrous, as the third stage of irregularity and less perfect action of the heart may be induced. In those cases in which this series seems to have no action on the pulse, the heart and the general condition of the circulation must be very carefully examined before larger quantities are prescribed. If, for example, the urine be found increased, or the œdema is less marked than before, or the breathlessness and the dyspnœa have disappeared, the drug is fulfilling its chief purpose, even though the pulse remains apparently unchanged.

In **Cases of Poisoning** with the digitalis series, the most alarming symptoms arise from the circulatory changes. In the well-known case of Koppe, who accidentally poisoned himself in the course of his investigations on digitoxin, the first symptoms were uneasiness, giddiness, nausea and vomiting, and great muscular weakness. The pulse then fell to about half its normal rate and became intermittent, and the increasing muscular weakness was accompanied by precordial anxiety, imperfect vision, and constant nausea and vomiting, which prevented sleep and rest, and which persisted for over thirty-six hours without improvement. The symptoms then slowly disappeared and he recovered entirely in about a week. The quantity taken by him was 2 mg. ($\frac{1}{30}$ gr.), but four days previously he had taken 1 mg. ($\frac{1}{60}$ gr.), and it is possible that this may not have been absorbed completely. In any case the small dose of digitoxin necessary to induce almost fatal symptoms indicates that it is one of the most powerful poisons known at present.

The main action of this series is on the circulation, but some other results of their administration of less consequence have been observed. Thus in fever the **Temperature** is not infrequently reduced, although it remains unchanged after the administration of digitalis to the normal

animal. This action is said by some to be the result of collapse, while others believe it to be due to the changes in the circulation, but neither of these seems to be a very happy explanation. It has been stated already that the members of this series act as stimulants to some parts of the central nervous system, and a possible explanation of their antipyretic action would be an increased activity of the temperature-controlling centre. It has been shown by Harnack that several central nervous stimulants, including picrotoxin, cause a fall in the temperature in this way.

Another observation which has been made in regard to this series is that it tends to weaken and eventually to paralyze the **Muscles**, and still more, the terminations of the peripheral **Nerves** of the frog. For this purpose it has to be applied in quantities which would at once stop the mammalian heart, and this action certainly never even commences in warm-blooded animals. Large quantities of digitalis are said to act on the unstriated muscle of several organs, such as the stomach and uterus, and to increase their movements.

Preparations.

Digitalis (U. S. P.), **Digitalis Folia** (B. P.), foxglove, the leaves of Digitalis purpurea collected from plants of the second year's growth. 0.03–0.1 G. (½–2 grs.).

Extractum Digitalis (U. S. P.), 10–20 mg. (⅙–⅓ gr.).

Extractum Digitalis Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.05–0.1 c.c. (1–2 mins.).

Infusum Digitalis, U. S. P., 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. dr.); B. P., 2–4 fl. drs.

Tinctura Digitalis (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

"*Digitaline*" of commerce varies much in composition and in dose, sometimes proving entirely inert, while at other times it has proved poisonous in comparatively small quantities. Crystalline digitaline very often consists largely of digitonin, which is entirely devoid of the digitalin action. Other preparations seem to contain much digitophyllin. "*Digitalinum verum*" is said to be pure digitalin, and may be injected subcutaneously without danger. 2 6 mg. (1/30–1/10 gr.).

Digitoxin has been prescribed in doses of 1/12 mg. (7/360 gr.), but the forms at present on the market vary greatly in strength.

The tincture and infusion are the most commonly used preparations. The extract and the powdered leaves may be given in the form of pills. The preparations ought to be freshly made, and solutions of "digitaline" and digitoxin must not be kept, as they soon decompose and become entirely inert.

Strophanthus (U. S. P.), the seeds of Strophanthus hispidus.

Strophanthi Semina (B. P.), the seeds of Strophanthus Kombé.

Extractum Strophanthi (B. P.), ¼–1 gr.

Tinctura Strophanthi (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.3–1.0 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Strophanthin (non-pharmacopœial) varies in composition and in power. Its dose is generally given as 1 mg. (1/60 gr.), but this is often devoid of action, while in other cases 0.2 mg. has been found a sufficient dose, and it is therefore to be used with caution. Its solutions are very liable to decompose and have to be freshly prepared.

Scilla (U. S. P., B. P.), squills, the bulb of Urginea maritima, Urginea Scilla, or Scilla maritima, deprived of its dry membranaceous outer scales and cut into thin slices. 0.05–0.2 G. (1–3 grs.) in pills.

Acetum Scillæ (U. S P., B. P.), 1–2 c.c. (15–30 mins.).

Extractum Scillæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.05–0.1 c.c. (1–2 mins.).

Tinctura Scillæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Syrupus Scillæ (U. S. P., B. P.), 2–4 c.c. (30–60 mins.).

Syrupus Scillæ Compositus (U. S. P.), containing senega and tartar emetic, 0.5–2 c.c. (10–30 mins.).

Oxymel Scillæ (B. P.), ½–1 fl. dr.

Pilula Scillæ Composita (B. P.), contains ginger and ammoniacum, 4–8 grs.

Pilula Ipecacuanhæ cum Scilla (B. P.), contains 5 per cent. opium. 4–8 grs.

Squills is often prescribed in pill form as a diuretic; as an expectorant the syrup is more often used. The compound syrup, U. S. P., or the pill of Ipecac and Squill, B. P., may be ordered instead of a cough mixture, as they contain the chief constituents of such remedies.

Scillitoxin, etc., of commerce are merely purified extracts and not pure principles.

Apocynum (U. S. P.), Canadian hemp, the root of Apocynum cannabinum.

Extractum Apocyni Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Convallaria (U. S. P.), Lily of the Valley, the rhizome and roots of Convallaria majalis.

Extractum Convallariæ Fluidum (U. S. P.), 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Euonymus (U. S. P.), **Euonymi Cortex** (B. P.), Wahoo, the bark of the roots of Euonymus atropurpureus.

Extractum Euonymi (U. S. P.), 0.05–0.2 G. (1–3 grs.).

Extractum Euonymi Siccum (B. P.), 1–2 grs.

Therapeutic Uses. — The chief purpose for which this series is used in therapeutics is to counteract certain changes in the circulation, which result in the blood accumulating in the veins in too large quantities, while the arteries are less completely filled than usual. And first of all, in cases of dilatation of the heart with a weak and insufficient systole, its action is almost specific. This is true whether one or both ventricular chambers are affected, as long as the cardiac muscle itself has not undergone degeneration. In these cases the action is very simple — the increased ventricular systole approaches the normal, the output of the heart is increased, and in some cases at any rate, the dilatation is diminished by the direct action of the drug. The effect is an increased velocity and pressure in the arteries, and an improved nutrition of the whole body. The organ which suffers most of all under the malnutrition caused by dilatation of the chambers is the heart itself, and, accordingly, in these cases the heart is found better nourished and has more of a tendency to hypertrophy after digitalis or its allies. Eventually the walls of the heart become so enlarged as to be able to carry on the work without the additional stimulation of digitalis, and the drug ought therefore to be stopped. It must be remembered that the hypertrophy of the heart is not a direct effect of this series, which only puts the organ in a condition in which it receives more nourishment and is therefore more likely to hypertrophy. The effects in these cases of dilatation seem to be attributable entirely to the action on the cardiac muscle.

It is frequently stated that the slowing of the heart, which allows the heart more time to rest and more time to fill itself, is accountable for the improvement. But numerous other drugs slow the heart quite as much and in exactly the same way, yet are of no benefit but rather the reverse in those condi-

tions in which digitalis is most valuable. Aconitine, for example, slows the heart by stimulating the vagus centre, but no one would dream of using aconite as a substitute for digitalis in dilatation of the ventricles.

Another explanation of the action of digitalis in cardiac dilatation is that the vagus being the trophic nerve of the heart, its stimulation increases the tendency of the heart to hypertrophy, and this series therefore causes hypertrophy by stimulation of the trophic nerve. Any explanation which requires the assumption of trophic nerves is fraught with danger, however, and this one is easily refuted by the fact that aconite does not induce hypertrophy of the heart.

The true explanation of the action of digitalis is the action on the cardiac muscle, by which the systole is strengthened and the output of the heart is increased.

Mitral incompetency may be taken as a concrete example of cardiac disease. Here some of the blood, instead of passing into the aorta during the ventricular systole, passes back into the auricle. In course of time the auricle dilates owing to the pressure during its diastole, and the consequence is that the lungs become congested, the right ventricle and eventually the right auricle dilate, and the whole systemic circulation is retarded. Œdema and dropsy follow, the kidneys and other organs become overfilled with blood, and the whole economy is thrown into disorder. The left ventricle is not affected directly by the pressure, but it suffers in the general malnutrition, and may become weak and dilated like the rest of the heart. If now one of this series be given, the right and left ventricles commence to beat more strongly, their output is increased, and the blood is forced through the lungs. It still regurgitates into the left auricle, but the proportion passing back to that driven forward is smaller, owing to the increase in systole, which lessens the mitral orifice. Moreover the right ventricle is able to overcome the pressure in the pulmonary artery, and therefore soon ceases to drive blood into the right auricle, and the systemic veins can pass their blood into the heart without difficulty. The congestion of the organs rapidly disappears, the kidneys become better nourished, and finding large quantities of fluid accumulated in the body, at once proceed to excrete it. The heart itself improves in condition, but more work is required of it than in the normal body, because some of its work is still lost through the blood passing backwards from the ventricle instead of forwards. The muscle responds to the strain by hypertrophy, and when this process is complete, the drugs have fulfilled their purpose, and further administration is useless and may be dangerous.

The only action of the drug required here is the increased contraction of the ventricles and auricles in systole, and this is exactly the point in which this series differs from all others. At the same time, if the diastolic dilatation becomes less marked, as it does in many experiments on the normal heart, this must also aid in such a case, because the more dilated the ventricle, the less perfectly does the mitral valve close the auriculo-ventricular orifice at the beginning of systole. If then the dilatation of the heart becomes less, either from a direct action of the drug, or as a result of the improved nutrition of the muscle, the imperfection of the valve may be compensated for by the narrowing of

the orifice. If the muscular action predominates sufficiently over the inhibitory, a further factor may aid in repairing the breach of the valve, for the auricular muscle is acted on in the same way as the ventricular—its contraction is more complete, and the auricle therefore empties itself more perfectly, and contains less blood at the beginning of the ventricular systole than it otherwise would. If, in addition, the auricular relaxation is lessened by digitalis, a greater resistance must be offered to the regurgitating blood. The increased contraction of the papillary muscles may also aid in the therapeutic effect by closing the valves more completely.

In aortic incompetency the same beneficial results may be expected, because here again there is more blood expelled into the aorta, and at a higher pressure. The less dilated ventricle also presents a greater resistance to the return of the blood. It is true that longer time is allowed for the blood to pass back into the ventricle owing to the prolongation of the diastolic pause, but this does not seem to be sufficient to counterbalance the benefits of the more complete contraction of the ventricle.

In narrowing of the orifices, the improvement observed after digitalis may also be explained by the stronger and more complete contraction of the ventricles. Stenosis very rarely occurs unaccompanied by regurgitation, however, and the diminution of the backward flow may be the main object attained by these drugs in this condition.

On the right side of the heart the same action occurs as on the left, and in dilatation of the right ventricle, which often occurs as the result of pulmonary disease, this series acts by increasing the strength of the ventricular contraction. In these cases of cardiac dilatation resulting from pulmonary disease, it would seem that those of the series which have least effect on the pulmonary vessels ought to be the most beneficial. Strophanthus, as has been stated, acts as strongly on the heart, but much less strongly on the vessels than digitalis, and it might therefore be expected that it would prove preferable to the latter in those cases. Whether this is correct or not can only be decided by clinical experience, and the point has not been investigated sufficiently to allow of a definite statement.

In numerous acute febrile conditions the heart becomes affected, possibly in part by the high temperature, but largely from the toxic products circulating in the blood. The chief cardiac symptoms are dilatation with a weak systole and a small "fluttering" pulse. In these cases digitalis and other similar drugs may be of great service in slowing the accelerated heart, and in increasing the extent of systole, and thus improving the general circulation. In pneumonia more especially, great improvement is often seen after digitalis. In this disease besides the toxic action on the heart, there may be present more or less obstruction of the pulmonary vessels through pressure resulting in overwork and dilatation of the right heart. If this is a prominent factor, one might expect that strophanthus would be more beneficial than digitalis, while if the heart is directly affected by the high tem-

perature and the toxines, digitalis would be preferable, owing to its increasing the tone of the arteries as well as the heart. The routine treatment of pneumonia with digitalis is often recommended, but is to be deprecated on the general principle that a drug is not to be prescribed until some special indication for it appears; unless distinct evidence of circulatory disturbance is present, digitalis ought to be withheld.

In acute fevers the inhibitory mechanism is often less irritable than normally, and the activity of the drug must not be estimated by the slowness of the pulse. (See page 455.)

In some forms of dilatation of the heart digitalis and its allies are to be avoided. Thus where extensive degeneration of the heart muscle is present, as in fatty heart, little or no benefit from the muscular action is to be expected, for the muscle itself is too weak to respond to the stimulation. On the other hand, digitalis, by increasing the pressure against which the heart has to contract, may cause the most serious results — the systole becomes even weaker than before its administration, and brain anæmia, syncope, and not infrequently sudden death follow. In other cases, while the condition of the heart is eminently suitable for digitalis treatment, disease of other parts of the body may preclude its use. Thus if extensive degeneration of the arterial coats is present, the increased pressure in the interior of the vessels may lead to rupture of their walls and apoplexy. In those cases, if any of the series is to be given, it ought to be strophanthus, which causes a less extensive rise in the blood-pressure than digitalis, and it is recommended that either be prescribed along with some drug to dilate the vessels and lessen the arterial tension, such as nitroglycerin or some other of the nitrite series. In treating with digitalis and a member of the nitrite series, it is found that the digitalis action sets in somewhat slowly, and persists for a long time, while the nitrites act rapidly, but are excreted comparatively soon. The best results are therefore obtained by frequent small doses of nitroglycerin, which need not be administered for some hours after the first dose of digitalis.

In some cases dilatation of the heart seems to be due, at any rate in part, to increased arterial tension from disease of the arterial walls and of the kidneys. In these cases digitalis is to be used with caution, because of its vaso-constrictor action, and perhaps strophanthus is to be preferred to digitalis, unless one of the nitrite series is associated with the latter.

Valvular disease is not in itself an indication for digitalis, for the heart tends to undergo compensatory hypertrophy in favorable conditions without the use of any drug whatever, and digitalis is indicated only when no such compensation occurs. At the same time hypertrophy of the heart is not a contra-indication, as is often stated, for a special strain may cause excessive dilatation in a hypertrophied heart, and digitalis may be necessary until a second hypertrophy has occurred and restored the equilibrium once more.

Digitalis is often prescribed in tachycardia (rapid heart) in order to

slow the rhythm only, but if no other symptoms than acceleration are present, other drugs, such as aconite or strychnine, may be substituted for digitalis, and do not entail the other changes in the circulation.

It has been mentioned that the exhibition of digitalis in fever is often followed by a fall of temperature, and Traube recommended it as an antipyretic, but it is no longer used for this purpose, as the modern antipyretics are much more powerful and certain in their action, and at the same time are less dangerous.

The diuretic action of digitalis is also not advised except where other indications than a diminution of the renal secretion are present, for in ordinary cases it has much less effect than caffeine and other diuretics. If the anuria be secondary to disturbances of the circulation, however, digitalis is the diuretic par excellence and cannot be replaced by any of the ordinary means of promoting the urinary secretion, although they may advantageously be combined with it. Squills is more frequently used as a diuretic than digitalis, and it seems probable that in addition to its action on the heart and circulation, it exercises some direct stimulant influence on the renal epithelium. Squills and digitalis are often prescribed together, where large accumulations of fluid have to be removed. A famous pill used in these cases contains a grain each of digitalis, squills and calomel.

Several of these drugs are of considerable benefit in pulmonary diseases accompanied by cough. Thus in bronchitis, more especially in cases of old standing, the addition of squills to an "expectorant mixture" is often followed by the most satisfactory results. The action here is probably two-fold. In the first place, the right heart may be dilated owing to the frequent strain put on it by coughing, and squills remedies this condition by its usual cardiac action. In the second place, all these drugs possess to a certain extent emetic properties, and thus cause an increase in the bronchial secretion, and render the sputum less tenacious and more easily expectorated. The addition of squills, in which this property is more developed than in the others, has the same effect as the prescription of ipecacuanha, along with the further action on the heart.

Digitalis is sometimes prescribed to stop hæmorrhages, but though it constricts the vessels it accelerates the flow through them, and, as in the case of other hæmostatics, the benefits arising from the treatment are problematical.

Squills was at one time used as an emetic, but this cannot be recommended, owing to the danger of its absorption. Euonymus has been employed as a purgative more frequently than as a cardiac remedy. (See page 107.)

Some conditions in which the cardiac action of this series is to be elicited only with the greatest caution, have been already indicated. A further danger, which attends the use of digitalis perhaps more than that of the rest of the series, is due to its **Cumulative Action.** For the first day or two after the exhibition of this drug, no effects may be noted in the pulse or general circulation; the ordinary symp-

toms are then produced, and if the drug be continued, remain fairly constant for some time. Sometimes much more marked symptoms of digitalis action appear suddenly, however,—the pulse becomes alarmingly slow and irregular, the patient complains of weakness and faintness, nausea and occasionally vomiting, in fact the symptoms of the second stage set in. This is known as cumulative action, and is probably due to irregularities in the absorption and excretion or destruction of the poison. It is known that the absorption is slow, for 12–36 hours may elapse before any effects follow the exhibition of the drug. On the other hand, the excretion or destruction must be equally slow, for the symptoms sometimes last for several days after it has been discontinued. If then anything happens to disturb the equilibrium of absorption and excretion, if, for example, the excretion is slower than usual, or if any irritation of the stomach and intestines causes a more rapid absorption, the drug accumulates in the blood, and the same effect is produced as if a poisonous dose had been administered. In order to avoid this cumulative effect, the condition of the pulse must be carefully controlled, and as soon as the circulation shows any signs of excessive action, the drug ought to be discontinued for one or two days and resumed in smaller quantities. These cases of poisoning are not serious if observed in time. Some members of the series—strophanthus and squills—are said not to be cumulative, but some doubt exists as to the truth of this assertion.

Another disagreeable feature observed in the use of this series is the action on the stomach and intestine. As has been noted already, the local action may produce the usual symptoms of gastric irritability, and the patient suffers from loss of appetite, nausea and gastric discomfort, just when it is important that the nutrition should be the best attainable. Numerous attempts have therefore been made to obtain preparations which possess the cardiac without the local action. Some of these seem to be fairly free from irritant properties; for example, some of the digitalines can even be injected subcutaneously without giving rise to any irritation or inflammation. But unfortunately all those preparations vary so much in strength, even when prepared by the same method, that their use is scarcely to be recommended. At the same time, in cases where the ordinary pharmacopœial preparations cause marked gastric irritation, some of the so-called "pure principles" may be made use of with advantage.

So little is known regarding the comparative action of the members of this series that the special indications for each individual are altogether indefinite. It is recognized that strophanthus acts less on the vessels than digitalis, and this gives an indication for its use in some cases. On the other hand, squills acts more on the kidneys than either, and is therefore given frequently as an adjuvant to digitalis in cases where diuresis is desired. It also irritates the gastric mucous membrane more, and is often used as an expectorant. But the details of the action of each are still to be worked out. One important question, which is practically unbroken ground, is the relative action of each on

the vagus centre and on the heart. The beneficial results from the use of digitalis are, as has been pointed out already, to be ascribed almost entirely to its action on the cardiac muscle. The stimulation of the vagus may conceivably lessen the benefits of the cardiac action by weakening the auricular contraction and slowing the rhythm, so that it would be of considerable interest and importance to find a drug having the same cardiac action without the inhibitory,[1] and, failing in this, to compare the effects of digitalis alone with those of digitalis and a drug which weakens the inhibitory action. This would have to be given in quantities sufficient to prevent an increased inhibition without cutting off the normal restraining impulses which pass down the vagi, and the treatment would be rendered considerably more difficult.

Bibliography.

The bibliography on the digitalis series is so extensive that the student can only be referred to that given by the following authors.

Boehm. Pflüger's Arch. f. d. ges. Physiol., v., p. 153.
Schmiedeberg. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xvi., p. 149.
Kobert. Ibid., xxii., p. 77.
Francois-Franck. Clinique medicale de la Charite. Paris, 1894, p. 549.
Cushny. Journ. of Exp. Med., ii., p. 233.
Harnack. Berl. klin. Woch., 1895, p. 759. (Erythrophlœine.)
Marshall. Journ. of Physiol., xxii., p. 1.
Pfaff. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxii., p. 1.
Klingenberg. Ibid., xxxiii., p. 353.
Goldenberg. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1892.
Jarmerstedt. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xi., p. 22. (Scilla.)
Cervello. Ibid., xv., p. 235. (Adonis.)
Fraser. Trans. Roy. Soc. Edinburgh, 1890 and 1891. (Strophanthus.)
Fraser and Tillie. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., v., p. 349. (Acokanthera.)
Prevost. Trav. du Lab. therapeut. exp., ii., p. 221.
Lewin. Virchow's Arch., cxxxiv., p. 231; cxxxvi., p. 83; cxxxviii., p. 283.
Kiliani. Arch. der Pharmacie, 1892–1899.
Hedbom. Skandin. Arch. f. Phys., viii., p. 185. Arch. f. exp. Path., xlv., p. 317.
Fraenkel. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xl., p. 40.
Resh. Ibid., xliii., p. 130.
Straub. Ibid., xlv., p. 317.
Cloetta. Ibid., xlv., p. 435.
Gottlieb, Sahli, etc. Verhand. d. Congress f. inn. Med., 1901.
Feist. Ber. d. deutsch. chem. Gesell., 1900, p. 2063. (Strophanthin.)
Wybauw. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xliv., p. 434.
Braun u. Mager. Sitzungsb. d. Wiener Akad. Math. naturwissen. Cl., cviii., iii., p. 471.
Faust. Ueber Bufonin u. Bufotalin, Leipsig, 1902.
Gottlieb and Magnus. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlvii., p. 135.

XXX. SUPRARENAL OR ADRENAL GLANDS.

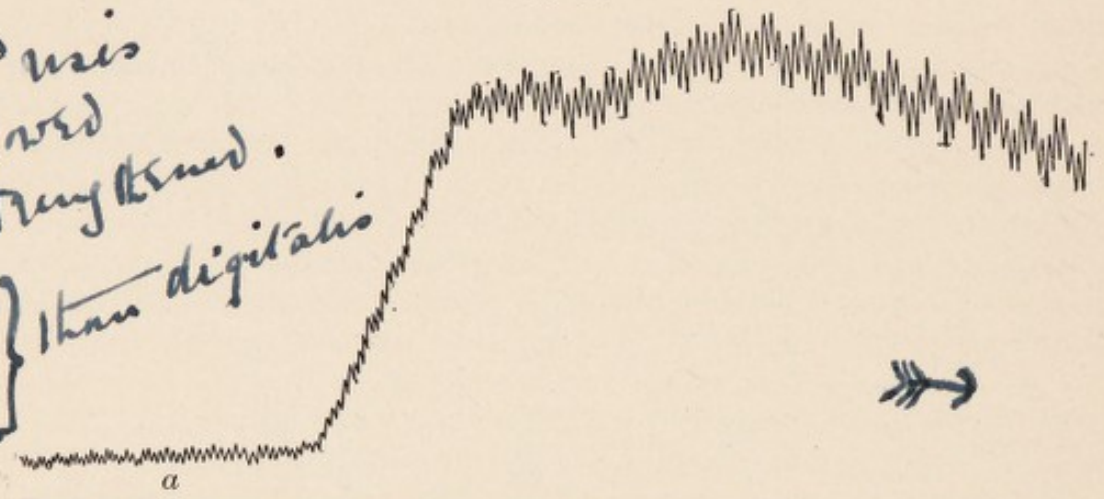
The suprarenal capsules of animals have recently been shown to contain a body which possesses a powerful action on the organism, and which the glands normally secrete into the blood vessels. The active principle, *Epinephrine*[2] ($C_{10}H_{11}NO_3$), has been isolated by Abel and Crawford by a complicated process, and has proved to be a base which

[1] Helleborein has comparatively little action on the inhibition, but in a number of cases of cardiac disease in which I have attempted to substitute it for digitalis it induced irritation of the intestine and diarrhœa through its local irritant action.

[2] The bodies known as *Suprarennin* (Fürth) and *Adrenalin* (Takamine and Aldrich) appear to be slightly modified epinephrine.

probably contains a pyrrhol or skatol nucleus, and is nearly related to the vegetable alkaloids; epinephrine itself is so unstable that it is decomposed by attempts to isolate it, and though the salts are less easily changed, they also appear to undergo some alteration when kept for some time, for they become much less soluble. Comparatively few experiments have been done with the pure substance, but there is no question that it possesses the characteristic action of the extracts, though some results described as arising from these may be due to proteids or other impurities, such as choline and neurine. This active principle exists only in the medulla of the gland, and therefore does not represent the whole function of the organ in all probability.

FIG. 46.



Tracing of the blood-pressure under the influence of extract of suprarenal gland, which was injected into the jugular vein at *a*.

In the frog, the suprarenal extract causes paralysis of the central nervous system, which is of only short duration, however, even when large quantities are injected. In mammals the hypodermic application of large doses is followed, as a general rule, by some excitement, agitation, and often tremors, although these are not marked in the rabbit; vomiting has been observed by Gourfein in dogs. This stage is followed by paresis of the hind limbs, often by rapid respiration and dyspnœa, and eventually by failure of the respiration and death. In some animals the urine is increased in quantity, and hæmorrhages occur from the mucous membranes and from the kidney. It is to be noted that only large quantities of the gland are fatal when they are injected hypodermically, and it may be doubted whether any symptoms can be produced when it is absorbed from the stomach and intestines. Abel states that a strong solution of epinephrine applied to the tongue induces partial anæsthesia, which may, perhaps, be due to the constriction of the vessels; it possesses a weak bitter taste.

On the other hand, comparatively small quantities elicit marked symptoms when they are injected into the blood vessels, these consisting in a very rapid and very pronounced rise of the blood-pressure, with slowing and strengthening of the heart beat. The action of the

suprarenal extract injected into a vein is in short that of the members of the digitalis series. The slowness of the pulse is due to stimulation of the pneumogastric centre in the medulla oblongata, while the heart muscle is affected in the same way as by digitalis, that is, its systole is much strengthened and its diastole is often rendered less complete. The rise in the blood-pressure is due chiefly to a marked contraction of the peripheral arterioles from direct action on the muscular coats, in part to the increased efficiency of the cardiac contractions, perhaps in part to stimulation of the vaso-motor centre.

The extract differs from the digitalis series chiefly in the rapidity with which these changes are elicited, in the rise of blood-pressure being greater, and in the action passing off more quickly. Mere traces of epinephrine are sufficient to cause this change in the blood-pressure when they are injected intravenously, while no distinct effect is produced by much larger quantities injected subcutaneously or administered by the mouth. An explanation of this fact as well as of the short duration of the action may, perhaps, be found in the instability of the epinephrine; the base itself, or some closely related product, has been found in the urine by Abel after its intravenous injection.

Large quantities of the extract injected into a vein cause the same form of irregularity as the members of the digitalis series, and in one case fibrillary contraction of the heart has been observed from it. The frog's heart seems to be acted on less by suprarenal extract than the mammals', but Oliver and Schäfer observed changes in it similar to those induced by digitalis.

Some of the vessels do not seem to be influenced by it so much as others; thus the pulmonary vessels are not narrowed at all or only very slightly, and even the direct application of the extract to the lungs does not cause pallor. The cerebral vessels also seem to undergo no constriction and in fact some evidence of their dilatation is presented by the widening of the retinal vessels. This is due to the constriction of the vessels in other parts of the body which diverts to the brain a larger amount of blood than usual. Gerhardt states that the vessels of muscle are scarcely changed in calibre, while those of the skin are contracted, but not in so marked degree as those of the abdominal organs. The constriction of the vessels of the stomach, intestine and other organs whose blood flow is regulated by the splanchnic nerve, is apparently the chief factor in the rise of blood-pressure, although the action is by no means confined to these. Even neighboring organs vary considerably in their reactions; for example, the uterine vessels are constricted while those of the bladder are much less affected.

The contraction of the vessel walls may be demonstrated by perfusing blood containing epinephrine or the gland extract through the artery of an excised organ, for very much less blood escapes from the vein than when pure blood is used. Or a solution of the extract may be applied to the exposed mesentery, when the vessels are often entirely obliterated. The mucous membranes are similarly affected as is well

seen in irritation of the conjunctiva, for the redness and congestion give place to pallor when epinephrine solution is applied. It has no effect on the unbroken skin, through which it is unable to penetrate to the vessels, but denuded surfaces become pale and anæmic under its influence and hæmorrhages cease from the smaller vessels and capillaries.

In addition to the vessels a number of other forms of unstriated muscle are thrown into a condition of spasmodic contraction by suprarenal extract. Thus the muscular fibres of the eye that are innervated from the superior cervical ganglion undergo contraction when the drug is injected intravenously or applied locally. This results in dilatation of the pupil, withdrawal of the nictitating membrane, separation of the eyelids and protrusion of the eyeball, exactly as after cocaine or stimulation of the cervical sympathetic. The suprarenal extract differs from cocaine, however, in inducing those effects by acting directly on the muscle fibres and not on the nerve ends, for these changes can be elicited after complete degeneration of the nerve terminations. The muscle fibres supplied by the third nerve are unaffected. The contraction of some involuntary muscles is inhibited by suprarenal extract, so that the cardiac sphincter of the stomach and the internal anal sphincter relax, and the movements of the stomach, intestine and bladder are retarded or altogether arrested. The uterus, vagina, vas deferens, seminal vesicles and the external genital organs are all contracted and anæmic in contrast to the relaxed condition of the stomach and intestine.

The secretion of the salivary glands and of the mucous glands of the mouth and throat are increased, apparently through stimulation of the nerve terminations, as under pilocarpine. The secretion is arrested by atropine, but can be reinstated by larger amounts of suprarenal extract which is a more powerful antagonist to atropine than pilocarpine. The lachrymal glands and the bile are also increased, while the secretion of the pancreatic juice and of the sweat is probably unchanged.

Suprarenal extract injected hypodermically induces glycosuria, apparently through altering the activity of the liver and pancreas, for the sugar of the blood is considerably increased.

Preparations. — No preparation of the suprarenal bodies is pharmacopœial as yet. Occasionally the fresh gland is used, but as a general rule the gland dried and powdered, or a dry extract is preferred; tablets may be made from these and dissolved in water when necessary. The active constituent is not decomposed by boiling, and the solution may be sterilized. It is important to remember that the solution rapidly deteriorates on keeping, so that it must be freshly made when its full activity is required. A very active preparation has been put on the market under the name of *adrenalin*, which appears to be a slightly altered epinephrine; a solution of one part of adrenalin in one thousand to ten thousand of water has many advantages over the ordinary gland extracts.

Therapeutic Uses. — Disease of the suprarenal gland leads to a series

rapidly oxidised in tissues

of symptoms known as Addison's disease, and it has been supposed that the extract of the gland might counteract this condition by supplying the substance whose deficiency induced the symptoms. As a matter of fact, however, but little success has attended its use for this purpose, and the failure may perhaps be due to the method of application, for it has been shown repeatedly that the characteristic effects of epinephrine cannot be elicited by its administration by the mouth or subcutaneously. It is possible that the extract might prove beneficial if it could be brought into the blood directly but this is quite impossible in a chronic condition such as Addison's disease. Its general action on the circulation might be taken advantage of in such emergencies as heart failure under anæsthesia or syncope, and in fact Gottlieb has shown that in animals poisoned with chloral or chloroform until the pulse has almost completely ceased, the circulation may be restored immediately by suprarenal extract. In order to elicit this action, the drug would have to be injected intravenously and little danger is to be apprehended from small doses if one can judge from the results in animals; no such treatment has yet been adopted in man.

The great use of suprarenal preparations is however due to its local effects on the vessels. No other body is known which induces such complete contraction of the vessels in any part to which it is applied, and in addition suprarenal extract has only local effects, for it is oxidized so rapidly in the tissues that it has no general effect unless injected into the blood. Complete bloodlessness of a part may thus be elicited without alteration of the general blood-pressure and in fact without any appreciable effect upon other parts of the body. This local ischæmia has been largely employed to allow of bloodless operations on the eye and to remove congestion of the conjunctiva from various causes. It is often administered with cocaine in operations on the eye (1–6 per cent. solution of dried extract). In congestion of the nasal mucous membrane and in operations on the nose it is also used extensively and with much success. It may be sprayed into the nose in the form of a ten per cent. solution, or cotton soaked in this solution may be packed into the cavity. In epistaxis and in operations on the nose, the hæmorrhage ceases almost completely and the contraction of the mucous membrane permits of a clearer view of the field of operation. Hay fever is often relieved by similar treatment with suprarenal preparations. A 10–20 per cent. solution of the dried gland has been found useful in hæmorrhage from the ear, mouth and throat.

Grunbaum first suggested its use in gastric hæmorrhage, 5–10 grains of extract being dissolved in water and swallowed; the action is confined to the mucous membrane of the stomach. Similarly it may be injected into the rectum, bladder and uterus in congestion or hæmorrhage from these organs, and Schäfer recommends it especially in post-partum hæmorrhage, in which it acts not only on the uterine vessels but also on the muscular walls and arrests the bleeding by causing a tonic contraction. In all of these cases the suprarenal preparation has to be applied directly to the bleeding organ; and no effects will

follow from its being carried to them by the circulation. The local contraction of the vessels lasts very much longer than that induced by intravenous injection, for even dilute solutions induce ischæmia lasting from thirty minutes to two hours according to the rapidity with which the extract is absorbed.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Oliver and Schäfer. Jour. of Phys., xviii., p. 230. Brit. Med. Journ., 1901, i., p. 1009.
Szymonowicz. Pflüger's Arch., lxiv., p. 97.
Bates. New York Medical Journ., lxiii., p. 647.
Gourfein. Trav. du Lab. de Therapeutique experiment. de Geneve, ii., p. 128.
Vincent. Journ. of Phys., xxii., pp. 111 and 270.
Bardier. Arch. de Phys. (5), x., p. 370. Jour. de Physiol., i., p. 950.
Gottlieb. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxviii., p. 99.
Abel. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xxviii., p. 318. Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin, July, 1897; Nov., 1901; Feb., 1902.
Lewandowsky. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1899, p. 360.
Boruttau. Pflüger's Arch., lxxviii., p. 97.
Howell, Adami, Kinnicutt. Transactions of the Congress of Amer. Physic. and Surg., iv.
Gerhardt. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xliv., p. 161.
Langley. Journ. of Physiol., xxvii., p. 237.
Richards. Medical News, Feb. 1, 1902.
Grünbaum. Brit. Med. Journ., 1900, ii., p. 1307.

XXXI. THE NITRITES.

The nitrites would naturally fall among the inorganic salts, but they act chiefly upon the circulation, so that it is convenient to place them near the digitalis series.

Those which have been examined more carefully are the *Nitrite of Sodium*, and the *Nitrous Ethers* of the methane series, especially the *Nitrite of Amyl*, which is largely used in therapeutics. In these compounds the radicle —NO is attached to the metal or alkyl through an atom of oxygen, the formulæ being K—O—NO, CH_3—O—NO, C_3H_7—O—NO, C_5H_{11}—O—NO, etc., and the chief constituent is the O—NO, the metal or radicle being of less importance. A closely allied series of bodies are the nitrates, in which the nitrogen has five affinities and is connected again to the metal or radicle by oxygen, K—O—NO_2, CH_3—O—NO_2, C_5H_{11}—O—NO_2, etc. The metallic nitrates differ entirely from the nitrites in their effects and will be discussed along with the other inorganic salts. Some of the *Nitric Ethers*, however, undergo a reduction when brought into contact with organic matter, and nitrites are thus formed, so that these bodies have effects very similar to those of the true nitrites, and have to be discussed along with them. The best known of such nitrates is the so-called *Nitroglycerin*, which is really the trinitrate of glycerin, ($CH_2(ONO_2)$-$CH(ONO_2)CH_2(ONO_2)$), and is broken up by alkalies into a mixture of nitrates and nitrites. The nitrates have practically no action in the small quantities given, so that almost all the effects of nitroglycerin are due to the nitrite formed.[1] Many other organic nitrates also form

[1] Some doubt has been expressed of late years as to whether this reduction to nitrite really occurs in the tissues, and some grounds exist for the belief that nitroglycerin acts as such (Marshall).

nitrites in the tissues, but none of them with such rapidity as nitroglycerin.

Two which have been used to some extent in the last few years are solids —*Erythrol Tetranitrate* and *Mannitol Hexanitrate*. They act much more slowly and for a longer time than nitroglycerin.

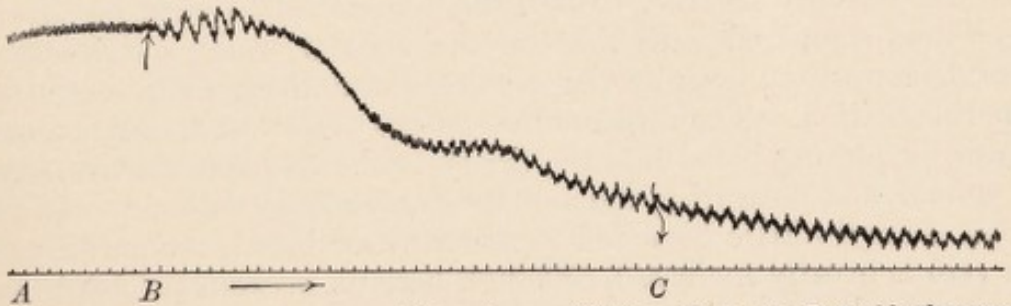
Another series of bodies which may be mentioned as occasionally acting like nitrites, although more feebly, are the nitro-bodies. In these the nitrogen is attached to the alkyl directly, and not through the intervention of an oxygen atom. Examples of these are Nitromethane, $HC(H)(H)—NO_2$, and Nitroethane, $CH_3—C(H)(H)—NO_2$. Their action is so feeble as to preclude their use in therapeutics, and seems due to the $—NO_2$ being split off in the tissues and reduced to nitrites in very small quantity.

The best known member of the group is **Amyl Nitrite**, and its action will first be described, while the points in which the effects of the other members diverge from it will be discussed later.

The characteristic results of the absorption of amyl nitrite are dilatation of the vessels and the formation of methæmoglobin.

Symptoms. — After the inhalation of a few drops of amyl nitrite, the face becomes flushed, and the patient complains of a feeling of fulness and throbbing in the head. Some headache and confusion is often pre-

FIG. 47.



Tracing of the blood-pressure in the rabbit under amyl nitrite. From *A* to *B*, the blood-pressure is the normal. At *B* the inhalation was begun and the disturbance of the respiration is reflected in the blood-pressure tracing. Immediately afterwards the blood-pressure begins to fall and continues to do so even after the inhalation ceased at *C*. Note that the rhythm and strength of the pulse are comparatively little altered.

sent, the pulse is accelerated, and the respiration is somewhat quicker and deeper. The flush is often confined to the face and neck, but sometimes spreads over the whole trunk, and passes off in a few minutes, unless the inhalation is continued. If large quantities of the drug be inhaled at once, however, or if the inhalation be continued for some time, a feeling of giddiness, weakness and eventually stupor follow, the pulse becomes slow, while the respiration still remains accelerated, but is shallower and often somewhat irregular; convulsive movements may occur, but in general large quantities may be taken without actual danger in the human subject. The blood is said to have assumed a dark color in some cases, but this seems to be rare.

Action: Circulation. — In experiments on animals, the flushing and

dilatation of the arterioles of the head is found to be accompanied and followed by a profound fall in the blood-pressure. The heart is accelerated at the same time, and seems not to be responsible for the change. The cause, as has been repeatedly demonstrated, is the dilatation of the peripheral vessels, both arterioles and veins widening very considerably under the influence of the drug; the vessels of the abdominal organs and the brain are more affected than those of the extremities. This widening of the vessels might be produced either by depression of the vaso-constrictor centre, or by depression of the nerve ends and muscle of the arterioles and as a matter of fact each of these explanations has had its supporters, but the latter is now almost universally held to be the correct one. Stimulation of a constrictor nerve such as the splanchnic still produces some rise in the blood-pressure, so that the nerve terminations seem to be intact, and the seat of action of amyl nitrite is therefore held to be the unstriated muscle of the arteries and veins. No satisfactory explanation has been offered for the fact that in the skin only the vessels of the head and neck should be dilated, but other facts seem to indicate that these vessels occupy an exceptional position as regards their innervation and their reactions to drugs. Darwin was the first to point out that the blush of amyl nitrite corresponds in extent with the blush produced by emotion. Even in the frog the arterioles of the tongue are said to dilate more than those of the mesentery and the web after the application of amyl nitrite. The vaso-constrictor centre is often said to be depressed by amyl nitrite, and this may possibly be true, though this central action must be quite insignificant compared with that on the arterial walls, and has never been demonstrated even by the most careful and ingenious methods of experimentation. The direct action on the vessel walls may be easily shown by passing blood into the artery of the amputated extremity of an animal, and measuring the amount coming from the vein. If a few drops of amyl nitrite be added to the perfused blood, the outflow from the vein is greatly increased, although here no nervous mechanism can be concerned.

The acceleration of the pulse is more marked in man and the dog than in other animals, and seems due to a depression of the inhibitory centre in the medulla oblongata, though several authors consider that a feeble direct action on the heart is also present. In the frog, as a general rule, no acceleration is caused by amyl nitrite, because there is no constant vagus tone in these animals.

Large quantities of amyl nitrite slow and weaken the contractions of the heart, owing to a direct depressing action on the muscle. In the frog, the heart is usually slowed from the beginning of the application.

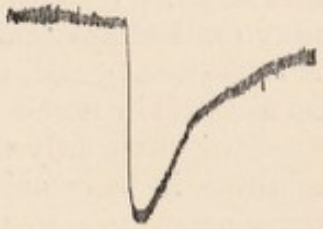
The **Respiration** is generally accelerated, and at the same time rendered deeper by amyl nitrite. Not infrequently the breath is held at first, owing to a reflex from the nasal mucous membrane, but this is not so marked as in the inhalation of more irritant vapors, such as chloroform or ether. The acceleration seems due to a direct action on

the respiratory centre in the medulla. After long inhalation, the respiration becomes slower and shallower from depression of the centre, and in animals death occurs from its complete paralysis.

The **Kidneys** are not much affected by this series; occasionally a slight increase in the urine is observed, at other times a decrease, and after large quantities anuria may occur. The changes are evidently due to the changes in the calibre of the renal vessels. A small quantity may widen them when they are too contracted to allow of the maximal secretion, while on the other hand, if the normal calibre is the optimal, a nitrite may lessen the secretion by lowering the general blood-pressure. When large quantities lower the pressure, they inevitably lead to a lessened activity of the renal epithelium, which may result in complete anuria.

Small quantities of amyl nitrite seem to have no action whatsoever on the higher parts of the **Central Nervous System**. The throbbing in the head and slight confusion are evidently due to the dilatation of the vessels, in which the brain circulation is involved as well as that of the rest of the body. The sight is curiously affected in some people, for when a dark object on a white background is looked at, it seems surrounded by a yellow ring and that again by a blue one. In the beginning the medullary centres may be acted on reflexly from irritation of the nasal sensory terminations; the respiration is inhibited, while the blood-pressure may rise and the heart be slowed from reflex action on the inhibitory and vaso-constrictor centres respectively. Afterwards, the respiratory centre seems to be stimulated, the inhibitory is depressed, while the vaso-motor is practically unaffected. The spinal cord is not acted on in mammals, but is depressed in the frog.

FIG. 48.



Blood-pressure under amyl nitrite taken on a very slow drum in order to demonstrate the recovery. The whole tracing occupied some six minutes. The rapid fall of pressure is followed by an almost equally rapid return to normal. (CASH & DUNSTAN.)

After larger quantities convulsions are often observed; these seem to be of cerebral origin, and are probably due to direct action on the nerve cells, and not to the circulatory changes, although some authors attribute them to anæmia of the brain.

The **Peripheral Nerves** and the **Muscles** are unaffected by the inhalation of amyl nitrite, but when the frog's muscles are exposed to the direct action of the vapor, they undergo a slow passive shortening and rigor, and on periodical stimulation the contractions become rapidly weaker, until finally no response is made to the electric shock. Involuntary muscle is more easily affected than striated fibres, as has been shown by the behavior of the intestine and ureters, but even these seem less readily paralyzed than the muscle of the vessel walls, the depression and paralysis of which lead to the fall in the arterial tension,

as has been already stated. The nerve terminations seem to be unaffected even by very large quantities, so that as long as a contraction of the muscles can be elicited by direct stimulation, it follows also on stimulation of the motor nerve, and the vagus terminations in the heart can transmit impulses as long as the heart continues to beat. The **Temperature** is somewhat lowered by the nitrite series, owing to the dilatation of the skin vessels, but this fall is very insignificant.

Amyl nitrite causes the **Blood** to assume a dark chocolate color, both in the body and in the test-tube. The color is due not to any compound formed by the nitrites, but to their changing the hæmoglobin to methæmoglobin and nitric-oxide-hæmoglobin compounds in which the oxygen is attached much more firmly than in oxyhæmoglobin, and which differ from it in the absorption bands seen in the spectrum. This change in the hæmoglobin does not entail the destruction of the red corpuscles, and the compounds are eventually reduced by the tissues, although the reduction progresses much more slowly than that of ordinary oxyhæmoglobin. In man, usually very little of the hæmoglobin is thus transformed, and even after large quantities have been inhaled no abnormal coloration of the blood is noticeable, but it has been demonstrated recently that the alteration of the hæmoglobin is the cause of death in some animals, through the blood becoming incapable of carrying oxygen to the tissues. If, however, asphyxia be prevented by the inhalation of oxygen under pressure, the tissues themselves are eventually acted on. The formation of methæmoglobin does not seem to bear any relation to the action of the nitrites on the vessel walls.

Excretion. — After absorption into the blood, amyl nitrite seems to break up with the formation of nitrites of the alkalies. These undergo partial oxidation and appear in the urine in the form of nitrates and nitrites, but the quantity of these excreted is never equal to the nitrite absorbed, so that it seems probable that some part undergoes still further change and appears as one of the normal excretions. The amyl disappears, and is probably oxidized completely, although some may appear in the breath.

Nitrite of amyl given by the stomach is very much less active than when inhaled, as the nitrous acid is freed by the gastric juice and immediately decomposes. When injected subcutaneously it acts much more slowly and weakly than when absorbed by the lungs, and generally gives rise to glycosuria and slight diuresis. No satisfactory explanation of this fact has been given, but it is possible that the formation of methæmoglobin may cause partial asphyxiation of the tissues, and thus cause the formation of excess of lactic acid and glycosuria.

The pharmacopœial amyl nitrite, with which most of the experiments have been performed on which the above description is based, is not a pure substance, but consists of the nitrites of two different amyls — α-amyl and β-amyl — along with isobutyl, ethyl, and propyl nitrites. A number of the pure nitrites have been examined by Cash and Dunstan, who find that in general features they resemble each

other closely. The more unstable the compound, the more rapidly does the fall in blood-pressure occur, while the less easily decomposed compounds are somewhat slower in their action, but cause depression of the blood-pressure for a much longer time. The acceleration of the heart and the extent of the rigor produced in the frog's muscle depend also on the rapidity of the disintegration of the nitrite compound, and therefore are parallel to the fall in the blood-pressure.

The **Nitrites of Potassium and Sodium** act very similarly to those of the alkyls. They seem to have a more powerful action on muscular tissue, however, at any rate in the frog, for the muscles are paralyzed before the spinal cord, while after amyl nitrate the reverse is the case. They are administered by the stomach, and therefore act more slowly than amyl nitrite, but their effects last much longer. The gastric juice liberates part of the nitrous acid before absorption can occur, and it is immediately decomposed and often causes some eructation. The nitric acid formed from it may also give rise to irritation of the gastro-intestinal mucous membrane. The nitrite absorbed is excreted as nitrate

FIG. 49.

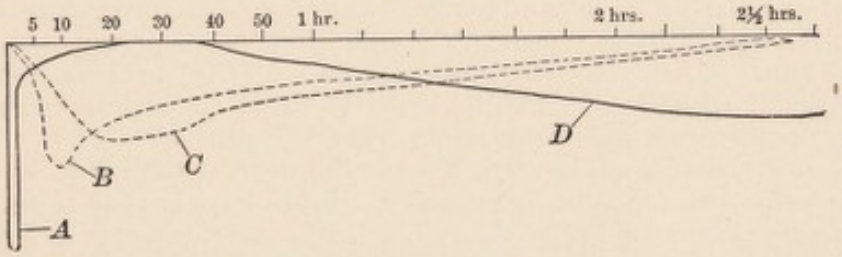


Diagram to illustrate the intensity and duration of the action of the members of the nitrite series. The extent of the fall of pressure is measured along the vertical, the duration along the horizontal line. *A*, amyl nitrite, ethyl nitrite, etc.; *B*, nitroglycerin; *C*, sodium nitrite; *D*, erythrol tetranitrate. The greatest reduction occurs in *A*, but it passes off for the most part in 5 minutes and entirely in 20. Nitroglycerin acts more rapidly than the last two, and its effects continue almost as long as those of sodium nitrite. Erythrol tetranitrate only exerts its full effect after the action of the others has passed off. (After BRADBURY.)

in the urine, although some of it may remain unoxidized. The metallic nitrites do not as a rule cause so much headache and flushing of the face and neck as the alkyl compounds.

Nitroglycerin produces the same effects as the other members of this series, but acts much more powerfully than either the metallic or alkyl nitrites. It presents some minor points of difference, as in producing convulsions in the frog and in some mammals when given in very large quantities, and in causing more severe headache in man. It is not decomposed in the stomach, but on reaching an alkaline fluid, such as the blood, at once breaks up into glycerin, nitrites and nitrates, in the proportion of two parts of the former salt to one of the latter. Its action commences very soon after its administration, and lasts much longer than that of amyl nitrite. The explanation of its greater activity may be that it is absorbed unchanged, but is then broken up at once, while the metallic nitrites are decomposed in the stomach and much of the nitrous acid is lost.

The convulsions are probably due to the whole molecule of nitro-

glycerin, which may perhaps be decomposed more slowly in some animals than in others. Nitroglycerin is not wholly broken up in the human body, however, for it has been found in the urine, and the headache which so frequently follows its administration in man, has been ascribed to the undecomposed molecule, and not to the nitrite constituent. It is generally supposed to be extremely poisonous, and is prescribed in exceedingly minute doses, but it has been shown that while very small quantities are sufficient to produce therapeutic effects in man, the toxic dose is enormous in animals.

Several other organic nitrates have also been found to reduce the blood-pressure, and to cause the formation of methæmoglobin, but their decomposition proceeds much more slowly than that of nitroglycerin, and they have not been much used in therapeutics. Erythrol tetranitrate and mannitol hexanitrate act more slowly, and the fall of pressure is more gradual, and lasts longer than under any others of the series.

Preparations.

Amyl Nitris (U. S. P., B. P.), a yellow, very volatile fluid, with a strong, fruity odor, soluble in alcohol and ether, but rapidly decomposed by water. 2–5 drops are poured on a handkerchief and inhaled. A convenient preparation is the amyl nitrite "pearls," which are thin glass capsules, each containing a dose of the remedy, and one of which is broken in the handkerchief when necessary. Amyl nitrite is liable to decompose when kept long, and ought to be used only when recently prepared.

Spiritus Glonoini (U. S. P.), Liquor Trinitrini (B. P.), is a one per cent. alcoholic solution of nitroglycerin. 0.03–0.1 c.c. (½–2 mins.).

Tabellæ Trinitrini (B. P.), or nitroglycerin tablets, are formed of chocolate, and contain each $\frac{1}{100}$ gr. of nitroglycerin. 1–2 tablets.

Liquor Ethyl Nitritis (B. P.), a solution in alcohol and glycerin of ethyl nitrite (2½–3 per cent.), forming a limpid liquid of apple-like odor and taste. 20–60 mins.

Sodii Nitris (U. S. P., B. P.) ($NaNO_2$), 0.05–0.1 G. (1–2 grs.). It may be prescribed in tablets or in solution.

Spiritus Ætheris Nitrosi (U. S. P., B. P.), sweet spirits of nitre, contains only traces of ethyl nitrite, along with ether and aldehyde in alcoholic solution. When freshly prepared it acts like the other nitrites, but when prescribed along with water, as is usually the case, the nitrite escapes rapidly, and it has little effect except from the ether and alcohol. 1–5 c.c. (20–90 mins.).

Nonofficial.

Erythrol tetranitrate ($CH_2ONO_2(CHONO_2)_2CH_2ONO_2$) is a solid, and is recommended in doses of 0.05 G. (1 gr.), in pills, tablets or alcoholic solution. Like nitroglycerin, it is a dangerous explosive, and one fatality has already occurred in forming it into pharmaceutical preparations.

Therapeutic Uses. — The nitrites were introduced into therapeutics by Brunton, who advised their use in angina pectoris to relieve spasm of the arteries. They are certainly the most powerful depressants of the blood-pressure known, and may be used in all cases where this appears abnormally high. For rapid transient effects nitrite of amyl seems specially indicated, while nitroglycerin and nitrite of sodium are more suited to produce a depression of some duration. Thus during the attack of angina pectoris, amyl nitrite is often found to give

instant relief, but if nitrite of soda is administered every 4–6 hours, no attack may occur. This disadvantage of the metallic nitrites is the frequent eructation they produce, while nitroglycerin often causes severe headache, which, however, disappears in some cases after repeated use.

Besides in angina pectoris, the nitrite series may be used in any condition in which it is supposed that the arterial tension may be lowered with benefit to the economy. Thus nitroglycerin has been advised in heart disease and has accordingly been placed by some among the heterogeneous group of "Cardiac tonics or stimulants." Its beneficial effects are not due to any direct action on the heart, but to its decreasing the resistance against which the systole is performed. In this way the contraction of the ventricle is rendered more complete, and the output of the heart may be increased. In weak hearts struggling against a high aortic resistance, this relief may be followed by marked benefit, and for this reason nitrite preparations (nitroglycerin) are often prescribed in chronic Bright's disease. Digitalis causes a contraction of the peripheral arterioles along with its proper cardiac action, and the addition of nitrite may be advisable in some cases in order to neutralize this peripheral action. In those cases the nitrite of soda or nitroglycerin is of course preferable to amyl nitrite, whose action is too transient. (See Digitalis, page 460.) Amyl nitrite has been advised in cases of death from chloroform on the theory that it would benefit the circulation; but as a matter of fact, it would appear strongly contra-indicated in those cases in which it is true that the heart is extremely depressed, but in which the arterial tension is practically zero. Its use is especially irrational, if, as has been suggested, the failure of the respiration is partly due to anæmia of the central nervous system. The cases in which recovery has occurred after this measure, may in fact be said to have recovered not owing to, but in spite of the use of amyl nitrite.

In very advanced degeneration of the cardiac muscle fibre, the administration of amyl nitrite is distinctly contraindicated, for the blood-pressure is low and any further reduction may lead to syncope from anæmia of the brain, and to still greater weakness of the heart from the low pressure in the coronary arteries lessening its nutrition.

Nitrite of amyl has been used largely in asthma and in cardiac dyspnœa. Its action is often beneficial and has been attributed to its depressing the bronchial muscles, which are supposed to be in a condition of spasmodic contraction in asthma. In the cardiac cases its action in removing the dyspnœa may be due to its lowering the pressure in the systemic arteries and thus relieving the heart.

In some cases of headache, nitrite of amyl is of marked benefit, while in others it aggravates the condition. This is perfectly intelligible, as some forms of headache may be due to constriction of the arterioles while others are accompanied by a congested condition of the vessels of the head.

From spasm of the circulatory organs, the use of nitrite of amyl has been extended to other forms of spasmodic seizures, such as epilepsy. It seems to be of little or no value, as indeed might be ex-

pected from its pharmacological action. In some cases it even seems to increase the tendency to convulsions.

Sweet spirits of nitre has long enjoyed a popular reputation as a diaphoretic and diuretic. It seems to have little action either on the kidneys or the sweat glands, and might be discarded from the pharmacopœia without loss. It is of more value as a carminative and flavor than for any other purpose.

Bibliography.

Brunton. Arbeiten aus der physiolog. Anstalt., zu Leipzig, iv., p. 101, and Journ. of Anat. and Phys., v., p. 92.
Wood. Amer. Journ. of Med. Sciences, lxi., p. 422.
Atkinson. Journ. of Anat. u. Phys., xxii., p. 225.
Mayer u. Friedrich. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., v., p. 55.
Hay. Practitioner, xxx., pp. 179–321.
Leech. British Medical Journal, 1893, Vols. i., p. 1305 and ii., p. 4.
Cash and Dunstan. Phil. Trans. of the Royal Soc., clxxxiv., B., p. 505.
Gamgee. Ibid., clviii., p. 589.
Giacosa. Ztschr. f. physiolog. Chemie, iii., p. 54.
Mitchell and Reichert. Amer. Journ. of the Medical Sciences, lxxx., p. 158.
Haldane, Makgill and Mavrogordato. Journal of Physiology, xxi., p. 160.
Schadow. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., vi., 194.
Filehne. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1879, p. 385.
Marshall. Jour. of Phys., xxii., p. 1.
Bradbury. Brit. Med. Journ., 1895, ii., p. 1213.
C. Rosenthal. Archiv f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1888, p. 29.
W. Rosenthal. Ibid., 1893. Supplement, p. 240.
Laws. Journ. of Amer. Med. Ass., xxxi., p. 793.
Winkler. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxxv., p. 213; xxxvi., pp. 30, 138.

XXXII. ERGOT.

Ergot is a parasitic fungus (Claviceps purpurea) which grows on the rye (Secale cornutum or cereale) and occasionally on other kinds of grain, more rarely on other plants. It is of great importance in therapeutics and also in toxicology, as the use of bread and meal containing it has frequently given rise to widespread epidemics. In these the chief symptoms consisted in gangrene of the limbs, or in convulsive movements and contractures.

The chemistry of ergot is still in an unsatisfactory condition, as its active principles seem to be peculiarly unstable, and are decomposed by comparatively weak reagents. A large number of imperfectly isolated bodies have been described as occurring in it, but the first approach to a successful treatment of the subject was made by Kobert in 1884. He described three bodies as involved in the action of ergot, the first, *Ergotinic Acid*, a nitrogenous acid of glucosidal nature, the second, *Cornutine*, an alkaloid, and the third, *Sphacelinic Acid*, a resinous acid which contains no nitrogen. Various other bases have been observed in ergot besides cornutine, but most of them are entirely inert, and the others may owe their action to the presence of one or more of these three bodies, or may perhaps be identical with cornutine. It must be added that Kobert did not succeed in isolating completely any of these three poisons, but he was able to show that, while ergotinic acid behaves in the same way as the members of the sapotoxin series, cornutine stimulates the central nervous system strongly and produces convulsions, while sphacelinic acid induces gangrenein animals.

Jacobj has recently stated that the action of sphacelinic acid is due to a

very poisonous resinous body, *Sphacelotoxin*, which seems to be capable of entering into loose combinations with various other constituents of ergot. He succeeded in isolating two such compounds, one of which, *Chrysotoxin* proved to be a combination of sphacelotoxin with the weakly acid, inactive body, *Ergochrysin*, the other of which *Secalintoxin*, was a similar compound of sphacelotoxin and an alkaloid, *Secaline*. Sphacelotoxin he found to be a very unstable compound, which kept better when in the form of chrysotoxin.

The action of ergot as known at present is therefore a complex which may be analyzed into three factors: 1. That due to one or more bodies somewhat resembling sapotoxin in action and contained in an impure form in the ergotinic acid of Kobert. 2. That due to one or more convulsive poisons contained in the cornutine of Kobert, and 3, that due to a gangrene-producing poison, which is contained in the sphacelinic acid of Kobert, and has been termed sphacelotoxin by Jacobj.

While **Cornutine** is not a pure principle and its effects may be due to the interaction of several poisons, the train of symptoms is perfectly distinct from those induced by the other constituents of ergot, and the name may be used to indicate the cause of these, without any definite understanding as to the nature of the body. In frogs it induces changes in the skeletal muscles similar to those described under veratrine, but, unlike the latter, does not affect the heart. In both frogs and mammals convulsions are observed and seem to be due to stimulation of the medulla oblongata and the basal ganglia, for they disappear in the frog when the medulla oblongata is destroyed, and are mainly clonic in nature. In the dog the symptoms consist of restlessness, salivation, vomiting, and purging. The pulse is slow and irregular, and after somewhat larger doses clonic convulsions set in with intervals of depression. The respiration ceases during one of these, while the heart continues to beat for some time.

The alteration in the contraction of the muscles is due to direct action on the muscular fibre, similar to that of veratrine, while the other symptoms, like those from picrotoxin, are caused by stimulation of the medulla oblongata and the nervous centres in its neighborhood. The slow rhythm of the heart can be removed by section of the vagi, and is therefore due to the inhibitory centre. The vaso-constrictor centre is also stimulated, and a considerable increase in the arterial pressure is thus caused, although this may be concealed by the slowness of the heart. Neither heart nor vessels are affected directly. The nausea, salivation and vomiting seem to be the result of medullary action also. Kobert observed that both stomach and bowel contracted powerfully under cornutine, and that wave-like movements occurred at the same time in the uterus, whether pregnant or not. These movements were not continuous, but resembled peristaltic contractions and did not tend to empty the uterus. They were not produced in the excised organ when it was perfused with blood containing cornutine, and he therefore supposed that they were the result of some action on the central nervous system. After large doses of cornutine the stimulation of the central nervous system passes into paralysis and the respiration ceases.

Sphacelotoxin differs from all other known poisons in producing gangrene of various organs, more especially in fowls and pigs.

In the frog the symptoms consist of depression and paralysis of the central nervous system. In most mammals (dogs, cats, rabbits, and guinea-pigs) the chief symptoms arise from irritation of the alimentary canal—salivation, vomiting and some purging—which is induced whether the drug be administered by the mouth or subcutaneously. Later some signs of excitement may be observed, followed by depression and weakness, the excitement apparently being due to cerebral action. Kobert found numerous extravasations of blood in the stomach, intestine, and other organs, especially when the drug was given for some time and chronic poisoning induced. No gangrene could be elicited in these animals.

In fowls a much more characteristic train of symptoms is found to follow the administration of sphacelotoxin. A cock soon appears drowsy and somewhat dyspnœic, and the comb loses its bright scarlet color and becomes blue and cyanotic, especially at the tips. Purging and sometimes vomiting follow, and the animal has often great difficulty in preserving its balance, swaying to and fro very much as does a patient suffering from locomotor ataxia. After small doses the symptoms may pass off, but when larger quantities have been injected, and especially if chronic poisoning is induced, the comb becomes dry and hard and eventually falls off without any hæmorrhage. The wattles, tip of the tongue, wings and spurs may undergo the same process. It refuses food, loses flesh and becomes weak and somnolent, but may recover if the treatment be stopped; otherwise it dies of inanition and general weakness. The vessels of the comb are found to be filled with a transparent "hyaline" mass with a narrow streak of red corpuscles here and there, and it is evident that a typical dry gangrene has been induced. Marked irritation of the mucous membrane of the crop, stomach and bowel is present, with numerous extravasations, frequently with circumscribed areas of necrosis. Œdema and ecchymoses are often met with in the subcutaneous tissue and also in the internal organs, and a curious substance resembling amyloid was seen in the liver by Grünfeld. No alteration of the central nervous system has been detected after careful examination. In pigs, the ears become dark-colored and cyanotic and the tips undergo dry gangrene and fall off. Gangrene is also observed in the extremities and in different parts of the skin of the trunk, and hæmorrhages into internal organs occur, especially in the bowel.

The gangrene appears to be due to a prolonged contraction of the arterioles shutting off the blood supply of the parts and leading to a hyaline formation in the lumen and walls of the arterioles, which effectually obstructs the circulation after the muscular coats have relaxed. The constriction of the arterioles has been shown to occur in animals in which no gangrene follows, but is probably not so extreme in these. This constriction of the arterioles of course induces an increase in the blood-pressure, which was found by Kobert to be of

considerable extent, while Jacobj found it less marked. Curiously enough, the blood-pressure in the fowl has not been examined under sphacelotoxin, although it might be expected to be more augmented in these than in many other animals.

Kobert supposed that the arterioles were constricted by the increased activity of the vaso-motor centre, but Jacobj has shown that there is also some peripheral action, for the blood-pressure rises after division of the spinal cord, and the flow of blood through an excised organ is considerably retarded when sphacelotoxin is added to it. He therefore considers that the muscular wall of the vessel is acted on directly, as well as through the central nervous system.

Jacobj found that sphacelotoxin often induced abortion in pregnant animals, and concludes that it provokes uterine contractions, which are not tetanic in nature, but which rather resemble the normal peristaltic contractions of the uterus during labor. These wave-like contractions move the fœtus towards the os uteri, and eventually cause its expulsion. He found that abortion could be induced without serious injury to either parent or young. The contractions of the uterus may be due to some action on the spinal cord, as has been generally believed, but it must not be forgotten that the uterus is capable of automatic movement and that the young can be expelled from it after destruction of the spinal cord, so that it seems not unlikely that ergot acts rather on the uterine fibres directly than through the nervous centres. This uterine action is elicited in animals in which ergot does not induce gangrene, such as the rabbit and cat.

The Ergotinic Acid of Kobert seems to have little or no effect when given by the mouth, but induces depression and paralysis of the spinal cord when injected subcutaneously or intravenously in frogs and mammals. The higher divisions of the nervous system seem less readily affected, although the brain is also depressed, and unconsciousness and collapse may follow. The blood-pressure is much reduced from depression of the vaso-motor centre, while the heart seems comparatively little affected. Death occurs from paralysis of the respiratory centre.

In addition to these three bodies there are probably other active principles contained in ergot, for some preparations of the drug cause very distinct slowness and weakness of the pulse, which does not seem to be induced by any of the three constituents described above. None of the three principles have been used in medicine in a sufficiently pure form to allow of a description of their effects. A so-called "cornutine" has been employed to a limited exent, but it contained considerable quantities of sphacelotoxin.

Ergot has rarely given rise to **Acute Poisoning in Man**, but in several cases in which it was taken in order to induce abortion, the symptoms consisted in collapse, with a weak, rapid pulse, tingling, itching and coldness of the skin, unquenchable thirst, vomiting and diarrhœa, confusion or unconsciousness, hæmorrhages from the uterus, abortion, and some icterus. Ecchymoses were found in the subcutaneous tissue and in many internal organs. Somewhat similar symptoms have been produced in animals.

Chronic Poisoning was formerly not uncommon, and in fact frequently gave rise to widespread epidemics, from the use of bread containing ergot

after poor harvests and especially in wet seasons. Of late years these epidemics have become rare except in Russia, but some of the "plagues" of mediæval Europe may have been due to ergot poisoning.

The symptoms of ergotism are sharply divided into two groups, those of gangrene and those of nervous disorders. In some epidemics both the gangrenous and the convulsive forms are present, but, as a general rule, one is much more prevalent than the other, at one time gangrene being almost invariably present, while in another epidemic, the convulsive type is the more common. The gangrene is generally developed in the limbs, especially in the fingers and toes; sometimes the whole arm or leg becomes cold and anæsthetic, dark in color, and then dry, hard and shrunken, and falls off with little or no pain and no hæmorrhage. Symptoms of such severity are rare, however, and in milder cases only the skin necroses. Gangrene of internal organs also occurs, resulting in cataract in the lens of the eye, or ulcers in the bowel and stomach, and sometimes affecting a whole organ such as a lung or the uterus. Abortion is seldom mentioned in the accounts of chronic ergot poisoning, and pregnancy seems in many cases to have run its ordinary course. Gangrenous ergotism is evidently due to sphacelotoxin causing prolonged contraction of the vessels, followed by hyaline thrombosis. The blood vessels in man therefore seem to be acted on in the same way as those of the fowl and pig, while those of the other mammals escape.

In spasmodic ergotism the first symptoms are depression, weakness and drowsiness, often with headache and giddiness, painful cramps in the limbs, and itching and formication of the skin. In severe cases paroxysmal convulsions set in, generally clonic, and often epileptiform, but leaving as sequelæ contractures in the limbs, or less often in the trunk muscles. Some intellectual weakness often follows recovery from ergot poisoning, this not infrequently amounting to complete dementia, but the disease was immediately fatal in a large proportion of cases in earlier times. Cornutine was supposed by Kobert to be the cause of the convulsive form of ergot poisoning, and his explanation has been generally accepted, although it is not without difficulties, for chronic poisoning with cornutine does not produce any symptoms whatever in animals, unless doses sufficient to cause acute poisoning are given. On the other hand, fowls poisoned with sphacelotoxin suffer from ataxia and other nervous symptoms, so that it is probable that other factors besides cornutine are involved in the production of these symptoms in epidemic poisoning and the entire action may perhaps be due to sphacelotoxin.

The accounts of different observers of the action of ergot on the individual organs present great discrepancies. This is explained by the difference between the preparations used and by the extreme instability of the more active principles. The effects on the circulation are especially liable to vary, for in many cases the heart is rendered slow and weak, sometimes apparently from cornutine acting on the vagus centre, at other times from some unknown body affecting the muscle directly; in others acceleration of the heart has been observed. Very often the preparations known as ergotin are stated to

cause a very marked fall in blood-pressure, while others which probably contain larger amounts of sphacelotoxin and cornutine contract the arterioles and increase the blood-pressure. Further dispute has arisen as to whether this effect is central or peripheral. It is obviously unprofitable to discuss these questions, however, as scarcely any two of the investigators have used the same preparation, and there is no means of judging of what constituents their drugs were composed.

The effects of ergot and its preparations on the **Uterus** are no less a matter of dispute. Many gynæcologists consider that it does not excite movements in the uterus, but that when labor has commenced, it prolongs the contractions and may, in fact, cause a continuous contraction (tetanus) of the muscular fibres, which delays the expulsion of the contents and imperils the life of both mother and child. On the other hand, some believe that ergot induces uterine contractions and strengthens those present in labor, without necessarily hindering the periodic relaxation of the muscle, and Jacobj's results with sphacelotoxin would confirm the latter view. These discrepancies are undoubtedly to be explained by the fact that preparations of ergot are very often employed which are entirely inert, while in other cases effects have been credited to ergot which have appeared before it was possible that the drug was absorbed. The action of ergot on the uterus is not sufficiently certain to permit of definite statements, but it seems unquestionable that in animals it produces abortion, and must therefore induce movements similar to those occurring in normal labor. It is probable that in the human uterus the same effect is induced, while the so-called "tetanus uteri" may perhaps be explained by the use of large doses or very active preparations. It may very well happen that a substance which in small quantities only increases the irritability of the muscle or strengthens the normal contractions, may induce very prolonged contractions when applied in larger quantities (compare the action of digitalis on the frog's heart).

Some experiments have been performed to find whether the contractions of the uterus under ergot are due to action on the uterus itself or on the nervous centres. But the results are again contradictory and need not be detailed.

Kobert at first supposed that sphacelotoxin was the more important body in the action of ergot on the uterus, and this view has been held by most authors since then, and has been supported in particular by Jacobj. Of late years, however, Kobert has come to regard cornutine as the chief factor in this result, although there seems no satisfactory work, either experimental or clinical, in support of his more recent view.

The vomiting and diarrhœa which are sometimes observed after ergot may be of central origin, but are generally supposed to be due to direct action on the muscular coats of the stomach and intestines similar to that described by some authors as occurring in the uterus.

Preparations.

U. S. P.—**Ergota**, ergot of rye, the sclerotium of Claviceps purpurea replacing the grain of rye. When more than one year old it is unfit for use.

Extractum Ergotæ, 0.2–1 G. (3–15 grs.).
EXTRACTUM ERGOTÆ FLUIDUM, 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).
Vinum Ergotæ, 10–20 c.c. (5–10 fl. drs.).

B. P.—**Ergota,** the sclerotium of Claviceps purpurea, originating in the ovary of Secale cereale. 20–60 grs.
Extractum Ergotæ (Ergotin), 2–8 grs.
EXTRACTUM ERGOTÆ LIQUIDUM, 10–30 mins.
Tinctura Ergotæ Ammoniata, ½–1 fl. dr.
Infusum Ergotæ, 1–2 fl. oz.
INJECTIO ERGOTÆ HYPODERMICA, 3–10 mins. (subcutaneously). The injection ought to be recently prepared. It is about 33 per cent.

The fluid or liquid extracts and the hypodermic injection are the best of the preparations. The vinum is very often quite inert, and the extract being prepared from the fluid extract by heat is liable to contain less of the unstable active constituents than the latter. A very large number of preparations, such as ergotin, ergotinic acid, sclerotinic acid, cornutine, etc., are simply more or less purified extracts and have no advantage over the pharmacopœial preparations; in fact the chemical manipulations through which they are obtained are often such as are likely to remove, or render inert, the active bodies of the crude drug.

The dose of the preparations of ergot is exceedingly variable, as a quantity sufficient to induce very marked effect in autumn, may be found entirely inert in the following spring. Grünfeld, in fact, states that in March and April twelve times as much is required as in July and August, and that in May and June the drug is entirely without effect in any dose, but this is probably an exaggeration, unless where the ergot has been carelessly stored. According to Jacobj, the pure chrysotoxin may be kept for years without deteriorating. Sterilized fluid extract is said to keep better than the ordinary preparations, but the whole subject requires further research.

Therapeutic Uses. — Ergot is used very largely in obstetrics to promote the contraction of the uterus, but considerable divergence is met with in the views of different authorities as to the special indications for its exhibition. Thus, those who believe that ergot increases the irritability of the uterus and produces rhythmical contraction without tetanus, advise that it be given whenever the pains seem insufficient, and more especially when this occurs in the later stages of labor. Others are possessed with perhaps an exaggerated apprehension of the prolonged uterine contractions, which they consider delay labor and tend to cause asphyxia in the child, and therefore advise that ergot be used only to preserve the uterus in a contracted condition after the child and placenta have been expelled. In every case the attendant should of course satisfy himself before giving ergot of the absence of all actual impediments to the passage of the child, such as contracted pelvis, abnormal presentation, or great rigidity of the soft parts, and when it is administered before the head emerges, the dose ought to be small, as otherwise the tonic contraction may be induced. When the head is about to emerge, on the other hand, a large dose may be given to promote the permanent contraction of the uterus and thus to prevent post-partum hæmorrhage. When the latter has once set in, ergot is of less immediate service, as it is slowly absorbed, and no effects follow for some twenty minutes or more. Whenever there is any reason to fear that weakness of the uterine contraction and hæmorrhage may set in after the expulsion of the child, ergot ought to be

given when the head emerges, and many gynecologists recommend this as a routine treatment.

Ergot hinders post-partum hæmorrhage, chiefly by promoting the contraction of the uterus. In other forms of hæmorrhage — from the stomach, intestines, kidneys, lung or uterus — in which the bleeding point cannot be reached, it is often advocated in the belief that it contracts the walls of the vessels and thus arrests the flow of blood. These hæmorrhages so often cease spontaneously that it is difficult to estimate the value of any remedy, but it may be questioned whether ergot merits its reputation in these cases. Its action in healthy animals certainly indicates that the contraction of the vessels is confined to certain organs, otherwise there would be a more distinct increase in the blood-pressure. And there is no reason to suppose that a more intense action is exerted on a ruptured vessel than on the uninjured ones of other organs; but unless this is the case the use of ergot may be rather harmful than remedial, for any increase in the general blood-pressure, such as would follow the contraction of the vessels throughout the body, must increase the escape of blood from the injured vessel. In these cases, as in labor, the fluid extract is often given by the mouth, but this extract or the special preparation of the B. P. is sometimes injected with the hypodermic needle. It is irritant, and ought therefore to be injected deeply into the muscle, rather than into the subcutaneous tissues.

The effect of ergot in inducing contraction of the uterus has been used in the treatment of subinvolution and of myomata of that organ; the involution of the uterus certainly seems to be favored by it, but the results in tumor are more open to question. In any case the prolonged treatment of this, or of any other condition with ergot is to be deprecated, for if the drug is active at all, it may induce gangrene or spasmodic ergotism. The same criticism might be applied to the ergot treatment of a number of other diseases, such as aneurism, diabetes, or pneumonia; and in addition, it does not seem to have any greater effect in these than many other less dangerous remedies, which have been equally vaunted as specifics, and have been found equally valueless.

Bibliography.

Kobert. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xviii., p. 316.
Grünfeld. Arb. a. d. pharmakol. Institute zu Dorpat, vii., p. 108; xii., p. 295.
Jacobj. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxix., p. 85.
Houghton. Therap. Gazette, 1898, p. 433.
Walker. Arch. f. Psychiatrie, xxv., p. 383.
Jahrmärker. Ibid., xxxv., p. 109.

The earlier literature is to be found in Grünfeld's paper, but the student is recommended to read the above papers before proceeding to the earlier work.

Ustilago Maydis (U. S. P.), or corn smut, a fungus growing on maize, is entirely different from ergot, and, according to Kobert, is quite inert. It has been used as a substitute for ergot, on the supposition that it would resemble it in action as well as in origin, but has proved quite ineffective.

Cotton-root Bark (Gossypii Radicis Cortex, U. S. P.) has been used by the Southern negroes to produce abortion, and is said by some gynecologists to

resemble ergot in action on the uterus. It has little or no effect on animals, except in enormous doses, and is generally stated by those who have tested it to be entirely devoid of action in man. The fluid extract is the only preparation in the pharmacopœia.

PART III.

COMBINATIONS OF THE ALKALIES, ALKALINE EARTHS, ACIDS AND ALLIED BODIES.

SALT-ACTION.

THE action of most of the substances discussed in the foregoing pages may be best explained by supposing that they cause some change in the living matter of one or more organs through a specific chemical affinity for it. Thus strychnine may be supposed to act on the spinal cord by forming a chemical compound with the protoplasm of the nerve cells, while prussic acid changes protoplasm generally, through a similar affinity for it.

Some bodies, on the other hand, seem to have little specific affinity for living matter, but affect it largely as they do dead colloid substances, through changing the physical properties of the fluids contained in it or surrounding it. This action is seen best in the effects of some of the salts of the alkalies, and is therefore known as "salt-action," although it is not confined to these, but is shared by any soluble, diffusible body which can circulate in the tissues in sufficient quantity. The salts of strychnine or of prussic acid are undoubtedly capable of inducing physical changes similar to those observed after chloride of sodium, but they play no part in the symptoms induced by these poisons, because animals die from their specific action long before the quantity necessary to induce the "salt-action" can be absorbed. In the case of less poisonous organic substances, such as sugar and urea, however, many of the features of salt-action may be observed.

Much light has been thrown on the nature of salt-action by the recent advances in physical chemistry, which have shown that many of the changes in the animal body are analogous to those observed in the chemical laboratory. When an aqueous solution of sugar or salt is carefully poured on distilled water, so that two layers are formed, a process of **Diffusion** commences, the dissolved molecules passing throughout the fluid until the whole becomes homogeneous, each cubic centimetre containing an equal number of molecules of sugar or salt. If instead of distilled water, a solution of another salt be used, the same process results, the two bodies diffusing throughout both fluids until these become homogeneous; and if the fluids be separated by a membrane which offers no obstacle to the penetration of the water and salts, a similar interchange occurs. When a membrane is used which does not allow the salt to pass through it, a different result is observed;

if it separates salt solution from pure water, the latter passes through until it is exhausted, or until some factor such as hydrostatic pressure puts a limit to further movement. This is readily intelligible, for the pure water can pass without hindrance towards the salt, but having rendered the solution more dilute, it cannot diffuse in the opposite direction, because this would be equivalent to forming a more concentrated solution of the salt, and this requires the expenditure of energy, such as heat, while in the case in point there is no energy available for this purpose. A similar result is obtained if the membrane separate solutions of a non-permeating and of a permeating salt, the latter passing through with the fluid in which it is dissolved until some extraneous factor counterbalances the diffusion.

The resistance offered by a non-permeating salt to the passage through the membrane of the fluid in which it is dissolved is known as its **Osmotic Pressure** and varies with the number of molecules and ions (see page 488). When both the salts in solution on the opposite sides of the membrane are unable to penetrate through it, the movement of the fluid is determined by the relative osmotic pressure on the two sides, water tending to pass from the solution with the lower osmotic pressure (the *hypotonic* solution) to that with the higher (*hypertonic*) until an equilibrium is established by the osmotic pressure becoming equal on the two sides, when the solutions are said to be *isotonic*. As a general rule, however, membranes are partially permeable to both salts, and the movement of the fluid is determined by the relative osmotic pressure of the fluids divided by the rate at which the salts pass through the membrane. If sufficient time is allowed to elapse, the two solutions will become identical in composition, but during a short period, the details of the process are difficult to follow, and the complexity is infinitely greater when instead of a single salt on each side of the membrane there are several salts each differing in its permeability and concentration. The direction of the flow is then determined by the sum of the osmotic pressure on each side divided by the penetrating power of each individual substance.

In the animal body such membranes as are used in physical experiments are not met with, but the cells consist of colloid substances containing fluid and diffusible bodies, and are surrounded by liquids which are practically salt solutions isotonic with the contents of the cells; any change in the contents of the cell or in the lymph surrounding it must of necessity give rise to a certain movement of the fluids in the same way as if each cell were surrounded by a membrane. All the cells of the body are permeable by water, and a dilution of the fluids surrounding them is therefore followed by an increase in their fluid contents and swelling. On the other hand, some salts seem to diffuse into cells practically without resistance, while others fail altogether to do so, or penetrate only very slowly. The subject has been investigated with most care in the red blood cells, which are found to be penetrated by ammonium chloride and some other salts, while they are impermeable by sodium chloride and the other salts of the fixed

alkalies. Accordingly, when the red blood cells are surrounded by a solution of ammonium chloride, whatever its concentration, their fluid contents are increased; they swell up and eventually lose their hæmoglobin, exactly as if they had been placed in pure water. When they are placed in an isotonic solution of chloride of sodium,[1] they remain unchanged in size, while in a hypertonic solution their fluid diffuses out, and they shrink; a hypotonic solution acts like pure water, the osmotic pressure of the salts in the corpuscles overcoming the smaller osmotic pressure of the surrounding fluid. The behavior of a cell towards salts therefore varies with each individual salt. Solutions of those by which it is perfectly permeable have the same effects as pure water; but the less diffusible the salt, the more tendency it has to prevent the entrance of the water in which it is dissolved, and if in sufficient concentration, to withdraw fluid from the cell. A perfectly diffusible substance can never prevent the entrance of fluid, however concentrated be its solution.

All the cells of the body do not resemble each other in their permeability, nor in the salts which diffuse into them. For example, the intestinal epithelium takes up some of the salts of the alkalies, while the red blood cells do not.

An even more obscure relation between the salts and colloids has been discovered by Hofmeister, who found that gelatin plates thrown into weak salt solutions absorb more fluid than when they are put in distilled water, and who inferred from this that colloid substances have a special affinity for salts quite apart from their permeability by water, and that they are not merely passively permeated by salt solutions, but have an active attraction for some of the salts contained in them. This affinity, which may depend on the same factor as the permeability of the cell, varies for different salts.

The rôle played by the physical forces in the salt-action is thus determined not only by the physical properties of the fluids, but also by the "affinity" of the cell contents for certain of the constituents of these fluids. In conclusion it may be stated that one school of physiologists holds that these physical forces suffice to explain not only the salt-action, but the whole processes of absorption and excretion, while another school teaches that the physical forces merely influence the processes of nutrition, which depend on forces hitherto unexplained and possibly exercised only by the living protoplasm.

The penetrating power of salts seems to be connected with the property which many of the n possess of precipitating certain colloid substances from their solutions in water, for those salts which permeate gelatin plates are found to precipitate colloids less than others. Thus the sulphates of the alkalies, which permeate gelatin plates with difficulty, throw globulins out of solution much more readily than the chlorides. Here again, however, different colloids vary in their affinities, some reacting to one sulphate and not to another. This reaction is not confined to the proteids but extends to many carbohydrate colloid substances.

In the dilute solutions found in the tissues, the salts do not exist as

[1] An isotonic solution is here used to indicate a solution in which the osmotic pressure is equal to that of the blood serum, and (presumably) to that of the contents of the red blood cells.

such, but are largely dissociated into two or more **Ions** charged with positive and negative electricity. Thus if a small quantity of potassic chloride be dissolved in water, it is dissociated into a positive K ion (Kation) and a negative Cl ion (Anion).[1] Similarly sodium sulphate dissolved in water exists as two Na ions and a negative SO_4 ion. One effect of this is that the osmotic pressure of such a dilute solution diverges considerably from what might be expected if it were calculated from the number of molecules present, because each of the ions exerts the same osmotic pressure as a whole molecule. But a more important fact is that the ions of a salt, and not the whole molecule, form chemical combinations, and thus exert their pharmacological action. Thus what is known as the action of many poisons is really the action not of the molecule as a whole, but of one of the ions. For example, cyanide of potassium is said to possess a very poisonous action, but this is due not to the molecule KCN as such, but to the CN ion, which forms from it in solution. When ferrocyanide of potassium is dissolved, on the other hand, no CN ion is formed, the salt dissociating into the K and Fe $(CN)_6$ ions, and ferrocyanide of potash is therefore entirely devoid of the cyanide action. In the same way the corrosive effects of potassium or sodium hydrate are not due to the potassium or sodium, but to the hydroxyl ions (HO), for the same K or Na ions are obtained when KCl or NaCl is dissolved, but neither of these is corrosive. Thus when a dissociable body is administered, not one, but two, separate agents are put in action in the tissues, and in describing the effects of one of these dissociable bodies, the effects of each ion have to be taken into consideration. In the organic materia medica, many such substances occur, but in the great majority of them the action of one ion is so much more powerful than that of the other that the less important one may be neglected. Thus, morphine sulphate in the body exists as a morphine and a sulphate ion, but the action of morphine is so much the more powerful that the sulphate ion may be left out of account. This is shown by the fact that morphine hydrochlorate, which is dissociated into morphine and chloride ions, has practically the same action as morphine sulphate. In the same way the positive ion (Na, K, etc.) of the cyanides may be neglected, because the negative CN ion is so poisonous that the positive ion can never be present in the tissues in sufficient quantity to elicit any action.

When, however, less poisonous substances are involved, the case is quite different. Thus, although the hydrobromate and the sulphate of morphine may be described as possessing the same action, because the morphine ion alone is taken into account, the sulphate and bromide of potassium induce quite different symptoms,[2] because here larger

[1] These ions are not to be confused with atoms of potassium and chlorine for they possess none of the chemical properties of these elements; the physical difference consists in each ion being charged with a burden of electricity, positive or negative.

[2] Even at the present day it is sometimes a matter of discussion whether the bases or the acids are the determining factors in the action of the salts of the alkalies. The question depends entirely upon which salts are compared. If chloride of sodium and

quantities can be administered, and the SO_4 and Br ions are present in sufficient quantities to elicit their specific action, which is quite as important as that of the K ion.

In this connection it is to be noted that many bodies are not dissociated. For example, potash, KHO, and alcohol, C_2H_5HO, both contain HO, but in the former the hydroxyl is dissociated in water, while the latter remains undissociated. Thus, when KHO comes in contact with a mucous membrane, the molecule does not act as such, but the effects are due to the HO ion, and to a less extent, to the K ion. On the other hand, alcohol acts as a molecule, and the caustic effects of the HO ion are not observed under it. A similar contrast is offered by the effects of the dissociable KBr and bromated camphor, which is not dissociable but acts as an entire molecule. It is therefore vain to expect the bromide action from this compound, for the bromides act from the presence of the bromide ion, which is not formed from monobromated camphor.

This renders the classification of the inorganic salts a matter of some difficulty, for it is necessary to consider the action of each ion alone, and then to find how far its effects are modified by the presence of the other ion with which it is associated in the molecule. It is obviously illogical to consider under a "potassium series" all the salts of potash, for in many of these the K ion is of no importance, while in others it is the chief factor.

The effects of an ion cannot be determined except by administering it along with another in the form of a salt, but certain ions are so inactive in the tissues that if any effect is noted after a compound of which they form part, the action can be ascribed with certainty to the other ion, unless the change arises from alteration of the physical properties of the fluids. For example, the sodium ion (Na) and the chloride ion (Cl) are both practically inert, except in so far as they change the osmotic pressure. Thus, if a sodium salt or a chloride be found to cause some change which is not due to the physical alteration, the action is attributed to the other ion of the molecule. Before entering on the study of the action on the ions, however, it is obviously necessary to learn the symptoms caused by alteration of the physical properties of the fluids, and this can best be done by examining the effects of bodies which act only in this way, namely, chloride of sodium and water.

Bibliography.

Naegeli. Pflanzenphysiologische Untersuchungen, 1855.
De Vries. Pringsheim's Jahrb. f. wissenschaft. Botanik, xiv., p. 427.
Hamburger. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1887, p. 31; 1899, Suppl., p. 431.
Eykmann. Pflüger's Arch., lxviii., p. 58.
Hedin. Ibid., lxx., p. 525.
Koeppe. Ibid., lxvii., p. 189.
Gryns. Ibid., lxiii., p. 86.

chloride of potash be compared, the determining factor is the base, but if a chloride and a cyanide be in question, the base with which they are combined is practically of no importance.

Hofmeister. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxiv., p. 247; xxv., p. 1; xxvii., p. 395; xxviii., p. 210.
Lewith. Ibid., xxiv., p. 1.
Pohl. Zts. f. physiol. Chem., xiv., p. 151.
Hamburger. Virchow's Arch., cxl., p. 503. Zts. f. Biologie, xxx., p. 143.
For the adaptation of the theory of ions to pharmacology, consult:
Scheurlen. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvii., p. 74.
Scheurlen u. Spiro. Munch. med. Woch., 1897, p. 81.
Loeb. Pflüger's Arch., lxix., p. 1.
Schmiedeberg. Grundriss der Arzneimittellehre, 3d ed., pp. 241–243.
Krönig u. Paul. Zts. f. Hyg., xxv., p. 1.

I. SODIUM CHLORIDE AND WATER.

The most typical example of salt-action is presented by chloride of sodium, for this salt is always present in large quantities in the body, and has practically no specific action; the sodium and chloride ions are ordinary and necessary constituents of the fluids of the body. The action of this salt is therefore limited to the alteration in the physical properties of the fluids, which its presence in excess or in limited amount induces. In the same way the action of water is due only to its diluting the body fluids and lessening their osmotic pressure, and it may therefore be described along with that of salt.

Most of the tissues hitherto examined in regard to this point have proved permeable by both the Na and the Cl ions, but in every case there is a certain amount of resistance offered so that the presence of salt in the fluid round a cell always prevents its free diffusion into the interior; *i. e.*, sodium chloride solution exerts osmotic pressure on the cell. The molecular weight of common salt being small, the osmotic changes induced by it are greater than those induced by an equal weight of most other salts, because a larger number of molecules exist in each gramme. It also dissociates into its two ions more readily than many others, and this lends it still greater osmotic power.

A common example of the osmotic action of salt is seen in its use to preserve meats from putrefaction, which it accomplishes by withdrawing the fluids of the meat, and thus rendering it dry and hard and unsuitable for the growth of microbes.

In the same way the **Red Blood Corpuscles** shrink in size when they are placed in a solution of salt which is stronger than the blood-plasma (hypertonic), because the water is withdrawn from them. In dilute (hypotonic) solution, on the other hand, or in water, they swell up because they absorb water, while in solutions of the same osmotic pressure as the plasma (isotonic) they remain unaltered in size. When water is absorbed into the corpuscles some obscure change takes place in them, and the hæmoglobin diffuses into the surrounding liquid.

Muscle is affected in a similar way, strong salt solutions withdrawing fluid from it, while weaker ones are absorbed, and both tend to destroy its vitality in a longer or shorter time. In isotonic salt solution, on the other hand, muscle preserves its irritability for many hours. Strong salt solutions irritate exposed **Nerves** from the withdrawal of their fluid contents, and on the other hand, distilled water is equally fatal to them.

These changes are undoubtedly due to the imperfect permeability of the cells by the sodium and chloride ions, and as regards the red blood corpuscles, it is definitely known that salt penetrates them with the greatest difficulty if at all, and the changes induced in them by solutions of different concentration and by water are due to the alteration of their fluid contents only. If this were true for all cells, the isotonic solution would preserve them in a normal condition until they slowly perished for want of oxygen and from exhaustion of their reserve of food. But this is found not to be the case, for muscle suspended in isotonic solution often develops a more or less rhythmical series of contractions, while the frog's heart ceases to beat after a time when it is perfused with isotonic salt solution, although it has not exhausted its energy entirely. Similarly some ova and fish living in sea water die if they are put in a solution of sodium chloride isotonic with sea water while they live much longer in distilled water. It is obvious that in these instances no change in the distribution of the fluids can occur, for the osmotic pressure of the fluid is unchanged. In other words the death of these animals in pure salt solution is due not to the physical action of the salt (salt action) but to the sodium ion exercising a deleterious effect on them. This deleterious action may be neutralized by the addition of traces of salts of calcium or of some other bivalent elements, while the monovalent kations have no such antagonistic effects (Loeb). In the natural environment of living cells both sodium and calcium are present, so that the toxic effect of sodium (see Calcium) can scarcely be observed except when small masses of tissue are thoroughly washed with salt solution; as far as the higher animals are concerned, then, salt may be regarded as indifferent in itself and as acting only through changing the distribution of the fluids. And as isotonic solutions have no osmotic action, they are entirely inert.

Water or very dilute salt solutions penetrate into the superficial cells of the **Skin**, which therefore become swollen and softened. Concentrated solutions on the other hand rather tend to draw fluid from the surface cells, and this along with the passage of salt into them, causes some mild irritation. Neither salt nor water is absorbed into the circulation through the skin in mammals. A much greater absorption into the superficial tissues occurs on less protected parts, such as the cornea, which becomes white and clouded when strong salt solutions are applied to it. Similarly, either pure water or strong salt solution causes considerable pain and smarting in the nasal passages, or in wounds, from the disturbance of the normal relation of salt and fluid in the surface cells. Isotonic solutions on the other hand cause no pain.

In the **Mouth** salt has a characteristic taste, and strong solutions act as astringents here and in the throat. In the **Stomach** its action is very much like that on other mucous membranes, hypotonic solutions causing swelling, while hypertonic solutions cause a withdrawal of fluid and a shrinking of the cells. This withdrawal of fluid and imbibition of salt may set up such irritation as to induce vomiting.

The digestion in the stomach does not always seem to be improved by salt in the food, for even small quantities have been found to lessen the acidity of the gastric juice, and the amount of albuminous food absorbed from the alimentary canal in animals is but little altered when salt is added to the food. It is very possible, however, that a small quantity of salt in the food renders it more palatable in many instances,

and thus increases the reflex flow of the gastric juice. (Compare Bitters, page 56.) Dapper finds that the hydrochloric acid of the stomach is increased in some persons, and diminished in others by mineral waters containing common salt as their chief ingredient. This is only to be explained by supposing that these waters have no effect on the secretion directly, but alter it by changing the nutrition of the gastric mucous membrane.

Salt solutions are **Absorbed** both in the stomach and bowel, but considerable difference of opinion exists as to the means by which this is accomplished. An attempt has been made to explain absorption by the action of the known physical processes, such as diffusion, osmosis and filtration, but these seem quite inadequate without the assumption that there is a constant tendency for fluids and for some salts to pass inwards from the lumen of the bowel and stomach. This tendency may be opposed or strengthened by the osmotic pressure. Thus hypotonic solutions and water are absorbed rapidly, because here not only is the natural flow inwards, but the osmotic current is in the same direction, the fluid being of lower osmotic pressure than the blood serum; but even pure water appears not to be absorbed from the stomach until it has acquired a certain content of salts which diffuse into it from the blood. In solutions of equal osmotic pressure with the blood serum the absorption is slower, because here the natural flow alone is active, while hypertonic solutions are still more slowly absorbed or may even be increased at first, because the osmotic pressure acts in the opposite direction from the natural flow. Accordingly, while hypotonic and isotonic solutions disappear rapidly, the absorption of the stronger solutions may be preceded by a period in which the fluid of the bowel actually increases, water diffusing into it from the blood. At the same time the salt is being absorbed, and the solution eventually becomes isotonic, and is absorbed. The absorption from the bowel is very similar to that described by Hofmeister in gelatine plates, and it is possible that the unexplained tendency for fluids to pass inwards may be due to some "affinity" between the salts and the colloids of the bowel wall.

The **Blood** and **Lymph** are in turn affected by these processes. When hypotonic solutions pass into the blood from the bowel, the proportion of solids and liquid is of course changed, and fewer corpuscles and less solid matter are found in the cubic millimetre than normally (hydræmia). On the other hand, when strong salt solutions in the bowel cause the effusion of fluid, the blood becomes more concentrated than in ordinary conditions. After the reabsorption of the fluid, the normal balance of plasma and corpuscles must be restored, and to effect this currents are set up between the blood and the fluid of the surrounding lymph. These currents have been investigated by the injection of salt solutions directly into the blood, and not by their absorption from the bowel, but the processes probably resemble each other in their chief features. When the blood is rendered hypertonic by the injection of strong salt solution, the lymph at once begins to pour into the blood

vessels by osmotic attraction, and this leads to hydræmia and increased capillary pressure, the arterial tension remaining unchanged. This augmentation of the capillary pressure in turn induces a flow of lymph from the blood vessels into the lymph spaces.

The flow of lymph from the blood vessels is first, therefore, diminished in amount by the presence of salt in the intestine and blood, and then increased again by the high capillary pressure. This interchange between the blood and lymph is continued, because as the salt is excreted by the kidneys and other excretory glands, a continual variation in the osmotic pressure of both blood and lymph occurs.

The details of the changes between the blood and lymph under the action of salt and water are still obscure, but there is no question that the absorption of either of these leads to an augmentation of the normal exchange of these fluids. In particular, it is still undecided whether the cells of the vessels possess a secretory function similar to that of the secretory glands, or whether the whole process may be attributed to variations of osmotic pressure and filtration.

The changes in the blood and lymph are followed by an increased activity of the **Excretory Organs.** Thus the urine[1] is much augmented by the injection of salt solution into the blood, less so by the absorption of water or salt solution from the stomach and bowel. A good deal of discussion has been carried on in recent years as to the cause of the diuresis from salts and water, and some authorities hold that the presence of salt in excess in the blood stimulates the renal cells much in the same way as caffeine. But a more plausible explanation is that the greater volume of the blood, following the absorption of the fluid and the increased flow of lymph, results in an increase in the capillary pressure in the glomerulus and this in turn promotes the escape of fluid into the capsule. A more rapid flow through the tubules follows, and the glomerular secretion lies in them for a shorter time, so that there is less tendency for its constituents to be reabsorbed into the blood vessels; the fluid reaching the ureters is accordingly increased and the dissolved salts and urea are also augmented; those constituents which in ordinary circumstances are absorbed most readily by the epithelium of the tubules are increased more than the others, so that the chlorides, and the potassium and sodium of the urine rise much more than the urea, phosphates or sulphates even when the diuresis is due to the absorption of water. Any other diffusible body increases the urine in the same way as salt, and urea has therefore been suggested as a diuretic; it differs from salt in the difficulty with which it is absorbed from the tubules of the kidney and this further retards the absorption of the fluid, so that urea may probably have a more powerful diuretic action than sodium chloride.

Other secretions, such as the saliva, are increased by salt, and this

[1] The following explanation of the diuresis is based upon the theory that all the constituents of the urine are excreted by the glomerulus, and that some of them, notably much of the fluid and the alkali chlorides, are reabsorbed in passing through the tubules. See Journ. of Physiol., xxvii., p. 429.

not only by a reflex from the mouth, but also because some of the salt is excreted by the salivary glands.

When very large amounts of isotonic salt solution are thrown into the blood, the organism may have difficulty in excreting it rapidly enough, and the tissues are therefore found to be swollen and œdematous in some parts of the body.

When salt solution is injected into the serous cavities or into the lymph spaces, absorption occurs in the same way as from the alimentary canal, except that in the case of the serous cavities osmosis seems to play a greater, and the other forces a smaller rôle, than in the stomach and intestine.

The administration of large quantities of fluid, either as water or as dilute salt solution, might be expected to have some effect on the general **Tissue Change**, through the increased movement of the lymph flushing out the cells and leading to a more complete removal of the waste products. As a matter of fact, some increase in the nitrogen and sulphur eliminated in the urine has been observed under the use of large quantities of water, but it is impossible to estimate at present how far this may be due to the diuresis alone ; in any case the increase is not by any means so large as is often believed, as it only amounts to some 5 per cent., or less. Any salt solution causing an acceleration in the movement of the fluids of the body must tend to facilitate the excretion of the waste products in the same way, but some recent investigations indicate that in addition salt tends to lessen the proteid metabolism through acting directly on the cells ; this action is so slight, however, that the resulting fall in the nitrogen eliminated is concealed by the increase caused by the more complete flushing and diuresis. The amount of proteids and fats absorbed from the alimentary tract does not appear to be altered by the administration of large amounts of water (Edsall).

Strong salt solutions injected into animals either hypodermically or intravenously sometimes prove fatal, apparently from the withdrawal of fluid from the central nervous system. The symptoms in mammals are increasing lassitude and weakness, with augmented reflex excitability, tremors, and finally convulsions. The circulation is only slightly affected until just before death, when the blood-pressure falls suddenly. The red blood cells are found to be much shrunken, and according to Heinz, form thrombi in many vessels. Hæmorrhages are found in different organs, the lungs are œdematous, and the intestinal mucous membrane is swollen and congested.

The **Salts of the Urine** are increased by diuresis from any cause as has been stated ; both sodium and potassium are augmented but especially the sodium which is present in larger proportions in the serum and therefore forms a larger constituent of the glomerular secretion. This increase in the sodium salts is of course particularly marked when diuresis is induced by common salt, but when potassium salts increase the urine, the sodium also generally predominates in it and this would eventually lead to the loss of all the sodium in the blood of herbivora, whose food contains large quantities of potassium ; but after a certain

amount of sodium has been lost, potassium causes no further excretion so that the tissues apparently protect themselves from the total loss of sodium chloride, which would be fatal to them.

Bunge states that in both man and animals a diet rich in potassium causes an appetite for common salt, while a diet which does not contain an excess of potash, does not develop this desire. Thus herbivorous animals and agricultural peoples seek for salt, because vegetable foods contain large quantities of potassium, while the carnivora and the hunting peoples require no salt and often have a distaste for it, owing to their food containing a larger relative proportion of sodium salts. This instinctive appetite he regards as a means by which nature protects the tissues from excessive loss of sodium. Some doubt has recently been thrown on this explanation of the desire for salt by Lapicque, who discovered some African races living on vegetable substances alone, and using the ashes of the plants, which contain more potassium than sodium, as civilized peoples use ordinary salt. He holds, therefore, that salt is merely of value as a flavoring agent.

Therapeutic Uses. — Water and salt are rarely or never prescribed as such, but are used to a very large extent in medicine, and great virtues have been ascribed to them in a number of pathological conditions.

They are used for their local action, and for the supposed alterations in the tissue-change and in the excretions produced by them after their absorption into the blood. In general, patients are sent to watering places and baths, and the success of the treatment is to a considerable extent due to the climatic conditions, the change in the habits of life, the dietetic treatment, and the rest from everyday occupations. At the same time the drinking of large quantities of weak salt solutions, and the constant bathing in somewhat irritating fluids, may exercise a therapeutic action in many cases, and may at any rate aid the hygienic conditions. Whether the water contains salt or not, it must be remembered that in bathing the action is a purely local one, for neither the salt nor the water is absorbed. The slightly irritant effect on the skin may, however, improve its circulation and nutrition, and thereby be efficacious in some skin diseases. By continued use, the sensitiveness of the skin vessels to heat and cold may also possibly be deadened. Remarkable effects on the tissue change have been alleged to be produced by bathing in strong salt solutions, owing to their counter-irritant action. For example, the excretion of urea and the oxidation in the body are often said to be much increased, but these results have not been confirmed after further experience. Special baths are very frequently recommended for some diseases, but it must be remembered that the action is due to the salt-action; the greater the concentration, the greater is the effect on the skin, and it is of no importance which of the neutral salts is in the solution, or whether small traces of iron or other metals are present; alkaline baths are more stimulant than others.

In diseases of the stomach the drinking of large quantities of water or of weak salt solutions may also be beneficial. The action is similar to that on the skin — a mild stimulation, owing to the swelling up of the more superficial cells of the epithelium and the increased move-

ment of the fluid in them and in the deeper layers. In some cases of insomnia hot water sometimes causes sleep, probably by causing dilatation of the gastric vessels, and thereby withdrawing the blood from the brain.

In many diseases in which the symptoms point to a disorder of the metabolism, water and salt solutions are advised. Thus gout and rheumatism are frequently treated by sending the patients to watering places, on the theory that the tissues are washed out thoroughly, and the waste products thus removed. As a matter of fact, the more recent work in this direction shows that large quantities of water and dilute salt solutions have little or no effect on the uric acid excretion, which was formerly believed to be much diminished. This fact does not necessarily involve the inference that the treatment is erroneous, for it is now generally recognized that gout is not really due to the failure of the uric acid excretion. Many cases are unquestionably benefited by the springs, although it may be questioned how much of the improvement is due to the water taken, and how much of it ought to be ascribed to the changed conditions of life.

The bath treatment has been recommended for numerous diseases in which the salt and water could not possibly have any beneficial action, and in which the remedial agent is the climate, and perhaps the faith of the patient in the water. Belief in the healing power of certain natural waters is one of the most ancient of all therapeutic theories, is found among altogether uncivilized peoples, and has been incorporated in many religions. It is not to be wondered at that in some nervous disorders the faith of the patient and auto-suggestion perform some marvelous "cures."

In obesity the drinking of some waters, such as that of Kissingen and Homburg, has been advised. These waters contain from 0.2–1.4 per cent. sodium chloride. This can scarcely be brought into agreement with Oertel's treatment of obesity by lessening the amount of water taken. At the same time the relation between obesity and water absorption is still very obscure, for while Oertel's treatment undoubtedly lowers the weight in many cases, a well-known rule in fattening animals is to reduce their water consumption to a minimum.

Salt in solid form or in strong solution is used occasionally as an emetic in cases of emergency, as in poisoning, and generally produces vomiting rapidly, owing to the irritant action on the stomach. In nitrate of silver poisoning it arrests the corrosive action by the formation of the insoluble silver chloride.

Salt solution is often used instead of water in enemata and possesses when concentrated an irritant action on the bowel, producing peristalsis. Strong solutions are sometimes thrown into the rectum to destroy round worms.

Isotonic salt solutions (0.6–0.9 per cent.) are often administered when the body has lost much fluid, as they are rapidly absorbed and are devoid of irritant action; thus in hæmorrhage these solutions are injected subcutaneously, intravenously, or per rectum. A rapid

improvement in the circulation follows, and this has given rise to the erroneous opinion that such saline infusions stimulate the heart directly as well as by the mechanical effect of the increase in the fluids of the body; this theory has led to infusions being made in weakness of the heart from other causes than hæmorrhage. Some of the symptoms of cholera are believed to be due to the loss of fluid, and these are said to be relieved by the injection of salt solutions, though the mortality does not seem materially altered. The intravenous and subcutanous injection of salt solution has been recommended in uræmia and similar intoxications, with the idea of washing out the poisons through the kidneys; the same results can often be obtained by drinking large quantities of water. There is still some question as to whether the infusion of salt solution is really remedial in loss of blood, and the latest investigator of the matter, Feis, comes to the conclusion that it is of little or no benefit. The hypodermic injection of large quantities of isotonic salt solution is said by Biernacki to have effects which only pass off in some 6–8 days in animals. The blood was at first much diluted, but afterwards became very concentrated and after a few days a considerable number of the red cells were found in a state of disintegration, and the hæmoglobin thus liberated was distributed through the plasma until it was finally excreted in the urine. The animals did not seem to suffer from the treatment, but his results indicate that the injection of large quantities of salt solutions is by no means the harmless proceeding which it is generally believed to be.

Isotonic salt solutions are used in surgery to wash out the peritoneal cavity, which would be injured by distilled water.

Preparations.

Sodii Chloridum (U. S. P., B. P.), common salt.
Aqua (U. S. P.).
Aqua Destillata (U. S. P., B. P.).

Bibliography.

See Salt-Action (page 489) and Saline Cathartics.
Heidenhain. Pflüger's Arch., xlix., p. 209; lvi., p. 579.
Starling, etc. Journal of Physiol., xvi., xvii., xviii.
Cohnstein. Pflüger's Arch., lix., lxii., lxiii. Virchow's Arch., cxxxv., p. 514.
Mayer. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., ii., p. 34; iii., p. 82.
Leathes. Jour. of Phys., xix., p. 1.
Mendel. Ibid., xix., p. 227.
Orlow. Pflüger's Arch., lix., p. 170.
v. Limbeck. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxv., p. 69.
Dreser. Ibid., xxix., p. 303.
Reichmann. Ibid., xxiv., p. 78.
Limbourg. Ibid., xxiv., p. 342.
Munzer. Ibid., xli., p. 74.
Loeb. Amer. Jour. of Phys., iii., pp. 327, 383, 434. Pflüger's Arch., lxxxviii., p. 68.
Gabriel. Ztschr. f. Biol., xi., p. 554.
Heinz. Virchow's Arch., cxxii., p. 100.
Bunge. Lehrbuch der phys. u. path. Chemie, 2d ed., p. 107. Ztschr. f. Biologie, xli., p. 484.
Grawitz. Zts. f. klin. Med., xxii., p. 417.
Ludwig. Centralbl. f. inn. Med., 1896, Nos. 45 and 46.

Feis. Virchow's Arch., cxxxviii., p. 75.
Biernacki. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xix., Suppl., p. 49.
Straub. Ztschr. f. Biologie, xxxvii., p. 527; xxxviii., p. 537.
Magnus u. Gottlieb. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xliv. and xlv.
Lenhartz. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., lxiv., p. 189.
Leonfacher. Mittheil. a. d. Grenzgebiete, vi., p. 321.
Taylor, Frazier, Edsall. Pepper Laboratory Reports, Philadelphia, 1900, pp. 356, 368.
Sollmann. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlvi., p. 1.

II. POTASSIUM SALTS.

The effects of potassium in the organism can best be studied by administering the chloride, as the Cl ion is practically devoid of action and the symptoms induced by potassic chloride must therefore be due either to the "salt-action" or to the potassium. The salt-action can be discounted by comparing the symptoms with those of an isotonic solution of sodium chloride, and when this is done it is found that potassium has a distinctly poisonous action, which is chiefly manifested in depression of the central nervous system and of the heart.

In the frog the central action is shown by the spontaneous movements becoming weak and slowly performed, and by their completely disappearing much earlier than in sodium chloride experiments. In mammals the chief nervous symptoms are great muscular weakness and apathy. The respiration becomes rapid and labored, probably from the anæmia of the centres, and death is often preceded by weak asphyxial convulsions.

The depression of the heart is shown in the frog by weakness, slowness and irregularity when chloride of potassium is injected subcutaneously, but is more clearly demonstrated by the rapid failure of an excised heart when a chloride of potassium solution is perfused through it. An isotonic solution of common salt also brings the heart to standstill after a time, but potassic chloride acts very much more quickly, and, in fact, the former may restore the heart beat after it has been stopped by potassium, which proves conclusively that the latter has a specific poisonous action in addition to any salt-action. Ringer, however, found that the beat of the frog's heart perfused with a solution of common salt was not so satisfactory as that of one perfused with the same solution to which some potassic salt had been added, because, as has been already mentioned, the proteids of the heart must contain potassium, and when this is substituted by sodium, as is the case when there is no potassium in the perfusion fluid, the muscle becomes incapable of normal contraction. (See Calcium.)

The mammalian heart is also injured by the action of potassium when the salt is administered in large quantities, as is shown by the pulse becoming much slower and weaker and by a sudden fall of blood-pressure; an acceleration of the pulse is often observed at first. The poisonous action of potash on the heart has given rise to exaggerated apprehensions of the danger of using its salts in therapeutics, and it may therefore be noted that potassium has practically no effect on the heart when given by the stomach, and that very much larger quantities of potash are taken daily in the food by thousands of persons than are

ever prescribed in medicine. Bunge estimates the amount of potash in the food of some classes at 50–100 grms. (1½–3 oz.) per day. The absence of effects from the potassium ion when the salts are taken by the mouth is due to their rapid excretion in the urine.

The failure of the heart is the cause of death in mammals when potassium salts are injected into a vein, the respiration and the reflexes often persisting for a few seconds afterwards.

Potassium has some action on muscle in the frog, the contraction seeming to be somewhat greater in height, though shorter in length, and there being less tendency to contracture. Muscle exposed in a solution of potassic chloride dies very much sooner than in an isotonic solution of sodium chloride.

Chloride of potash has also some depressant action on the peripheral nerves, for they lose their irritability rapidly when they are exposed to its solutions. A concentrated solution applied to an exposed nerve causes contractions of the muscles which are supplied by it, but these are weaker and last a much shorter time than those elicited by a similar solution of common salt. This is explained by the depressant action of the potassium opposing the irritation which it induces through its salt-action. This effect on the nerves has been used by Pohl to explain a curious observation made by Nothnagel, who found that a strong solution of chloride of sodium applied to the peritoneal surface of the rabbit's intestine, causes a local contraction, followed by an upward peristaltic wave, while a similar solution of a potassium salt induces only local contraction. Pohl supposes that in the case of the sodium salt the peristaltic wave is caused by nerve stimulation, while the potassium depresses the nerve so much that it is unable to carry the impulses, and the contraction therefore remains local.

The absorption of potassium salts is followed by the same changes in the movement of the fluids of the body as have been described in the case of sodium chloride (page 493). This generally results in diuresis with an increase in the potassium and the sodium and chloride in the urine. It is often stated that the potassium salts induce a more marked increase in the urine than those of sodium, but this is not based on any satisfactory measurements; another statement which requires confirmation, is that strong solutions of potassic chloride are more irritating to the stomach and also in the subcutaneous tissues, than those of sodium chloride; this would indicate that potassium has a specific irritant action apart from its salt-action, which is not unlikely, although it cannot be said to have been demonstrated satisfactorily as yet.

Bibliography.

See also Salt-action (p. 489) and Sodium Chloride (p. 497).
Guttmann. Berl. klin. Woch., 1865.
Grandeau. Journ. de l'Anat., 1864, p. 378.
Bunge. Pflüger's Arch., iv., p. 235. Handbuch der physiol. Chem., p. 107.
Dehn. Pflüger's Arch., xiii., p. 353.
Flöel. Ibid., xxxv., p. 157.
Pohl. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiv., p. 95.
Limbourg. Ibid., xxiv., p. 342.
Ringer. See the bibliography given under Calcium.
Dogiel. Centralbl. f. d. med. Wiss., 1892, p. 354.
Brunton and Cash. Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc., 1884, Part 1, p. 197.

Lithium, Cæsium, Rubidium.

In regard to the action of the rarer alkalies, Lithium, Cæsium and Rubidium,[1] comparatively little is known. They seem to have some effect in de-

[1] The still rarer metals Yttrium, Erbium, Beryllium, Didymium and Lanthanum have scarcely received examination except at the hands of Brunton and Cash, and are not of sufficient importance to require further mention here.

pressing the spinal cord in the frog, but it is uncertain whether this is, like the action of sodium chloride, merely due to the presence of large quantities of salts in the body, or whether they have a specific action on the nerve cells. Lithium seems to have some further depressant action on the motor nerves, and to weaken the muscular contraction. It acts much less powerfully on the mammalian heart than potassium, but has some effect in weakening it. Its chief effects are exercised in the alimentary tract, for gastro-enteritis and extravasations of blood into the stomach and bowel are induced by its subcutaneous or intravenous injection and these are the cause of death in fatal poisoning in animals. Such violent effects are less easily elicited by the administration of lithium by the mouth, though vomiting and purging have been caused in animals by this method also. Some of the lithium is excreted in the bowel, and in this respect this metal appears to form a contrast to potassium and sodium and to resemble rather the group of alkaline earths.

Rubidium seems to act on the frog's heart in the same way as potassium, while cæsium is less poisonous, and differs from it entirely in some points of detail. In their action on striped and unstriped muscular tissue they seem to stand between potassium and sodium. Many attempts have been made to demonstrate that the relative toxicity of the alkaline metals bears some relation to their atomic weights, and in many instances the intensity of their action certainly seems to vary according to these, but the subject is not yet sufficiently developed to admit of a general statement.

Bibliography.

Husemann. Göttingen Nachrichten, 1875, p. 97.
Krumhoff. Inaug. Diss., Göttingen, 1884.
Ringer. Jour. of Phys., iv., p. 370.
Dietrich u. Harnack. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xix., p. 153.
Brunton and Cash. Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc., 1884, p. 197.
Binet. Comptes rendus de l'Academie, cxv., p. 251.
Richet. Arch. de Physiol., 1886, i., p. 101. Trav. d. Laborat. de Physiol., ii., p. 398, 1893.
Blumenthal. Pflüger's Arch., lxii., p. 513.
Winkler. Ibid., lxxi., p. 395.

III. AMMONIUM.

Although ammonium is not a metal, its behavior in the body resembles in many points that of the fixed alkalies, and it may therefore best be studied along with them. The ordinary solutions of ammonia, and the gas itself are possessed of powerful irritant properties, and its general action can be determined only by the examination of those of its salts in which, as in ammonium chloride, the effects of the anion can be neglected. The action of chloride of ammonium is due to the specific action of the base and to the salt-action.

Action. — Its most striking effect is the stimulation of the **Central Nervous System**, which is induced when it is injected subcutaneously or intravenously. The reflex irritability is much increased, and this may be followed by tetanic convulsions both in frogs and mammals. These convulsions persist after division of the cervical spinal cord and destruction of the medulla oblongata and brain, and are evidently caused by changes in the spinal cord, similar to those met with in strychnine poisoning. According to Yourinsky, the increased reflex and the convulsions are preceded by a short stage of depression in the frog and pigeon, but this depression is not observed when the parts of

the central nervous system above the cord are destroyed in the frog, or when the cerebrum is removed in the pigeon. He holds that the brain is first stimulated, and that this action inhibits the reflexes, but that as the stimulation passes downwards, the spinal cord is acted on in turn and the reflexes are exaggerated. The medullary centres are also involved, for the respiration very often ceases for a moment, and then becomes very much accelerated, and in some instances deeper. The cause of the altered breathing is a stimulation of the respiratory centre; the preliminary pause is attributed by some to action on the vagus ends in the lungs, but this is denied by others, and it seems possible that it is due to excessive stimulation of the respiratory centre.

The blood-pressure rises from contraction of the peripheral arterioles, induced by stimulation of the vaso-motor centre, while the heart is sometimes slowed from increased activity of the inhibitory centre, but is said to be accelerated in other cases; whether this arises from action on the cardiac muscle or on the accelerator centre is still unknown.

During the convulsions, the respiration is arrested and the blood-pressure becomes extremely high. If large enough quantities be injected, the stimulation is followed by paralysis of the central nervous system and the animal dies of asphyxia, but if artificial respiration be carried on it recovers rapidly, from the salt being changed to an inactive substance in the tissues.

In the frog ammonium chloride tends to paralyze the terminations of the **Motor Nerves**, but little or no such action is met with in mammals. This marked curara-like action differentiates the ammonium tetanus of the frog from that seen under strychnine, as the spasms last a shorter time, and soon become weaker from the impulses failing to reach the muscles through the depressed terminations. The **Muscles** themselves are also acted on by ammonium in much the same way as by potassium, although in the case of ammonium a preliminary stage of somewhat augmented irritability has been observed by some investigators. Ammonium chloride is generally credited with acting on the **Secretions** of the stomach and of the bronchial mucous membrane, which it is said to render more fluid and less tenacious, and at the same time to increase considerably.[1] No explanation of this effect on the mucous secretion has been offered, and ammonia does not seem to be excreted by the lungs, nor has it been found in the bronchial secretion.

Ammonium salts penetrate the cells of the body more freely than the salts of the fixed alkalies. For this reason solutions of ammonium chloride are **absorbed** more rapidly from the stomach and intestine than those of sodium or potassium chloride, and it has been shown that they permeate the blood cells with still greater freedom. In fact, solutions of the chloride of ammonia meet with little more resistance in entering the red blood corpuscles than does distilled water. If, however, ammonium be combined with a non-permeating ion, it fails to penetrate

[1] Rossbach states that the injection of the chloride into the vein of an animal lessens the bronchial secretion.

Thus the sulphate of ammonium is slightly cathartic, although less so than the sulphates of the fixed alkalies, and it also fails to permeate the red blood cells. (See Saline Cathartics.)

When ammonium salts are taken by the mouth, they have little or no tendency to cause symptoms from either the central nervous system or the heart. No case is known in which convulsive attacks could be shown to be due to the direct action on the central nervous system in man, and it is very doubtful whether the circulation is affected at all. In some cases of poisoning with ammonium hydrate, convulsions have occurred, but these seem to be due to the violent local action of the caustic alkali. The chloride of ammonium may induce irritation and vomiting when taken in large quantities into the stomach, but only through its action as a salt.

Ammonium is changed to urea in the body and is **Excreted** in this form in the urine. This transformation, which probably takes place in the liver chiefly, proceeds very rapidly, so that considerable quantities of some salts may be injected slowly into a vein without inducing any symptoms whatever. The urea in the urine would therefore tend to be increased by ammonia if other factors were not involved, and as a matter of fact this occurs in the herbivora. In carnivorous animals and in man, on the other hand, some of the salts of ammonium increase the excretion of urea, while others apparently increase the ammonium salts in the urine. Thus the carbonate or acetate of ammonium is excreted as urea, while the chloride appears to be excreted unchanged. This difference in the behavior of the ammonium salts is more apparent than real, however. As a matter of fact the ammonia is excreted as urea in each case, but the acid with which it is in combination may conceal this. In the case of the carbonate no acid is freed, and the same is true of the acetate, which is oxidized to the carbonate in the tissues. When, however, urea is formed from ammonium chloride, hydrochloric acid is liberated in the tissues and would act as a poison, were it not neutralized at once by ammonia being formed in the tissues themselves. It is then excreted by the urine in combination with this freshly formed ammonia,[1] while that with which it was formerly combined appears as urea. The formation of ammonia in the tissues, however, withdraws some nitrogen which would ordinarily have formed urea, so that the net result is that the urea excretion is little changed, while the ammonia of the urine is much increased. The carnivora therefore neutralize the hydrochloric acid with freshly formed ammonia. The herbivora on the other hand neutralize it with fixed alkali, so that the administration of ammonia always increases the urea excreted by them, while little or no ammonia appears in the urine; at the same time the fixed alkalies of the blood tend to become neutralized, and this may give rise to serious symptoms. (See Acids.)

The urine is often increased by the exhibition of ammonium salts, but not always. It is to be noted that, while the alkaline salts of the fixed

[1] In some cases apparently the hydrochloric acid is not excreted in this way at once, but goes to increase the acidity of the gastric juice.

alkalies render the urine less acid or even alkaline, ammonium salts have no such effect, because they are excreted as urea.

In birds and reptiles, ammonia is apparently excreted as uric acid.

The **Substituted Ammonias** of the methane series, such as methylamine, and some of those of the aromatic series resemble ammonia in their general effects, but the stimulation of the central nervous system is not often so marked a feature. In general terms, those compounds in which one hydrogen atom is substituted, tend to cause greater nervous stimulation than those in which two or three such substitutions are made, while this action is again more prominent in those in which four alkyl groups are combined with the nitrogen. In addition, most of these compounds seem to have a more depressant action on the central nervous system afterwards than ammonia, and they all tend to weaken and eventually paralyze the terminations of the motor nerves.

The ammonium bases formed from the natural alkaloids appear to have less action on the central nervous system, but act like curara on the terminations of the motor nerves. (See page 260.)

Preparations.

Ammonii Chloridum (U. S. P., B. P.) (NH_4Cl), 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.), in solution.

Trochisci Ammonii Chloridi (U. S. P.), each containing 0.1 G. (2 grs.) of ammonium chloride with 0.25 G. (4 grs.) of liquorice extract and some syrup of Tolu.

Therapeutic Uses. — The chloride is prescribed chiefly for its effects on the respiratory mucous membranes, and is a very common constituent of expectorant mixtures for bronchitis and catarrh. The lozenge is often used for sore throat, and chloride of ammonium solutions are occasionally inhaled or sprayed into the throat. It has also been prescribed in gastric catarrh with benefit in some cases, but whether this is due to its acting on the mucous secretion, or to its increasing the acidity of the gastric juice is unknown.

Ammonium chloride and the chloride of trimethylammonium were at one time advised in rheumatism, but have proved useless in this disease.

Bibliography.

On the Action of the Ammonium ion.

Lange. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., ii., p. 364.
Feltz et Ritter. Journ. de l'Anat. et de la Physiol., 1874, p. 326.
Funke. Pflüger's Arch., ix., p. 416.
Binz. Centralbl. f. klin. Med., 1888, p. 25.
Yourinsky. Arch. d. Sciences biolog., iii., p. 260.
Rossbach. Festschr. zur dritten Saecularfeier, Würzberg, 1882, i., p. 85.
Formanek. Arch. internat. de pharmakodyn., vii., p. 229.

On the fate of ammonia in the body.

Schmiedeberg. Arch. f. exp. Path., viii., p. 1.
Hallervorden. Ibid., x., p. 125.
Coranda. Ibid., xii., p. 76.
Knieriem. Zeitschr. f. Biol., x., p. 263.
Salkowski. Zeitschr. f. physiol. Chem., i., p. 1.
Feder. Zeitschr. f. Biol., xiii., p. 256.
Marfori. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiii., p. 71.
Rumpf u. Kleine. Zts. f. Biol., xxxiv., p. 65.
Pohl u. Munzer. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xliii., p. 28.

On the action of substituted ammonias.

Brunton and Cash. Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc., 1884, i., p. 197.
Nebelthau. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvi., p. 451.

IV. BROMIDES.

It was formerly widely believed that the bromides had no further action than the chlorides, and that any effects observed from potassium bromide were due to the potassium ion, the bromide ion being indifferent. There is now no question, however, that the bromides have distinctive effects, for the bromides of potassium, sodium, lithium, and other metals induce changes in the central nervous system, which are not elicited by the chlorides. At the same time the bromide action is comparatively weak, and the basic part of the salt has therefore considerable influence on the action.

Symptoms. — The bromide of potassium is the salt most generally used, and its action has been more carefully described than that of the other bromides.

In the **Alimentary Tract** it acts in the same way as the chloride of sodium, possessing a bitter salt taste and inducing salivation and thirst, and in large quantities, irritation of the stomach, nausea and vomiting. Occasionally diarrhœa has been observed from concentrated solutions reaching the intestine.

General Symptoms. — Apart from these results of local irritation, the first symptom is often a dull, heavy headache, with a feeling of lassitude, fatigue, disinclination for exertion, mental or physical, and often muscular weakness. Thought is slow and confused, the memory is indistinct, ideas are put into words with difficulty and the speech is accordingly slow and hesitating. External objects and movements are perceived, but arouse no interest in the patient, and very often this state of apathy passes into drowsiness and sleep. The bromides, however, have not the sleep-compelling power of morphine or chloral, and the sleep is never very deep and is not refreshing, the patient sometimes feeling dull and unfit for exertion after it, and some mental confusion often persisting for several hours after awaking. The reflexes are much depressed by large doses of bromide, so that touching the back of the throat does not induce nausea, although the sensation of touch may persist. The mucous membranes of the genito-urinary tract are also less sensitive, or rather their irritation is less liable to set up reflex movements. After very large doses of the bromides the conjunctiva may sometimes be touched without causing winking, and lessened sensation in the skin has been noted in some cases.

The pulse is slow and weak after large doses and the respiration is also less active. An increase in the urine is often observed.

Acute fatal poisoning with bromides has seldom or never occurred in man, but after enormous doses prolonged sleep or stupor has been seen, and confusion and apathy lasting for several days.

When bromide is given repeatedly in large doses, a series of symptoms is often induced to which the name of **Bromism** has been applied.

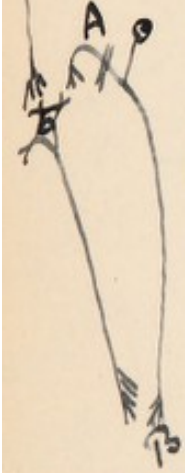
It occurs much more rapidly in some persons than in others, and may suddenly appear after the patient has been taking the drug for months without any untoward results. The commonest symptoms of bromism are *skin eruptions* of various kinds, very often commencing as acne of the face. In severe cases the pustules of acne may coalesce and form small abscesses, which are followed by ulcers. In other cases the skin affection partakes rather of the nature of a localized blush or erythema, and sometimes copper-colored blotches have been observed. Some *disturbance of the digestion* and loss of appetite is often met with from the local action of large quantities of the salt on the stomach. Affections of the *respiratory passages* are not produced so often by the bromides as by the iodides, but have been met with and consist in an increased secretion of mucus by the bronchial and nasal epithelium. The *mental symptoms* are merely exaggerations of those observed after one large dose. The memory is especially defective, sometimes sudden lapses occurring, sometimes a general inability to remember the most recent events being met with. The patient is indifferent to his surroundings, speaks slowly and stammers, mispronounces ordinary words, or misses several words out of a sentence. The gait is uncertain and tremor often accompanies any movement, the expression of the face is stupid and apathetic, and the eyes are heavy and lack lustre.

These symptoms generally disappear on the withdrawal of the drug, but in his reduced condition the patient is of course liable to fall a victim to infectious disease, and in a number of cases of chronic bromide poisoning the immediate cause of death has been an attack of bronchitis or pneumonia.

Action. — The effects of the bromides on animals have been the subject of a large number of researches, but these have not been attended with success in most cases, because the investigators have almost always used the bromide of potassium. The action here is complicated by the potassium action as well as by the salt-action, and these are often sufficient to obscure the slight depression of the brain which is the really characteristic effect of the bromide ion. In the frog, for example, potassium chloride is capable of inducing depression of the central nervous system, and a certain amount of stupor is induced by the salt action of chloride of sodium. The slightly greater depression induced by the bromide may well be overlooked, therefore, and many investigators have concluded that the bromide ion is as inactive as the chloride. The typical bromide action may be induced with greater clearness in mammals by the use of sodium bromide in repeated doses, and in dogs symptoms of depression and imperfect coördination have been observed, and sometimes stupor and death from failure of the respiration. The most characteristic action, however, is obtained from the administration of the drug to patients, as the affection of the central nervous system is so slight after all but extreme doses, that in order to produce distinct symptoms in the less sensitive brain of the dog, quantities must be used which entail the additional complication induced by salt-action.

The irritation of the throat and stomach, the nausea, vomiting, and rarer diarrhœa must be attributed for the most part to the action of the salt in withdrawing fluid from the mucous membranes, and may be avoided by the use of dilute solutions and by their administration when the stomach is full.

The depression and other mental symptoms are due to a direct action on the **Central Nervous System.** Albertoni found that the irritability of the motor areas of the dog's brain was very distinctly reduced by the administration of bromides, and in particular that a stimulus which normally would have spread over a wide area and given rise to an epileptiform convulsion, caused only localized contractions after bromides, while convulsive poisons entirely failed to act. Loewald found some psychical processes, such as those involved in the addition of numbers, uninfluenced by bromides, while a series of figures could be learned by rote only with great difficulty; he therefore considers that the action is limited to certain definite functions.[1] The reflexes are also reduced very considerably by bromides, and according to many observers this occurs in the frog before the spontaneous movements cease. This is explained by the passage of impulses from the sensory to the motor cells of the cord being interrupted, while the connection between the cerebral centres and the motor cells of the cord is maintained intact. The reflexes in man are prevented or retarded also, the most striking instance being the absence of reflex nausea when the back of the throat is touched. The other reflexes are also reduced, especially those of the genital organs, those of the conjunctiva being less affected. While reflex movements cannot be elicited, the sensation often remains unimpaired, but after large doses a more or less complete anæsthesia is said to be produced. This anæsthesia extends to the skin when very large quantities are administered, and the cutaneous nerves are said to be rendered somewhat less acutely sensitive, when comparatively small doses are taken.



The depression of the spinal reflexes effected by the bromides renders them antidotal to strychnine, which induces convulsions only when given in much larger quantities than are usually necessary.

In addition to the ordinary reflexes, some special functions are depressed by the bromides. Thus the respiration becomes slower, and the sexual instincts are depressed or entirely suspended in many cases. Whether the latter is caused by action on the spinal cord or on the cerebral cortex is unknown.

The action on the central nervous system is due to the bromide only, and not to the base with which it is combined. Thus, it may be elicited by the bromides of potassium, sodium, lithium or ammonium, while it is not induced by their chlorides. At the same time it seems probable that potassium bromide acts more strongly than the others, because the bromide action is here supplemented by the depressant action of the base.

[1] Wiersma states that the perception of stimuli by the senses is actually facilitated by bromides, but this appears to be incompatible with universal clinical experience.

The bromide ion is not very poisonous to **Nerve** and **Muscle**, but it is not so nearly indifferent to them as the chloride ion, although no effects are elicited unless the bromide is applied directly to the exposed muscle or nerves.

The **Cardiac Effects**, when present, are caused by the potassium component only, and are not elicited by the bromides of sodium and ammonium. The vessels of the pia mater are often found contracted from the action of bromides, and this has been supposed to account for the depression. It is probable, however, that this anæmia of the brain is analagous to that observed in sleep and it may therefore be the result and not the cause of the depression. The mental disturbance observed in bromism is so nearly related to that seen after a single large dose, that it is unnecessary to enter into any explanation of it here.

The **Skin Eruptions** have usually been attributed to the excretion of bromide through the cutaneous glands, and seem to arise in the great majority of cases from the glands, and in fact generally remain confined to them. Bromide has been found in the acne pustules, and it is quite conceivable that it may act as an irritant here, especially when the secretion becomes acid from decomposition.

The **Temperature** of animals is often said to be reduced by the bromide; this may be explained by the lessened movement.

Excretion.—The bromides are rapidly absorbed by the mucous membranes, and some bromide reaction can be obtained from the urine a few minutes after they have reached the stomach, but the great mass of the drug is very slowly excreted. When the treatment is continued, the bromide therefore tends to accumulate in the body, but the proportion excreted rises with the increase of the salt in the blood, until an equilibrium is reached, exactly as much bromide appearing in the urine as is absorbed from the stomach. The excretion continues after the treatment is discontinued, and the drug is found in the urine for one or two months afterwards. When the body is thus saturated with bromides, some of the chloride combinations are replaced by them; for example, Nencki found that the acid secreted by the stomach might contain more hydrobromic than hydrochloric acid. The substitution of bromide for chloride may be the cause of some of the symptoms of bromism; one consequence is that the chlorides released from their combinations, are excreted in much larger quantity than usual in the urine. The nitrogenous metabolism does not seem to be affected, but in some cases a considerably smaller amount of phosphates appears in the urine. This has been supposed to be related to the action of bromides in lessening the mental activity, but is not by any means a constant effect.

The bromides seem to be distributed in the body very much in the same proportion as the chlorides, being most largely found in the blood serum, while the brain and spinal cord contain them in comparatively small proportion.

The bromides are excreted mainly in the urine, but traces occur in the perspiration and milk, and some cases of bromism in children

have been recorded as due to their absorbing the bromide thus excreted by the nurse. In chronic poisoning the breath very often has a disagreeable odor, which has been attributed to bromine or some of its volatile organic compounds being excreted by the lungs, but nothing is known with certainty regarding it. Bromine has also been found in the hair after the prolonged use of bromides, and is supposed to exist in organic combinations here. The hydrobromic acid secreted into the stomach in bromism is probably all reabsorbed in the intestine.

Bromide of Sodium differs from bromide of potassium chiefly in the absence of any changes in the heart or in the muscles exposed to its solution. The central nervous system also seems somewhat less depressed, because the potassium in itself has some effect, while the sodium ion is indifferent.

Bromide of Ammonium owes most of its action to the bromide ion, unless when it is given in large quantities, when, according to several observers, the convulsive action characteristic of ammonium is developed in animals. Smaller doses are followed by lethargy and weakness in animals, and in man the effects are practically identical with those of sodium bromide.

Lithium Bromide has not been so largely used as the others, though it is said to be more depressant than bromide of potassium.

Hydrobromic Acid possesses the characteristic bromide action after absorption, but has the local action of an acid and is consequently more irritant than the other members of the series.

Strontium and **Calcium Bromides** seem to resemble the others in their general action and are said to disturb the digestion less. At the same time calcium and strontium salts are generally absorbed more slowly by the intestine than those of the alkalies.

Preparations.

Potassii Bromidum (U. S. P., B. P.) (KBr), 1–4 G. (15–60 grs.).
Sodii Bromidum (U. S. P., B. P.) (NaBr), 1–4 G. (15–60 grs.).
Ammonii Bromidum (U. S. P., B. P.) (NH_4Br), 1–2 G. (15–30 grs.).
Lithii Bromidum (U. S. P.) (LiBr), 1–2 G. (15–30 grs.).
Calcii Bromidum (U. S. P.) ($CaBr_2$), 2–4 G. (30–60 grs.).
Strontii Bromidum (U. S. P.) ($SrBr_2$), 2–4 G. (30–60 grs.).

Acidum Hydrobromicum Dilutum (U. S. P., B. P.) contains comparatively little bromide, as it is only a 10 per cent. solution in water, so that a gramme of bromide of potash contains as much bromine as about 7 grammes of the dilute acid. 6–12 c.c. (½–3 fl. drs.) (B. P., 15–60 mins.).

The bromides are all colorless crystalline bodies without odor but with a saline, bitter taste, and are very soluble in water They are almost always prescribed in solution and ought to be taken diluted with a considerable amount of water in order to avoid the irritant action on the stomach. The prescription may be flavored with syrup and with some of the volatile oil preparations. The large doses of the bromides render their hypodermic injection inadmissible, as concentrated solutions provoke pain and irritation in the subcutaneous tissues.

A number of other bromide combinations are used in therapeutics, such as the hydrobromate of quinine, but here the bromide ion is present in very small quantity compared with the alkaloid, and in the doses used in therapeutics has no appreciable effect. In monobromated camphor the bro-

mine is present in a different form and no bromide ion is liberated, so that the action of the metallic bromides cannot be compared with it. As a matter of fact, the bromine in this compound seems to have little or no effect.

Therapeutic Uses. — The bromides are used chiefly in the treatment of epilepsy, in which they cannot be replaced by any other drug, and the prognosis of which has been entirely changed since their introduction. In a few cases the bromide treatment is said to cure epilepsy — the attacks do not return after the treatment is stopped — but this is exceedingly rare; in others the bromides have no effect, but in the great majority of cases (90–95 per cent.) the number of attacks is much smaller, or the patient may be entirely free from them as long as the treatment is persevered with, although they return as soon as it is given up. Very often no improvement is observed during the first few days, until the tissues have become saturated with bromide, but in other cases the spasms disappear immediately. The bromide of potassium is more commonly used than the others, and the general impression is that it is more efficient and more certain in its effects, but some physicians prefer the bromide of ammonium or of lithium, and others still prefer a mixture of two bromides. In severe cases it is sometimes found that the bromide action is strengthened by the addition of cannabis indica, opium or chloral, although the last two are to be used with caution. In the treatment of epilepsy it is well to begin with small doses and to increase them up to 10 G. per day, or until the desired effect is attained, or some complication, such as widespread skin affections, precludes their further use.

The acne is very often a troublesome accompaniment of the bromide action, and in fact may prevent the use of this valuable drug in otherwise suitable cases. It may often be prevented by scrupulous cleanliness of the skin and frequently yields to treatment with small doses of arsenic.

The bromides are not so effective in other affections of the central nervous system, although some success has attended their use in chorea, in the convulsions of children, and in some forms of hysteria. They have also been used in tetanus and in strychnine poisoning, but are inferior to other remedies such as chloral. Neuralgia is sometimes improved by bromide treatment, especially when it arises from worry, anxiety, or overwork.

As soporifics, bromides often fail entirely, or induce such depression and confusion subsequently as to preclude their use. In sleeplessness from anxiety, they are often valuable, however, and it is found that the dose of chloral may be considerably lessened, if it is prescribed along with bromides. In sleeplessness from pain, bromide is of little or no value.

Bromides have been used with good results in sea-sickness, in the sickness of pregnancy, and, it is said, in whooping-cough. Bromide of potash was formerly given internally to lessen the reflex movements of the throat and thus to permit of laryngoscopic manipulations, and

it was also applied locally to the throat for this purpose. It has now been superseded by the local use of cocaine.

THE BIBLIOGRAPHY

of potassium bromide, up to 1877, is given fully by
Krosz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., vi., p. 1. See also
Albertoni. Ibid., xv., p. 248.
Loewald. Kraepelin's Psycholog. Arb., i., p. 489.
Ach. Ibid., iii., p. 203.
Wiersma. Ztsch. f. Psych. u. Phys. d. Sinnesorgane, xxviii., p. 179.
Nencki u. Schoumow-Simanowsky. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiv., p. 313.
Laudenheimer. Neurolog. Centralbl., 1897, p. 538.
Bistroff. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1868, p. 721. (Ammonium bromide.)
Amory. Bromide of Potassium and Bromide of Ammonium, Boston, 1872.
Weir Mitchell. American Journ. of Med. Sciences, lx., p. 440. (Lithium bromide.)
Reichert. Boston Med. and Surg. Journ., civ., p. 505. (Hydrobromic acid.)
Rosenthal. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xxii., p. 227.

V. IODIDES.

Although the iodides have been more largely used in medicine than any of the other salts of the alkalies, their mode of action is still wrapped in obscurity. This is due to the unsatisfactory state of the pathology of the diseases in which they are used, to the fact that the attention of investigators has been drawn to the symptoms of poisoning rather than to the therapeutic action, and also to the fact that the effects seem to vary very considerably not only in different individuals, but also in the same person at different times.

Symptoms. — Large quantities of the iodides cause irritation of the stomach from their salt-action, and induce nausea and vomiting, more rarely diarrhœa; but these symptoms are quite distinct from those known as **Iodism**, which may arise from comparatively small quantities, and which are most commonly seen when the remedy has been administered repeatedly.

The commonest symptom of iodism is catarrh of the **Respiratory Passages**, more especially of the nose, which betrays itself in some swelling and discomfort in the nasal mucous membrane, in a profuse watery secretion, and in sneezing. The catarrh spreads upwards to the conjunctiva, which often becomes swollen and congested, and to the frontal sinuses, where it induces a feeling of dulness or violent headache; it also progresses downwards to the tonsils, which become swollen and inflamed in some cases. Still lower it occasionally causes some swelling and œdema or small ulcers in the larynx, and has thus caused dyspnœa, which has necessitated tracheotomy, or very rarely has proved fatal. Bronchitis has also been observed in man, with a profuse watery secretion, and in animals œdema of the lungs and pleuritic effusion have been produced by the injection of iodides. Even small quantities injected intravenously increase the mucus secreted by the bronchi.

In the **Mouth** iodism is often betrayed by swelling and irritation of the throat and tonsils, and by salivation, rarely by swelling of the salivary glands. The stomach is seldom affected, the appetite generally remain-

ing good, but in some persons iodides induce nausea and gastric discomfort.

Skin Eruptions of different forms are also common results of the administration of iodides, but are less liable to occur in the beginning of the treatment than the catarrh of the respiratory passages. These eruptions may simulate almost all known skin diseases, but the most common forms are erythematous patches, or papular eruptions which may pass into pustules or into larger inflamed areas. Eczema, bullæ, pemphigus, and purpura arise less frequently from the use of iodides. In some cases, a more or less defined area of œdema has been observed in the face.

The **Secretion of Urine** is generally increased by the administration of iodides, as of other salts of the alkalies, though they seem to have no specific action on the kidneys. In rare cases albuminuria has been observed, and some irritation of the bladder, urethra, and vagina is said to have been induced by iodide treatment, but these statements require confirmation.

Not infrequently the **Pulse** is accelerated, though this is not constant.

The **Central Nervous System** seldom seems to be affected by the treatment. In rare cases paralysis, tremors and various disorders of sensation, such as localized anæsthesia or neuralgic pains, have been recorded, but it seems open to question whether these were in all cases the direct result of the medication.

A slight rise of **Temperature** has also occurred, often apparently from the skin affections or the catarrh; in some doubtful cases apparently without any such cause.

Loss of Weight has been noted a number of times both in man and animals. This is seen more frequently in thyroid disease (goitre) than elsewhere, and in these cases the goitre is often reduced in size. It is still disputed whether the prolonged use of iodides lessens the size of the testicles and of the mammary glands.

In some rare cases of very prolonged iodism, a **Cachexia** has been observed, with great loss of flesh, weakness, depression, mental confusion, restlessness and aberrations of sensation. These did not disappear at once when the treatment was discontinued, as the ordinary symptoms of iodism do.

In many instances, small doses of iodide may be given repeatedly without any noticeable disturbance, but in others, the smallest quantity (0.2 G.) induces severe poisoning. Some authorities consider that these small doses are more liable to cause iodism than larger ones, but this may be doubted, as the action of the drug is so capricious, that the statistics of different observers show great discrepancies, even when approximately the same dose has been given. Thus, Haslund, treating patients with at first 3 G. (45 grs.) and then 5 G. (80 grs.) daily, observed iodism in only 12 per cent. of his cases during the first few days, while others have found iodism induced in 60 per cent. of their cases after a single dose of 3 G. An attempt has been made to explain these discrepancies by supposing that iodism is only produced

by impure iodides, but this is not correct, for it has been observed in numerous cases in which the drug was absolutely pure. Among other conditions which favor the onset of symptoms, is a slow excretion of the iodide such as is observed in some forms of renal irritation. Children seem less liable to suffer from the iodides than adults. The dose administered has, of course, some relation to the onset of symptoms; thus, very large doses are more likely to induce them than very small ones, but it seems that a tolerance is soon established in some cases, for after iodism has been induced, and the daily dose lessened accordingly, it is sometimes found that it may be gradually increased until a quantity considerably greater than that originally given may be taken with impunity. In other instances, a definite quantity may be given for a long time without inducing symptoms, but these may suddenly set in without any apparent change in the treatment and without any appreciable cause. Very often it is found that the symptoms disappear when the treatment is continued, and recovery invariably sets in when the drug is abandoned. The iodides all induce iodism, the symptoms being apparently unaffected by the basic ion, but the iodide of ammonium is said to be more liable to induce them than the others, owing to the iodine being freed from it more easily. The symptoms are seldom dangerous, but a few cases are recorded in which œdema of the larynx resulted and proved fatal, and in others death was attributed to the iodides, but the exact cause was not ascertained.

The iodides are not **Absorbed** from watery solutions applied to the skin, but are rapidly taken up by all the mucous membranes. When given by the mouth they are absorbed unchanged by the stomach and intestine, and appear in the secretions within a few minutes. The greater part of the iodide is **Excreted** in the urine, in which it appears as salts. Some escapes by the salivary glands, however, and small quantities are excreted by the stomach as hydriodic acid and sometimes as free iodine; iodide has also been found in the tears, perspiration, milk, sebum, and in the secretion of the nasal mucous membranes. No iodine can be detected in the breath of animals poisoned with iodides. After treatment with iodide of potash, iodine has been detected in the hair, milk, muscles and heart in organic combination. Iodides are much more rapidly excreted than bromides, for 65–80 per cent. of the iodide appears in the urine within 24 hours after its administration, and no iodide reaction is obtained from either urine or gastric juice a week after the treatment has ceased. According to an old statement of Claude Bernard, the saliva contains traces of iodine for weeks after the excretion through the kidneys has stopped. It has been stated that iodide fails to pass into the serous cavities in inflammatory transudates, but this seems to be incorrect, although the starch test often fails here from the presence of proteids.

The greater part of the iodide administered therefore passes through the tissues and is excreted in the urine in the form of salts. If iodide of potassium be given, as is generally the case, some interchange between it and the salts of the tissues takes place and iodide

of sodium, chloride of potash and several other salts are formed, and all of these are excreted in the urine. Some of the iodide undergoes decomposition in the body, however, and the free iodine thus formed is believed to be the cause of the symptoms of iodism. This decomposition of iodides in the body was at first rather inferred from the similarity of the symptoms with those induced by iodine preparations, than from the actual demonstration of the presence of iodine in the tissues. The ordinary iodine tests fail in albuminous solutions, because it appears to exist in a loose combination with the proteids, but free iodine has been shown to be excreted into the stomach, and an organic compound of iodine exists in the hair and in various internal organs after iodide treatment. The successful treatment of goitre with iodide of potassium is also a strong argument in favor of the presence of free iodine, and the iodothyrin of the thyroid gland has been shown to be increased by potassic iodide. If it be correct that the iodine reaction can be obtained from the saliva for weeks after the treatment has been stopped, this would also suggest that some other combination than the simple salts is formed in the body, for it is unlikely that such soluble bodies as the ordinary iodides could circulate for this length of time and escape the excretory organs. When iodine is thus liberated in the body, it does not circulate as such, but at once combines with the proteids.

The formation of free iodine from iodides (which is, of course, quite distinct from their dissociation into potassium and iodide ions) has been explained by several theories. The first of these assumed that the iodide was decomposed by the carbonic acid of the blood, forming hydriodic acid, and that this was subsequently oxidized in the blood to free iodine. Binz supposed that the decomposition occurred rather in the protoplasm of the tissues, and supported his statement by an experiment in which an iodide solution was saturated with carbonic acid and had plant protoplasm added to it, after which it gave the ordinary iodine reaction with starch. The objection has been raised that this experiment succeeds only when dying protoplasm is used, and another theory has been proposed, namely, that the oxidation is carried on, not by the protoplasm itself, but by some unstable substances which are excreted by living matter, and which therefore occur on the mucous membranes, in the saliva and elsewhere. These bodies are in themselves reducing agents, but in the presence of air, as in the respiratory passages, their oxidation is accompanied by the liberation of "active oxygen" which in turn oxidizes the iodides. Another explanation which has been given for the occurrence of free iodine is the action of nitrites, which decompose iodide of potassium in the presence of acids. If these nitrites be excreted in the saliva therefore, as is often the case, and there meet with iodides in an acid medium, free iodine is formed and some irritation arises. It has been stated recently that iodism is very readily elicited in patients whose saliva contains much sulphocyanide, and that the occurrence of this body in the secretions of the respiratory tract is responsible for the manifestations of irritation induced by iodides. Binz has found that some microbes are capable of setting iodine free from acid solutions of the iodides.

Iodine is supposed to be set free along the mucous membrane of the respiratory passages and in the skin; and in this way the coryza of the former, and the eruptions on the latter are explained. It must be noted that free iodine has not yet been clearly demonstrated in either of these

surfaces, and that the theory has been formulated only to explain the symptoms of iodism. Iodides have been found in the nasal secretion, saliva, and perspiration, but no free iodine. Some of the other symptoms of iodism are probably due to action on the thyroid gland; thus the acceleration of the heart observed in some cases, the loss of flesh resulting from their prolonged use in others, and the reduction in the size of goitres may all be explained in this way. (See Thyroid Extract.)

The central nervous system and the circulation scarcely seem to be affected by iodides. Very large quantities of potassic iodide injected into a vein are found to weaken and paralyze the heart in animals, but do not seem to be more poisonous than other potassium salts, and depression of the central nervous system may also be elicited in the same way by the potassium action. Barbera states that very large quantities of iodides paralyze the depressor nerve terminations in the medulla oblongata and weaken the peripheral inhibitory mechanism of the heart, while Hunt found the accelerator fibres less easily fatigued after iodide. The metabolism of the body seems little affected by iodides in most cases, but a further examination of the excretions of patients who lose weight under the treatment is desirable. The action of the iodides in therapeutics has been ascribed by some authors to their rendering the movement of the leucocytes (diapedesis) more active, but no satisfactory evidence has been adduced in support of this. Solutions of iodide of sodium are found to be more poisonous to muscle, cilia and unicellular organisms exposed to them than are similar solutions of the chloride or bromide, so that the iodide ion appears to be more fatal to protoplasm than the bromide and chloride ion, while it is less poisonous than the fluoride. In the frog stiffness and awkwardness in the movements are elicited by comparatively small doses of iodide of sodium and these symptoms have been shown to be due to rigor mortis occurring in the muscles.

Preparations.

Potassii Iodidum (U. S. P., B. P.) (KI), 0.1–1.3 G. (2–20 grs.).
Unguentum Potassii Iodidi (U. S. P., B. P.).
Linimentum Potassii Iodidi cum Sapone (B. P.).
Sodii Iodidum (U. S. P., B. P.) (NaI), 0.1–1.3 G. (2–20 grs.).
Ammonii Iodidum (U. S. P.) (NH_4I), 0.1–1 G. (2–15 grs.).
Strontii Iodidum (U. S. P.) (SrI_2), 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).
Syrupus Acidi Hydriodici (U. S. P.), a syrup containing about 1 per cent. by weight of hydriodic acid. 4 c.c. (1 fl. dr.).

The iodides form colorless crystals when pure, a yellowish tint indicating the presence of free iodine. They are very soluble in water, less so in alcohol, and are always prescribed in watery solutions, and often along with carbonates of soda or potash, in order to prevent decomposition as far as possible. The iodide of potash is the one most frequently used and is less liable to contain free iodine than the others, but iodide of soda is preferred by some; the dose often has to be much increased beyond that given above. The iodide of ammonium is said to be more liable to cause skin eruptions and disturbance of the digestion than the others. Some iodide effects may also be obtained by the use of iodide of lead or mercury, but here they are complicated by the action of the metal, and these will be discussed along with the other salts of lead and mercury. The external application of iodides, as in the ointment or liniment of potassic iodide, is not attended by any effect local or general.

Therapeutic Uses. — The iodides are used very extensively in the treatment of tertiary syphilis, in which they have proved invaluable.

They have also been administered in the earlier stages of the disease, but have proved to be of little service here. In syphilitic bone disease and ulcers, and in the gummata of the brain and other internal organs, however, a remarkable improvement very often occurs after the iodide treatment has been adopted. The iodide of potassium or of sodium is almost invariably used, and is given in as large doses as the patient can bear, often up to 5 G. (75 grs.) daily. In the beginning of the tertiary manifestations, the iodide is often prescribed along with mercury, and this combination is found more efficient than the iodide alone. No explanation of the action of the iodides in syphilis has been given, although it is surmised that they may act as a specific poison (antiseptic) to the unknown cause of the disease. It is suggested by some writers (Binz) that the iodine is set free in the gumma or in its neighborhood, as in the saliva and on the skin, but this is pure speculation, unfounded on any basis of fact.

In many diseases which are not directly attributable to syphilis, but in which there is a history of syphilis, iodides are of value; thus, neuralgia and other nervous disturbances are often relieved by them in persons of a syphilitic taint, and in fact, improvement is often observed in the most diverse conditions in persons who have formerly suffered from this complaint.

Another series of symptoms or of diseases which is often treated with iodides, is rheumatism in its various manifestations. The treatment is of little value in acute rheumatism, and in fact, often fails in the chronic disease, but is occasionally attended with improvement, although the exact conditions in which this occurs are still unknown.

The iodides have long enjoyed some reputation in the treatment of goitre, but the thyroid extract has proved much superior to them and promises to supplant them entirely, as their effects are due to their action on the thyroid secretion. The same may be said regarding their use in obesity, which was found to be successful in some cases, presumably of thyroid insufficiency. In normal persons and animals it is often found that iodides rather tend to increase than to decrease the weight.

Some skin eruptions have been found to be benefited by the iodide treatment even when no suspicion of syphilis could be entertained. (Compare thyroid extract.)

The success attending the treatment of goitre with iodides seems to have been the basis of their use in cases of enlarged lymphatic glands, scrofula, and lupus, but here the results are very doubtful, although some authorities allege that the iodide treatment is of value. There is a general consensus of opinion that the old treatment of malignant tumors, such as cancer and sarcoma, with iodides is hopeless.

These salts are sometimes credited with promoting the absorption of serous effusions, but here again it seems doubtful if their reputation is merited. The same may be said of their use to aid in the removal of hypertrophy of connective tissue in the body, as in the various forms of sclerosis and cirrhosis although the iodides are still very widely

used in arteriosclerosis. Their effect in removing the syphilitic gumma was evidently the origin of their use here, but while the resolution of gummata under the iodides is beyond question, the evidence of improvement in arteriosclerosis in patients free from syphilitic taint is not so decided, and in fact the use of iodides in this condition is condemned by many authorities. Heinz has attempted to find a scientific basis for the treatment of exudates and connective tissue hypertrophy with iodides, and suggests that the vessel walls are rendered more permeable and the leucocytes more active by these salts, but fails to bring any convincing evidence for either hypothesis.

At one time aneurism was treated with large doses of iodide, and improvement was undoubtedly observed in some cases, in which there was probably a syphilitic taint; but there seems no reason to suppose that the iodides have any special action on the vessels apart from their antisyphilitic action.

Iodides are often prescribed along with other remedies in expectorant mixtures, the object being to render the bronchial mucus more watery and less tenacious, and thus to facilitate its removal. In some cases of asthma they have been found of value, perhaps from the same action.

Iodide of potassium is generally prescribed in chronic poisoning from lead or mercury, and is believed to hasten the elimination of these metals, although it has not been shown that it is of more value here than other salts such as the chlorides and bromides. The belief in the efficacy of the iodides in mercury poisoning has suggested that they act in tertiary syphilis only by aiding in the elimination of the mercury stored in the tissues from the treatment of the earlier stages, but this is incorrect, for the iodides are of value in cases of tertiary syphilis in which mercury has not been previously used.

Finally, iodide of potassium is sometimes added to other drugs in cases of malingering, or in which it is suspected that the patient is not taking the remedy as directed. If the iodide is swallowed it can be detected in the urine by the addition of a few drops of chlorine water and of starch solution, which assumes the well-known blue color.

Iodides have to be used with care in cases of pulmonary phthisis, in which they often increase the cough and expectoration, and in some cases, it is alleged, cause hæmoptysis. Children have sometimes been found to suffer with iodism from being nursed by a person under iodide treatment.

Iodism very often proves a disagreeable accompaniment of the treatment, and is sometimes so severe as to preclude the use of the salts, so that many attempts have been made to discover some expedient by which these symptoms may be avoided. Ehrlich proposed the use of sulfanilic acid in order to decompose the nitrites, by which he supposed that the iodide was decomposed and the iodine set free in the respiratory passages; but Lewin has shown that sulfanilic acid does not combine with nitrites in the body, and the clinical results of this treatment have not been very encouraging. Another method of pre-

venting iodism is the prescription of bicarbonate of soda along with the iodide, with the object of rendering the surface of the mucous membranes more alkaline, and thus preventing the action of the nitrites on the iodides. This seems, like the use of sulfanilic acid, successful in a certain number of cases, but not in all.

The cutaneous eruptions are said to be less liable to occur when the skin is kept scrupulously clean by frequent bathing.

Bibliography.

Blum. Munch. med. Woch., 1898, pp. 231 and 267.
Rose. Virchow's Arch., xxxv., p. 12.
Binz. Ibid., lxii., p. 124. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., viii., p. 320; xiii., p. 139; xxxiv., p. 185.
Buchheim. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iii., p. 104.
Boehm u. Berg. Ibid., v., p. 329.
Hogyes. Ibid., x., p. 250.
Rozsahegyi. Hofmann-Schwalbe's Jahresber., 1879, p. 198.
Adamkiewicz. Char. Annal., iii., p. 381.
Bogolepoff. Virchow-Hirsch Jahresber., 1876, i., p. 402.
Ehrlich. Char. Annal., x., p. 129.
Groenouw. Therap. Monatsh., 1890, p. 105.
Röhmann u. Malachowski. Therap. Monats., 1889, p. 301.
Kulz. Zeitschr. f. Biologie, N. F., v., p. 460.
Nencki u. Schoumow-Simanowski. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiv., p. 313.
Ehlers. Monatsh. f. pract. Dermatol., 1889, i., p. 428.
Prevost u. Binet. Therap. Monatsh., 1890, p. 640.
Howald. Zts. f. physiolog. Chem., xxiii., p. 209.
Annuschat. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., x., p. 261.
Stockman and Charteris. Journ. of Physiol., xxvi., p. 277.
Heinz. Virchow's Arch., clv., p. 44.
Gumprecht. Verhandl. d. Congress. f. inn. Med., xix., p. 260.

VI. IODINE.

Iodine possesses a local irritant action similar to, though less intense than that of chlorine and bromine. It is much less volatile, and therefore comes into contact with the tissues more slowly than these, but the chemical change is analogous, and iodides and proteid compounds result.[1]

Action. — When applied to the **Skin**, it dyes it a yellow-brown or dark brown color, and acts as an irritant, producing a sensation of heat and itching. In very concentrated solution or in the solid form, it may cause blistering or even corrosion, but it acts much more slowly than most other irritants, and at the same time the irritation is more prolonged. It penetrates into the deeper layers of the skin, and small quantities are absorbed.

The **Mucous Membranes** are more strongly affected by contact with it; thus when its vapor is inhaled for some time, smarting, swelling and increased secretion is caused in the nasal mucous membrane, conjunctiva, throat and lower respiratory passages, resembling exactly the symptoms known as iodism. In the stomach small quantities may

[1] It therefore differs entirely from the iodides and the other salts, as far as its local action is concerned, but there are so many points of connection between the halogen and the salts that it has been found convenient to insert it here. The same remark holds good for the next series (Iodoform).

cause slight irritation and improved appetite, but as a general rule nausea, discomfort and vomiting follow its administration in any save the most minute doses, and occasionally diarrhœa has been observed after it from irritation of the bowel. In cases of poisoning, the irritation of the alimentary canal may prove fatal by inducing collapse and failure of the heart and respiration, and iodine may be recognized in the vomited matter and in the stools.

Solutions of iodine **Injected Subcutaneously** or into tumors or cysts, a common method of treatment formerly, cause intense pain and irritation which may induce collapse and which have been followed in some instances by suppuration and gangrene.

Iodine is **Absorbed** in the form of iodides, and perhaps in a combination with proteids. The ordinary iodalbuminate obtained by adding iodine to albumin, is a very loose compound, and is easily decomposed by dialysis, or by heating it to the coagulation point of the albumin, when the iodine is obtained free or in combination with alkalies. Several stronger and more definite compounds have been formed recently, and it is not impossible that the iodalbuminate formed in the process of absorption is of a similar nature. In combination with albumin, iodine fails to give the starch reaction. Its **Fate in the Body** is precisely similar to that of the iodides — it is excreted in the form of iodides, chiefly by the kidneys, to a less extent in the saliva, perspiration, milk, and secretions of the respiratory passages. It also occurs in the stomach, into which it appears to be excreted as hydriodic acid; free iodine has been detected here in both man and animals, and is probably formed by the decomposition of the acid. In the normal organism iodine is contained in considerable quantity in the thyroid gland in the form of an organic compound, iodothyrin, and in many cases the administration of iodine leads to an increase in the formation of this substance, perhaps by actually stimulating the secretory cells of the thyroid, but more probably by affording them a larger amount of a necessary constituent of their secretion than is contained in ordinary food.

Small quantities of iodine may be given internally to many persons without eliciting any symptoms except those which are clearly due to the local action. Repeated doses, however, sometimes cause symptoms resembling those observed after iodides (**Iodism**), although these have been much less often induced by iodine, which is comparatively seldom administered internally. *Skin affections* seem to be extremely rare, but that a similar action on the skin may be induced by iodine and iodides, is shown by the application of iodine to the skin being often followed by eruptions, which are not confined to the point of application but spread over the skin and assume the form of diffuse erysipelatoid rashes, papules, or erythemata. *Fever* is said to occur occasionally, especially in goitrous patients, and a loss of flesh has been observed with shrinking in size of the thyroid gland and, it is said, of the mammæ and testicles. The *pulse* is often accelerated to a very considerable extent, and in cases of goitre treated for some time by the

internal and local administration of iodine, a curious *nervous condition* was often observed formerly. The patients became restless, anxious and irritable, and suffered from sleeplessness and often from tremor, which sometimes simulated chorea. All of these symptoms except the skin eruptions and the atrophy of the mamma and testis, the occurrence of which under iodine requires confirmation, are induced by large quantities of thyroid extract also, and would seem to be due to the excessive production of iodothyrin.

Irritation of the *respiratory tract* is seen less often after iodine than after the iodides, but œdema of the larynx has been observed, and in rare cases cough and the expectoration of a watery secretion tinged with blood.

Anuria and albuminuria have occurred in a few instances.

The symptoms induced by iodine after absorption thus resemble in general features those following the use of the iodides, but while the latter tend to cause irritation of the skin and respiratory tract, presumably through liberating iodine here, the chief effects of iodine after absorption are due to its action on the thyroid gland, the effects on the skin and mucous membranes being less prominent.

The effects of iodine on the **Metabolism** are still a matter of dispute, some authors finding no alteration, while others state that the excretion of urea is increased. They probably differ in different individuals according to the condition of the thyroid gland.

Injected into the veins of animals, iodine causes œdema of the lungs, which v. Zeissl considers to be due in part to changes in the left ventricle, in part a contraction of the pulmonary arterioles.

The muscles of the frog are thrown into a state of rigor by iodine in the same way as by the iodides.

Some **Cases of Poisoning** from the injection of large quantities of iodine into cysts have been recorded. In Rose's well-known case, the chief symptoms were thirst, constant vomiting, the vomited matter containing iodine, cyanosis and coldness of the skin, a small, weak pulse, anuria and skin eruptions after a few days; and death occurred on the tenth day. In such cases of poisoning in man the mucous membrane of the stomach and intestine has been found swollen and loosened, and in animals fatty degeneration of the liver, heart and kidney has been described.

Iodine is said to dissolve the red blood corpuscles when it is brought in contact with them outside the body, and to form a combination with hæmoglobin.

Preparations.

Iodum (U. S. P., B. P.), iodine, a heavy, friable, bluish-black mass, with a characteristic odor and acrid taste, insoluble in water, soluble in alcohol and in solutions of the iodides of the alkalies. Iodine itself is not used in therapeutics. The solutions are of a brown color.

Tinctura Iodi (U. S. P.), 7 per cent., 0.1–0.4 c.c. (2–8 mins.).

Tinctura Iodi (B. P.), 2½ per cent., 2–5 mins.

Liquor Iodi Compositus (U. S. P.), Lugol's Solution, contains 5 per cent. dissolved in 10 per cent. potassium iodide solution. 0.2–0.8 c.c. (3–12 mins.).

Unguentum Iodi (U. S. P., B. P.), 4 per cent.

Liquor Iodi Fortis (B. P.), Iodine Liniment, about 14 per cent.

Sulphuris Iodidum (U. S. P., B. P.) is a mixture of iodine and sulphur, part of which may be in chemical combination. It resembles iodine in its action on the skin.

Unguentum Sulphuris Iodidi (B. P.).

The compound solution of iodine is the preparation best fitted for internal use, although the tincture is also employed. Both should be given after meals and as far as possible diluted with demulcent preparations, in order to avoid irritation of the stomach.

For injection into cysts or tumors the compound liquid is also the best preparation, as it is less irritant than the tincture.

The tincture, ointment, the strong solution (B. P.) and the sulphur iodide preparation may be used for external application.

Therapeutic Uses. — Iodine has been used internally in a variety of chronic conditions such as syphilis and goitre, and in tubercular disease of the glands, bones and other organs, but it has been almost entirely superseded by the iodides, and in goitre by the thyroid preparations. It was formerly applied in goitre by injection into the enlarged lobes of the gland, as well as being administered internally, and certainly proved beneficial in many cases, though these are better treated now by the extracts of the gland.

The internal use of iodine has undergone a revival quite recently, but instead of the older solutions, new preparations have been introduced such as the combinations with proteids (*Eigon*, *Iodolen*) or with fats (*Iodipin*), and the organic compounds of the iodoform series. Iodipin is decomposed by the pancreatic juice and iodides appear in the urine soon after this takes place. It has been used to indicate the activity of the gastric movements, as when these are abnormally slow the reaction in the urine appears later than in normal cases.

It has also been applied locally by painting on the skin in a variety of chronic inflammatory processes, such as tubercular glands, pleuritic effusion, and tubercular or rheumatic joint disease. Its action here consists simply of a mild lasting irritation of the skin, which induces some congestion in the subcutaneous tissues and may thus aid in the absorption of exudates in them and may also influence the deeper lying tissues and organs in the same way as other irritants (see page 78). There is, however, nothing specific in its action, and it differs from the other skin irritants only in being milder in action and more enduring in its effects. It seems unlikely that the small quantity absorbed can have any appreciable action. Some benefit often follows from this use of iodine in chronic inflammations, but there is no question that it is very often applied where more active surgical measures are really required.

Iodine has been very frequently injected into cysts in order to induce inflammation and adhesion of their walls, and thus to obliterate the cavity. Formerly ovarian cysts were very generally treated in this way, but a number of cases of poisoning arising from this treatment, and the progress of abdominal surgery have led to its being abandoned. Hydrocele is still very frequently treated with iodine in-

jection, and some cysts of the membranes of the spinal cord and brain are injected with it. It has been stated in this connection that these membranes react much less violently to iodine than the peritoneum and the lining membranes of the joints. Iodine has also been injected in dilute solution into the pleuritic cavity after the evacuation of empyema.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

See Iodides, Thyroid Extract.
Liebrecht. Centralbl. f. Physiol., 1897, p. 835.
Hofmeister. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xxiv., p. 159.
Winternitz. Ibid., xxiv., p. 425.
Levene. Amer. Journ. of Phys., ii., p. 15.

VII. IODOFORM.

A number of iodine compounds have been introduced into therapeutics as applications to wounded surfaces. The most widely known of these is Iodoform (CHI_3), which corresponds in its chemical structure to chloroform, and forms a yellow, crystalline, insoluble powder with an intensely disagreeable odor. It has been used very extensively in surgery, and has given rise to poisoning in a number of cases.

Symptoms. — The symptoms of iodoform intoxication in man generally set in with anxiety, general depression and discomfort. The patient becomes sleepless and restless, complains of giddiness and headache and often of the taste and odor of iodoform in the mouth and nose. The pulse is generally greatly accelerated, and a rise of temperature is said to have occurred in some cases in which no septic poisoning could be found to account for it. The depression deepens into true melancholia accompanied by hallucinations, the patient often suffering from the illusion of persecution, which may induce him to attempt suicide. As a general rule this melancholia is followed by attacks of violent delirium and mania, lasting for hours or days, and in fatal cases, by collapse and death. In other cases the condition has passed into permanent insanity and dementia. A rarer result of the absorption of iodoform is deep sleep passing into stupor and collapse without any symptoms of cerebral excitement.

In milder cases of poisoning the patient suffers only from the unpleasant taste and odor, from headache and not infrequently from nausea and vomiting.

In the dog and cat iodoform generally causes deep sleep and stupor, with lessened excitability of the spinal cord and of the motor areas of the brain. In the frog it paralyzes the central nervous system and the heart without eliciting any symptoms of excitement. No narcosis is observed in the rabbit even after fatal doses.

The symptoms most characteristic of iodoform poisoning — those of delirium and mania — are evidently due to cerebral disturbance, but nothing is known as to the nature of the changes in the brain. No other poison elicits these symptoms in the same intensity and of equal duration, and no similar effects have been met with in animals.

Acceleration of the heart has been noted in many cases of poisoning. After prolonged administration albuminuria is often observed in animals, and the thyroid secretion has been found to be increased to a very considerable extent by iodoform, as by other bodies which free iodine in the tissues.

After fatal iodoform poisoning in man and animals, the liver, kidney, heart and muscles are generally found to have undergone fatty degeneration. In addition, irritation of the gastric and intestinal mucous membrane has been observed, and the epithelial cells are often degenerated. Ecchymoses occur beneath the endocardium, in the kidney and elsewhere, and congestion of the meninges is described.

Absorption and Excretion. — Iodoform is readily decomposed in the presence of alkaline fluids and in proteid solutions, and some decomposition undoubtedly takes place in wounds; the iodine liberated combines with the alkalies of the fluids to form iodides, for these have been shown to be present, and iodalbuminates are presumably formed in the same way as by free iodine. Some of the iodoform, however, is absorbed unchanged, for the nervous symptoms are not produced by iodine or iodides. After iodoform absorption, iodine has been shown to be present in the saliva, perspiration and bronchial secretion, as after the ingestion of iodine or iodides; but it is chiefly excreted in the urine in the form of iodides. The tissues apparently retain it very tenaciously, for iodides have been found in the urine for more than a month after the administration of iodoform. Harnack has stated that in iodoform poisoning much of the iodine of the urine is in organic combination, but this has been denied by later writers.

In considering the symptoms of iodoform intoxication, it must be recognized, therefore, that a very complex condition is present. Some iodoform circulates in the blood apparently unchanged and gives rise to the cerebral symptoms. Other symptoms are due to the presence of iodine and iodides, perhaps the former chiefly, in the blood and tissues, for Rummo observed in dogs the excessive secretion from the eyes, nose and bronchi, which is characteristic of iodism. Lastly, the acceleration of the heart and some other symptoms may be due to abnormal activity of the thyroid secretory cells.

Poisoning with iodoform is much more liable to occur in adults than in children. Serious symptoms, especially mental symptoms, are often developed only after somewhat prolonged administration, but in renal disease the iodoform products are excreted more slowly than usual, and are liable to accumulate in the tissues, so that it is to be used with caution.

Iodoform has no marked **Local Action** on the skin or mucous membranes. When applied to wounded surfaces it sometimes causes some irritation in the neighborhood and even exanthemata, but these are rare, and appear to occur only in persons predisposed to cutaneous disease. It seems to have some anæsthetic action, when applied in large quantity to wounded surfaces. Iodoform was at first applied to wounds in the belief that its **Antiseptic** properties were equal to or even exceeded

those of carbolic acid. It has been shown, however, that it possesses little or no influence on the cultures of most of the pathogenic microbes, for the spores often develop as rapidly after having been subjected to iodoform as in the control cultures. It has therefore been suggested that while iodoform in itself possesses no antiseptic virtues, the iodine formed from it in the wound may retard the growth of septic germs. And in regard to this point bacteriologists are not agreed, for while several investigations tend to show that microbes drawn from wounds under iodoform treatment are not retarded or weakened in their development, other experiments indicate that the virulence of some germs is reduced. Some of the advocates of the iodoform treatment therefore ascribe its results to this slight antiseptic action of the iodine, while others suppose that it diminishes the secretion of the wounded surface and thus affords a less suitable medium for the growth of the germs; in this relation it may be mentioned that Binz found the emigration of the leucocytes from the blood vessels hindered by the local application of iodoform. Finally iodoform may retard the growth of microbes to some extent by forming a crust over the wounded surface, and mechanically preventing them from penetrating to it.

The intensely disagreeable odor of iodoform and the considerable number of cases of poisoning noted under its use have led to the introduction of numerous substitutes in the last ten years. Some of these have been shown to be practically worthless and have been discarded, while the greater number are apparently used more or less widely, but accurate data as to their value cannot be obtained. None of them seem to be very poisonous, and in most of them the iodine of the molecule is not liberated in the wound or tissues. It is of course impossible to state how far they are capable of replacing iodoform, as long as their exact action in wounds is unknown.

The first of these substitutes was *iodol* or tetraiodpyrrol (C_4I_4NH), which has no odor or taste, is insoluble in water, but is absorbed from mucous surfaces and from wounds. It is decomposed in the tissues, and leads to the excretion of iodides in the urine, and in very large doses gives rise to symptoms in animals resembling those produced by iodoform. The iodine of iodol is apparently less easily split off the molecule than that of iodoform, and it seems on the whole less liable to produce poisoning, but has been less used of late years than some of its rivals. Among the best known of these are *aristol* or dithymol-diiodide $(C_6H_2CH_3C_3H_7OI)_2$, and the *sozoiodolates* of potassium, sodium, mercury and zinc. Sozoiodolic acid is phenol-sulphonic acid in which two atoms of hydrogen have been substituted by two atoms of iodine ($C_6H_2I_2HOSO_2OH$). Iodine compounds of phenol-phthalein are known by the trade names of *nosophen*, *antinosine* and *eudoxine*. Triiodocresol is known as *losophan*, while *europhen* is a more complex combination of cresol and iodine; *loretin* and *vioform* are derivatives of quinoline containing iodine. (See also under Bismuth and Alum.) These later "substitutes" for iodoform differ entirely from it and from iodol in the fact that iodine is not liberated by the tissues; that they pass through the body unchanged, as far as the iodine is concerned, and that they are said to be entirely devoid of poisonous effects, and in fact of any action, save as local antiseptics. Their value as antiseptics can only be determined by further trial. They are almost all phenol derivatives, and any virtues they possess may prove to be due to this fact mainly, and not to their containing iodine.

Preparations.

Iodoformum (U. S. P., B. P.), iodoform (CHI_3), forms small, lemon-colored crystals, possessing a very penetrating, persistent and disagreeable odor and taste, practically insoluble in water, soluble in alcohol, ether, fixed oils, glycerin, etc. 0.03–0.2 G. (½–3 grs.), in pills or capsules.

Suppositoria Iodoformi (B. P.), each containing 3 grs. of iodoform.

Unguentum Iodoformi (U. S. P., B. P.), contains 10 per cent. iodoform.

Iodol (non-pharmacopœial), a yellow crystalline powder, tasteless, odorless, insoluble in water.

Aristol, a yellowish-brown powder resembling iodol in its properties.

The *Sozoiodolate* of potassium is slightly soluble in water, the sodium and zinc salts more soluble. Mercury forms an insoluble salt which may be dissolved by the addition of sodium chloride.

Therapeutic Uses. — Iodoform has been used to a very limited extent internally in the treatment of syphilis, and as an intestinal disinfectant. It is chiefly employed in surgical treatment as an application to wounds, skin diseases and burns. In granulating surfaces with a profuse secretion, and in slowly healing abscess cavities, it seems to be especially valuable. It may be applied as a dusting powder, as an ointment, or in gauze or bandages saturated with it. It has been shown that it has very weak antiseptic properties, and many surgeons take the precaution of disinfecting the powder before applying it, and use it for its effect on the tissues of the wound and not for its effects on the germs. Applied in ordinary quantity to small surfaces it seems to be a perfectly safe remedy, cases of poisoning occurring only when large cavities are plugged with it, or when it is applied to very large absorbent surfaces. Many attempts have been made to disguise its disagreeable odor, but have been attended with only moderate success. Among the best of the many perfumes suggested for this purpose is cumarin, which is contained in large quantity in the Tonka bean.

Iodoform has been credited with some specific action in tubercular disease, but has proved almost inert towards the bacillus. The favorable results in the local treatment of tubercular abscesses, laryngeal ulcers and similar conditions may with greater probability be attributed to its action on the granulation tissue. In syphilitic ulcers and chancres, iodoform has been used very largely and with good effects.

Iodol may be used as a substitute for iodoform, and is applied in the same way. The sozoiodolates are used as powders or ointments, or in the case of the sodium, zinc, and mercury salts, in solution. The last is poisonous, and is comparable to corrosive sublimate in its effects.

Bibliography.

Rummo. Arch. de Phys., norm. et path., 1883, ii., p. 145.

Binz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., viii., p. 309 ; xiii., p. 113. Virchow's Arch., lxxxix., p. 389.

Behring. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1882, p. 278.

Hogyes. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., x., p. 228.

Zeller. Arch. f. klin. Chirurg., xxviii., p. 590. Zts. f. physiol. Chemie, viii., p. 70.

Harnack. Berl. klin. Woch., 1883, p. 723, and 1885, p. 98.

Falkson. Arch. f. klin. Chirurg., xxviii., p. 112.

Neisser. Virchow's Arch., cx., p. 381.

Freyer. Therap. Monats., 1888, pp. 287 and 334.

Baumgarten. Berl. klin. Woch., 1887, p. 354.
Marcus. Berl. klin. Woch., 1886, p. 342. (Iodol.)
Sattler. Fortschr. d. Med., 1887, p. 362. (Iodol.)
Lomry. Arch. f. klin. Chirurg., liii., p. 787.
Meyer. Ibid., lv., p. 676.
Schmidt. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., viii., pp. 111, 187; ix., p. 107.
Altenburg. Ibid., viii., p. 125.

VIII. FLUORIDES.

The fluorides present many points of difference from the other halogen salts in their chemical reactions and also in their effects in the organism.

The fluoride of sodium, which alone has been examined, possesses a powerfully local irritant action, which is seen most clearly when it is applied to the mucous membranes of the eye or of the alimentary tract. In the former it causes congestion and inflammation of the conjunctiva and opacity of the cornea, when it is applied in a two per cent. solution for some time. Small quantities induce irritation of the stomach, nausea and vomiting, and the prolonged administration leads to irritation of the intestines and diarrhœa; solutions of the fluorides are absorbed with great difficulty by the intestinal epithelium. When injected subcutaneously fluorides often induce inflammation and suppuration with necrosis.

In frogs small doses induce prolonged fibrillary contractions of the muscles throughout the body, which are due to a stimulation of the terminations of the motor nerves. Larger doses paralyze the central nervous system and eventually the motor terminations, and even the nerve fibres. The muscles lose their irritability and pass into very marked rigor, and the heart muscle is also paralyzed by large quantities.

In mammals the first symptoms are increased secretion of saliva and tears, acceleration and deepening of the respiration, followed by a condition of weakness and somnolence. Strong fibrillary tremor of the muscles then sets in with occasional stronger twitches, which eventually pass into attacks of general convulsions. In the intervals between the convulsions the animal lies in a state of profound coma. The respiration is finally arrested during an attack of convulsions, the heart continuing to beat for some time longer.

Tappeiner found a very marked fall of blood-pressure produced by sodium fluoride, and attributed it to depression of the vaso-motor centre. It may in part account for the stupor, but this indirect action is in all probability strengthened by a direct depression of the higher nervous centres. The convulsions are central in origin, while the cause of the fibrillary contractions in mammals is unknown. The respiratory centre seems to be first stimulated and then paralyzed. Muscles, nerves and other excised tissues die much sooner in solutions of sodium fluoride than in corresponding ones of the chloride, iodide or bromide, so that the fluoride ion must be assigned a position quite distinct from the other halogen ions in the scale of toxicity.

The fluorides absorbed from the alimentary canal are excreted by the urine, but this takes place very slowly, and much of the fluoride is stored up in the body, some in the liver and skin, but most in the bones in the form of calcium fluoride. Crystals of this very insoluble salt are found in masses in the Haversian canals, and increase the hardness and brittleness of the bones.

The prolonged administration of fluorides to animals has been found to cause weakness, loss of flesh, and irritation and ulceration of the gums.

The fluoride of sodium has considerable antiseptic power, putrefaction being delayed by the addition of one part to 500 of fluid, and one in 200 arresting completely the growth of bacteria. It has been used to a very limited extent as a surgical antiseptic.

Hydrofluoric acid is an exceedingly powerful caustic, destroying the mucous membranes wherever it comes in contact with them. It has been

observed that workers in certain departments of glass factories, in which the atmosphere contains a small amount of this acid, are very seldom attacked by tuberculosis, and an attempt has been made to treat pulmonary phthisis by the inhalation of very dilute vapors. The results have not been successful, although there is no question that hydrofluoric acid is a powerful germicide.

Sodium fluorosilicate ($SiFlNa_2$) has also been used as an antiseptic in solution. It has been found to cause nausea, eructation and slowness of the pulse when swallowed.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Tappeiner. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxv., p. 203; xxvii., p. 108.
Schulz. Ibid., xxv., p. 326.
Hewelke. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1890, p. 477.
Langgaard. Therap. Monatsh., 1888, p. 178.
Gottbrecht. Ibid., 1889, p. 411.
Brandl u. Tappeiner. Ztschr. f. Biologie, x., p. 518.
Bokenham. Brit. Med. Journ., 1890, p. 355.
Müller. Inaug. Diss., Greifswald, 1889.
Siegfried. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., ix., p. 225.

IX. CHLORATES.

The chlorate of potassium, introduced into therapeutics on the erroneous theory that it would supply oxygen to the tissues, has been used very extensively for its effects in certain diseases of the mouth. It was supposed to be entirely devoid of poisonous properties, but has given rise in a considerable number of instances to very grave, and even fatal symptoms. In such cases the symptoms are due partly to the salt-action, but chiefly to the specific effects of the chlorate ion. The chlorate of sodium induces these chlorate symptoms, and the chlorate of ammonium is said to be the most poisonous of the three. It would seem that the conditions which determine their appearance are not universally present, for very often large quantities have been taken with impunity, while in other individuals much smaller quantities have induced grave poisoning.

Symptoms. — The chlorates have a cool, saline taste, which persists for a long time owing to their being excreted in part in the saliva. Concentrated solutions may cause nausea and vomiting from their local salt-action in the stomach, and their absorption is often followed by considerable diuresis from a similar action in the kidney. In the great majority of cases no further effects are observed.

In some individuals, however, symptoms arise from the chlorate action quite apart from those mentioned above, which may be induced by chloride of sodium or, in fact, by any other diffusible salt. (See Salt-action, page 485.) These chlorate symptoms may be divided into those of acute and of subacute poisoning, the first arising generally from the administration of a single large dose, the second from smaller quantities taken repeatedly. In **Acute Chlorate Poisoning** the first symptom is often prolonged and violent vomiting, with pain in the stomach region; diarrhœa and a dark cyanotic color of the skin and mucous membranes follow, the respiration is at first dyspnœic and then weak, the pulse quick and feeble, sometimes irregular. The patient

complains of headache, giddiness and muscular weakness, is restless, and eventually becomes comatose before death.

In **Subacute Poisoning**, vomiting and diarrhœa are also observed, and the vomited matter often contains large quantities of bile, less often blood. There may be complete anuria for some time, or the urine is scanty and at first dark colored, then deep reddish-brown; it contains hæmoglobin, methæmoglobin, and hæmatin in solution. On standing, it deposits casts of brown amorphous particles, which arise from the destruction of the red cells of the blood, and chlorates are contained in it in considerable quantity. The methæmoglobin may disappear from the urine after one or two days, but the casts remain longer. The skin is often icteric in color, and in some cases erythematous eruptions have been observed. Headache, muscular weakness and abdominal pain are complained of, and uræmic symptoms may arise — delirium and convulsions, or confusion and coma. Death has followed from these last as late as a week after the first symptoms of poisoning were observed, but in several cases complete recovery has followed even the gravest symptoms.

Action. — The cause of the symptoms in acute and subacute chlorate poisoning is, apart from the salt-action, a specific effect which the chlorates have on the **Red Blood Cells** and particularly on the **Hæmoglobin**. This is seen especially well when blood is added to a chlorate solution outside the body, for in the course of a short time the blood assumes a dark chocolate brown color, and spectroscopic examination reveals the absorption bands of methæmoglobin and often of hæmatin. After a time the red blood cells tend to break up, and the methæmoglobin is freed in the serum. If large quantities of chlorate be added, the blood becomes quite black in color, and assumes a gelatinous consistency. This action of chlorates on the blood was formerly supposed to be due to their oxidizing the hæmoglobin and being themselves reduced to chlorides, but this has been shown to be erroneous, for the chlorates remain unchanged and methæmoglobin is not a simple oxidation product of hæmoglobin.

When this transformation of the hæmoglobin takes place in vessels, the blood is unable to supply the tissues with oxygen, because in methæmoglobin the oxygen is attached much more firmly than in oxyhæmoglobin, and the tissues are incapable of availing themselves of it. If much of the hæmoglobin is thus rendered useless, asphyxia results, and this is unquestionably the chief cause of the symptoms and of the fatal issue in the most acute form of intoxication. If a smaller amount of methæmoglobin is formed, it disappears gradually, either by being slowly reformed to hæmoglobin, or by the corpuscles containing it being withdrawn from the circulation and broken up. When a considerable amount of hæmoglobin is transformed, but sufficient remains to continue the respiration of the tissues, the subacute form of poisoning results. The blood cells break up and the hæmoglobin, methæmoglobin and the débris of the corpuscles thus freed in the plasma are in part excreted by the urine, in part deposited in the spleen, liver,

and bone marrow. As in other conditions of excessive destruction of the red blood cells, the bile pigment is increased in amount, and its absorption from the bile capillaries induces jaundice. The excretion of the products of the destruction of the red blood corpuscles in the urine leads to the renal tubules becoming stopped up with brown granular masses, which are in part forced downwards and appear in the urine as casts, but which may lead to an almost complete suppression of urine and to symptoms of uræmic poisoning. In those cases in which death follows several days after the first symptoms, it seems due not to the direct action of the poison, but to the renal changes. Often no actual nephritis is present, but in some cases the epithelial cells seem to be inflamed, probably as a secondary result of the plugging of the tubules. The deposition of the débris in the liver and spleen often causes enlargement of these organs. In these subacute cases of poisoning, then, death is not due directly to the methæmoglobin formation, but to the breaking down of the red cells. The connection between these two processes has not been explained as yet, but there seems every reason to believe that one exists. In the case of the chlorates the hæmoglobin transformation apparently precedes the destruction of the corpuscles.

The post-mortem appearances in chlorate poisoning vary with the form. In acute poisoning the characteristic color of the blood, and the methæmoglobin absorption band in the spectrum are often the only distinct appearances. In less acute cases, the débris of the red corpuscles is found in the liver, spleen, bone-marrow and renal tubules, while no methæmoglobin may be detected. Some of the red blood corpuscles are found misshapen, however, others are colorless (shadows), and in some the pigment is formed in masses, instead of being generally diffused. Some swelling and ecchymoses of the gastric and intestinal mucous membrane have been observed.

?infarction It has been recently stated that some of the symptoms of chlorate poisoning are due to infarcts formed in the smaller vessels from the agglutination of the remains of the red-blood cells, and Silbermann has even failed to inject some parts of the body owing to this plugging of the arteries. This statement has been denied, however, by Marchand and Falkenberg, who could find no evidence of such infarction.

The hæmoglobin of most animals seems equally easily transformed to methæmoglobin by chlorates when it is dissolved in water, but the blood corpuscles of the rabbit and guinea-pig resist their action much more than do those of the dog and of man. Rabbits therefore very rarely show any symptoms of true chlorate action, and die of the potassium or of the salt-action, while dogs and cats exhibit symptoms very like those seen in man. The cause of this immunity of the rabbit's corpuscles is unknown, but may perhaps be explained by their being impermeable by the chlorate salts. It has been found that when the rabbit's blood is concentrated, or when bile is present in quantity in it, the chlorate action may be elicited much more readily than in normal animals.

The nervous symptoms in chlorate poisoning are manifestly due to the blood changes and the uræmia for the most part, though there is reason to believe that under some conditions the brain is also directly affected. The heart is said to be first slowed and then accelerated by the intravenous injection of sodium chlorate. The vomiting does not seem to be due to local action only, for it is seen in animals in which the salt is injected subcutaneously.

The chlorates are not reduced in the blood and tissues as was formerly supposed, for 90–96 per cent. of the amount administered has been recovered from the urine. Small quantities appear also in the saliva and in other secretions such as the perspiration, milk, tears, and nasal mucus, and some has been found to pass from the mother to the fœtus in utero.

The chlorates are hardly more antiseptic than other indifferent salts.

The **Bromates** and **Iodates** have been much more seldom the subject of investigation than the chlorates, and are not used in therapeutics. The iodates are more poisonous than the bromates and these again than the chlorates, though the chlorates are much more powerful blood poisons than the others. Iodates induce fatty degeneration of the liver, and congestion and extravasation in the alimentary tract. It is not unlikely that some iodide is formed from them in the body.

The action of the **Perchlorates** has been examined by Kerry and Rost. In the frog the perchlorate of sodium ($NaClO_4$) induces fibrillary twitching and clonic contractions of the muscles; the contraction of the muscle is prolonged in the same way as by veratrine, and rigor eventually follows as in caffeine poisoning. The reflex excitability is increased, and the heart is slow and irregular. The effects of the perchlorate on mammals differ considerably in different species; in the rat, mouse and guinea-pig the reflex excitability is enormously increased and tetanic convulsions may arise from this action; in the cat a certain stiffness, muscular paresis and tremor can be made out after the injection of large quantities of perchlorate, but these animals as well as the rabbit and dog are not killed by even very large quantities.

Preparations.

Potassii Chloras (U. S. P., B. P.) ($KClO_3$), 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Trochisci Potassii Chloratis (U. S. P.) contain 0.3 G. (5 grs.) chlorate of potassium in each lozenge.

Trochiscus Potassii Chloratis (B. P.) contains 3 grs. in each.

Sodii Chloras (U. S. P.) ($NaClO_3$), 0.5–2 G. (10–30 grs.).

The chlorates are colorless prismatic crystals with a saline taste, and are given in solution or in lozenges when used internally. The dry salts form explosive mixtures with organic or other reducing substances, and such mixtures are therefore to be kept cool, and ought not to be ground together, as heat and pressure are liable to cause explosions.

Therapeutic Uses.—The chlorate of potassium is used chiefly as a mouth wash and gargle in irritable conditions of the mouth and throat, such as aphthe, and in the tenderness and ulceration of the gums and mouth induced by the prolonged use of mercury. It may also be given as a prophylactic to prevent stomatitis when mercury is being prescribed, but it does not prevent the salivation. In catarrh of the throat the chlorate of potassium is often used with apparently good

effects. It has been strongly advised in diphtheria, but is of only questionable value here.

The chlorate of potassium is more frequently prescribed than the sodium salt, but the latter seems equally efficient. The chlorates are used in 2–4 per cent. solution, or the official lozenge may be prescribed. In children a somewhat stronger solution with syrup or honey may be used to brush out the mouth, but care should be taken that none is swallowed. The local action of the chlorates has not been explained, and it may be due to the salt-action in part, though not wholly. It has been suggested that they are oxidizing disinfectants, but there is no reason to suppose that they are changed here any more than in the tissues in general. It is not impossible that equally satisfactory results might be obtained by the use of the chlorides or nitrates. Chlorate of potassium has been given internally in cases of diphtheria and in some diseases of the mouth, but it does not seem to have any therapeutic value unless when applied locally. Some benefit may arise from its contact with the mouth and throat in the process of swallowing and from its excretion in the saliva. In addition the internal administration of the chlorate is liable to induce dangerous poisoning. It is unnecessary to discuss the earlier uses of the chlorate, which were based on the theory that it gave up its oxygen to the blood, for both theory and practice have been shown to be erroneous.

Poisoning. — The fatal dose of chlorate varies extremely, as little as 4 G. (60 grs.) having proved fatal in a child, while 40–50 G. (10–12 drs.) have been swallowed by adults without marked symptoms. There is no question that the red blood cells are often peculiarly susceptible to the action of the chlorates. In cases of poisoning the stomach should be evacuated, if any of the salt is believed to remain in it, but the symptoms often appear only 2–3 hours or longer after the drug has been taken. General treatment with central nervous stimulants, ice for the vomiting, etc., may be carried out. The destruction of the blood cells is believed to be less liable to occur when the blood is more alkaline than usual, and this has led to the administration of the alkaline carbonates in these cases. After the acute symptoms pass off, diuretics are often advised, and large quantities of fluid are given, in order to flush out the kidneys, and prevent as far as possible the tubules from being stopped up by detritus.

Bibliography.

Marchand. Virchow's Arch., lxxvii., p. 455. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxii., p. 201; xxiii., pp. 273 and 347.
Mering. Das chlorsaure Kali, 1885, Berlin.
Stokvis. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxi., p. 169.
Cahn. Ibid., xxiv., p. 180.
Limbeck. Ibid., xxvi., p. 39.
Lewin u. Posner. Centralbl. f. d. med. Wissensch., 1887, p. 354.
Dittrich. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxix., p. 247.
Silbermann. Virchow's Arch., cxvii., p. 288.
Falkenberg. Ibid., cxxiii., p. 577.
Binz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., x., p. 153; xxxiv., p. 185.
Jawein. Virchow's Arch., clxi., p. 461.

Falck. Pflüger's Arch., xlv , p. 304.
Dreser. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiv., p. 204. (Iodates, Bromates.)
Kerry u. Rost. Ibid., xxxix., p. 144. (Perchlorates.)

X. NITRATES.

The nitrates are generally supposed to have little action except that of salts in general, and have been comparatively seldom the subject of pharmacological examination. In small doses they induce changes very similar to those seen after the chlorides, but there is little doubt that in addition to the salt-action, a distinct nitrate-ion effect exists, and is manifested chiefly in irritation of the mucous membranes which are exposed to it.

Symptoms. — The nitrates have a cool, saline taste, and in small doses induce no symptoms save an augmented flow of urine. Large quantities, however, cause gastro-intestinal irritation, giving rise to pain in the stomach region, nausea, vomiting and sometimes diarrhœa, and blood may be present in the vomited matter and in the stools. The urine is often abundant, but may be scanty or entirely suppressed. These symptoms may be followed by great muscular weakness, apathy, collapse and eventually coma and death. When potassium nitrate is the drug taken, the symptoms of heart weakness are especially marked.

At the autopsy the stomach and intestines are found red and congested, and very often contain blood extravasations. The kidney is said to have presented the symptoms of acute nephritis and hæmorrhages in some cases of poisoning.

When dilute solutions of the nitrates are used, much less irritation is induced, and in fact large quantities may be taken thus without causing any symptoms whatever except diuresis.

Action. — Very similar effects may be induced by large quantities of common salt, or of potassium chloride, and it is therefore often stated that the nitrates act in the same way as the chlorides. But this is not entirely correct, for while there is no question that the salt-action explains much of the effect of the nitrates, these salts have a specific irritant action. Thus very much smaller quantities of the nitrates than of the chlorides are sufficient to induce serious irritation, and solutions of the nitrates isotonic with the blood induce irritation and congestion in the intestine and are slowly absorbed. This irritant effect of the nitrates has been explained by Binz and Barth as the result of the reduction of the nitrates to nitrites in the alimentary canal and tissues, but no symptoms of nitrite action seem to have been observed in cases of poisoning with nitrates. Haldane has recently shown that nitrite is formed from the nitrate used in the preservation of meat by salting, and that some nitrous-oxide hæmoglobin is formed and gives a bright red color to the meat. The presence of this pigment may perhaps explain the red color of the intestine in some cases of poisoning in which extravasations of blood are not marked.

The nitrates have long been used as diuretics, more especially the nitrate of potassium. The diuresis is generally attributed to the salt-action, but there may be in addition a true stimulation of the kidney similar to that observed under the action of many other drugs which are irritant to the bowel. If Weyl's statement be correct that the nitrates of the urine are not increased by the administration of nitrates by the mouth, the diuresis must be due to some stimulant action only. The nitrate of potassium is generally considered a better diuretic than the sodium salt.

The **Fate of the Nitrates in the Body** is still unknown, and in fact seems to vary in different animals and under different conditions. In man and in most animals, some nitrate is present in the urine normally, apparently derived from vegetable food, although it may in some cases be one of the final products of the proteid metabolism. When nitrates are given by the mouth, however, no corresponding increase in the amount excreted in the urine occurs. Some of that given generally appears in the urine, but more than half of it disappears entirely in the tissues. According to Weyl 1–3 G. of nitrate of potassium administered to patients causes no increase whatever in the nitrate excreted in the urine, the whole of it being changed into some other form in the organs. It is surmised that the nitrate is reduced first to the nitrite, and then to ammonia, or that it is eventually excreted by the lungs as free nitrogen. Some of the nitrate seems to be excreted in the saliva and perspiration, possibly unchanged, although it is rapidly reduced to nitrite in these secretions, and may in fact be changed to this form in the secretory cells. In the dog a considerable proportion of the nitrates ingested appears again in the urine, and it is to be noted that earlier investigators did not find the nitrates disappear entirely in man as Weyl did.

The action of the nitrates on the individual organs is practically entirely unknown. They are said to have some effect on the red blood cells, which became crenated, but this is probably merely the salt-action and not any specific nitrate effect.

Richet has found solutions of the nitrate of sodium less harmful to fish living in it than those of any other salt except the chloride.

Preparations.

Potassii Nitras (U. S. P., B. P.), Nitre, Saltpetre (KNO_3), 0.3–2 G. (5–30 grs.).

Sodii Nitras (U. S. P.), Chili saltpetre ($NaNO_3$), 0.3–2 G. (5–30 grs.).

Charta Potassii Nitratis (U. S. P.), paper impregnated with saltpetre. When burned it gives off a dense smoke containing pyridine and other similar bodies and perhaps some nitrite combinations.

The nitrates form colorless crystals with a cool, saline taste. They are very soluble in water and are prescribed in dilute solution.

Therapeutic Uses. — The nitrates are seldom used now except as ingredients of diuretic mixtures; *e. g.*, along with digitalis. The nitrate of potassium was formerly employed largely in fevers and in various disorders of the metabolism, such as rheumatism or gout, but in none of

these has it been found useful. The nitrates are to be given with care when there is any irritation of the stomach and intestine. Authorities differ as to whether they may be prescribed in irritation of the kidney, but in every case they ought to be well diluted.

The saltpetre paper is used in asthma by burning it in the sick room, when the pyridine and other bodies relieve the spasms. Saltpetre may be used in cigars or cigarettes for the same purpose, and the tobacco may contain also the leaves of belladonna or some of its allies, as these have a special action on the bronchial muscles.

Bibliography.

Barth. Schmidt's Jahrb., clxxxii., p. 286.
Littlejohn. Edinburgh Med. Journ., 1885, p. 97.
Roehmann. Zts. f. physiol. Chem., v., p. 233.
Weyl. Virchow's Arch., xcvi., p. 462; ci., p. 175; cv., p. 187.
Richet. Comptes rend. d. l. Soc. de Biol., 1886, xxxviii., p. 486.
Mairet et Combemale. Ibid., 1887, xxxix., pp. 57 and 63.
Haldane. Journ. of Hygiene, i., p. 115.
Rost. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Physiol., 1901, p. 534.

XI. SULPHITES.

The sulphites, an unimportant group of bodies from a therapeutic point of view, have been shown to have a more poisonous action than many better known salts. They possess fairly strong antiseptic properties, because they withdraw oxygen from organic matter in order to oxidize themselves to sulphates. Injected into frogs, sulphite of soda causes great muscular weakness and depression, and eventually paralysis of the central nervous system, beginning in the brain and descending to the spinal cord. Later, the heart becomes weak and ceases in diastole, and the peripheral nerve terminations and the muscles are paralyzed. In mammals the action is exerted chiefly on the medulla oblongata and the heart. In the dog and cat subcutaneous injection causes nausea, vomiting, restlessnesss and dyspnœa and great muscular weakness, ending in arrest of the respiration, and a little later of the heart. In the rabbit the symptoms consist of dyspnœa, muscular weakness without loss of spontaneous movements, and finally death from failure of the respiration and the heart.

Much larger quantities are required to poison animals when given by the mouth than when injected subcutaneously, probably because the salt is slowly absorbed from the alimentary tract, and also because some of it is changed to the harmless sulphate before it reaches the blood. Some irritation of the stomach is caused from the sulphurous acid being freed by the gastric juice, and this induces vomiting in the dog.

Intravenous injection shows that the chief seat of action of the sulphites is the medulla oblongata, in which they depress the respiratory and vasomotor centres. The heart is acted on directly apparently, for the pulse is slow, and the muscular walls of the vessels are also weakened. Kionka states that sulphites destroy the red cells of the blood, and that infarcts are formed from their remains in the vessels and lead to hæmorrhages in many organs.

If large quantities be absorbed rapidly, they prove immediately fatal, but if the respiration be kept up for a short time, recovery may follow, because the poisonous sulphite is changed to the harmless sulphate and excreted. About 96 per cent. of the sulphite absorbed into the blood is oxidized to the sulphate, while some 3 per cent. is excreted in the urine unchanged. The thiosulphate is apparently oxidized with greater difficulty, for Walko found 30–50 per cent. eliminated by the kidneys unaltered.

Large doses of sulphites have been taken by man without symptoms of poisoning being induced. Even 30–40 gms. are said to have been swallowed, but in most preparations of sulphite a large proportion of sulphate is present, and it is impossible to state how much sulphite was really contained in these doses. Symptoms of gastric and intestinal irritation have been induced by comparatively small quantities, and Kionka found that even smaller doses of sulphite administered daily to animals caused hæmorrhages in different organs, and accordingly condemns the use of sulphites to preserve meat, wines and vegetables ; in addition they seem to have little effect in preserving meat from putrefaction.

Sodii Sulphis (U. S. P., B. P.) ($Na_2SO_3 + 7H_2O$), a soluble salt which oxidizes to the sulphate in the air, is feebly alkaline and has a cool, saline taste. 0.3–2 G. (5–30 grs.).

Sodii Bisulphis (U. S. P.) ($NaHSO_3$) has a disagreeable odor of sulphurous acid, an unpleasant taste and an acid reaction. 1–2 G. (15–30 grs.).

Sodii Hyposulphis (U. S. P.) ($Na_2S_2O_3 + 5H_2O$) is not the true hyposulphite, but the thiosulphate of sodium. It is very soluble, has a cool, saline taste and is neutral in reaction. 1–2 G. (15–30 grs.).

Solutions of these salts have been used to a limited extent as antiseptic mouth-washes in aphthe, and have been prescribed in some forms of fermentation in the stomach. They were formerly reputed to be of benefit in cases of pyæmia from their supposed action as antiseptics in the blood, but have never been shown to be of any real value.

Bibliography.

Pfeiffer. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvii., p. 261.
Kionka. Ztschr. f. Hygiene, xxii., p. 351.
Walko. Arch. de Pharmakodynam., iv., p. 311.
Lange. Arch. f. Hygiene, xl., p. 143.

XII. HYPOPHOSPHITES.

The hypophosphites have been used in therapeutics in the belief that they had some special influence on nutrition. They were formerly supposed to be oxidized in the tissues to the phosphates, but this has been shown to be incorrect, as practically the whole of the hypophosphite administered can be recovered unchanged from the urine. No entirely satisfactory work on the effects of these salts on the nutrition has been done, but there is no ground to suppose that they have any further action than the other indifferent salts, such as the chlorides. The chief effect of the hypophosphite of iron is undoubtedly due to the metallic ion.

Preparations.

Sodii Hypophosphis ($NaOPH_2O$) (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.2–0.6 G. (3–10 grs.).
Potassii Hypophosphis ($KOPH_2O$) (U. S. P.), 0.2–0.6 G. (3–10 grs.).
Calcii Hypophosphis ($Ca(OPH_2O)_2$) (U. S. P., B. P.), 0.2–0.6 G. (3–10 grs.).
Ferri Hypophosphis ($Fe_2(OPH_2O)_6$) (U. S. P.), 0.2–0.6 G. (3–10 grs.).

Syrupus Hypophosphitum (U. S. P.) contains the hyphophosphites of calcium, potassium, sodium, free hypophosphorous acid, spirit of lemon and sugar, 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

Syrupus Hypophosphitum cum Ferro (U.S.P.) contains the syrup of hypophosphites along with lactate of iron and citrate of potash, 4–8 c.c. (1–2 fl. drs.).

Therapeutic Uses.—The hypophosphites are used in weakness and cachexia, and especially in commencing phthisis and anæmia. The syrup with or without iron is the form in which they are invariably prescribed. There is a popular belief that they improve digestion and nutrition, but most reliable investigators deny that they have any other influence than the better known and cheaper salts of iron, calcium, etc.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Paquelin et Joly. Comptes rendus de l'Acad. d. Science, lxxxvi., p. 1505.
Taylor. Lancet, 1861, ii., p. 517.
Boddaert. Arch. d. Pharmacodynam., ii., p. 195.
Garnier. Rev. Med. de l'est, 1896, p. 257.

XIII. SALINE CATHARTICS.

Dilute solutions of such salts as the chlorides, iodides and bromides of the alkalies are absorbed rapidly from the alimentary canal, but some of the other salts of these metals apparently permeate the epithelium with greater difficulty, and their solutions therefore remain unabsorbed for a longer time in the intestine. Little is known of the effects of these salts in the tissues, but their action in the intestine has led to their therapeutic use, and they may therefore be classed together as the saline cathartics, in order to distinguish them from the rapidly absorbed salts, such as the chlorides, or bromides. The chief salts of sodium and potassium which have this intestinal action are the sulphates, phosphates, tartrates and citrates; less known ones are the malates and ferrocyanides.

It is manifest that the peculiar effect of these salts is due to the acid constituent, or anion, and not to the base or kation, for the latter may be present in readily absorbable salts, such as chlorides. All combinations in which the sulphate, phosphate, etc., ion is found, therefore, are less easily absorbed than the corresponding ones with bromide or chloride ions. But these cathartic anions are only weakly active, and no pronounced difference can be observed in the action of chlorides and sulphates, unless the salt can be given in large quantities, as is possible in the case of the salts of the alkalies. The effects of the sulphate and hydrochlorate of morphine, for example, may be taken as identical, because the anion is present in so small amount as to be practically inert.

The chloride ion is rapidly absorbed, as is seen in the case of sodium chloride. Yet when the chloride of magnesium is administered, it disappears only very slowly from the bowel. It would seem, therefore, that the magnesium is also more slowly absorbed than the sodium and potassium ions, and that cathartic action can be obtained from either basic ions (kations) or from acid ions (anions). When both ions of a salt are slowly absorbed, the cathartic is, of course, more powerful than when one is rapidly absorbed. Thus, magnesium sulphate is a more powerful purgative than either magnesium chloride or sodium sulphate, because in the first both ions are difficult of absorption, while in the others only one is cathartic. It seems probable that all the alkaline earth ions resemble magnesium in permeating the epithelium with difficulty.

The chief saline cathartics used in therapeutics are the *sulphate of sodium* (Glauber's salt), the *sulphate of magnesium* (Epsom salt), the *double tartrate of sodium and potassium* (Rochelle salt) and the *citrates of potassium and magnesium*. In addition the *oxide* and *car-*

bonate of magnesium have some purgative action from being formed into soluble salts in the stomach and intestine. But besides these many other salts are slowly absorbed and might therefore be used for this purpose. Thus the sulphates, citrates, or tartrates, of any of the alkalies or of the non-poisonous alkaloids might be used for this purpose, provided they are soluble, and any of the magnesium salts might be used in the same way.

Symptoms. — The external application of solutions of the saline cathartics has the same effect as that of any other indifferent salt, such as sodium chloride (see page 491).

Most of the cathartics have a harsh, bitter, unpleasant taste, and when taken in concentrated solution, may induce some nausea, partly from the taste, and partly from their effect on the stomach, which is the same as that of solutions of sodium chloride of similar concentration. Dilute solutions, however, provoke no such symptoms, but after one or two hours induce a profuse watery evacuation of the bowels. This is sometimes preceded by some pain and griping, but these are not nearly so frequent or so severe as after the vegetable purgatives. Not infrequently the urine is increased in amount afterwards, or it may be found to have an unusually high percentage of salts. If a moderate quantity of a dilute solution be given, only one evacuation follows, but large doses of concentrated solutions induce repeated stools, which at first contain some fæcal matter, but later consist mainly of bile-stained mucous fluid.

Action: Intestine. — The explanation of the action of the saline cathartics has been much debated, and the details have not even yet been entirely settled. One point is, however, perfectly certain — the saline cathartics differ from the vegetable purgatives in not inducing irritation of the intestine, unless when they are given in very large quantities. The characteristic effect is not irritation, but retarded absorption. If a solution of sodium chloride isotonic with the blood serum be administered by the mouth to a dog with a cæcal fistula, little or none of it reaches the wound, as it is all absorbed in the stomach and small intestine. If, on the other hand, an equal amount of an isotonic solution of sodium sulphate be administered in the same way, the most of the solution escapes by the fistula, only some 10–20 per cent. having been absorbed by the stomach and small intestine. In a normal dog or in the human subject, a much larger amount of fluid therefore reaches the large intestine if sodium sulphate be dissolved in it than if sodium chloride be used instead. The contents of the large intestine are consequently more fluid than usual, and are passed down more easily towards the rectum. At the same time the weight and distention of the bowel induces increased peristalsis and the whole is evacuated. This increased peristalsis is due, however, not to any irritant action such as has been found to be induced by rhubarb or croton oil, but to the large amount of fluid contents.

If a weaker solution of sodium sulphate is administered, the only difference is that more of the fluid is absorbed and less reaches the

large intestine; but however weak the solution, more of it reaches the large intestine than if a correspondingly weak solution of common salt had been given.

If a hyperisotonic solution be administered, the effect is somewhat different. The salt is still unabsorbed, but it draws fluid from the blood into the bowel from its having a higher osmotic pressure than the blood. A similar draining of the body fluids occurs when concentrated solutions of common salt reach the bowel, but the cathartic salts are much more powerful, because they do not pass out of the bowel into the blood so easily. Instead of an exchange of salt and fluid being carried on by the blood and intestinal contents, the blood gives up its fluid without any sufficient compensation in salt. Eventually the intestinal fluid becomes isotonic, and then some absorption of both salt and fluid occurs; in fact, some salt has been absorbed all along, as the epithelium is not absolutely impermeable to the cathartics. But much less of the sulphate is absorbed than of the chloride given in equal concentration, and as a general rule a strong solution causes such an accumulation of fluid that the bowel becomes distended and evacuates its contents. If, however, from any cause this fails to occur, a gradual absorption follows and the whole of the salt and fluid in the bowel is absorbed. These salts may fail to purge, for example, when the blood and tissues contain very little fluid, as in animals which have been deprived of water for several days previously. In this case the osmotic pressure in the bowel is unable to draw fluid from the concentrated blood, which on the other hand has a higher attraction for the fluid in the bowel than usual. But where large quantities of fluid are present in the tissues, as in œdema and dropsy, the saline cathartics drain them through the blood into the bowel, and very profuse evacuation occurs, with the disappearance of the exudate.

There is still some doubt as to why the saline cathartics are so slowly absorbed from the intestines. According to one school, which believes that in addition to the physical forces a distinct cellular activity plays a part in the absorption, the saline cathartics depress the living matter of the cell. Another theory is that the saline cathartics fail to penetrate into the cell, exactly as the salts of the metals fail to penetrate the red blood cells, that there is a distinct affinity between the bowel epithelium and the chloride of sodium, but only a much weaker one between it and the cathartics, which therefore fail to permeate it. The latter view is probably the correct one, although there are still difficulties to be explained before it can be accepted as entirely satisfactory. Its acceptance does not involve the rejection of the belief that the cell is actively engaged in absorption, for it is difficult to explain how a solution after penetrating the superficial layers of the epithelium is passed on from them to the blood except by assuming that the cell exercises some propelling force, which may be exerted only during its life.

The further question arises, why the intestinal epithelium should be permeable by certain salts such as the chloride of sodium and impermeable by others (sulphate of sodium). In this relation it has been

found by Hofmeister that the purgative salts have a greater tendency to precipitate proteids and have less tendency to permeate into unorganized colloids than most of the non-purgative salts. Another curious relation between the purgative anions is that their calcium salts are all very much less soluble than those of the salts which penetrate the epithelium, but whether this is merely a coincidence or not is uncertain. Most of the cathartic anions are bivalent or trivalent, but this is not true for all of them, for the higher members of the acetate series are absorbed with the greatest difficulty by the intestine.

The saline cathartics induce certain changes in the **Blood** indirectly through their action on the intestine. They prevent the absorption of the fluid of the food, or, if in sufficient concentration, actually draw fluid from the blood and tissues into the bowel, and under both conditions the blood becomes more concentrated than usual; in the first case because it is not reinforced by the usual amount of fluid from the food, in the second because it actually loses fluid into the intestine. This concentration of the blood leads to a sensation of thirst, and to a lessened excretion of fluid by the kidneys and other glands.

A certain amount of salt and of fluid is absorbed from the intestine, unless purgation follows very rapidly, and this salt acts in the blood and tissues in the same way as the salts which do not act as cathartics. When very dilute solutions of these salts are given, therefore, the effect is similar to that of ordinary salt, except that the hydræmia and the diuresis do not follow so soon, because the absorption is somewhat slower. Stronger cathartic solutions at first cause a concentration of the blood and lessened urine, but afterwards the excess of salt in the blood may cause diuresis. The greater the purgative action, the less the diuretic, because more fluid and more of the cathartics are thrown out in the stools. If no purgation follows for any reason, as when the blood has been concentrated by long abstinence from water, the whole of the salt eventually passes into the blood and is excreted by the kidney, and may cause very considerable diuresis and a still further concentration of the blood. The sulphates are absorbed by the epithelium of the renal tubules with much greater difficulty than chloride, and thus offer osmotic resistance to the absorption of the fluid in the tubules; sulphates absorbed into the blood therefore induce a more diffuse diuresis than an equal amount of chloride, but less of the former reaches the blood generally, so that the chlorides are better practical diuretics.

From the above it can be at once inferred that a saline cathartic injected intravenously causes no purgation, for instead of preventing the passage of fluid from the bowel into the blood, it rather encourages its absorption by increasing the osmotic pressure of the blood. And this has been shown to be the case by repeated experiment. One fact which seems to be opposed to this explanation is that the saline cathartics sometimes cause purgation when injected in very small quantity into the subcutaneous tissues of the abdomen. But this is due not to the specific action of the drug, but to its causing pain and inflammation, and in fact acting as a counter-irritant (Hay).

The statement is sometimes made that the saline cathartics act as cholagogues, *i. e.*, increase the secretion of bile, but this has been shown to be erroneous by a series of careful observations.

The **Temperature** is often somewhat reduced by the action of the saline cathartics, but seldom more than one half degree.

The habitual use of saline cathartics is often efficient in **Reducing the Weight** in obesity, and many of the natural mineral waters have a considerable reputation in the treatment of such cases. The way in which they act is not understood, for though there is often somewhat less proteid and fat absorbed from the intestine, this appears too small to account for the loss in weight. There seems no reason to suppose that any marked change in the nitrogenous metabolism is induced by the cathartics, for the nitrogen in the urine is often practically unaltered in amount. The only remaining explanation of the efficiency of these salts in obesity is that they increase the oxidation of the fats of the body, presumably by altering the movements of the body fluids. This, however, is only a surmise which as yet is unsupported by known facts.

When purgation follows the administration of a saline cathartic, the most of the salt escapes in the fæces, never having been absorbed at all. When the salt fails to purge, however, and is absorbed, it undergoes the usual exchanges in the tissues and is excreted by the urine. There is no reason to suppose that any of it appears again in the stomach or intestine.

The **Sulphates** seem to pass through the tissues without injuring them, and but little effect is observed from injecting considerable quantities into the blood. When the sulphate ion is combined with a poisonous base such as potassium or magnesium, the injection is of course followed by characteristic symptoms, but the anion seems to be comparatively harmless. It is said that when Glauber's salt (Na_2SO_4) is given by the mouth, the basic portion is excreted much more quickly than the acid, so that the urine may be rendered alkaline temporarily. On the other hand when sulphate of magnesium is administered, the sulphate is absorbed and appears in the urine in large quantity, while the magnesium remains unabsorbed for the most part.

The **Phosphates** are also very inactive after absorption. Gamgee found the orthophosphate quite harmless, while the metaphosphates and pyrophosphates are poisonous, more especially the last. When injected subcutaneously or intravenously, the pyrophosphate of soda induces fatty degeneration of the liver and heart like phosphorus, but it seems to be harmless when administered by the stomach, in which it is perhaps oxidized to the orthophosphate.

The **Citrates** are rapidly oxidized in the tissues to carbonates, and only traces of the unchanged salt escape in the urine. The urine may thus be rendered alkaline by the administration of the citrates, especially in small quantities which are insufficient to induce purgation (see hydrates and carbonates of the alkalies, page 549). The **Tartrates** are more slowly oxidized, and a considerable quantity is excreted in the urine unchanged.[1] Injected into the blood directly, the citrates and tartrates seem to act as heart poisons, but very little is known in regard to this point.

The **Magnesium Salts** first accelerate and then weaken and paralyze the heart and depress the central nervous system, when they are injected into

[1] Lævo-rotary tartaric acid is much more readily oxidized in the body than dextro-rotary. (*Brion*, Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xxv., p. 283.)

the blood, but induce no symptoms when they are absorbed from the intestine, as they are probably rapidly excreted by the kidneys. The magnesium of the urine is certainly increased by the administration of the salts by the mouth, especially if they fail to purge, but it is possible that some of the magnesium is excreted by the bowel, and it has been recently suggested that it may appear in the milk. In the frog the salts of magnesium are said to paralyze the striated muscles in the same way as those of potassium, but no such effect is induced in mammals even by intravenous injection, the animal dying from the action on the heart and nervous system before the muscular action is elicited.

The oxide and carbonate of magnesium differ from the other saline cathartics in being very insoluble and in possessing an alkaline reaction. Part of that ingested is formed into magnesium chloride in the stomach, however, and the carbonic acid present in the intestine may dissolve part by forming the bicarbonate. Their alkalinity serves to remedy any excessive acidity of the stomach or intestine, while at the same time they are mildly cathartic. (See page 545.) The prolonged use of large quantities of magnesia has in some cases led to the formation of large concretions in the bowel, resulting in obstruction.

Preparations.

Sodii Sulphas (U. S. P., B. P.), Glauber's salt (Na_2SO_4, $10H_2O$), soluble in about 3 parts of cold water, 2–30 G. (30 grs.–1 oz.).

Magnesii Sulphas (U. S. P., B. P.), Epsom salts ($MgSO_4$,$7H_2O$), soluble in 1½ parts of cold water, 2–30 G. (30 grs.–1 oz.).

Potassii Sulphas (U. S. P., B. P.), 1–4 G. (15–60 grs.).

These are crystalline salts with a harsh, bitter taste.

Sodii Phosphas (U. S. P., B. P.) ($Na_2HPO_4 + 12H_2O$), soluble in about 6 parts of cold water, 1–30 G. (15 grs.–1 oz.).

Sodii Pyrophosphas (U. S. P.) ($Na_4P_2O_7 + 10H_2O$), 1–20 G. (15–300 grs.).

These are crystalline salts with a cool, saline taste.

Potassii Bitartras (U. S. P.), *Potassii Tartras Acidus* (B. P.), cream of tartar ($KHC_4H_4O_6$), 1–4 G. (15–60 grs.).

Potassii et Sodii Tartras (U. S. P.), Soda Tartarata (B. P.), Rochelle salt ($KNaC_4H_4O_6 + 4H_2O$), soluble in 1.4 parts of cold water, 8–16 G. (120–240 grs.).

Potassii Tartras (B. P.) ($(CHOH)_2(COOK)_2H_2O$), 30–240 grs.

Potassii Citras (U. S. P., B. P.) ($C_3H_4OH(COOK)_3$), 1–3 G. (15–45 grs.).

Lithii Citras (U. S. P., B. P.) ($C_3H_4OH(COOLi)_34H_2O$), 0.3–0.6 G. (5–10 grs.).

These five form crystalline salts with a cool saline or, in the case of the bitartrate, acidulous taste. They are all very soluble in water except the bitartrate. The citrates are not purgative in the dose given.

Magnesia (U. S. P.), Magnesia Levis (B. P.), light or calcined magnesia (MgO).

Magnesia Ponderosa (U. S. P., B. P.), heavy magnesia (MgO).

Magnesii Carbonas (U. S. P.) ($(MgCO_3)_4Mg(OH)_2 + 5H_2O$).

Magnesii Carbonas Levis (B. P.)
Magnesii Carbonas Ponderosa (B. P.) } ($3(MgCO_3)$, $Mg(OH)_2$, $4H_2O$).

These all form white amorphous powders with an earthy, not saline, taste. They are insoluble in water, but the carbonate is dissolved by excess of carbonic acid. 0.3–4 G. (5–60 grs.).

Liquor Magnesii Carbonatis (B. P.), fluid magnesia, contains 2 per cent. of carbonate of magnesia dissolved by the presence of carbonic acid. 1–2 fl. oz.

Effervescing Preparations.

PULVIS EFFERVESCENS COMPOSITUS (U. S. P.), PULVIS SODÆ TARTARATÆ EFFERVESCENS (B. P.), Seidlitz powder.

This powder is made up in two papers, of which the blue one contains a mixture of 3 parts of Rochelle salt and one part of sodium bicarbonate, in all 10.4 G. (160 grs.), while the white paper contains 2.25 G. (38 grs. B. P.) of tartaric acid. When the powders are dissolved separately in water and the solutions mixed, the tartaric acid acting on the bicarbonate releases carbonic acid with effervescence.

Magnesii Citras Effervescens (U. S. P.) is a dry mixture of carbonate of magnesium, bicarbonate of soda, citric acid and sugar. When it is mixed with water the citric acid acts on the carbonates and causes effervescence. 1–3 teaspoonfuls.

Liquor Magnesii Citratis (U. S. P.) is a solution of magnesium citrate with excess of citric acid to which potassium bicarbonate is added. The whole is bottled tightly and effervesces when the cork is removed. 150–400 c.c. (5–12 fl oz.).

Lithii Citras Effervescens (U. S. P., B. P.), a mixture of lithium carbonate or citrate with sodium bicarbonate, and citric acid (and tartaric acid, B. P.). 4–8 G. (60–120 grs.).

Magnesii Sulphas Effervescens (B. P.) is a mixture of Epsom salts, sodium bicarbonate, tartaric and citric acids, which effervesces when mixed with water. 60–240 grs. for repeated administration; for a single administration ½–1 oz.

Sodii Sulphas Effervescens (B. P.), a similar mixture containing the sulphate of soda instead of that of magnesia. 60–120 grs. for repeated administration; for a single administration ¼–½ oz.

Sodii Phosphas Effervescens (B. P.), similar to the above but containing the phosphate in place of the sulphate. Dose as for the effervescent sulphate.

Sodii Citrotartras Effervescens (B. P.), a mixture of sodium bicarbonate with tartaric and citric acids. It is not purgative in the dose advised in the B. P. 60–120 grs.

Many other effervescent mixtures are used instead of the official ones—among them the tartrates and citrates of the alkalies, the acetate of magnesium, etc.

The sulphates of sodium and of magnesium, the tartrates of sodium and potassium and the phosphate of soda are given in solution, the last often in milk. Unless under special conditions the salts ought not to be in greater concentration than 5–10 per cent. Magnesia and magnesium carbonate are administered in powder, sweetened if necessary. The effervescent preparations are always to be taken in solution in about a tumbler of water; in some instances in which this was not understood, severe distention of the stomach with alarming symptoms have arisen from the carbonic acid being freed in the stomach. The effervescent preparations ought to be kept dry, and the solution of magnesium citrate has to be kept tightly corked.

Very often the natural mineral waters are used instead of the pharmacopœial preparations, the best known purgatives among these being the Hunyadi-Janos water and Carlsbad water, which contain the sulphates of sodium and magnesium. "Carlsbad salts" are obtained by the evaporation of the waters, but are very often artificial imitations. Many other springs have the same effects, and a widespread belief exists that the natural waters are "more efficient" or "less depressant" or have some mystical virtues that are not shared in by the artificial salts, but this belief does not seem to have any real basis, and is probably a survival of the old religious belief in the healing properties of springs.

In the natural waters the purgative salts are always accompanied by other less active ones, such as the chlorides of sodium, calcium, etc.

The *sulphovinate of sodium* ($NaC_2H_5SO_4$) has been advised as an aperient, but is much weaker than the others, though it has a more pleasant taste.

It is very liable to decompose with the formation of sulphate of soda, and perhaps much of its action may be due to the presence of the latter.

Therapeutic Uses.—The saline cathartics are very largely used to relieve constipation. Habitual constipation seems to be caused by insufficient peristalsis, and the slow passage of the contents through the intestines allows of a more complete absorption than usual, this in turn rendering the fæces hard and dry and difficult to move onwards. The saline cathartics increase the fluidity of the intestinal contents, and thus facilitate their expulsion, and this is probably the only effect they have when taken in small quantities, and especially in dilute solution as in the natural mineral waters. In larger quantities, however, more water is retained in the bowel, and the weight and distention cause peristalsis, while in sufficient quantity they draw fluid from the blood and cause profuse watery discharges. When a very complete evacuation is desired, the saline cathartics may be given along with some of the vegetable purgatives. Such mixtures are the official Black Draught (see Senna) and the compound powder of Jalap. The saline cathartics act much more rapidly than the vegetable purgatives, and a common method of combining their effects is to give the latter in the evening and the saline the following morning.

The chronic constipation due to sedentary habits is much benefited by the saline cathartics, more especially by dilute solutions taken before breakfast. The sulphates and tartrates are harsh and unpleasant to the taste, and the natural waters are often preferred, or one of the effervescent preparations may be used in those cases.

The sulphates and tartrates are more frequently used where a single large dose has to be prescribed in order to empty the bowel, but here also the Seidlitz powder may be advised instead, as being more agreeable to the taste. These cathartics were at one time used in fever, partly from a theory that they reduced the temperature; they are certainly less liable to cause pain and griping than the vegetable purgatives, and thus tend to disturb the patient less.

The sodium phosphate is often prescribed for children, either as a powder to be given in jelly, or in solution in milk or other food, which completely hides its taste.

The saline cathartics are used to lessen intestinal putrefaction, and are sometimes very efficient, though they do not act through any antiseptic power, but simply by removing the putrefying mass. The phosphate of soda has been especially recommended in some forms of diarrhœa in children.

The saline cathartics are administered to remove accumulations of fluid in the body arising from cardiac or renal insufficiency, or from an old effusion. For this purpose the sulphate of magnesium is used in a large dose, dissolved in as little water as possible; if purgation does not follow in 1–3 hours, an enema may be necessary, or the saline may be given along with a vegetable purgative. This form of treatment was very popular at one time, but is liable to weaken and depress the patient, and is specially contraindicated therefore in asthenic conditions.

Other methods of removing accumulations of fluid are by the use of diuretics (see caffeine, theobromine, page 245), diaphoretics (see pilocarpine, page 315), or by cardiac remedies (digitalis, page 440).

As diuretics the saline cathartics are inferior to other salts, such as the acetates or nitrates. Large quantities of dilute solutions of the purgative salts are of value in the treatment of some forms of obesity, the mineral waters being generally prescribed for this purpose, or the patient being sent to drink them at their source.

Magnesia and magnesium carbonate are less liable to purge than the soluble salts, and are specially indicated in hyperacidity of the stomach or in acid putrefaction in the bowel. They cause less irritation than the carbonates of the alkalies because of their insolubility, and at the same time have the advantage of acting as mild purgatives, while the lime preparations which are insoluble, tend to induce constipation. The magnesia preparations may be used also in diarrhœa as antacids, as they have no irritant action on the bowel. Freshly prepared magnesia is recommended in arsenic poisoning to form an insoluble precipitate in the stomach, and in poisoning with acids it is also of value when it can be obtained readily. In both cases it is to be given in large quantities.

The phosphate of soda has been given in various bone diseases, as in osteomalacia and rickets, this treatment being founded on the belief that the softening of the bones is due to the lack of phosphates in the food, but there is no reason to suppose that this idea is correct, and the treatment is not attended with success. In cases of exophthalmic goitre the phosphate has been recommended, but no explanation has been given of its action here, and some question exists as to whether it is really of value.[1] It has also been recommended in the uric acid diathesis. The phosphates have been supposed to be of benefit in nervous diseases, on the theory that these were due to the insufficiency of phosphorus in the brain, and glycero-phosphates have been introduced for the same reason, but both theory and practice have proved to be erroneous, for the animal organism is unable to build up proteid combinations from their inorganic constituents. The use of sulphate of sodium in phenol poisoning, which was at one time recommended, has been shown to be quite without effect on the progress of the intoxication. (See Carbolic Acid, page 404.)

The ferrocyanide of potassium has been advised in irritant poisoning with iron and copper salts, with the hope that the insoluble ferrocyanides would be formed; a better treatment, however, is washing out the stomach, and the greater part of these salts is removed by vomiting in any case.

Bibliography.

The literature of saline cathartics up to 1884 is discussed by Hay. See also Vegetable purgatives, p. 110.

Hay. Saline cathartics, Journ. of Anat. and Phys., xvi. and xvii.; also in monograph, Edinburgh, 1884.

London. Zts. f. klin. Med., xiii., p. 48.

Dapper. Ibid., xxx., p. 371. Arch. f. Verdauungskrank., iii., p. 1.

Jacoby. Berl. klin. Woch., 1897, p. 248.

Heidenhain. Pflüger's Arch., lvi., p. 579.

[1] A curious antagonism is said to exist between iodide of soda and phosphate of soda in regard to the cardiac nerves. See *Barbera*, Pflüger's Arch., lxviii., p. 434 and *Cyon*, ibid., lxx., p. 126.

Kövesi. Centralbl. f. Physiol., 1897, p. 553.
Hamburger. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1896, p. 428.
Höber. Pflüger's Arch., lxx., p. 624.
Flemming. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1893.
Wallace and Cushny. Am. Journ. of Physiol., i., p. 411. Pflüger's Arch., lxxvii., p. 202.
Gamgee, Priestley and Larmuth. Journ. of Anat. and Phys., xi., p. 255. (Phosphates.)
Swiatecki. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xv., p. 49.

XIV. HYDRATES AND CARBONATES OF THE ALKALIES.

The hydrates and carbonates of potassium, sodium and lithium owe their pharmacological action entirely to the non-metallic ion, which is so much more powerful than the metal that the latter may be discounted. In the hydrates the active constituent, then, is — HO. The carbonates and bicarbonates dissociate into K- or Na- ions and — CO_3, but the latter rapidly combines with the hydrogen of the water and thus frees — OH, so that the final effect is the same as if a hydrate had been administered, except that the carbonates are less rapidly dissociated than the hydrates, and, less — OH being formed, are less violent in their action. This hydroxyl ion, then, is what induces the alkaline reaction of the solutions and their pharmacological effect, the metallic ion only serving as a means of applying the hydroxyl ion, but not affecting the pharmacological action. In other words the alkalinity (hydroxyl ion) of the hydrates and carbonates determines their action; the metal has no practical importance.

It is therefore erroneous to take the hydrates and carbonates as typifying the action of potassium or sodium, for in these the metallic action is much less distinct than in the chlorides, the Cl ion being practically inert, while the hydroxyl is exceedingly poisonous.

It may be remarked in passing that the importance of the reaction between alkalies and acids lies not in the combination of the metal with the anion of the acid, but in the combination of the powerful hydroxyl ion with the hydrogen ion of the acid. In the effects of potassic hydrate in the stomach, the main importance is to be attached not to the potassic chloride formed but to the water ($K — HO + H — Cl = K — Cl + H_2O$), for the potassium and chloride ions remain unchanged by the operation while the hydroxyl and the hydrogen ions disappear.

Action. — The pharmacological action of this group is due to their powers of neutralizing acids and of dissolving proteids and changing them to alkali-proteids, and in a less degree to their saponifying fats. They have in addition the ordinary salt-action, and in concentrated solutions withdraw fluid from the tissues.

The solution of proteids by the alkalies and the characters of the compounds thus formed outside the body are well known and need not be entered into here. The same solvent action is observed in the living tissues whenever the hydrates and carbonates come in contact with them in sufficient concentration. The hydrates are, of course, much more powerful solvents than the carbonates, and these than the bicarbonates. In very dilute solutions this solvent action is exercised only on the superficial tissues, but when stronger solutions are used, or when even weak solutions remain long in contact with the tissues,

they tend to penetrate more deeply and cause widespread destruction or corrosion. These bodies form soluble compounds with the proteids and are only slowly neutralized by the tissues, so that no such barrier is raised against their penetration as is met by some other corrosives.

Applied to the **Skin** weak solutions dissolve the superficial layer of horny matter and the oily secretions of the glands, and thus cleanse the surface more thoroughly than water or solutions of neutral salts. When applied for some time, they penetrate more deeply and cause some slight irritation and redness. Concentrated solutions dissolve the skin and cause necrosis of the deeper tissues, generally covered by a semitransparent crust, which falls off in the course of a few days, leaving an ulcer. The solutions of the carbonates are much less corrosive than those of the hydrates, and induce actual lesion of the skin only under exceptional circumstances, such as very prolonged application.

In the **Mouth** the hydrates and carbonates have a characteristic "alkaline" taste, and dissolve the superficial layers of the lining membrane and the mucus of the secretions. The lips, tongue, and gums assume a bright red color from the irritation and feel soapy to the touch. Concentrated solutions may cause deep corrosion, as in the skin, while very weak solutions have no effect except the characteristic taste and a reflex flow of saliva. The corrosion caused by strong solutions extends to the throat and œsophagus, and may either prove immediately fatal or may give rise to cicatrices subsequently.

The effect of the hydrates and carbonates in the **Stomach** has been much disputed, and even now it is impossible to explain some of the therapeutic results. Small quantities are undoubtedly neutralized by the hydrochloric acid of the gastric juice and act no longer from their alkalinity, but merely from their effects as salts, if at all. Larger quantities render the contents of the stomach neutral or alkaline and thus prevent gastric digestion. Very concentrated solutions corrode the walls of the stomach and may prove immediately fatal from causing perforation into the peritoneal cavity, while if the corrosion is not so severe, and the patient recovers from the shock and collapse, gastric ulcer and cicatrices may result.

It is very frequently stated that alkalies and alkaline carbonates induce a more rapid secretion of the gastric juice. In fact, some writers go so far as to assert that it is impossible to render the contents of the stomach alkaline except by the use of poisonous doses, because the gastric juice is so rapidly augmented by the alkalies. This belief seems to be founded on the old aphorism *contraria contrariis stimulantur*, which proves to have no greater basis in fact than other similar dogmas. It has been demonstrated experimentally in dogs that alkaline carbonates, whether given by the mouth or injected into the stomach through a gastric fistula, do not influence the amount of the gastric secretion, and Reichmann has recently shown that in man distilled water increases the free acid and the chlorides of the stomach contents as much as an equal amount of an alkaline solution. The

only satisfactory examinations of the question, therefore, show that the alkalies have no effect whatsoever on the activity of the secretory glands of the stomach. On the other hand, they may affect the juice already secreted by making it neutral or even alkaline, and may thus render it entirely useless for digestion and disinfection. Of course in hyperacidity of the stomach, the alkalies may be of benefit by lessening the amount of free acid present.

Dilute solutions of the alkalies may act as slight irritants to the stomach wall and thus improve its circulation, and lessen pain, eructation and distention, very much in the same way as other slight gastric irritants, such as the volatile oils. In the case of the carbonates and bicarbonates, this carminative action may be strengthened by the carbonic acid liberated by the hydrochloric acid. In addition, they tend to render the mucus less tenacious, or may dissolve it completely, and thus improve the condition of the stomach. Nothing is known as to their effects on the movements of the stomach, or on its power of absorption, but if carbonic acid be liberated, it tends to increase the movements to some extent.

In the small **Intestine** the alkalies have been shown to have an indirect effect, through their diminishing the acidity of the gastric juice. The secretion of the pancreas is normally stimulated by the passage of an acid fluid through the pylorus, and if the acidity of this fluid be reduced by the administration of alkalies, a much smaller quantity of pancreatic juice is thrown into the intestine. This may again render the digestion less complete, although the greater alkalinity of the intestinal contents tends to increase the efficiency of the pancreatic juice already secreted. On the other hand, in cases of hyperacidity of the stomach, the administration of alkalies may render the contents of the intestine less irritant, and thus tend to allay catarrh.

The alkalies administered in medicinal doses seem to have no effect on the intestinal putrefaction, for the double sulphates of the urine remain unchanged in amount. Kast states that very large quantities (15 G., ½ oz.) increase the putrefaction, probably through neutralizing the disinfectant gastric juice.

The alkalies have been believed to have some special action on the **Secretion of Bile**; thus, it has been supposed that they rendered the bile more alkaline and tended to dissolve the mucus contained in it, that they prevented the deposition of, and even dissolved gall-stones, or that they increased the secretion of bile and thus swept them out of the gall-bladder. All of those theories have been overthrown by the investigations of Stadelmann and his pupils, who have shown that alkaline salts do not increase the secretion of bile, are not excreted in it, and do not cause any change in its reaction. Any effect which the alkaline carbonates or hydrates may possess in hepatic diseases would therefore seem due to their effects in the duodenum.

The prolonged administration of very large doses of the alkaline carbonates and bicarbonates causes chronic gastro-enteritis in animals, and is said to have proved fatal to them in some instances.

The hydrates are probably **Absorbed** in combination with proteids or as carbonates. Both hydrates and carbonates disappear rapidly from the stomach and intestine, although the bicarbonate of soda is sometimes credited with some laxative action; this may not, however, be due to the same causes as in the case of the saline cathartics. The absorption of these bodies leads to an increase in the alkalinity of the blood and tissues. Even when the alkali administered has been neutralized by the gastric juice, the body is rendered more alkaline, because a certain amount of the carbonate of the blood and tissues is spared, which would normally have been used to neutralize the hydrochloric acid before it could be reabsorbed. This condition of augmented alkalinity can only last a short time, however, as the excretory glands at once proceed to remove the excess. But this transient increase in the alkalinity of the tissues has been supposed to influence the **Metabolism** very considerably. It is found that outside the body certain bodies undergo oxidation much sooner in alkaline solution than when neutral; the example most frequently cited is pyrogallol, which combines with oxygen much more rapidly in the presence of alkalies. From this it has been surmised that an increase in the alkalinity of the fluids of the body must be followed by an acceleration of the metabolism. A large number of researches made on man and animals in regard to this point have given varying results, but tend on the whole to show that the alkalies have less effect on the tissue-change than was formerly believed. The investigators of the subject have generally confined their attention to the effects of alkalies on the products of metabolism excreted in the urine, and have found the total nitrogen excreted to be unchanged in a considerable number of instances, to be slightly increased in others, and to be diminished in a few individuals. Even in those cases in which an increase is observed in the nitrogen of the urine, it does not always indicate an increase in the nitrogenous metabolism, for the urine is often increased considerably and it is evident that the interchange of the fluids of the tissues and blood is augmented; so that the increased nitrogen of the urine is accounted for by the tissues being more thoroughly flushed out than usual by the alkalies, which act in the same way as the neutral salts. (See page 494.) The effect of the alkalies on the total nitrogen excretion seems to vary considerably with the individual, and in one and the same person different effects have been noted from two salts which exist in the blood in the same form.

Although the total nitrogen may be little affected by the administration of the alkalies, the form in which it is combined in the urine and in the blood may be changed. The ammonia of the urine is often diminished in amount, while the urea excretion is correspondingly augmented. This is especially marked in cases in which excess of acid is formed in the tissues or absorbed in any way, and is explained by the fact that this acid is ordinarily neutralized by the formation of ammonia in the tissues (see Acids). When, however, fixed alkali is present in sufficient amount, as when the carbonates are given, the nitrogen

which would otherwise have been excreted as ammonium salts, is formed into urea.

The **Uric Acid Excretion** under the alkalies has been the subject of numerous researches, but in the great majority of these very imperfect methods of estimation have been used. In the few cases in which satisfactory methods have been employed, the results have been divergent, the uric acid being sometimes decreased and sometimes increased by the alkalies.[1] This has been explained by an increase or decrease in the oxidation having occurred, it being tacitly assumed that the amount of uric acid formed remained unchanged, but that in the one case a greater amount than usual was destroyed in the tissues, in the other a smaller amount than usual. It seems not unlikely, however, that the true explanation is that the local action of the alkali on the alimentary tract sometimes causes an increased formation and destruction of the leucocytes and thus increases the uric acid. It is true that Pohl could not detect any increase in the leucocytes of the blood when bicarbonate of soda was exhibited, but no investigations have been carried out in which the leucocytes and the uric acid were both estimated under the alkalies.

As regards the **Oxidation in the Tissues**, one observer found the oxygen absorbed and the carbonic acid excreted by the lungs increased by the alkalies, while another could detect no change. Another method of estimating the activity of the oxidation in the tissues has been used by Taniguti and Jawein, who both found that in man the neutral sulphur of the urine is increased by the alkalies at the expense of the acid sulphates; they interpret this as indicating a diminution of the oxidation of the tissues. On the other hand, Heffter and Harnack, using the same method, came to the conclusion that the oxidation in the tissues of the dog was increased by the alkalies, and this accords with Munk's observation that a diminution of the alkalinity of the blood of the horse lessened the oxidation of phenol.

The only conclusion which seems admissible from these laborious investigations, is that the tissue waste is but little affected in amount by the increased alkalinity of the blood, and the slight changes observed may vary not only in different species, but in different individuals, and even in the same individual at different times. The cause of this individual variation may be differences in the amount of acid formed in the tissues, but may also be differences in the local effect of the alkalies in the alimentary tract.

The organism rapidly frees itself from the excess of alkali by **Excreting** alkaline salts. This excretion occurs chiefly in the urine, which becomes less acid, or even alkaline in reaction, and in the latter event contains bicarbonate of potash or soda. As a general rule, the urine soon regains its acidity, but when fairly large doses are given repeatedly, its action may be kept alkaline constantly. This is almost always accomplished in man by the administration of about 10–15 G.

[1] Stadelmann and his pupils found that very large doses lessen the uric acid in the urine, while smaller ones had no effect on it.

(160–240 grs.) of sodium carbonate in 24 hours, but some persons require a still larger quantity, while others require much less. A temporary alkaline reaction lasting 2–3 hours may often be induced by a single dose of 2–3 G. The alkalies have the same effect on the excretion of the salts in the urine as the neutral salts — large doses increase the sodium, potassium and chlorides of the urine.

The injection of alkaline carbonates into the blood induces a more active secretion from the bronchial mucous membrane, according to Calvert, while Rossbach found it to have the opposite effect. It is questionable whether the alkali is excreted here.

The blood of rabbits treated with alkalies is said to be more strongly germicidal than usual, and these animals show greater resistance to infection with anthrax bacilli. These effects are not due to the increased alkalinity of the blood directly, for serum is not rendered more bactericidal when alkali is added to it in test-tube experiments.

When dilute alkaline solutions are applied to **Isolated Organs**, they generally increase their activity for a time, but subsequently weaken it, while strong solutions are immediately poisonous. Thus the ciliary movement of epithelium is accelerated by dilute alkalies, the sodium salts acting more strongly than the potassium because of the poisonous K-ion of the latter. The frog's heart also contracts longer and more strongly when it is perfused by a chloride of sodium solution rendered alkaline by carbonate of soda than when the solution is neutral. Somewhat stronger solutions increase its tonus and eventually cause systolic standstill. The arteries are contracted in the same way by contact with alkaline solutions, and are dilated when acids are perfused through them. Some of the secretions have also been found to be increased by the presence of alkalies, thus the glands of the frog's skin are stimulated by very dilute alkaline solutions. Loeb has recently observed that the presence of the — OH ion causes frog's muscle to absorb considerable quantities of water from a dilute salt solution, while on the other hand Hamburger states that the addition of small quantities of alkalies to the drawn blood reduces the size of the blood cells. Zoethout states that some unicellular organisms prove much more resistant to the effects of the withdrawal of oxygen when they are placed in a slightly alkaline medium, and suggests as an explanation that the alkali antagonizes some poison formed during asphyxia.

Strong alkaline solutions destroy all living tissues with which they come in contact.

Preparations.

Potassa (U. S. P.), Potassa Caustica (B. P.) (KOH), potassium hydrate, caustic potash—dry white pencils or fused masses, deliquescent in the air and very caustic.

Potassa cum Calce (U. S. P.), Vienna paste, equal parts of caustic potash and unslaked lime—a grayish powder.

Soda (U. S. P.) (NaOH), sodium hydrate or hydroxide, caustic soda, white translucent pencils, deliquescent in the air, and very caustic.

Liquor Potassæ (U. S. P., B. P.), solution of potassium hydrate, about five per cent., 0.6–2 c.c. (10–30 mins.), to be well diluted.

Liquor Sodæ (U. S. P.), a solution of sodium hydrate in water, about five per cent., 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.), well diluted.

Liquor Sodii Ethylatis (B. P.), an 18 per cent. solution of sodium ethylate (C_2H_5ONa) in absolute alcohol. It should be recently prepared, when it forms a colorless syrupy liquid, which decomposes in the presence of water, and is very caustic.

Potassii Carbonas (U. S. P., B. P.) (K_2CO_3), a white granular powder of alkaline reaction, soluble in one part of water. 0.5–3 G. (5–30 grs.).

Sodii Carbonas (U. S. P., B. P.) ($Na_2CO_3 + 10H_2O$), colorless crystals with an alkaline reaction and taste, soluble in about one part of water. 0.3–2 G. (5–30 grs.).

Sodii Carbonas Exsiccatus (U. S. P., B. P.), sodium carbonate deprived of most of its water of crystallization, a loose, white powder resembling the ordinary carbonate in its reactions and solubility. 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Potassii Bicarbonas (U. S. P., B. P.) ($KHCO_3$), colorless, transparent crystals with a saline, slightly alkaline taste and soluble in three parts of water. 0.5–2 G. (10–30 grs.).

Sodii Bicarbonas (U. S. P., B. P.) ($NaHCO_3$), a white, opaque powder, with a cool, alkaline taste, soluble in 11 parts of water at 15° C. 0.3-2 G. (5–30 grs.).

Trochisci Sodii Bicarbonatis (U. S. P., B. P.).

Sodium bicarbonate is contained in the Mistura Rhei et Sodæ (U. S. P.).

Lithii Carbonas (U. S. P., B. P.) (Li_2CO_3), a light, white powder with an alkaline taste, soluble in 80 parts of water, but more soluble in carbonic acid water. 0.2–0.6 G. (3–10 grs.).

The preparations of magnesia and magnesium carbonate (see pp. 540–541) are prescribed more as antacids than as cathartics, and might be included in this list.

Numerous alkaline mineral waters are used instead of the pharmacopœial preparations, but as a general rule they contain only very small quantities of the carbonates, and perhaps act more through the large amount of water than through their alkaline reaction.

Therapeutic Uses. — The caustic alkalies are used **Externally** to a limited extent to remove growths such as warts from the skin. For this purpose the potash pencils are employed, but they are very deliquescent and it is therefore difficult to limit their action to one spot, and to the superficial tissues. When the desired extent of cauterization has been obtained, the part should be washed with water, or with vinegar or some other dilute acid. The Vienna paste (U. S. P.) is somewhat milder and slower in its action and is more easily controlled. The solution of sodium ethylate (B. P.) is said to be less painful than caustic potash. The carbonates are also used externally to some extent, chiefly in baths, which they render more irritant to the skin, and in which they tend to soften and remove the superficial horny layers of the epithelium more than ordinary water or solutions of the neutral salts. The carbonates are also applied in strong solution or as a paste in itching skin diseases, and often give relief.

Internally the alkaline carbonates and more rarely the solutions of the hydrates are used for their effect on the stomach, and in cases of hyperacidity relieve the pain and eructation almost instantly. Even where no excessive acidity exists, the alkalies are often beneficial in small quantities, removing the distension and discomfort without apparently altering the digestion to any marked extent. The bicarbonate of potash is more frequently used for this purpose than the others, and the solutions of the caustic alkalies are comparatively rarely employed. Whatever preparation be used, it ought to be well diluted to avoid the irritant action on the stomach wall. Instead of these alkalies the carbonate and oxide of magnesium may be employed in powder, and possesses the advantage of not causing any irritation and

at the same time have some aperient action. In cases of hyperacidity the alkalies (antacids) are often given after meals, while when the secretion does not seem to contain an excessive amount of acid they are advised before meals, and may then be combined with other stomachics, such as bitters or volatile oils.

The alkalies are also administered for their effects after absorption, and here the bicarbonate of potash is most frequently prescribed, while the hydrate solutions are rarely used.[1] Diabetes was formerly treated in this way, in the hope that the oxidation in the tissues would be increased, but there is little reason to suppose that the alkalies have any such effect on the metabolism, and it is now generally accepted that diabetes is not due to a general inability of the tissues to oxidize. Experience too has shown that the glycosuria is not lessened appreciably by the use of the alkalies. When, however, diabetes induces an increased acid formation in the tissues, as is almost invariably the case in its later stages, the alkalies are of undoubted benefit in neutralizing the oxybutyric acid formed and thus economizing the alkalies of the blood. In diabetic coma, temporary improvement may very often be attained by the use of large doses of alkalies.

In gout, rheumatism, and the "uric acid diathesis" generally, the alkalies have been used very extensively, partly in the hope that the supposed increased combustion in the tissues would destroy a larger amount of the uric acid, and partly with the idea that the uric acid being neutralized in the tissues, would be excreted more easily and would have less tendency to be deposited. There are some grounds for believing that the alkaline carbonates are of benefit in gout and rheumatism, but neither of these theories seems sufficient to explain their effects, for no increase in the oxidation has been shown to occur, and on the other hand the uric acid is not believed to exist in either the blood or the urine in such simple combinations as the urates. In the present position of the uric acid question and of the pathology of these diseases, however, it is futile to attempt to explain their therapeutics, though it may be surmised that the alkalies may influence the formation of the uric acid rather than its excretion. The sodium and potassium salts have been used very largely, and the lithium carbonate has been advised on the ground that lithium urate is about four times as soluble as sodium urate. Lithium has also been administered in the form of the benzoate and salicylate in these diseases, in order to combine the solvent action of the base with the effects of these acids, but, as in so many other similar attempts, one of the chief factors in the action has been lost sight of; much too small quantities of the lithium compounds have been given to affect the reaction of the blood, and besides the salicylate and benzoate do not alter it at all, as they are neutral salts. These lithium compounds therefore seem to be superfluous in the treatment of these diseases. More benefit is derived from the treatment of gout and rheumatism by the alkaline mineral waters than by artificial preparations, and this is especially marked

[1] The acetates, citrates, etc., may also be used for this purpose (page 554).

when patients are sent to the mineral springs. The alkalinity of most of the waters is very slight, and the conclusion is inevitable that the curative agency is not the alkalinity, but the large amount of fluid taken, together with the dietetic and other hygienic conditions.

The alkaline preparations are also largely used for their effects in the urine. In cases of excessive acidity of the urine leading to pain and straining during micturition, the symptoms are relieved by these drugs rendering the fluid less irritating, and this relief is especially marked in irritable conditions of the bladder and urethra. They may also be of value in those cases by rendering the mucus more soluble in the bladder. In gravel the alkalies also give relief, and this has been attributed to their dissolving the uric acid in the urine, or rather to their keeping it in solution in the form of salts. In order to attain this, the urine would have to be rendered alkaline, or at least neutral, and relief is given by quantities of the alkalies which are quite insufficient to do this, so that it seems more probable that the effects are due to their increasing the amount of the urine, and thus rendering it more dilute than to their actually neutralizing the uric acid. Attempts have even been made to dissolve calculus in the bladder or in the kidney by treatment with the alkalies, but there is no question that this is hopeless. The solution of the alkalies formed in the urine is extremely dilute, and in fact, except under large doses, the reaction is not even constantly neutral. On the other hand, even the alkaline urates are by no means very soluble bodies, and are formed only with difficulty except in strong alkaline solutions. Again, alkaline urine is very liable to deposit phosphates in the bladder, and thus rather to increase the calculus than to diminish it. Experience has shown conclusively that the alkaline treatment does not remove calculus, although in one or two cases it is stated that soft calculi broke down into fragments under it, from the mucus which held the fragments together being dissolved. The pain and irritation of calculus may be relieved to some extent, however, from the acidity of the urine being lessened.

The alkaline carbonates are also prescribed in cases of jaundice and gall-stone, often with benefit. This is not due to their acting on the bile directly in all probability, for it has been shown that they do not affect it in the normal animal; the improvement may rather be ascribed to their lessening duodenal irritation.

The bicarbonate of potash is often added to other expectorant remedies in the treatment of bronchial catarrh and bronchitis, and is believed to increase the secretion and render it more fluid and more easily expectorated.

The alkaline carbonates may be given as antidotes in poisoning with the corrosive acids, although magnesia is preferable, because it is less irritating to the stomach.

In cases of **Poisoning** with the caustic alkalies, the treatment consists in the administration of dilute acids, of which the organic—acetic, citric or tartaric—are the best. The first is most readily obtained in the form of vinegar. No attempt should be made to pass the stomach

tube, as it is liable to pass through the corroded wall of the œsophagus or stomach. General measures, such as central nervous stimulants, warmth, etc., may be taken.

Bibliography.

Reichmann. Arch. f. Verdauungskrankheiten, i., p. 44.
Khigine. Arch. des Scienc. biologiques, iii., p. 461.
Becker. Ibid., ii., p. 433.
Glass. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxx., p. 241.
Salkowski u. Spilker. Virchow's Arch., cxvii., p. 570.
Taniguti. Ibid., cxvii., p. 581.
Horbaczewski. Monatsh. f. Chem., xii., p. 269.
Freudberg. Virchow's Arch., cxxv., p. 566.
Stadelmann. Einfluss der Alkalien auf den menschlichen Stoffwechsel, 1890.
Jawein. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxii., p. 43.
Hegeler. Arch. f. Hyg., xl., p. 375.
Calvert. Journ. of Phys., xx., p. 158.
Passalsky u. Cruszewitsch. Maly's Jahresber., xxiii. (1893), p. 427.
Harnack u. Kleine. Ztschr. f. Biol., xxxvii., p. 417.
Zoethout. Amer. Journ. of Physiol., ii., p. 220.
Garrey. Ibid., iii., p. 291.

Piperazine and Urotropine.

Several new organic compounds have been introduced of late years as solvents of uric acid in the tissues and urine. The best known of these is *piperazine* or diethylendiamine ($NH<\begin{matrix}CH_2—CH_2\\CH_2—CH_2\end{matrix}>NH$) ; *lycetol* and *lysidine* are nearly related bodies. *Urotropine* is hexamethylentetramine, $(CH_2)_6N_4$, and several compounds have been introduced. The latest remedy is *quinic acid*, $C_7H_{12}O_6$, which is found in cinchona bark and in other plants ; its combinations with lithium citrate, urotropine and piperazine are known as *urosin*, *chinotropine* and *sidonal*. Piperazine and its allies dissolve uric acid readily in the test-tube, much more rapidly than lithium or borax, which are often prescribed for their solvent action ; it was therefore hoped that these bases would prevent the deposit of uric acid in the body in gout by forming soluble urates, which would be eliminated in the urine. But very little of the piperazine ingested reappears in the urine, and this quantity is too small to have any solvent action on the uric acid. And what does escape in this way is in combination with the stronger acids and not with the uric acid. When the kidneys are inflamed and necrosed in birds through the action of chromic acid, the uric acid, which would normally be excreted by the kidney, is deposited in various organs, but this does not occur except in the kidney if piperazine is administered. This has been used as an argument in support of the treatment of gout with piperazine, and some clinicians have had very favorable results from it, while others have been disappointed. It is said to relieve the discomfort due to the passage of gravel in some cases, while failing in others, but it has not been shown to be of any value in the treatment of calculus, and the urine of patients treated with piperazine has no more solvent action on uric acid than normal urine. Piperazine seems to induce no symptoms in man or animals even when administered in large quantities.

Urotropine has been recommended as a solvent for uric acid, and also as a genito-urinary disinfectant. It is excreted in the urine and is there partially decomposed into formaldehyde, which exercises an antiseptic action in the bladder and urethra and may possibly form a soluble combination with uric acid. It has no effect on uric acid deposits in birds, any solvent action it may exert being confined to the uric acid in the urine. Both piperazine and urotropine often cause some diuresis, and this may partly explain the relief afforded in gravel.

Quinic acid has been suggested as a treatment for gout on the theory that it would combine with glycocoll in the body and thus prevent the formation of uric acid, a theory based on most unsatisfactory grounds. As a matter of fact it has no effect whatever on the amount of uric acid excreted. In short there is every reason to believe that these new remedies will prove no more reliable than the older treatment of gout and the "uric acid diathesis."

Piperazine is given in solution in doses of 1 G. (15 grs.), urotropine in doses of 0.5 G. (8 grs.).

Bibliography.

Biesenthal. Berl. klin. Woch., 1892, pp. 28 and 754; 1893, p. 805.
Mendelsohn. Ibid., 1892, p. 384; 1898, p. 48.
Meisels. Ungar. Arch. f. Med., Bd. i., p. 364.
Nicolaier. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxxviii., p. 350.
Richardson. Journ. of Exp. Med., iv., p. 19.
Ortowski. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xl., p. 331.
Lewandowski. Ibid., xl., p. 202.
Ulrici. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlvi., p. 321.

XV. THE ACETATE SERIES.

As far as their immediate effects are concerned, the acetates of the fixed alkalies resemble the chlorides, owing any effect they possess to the salt-action. In the tissues however the acetates are oxidized and form carbonates, so that the effects are those of the chloride before absorption, and those of the carbonate subsequently. They are probably partly decomposed by the hydrochloric acid in the stomach, and in the intestine they are rapidly absorbed. The oxidation seems to proceed rapidly, and is very complete, over 95 per cent. of the acetate disappearing, and only some 2–3 per cent. being excreted unchanged in the urine. The alkalinity of the blood and of the urine is increased by the acetates as by the carbonates, and the amount of urine is increased.

The oxidation of the acetates, of course, supplies energy to the body and they are therefore foods technically, but they are unable to replace the fats and carbohydrates, as they fail to lessen the nitrogenous tissue change (compare alcohol, p. 142). Practically they are useless as foods, as when given in sufficient amount they derange the stomach in the same way as common salt and also alter the character and amount of the urine.

The acetates seem almost devoid of specific action—they act only as salts by changing the physical properties of the body fluids or as alkalies after absorption. The other members of the acetate series have some action, however, for the formate, propionate, butyrate and valerianate of soda have been shown to be very weak narcotics when they are injected hypodermically or intravenously; this is especially marked in the case of the butyrate. Rather more of the formate escapes unchanged in the urine than of the acetate, while the others are apparently entirely oxidized. The butyrate differs from the acetate in being capable of taking the place of the carbohydrates and fats more completely, and in thus leading to an economy of the nitrogenous tissues of the body.

All of the simpler salts of this series are equally rapidly absorbed from the intestine, but the œnanthylate and the caprylate resemble the saline cathartics in being very slowly absorbed. Probably this holds also for the higher members of the acetic acid series, including the salts formed by the decomposition of fats—palmitates, stearates, etc.

The **Lactates** resemble the acetates in being almost entirely inactive, but they are rather more slowly absorbed than the acetates. They are oxidized in the tissues for the most part, and resemble butyrates in limiting the nitrogenous waste, at any rate when they are given in moderate quantities. Lactic acid is also excreted in the urine, however, in considerable quantity.

Preparations.

Potassii Acetas (U. S. P., B. P.), a crystalline salt of pleasant, saline taste and very soluble in water. 1–4 G. (15–60 grs.).

Sodii Acetas (U. S. P.) resembles the potassium salt.

Ammonii Acetas. (See page 557.)

Strontii Lactas (U. S. P.), 1–2 G. (15–30 grs.).

Acetate of potash has been largely used as a diuretic and in the treatment of gout and rheumatism. It acts here exactly as the alkaline carbonates and bicarbonates, but has the advantage of not neutralizing the gastric juice, or in any way affecting the digestion except from its salt-action, which may be minimized by exhibiting it in dilute solution.

The citrates of the alkalies may be used for the same purpose, as they are not cathartic except in large quantities. (See Saline Cathartics, p. 540.)

Bibliography.

Buchheim. Arch. f. phys. Heilk., 1857, p. 122.
Maier. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxi., p. 119.
Weiske u. Flechsig. Centralbl. f. Phys., 1890, p. 36.
Mallevre. Pflüger's Arch., xlix., p. 460.
Pohl. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxi., p. 289 ; xxxvii., p. 413.

XVI. AMMONIA AND CARBONATE OF AMMONIA.

Ammonia solution and carbonate of ammonia differ considerably from the corresponding hydrates or carbonates of the fixed alkalies in their effects. The gas evaporates rapidly from its watery solutions, and the carbonate gives off ammonia freely, so that the effects are very similar, although the solution of ammonia is much the more powerful. Owing to its volatility, ammonia penetrates more rapidly and deeply than the fixed alkalies, and at the same time is less corrosive and less enduring in its effects. Applied to the skin in concentrated solution, it may corrode to some extent, but ordinary dilute preparations act merely as rubefacients, like the volatile oils. Even concentrated solutions do not dissolve the epidermis like the fixed alkaline hydrates, but tend to penetrate through it and raise blisters. When inhaled, the irritation of the nasal mucous membrane causes a reflex stimulation of the vaso-motor centre, and consequent contraction of the arterioles and augmented blood-pressure, while the respiration is first arrested, and then becomes deeper and fuller. The heart may be temporarily slowed by inhibitory reflexes. Three parts of ammonia in 10,000 of air cause sneezing, pain in the nose, and tears, when inspired by man, and 5 parts in 10,000 are dangerous when inhaled for some time (Lehmann).

Concentrated solutions cause corrosion of the mouth, œsophagus and stomach similar to that seen in poisoning with the fixed alkalies, but some of the vapor, passing into the respiratory passages, often sets up spasm of the glottis, or such swelling of the mucous membrane of the larynx and trachea as to induce asphyxia. In cases of ammonia poisoning, therefore, the symptoms often arise, not so much from the gastric corrosion as from asphyxia, and death may occur very suddenly from this cause. The carbonate of ammonia, when swallowed, also causes slight gastric irritation, and in larger quantities nausea and vomiting.

After absorption ammonia and its carbonate are rapidly changed to urea, and thus differ from the fixed alkalies in not rendering the blood more alkaline, and in having no effect on the urine except to increase the urea and thereby cause some diuresis.

The carbonate of ammonia stimulates the central nervous system when it is injected into the blood in some quantity, but it is very doubtful whether either the hydrate or the carbonate has any such effect when absorbed from the stomach. (Cf. Ammonium Chloride, page 500.)

Preparations.

Aqua Ammoniæ Fortior (U. S. P.), a solution of ammonia in water, containing 28 per cent. of the gas by weight.

Liquor Ammoniæ Fortis (B. P.), 32½ per cent. by weight.

Aqua Ammoniæ (U. S. P.), *Liquor Ammoniæ* (B. P.), an aqueous solution of ammonia of 10 per cent. strength by weight.

Spiritus Ammoniæ (U. S. P.), an alcoholic solution of ammonia containing 10 per cent. of the gas by weight. 1–2 c.c. (15–30 mins.).

Spiritus Ammoniæ Aromaticus (U. S. P., B. P.), Aromatic Spirit of Hartshorn, Spirit of Sal Volatile, contains ammonia and ammonium carbonate along with several volatile oils dissolved in alcohol. 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.), in a glass of water.

Linimentum Ammoniæ (U. S. P., B. P.), ammonia liniment, volatile liniment, contains about 3.5 per cent. of ammonia (2.5 per cent. B. P.).

Ammonii Carbonas (U. S. P., B. P.) is not the pure carbonate but a mixture of somewhat varying composition consisting of carbonate (NH_4HCO_3) and carbamate of ammonia ($NH_4NH_2CO_2$). It releases ammonia in the air and has therefore its pungent taste and smell. It forms translucent, crystalline masses, is very soluble in water and is contained in the aromatic spirit of ammonia. 0.2–0.6 G. (3–10 grs.) in dilute solution.

Ammonia is contained in several of the tinctures of the B. P. (ammoniated tinctures) and in the Linimentum Camphoræ Ammoniatum, etc.

Therapeutic Uses. — The aqueous solutions of ammonia are comparatively rarely employed, although the strong solution has been advised as a vesicant in cases of renal disease, in which cantharides is contraindicated. The ammonia solution has to be covered by a watch-glass in order to prevent its evaporation, and is said to be more painful than other vesicants. The liniment is used as a rubefacient in bruises and in other similar conditions. The gas arising from ammonium carbonate is often inhaled in cases of fainting or collapse, in order to elicit reflex stimulation of the medullary centres. The ordinary "smelling salts" used for this purpose consist of the carbonate reinforced with some of the strong solution and flavored with oil of lavender.

The aromatic spirits of ammonia and the carbonate (in solution) are used as mild gastric stimulants in debility, flatulence and alcoholism, and are very efficient for a short time. Large doses of the carbonate (2 G.) have been used as emetics, and are less depressant than many others, such as tartar emetic or ipecacuanha.

The carbonate of ammonia and the spirits or even the ordinary water of ammonia are often given in cases of collapse or sudden heart failure. They are generally administered by the mouth and probably

act here not directly on the heart and respiratory centre, as has been supposed, but reflexly from gastric irritation. They have also been injected subcutaneously or even intravenously for this purpose, and here the local action may be reinforced by a direct action on the medulla oblongata. The action lasts only a very short time, but is often sufficient to tide the patient over an acute collapse. In depression from many different causes the aromatic spirits of ammonia is a favorite remedy, and probably owes its value to its gastric action, and not to any changes in the central nervous system. The carbonate is often added to other expectorant remedies to render the bronchial mucous secretion more fluid. (See Ammonium Chloride, page 500.)

Strong water of ammonia is applied locally in snake-bite, and is popularly believed to be very efficacious. It has no effect on the tox-albumins of snake poison, and probably is of little or no value in these cases.

Bibliography.

See Ammonium Chloride, page 500.
Lehmann. Arch. f. Hygiene, v., p. 1.

The **Acetate of Ammonia** acts in the same way as the chloride locally, but undergoes oxidation in the tissues, and the whole is changed to urea, so that the ammonia of the urine is not increased, but only the urea. In the form of its solution, the spirit of Mindererus, it is used as a diaphoretic and diuretic, and is often prescribed along with more powerful remedies in fever.

Preparations.

Liquor Ammonii Acetatis (U. S. P., B. P.), spirit of Mindererus, contains about 7 per cent. of the acetate with some free acetic acid and carbonic acid and must be freshly prepared. 10–25 c.c. (2–6 fl. drs.).

Liquor Ammonii Citratis (B. P.) resembles the solution of the acetate. 2–6 fl. drs.

XVII. OXALATES.

The oxalates (NaOOC—COONa, sodium oxalate) differ from the acetate series is not undergoing oxidation in the tissues, and in being poisonous to most forms of living matter. This poisonous action is shown in the frog by depression and final paralysis of the central nervous system, the brain being first affected, then the medulla oblongata and spinal cord. Later still, the terminations of the peripheral nerves and the muscles and heart are paralyzed, twitching and fibrillary contractions of the voluntary muscles often being observed first.

In mammals there is apparently at first a stimulation of the medullary centres, for rapid, deep breathing occurs in the rabbit, and vomiting and nausea in the dog, and according to some observers, the arterial tension is first increased through stimulation of the vaso-motor centre. Later the movements are wanting in coördination, the respiration becomes slow and dyspnœic, the heart is weak, and the animal becomes comatose and dies, sometimes in convulsions.

In cases of oxalate poisoning in man, the early symptoms are great muscular weakness, twitching of the muscles, especially of those of the face,

more rarely convulsions; later there follows collapse with a weak, fluttering pulse, pallor or cyanosis, coma and death.

Oxalates are very poisonous to all forms of animal life and to plants containing chlorophyll, but are harmless to the moulds, bacteria and some algæ. They are absorbed with great difficulty from the stomach and intestine, and cause irritation and effusion of liquid except in very dilute solutions. Added to the blood outside or inside the body, they prevent its coagulation, and the rennet ferment also fails to coagulate milk in the presence of small quantities of oxalate (see Calcium). The frog's heart is very much weakened by the addition of oxalate of soda to the blood perfused through it, while the mammalian heart is not affected by very small quantities, but if the injection of oxalate be continued, becomes suddenly weaker. The action on the central nervous system has been mentioned already, and consists in depression, which is sometimes intermixed with, or preceded by symptoms of stimulation.

When the ordinary nerve-muscle preparation is soaked in oxalate solution, the same twitching and tremor of the muscle is observed as when the salt is injected into the frog. Later the nerve ends are paralyzed, and the nerve fibres lose their irritability, as is indicated by the disappearance of the electrical current of action. The muscle is extremely weak, and according to several observers, loses its irritability, while Locke finds that it can be made to contract locally by strong currents, even after being soaked for several hours. The post-mortem rigor does not seem to be prevented by oxalate as has been stated by some observers.

Oxalate solutions precipitate lime salts, and as it is well known that lime is an essential constituent of living matter, it has been suggested that the oxalates cause these changes in the organism not through any direct action on protoplasm, but through their precipitating the calcium and thus changing its ordinary relation to the proteids. This explanation has been supported by the discovery that calcium salts added after oxalates restore the lost function in many cases, although this of course admits of the explanation that the calcium merely throws the oxalate out of solution, and does not really supply fresh lime to the tissues. The presumption is strong however that the action of the oxalates is due, at any rate in part, to their precipitating the calcium in the tissues, although they may have a specific action on living matter in addition.

The alkalinity of the blood was found to be much reduced by the administration of neutral oxalates (Meyer), and it has been surmised that this is because the oxidation of the tissues is retarded by the presence of oxalates in the blood. This may account for the appearance of a reducing body in the urine of animals poisoned with oxalate; it sometimes occurs in poisoning in man and is said not to be dextrose.

Practically the whole of the oxalate ingested is excreted in the urine in the form of oxalate of calcium, and the insoluble crystals are often deposited along the urinary tubules and may stop them up entirely and thus cause anuria, congestion and inflammation of the kidney; albuminuria is often the most marked symptom in slight poisoning in man. The deposits of oxalates often form white lines running from the base to the apex of the renal pyramids, which are quite evident macroscopically at the autopsy. Small oxalate calculi have also been produced in the pelvis of the kidney, bladder, or ureter through the prolonged administration of oxalate or oxamide to animals. Not infrequently these renal changes are the only lesions found post-mortem in cases of poisoning with oxalates.

The prolonged administration of oxalates to animals has been found to induce changes in the skeleton, for sheep fed on plants containing much oxalate, are found to have less lime in the bones than usual, and in rabbits symptoms of rickets are said to be induced from the lessened absorption of lime.

The other members of the oxalate series, malonates ($CH_2(COONa)_2$) and succinates ($(CH_2)_2(COONa)_2$), differ from the oxalates in being very much

less poisonous, the fatal dose of malonate of soda being about twenty times that of the oxalate, and the succinate being almost indifferent. The malonate is almost completely oxidized in the tissues, and succinate disappears completely. It is significant that malonic and succinic acids form much more soluble salts with lime than does oxalic acid. Both malonate and succinate of soda are absorbed only slowly from the intestine, and act as saline cathartics.

The oxalates are not used in therapeutics. In cases of oxalate poisoning the natural antidote is lime, which forms an insoluble precipitate in the stomach and may also relieve the symptoms induced by the withdrawal of lime from its normal combination in the tissues. At the same time large quantities of water and diuretics may be given in order to wash out the crystals of oxalate from the urinary tubules.

Bibliography.

(See Calcium.)
Kobert u. Küssner. Virchow's Arch., lxxviii., p. 209.
Koch. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xiv., p. 153.
Gaglio. Ibid., xxii., p. 246.
Pohl. Ibid., xxxvii., p. 413.
Krohl. Arb. a. d. pharm. Inst. zu Dorpat, vii., p. 130.
Meyer. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xvii., p. 304.
Neuberger. Ibid., xxvii., p. 39.
Ebstein u. Nicolaier. Virchow's Arch., cxlviii., p. 366.
Ringer. Practitioner, xxxiv., 1885, p. 81.
Locke. Journ. of Phys., xv., p. 119; xvii., p. 293.
Howell. Ibid., xvi., p. 476.
Loew. Ein natürliches System der Giftwirkungen, 1893.
Heymanns. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1889, p. 168.
Marfori. Arch. Ital. de Biol., xxvi., p. 194.
Nathusius. Centralbl. f. Phys., 1897-98, p. 608.
Neuberg. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1893.
Vietinghoff-Scheel. Arch. internat. de pharmacodyn., viii., p. 225.

XVIII. ACIDS.

Some acids owe their activity in the organism almost entirely to their acidity, *i. e.*, to the hydrogen ion, which is much more powerful than the potassium ion, but otherwise stands on the same plane with it; those acids may therefore be treated of together. In the case of many other acids such as prussic or salicylic acid, the effects of the acidity or hydrogen ion is insignificant in comparison with those of the rest of the molecule or the negative ion, and these are treated along with their salts.

Action. — The acids owe their action on living tissues to their neutralizing alkalies, to their withdrawing water, when in concentrated form, and to their precipitating some of the proteids, more especially the globulins.

Most living matter is neutral or slightly alkaline in reaction, and seems to be incapable of existing in acid media. Exceptions are met with in some of the moulds and in other vegetable organisms which live in somewhat acid solutions, but even these are destroyed by more concentrated solutions, perhaps because the acids precipitate their proteids. Acids are therefore **Protoplasm Poisons** and antiseptics of some power. Hydrochloric acid is found to delay the growth of organisms,

and even to destroy the great majority of the less resistant forms in 0.2–0.3 per cent. solution, or in the percentage in which it exists in the gastric juice. The others vary in strength largely according to their acidity, that is, according to the number of hydrogen ions, or the amount of dissociation. The anion has also some effect in many cases.

When sulphuric or nitric acid is applied to the **Skin** in concentrated form, it acts as a powerful caustic, destroying the epidermis and penetrating to some distance into the skin and subcutaneous tissues, in which it causes necrosis. This is of course accompanied by great pain, and if much of the skin is attacked, by shock and collapse and symptoms similar to those seen in severe burns. Sulphuric acid causes a white, later a brown or black eschar, nitric acid a yellow. Hydrochloric acid is less liable to cause wholesale destruction of the skin, but penetrates the epidermis and raises blisters. The organic acids and phosphoric acid are still less irritant, but cause redness and even blistering when applied in concentrated solution. Dilute solutions of the acids may act as slight irritants to the skin, and often cause a feeling of stiffness and numbness, perhaps from precipitating the proteids.

The corrosive action of the acids is much more marked when they are applied to the less resistant **Mucous Membranes**. Even small quantities of strong sulphuric acid striking the eye are sufficient to destroy the sight.

In the **Mouth, Œsophagus, and Stomach** the corrosive action is evidenced by complete destruction of the mucous membranes which come in contact with the strong acid. The œsophagus and stomach may be perforated, and this, along with the shock and collapse, often proves immediately fatal, or if the patient recovers temporarily, the erosions may give rise to cicatricial contractions and death from inanition. Hydrochloric acid and the stronger organic acids are capable of causing corrosion of the mucous membranes, but this is not so extensive generally as that following nitric and sulphuric acid. The corrosion from acids differs from that from alkalies, in the tissues being shrunken, hard and brittle, while after a caustic alkali they are soft and swollen and have a slimy soapy appearance.

The symptoms of corrosive acid poisoning are intense pain in the mouth, throat and stomach, vomiting and often diarrhœa, shock and collapse, with rapid, weak pulse and shallow respiration. The temperature is often subnormal, and death occurs in the course of a few hours. When fuming acids are swallowed, and especially in poisoning with hydrochloric acid, the irritant vapor passing into the respiratory passages may cause spasm of the glottis, or œdema of the larynx, and prove immediately fatal from asphyxia. Even one part of hydrochloric acid vapor in 20,000 of air causes sneezing and pain in the throat and chest (Lehmann).

Dilute solutions of the acids have a characteristic taste, and induce a reflex flow of saliva and an astringent feeling in the mouth and throat from their causing a coagulation of the superficial layers of proteids.

In the stomach they displace any weaker acids from their combinations with bases, and may have some antiseptic action. The gastric juice is normally acid, containing about 0.2 per cent. of free hydrochloric acid, and this acid reaction is essential to the action of pepsin. Other acids may replace the hydrochloric acid in digestion, and a good deal of work has been done in determining the relative value of the acids for this purpose. This is done by adding different acids to solutions of pepsin in test-tubes, and noting the amount of fibrin or other proteid which is digested in the course of a number of hours. These experiments have shown that hydrochloric is better than most other acids, but is perhaps surpassed by hydrofluoric and oxalic acids; but the results seem to vary with the particular pepsin used, that obtained from the dog and calf differing somewhat in its relations to acids from that of the child. Their poisonous action precludes the use of either fluoric or oxalic acid in the stomach, and the other acids seem inferior to hydrochloric acid, so that both clinical experience and experiment point to the last as the most suitable acid for use in the stomach.

The acids are absorbed from the alimentary canal fairly rapidly in most cases. In the **Blood and Tissues** they do not exist as acids but as salts, for the reaction of the blood must remain slightly alkaline throughout life, and if sufficient acid be given to neutralize the alkalies of the body, the animal dies before the blood becomes neutral, although after death it may be found to be acid. The means provided by the economy to neutralize acids differ in different animals; in the herbivora the fixed alkalies of the blood and tissues are called upon chiefly, and if more acid be absorbed than can be neutralized by these, the animal dies; in the carnivorous animals and in man, a further protective mechanism exists, for in these ammonia is liberated by the tissues, and serves to neutralize the acid, and thus saves the fixed alkalies. The difference is relative and not absolute, however, for the herbivora also develop some ammonia, and the carnivora employ some of the fixed alkalies to preserve the normal reaction of the tissues. Man appears to stand midway between the two classes, for while ammonia appears in the urine after acid absorption, the fixed alkalies are also present in excess. Much larger amounts of dilute acids may therefore be absorbed without serious symptoms by man and by the carnivora than by the herbivora. The explanation of this difference between the flesh-eating and the plant-eating animals is to be found in the nature of their food. The flesh-eaters are accustomed to the formation of some acid in their tissues, because the alkalies of their food are insufficient to neutralize the acids formed by the oxidation of the organic matter, and they would gradually be deprived of all their alkaline salts, therefore, were they not protected by the formation of ammonia. On the other hand, the herbivorous animals absorb much larger quantities of the organic salts of the alkalies in their food, and these forming carbonates in the body, serve to neutralize what acid is formed in the tissues. In ordinary circumstances, therefore, they have no need to protect the fixed alkalies, and are unprovided with any

mechanism for this purpose. When an excess of acid is absorbed, they neutralize it by means of the fixed alkali of the tissues and blood, and this leads to a lessened alkalinity of the blood, which becomes unable to carry so much carbonic acid from the tissues to the lungs. Thus in acid poisoning in rabbits, the alkalinity of the blood has been found to be so greatly reduced that instead of containing some 25 volumes of carbonic acid per cent. of blood, it carried only two volumes per cent. or very little more than could be dissolved in the same amount of water. When this occurs, the tissues are unable to rid themselves of their carbonic acid,[1] and a series of symptoms follow, commencing in deep, labored, rapid, afterwards shallow respiration; the heart is weak, a condition of collapse follows, and eventually the respiration ceases, the heart continuing to beat for some time longer. The quantity required to poison a rabbit in this way is about 1 G. of hydrochloric acid for each kilogm. body weight. The injection of sodium carbonate, even in the last stage of intoxication, is followed by rapid recovery, from more alkali being supplied the blood and tissues, while other carbonates are not so useful owing to the action of the basic ion. The blood-pressure in rabbits is much reduced by the acids, from depression of the vaso-motor centre and the heart. In carnivora and man, the absorption of dilute acids does not alter the alkalinity of the blood to any marked degree, and no serious symptoms arise from this cause.

The salts formed in the blood and tissues after the absorption of acids are rapidly **Excreted** by the kidneys, which however retain as much alkali as possible in the body and thus excrete the salts in an acid form, and perhaps some free acid. Hence there arises in some cases irritation of the kidneys, with albumin and even blood in the urine, which is rendered more acid than usual and causes a sensation of heat and smarting in the bladder and urethra. In the herbivora, the reaction changes from alkaline to strongly acid, and large quantities of the salts of the alkalies appear, while in the carnivora some increase in the sodium and potassium of the urine occurs along with a much greater increase in the ammonia. The total nitrogen is somewhat increased from the large amount of ammonia, but the urea is slightly decreased. Some authors have found an augmented excretion of lime in the urine, while others state that it is less than usual.

Not infrequently fatty degeneration of the heart, liver, muscles or kidney has been observed in corrosive acid poisoning, when the patient survived for a few days, and Fraenkel and Reiche found a form of necrosis of the renal cells in these cases. These changes are not due to free acid in the blood, but their exact cause has not been satisfactorily determined.

The prolonged treatment of animals with acids has been found to be followed by anæmia and loss of flesh and strength, which are probably attributable to the disturbance of the digestion and not to any specific action of the acids.

[1] This is the explanation universally adopted, but Loewy and Munzer have recently shown that some additional factor is involved in the action of acids on herbivora. Spiro states that in some cases the acid is excreted in the urine with greater difficulty in the herbivora than in the carnivora.

Acids applied directly to the living tissues lessen their vitality, and unless there is sufficient alkali present to neutralize them, soon destroy it entirely. In some cases they tend to cause a temporary increase in activity at first; thus the cilia of ciliated epithelium have been found to move more rapidly at first in very dilute acids and then to cease all movement, while muscle seems to be rendered weaker and less irritable at once. As in the case of alkalies, Loeb finds that dilute acid causes muscle to imbibe more water than salt solution does, and Hamburger finds that the red blood cells are increased in size by the addition of small quantities of acid to the blood outside the body. The frog's heart is weakened and dilated by the addition of acid to a perfusing solution, and the muscular wall of the vessels also relaxes. The addition of acids to the blood tends to destroy the red cells and to decompose the hæmoglobin.

Therapeutic Uses. — The acids are used in medicine only to a limited extent, and some of the official preparations might well be dispensed with.

They may be employed to give flavor to draughts in fever and in the thirst of diabetes, the most popular forms being those formed from fruits, such as lemons, limes, or grapes. The taste is due to the sugars, acids, and volatile oils of the fruits, and is modified by the presence of inert colloid substances, such as the pectins. The acids, of which citric, tartaric and malic are the chief, are very important factors in the effect, for if these be neutralized, the fruit juices become insipid, and do not quench thirst so thoroughly. The so-called grape cure, in which very large quantities of grapes are eaten, owes most of its value to the large amount of water taken, although the acids and salts may act as aperients in the same way as the saline cathartics. Instead of the fruit juices, carbonic acid waters may be advised, and occasionally other acids, such as phosphoric or sulphuric, are prescribed to give flavor.

Acids are also used in certain forms of dyspepsia in which the hydrochloric acid of the stomach is deficient. Hydrochloric acid is most frequently prescribed for this purpose, although nitric and nitrohydrochloric acids have also some reputation; the hydrochloric acid is certainly more efficient than these in test-tube experiments on digestion. The forms of dyspepsia thus treated are generally those arising from a sedentary life or in the course of convalescence, and the acids are often prescribed along with the bitter stomachics and are to be taken about half an hour before meals. Irritation of the stomach, or hyperacidity of the gastric juice is of course a contraindication. It is to be remarked that recent researches on the gastric juice have shown that the pepsin is excreted in actual combination with the hydrochloric acid, so that it would seem to be impossible to completely replace the deficiency of acid in the stomach by giving hydrochloric acid by the mouth.

In cases of alkaline poisoning, the acids are the natural treatment; the organic acids should be preferred for this purpose, as they are less liable to cause additional corrosion, and acetic acid in the form of vinegar is more likely to be at hand than any other.

In every case in which acids are prescribed internally, they have to be given largely diluted, as otherwise they irritate the throat and stomach. They are taken through a glass tube, in order to prevent as far as possible their action on the teeth.

Strong acids have some effect in arresting hæmorrhage (styptics) when applied directly to the bleeding point, but are much inferior to some of the metallic salts, such as the iron perchloride.

Externally, the acids are used to some extent as corrosives, strong nitric acid being not infrequently used to destroy small tumors, to cauterize the os uteri and for similar objects. Its action is more easily localized than that of potash and on the other hand is more powerful than the metallic salts such as silver nitrate and zinc chloride. In dilute solution, they are sometimes applied to the skin to lessen excessive local sweating and diluted vinegar is often used to sponge fever patients.

In cases of corrosive **Poisoning** with acids, the first indication is to neutralize the acids as far as possible by giving alkalies. These ought not to be in themselves corrosive, and the best antidote is therefore the insoluble magnesia and magnesium carbonate. Lacking these, the most readily accessible alkali is the best, and the lime may be scraped from walls or ceiling, or chalk, soap, or wood ashes may be given. The walls of the stomach and œsophagus may also be protected by giving milk or white of egg, or the acid may be rendered less corrosive by diluting it with large quantities of water.

Bibliography.

Walter. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., vii., p. 148.
Salkowski. Virchow's Arch., lviii., p. 1.
Jacquet. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxx., p. 311.
Hahn. Virchow's Arch., cxxxvii., p. 597.
Jaworski. Deutsch med. Woch., 1887, Nos. 36–38.
Hübner. Fortschritte der Med., xii., p. 163.
Fraenkel u. Reiche. Virchow's Arch., cxxxi., p. 130.
Wroblewski. Zeitschr. f. phys. Chem., xxi., p. 1.
Runge. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., x., p. 324.
Freudberg. Virchow's Arch., cxxv., p. 566.
Dunlop. Journ. of Phys., xx., p. 82.
Loeb. Pflüger's Arch., lxix., p. 1 ; lxxiii., p. 422.
Winterberg. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xxv., p. 202.
Limbeck. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxxiv., p. 419.
Loewy u. Munzer. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1901, p. 81.
Spiro. Beiträge z. phys. und path. Chemie, i., p. 269.

Compare Alkaline Hydrates and Carbonates, page 553.

For the specific effects of the anions of the acids, see chlorides, phosphates, acetates, oxalates, etc.

Sulphuric Acid.

Sulphuric acid is one of the most corrosive acids when it is applied in concentrated form, and often induces complete charring of the tissues, and a coal-black slough.

Acidum Sulphuricum (U. S. P., B. P.), concentrated sulphuric acid, containing at least 92.5 per cent. by weight of absolute sulphuric acid U. S. P., containing 98 per cent. B. P.

Acidum Sulphuricum Dilutum (U. S. P., B. P.) contains 10 per cent. U. S. P., 13.65 per cent. B. P. of absolute sulphuric acid. 0.6–2 c.c. (10–30 mins.).

Acidum Sulphuricum Aromaticum (U. S. P., B. P.) is an alcoholic solution flavored with ginger and cinnamon. The U. S. P. preparation contains 20 per cent., the B. P. preparation 13.8 per cent. of sulphuric acid. 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.) in a glass of water.

Sulphuric acid and its preparations are not largely used. It is occasionally applied as a caustic, but nitric acid is generally preferred. Internally it is largely used as a prophylactic and remedy in lead poisoning, but it is probably of little value here. (See Lead.) It has also been advised in a number of conditions, such as diarrhœa, cholera, night sweats, but has not proved efficacious in any of them. When prescribed internally the aromatic acid is the best form, but sulphuric acid could be dispensed with entirely in therapeutics.

Nitric Acid.

Nitric acid is equally or even more corrosive than sulphuric acid. It stains the skin and tissues a bright yellow or yellowish-brown, and this serves to distinguish cases of poisoning under the two acids.

Acidum Nitricum (U. S. P., B. P.) contains 68 per cent. of absolute nitric acid (HNO_3) (B. P. 70 per cent.).

Acidum Nitricum Dilutum (U. S. P., B. P.) contains 10 per cent. U. S. P., 17.44 per cent. B. P. by weight of absolute nitric acid. 0.6–2 c.c. (10–30 mins.).

A glass rod dipped in concentrated nitric acid is used as a corrosive. The dilute acid has been advised in dyspepsia, but is generally considered inferior to hydrochloric acid, and has been shown to be much less efficient in artificial digestion. It has also some reputation in certain liver diseases, but is supposed to be inferior to the nitrohydrochloric acid. Nitric acid is occasionally used in some intestinal conditions accompanied by diarrhœa.

Hydrochloric Acid.

Hydrochloric acid is less corrosive than the two preceding acids, and tends to cause blistering on the skin rather than necrosis. It may cause actual loss of substance, however, when applied to the mucous membranes in concentrated form, and stains the mouth a whitish color.

Acidum Hydrochloricum (U. S. P., B. P.), muriatic or hydrochloric acid, contains 31.9 per cent. by weight of the gas HCl. (B. P. 31.79 per cent.)

Acidum Hydrochloricum Dilutum (U. S. P., B. P.) contains 10 per cent. (B. P. 10.58 per cent.) of hydrochloric acid gas. 0.3–2 c.c. (5–30 mins.) in a glass of water.

Concentrated hydrochloric acid is scarcely used in therapeutics. The diluted acid is often prescribed in dyspepsia in which there seems to be a deficiency of the natural acid secretion. In cases of diarrhœa in which excessive putrefaction of the intestinal contents is present, it may be of benefit when prescribed along with other drugs; this action is probably explained by its disinfecting the stomach contents, as the hydrochloric acid of the gastric secretion normally does; for the double sulphates of the urine certainly diminish under its use in many cases. It is said that hydrochloric acid prevents the lactic fermentation in 1 : 1,000 dilution, and that in addition to its action on the digestive ferment it increases the peristalsis of the stomach.

Bibliography.

Cohn. Zts. f. phys. Chem., xiv., p. 74.
Hirschfeld. Pflüger's Arch., xlvii., p. 510.
Kast. Maly's Jahresbericht, 1889, xix., p. 271.
Schuele. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxix., p. 67.
Lehmann. Arch. f. Hygiene, v., p. 1.

Nitrohydrochloric Acid.

Nitrohydrochloric acid is formed by mixing hydrochloric and nitric acid, and contains not only the original acids, but a number of decomposition products, such as chlorine, nitroxychloride (NOCl) and nitrous acid. The

strong acid (aqua regia) is the most powerful solvent and oxidizing agent known, dissolving such refractory metals as platinum and gold.

Acidum Nitrohydrochloricum (U. S. P.), nitromuriatic acid, aqua regia, is formed by mixing 180 parts of nitric acid with 820 parts of hydrochloric acid.

Acidum Nitrohydrochloricum Dilutum (U. S. P.) is formed by mixing 40 c.c. of nitric acid with 180 of hydrochloric and diluting the whole to one litre. 0.5–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Acidum Nitrohydrochloricum Dilutum (B. P.) is formed by mixing 6 parts of nitric acid and 8 parts of hydrochloric acid with 50 of distilled water. 5–20 mins.

The diluted acid alone is used in therapeutics, and does not seem so efficient in ordinary dyspepsia as the dilute hydrochloric acid, but has some reputation in the treatment of liver diseases and jaundice, though no explanation of its action in these conditions has been offered. The acids cannot act as such except in the alimentary canal, but in the nitrohydrochloric acid other constituents, such as chlorine, are present, and it is conceivable that some of these may have a specific effect on the liver; further proof would seem to be required, however, that the treatment is really of value. The acid is ordinarily given by the mouth, but some authorities advise that it be applied in the form of a foot-bath or of an ordinary bath, and others apply it in a compress over the liver. These external applications are stated to be even more efficacious in hepatitis than the internal administration, and this serves only to strengthen the doubt of the value of the remedy, for it is contrary to all experience that such bodies should be absorbed in any quantity from the skin, and their local action as cutaneous irritants does not differ from that of other drugs.

Phosphoric Acid.

Phosphoric acid is much less corrosive and irritant than the other mineral acids, but in large, concentrated doses may cause gastro-enteritis.

Acidum Phosphoricum (U. S. P.) contains 85 per cent., *Acidum Phosphoricum Concentratum* (B. P.), 66.3 per cent. of absolute phosphoric acid (H_3PO_4).

Acidum Phosphoricum Dilutum (U. S. P., B. P.) contains 10 per cent., U. S. P., and 13.8 per cent., B. P., of phosphoric acid. 0.3–1.3 c.c. (5–20 mins.).

Phosphoric acid has been used to some extent to form cooling draughts in fever. It has also been prescribed in various cachectic conditions on the theory that these were due to a deficiency of phosphates in the food and tissues; but it has never been shown to be of any benefit, and experiments have proved that the animal tissues are unable to build up phosphorus compounds from the inorganic phosphates.

Sulphurous Acid.

Sulphurous acid differs from the preceding members of the group in its powerful reducing action, through which it becomes oxidized to sulphuric acid, and which renders it strongly poisonous to protoplasm in general, quite apart from its acidity. Sulphurous acid anhydride is accordingly used to a considerable extent to disinfect rooms and furniture after infectious diseases; for this purpose sulphur is burned in the room, which ought to be rendered as air-tight as possible, and the fumes are allowed to act for several hours before the room is ventilated. The value of this method of disinfection has been called in question, but there is no doubt that sulphurous acid gas is fairly germicidal when it is applied along with moisture. It is not capable of such a wide application as formaline, because sulphurous acid bleaches many coloring matters, and the procedure is open to the objection that it may lend a

sense of security which is quite unwarranted, and may lead to the neglect of other measures. The disinfection to be of any value must be thoroughly carried out, and can only be applied to inanimate objects, as the fumes are fatal to the higher animals, even when much less concentrated than are necessary to destroy bacteria. In order to be of service, at least one volume of SO_2 ought to be present in each hundred volumes of air, and even this concentration is insufficient to destroy the spores of bacteria. Novy [1] recommends 3–6 pounds of sulphur to be burned for each 1,000 cubic feet of space; the walls and floor should be sprayed with water, and the room must be kept perfectly closed for at least 20 hours.

The chief symptoms of poisoning with sulphurous acid are those of irritation of the mucous membranes, and if the solution be swallowed these may not differ from those of the other acids. Sulphurous acid penetrates the tissues more rapidly than most of the others owing to its gaseous form, and does not cause actual loss of substance as sulphuric acid does.

In poisoning from the inhalation of the anhydride on the other hand, the symptoms arise chiefly from the respiratory tract. Even in five parts in 10,000 it acts as an irritant, causing sneezing, coughing and lachrymation, and in somewhat greater concentration it becomes entirely irrespirable; still smaller quantities in the air cause bronchial irritation and catarrh, when inhaled for some time. Sulphurous acid is neutralized and oxidized for the most part to sulphates in the tissues, or probably partly in the course of absorption.

The solution of sulphurous acid of the pharmacopœia is used to a limited extent as an antiseptic solution in skin diseases. It is more irritant to the broken skin than many other equally powerful antiseptics.

Acidum Sulphurosum, U. S. P.—A solution of not less than 6.4 per cent. by weight of sulphurous acid gas (SO_2) in water. B. P., a solution containing 6.4 per cent. of hydrogen sulphite (H_2SO_3) corresponding to 5 per cent. by weight of sulphurous anhydride (SO_2).

Hydrofluoric Acid is strongly corrosive and prevents the growth of bacteria in solutions of one per mille. After absorption it induces the specific fluoride action (see page 525).

Organic Acids of the Fatty Series.

The organic acids have a much less marked local action than the inorganic, causing little or no corrosion unless when applied to mucous surfaces in very concentrated form. They are absorbed as salts of the alkalies, but do not as a general rule reduce the alkalinity of the blood or render the urine more acid, because they are oxidized to carbonates in the tissues. Oxalic acid is the chief exception to this rule, but the specific action of the oxalates is powerful enough to conceal the acid action to a great extent.

Acetic Acid applied in concentrated solution to the skin causes irritation and congestion and eventually blistering, but does not induce necrosis except of the most superficial layers. The congestion is often followed by marked pallor instead of by blistering; and this has been explained by contraction of the vessels, but may be due to a precipitation of the proteids of the skin. In the mouth and stomach it acts as an irritant, causing vomiting, great pain, collapse and even death; the epithelium is found thickened

[1] *Novy and Waite.* Medical News, lxxii., p. 641.

and occasionally contains hæmorrhages. Dilute acetic acid (vinegar) has little effect apart from its acid taste, and is used largely as a flavoring agent and condiment. The prolonged use of large quantities may however give rise to gastric irritation and to loss of appetite and weight.

Acidum Aceticum Glaciale (U. S. P., B. P.) ($HC_2H_3O_2$) is almost absolute acetic acid (99 per cent.), and becomes crystalline at a temperature somewhat below 15° C. (60° F.).

Acidum Aceticum (U. S. P., B. P.) contains 36 per cent. of absolute acetic acid U. S. P., 33 per cent. B. P.

Acidum Aceticum Dilutum contains 6 per cent. of absolute acetic acid U. S. P., 4.27 per cent. B. P. Dilute acetic acid is used to form the official aceta except the Acetum Cantharidis, B. P., 2–8 c.c. ($\frac{1}{2}$–2 fl. drs.).

Acetic acid is sometimes applied to the skin as a slight local irritant in contusions, and in very dilute solutions to cool the surface and to prevent excessive local perspiration. It has been used as a styptic in slight hæmorrhage, and may be inhaled for this purpose in epistaxis. Vinegar is also inhaled in cases of fainting, in order to induce a reflex stimulation of the vaso-motor centre through irritation of the nostrils. In cases of poisoning with alkalies vinegar is often the most convenient acid and in addition is less likely to do harm than the inorganic acids.

Acetic acid itself is not used as a corrosive, but one of its derivatives, trichloracetic acid (CCl_3COOH), has been employed with good results.

Formic Acid resembles acetic acid in most points, except that it is more volatile and more irritant, that less of it is oxidized in the tissues, and that given in large quantities it is said to induce nephritis. It is not used in therapeutics.

The other acids of the acetic acid series resemble acetic acid in their effects, but seem to become less irritant as they become more complex and less easily dissociated.

Lactic Acid resembles acetic acid in its behavior in the organism (see page 554). It was suggested at one time that sleep following muscular exertion was due to the lactic acid formed in the muscles, and this acid was therefore recommended as a hypnotic, but has been shown to be of no value for this purpose. Rickets, rheumatism and other diseases were also at one time attributed to the excessive formation of lactic acid in the tissues, but this theory is only of historical interest. Under the impression that lactic acid was the normal acid of the gastric digestion, it was at one time used in dyspepsia.

Acidum Lacticum (U. S. P., B. P.) is obtained by the fermentation of milk sugar or grape sugar, and contains 75 per cent. of absolute lactic acid ($HC_3H_5O_3$). It is a colorless liquid of strong acid taste.

Lactic acid has been used recently as a caustic application to malignant ulcers and diphtheritic membranes.

Oxalic Acid is frequently used as a poison by suicides, either as such or as the acid potassium salt (salt of sorrel or essential salt of lemons). Poisoning has repeatedly occurred from oxalic acid having been mistaken for magnesium sulphate, which it resembles in appearance. The symptoms are those of acid poisoning, along with the specific effects of the oxalates (see page 557). Oxalic acid is not used in therapeutics, although it has been said to be beneficial in amenorrhœa.

Tartaric Acid induces symptoms of gastric irritation when taken in large doses, and has been the cause of fatal poisoning in a few cases. It is slowly absorbed, and some of it escapes combustion in the tissues and is excreted in the urine in the form of the acid tartrate. (See Tartrates, page 539.)

Acidum Tartaricum (U. S. P., B. P.) ($H_2C_4H_4O_6$), colorless crystals very soluble in water. 0.3–1.3 G. (5–20 grs.).

Tartaric acid is prescribed with the carbonates and bicarbonates to form effervescent draughts; the tartaric acid ought to be slightly in excess in order to lend its pleasant acid taste, the usual proportion being about eight

parts of acid to seven parts of sodium bicarbonate. These effervescent mixtures formed with the tartrates act as saline cathartics in large doses (see page 541). Tartaric acid may be prescribed in dilute solution with sugar and a drop of volatile oil as a lemonade, which is cheaper than that formed with citric acid.

Citric Acid resembles tartaric acid in its action, but appears less irritant, and no case of serious poisoning is recorded from its use. It is slowly absorbed like tartaric, but seems to be almost entirely oxidized in the tissues.

Acidum Citricum (U. S. P., B. P.) ($H_3C_6H_5O_7 + H_2O$) resembles tartaric acid in its properties for the most part. 0.3–1.3 G. (5–20 grs.).

Syrupus Acidi Citrici (U. S. P.) is ordinary syrup to which one per cent. of citric acid and spirit of lemon have been added, and is used only as a flavor.

Citric acid is used to form lemonades and effervescent draughts. For lemonade 2–4 parts of citric acid may be dissolved in 1,000 parts of water, some sugar and a few drops of volatile oil being added. For effervescent solutions about 8 parts of the acid may be prescribed along with 7 parts of bicarbonate of soda, with directions to dissolve the two powders separately, mix the solutions and drink while effervescing. In large quantities this mixture acts as a saline cathartic; in smaller quantities it may be used to increase the alkalinity of the blood, and to render the urine less acid. (See pages 541 and 555.)

Lime juice and lemon juice, which contain considerable amounts of free citric acid, are generally preferred to the pure acid for lemonades to quench the thirst. Lime juice has been found of great benefit as a prophylactic in the treatment of scurvy, but this is not due to the citric acid, but to some unknown property of the fruit juices. Citric acid has been used in rheumatic affections, without any marked improvement being elicited, according to the best observers.

XIX. CALCIUM.

The salts of lime are present in very large amount in the tissues of animals, and considerable interest attaches to their absorption, excretion and general action. They form the great mass of the inorganic constituents of the bones and teeth of the vertebrates and of the shells of the invertebrates. In addition it has been shown of recent years that they are present to a considerable amount in the soft tissues and are, in fact, essential to many forms of living matter, and to the activity of certain ferments.

Calcium and the other alkaline earths differ from the alkalies in possessing comparatively few very soluble salts, and they seldom effect such changes in the physical properties of the fluids of the body as have been described under salt-action and chloride of sodium. Even the soluble salts penetrate with greater difficulty into the various tissues of the body, which seem to have much less affinity for them than for the salts of the alkalies. The general effect of the calcium ion will first be described, and the individual salts will then be taken up in turn.

Action. — The soluble lime salts are **Absorbed** with great difficulty from the stomach and intestine, and retard considerably the absorption of fluid. They would presumably have a cathartic action were they not thrown out of solution very readily by the alkaline fluids. In addition calcium forms insoluble salts with all of the cathartic acid ions, so that no such double effect can be obtained as is seen from magnesium sulphate. (See Saline Cathartics, page 535.) The great pro-

portion of the lime taken either in the food or as a remedy, unquestionably leaves the body in the stools entirely unabsorbed, while a small quantity of it is taken up from the alimentary canal whether the lime be administered in a soluble or in an insoluble form. This small quantity circulates in the blood, probably in combination with proteids, and is slowly excreted, unless there is a deficiency in the supply of lime, when it may be utilized by the tissues. When larger quantities are thrown into the blood by intravenous or hypodermic injection, the calcium of the blood remains abnormally high for some time, but all the calcium thus injected is not in the circulation throughout its stay in the body. Some of it is temporarily deposited in some unknown organ, and is gradually withdrawn and excreted after the first excess is eliminated.

The lime is **Excreted** in part in the urine, but for the most part through the epithelium of the large intestine. Abel and Muirhead have shown that some of the calcium ingested in the form of the hydrate is excreted in the urine as calcium carbamate ($Ca(CO_2NH_2)_2$) and probably other salts may be eliminated in part at any rate in this form. The carbamate is a very unstable salt, and breaks up in the urine, freeing carbonic acid and ammonia, while the calcium forms the carbonate of lime; the urine is often alkaline therefore, and smells strongly of ammonia. Calcium lessens the phosphates of the urine, which may be explained by its forming insoluble phosphates in the bowel, and thus preventing the absorption of the phosphates of the food. The small quantity of calcium absorbed from the alimentary canal has not been shown to have any action except in replacing the calcium compounds of the tissues. Except under special circumstances, the calcium of the food is always sufficient to supply the needs of the organism, so that lime salts given as remedies have after absorption no specific action due to the calcium, but owe their activity to the anion exclusively. Thus, calcium bromide may have some effect if absorbed, but this effect is due to the bromide ion, and would be the same if an equal proportion of sodium bromide were taken up by the blood. In the same way calcium hydrate when absorbed owes its activity to its alkalinity (hydroxyl ion) and not to the calcium, and apart from the method of its excretion, has the same effect in the tissues as an equivalent amount of sodium hydrate.

Soluble calcium salts injected directly into the blood vessels seem to be poisonous, though further study of their action is required. They first accelerate and strengthen the heart, and in large quantities bring it to a standstill, and also have a marked effect in contracting the vessels when perfused through them. They depress the central nervous system, causing narcosis and sleep, during which some authors state that the reflexes remain unaffected, while others found them much depressed. These effects are absent when the salts are taken up from the bowel, mainly no doubt owing to their slow absorption, partly perhaps to their forming albuminous compounds in their passage into the tissues.

Lime Starvation. — Excess of calcium in the organism is therefore little to be apprehended from the ordinary methods of administration,

and lime salts are not used in therapeutics to induce changes in the organism through their presence in excess in the blood, like other remedies such as morphine or strychnine. Another question arises, however, namely whether the organism may not be rendered abnormal by a deficiency in the supply of lime, and whether this deficiency may be remedied by the administration of calcium salts.

The effects of a deficiency of lime in the food have been the subject of several very careful investigations, and while the adult animal does not seem to suffer greatly from a very considerable reduction of the calcium of the food, young growing animals have at the hands of some investigators developed marked abnormalities, resembling closely those observed in rickets and osteomalacia in the human subject. In lime starvation, as in rickets, there is a lessened deposit of lime in the bones, which retain their cartilaginous consistency and show other deviations from the normal condition; in rickets the bones alone are involved, while in animals deprived of calcium the soft tissues also show a lessened content of lime salts. Deficiency of the lime in the food naturally affects young animals more than adults, because the former require much more calcium to build up the growing skeleton.

The effects of the withdrawal of lime have been studied in some **Isolated Organs.** Thus Ringer compared the behavior of the frog's heart when perfused with solutions of the salts of the alkalies with that of one perfused with the same solutions to which minute traces of lime were added, and found that the efficiency of the heart was much increased and that it survived very much longer under the latter conditions; Locke has recently shown that a similar relation exists between the mammalian heart and the inorganic elements of serum. Lime salts exercise a similar effect in voluntary muscle, which survives much longer when perfused with salt solution containing calcium than when sodium chloride solutions alone are used. Both the heart and skeletal muscle eventually cease to contract on electrical stimulation when perfused with physiological salt solution, but recover again when traces of lime salts are added to it. In the same way, the irritability of the frog's nerve persists much longer in salt solution containing a lime salt than in unmixed salt solution, and may be restored by the addition of lime, when it has disappeared after the prolonged action of the 0.6 per cent. chloride of sodium solution. Ciliated epithelium continues to wave rhythmically much longer in lime solution than in distilled water, in which it swells up and rapidly loses its activity. This probably explains the observation that some fish die very soon in distilled water but survive in water in which traces of lime are present. Lime is also necessary for the development of various ova; for instance, frog spawn kept in water devoid of lime salts fails to develop, or develops abnormally.

Lime salts are also indispensable in some processes which are not dependent on the presence of living cells. Thus rennet does not coagulate milk except when a lime salt is present, and the **Coagulation of the Blood** may be prevented by precipitating its calcium salts in the form

of oxalates. Hammersten has recently shown that the lime salts are not necessary to the formation of fibrin, for this occurs in oxalate solutions if fibrin-ferment be added to fibrinogen. But the fibrin-ferment is not formed except in the presence of calcium salts, and when oxalates are added to the blood before this ferment is developed, they prevent its formation and hinder clotting. When lime salts are added, the ferment is liberated and coagulation occurs at once. In other words, lime is not necessary for the activity of the fibrin-ferment, but for its development from the prothrombin or zymogen, in which it exists in the circulating blood.

Other ferments act in the absence of available lime salts. Thus pepsin digests when instead of hydrochloric, oxalic acid is added to it, but it is unknown whether pepsin is formed from pepsinogen in the absence of lime.

The higher organisms, both animals and plants, have thus been shown to require lime for some of their functions, and it is probably necessary for many others in which its importance has not yet been recognized. The lowest forms of life, however, including the bacteria and some of the moulds, seem to be able to live without it. In order to induce the effects of lime starvation, it is not always necessary to withdraw lime from the food, for they may be caused by the presence of any substance which renders calcium entirely insoluble. Thus, oxalate solutions added to the blood or milk, or to the nutrient fluid for perfusion of the heart, have the same effects as the withdrawal of lime. Food containing large quantities of oxalate salts has in some cases induced symptoms in animals resembling those of lime starvation, and it seems possible that some of the symptoms of fluoride action are also explicable from their precipitating the lime salts of the food and of the blood.

In several instances a curious relationship has been shown to exist between the calcium and potassium salts. Thus when a frog's heart is perfused with sodium chloride solution containing a trace of calcium, the movements are not entirely normal, the contraction being somewhat prolonged and the relaxation much retarded. If a trace of potassium chloride is added, however, the contraction becomes normal in character. On the other hand the effect of potassium on the frog's heart is antagonized by the addition of lime. The same holds true for voluntary muscle, the salts of calcium tending to neutralize the effects of potassium, and *vice versa*, and in several other relations an antagonism has been observed between these two metals. (See Ringer.)

Another question that has excited much interest recently is the relation between sodium and calcium. It has already been noted that the frog's heart perfused with sodium chloride solution soon ceases to beat, but can be restored by the addition of calcium and potassium to the circulating medium. The ordinary explanation (Ringer, Howell) is that the calcium and potassium are necessary to the activity of the heart and that when pure salt solution is perfused, these elements diffuse into it and are lost from the heart muscle; this diffusion is prevented if calcium and potassium be contained in the solution, and the heart, retaining the salts essential to its activity, continues to beat. Another explanation has been offered by Loeb, who supposes that the lime and potassium are not directly essential, but that they neutralize

the poisonous effects of sodium. This poisonous action of sodium has not been generally recognized, but is well shown by the behavior of a small fish (fundulus) living in salt water, which can be transferred to distilled water without injury, thus showing that neither sodium nor calcium is necessary in its environment. But if it be put in sodium chloride solution of the same strength as sea water it dies, so that sodium is poisonous to it unless when antagonized by the other constituents of sea water; the essential elements are calcium and potassium, for when these are added to the injurious sodium solution, the fish lives as well as in sea water. This series of experiments certainly forms a strong support for Loeb's theory that calcium is not directly essential to rhythmic movement, but only neutralizes the effects of sodium. At the same time further investigation is required to overcome certain difficulties in the way of the acceptance of this antagonistic action of calcium and sodium as the explanation of the necessity of calcium to the living organism.

Therapeutic Uses. — Calcium salts are used in medicine for a number of different purposes; thus the alkaline preparations may be prescribed to lessen the acidity of the stomach, and the oxide may be employed as a caustic. But these owe their use, not to the calcium ion, but to the other part of the molecule — the anion. As a matter of fact, calcium has no important effects of its own and is not prescribed for any action which it might have on the living tissues. The question has been raised, however, whether calcium may not be given therapeutically to supply a deficiency of lime in the body. The particular conditions which have been treated on this theory are rickets and osteomalacia, in both of which there is unquestionably too little lime in the bones, and the treatment has been thought to be rational, because symptoms similar to those of rickets have been induced in young animals whose food contained too small a proportion of lime. In the case of rickets and osteomalacia, however, there is no reason to suppose that the food is deficient in calcium; in fact, children are said to be more liable to rickets when fed on cows' milk than when nursed by the mother, although the milk of the cow contains more lime. On the other hand, patients suffering from rickets absorb lime and excrete it again in exactly the same way as normal persons, and although their bones contain unusually small amounts of lime, the other tissues contain rather more, or, at any rate, not less than normal. Rickets is not due to a lack of lime in the food, therefore, nor in fact in the tissues generally, but to some abnormal condition which prevents the lime salts from being deposited in the bones, although they are present in abundance in the blood. In cases of lime starvation similar symptoms may appear, but here the cause is the want of lime, which is not presented in sufficient quantities, although the bone-forming cells are ready to deposit it. In this case the other tissues are also deficient in calcium as well as the bones. From these considerations it follows that lime salts are not likely to be of benefit in rickets (and the same holds true for osteomalacia), unless when it is due to lime starvation, a condition which is unlikely to arise in the human subject. Experience has demonstrated also that the lime salts are quite incapable of improving either osteomalacia or rickets.

It has also been proposed to treat with lime cases in which the blood seemed less capable of clotting than normally — particularly hæmophilia and aneurism, and some improvement is said to have occurred in a few instances. Here again, however, it would seem to be very improbable that the absence of coagulation is due to deficiency in the lime salts, for much more is taken in the food than is sufficient for the organism, and the pharmacopœial salts are not more easily absorbed than the combinations present in food.[1]

Preparations.

Calcii Chloridum (U. S. P., B. P.) ($CaCl_2$), a white salt with a sharp, saline taste, very deliquescent and soluble in water. 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs).

Calcium chloride is the salt which gives the least complicated calcium action, and is consequently seldom used, because, as has been explained, the calcium ion is of comparatively little service in therapeutics. It has a strong attraction for water and is therefore more irritant than the other chlorides of the alkalies and alkaline earths, and ought to be prescribed only in dilute solution. It is absorbed with great difficulty, and has been suggested in the treatment of some forms of dyspepsia.

Calx (U. S. P., B. P.) (CaO), unslaked lime, is a corrosive and disinfectant, and is changed at once to the hydrate in the presence of water. It differs from the caustic alkalies in the insolubility of its hydrate, which therefore fails to penetrate deeply and does not spread so widely as potassium and sodium hydrates. It is seldom employed alone as a corrosive, but mixed with potassium hydrate as Vienna paste (*Potassa cum Calce*, U. S. P.) has had some popularity.

It is used as a disinfectant where large quantities of organic matter have to be rendered harmless, as in epidemics, on battle fields and in the dejections of large hospitals. It ought to be mixed with the matter to be disinfected, as thoroughly as possible. Lime possesses the advantage over other disinfectants of being cheap and easily procurable in large quantities.

Calcii Hydras (B. P.), slaked lime ($Ca(HO)_2$), may also be used as a disinfectant.

Liquor Calcis (U. S. P., B. P.), lime water, is a saturated solution of calcium hydrate or slaked lime and contains about 0.17 G. in 100 c.c. (½ gr. in 1 oz. B. P.). It is a clear fluid with a saline and feebly caustic taste. 30–100 c.c. (1–4 fl. oz.).

Syrupus Calcis (U. S. P.), Liquor Calcis Saccharatus (B. P.), syrup of lime, contains calcium hydrate kept in solution in water by sugar, with which it is probably combined chemically. The amount of lime contained varies greatly, but is much larger than in lime water. The B. P. preparation is said to contain nearly 2 per cent. by weight, or 8 grs. to the oz. 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.).

Linimentum Calcis (U. S. P., B. P.), lime liniment, or Carron oil, contains equal parts of lime water and olive or linseed oil.

These preparations owe their activity chiefly to their alkalinity and not to the calcium, but differ from the hydrates of the alkalies in their insolubility and in their slow absorption. Lime water and the syrup are slightly caustic, more especially the latter, and tend to neutralize

[1] Another treatment of aneurism and hæmorrhage recently introduced is the administration of gelatine by the mouth or hypodermically (100 c.c. of a 1 per cent. solution). This is based upon a series of experiments which seemed to indicate that the coagulation of the blood is accelerated by gelatine; but more accurate investigations have shown that gelatine has no influence on the rate of coagulation, and no satisfactory evidence of improvement has been brought forward by clinicians.

the gastric juice. They have an astringent effect in the intestine which has not yet been explained, but is probably due to their forming an insoluble compound with the surface proteids, in the same way as tannic acid, or to their being deposited as the carbonate or phosphate and thus protecting the epithelium from irritation. Lime water is used in some dyspeptic conditions, especially in vomiting. It is often added to milk in intestinal irritation in children and in typhoid fever, as it is found that milk thus treated coagulates in finer particles than when given alone, and is better digested and less liable to disturb the intestine. Lime water or syrup of lime is also used as an intestinal astringent in diarrhœa, especially in children. As an antacid in the stomach, lime is inferior to magnesia and other alkalies, because it tends to delay the evacuation of the contents. Lime water has been used in rickets, which seems singularly irrational, for cows' milk contains a somewhat higher percentage of lime. It has also been sprayed against the false membrane of diphtheria, which it is said to dissolve. Lime water is not applicable in cases of acid poisoning, as it contains much too little of the base to be serviceable, but the syrup may be used, or lime shaken up with water (milk of lime). The treatment with lime is specially indicated in cases of oxalate poisoning.

Lime water has been used externally as a protective, mildly astringent application to ulcers, and the lime liniment has been largely used in the treatment of burns. It derives its name of Carron oil from having been used for this purpose in the iron works at Carron.

Calcii Carbonas Præcipitatus (U. S. P., B. P.), precipitated chalk ($CaCO_3$). 1–4 G. (15–60 grs.).

Creta Præparata (U. S. P., B. P.), prepared chalk, chalk purified by washing and suspension in water ($CaCO_3$). 1–4 G. (15–60 grs.).

Pulvis Cretæ Compositus (U. S. P.), a mixture of prepared chalk, sugar and acacia. 5–10 G. (1–2 drs.).

Pulvis Cretæ Aromaticus (B. P.), aromatic chalk powder, contains chalk along with sugar and a number of carminatives belonging to the group of volatile oils. 10–60 grs.

Pulvis Cretæ Aromaticus Cum Opio (B. P.) is a mixture of 39 parts of the aromatic powder with one of opium, and therefore contains $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. of opium. 10–40 grs.

Mistura Cretæ (U. S. P.), chalk mixture, is chalk suspended in water by means of gums. 15–30 c.c. ($\frac{1}{2}$–1 fl. oz.).

Trochisci Cretæ (U. S. P.), chalk lozenges, flavored with spirit of nutmeg.

The preparations of the carbonate of lime are used as antacids in hyperacidity of the stomach, especially when this is combined with a tendency to diarrhœa. The mixture or the aromatic powder B. P., is the form generally used, and may be prescribed with opium or with other astringents. Chalk has also been used in rickets.

Externally, prepared chalk is used as a powder to protect irritated parts of the skin and occasionally in ulceration; it is the chief ingredient in most tooth powders. In older treatises on therapeutics, great virtues are ascribed to various natural objects which are composed for the main part of chalk or other salts of lime, and among

which burned bones, coral, coralline, and cuttlefish bone may be mentioned.

Calcii Phosphas Præcipitatus (U. S. P.), *Calcii Phosphas* (B. P.) ($Ca_3(PO_4)_2$), a white insoluble powder. 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Syrupus Calcii Lactophosphatis (U. S. P., B. P.), a preparation in which a soluble double salt of lime is contained in solution. 2–4 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

A glycerophosphate of calcium has also been advised recently. These phosphate preparations have been used in rickets and osteomalacia, and in phthisis and other tubercular diseases, but the best authorities are agreed that lime salts are of no value in rickets and osteomalacia (see page 573), and experience with them in tubercular conditions is not more encouraging.

Calcii Bromidum (U. S. P.) ($CaBr_2$) has been used as a substitute for the more commonly used bromide of potassium, and is administered in the same dose. It is more slowly absorbed and therefore inferior to the alkaline bromides, and is entirely superfluous.

Calcii Sulphas Exsiccatus (U. S. P.). — Dried calcium sulphate or dried gypsum contains 95 per cent. of sulphate of calcium ($CaSO_4$) and 5 per cent. of water. It is used exclusively to form immovable bandages in surgery (plaster of Paris bandages).

Bibliography.

See Oxalates and Sodium Chloride.
Jankau. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxix., p. 237.
Raudnitz. Ibid., xxxi., p. 343.
Abel u. Muirhead. Ibid., xxxi., p. 15.
Radel. Ibid., xxxiii., pp. 79, 90.
Rey. Ibid., xxxv., p. 295. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1895, p. 569.
Brubacher. Zts. f. Biol., N. F., ix., p. 516.
F. Voit. Ibid., xi., p. 325.
Weiske. Ibid., xiii., p. 421.
Ringer. Journ. of Physiol., iii.–xvi.
Howell (and pupils). Ibid., xiv., p. 198; xvi., p. 476. Amer. Journ. of Phys., v., p. 338; vi., p. 181.
Loeb, Lingle, Lillie, Moore. Amer. Journ. of Phys., iv., p. 265; v., pp. 56, 87, 362; vi., p. 411.
Loew. Ein natürliches System der Giftwirkungen, 1893, p. 33.
Kitasato. Zts. f. Hygiene, iii., p. 404.
Pfuhl. Ibid., vi., p. 97.
Binet. Comptes rendus d. l'Acad. de Science, cxv., p. 251.
Bayer. Med. News, 1886, ii., p. 253.
Vierordt. Nothnagel's Specielle Pathologie und Therapie, vii.
Hammarsten. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xxii., p. 333.
Strauss. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxxi., p. 493.
Miwa u. Stoeltzner. Ziegler's Beiträge zu Path., xxiv., p. 578.

XX. BARIUM AND STRONTIUM.

Barium is the most poisonous of the three common alkaline earths, but resembles the others in penetrating with difficulty into the epithelium of the alimentary canal, and is therefore absorbed very slowly. It has a characteristic action on many forms of muscular tissue, resembling closely that of veratrine, and the contraction of the frog's muscle under barium is thus stronger than normally, and is very greatly prolonged. The frog's heart beats more strongly, but more slowly from a similar action on the muscle fibres, and the walls of the stomach and intestine are thrown into violent contraction from the action of the metal on the unstriated muscle fibre. There is some question as to whether the central nervous system is acted on in the frog, but in the mammal barium salts injected intravenously cause violent tonic and clonic spasms, from their stimulating the spinal cord and medulla oblongata. The action on the alimentary canal induces vomiting and purging with very active peristalsis. The heart is accelerated, and the

blood-pressure is enormously increased at first, and then undergoes slow undulations for some time. The increased tension may be due to the cardiac action in part, but is chiefly to be ascribed to a very marked contraction of the muscular walls of the vessels. The frog's heart eventually assumes an irregular peristaltic form of contraction and ceases in systole, as in digitalis poisoning, and the changes in the mammalian heart also resemble those caused by this series. Barium in sufficient quantities finally paralyzes the central nervous system. In fatal poisoning in animals, hæmorrhages have been found in the stomach, intestine, kidney and other organs.

Barium is quite incapable of replacing calcium in its relations to living matter, and accordingly chloride of sodium solutions to which barium chloride has been added do not tend to keep the frog's heart active as do those containing lime. Some authors hold that barium can replace calcium to an imperfect degree in the coagulation of the blood, but this is denied by others. Potassium salts tend to neutralize the effect of barium on the heart and muscles, the relation resembling that which they bear to lime.

Barium is absorbed slowly from the intestine, and is found to be stored in the bones to some extent, and to be excreted in the urine and probably in the bowel.

It has been suggested as a treatment for different forms of tremor, but has seldom been used in practical therapeutics. The dioxide of barium of the U. S. P. is used exclusively to form peroxide of hydrogen.

Bibliography.

Boehm. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iii., p. 216.
Neumann. Pflüger's Arch., xxxvi., p. 576.
Brunton and Cash. Phil. Trans. of Roy. Soc., 1884, i., p. 223.
Binet. Comptes rend. d. l'Acad., cxv., p. 251.
Sommer. Inaug. Diss., Würzburg, 1890.
See also Bibliography of Calcium, Potassium, Rubidium and Cæsium.

Strontium is a comparatively inert substance even when injected directly into the blood, resembling calcium in its action in the body as far as is known, but being even less poisonous. It contracts the muscles somewhat, tends to lessen the dilation of the heart, and prolongs the contraction of muscle, though only to a slight extent. It is absorbed very slowly from the intestine like the other alkaline earths, and is deposited in small quantities in the bones of growing animals, especially when there is a deficiency of lime in the food. It is excreted in small quantities by the urine, and probably by the bowel. Strontium salts have been used to a limited extent in therapeutics, not for the effect of the strontium ion, but for the bromide, iodide or salicylate effects of its salts. In view of the fact that the strontium salts are more slowly absorbed than the corresponding ones of sodium and potassium, there would seem to be good grounds for abandoning their use.

Preparations.

U. S. P. — *Strontii Bromidum* ($SrBr_2 + 6H_2O$), 1–4 G. (30–60 grs.).
Strontii Iodidum ($SrI_2 + 6H_2O$), 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).
Strontii Lactas ($Sr(C_3H_5O_3)_2 + 3H_2O$), 1–2 G. (15–30 grs.).

Bibliography.

See Calcium, Barium.
Wood. Am. Jour. of Physiol., i., p. 83.

XXI. SULPHIDES AND SULPHUR.

The ordinary sulphides of the alkalies are of little importance in themselves, as they are seldom used in therapeutics. The effect of

hydrosulphuric acid, however, apart from its local irritant action, is due to the sulphide which it forms in the blood, and the study of this powerful poison therefore involves a preliminary examination of the effects of the sulphides. Again, sulphur is in itself inert, but is changed to sulphides and hydrosulphuric acid in the alimentary canal, and the effects induced by its administration are due to these bodies, and not to the original element.

Action. — The sulphides are very weak salts, for even carbonic acid is capable of liberating hydrosulphuric acid, and wherever they come in contact with it in quantity, there is a tendency to form free acid, which acts as a powerful local irritant; it is not impossible that the sulphides have an irritant effect of themselves in addition to that of the hydrosulphuric acid. The sulphides accordingly act as irritants in the stomach and bowel, and in the latter induce increased peristalsis and purgation. When injected subcutaneously in the frog, sodium sulphide causes a narcotic condition from depression of the central nervous system, and in sufficient quantities weakens the skeletal muscle and the heart, which continues to beat after complete paralysis has been obtained, but eventually ceases in diastole. Harnack has recently shown that after the narcosis has lasted for some time, a new condition follows, if only small quantities have been given, and especially if the frog is healthy and is kept cool. This consists in an enormous increase in the reflex irritability, which induces convulsions resembling those of strychnine poisoning in their general character, but differing from them in lasting continuously for weeks or even months at a time. The animal lies in an extended and tense condition throughout, and passes into complete opisthotonos on being touched.

Sulphides injected intravenously in mammals induce violent convulsions, which seem to be of cerebral origin, for they do not occur in the hind limbs when the spinal cord is cut. The respiration is at first accelerated and later dyspnœic and finally ceases, this along with the paralysis of the vaso-motor centre being the cause of death. The heart does not seem to be seriously affected except indirectly through the failure of the respiration and the fall of the blood-pressure.

Sulphide solutions added to drawn blood reduce the oxyhæmoglobin at once, and give the blood a dark venous color. At the same time a compound of sulphide and hæmoglobin is formed, the chemistry of which is still very obscure, but which would seem to be more nearly related to methæmoglobin than to hæmoglobin. It is known as sulpho-hæmoglobin or as sulpho-methæmoglobin, and gives the blood a greenish color when a thin layer is examined, while a thicker layer is dark red-brown. This sulpho-hæmoglobin possesses a characteristic spectrum, marked by a dark line in the red to the left of the D line. Larger quantities give an olive-green color to the blood, and the spectrum of sulpho-hæmoglobin disappears. When sulphides are injected into frogs, and more especially when sulphuretted hydrogen is inhaled, the blood gives the characteristic spectrum during life, but this does not seem to be the case in mammals, although sulpho-hæmoglobin is formed soon after death. The blood changes are not the cause of death in poisoning, as was formerly supposed, but the direct action of the sulphides on the central nervous system.

Sulphides absorbed into the blood are rapidly oxidized, and are excreted in the urine in the form of sulphates and of organic sulphur compounds of unknown constitution. Small quantities escape by the lungs, and give the breath the disagreeable odor of sulphuretted hydrogen, and according to some authorities, some is excreted in this form in the perspiration.

The sulphides dissolve the horny epidermis and hair very readily when they are applied to the skin. If the application is continued, some irritation and redness is produced.

Hydrosulphuric Acid (sulphuretted hydrogen, hydrogen sulphide (H_2S)) differs from the sulphides in being a gas, and in its strong irritant properties, which it shares with other acids (see page 559). It has not infrequently given rise to poisoning, as it is formed in large quantities in the course of the putrefaction of sulphur compounds, such as proteids. Sewer gas often contains it in quantity, and workmen employed in cleansing sewers or cesspools have often suffered from its effects. When inhaled in concentrated form it is almost immediately fatal, the patient losing consciousness at once, and the respiration ceasing after a few seconds. In smaller quantities it causes immediate unconsciousness, lasting for several hours and then passing into fatal coma, which is often interrupted by violent convulsions. In both of these forms the symptoms are due to the direct action of the sulphides on the brain and medulla oblongata. Persons exposed to a very dilute vapor of sulphuretted hydrogen suffer from local irritation of the eyes, nose and throat, indicated by pain and congestion of the conjunctiva, sneezing, dryness and soreness of the mouth and throat, and a reflex increase in the secretion of tears, saliva and mucus. Headache, dulness, giddiness and loss of energy are complained of; the symptoms frequently appear only some time after the exposure to the poison. According to Lehmann, death in animals exposed to these dilute fumes is due in part to œdema of the lungs caused by the local irritant action. He found that one part of hydrosulphuric acid in 5,000 of air was sufficient to induce symptoms in man, and that an atmosphere containing one part in 2,000 could be respired for only a short time, and gave rise to alarming symptoms; he supposes that about one part of hydrosulphuric acid in 1,000 parts of air is sufficient to poison man fatally in a very short time.

The poisonous effect of sulphuretted hydrogen is due in part to its local irritant action, in part to its directly affecting the central nervous system. The changes in the blood occur during life only after very concentrated gas is inhaled, although they may indicate the poison after death from more dilute vapor, for the tissues in general tend to assume a green color sooner after hydrosulphuric acid poisoning than in the course of ordinary putrefaction.

Hydrogen sulphide is destructive to most forms of life, even when present in comparatively small amount. Even the microbes of putrefaction, which produce it themselves, are eventually killed by this gas, unless it escapes freely.

Preparations.

Potassa Sulphurata (U. S. P., B. P.), liver of sulphur (Hepar Sulphuris), is a mixture of polysulphides and thiosulphates, often containing sulphate of potassium. The greater part is formed of potassium trisulphide (K_2S_3) and of potassium thiosulphate ($K_2S_2O_3$). It is soluble in water and possesses an unpleasant saline taste, and an odor of hydrogen sulphide, which is formed by its decomposition in water.

Calx Sulphurata (U. S. P., B. P.), sulphurated lime, is another impure preparation containing at least 60 per cent. of calcium monosulphide (CaS) (50 per cent. B. P.), with some calcium sulphate and charcoal. It forms a grayish powder, insoluble in water, and gives off hydrogen sulphide. 0.015–0.06 G. (¼–1 gr.).

These preparations are seldom used internally, and, in fact, the sulphurated potassium has been found to be a dangerous poison, from the hydrogen sulphide given off by it in the bowel acting both locally and after absorption.

Sulphurated potassium is used to a very limited extent as an external application in certain skin diseases, particularly in acne, and to destroy skin parasites, such as that of scabies. It is used as an ointment (1 part to 10 parts), and is somewhat irritant.

Sulphurated lime is used occasionally to remove hair and horny excrescences, both of which it renders soft and gelatinous, but its frequent use is liable to cause irritation.

Hydrogen sulphide has been used in the treatment of pulmonary phthisis, the gas being applied by the rectum, but the treatment was followed in several cases by serious symptoms of poisoning, and has not been shown to be beneficial. Very small quantities only escape by the lungs.

Many mineral springs contain hydrogen sulphide in small amount, and these have obtained wide celebrity in the treatment of various chronic respiratory and skin diseases and in syphilis, gout, rheumatism and chronic metallic poisoning (lead, mercury). Most of these springs are hot, and it is open to question whether the small amount of the gas contained in the water is of any efficacy, and whether the heat of the water and the hygienic conditions are not the true cause of the improvement observed in these cases. Sulphur baths are also formed artificially by the addition of sulphurated potassium (2–8 oz.) to an ordinary hot bath ; a small quantity of acid is sometimes added, in order to free the hydrogen sulphide more rapidly.

Sulphur is in itself an inert body, but while much the greater portion escapes in the stools unchanged when it is swallowed, some of it forms sulphides in the alkaline fluids of the intestine, and these cause irritation, increased peristalsis and mild purgation ; in large quantities, it has caused in some instances more severe symptoms with bloody evacuations. The sulphides form some hydrogen sulphide, which gives rise to eructation. Some 10–20 per cent. of the sulphur taken by the mouth is absorbed as sulphide, which is excreted to a small extent by the lungs, giving the characteristic disagreeable odor to the breath, and to a much larger extent by the urine as sulphates and in organic combination. In one experiment, Presch found the urea of the urine considerably increased (10 per cent.) under sulphur, and Umbach found it increased by pure calcium sulphide ; whether, as this would suggest, the sulphides augment the nitrogenous waste as a general rule, can only be determined by further experiment.

Applied to the skin in ointment, sulphur appears to be formed in part to sulphide, particularly if some alkali be added.

Preparations.

Sulphur Sublimatum (U. S. P., B. P.), Flowers of Sulphur, sublimed sulphur.

Sulphur Lotum (U. S. P.), washed Flowers of Sulphur, is prepared by washing the sublimed sulphur with water and ammonia. These preparations form fine yellow powders insoluble in water and very slightly soluble in alcohol. 1–4 G. (15–60 grs.) in powder or sometimes in tablets.

Sulphur Præcipitatum (U. S. P., B. P.), Milk of Sulphur, is prepared from sulphide of calcium by precipitation and forms a fine, almost white powder without odor or taste, insoluble in water, and only very slightly soluble in alcohol. 1–4 G. (15–60 grs.).

Unguentum Sulphuris (U. S. P., B. P.), formed from sublimed sulphur, which is also contained in the Compound Liquorice Powder.

Trochiscus Sulphuris (B. P.) contains 5 grs. of sulphur.

Confectio Sulphuris (B. P.), 60–120 grs.

Thilanin (non-official) is a mixture of lanolin and sulphur containing about 3 per cent. of the latter, and has been proposed as a substitute for the ointment.

Crude sublimed sulphur often contains arsenic and other impurities, and ought not to be used in therapeutics. The milk of sulphur is in a finer state of division than the flowers, and is said to be a somewhat more active aperient.

Sulphur is used as an aperient powder, and may be added to rhubarb or magnesia for this purpose; it causes a soft, formed stool, and seldom induces more than one evacuation. It is prescribed for children, and in cases of hæmorrhoids, in which it is often very beneficial, not owing to any specific effect on the hæmorrhoids, but because it renders the stool softer and less liable to cause irritation mechanically.

Sulphur has been advised in a variety of constitutional diseases and in chlorosis, skin and joint affections, but it is impossible to state at present whether it has any effect in these apart from its improving the condition of the intestine.

Sulphur ointment has been used in some skin diseases, particularly in scabies, but has been supplanted to a large extent by the balsam of Peru. It has been applied in powder to diphtheritic membranes.

Bibliography of Sulphides and Sulphur.

Kaufmann u. Rosenthal. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1865, p. 659.
Lewin. Virchow's Arch., lxxiv., p. 220.
Lehmann. Arch. f. Hygiene, xiv., p. 135.
Pohl. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxii., p. 1.
Harnack. Ibid., xxxiv., p. 156. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xxvi., p. 558.
Regensburger. Ztschr. f. Biol., xii., p. 479.
Presch. Virchow's Arch., cxix., p. 148.
Uschinsky. Zts. f. phys. Chem., xvii., p. 220.
Araki. Ibid., xiv., p. 412.
Binet. Trav. des Lab. de Ther. exp. de Geneve, ii., p. 242.
Umbach. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxi., p. 166.
Meyer. Ibid., xli., p. 325.

XXII. CHARCOAL.

Charcoal, like spongy platinum and other porous bodies, possesses the property of accumulating gases in its interstices and thus ordinarily contains considerable quantities of oxygen. When brought into contact with decomposing matter, the oxygen is released and hastens the oxidation of the putrefying mass, while the gases arising from the bacterial action are absorbed by the charcoal which thus acts as a deodorant. It has no direct action on the microbes of putrefaction, but may by introducing oxygen favor the development of the aërobic organisms at the expense of the anaërobic. Besides gases, charcoal also absorbs many colloid bodies, such as the coloring matter of plants and proteids, and when solutions of salts are filtered through layers of it, they often undergo more or less dissociation, the base passing into the filtrate, while the acid remains in the charcoal, or *vice versa*.

Animal charcoal appears to possess no advantages over wood charcoal, and they both act when moist almost as efficiently as in the dry state.

Charcoal has no appreciable effect on the economy, apart from its lessening the eructation of gas and the flatulence in some cases. It passes through the stomach and intestine unabsorbed, and may in rare cases cause some mechanical irritation and increased movement. Charcoal given in a state of suspension to animals is said to have been found in the epithelial cells of the intestine and even in the blood vessels, but does not have any effect attributable to its absorption in man. (*Wild.* Med. Chronicle, 1896.)

Preparations.

Carbo Animalis (U. S. P.), animal charcoal, bone-black, prepared from bone.

Carbo Animalis Purificatus (U. S. P.) is prepared by boiling bone-black with hydrochloric acid in order to remove the lime and other impurities.

Carbo Ligni (U. S. P., B. P.)—Charcoal prepared from soft wood and finely powdered.

Charcoal is used internally to remove the gases in flatulence and dyspepsia, and is prescribed in powder or in the form of charcoal lozenges. It may be given in any quantity, but is most commonly prescribed in 4–8 G. (60–120 grs.) doses. It is employed externally as a deodorant in cases of foul ulcers, cancerous sores, or malodorous secretions from any source; for this purpose it is added to poultices or used dry in bags of fine cloth.

XXIII. BORACIC ACID AND BORAX.

Boracic or boric acid ($B(OH)_3$) is a very weak acid, and it is doubtful whether the hydrogen ions or acidity play any part in its action, or whether the whole is not to be referred to the rest of the molecule. The ordinary sodium compound, borax, $Na_2B_4O_7$, is stated by some authors to be equally active, but is alkaline in reaction, so that the exact relative importance of the two ions of boric acid cannot be determined.

Action. — Boracic acid and borax are only feebly toxic, but large quantities taken by the mouth cause gastric and intestinal irritation, as is evidenced by vomiting and purging, and even smaller amounts are said to act as mild aperients in some cases. In animals muscular weakness and collapse, and, it is said, nephritis and albuminuria have been elicited by the injection of poisonous doses. Moderate doses are without effect on the metabolism, but larger quantities (5–10 G. per day in dogs) increase the nitrogen excretion in the urine. In ordinary amounts borax does not affect the digestion and assimilation of food, but larger doses retard the proteolytic processes, and increase the bulk of the fæces by retarding the absorption of the proteids and fats. Both borax and boracic acid are rapidly absorbed by the bowel, and do not affect the intestinal putrefaction.

Boracic acid has been widely used as an antiseptic dressing, and a number of cases of serious poisoning have been recorded from its absorption. The symptoms arose in part from the alimentary canal, uneasiness in the abdomen, vomiting, diarrhœa, dryness of the throat and difficulty in swallowing; sleeplessness, great muscular weakness and depression, dimness of sight and headache were also complained of, and in severe cases collapse and death followed. The prolonged use of boracic acid, internally or externally, has repeatedly led to scaly skin diseases, eczema and psoriasis. Féré ascribes these to the absence of the oily secretions of the glands of the skin, and has observed that the hair becomes brittle and breaks off short, causing alopecia of the scalp and also of other parts of the body. Papular eruptions and local œdemas and swelling of the skin appear, and a dark line on the gums, similar to that seen in lead poisoning, is stated to occur along with irritation of the mouth. These skin affections appear also when borax is used in large quantities as an antiseptic dressing.

Boracic acid and borax are excreted in the urine for the most part, to a smaller extent in the perspiration, saliva, and intestinal secretions. They disappear from the body within 24 hours of their ingestion. It

is sometimes stated that the urine is increased by borax, but this is not borne out by experiment, and Chittenden and Gies found it actually diminished in amount; the reaction becomes alkaline after sufficient amounts of borax, as after any other alkaline preparation. Boracic acid and borax have some antiseptic power, for in 2½ per cent. solution almost all forms of bacilli stop growing; but they are not destroyed, even the delicate anthrax bacilli being found capable of further growth after exposure to a 4 per cent. solution for 24 hours. Boracic acid is therefore valueless as a disinfectant, but has been used as an antiseptic dressing; it has the advantage over many other antiseptics of inducing very little irritation and of being only slightly poisonous, but experience has shown that it cannot be used with impunity in very large quantities.

Preparations.

Acidum Boricum (U. S. P., B. P.), Boric or Boracic Acid (H_3BO_3), colorless crystals, with a faintly bitter taste, soluble to about four per cent. in water, more so in alcohol and glycerin. 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Glyceritum Boroglycerini (U. S. P.), *Glycerinum Acidi Borici* (B. P.). Boroglycerin is a compound formed by heating boric acid in glycerin, and the official glyceritum or glycerinum contains this dissolved in glycerin, about 31 parts of boric acid being used to form 100 parts.

Unguentum Acidi Borici (B. P.), 10 per cent.

Sodii Boras (U. S. P.), *Borax* (B. P.), Borax ($Na_2B_4O_7 + 10H_2O$) forms colorless crystals with a sweetish alkaline taste. It is soluble in water (16 parts) to which it gives an alkaline reaction. 0.3–1.3 G. (5–20 grs.).

Glycerinum Boracis (B. P.) (1 in 6).

Mel Boracis (B. P.).

Boracic acid has been used as a surgical antiseptic in solution (four per cent.), ointment, or lint, and the solution of the acid or of borax is also used as a wash in aphthe and other forms of irritation of the mouth. Boracic acid solution has been given internally in dilute watery solution as a genito-urinary disinfectant, has also been injected into the bladder, and is frequently used in ophthalmic surgery, as being less irritant to the eye than the more powerful antiseptics. In internal medicine the acid and the salt have been used in epilepsy, and also in the hope of dissolving uric acid calculi, but have not been shown to be efficient for either purpose. Boracic acid and borax are sometimes added to milk or other food as preservatives, and it has been much discussed whether the habitual use of such preserved foods is likely to prove deleterious to the health. The general result of the investigations is that while no preservative should be added to food unless it is absolutely unavoidable, boric acid in moderate quantities is not prejudicial to persons in ordinary health and in fact is less liable to derange the digestion than nitrate of potassium, which has been used as a preservative from time immemorial. Foods preserved with boracic acid should not be used by delicate individuals or by children however, and the quantity of the acid used must be strictly limited.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

Neumann. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xiv., p. 149.
Forster. Arch. f. Hygiene, ii., p. 75.
Jaenicke. Therapeut. Monatsh., 1891, p. 477.
Johnson. Jahresber. über Thierchemie, 1885, p. 235.
Féré. Semaine Medical, 1894.
Chittenden and Gies. Am. Journ. of Phys., i., p. 1.
Wild. Lancet, 1899, i., p. 23.
Liebreich. Vierteljahrsch. f. ger. Med., 1900, xviii., p. 83.
Lange. Arch. f. Hygiene, xl., p. 143.
Kister. Ztschr. f. Hygiene, xxxvii., p. 225.
Tunnicliffe and Rosenheim. Journ. of Hygiene, i., p. 168.
Vaughan and Veenboer. Amer. Medicine, 1902, Mar. 15th.

XXIV. CARBONIC ACID.

Carbonic acid is contained in considerable quantity in many therapeutic preparations, notably in the effervescent cathartics and antacids, and also in many beverages, such as soda water, potash water, champagne and other sparkling wines. In some of these it is formed by the action of an acid such as citric or tartaric acid on carbonates, in others it is liberated in the course of fermentation, while in the artificial aërated waters it is forced into solution under high pressure. The last are therefore simple solutions of carbonic acid, while in the others more powerful agencies — cathartic salts or alcohol — are contained in addition.

Carbonic acid has a weak irritating action when applied in quantity; thus in baths charged with carbonic acid, a slight reddening of the skin has been observed, and some irritation and prickling of denuded surfaces is produced; a stream of carbonic acid directed against a wound or burn causes considerable heat and pain. Pure carbonic acid gas causes spasm of the glottis when inhaled, and even when it is much diluted, some irritation in the respiratory passages may follow at first. Solutions of carbonic acid induce reddening of the mucous membrane of the mouth and stomach, and are very rapidly absorbed, owing to the congestion and increased blood flow in the stomach wall which follows their administration. Much of the carbonic acid is thrown up by eructation, but some of it is absorbed and is excreted by the lungs. The absorbed acid has no effect on the organism, but the slight irritation of the stomach may cause increased appetite and a feeling of well-being. The rapid absorption of the water in which it is dissolved is followed by an augmented secretion of urine, and the carbonic acid waters are therefore used in preference to ordinary waters, where a rapid flushing of the tissues and a profuse secretion of urine is desired. In addition, the slight irritation of the mouth and stomach renders them more acceptable than ordinary waters in fever and in other diseases accompanied by intense thirst; a mixture of milk and aërated water is often very grateful. The presence of carbonic acid in the sparkling wines leads to the rapid absorption of the alcohol also, and this action on the stomach may explain their being more exhilarating than other wines containing an equal amount of alcohol.

The slight irritant effect of carbonic acid in the stomach has proved of benefit in some forms of gastric catarrh, such as that following alcoholic excess. Carbonic acid waters are also useful in the vomiting of pregnancy and in seasickness.

The prolonged application of carbonic acid to the mucous membranes leads to local anæsthesia, and numbing of the skin is also stated to occur under similar treatment.

Carbonic acid is absorbed from all the mucous membranes, from the skin and from the lungs. The gas has no effect after absorption except when inhaled, however, as when absorbed in any other way it is at once excreted by the lungs, and the amount absorbed never alters appreciably the normal percentage of carbonic acid in the blood.

When carbonic acid is inhaled unmixed with oxygen, it induces asphyxia, partly from a specific action which it exerts on the central nervous system, but chiefly from the absence of oxygen. Its effects are therefore very similar to those of any indifferent gas, such as hydrogen or nitrogen, and the symptoms are those of ordinary asphyxia. When, however, carbonic acid is inhaled mixed with a sufficient amount of oxygen, the specific effects of the gas are observed without any asphyxia. The symptoms are those of transient stimulation and subsequent depression of the central nervous system and heart. The first stage is marked by a very short period of psychical exaltation, with deep respirations, a slight rise in the blood-pressure and a moderately slow pulse. Very soon, however, unconsciousness, loss of the spontaneous movements, and later of the spinal reflexes follow, the respiration becomes somewhat slower and shallower, the pulse continues slow and the heart is weaker. If the inhalation be continued the respiration fails, the heart continuing to beat for a short time, though weakly. The symptoms of the first stage seem to be due to a direct stimulant action on the cerebrum and on the vagus, vaso-motor and respiratory centres, while the second stage resembles that induced by the ordinary anæsthetics, and is evidently caused by depression of the central nervous system and of the heart muscle. In fact a mixture of carbonic acid and air has been used as an anæsthetic in one or two surgical operations. Death from carbonic acid poisoning is not preceded by convulsions, those observed in ordinary asphyxia being due to the absence of oxygen, and not to the excess of carbonic acid; it is still undecided by which of these factors the increased peristalsis seen in suffocation is caused. In well diluted vapor the symptoms of exaltation alone are observed, no anæsthesia following.

Carbonic acid in excess acts as a poison to other organs besides the central nervous system and the heart, although this effect is not seen in mammals. Frog's muscle loses its irritability rapidly, the ciliated epithelium ceases movement, and the motor nerves, after a short period of increased excitability, are paralyzed by exposure to an atmosphere of carbonic acid. The blood assumes the venous color when shaken with the gas, and prolonged contact produces acid hæmatin, as does any other acid.

Carbonic acid probably acts as a general poison to the protoplasm in mammals, apart from the effects on the central nervous system, for the combustion in the tissues is lessened to an extraordinary degree, as is evidenced by the very small amount of oxygen absorbed.

Compressed carbonic acid gas absorbs much heat in expanding, and a stream of it directed against the skin induces intense cold and might therefore be used to induce local anæsthesia. (See Ether, page 182.)

The inhalation of diluted carbonic acid has been recommended in various pulmonary affections, such as phthisis and bronchitis, but is of very doubtful benefit.

Mineral waters containing large quantities of carbonic acid in solution are often recommended as baths in various chronic diseases, such as rheumatism. The effects may be due to the carbonic acid in part, but these waters also contain salts in solution.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

P. Bert. Leçons sur la Respiration. Paris, 1870.
Quincke. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., vii., p. 101.
Runge. Ibid., x., p. 332.
Friedländer u. Herter. Zts. f. phys. Chem., ii., p. 99.
Loewy. Pflüger's Arch., xlvii., p. 601.

XXV. CHLORINE AND BROMINE.

Chlorine and bromine resemble each other closely in the effects which they induce in all forms of living matter. These may be explained in part by their replacing hydrogen in its combinations in the proteids and forming hydrochloric or hydrobromic acid with the hydrogen set free, in part by their combining with the hydrogen of water and thus liberating nascent oxygen, which then acts on the tissues. The latter process is believed to account for the fact that chlorine is a much more powerful disinfectant in moist air than in dry. In the higher organisms all of these reactions probably occur together.

Action. — Chlorine and bromine are general protoplasm poisons; thus 3 parts of chlorine in 1,000 parts of moist air are sufficient to destroy the spores of most bacteria in the course of three hours, and the infusoria and the higher plants have been shown to be equally susceptible to the influence of the gas. Even smaller quantities of bromine are disinfectant.

In the higher animals and in man chlorine and bromine act as irritants. Thus chlorine water (a saturated solution of chlorine in water) induces irritation and redness of the skin, and even blistering, when the gas is prevented from escaping. Bromine also causes very painful blistering, the fumes penetrating more deeply into the tissues than the non-volatile irritants, and causing more widespread irritation. Bromine or chlorine water, when swallowed, elicits intense inflammation and corrosion of the mouth, throat and stomach, with collapse and all the ordinary effects of gastric irritation. Air containing even a very small proportion of chlorine irritates the eyes, nose, larynx and the deeper respiratory passages, the bronchi and lungs seeming more susceptible than the rest of the tract, for bronchitis, pulmonary congestion and hæmorrhages, coughing and pain in the thorax are induced by quantities that cause little or no irritation of the mouth and nose. Lehmann found that one volume of chlorine or bromine vapor in one million parts of air cause some irritation, but no serious results, but that ten volumes in the same amount of air inhaled for some time, cause hæmorrhage and inflammation of the lungs, severe bronchitis and other similar effects. After fatal poisoning from the inhalation of bromine, he observed marked irritation of the gastric mucous membrane, while this symptom was absent after chlorine. Another point in which bromine differs from chlorine is in its powerful action on the

hair, which is rendered soft and gelatinous, and eventually removed entirely by exposure for some time to the vapor.

These symptoms of chlorine and bromine poisoning are caused by their local action only, and are so severe that they might conceal those induced by the effects of the halogens after absorption. The greater proportion of the poisons is undoubtedly changed to hydrochloric and hydrobromic acids, and these again to chlorides and bromides in the course of absorption. But it seems possible that some may form proteid compounds in the body (as happens in the test-tube), and that these may have some action. As a matter of fact both chlorine and bromine are stated to have a narcotic effect on the brain quite apart from their local effects, but nothing further is known of their action in the tissues. Herxheimer has recently described four cases of what he considers chronic chlorine poisoning in workmen exposed to the gas in manufactories; the chief symptoms were acne of the skin, anæmia, sleeplessness and confusion. But it is not yet established that these cases were due to chlorine itself, for Bettmann found a very similar condition in workmen in a chemical factory in which there was no reason to believe that chlorine was evolved; he is inclined to attribute it to some unknown organic compound containing chlorine.

Preparations.

Aqua Chlori (U. S. P.), chlorine water, contains at least 4 parts of the gas in 1,000 parts of water. It is a clear, greenish liquid with the suffocating odor of chlorine and is liable to form hydrochloric acid, especially when exposed to the air and sunlight. It ought therefore to be freshly prepared when the full strength is required.

Calx Chlorata (U. S. P.), *Calx Chlorinata* (B. P.), chlorinated lime, bleaching powder, sometimes erroneously called chloride of lime, is a compound formed by the action of chlorine on lime. It consists of a mixture of calcium hypochlorite ($Ca(ClO)_2$), calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$), lime and water. The hypochlorite is very unstable and gives off chlorine in air, and especially in the presence of an acid. Strong acids also free the hydrochloric acid of the chloride, and this is decomposed by the hypochlorite into chlorine and water. Chlorinated lime forms a white or grayish-white powder, with the odor of chlorine. It is only partially soluble in water, and must contain not less than 35 per cent. of available chlorine, U. S. P.; 33 per cent. B. P.

Liquor Calcis Chlorinatæ (B. P.).—The solution should yield about 3 per cent. of chlorine.

Liquor Sodæ Chloratæ (U. S. P.), *Liquor Sodæ Chlorinatæ* (B. P.), solution of chlorinated soda, Labarraque's solution or Javelle's solution, is formed from chlorinated lime and contains hypochlorite of soda (NaClO) and chloride of soda. Like the corresponding lime salt, it has the odor of chlorine, and bleaches vegetable colors. It must contain at least 2.6 per cent. by weight of available chlorine, U. S. P.; 2.5 per cent., B. P. 10–20 mins.

Bromum (U. S. P.), bromine, a heavy, brownish-red liquid evolving a yellow-red, very irritant vapor.

Chlorine was formerly used internally in infectious disease, but this has been entirely abandoned, since it has been recognized that it is much more poisonous to the higher animals than to the micro-organisms. The inhalation of chlorine in phthisis has also fallen into disuse for the same reason. Chlorine water and the solution of chlorinated soda are still occasionally used as antiseptic, deodorant solutions in the treatment of foul sores, and, more rarely, to disinfect the hands

before operation ; both preparations are very irritant, however. Chlorine water much diluted has been used as a gargle, as a vaginal injection and for other similar purposes.

The chlorine preparations are chiefly used to disinfect fæces, urinals and to a less extent rooms and houses ; for this purpose chlorinated lime is the most suitable, especially when acid is added to it in excess. The room ought to be hermetically sealed, and the fumes are of no value as disinfectants unless they are present in such quantity as to render the air quite irrespirable. They have the disadvantage that they bleach most of the colors used in dyeing, and fail to penetrate in sufficient quantity into the clothing, which they also corrode to some extent. Chlorinated lime exposed in the sick-room merely serves as a deodorant, and has no disinfectant value, but has the disadvantage of giving a false feeling of security like other similar measures. Chlorine seems inferior to sulphurous acid anhydride, and still more so to formalin as a disinfectant, not from its being weaker in action, but because it is more difficult to apply in sufficient quantity. Chlorinated lime can, however, be applied in urinals and closets, where both these disinfectants are unavailable. Here it acts again as a deodorant, while its disinfectant value is smaller.

Bromine is also powerfully disinfectant, but has not been used practically for this purpose in recent years. It is occasionally employed as a corrosive, *e. g.*, in disease of the os uteri.

In **Poisoning** with chlorine taken by the mouth, alkalies are advised with the view of neutralizing the acid formed, and narcotics may be necessary for the pain. In cases of poisoning by inhalation, steam may be inhaled to lessen the irritation, and ammonia has been advised, but is itself irritant. In corrosion of the skin with bromine, one half per cent. carbolic acid has been applied with success, it is said, the bromine being precipitated as bromphenol. Vapor of carbolic acid has also been inhaled in bromine irritation of the nose and throat.

Bibliography.

Binz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxiv., p. 194.
Lehmann. Arch. f. Hygiene, vii., p. 231 ; xxxiv., p. 308.
Fischer u. Proskauer. Mittheil. a. d. Gesundheitsamt, ii., p. 228.
Cash. Reports of Brit. Local Gov. Board, 1886.
Herxheimer. Münch. med. Woch., 1899, No. 9.
Bettmann. Deutsch. med. Wochenschrift, 1901, July 4.

XXVI. OXYGEN.

Ever since the discovery of the relation of oxygen to the respiration, attempts have been made to use it in therapeutics, by inhaling the gas pure or mixed with air, or by spending a certain time each day in chambers of compressed air. It was expected that by these means a larger amount of oxygen would be absorbed, and a more active combustion in the tissues would be induced. The absorption of oxygen by the lungs does not depend on the partial pressure of the oxygen, however, but on its affinity for the reduced hæmoglobin of the corpuscles. It is true that the oxygen dissolved in the

plasma is increased by a great rise in the barometric pressure, or by inhaling pure oxygen, but this dissolved oxygen is trifling in amount compared with that in combination with the hæmoglobin. Under ordinary conditions, then, the air is sufficient to oxidize almost all the reduced hæmoglobin passing through the lungs, and oxygen lessens but slightly the small proportion that escapes by the pulmonary veins unoxidized. As far as the tissues are concerned, the oxidation is of course the same whether the oxyhæmoglobin carried to them by the blood was formed in a pure atmosphere of oxygen or in air, of which it comprises only about 20 per cent. The slight increase in the oxyhæmoglobin of the blood has no appreciable effect, as more oxygen is offered to the tissues normally than they can assimilate. It is therefore inconceivable that the very slight increase in the quantity of oxygen in the blood can have any effect on the oxidation in the tissues, but if the gas be inhaled under high pressure, the augmented tension in the blood may induce some symptoms, and this is according to Smith the explanation of a tendency to tetanic convulsions which he found developed in animals under these circumstances; hilarity and some other nervous effects are said to have been induced in man in some instances, and these may also be interpreted as the results of the high oxygen tension in the blood, if they were not the products of fancy and suggestion. The apnœa which is observed in animals after vigorous artificial respiration is due not to an excess of oxygen in the blood, but to the diminished amount of carbonic acid probably, for the oxygen of the blood in apnœa is practically the same in amount as that during ordinary respiration. Oxygen inhalation is therefore incapable of increasing the oxidation in the tissues, or in fact of modifying in any way the metabolism, and experience has shown it to be valueless in such constitutional diseases as diabetes and gout, in which, moreover, it has been demonstrated that there is no deficiency in the oxygen of the blood.

The further question arises whether oxygen inhalation is likely to be of benefit in the cyanosis due to severe cardiac or pulmonary disease. Improvement is very often observed clinically, the skin losing its dark color, and the respiration and heart becoming less rapid and labored as soon as the inhalation is commenced, and alarming symptoms returning when it is stopped. This may be explained by the larger amount of oxygen dissolved in the plasma; when air is breathed, the plasma contains only about 0.6 per cent. of oxygen in simple solution, but when oxygen is inhaled the percentage may rise to 3 per cent. and this may reinforce the oxygen carried by the hæmoglobin. In cases in which only a small quantity of blood is passed through the lungs owing to circulatory disorder or where the aërating surface of the lungs is diminished by exudation, this small supplementary supply of oxygen may be of importance. Again the air actually inspired does not pass directly into the alveoli, but diffuses from the wider air passages into the narrower ones and then reaches the absorbent surfaces. Pure oxygen diffuses more rapidly and in larger quantity into the alveoli than when it is mixed with nitrogen, and it is therefore conceivable that when the movement of the air in the air passages is insufficient, oxygen may give relief by diffusing in larger quantity into the alveoli. Insufficient movement of the air currents may be due to obstruction of the respiratory tract, as in asthma or severe bronchitis, or to slow and shallow breathing from depression of the centre. Accordingly, the inhalation of oxygen is said to be followed by relief in some cases of asthma and bronchitis, and it has been recommended in narcotic poisoning.

When the hæmoglobin of the blood is so altered as to be incapable of transporting oxygen to the tissues, as in cases of poisoning with carbon monoxide, nitrites, chlorates, nitrobenzol, etc., oxygen inhalation is indicated, for it has been shown by Haldane and others that the plasma dissolves enough oxygen to maintain life when that supplied by the blood corpuscles is insufficient. The inhalation has to be continued until the symptoms of deficient aëration have disappeared.

Many microbes are killed or at any rate much retarded in their growth when freely exposed to the air, and attempts have been made to treat pulmonary phthisis by oxygen inhalation. The results have been less disastrous than those of some of the other treatments by inhalation, but no distinct benefit has accrued, and in some cases hæmoptysis has been induced by it from some unexplained cause. Smith has recently found that the inhalation of oxygen under some pressure causes irritation, congestion and consolidation of the lungs in mice and birds.

Oxygen is inhaled through a mask connected with a large container which is filled from a tank of the compressed gas. Very often the oxygen may be diluted with air and for this purpose a small opening may be made in the mask.

Ozone, or active oxygen (O_3), is a much more powerful oxidizing body than ordinary oxygen, but is more easily reduced than peroxide of hydrogen. It has a curious phosphorous odor and is somewhat irritant to the respiratory membranes, but it is almost always accompanied by nitrogen oxides, and some of the properties which have been ascribed to ozone may be due to these impurities. It is rapidly decomposed by living matter, and it seems very improbable that it can be absorbed into the blood; yet Binz and Schulz believe that ozone induces narcosis in dogs, rabbits and kittens, and Schulz found in experiments in which ozone was inhaled repeatedly for long periods that it induced vomiting and dyspnœa, bronchitis, œdema and blood-extravasation in the lungs; conjunctivitis also occurred in some experiments. Schulz ascribes these symptoms to the ozone, but they may be due in part at any rate to the impurities, or perhaps to oxygen.

Ozone has undoubtedly antiseptic properties, but these are only apparent when air contains 13.5 mg. or more per litre, a concentration which it is quite impossible to attain in practice. Even this disinfects only the air itself and the surfaces of objects, as the ozone loses its oxidizing properties whenever it comes in contact with organic matter and therefore fails to penetrate.

Ozone inhalation has been recommended in the hope of increasing the oxidation of the tissues, and as an antiseptic in pulmonary phthisis, but its irritant properties preclude its use here, and it has been generally discarded. It was supposed to be formed in turpentine oil on standing, and old turpentine oil was therefore recommended in cases of phosphorus poisoning, with the hope that it would tend to oxidize the phosphorus and render it harmless. Recent investigations show, however, that no ozone is formed in turpentine oil, and there is no reason to suppose that the treatment is of benefit.

Antozon is a mixture of oxygen and peroxide of hydrogen, and many other so-called solutions of ozone contain only small percentages of the peroxide and no ozone proper, as, though the latter is soluble in water, it decomposes very rapidly, only traces of it being found in the solution after 10–15 days. It breaks up into oxygen, and does not form hydrogen peroxide.

The ozone of the air has been appealed to, in order to explain and advertise the benefits induced by many watering places and forest resorts but it has never been satisfactorily proved that the air in these localities contains more ozone than in other less favored places. The curative agency is generally the change of scene and interests, and the dietary.

Bibliography.

Smith. Jour. of Physiol., xxii., p. 307; xxiv., p. 19.
Haldane, Makgill and Mavrogordato. Jour. of Physiol., xxi., p. 160.
Michaelis. Verhandl d. Congresses f. inn. Med., 1900, p. 503.
Binz. Berl. klin. Woch., 1882 and 1884.
Sonntag. Ztschr. f. Hygiene, viii., p. 95.
Cash. Reports of Brit. Local Gov. Board, 1885.
Schulz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxix., p. 364.
Pallop. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat. 1889.

XXVII. PEROXIDE OF HYDROGEN.

Hydrogen peroxide or dioxide (H_2O_2) tends to break down into water and oxygen very rapidly in the presence of many substances, which in themselves may be either oxidizing or reducing. Among the bodies which induce this decomposition or catalysis are all forms of living matter, and the peroxide of hydrogen is therefore decomposed when brought in contact with the tissues, the oxygen thus liberated in a nascent condition tending to oxidize its surroundings; the chief effects of this liquid are therefore due to its oxidizing properties. It is generally met with in dilute solution in water, and in this form alone is used in medicine. Brought in contact with the skin, peroxide of hydrogen solution is decomposed, and numerous bubbles of oxygen are formed,[1] but this decomposition proceeds much more rapidly when it is applied to denuded surfaces or to mucous membranes. The oxygen is formed in such quantity that some irritation may follow, and thus dogs often vomit when it is administered in quantity by the mouth. When it is injected subcutaneously, a large amount of oxygen is formed in the subcutaneous tissues, but some of the peroxide escapes decomposition and is absorbed into the blood. Here the decomposition proceeds more violently, the red blood cells having a strong catalytic action, and the oxygen set free may cause emboli and lead to sudden death. The formation of emboli is seen most frequently in the rabbit, but was in all probability the cause of death in one case of fatal poisoning in man, in which a solution of hydrogen peroxide had been used to wash out the pleural cavity.[2] Emboli are not formed in the dog on hypodermic injection, nor in either dogs or rabbits poisoned by the stomach—in the latter case probably because the liquid is more slowly absorbed and is almost entirely decomposed in the mucous membrane. Even in the blood and tissues the whole of the peroxide is not decomposed, for several observers have found traces of it excreted in the urine.

Injected intravenously in either dogs or rabbits the peroxide is rapidly decomposed in the blood, and forms emboli which prove immediately fatal by stopping the circulation through the lungs, heart and brain.

The action of hydrogen peroxide, then, apart from its local effects is explained by its obstructing the blood vessels mechanically. Colasanti has stated recently that in addition it forms methæmoglobin in dogs and thus leads to a marked decrease in the metabolism from the non-aëration of the tissues, but his statement requires further confirmation.

The catalytic decomposition of the peroxide is not necessarily associated with the life of the tissues, for it occurs also in excised organs and in drawn blood. In fact, it was formerly supposed that it took place only in the blood outside the tissues, and that the circulating blood had no effect on it, but this has been shown to be erroneous.

[1] A concentrated solution is said to corrode the skin, leaving a white eschar.

[2] In several other instances hemiplegia has been observed, apparently from embolism of the cerebral arteries.

The different organs vary considerably in their catalytic power, the red blood cells and the liver cells being the most active, and it has been stated that this action of the tissue cells is closely associated with the presence of nucleoproteids (Gottstein, Spitzer); but Loew has shown that it is due to the presence of a widely distributed ferment (catalase) in most instances.

The catalysis of hydrogen peroxide occurs in the lower forms of life as well as in the higher. Thus germinating seeds, yeasts, infusoria and the microbes all free oxygen from the solution, and in fact, a rough estimate of the number of microbes in water may be formed from the amount of oxygen given off by it on the addition of the peroxide (Gottstein). This decomposition is fatal to most of these lower forms, presumably from the nascent oxygen, and peroxide of hydrogen is therefore a powerful antiseptic, a three per cent. solution proving as strongly bactericidal as a one per mille solution of corrosive sublimate; but when the microbes are contained in a medium with much organic substance, as in wounds, the bactericidal action is very much reduced.

In recent years, attention has been drawn to other bodies analogous to hydrogen peroxide, some of which possess powerful microbicidal properties. The peroxide is represented by the structural formula H—O—O—H and one of the hydrogens may be replaced by benzoyl or acetyl, forming $C_6H_5CO—O—OH$ (benzo-peracid) or $CH_3CO—OOH$ (aceto-peracid). These have been shown to be much more powerful germicides than hydrogen peroxide, while they give off oxygen less readily; in fact they are comparable only to corrosive sublimate in their destructive effect on microörganisms and even surpass it in favorable conditions. This suggests that the disinfectant action of this group is not really due to its liberating oxygen only, otherwise the activity of these peracids would be less than that of the peroxide as they part with their oxygen less readily. It is possible, however, that the difference really arises from the way in which the oxygen is liberated; for example, the peracids may penetrate the microbes and free oxygen in their interior, while the peroxide is reduced before it passes through the cell-wall. The peracids are prepared with difficulty and are very unstable bodies, so that it is unlikely that they will prove of value in practical medicine. But they are formed when the aqueous solutions of some more readily available substances are allowed to stand for some time. In these both the hydrogen atoms of hydrogen peroxide are replaced by organic radicles forming organic peroxides such as diacetyl peroxide ($CH_3CO—O—O—COCH_3$) and benzoyl-acetyl-peroxide ($C_6H_5CO—O—O—COCH_3$). On dissolving these in water, the peracids are formed and the solutions are very powerful disinfectants which have been suggested for surgical use and also as intestinal disinfectants; practical clinical experience alone can decide whether they possess that value which their results in the laboratory seem to indicate.

Preparation.

Aqua Hydrogenii Dioxidi (U. S. P.), *Liquor Hydrogenii Peroxidi* (B. P.), solution of hydrogen dioxide or peroxide, contains about 3 per cent. by weight of the pure dioxide. Each volume of this solution is capable of setting free 9–11 volumes of oxygen when completely decomposed. Some acid is added to the peroxide solution in order to retard its decomposition, but it gradually changes when kept, so that only freshly prepared solutions are of full strength. The solution is colorless and odorless, but has an acid taste from the added acid, and the oxygen freed in the mouth gives a curious sensation and forms a froth.

Therapeutic Uses. — Hydrogen dioxide is used locally as a disinfectant solution in suppuration, diphtheria and urethral infection. In pus cavities the oxygen is freed with great rapidity, and the pus-corpuscles are said to be disintegrated. The catalysis is due in part to these corpuscles, in part to the microbes, and the extent of the suppuration may be estimated from the amount of effervescence. Peroxide solutions differ from most other disinfectants in the short duration of the action, which passes off as soon as all the oxygen is liberated. In addition to its microbicidal action proper, this agent loosens and destroys masses of infected material by the mechanical effect of the liberation of the gas, and the wound or cavity is thus cleaned by it more perfectly than by washing with ordinary antiseptic solutions. The solution has been recommended for use in ophthalmic practice, and for this purpose may be diluted one half.

Bibliography.

Gutimann. Virchow's Arch., lxxiii., p. 23; lxxv., p. 255.
Schwerin. Ibid., lxxiii., p. 37.
Altehoefer. Centralbl. f. Bacteriol., viii., 1890, p. 129.
Pane. London Medical Record, 1891.
Colasanti and Brugnola. Arch. Ital. de Biol., xxv., p. 228.
Gottstein. Virchow's Arch., cxxxiii., p. 295.
Spitzer. Pflüger's Arch., lxvii., p. 615.
Honsell. Beiträge z. klein. Chir., xxvii., p. 127.
Loew. U. S. Depart. of Agriculture Rep., No. 68.
Novy and Freer. Journ. of Exp. Med., vi. (Peracids.)

Other Oxidizing Disinfectants.

Other oxidizing bodies have been used as antiseptics and disinfectants. Thus *Calcium Peroxide* or *Gorit* has been recommended as a gastric and intestinal disinfectant for children in doses of 0.2–0.6 G. in milk; the action may depend in part on the calcium hydrate formed as well as on the oxygen liberated.

Similarly the *Persulphates* of potassium and sodium ($Na_2S_2O_8$), *persodine*, possess strong oxidizing properties from their liberating oxygen in contact with organic matter. They are only feebly poisonous but have not been extensively used as yet.

Some older and better known disinfectants also owe their powers to liberated oxygen, and among these that most largely employed is the *Permanganate of Potassium*.

When a solution of this salt comes in contact with organic matter, such as albumin, the permanganate at once parts with some of its

oxygen, which attaches itself to the albumin. Permanganate is thus poisonous to protoplasm, not through the presence of the whole molecule, but in consequence of the oxidation of the proteids. As soon as the permanganate is reduced, it of course loses this action, so that the oxidizing effect is limited to the skin and the surface of the mucous membranes. Concentrated solutions irritate, and even corrode the skin, and induce gastro-enteritis when swallowed. Permanganate solutions are antiseptics of considerable power, owing to their oxidizing and thus destroying bacteria. They fail to penetrate deeply in an active form, and this renders them of less value than many other antiseptics, except in very superficial infection.

PREPARATIONS.

Potassii Permanganas (U. S. P., B. P.) ($KMnO_4$) forms slender crystals of a dark purple color and a sweetish, afterwards disagreeable and astringent taste, soluble in sixteen parts of water, reduced by alcohol and other organic bodies. 0.05–0.2 G. (1–3 grs.), in pills made up with kaolin.

Liquor Potassii Permanganatis (B. P.), a 1 per cent. solution in water. 2–4 fl. drs.

Therapeutic Uses. — The permanganate has been used internally in amenorrhœa and chlorosis.

Externally it is used for its disinfectant and deodorant action, as an application to gangrenous ulcers, cancerous sores, diphtheria, and gonorrhœa. In dilute solution it may be used as a gargle and mouth wash (1 per cent.), to disinfect the hands (1–3 per cent.), which it stains brown, and for other similar purposes.

It has recently been recommended in poisoning with phosphorus, prussic acid, morphine and other alkaloids, on the theory that these poisons are oxidized by it in the stomach, and thus rendered harmless. For this purpose it is given in $\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. solution. It may be questioned whether much permanganate reaches the stomach unreduced, and the method is certainly less reliable than the stomach tube. Only the poison actually in the stomach is destroyed, permanganate having, of course, no effect upon that absorbed into the blood. In snakebite, permanganate has been advised, and it undoubtedly has some action on the poison when it comes in contact with it, and may therefore be used to wash the wound and also to inject around it; it has no effect upon the poison already absorbed.

Condy's Fluid is a strong solution of impure permanganate, which is of use to disinfect and deodorize urinals and fæces, but must be poured on them, and cannot be employed to disinfect rooms.

Some of the caustics owe part of their action to the oxygen liberated when they come in contact with organic matter. Thus *Chromic Acid* destroys tissue in part through its acidity but this is reinforced by its oxidizing powers.

XXVIII. PHOSPHORUS.

In the early part of last century phosphorus played a very important rôle in therapeutics, and, in fact, was regarded almost as a panacea, but at present its use is much more restricted, and some doubt is en-

tertained as to its possessing any therapeutic value whatever. At the same time it has been the subject of much and laborious investigation, partly because it has frequently given rise to poisoning, and partly because the study of its effects has thrown much light on some physiological and pathological processes. It differs from most poisons in acting for the most part on certain phases of the animal metabolism, and in having comparatively little direct action at the point of application, or, indeed, upon any single organ.

Phosphorus is absorbed with difficulty, because it is very insoluble in water and the body fluids and is only slowly volatilized at ordinary body temperature. Large masses of phosphorus may thus pass through the alimentary canal without serious effects, because they fail to be dissolved and absorbed. But when it is taken in a finely divided condition or in solution in oil, it gives rise to symptoms in very small quantity, and has been found to induce fatal poisoning in man in doses of 0.05–0.1 G. (1–2 grs.).[1] In these conditions it is absorbed partly as vapor, partly in solution in water, which dissolves only traces however, and probably chiefly in solution in the fats and oils, in which it is much more soluble. Phosphorus vapor is also absorbed by the lungs, and the symptoms of chronic poisoning in match factories are believed to arise in this way. It does not seem to be taken up from the skin, and has in fact little effect unless when rubbed on it, when it ignites and gives rise to severe burns; phosphorus burns do not cause phosphorus poisoning, however, as is sometimes stated. The red amorphous phosphorus is much less poisonous than the ordinary yellow form, because it is less soluble and also less volatile, and consequently fails to be absorbed.

Phosphorus exists in the blood as such, and the effects on the tissues are unquestionably due to the element itself, and not to the oxygen or hydrogen compounds, as has been supposed. Some phosphuretted hydrogen (PH_3) may be formed in the bowel, but is comparatively unimportant, the great mass of the phosphorus being absorbed unchanged. As soon as it is oxidized, phosphorus loses its specific action, all of the acids being comparatively harmless. Phosphorus has been detected in the blood, and, it is said, in some of the excretions.

It is devoid of action on albumins in solution, and has no immediate irritant effects, such as are seen in poisoning with the heavy metals.

Symptoms.—When a poisonous dose of phosphorus is swallowed, no effects are elicited as a general rule for several hours. The first symptoms are pain and discomfort in the region of the stomach, nausea and eructation of the vapor with its characteristic garlic odor, and then vomiting, the contents of the stomach having the same odor, and being phosphorescent in the dark. Later, bile may be vomited, and some diarrhœa may set in, although this is not a common symptom. The nausea and vomiting often continue without further symptoms for

[1] Phosphorus is often used in suicide, generally in the form of rat poison or of match heads. Each phosphorus match is estimated to carry 3–5 mg. of phosphorus, so that 15–20 match heads are sufficient to induce fatal poisoning.

several days, but frequently disappear, and the patient apparently recovers, particularly if the dose has been small, or if most of it has been removed by vomiting or by washing out the stomach. In the course of a few days, however, the symptoms recur, and are generally accompanied by some jaundice; the pain extends from the stomach to the liver, and soon to the whole of the abdomen. The vomited matter no longer contains phosphorus, but may be bloody. The patient complains of general weakness and faintness; the pulse is weak, the liver extends far below the ribs, and the urine shows characteristic changes (see page 602); hæmorrhages occur from the nose, bowel, uterus, and under the skin, and eventually a condition of collapse and fatal coma follow. Convulsions and delirium have been observed in a considerable proportion of cases towards the termination of the intoxication. Death may occur, however, in the first stage or early in the second, before complete exhaustion is reached, and in these cases would seem to be best explained by the direct action of the poison on the heart. If only a small quantity be swallowed or if active therapeutic measures be taken early, the patient may recover without any secondary symptoms, and even when these have followed, the prognosis is not hopeless, for the symptoms slowly disappear in a certain proportion of cases.

Exposure to the fumes of phosphorus has long been known to give rise to periostitis and necrosis of the lower jaw. The disease begins from a carious tooth or from some lesion of the gum, and may involve most of the jaw, which becomes swollen and painful and eventually evacuates large quantities of pus with pieces of dead bone. This necrosis was formerly frequent in match factories, but has become rarer since amorphous phosphorus has been substituted for the yellow form, and since greater attention has been paid to the ventilation of the factories and to the condition of the teeth of the employees. Magitot has recently advanced the opinion that exposure to phosphorus fumes gives rise to a mild chronic form of poisoning, quite aside from the necrosis, which is comparatively rare. The symptoms are cachexia, slight jaundice, anæmia, and abuminuria, and in more advanced cases chronic enteritis and diarrhœa, bronchitis, and a curious fragility of the bones.

Action: Fatty Degeneration.—A very striking feature in phosphorus poisoning, and one that was early recognized in its history, is the appearance of numerous fat globules in the cells of many organs, notably in those of the liver, kidney, gastric and intestinal glands, and in the muscle fibres of the heart, stomach, intestine, smaller arteries and often of the skeletal muscles. The question has been raised whether this fat is formed by the degeneration of the protoplasm of the cells in which it is found, or whether it is not transported from other parts of the body and only deposited in these cells, the school of Voit maintaining the former view, while Pflüger and his pupils uphold the latter. The advantage at present seems to lie with Pflüger, who has shown that the total fat of the body is not increased by phosphorus, although this has been met by Lindemann's explanation that a certain amount of fat

is destroyed during the intoxication, and that if more fat were not formed from the proteids through the action of the poison, there would be found a marked deficiency at death. A strong argument for Pflüger's view is adduced by Rosenberg, who found that when an animal has been fed on foreign fats (*e. g.*, a dog upon mutton suet) and is then poisoned with phosphorus, the fat found in the liver cells is that characteristic of the food and not that of the poisoned animal as might be expected if it were derived from the proteids. The question cannot yet be said to be determined, although the burden of proof certainly seems to rest on the defenders of the earlier view that the fat arose from the degenerated proteids of the cells in which it is found. The fatty degeneration or infiltration sets in only after some time, and, in fact, accompanies the secondary symptoms for the most part, although the cells of the stomach and upper part of the intestine suffer sooner, and the beginning of this process is probably the cause of the early vomiting.

In phosphorus poisoning, as in other instances of fatty degeneration, the process commences in cloudy swelling of the cells followed by the appearance of granules, which soon develop into fat globules. Eventually the degenerated cells break up into detritus.

Another feature in phosphorus poisoning, which is, however, better seen after repeated small doses than after a single large one, is the **Proliferation of the Interstitial Connective Tissue** of the stomach, liver and kidney, which finally induces typical cirrhosis of these organs. It was formerly supposed that this indicated a specific irritant action of the phosphorus vapor on the connective tissue, but many pathologists now regard this proliferation as a secondary result of the necrosis of the parenchyma cells. In animals poisoned by the prolonged administration of small quantities of phosphorus, the ordinary effects of hepatic and renal cirrhosis have been induced, such as dropsy, anæmia and cachexia.

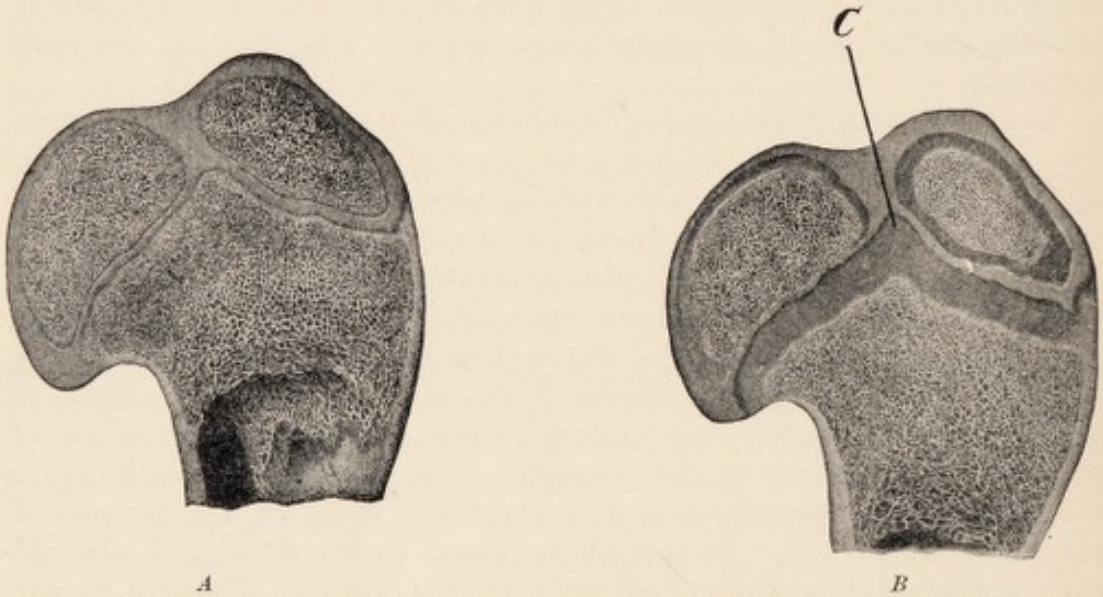
Besides the cells which have undergone fatty degeneration, the liver often contains numerous microscopic areas of necrotic tissue and in other parts actively dividing parenchymatous cells.

When very minute quantities of phosphorus are administered to animals, no poisoning results, but according to Wegner a specific action on the **Bones** is induced, especially in young animals, in which the bones are still growing. Thus, in young rabbits, quantities of $\frac{1}{10}$–$\frac{1}{5}$ mg. given for several weeks are found to be followed by characteristic changes in the growth of the long bones, apparently induced by the phosphorus acting as an irritant or stimulant to the bone-forming cells (osteoblasts). Wherever cancellous bone is being formed from cartilage, phosphorus is stated by Wegner to cause the deposit of a layer which resembles the dense bone of the shaft in the normal animal in general appearance and also histologically. This layer of dense bone at the growing point is at first the only change induced, but if the treatment lasts longer, the soft cancellous bone which was deposited before the phosphorus treatment began,

P. causes formation of dense bone & absorption of cancellous bone.

is gradually absorbed. The medullary cavity of the bone is thus enlarged, and may, in fact, extend into the epiphyses, which in the normal bone are filled with cancellous tissue, but which now form part of the much lengthened cavity. Eventually the whole of the cancellous bone may be absorbed, and a similar process of absorption begins in the bone formed at first under phosphorus, while the dense deposit is pushed further into the remaining cartilage. The development of bone from cartilage is not the only process affected, however, for Wegner states that in the bone deposited from the periosteum a somewhat similar change is induced, as is shown by its becoming denser and by the Haversian canals being much contracted in size. In full-

FIG. 50.



A B

Section of the head of the femur in calf. *A*, normal, *B*, after treatment with minute doses of phosphorus. *C*, the cap of dense bone at the growing point. (After WEGNER.)

grown animals the changes in the bone are much less distinct, but the lamellæ of the spongy tissue are said to be thickened by phosphorus treatment, and in the fowl Wegner states that the medullary cavity may be completely obliterated by the deposition of hard bone. Wegner supposes that this effect on bone is due to a specific action on the bone-forming cells, analogous to that which he observed in the connective tissue of the liver. As has been mentioned already, however, the cirrhosis of the liver in chronic phosphorus poisoning is believed by many not to be due to primary irritation of the interstitial tissue, but to be secondary to the destruction of the parenchymatous cells, so that this analogy is rendered doubtful.

Wegner found further that when the calcium salts were withdrawn from the food of animals treated with phosphorus, the exaggerated activity of the bone-forming cells continued, but no lime was deposited, so that the bone presented the appearance of rickets. The same result has, however, been obtained by other investigators by the withdrawal of calcium without phosphorus. Kassowitz took up the inves-

tigation some twelve years later, and observed the layer of white dense bone described by Wegner at the edge of the ossifying cartilage, but regards it not as the result of excessive activity of the osteoblasts, but as due to a slower absorption of the calcified cartilage from a less rapid extension of the blood vessels than is normal. With large doses he produced appearances closely resembling those of rickets. Several other investigators have observed changes in the bones after phosphorus, so that there is good reason to believe that it possesses some specific action on them, although some writers failed to obtain definite results and of those who observed a modification in the growth no two agree in the description of the changes or in their interpretation. This specific action on the bone-forming tissues and particularly on the periosteum has been used by Wegner to explain the necrosis of the jaw in match factories. He supposes that the phosphorus vapor reaching the periosteum of the jaw through a carious tooth or some lesion of the gums, excites a mild periostitis, which in turn leads to the formation of new layers of bone around the jaw. Necrosis of the bones has not been satisfactorily demonstrated in animals exposed to phosphorus vapor, although numerous experiments have been performed with the object of studying its development. The view of the latest investigators is that microbial infection is necessary to permit of the changes observed clinically, but that phosphorus induces some change in the bones which predisposes them to infection by the tubercle bacillus and other organisms which induce necrosis. The occurrence of necrosis of the jaw is in fact a strong argument for the correctness of the view that a specific action on bone exists, for under no other poison, even when much more irritant vapor is inhaled, does a similar process occur in man. The exact nature of this action on bone, and its relation to rickets and to osteomalacia must, however, be left for further research to determine.

Phosphorus weakens and slows the **Heart** when it is applied to it directly in the frog, or by intravenous injection in mammals. In many cases of acute poisoning in man, however, the heart does not seem to be seriously affected until very late, and this is particularly the case when comparatively small quantities have been absorbed. In those cases in which large amounts are swallowed in solution or in fine division, and in which death occurs before any secondary symptoms have been developed, the fatal issue is generally ascribed to the cardiac action. This direct action on the heart must be distinguished from the fatty degeneration of the cardiac muscle, which is seen in the later stages of poisoning, for no degeneration of the heart, and, in fact, no pathological changes whatever, may be found in those rapidly fatal cases. Phosphorus acts on the heart muscle directly, and does not seem to affect the regulating nerves in any way. According to Pal, the blood-pressure is lowered in some cases not by cardiac action, but by the dilation of the vessels.

The **Blood** is but little changed outside the body by phosphorus, for though Araki states that the hæmoglobin parts with oxygen more

slowly than usual, the difference is trifling. In many cases of fatal poisoning, the blood is found not to clot so readily as usual, and sometimes to remain fluid for forty-eight hours or more. According to Corin and Ansiaux and Jacobj this occurs only in cases in which the patients live for several days, and is not a direct effect of the poison, but is due to the changes in the intestine and liver, which lessen or entirely destroy the fibrinogen. Jacobj states that the blood not only fails to clot but is capable of redissolving fibrin and attributes this to the presence of the autolytic ferment of the liver.

The absence of clotting in the blood may be a factor in the hæmorrhages which are met with among the symptoms of the second stage, but the immediate cause of these is the fatty degeneration of the muscular coat of the smaller arteries throughout the body. These changes in the blood vessels may perhaps explain the œdema of the retina, which is seen in animals poisoned with phosphorus, though these have also been attributed to some change in the blood. Occasionally gangrene of the extremities has been observed in phosphorus poisoning, probably owing to the changes in the vessel walls.

Small doses of phosphorus generally increase the number of the red-blood cells in man, and even in poisoning a sudden or gradual increase in these may occur, along with a diminution of the leucocytes. The hæmoglobin is not correspondingly augmented, however. In the lower animals the effect on the blood cells varies a good deal; in the dog, a considerably increased destruction is generally believed to take place; in the rabbit, no distinct alteration in the number of the red cells but some leucocytosis has been observed, while in fowls an increase in the leucocytes accompanies a marked destruction of the red cells; in the frog the number of red cells is not reduced.

The peripheral **Nerves** and **Muscles** do not seem to be affected in phosphorus poisoning, except in so far as the latter undergo fatty degeneration. An excised muscle lives almost as long in salt solution containing phosphorus as in the unpoisoned solution.

The **Central Nervous System** is also little changed by phosphorus. The coma and convulsions which appear before death may be due rather to the disordered metabolism than to any direct influence, as is shown by the fact that consciousness is preserved throughout the first stage, and as a general rule until late in the second. Certain changes in the nerve cells, which were alleged to be induced by the action of phosphorus, have been shown to be due to the method of hardening the tissues that was used.

The fatty degeneration of the epithelial cells of the **Stomach and Intestine** explains the abdominal pain, the vomiting and the occasional diarrhœa seen among the secondary symptoms. The earlier phases of this action may be the cause of the vomiting and nausea of the first stage. This degeneration occurs also when phosphorus is injected hypodermically, and is therefore of the same nature as that in the other organs. The cells of the stomach first attacked are those of the glands, and the condition has been termed gastradenitis.

The fatty changes in the **Liver** cause a considerable increase in the area of hepatic dulness, and at the same time induce some pain and tenderness over the organ.

The icterus of phosphorus poisoning has been examined by Stadelmann in dogs. He found that the changes in the bile secretion may be divided into three phases, in the first of which a larger amount of bile pigment is excreted than usual, this denoting an unwonted activity of the liver cells. In the second phase the bile becomes clouded, is less deeply colored and more viscous, and icterus makes its appearance in the skin and conjunctiva. The secretion in this stage seems to be derived largely from the mucous cells of the smaller bile ducts, and contains comparatively little of the excretion of the liver cell proper. In the third phase, which is that of recovery, the bile loses its turbidity and viscosity, and is very dark in color, because the pigment which was deposited in the tissues during the second stage is reabsorbed and excreted in the bile; the jaundice color of course disappears from the skin as the bile pigment is reabsorbed. The bile salts are also very much reduced in phosphorus poisoning. Stadelmann attributes these changes to the bile capillaries being rendered less pervious, by the enlarged liver cells or the proliferating connective tissue pressing on them and narrowing their lumen. This prevents the bile which is formed by the liver cell from reaching the gall bladder, and the pigment is therefore absorbed and gives rise to jaundice. The pale viscous fluid which escapes from the ducts in the second stage is probably not true liver secretion, but mucus from the ducts. During recovery, the hepatic cells lessen in size, the pressure on the bile capillaries is relieved and the secretion escapes, while the pigment which was distributed through the tissues is reabsorbed and excreted by the ordinary channel. The jaundice may also be accounted for in part by the destruction of the red cells of the blood and consequent increase of pigment formation in the liver. This view is supported by the fact that in the rabbit, in which the red cells are not decomposed by phosphorus, no icterus is observed, while in the dog, in which some of the cells are destroyed, it is very marked. In man, however, there is no evidence that the red cells are diminished in number, yet jaundice is one of the commonest symptoms.

In addition to the fatty infiltration of the cells and the changes in the bile, the liver has been shown to undergo a specific alteration in its activity, which is manifested by the presence of unusually large quantities of ammonia and of leucin and tyrosin, which are not among its normal constituents. When the liver of an unpoisoned animal is kept from putrefaction for some time, the tissue is broken down by the action of an autolytic ferment, and ammonia, leucin and tyrosin are formed in large quantity; the liver in phosphorus poisoning undergoes the same changes when preserved from putrefaction, but the autolysis progresses much more rapidly. Jacobj therefore infers that phosphorus augments the activity of the autolytic ferment of the liver and thus leads to the presence in the living organ of some products which are absent in the normal one. He regards the disappearance of

the fibrinogen of the blood as a further effect of this liver autolysis, for he found that the injection of the autolytic ferment into normal animals prevented coagulation.

The fatty degeneration of the **Renal Epithelium** may account in part for the albuminuria, which is not generally severe, and is not infrequently absent in cases of poisoning. Fatty casts and even globules of fat are often found in the urine in cases which run a chronic course. Blood and hæmoglobin may also appear in it from hæmorrhages into the kidney. The other changes in the urine are not referable to the renal disease, but to the modification of the general metabolism of the tissues, the kidneys merely excreting the abnormal products of decomposition which appear in the blood.

These abnormalities in the **Urine** have been examined very often, but some discrepancies are still to be found in the accounts of different authors. The urine itself is often somewhat increased in quantity in the early stages of the intoxication, but afterwards becomes deficient, and towards death complete anuria may be observed. The increased urine is probably due to the increase of the urinary substances in the blood, while the diminution, which may occur early, may be explained by the small quantity of water absorbed from the stomach and intestine, by the degeneration of the secretory cells, or by the failure of the circulation.

The nitrogen of the urine varies considerably in different cases. Very often in the first few days after the ingestion of the poison, it is markedly diminished in amount, but this is not due to any specific action of the poison, but to the prolonged nausea and vomiting which prevent the absorption of food; the nitrogenous excretion thus corresponds to that during the first few days of starvation. After this, however, a very considerable increase in the nitrogen is observed, even although the patient continues to fast. In the course of starvation a rise in the nitrogen excretion also occurs after some time, but this is never so great as that seen in phosphorus poisoning, so that the poison has generally been credited with a specific action increasing the waste of the nitrogenous tissues. The excretion of urea does not increase in proportion with the total nitrogen, in fact less urea is often excreted than in the first days of the intoxication. But the nitrogen excreted in the form of ammonia is much increased in man and the dog, while it is not altered in the rabbit. This excretion of ammonia suggests the formation of excess of acid in the tissues,[1] and as a matter of fact sarcolactic acid is found in very considerable quantity in the urine in man, the dog and the rabbit in phosphorus poisoning. The increased ammonia of the urine is therefore to be referred, at any rate in part, to the formation of this acid in the tissues, and if fixed alkalies are administered, the ammonia of the urine falls at once in amount because the alkali neutralizes the sarcolactic acid.

The uric acid excreted is often somewhat increased in amount, but on the whole is little altered by phosphorus in man. This perhaps

[1] See Ammonia, Acids, pp. 502, 561.

indicates that the nuclei of the cells are less subject to the action of the poison than the cytoplasm, and this is supported by histological examination, for the fat globules are found in the cell body, and not in the nucleus.

The other nitrogenous constituents of the urine are not so much affected, at any rate in man ; some increase in the extractive substances is observed, this forming but a small part of the nitrogenous increase however. Some abnormal products are occasionally, but by no means constantly seen. The best known of these are tyrosin and leucin crystals which are not always present in the urine, however, although they have been found in the blood in some quantity. Baumann found an increase in the substances of the aromatic series in the urine. Albumin may be present in small amount, and peptone is sometimes excreted. In addition, Harnack describes some products which are not peptones but which are apparently closely related to the proteids.

The chlorides of the urine are much reduced in amount, owing to the patient taking little or no food. The phosphates of the urine are often very considerably augmented, but not because of the excretion of phosphorus as phosphates, for the quantity absorbed is too small to cause any appreciable change. The increase in the phosphates is rather to be ascribed to an augmented waste of the tissues, and the sulphates are also excreted in larger quantity for the same reason.

When icterus is present, the urine may be dark in color from the bile pigment excreted and bile acids are also often contained in it. Sarcolactic acid appears in considerable quantity, and is sometimes accompanied by some sugar.

The alterations in the urine point to some grave derangement in the **Metabolism**, by which, among other results, an excess of sarcolactic acid is formed in the tissues and is not oxidized to carbonic acid and water as in the normal organism. This acid has been found excreted into the stomach along with hydrochloric acid, and in the blood in the form of salts. Meyer found a considerable reduction in the alkalinity of the blood in phosphorus poisoning, the normal alkalies having been neutralized by this acid, and it seems probable that many of the symptoms of phosphorus poisoning may be due to the lessened alkalinity. The lactic acid is formed from glycogen, which has been found to be remarkably reduced in the liver in cases of phosphorus poisoning. Another body which disappears from the liver almost wholly is lecithin, but this is probably due to the inanition. The appearance of lactic acid, sugar, and albumin in the urine is attributed by Araki to insufficient oxidation in the tissues, and in the statement that lack of oxidation plays a part in phosphorus poisoning, he only confirms the impression of many earlier writers.

It is frequently stated that the decomposition of the proteids is accelerated, but this belief arises from the large amount of nitrogen in the urine, and this has been shown to be due for the most part to the formation of sarcolactic acid in excess, that is, to the retarded oxidation. A further complication of the question arises from the fact that defi-

cient combustion in itself seems to increase the nitrogen of the urine, and it therefore seems possible to explain most of the deviations from the normal in the urine as the result of the lessened oxidation. At the same time it is quite possible that the proteid waste may be increased by phosphorus acting on the tissues in some other unknown way, as well as by diminishing their combustion.

The frequent occurrences in the urine of leucin and tyrosin is explained by the destructive changes in the liver cells, and in fact it is possible that this alteration of the liver is responsible for the symptoms of insufficient oxidation, and that the specific action of phosphorus is exercised on the liver, the other tissues being changed to a less degree or only indirectly.

It was formerly believed that the fatty degeneration was dependent on lessened oxidation; that the fat formed by the decomposition of the proteids could not be oxidized as it is normally, and therefore remained in the cell. But this is not consistent with the view prevailing at present, that the accumulation of fat in the liver and other organs is due to its migration from other parts of the body, so that the relation between the two phenomena is not so simple as has been supposed. Lessened oxidation and fatty degeneration occur together under so many conditions, however, that there must almost certainly be a causal relation between them, though it is impossible to state at present its exact nature.[1]

In view of the curious effect of phosphorus on the tissue change of the vertebrates, its action upon simpler forms possesses some interest. It has been found, however, that yeast, infusoria and bacteria are very little affected by the presence of this poison, and living microbes are found in large numbers on solid pieces of phosphorus. The ferments are also unaffected for the most part, pepsin and pancreatin acting in the presence of phosphorus. Curiously enough, although the oxidation is imperfect in animals poisoned with phosphorus, Hauser has found that if phosphorus be added to the blood which is perfused through an excised organ, the oxidation is as rapid as if no poison had been added. He found, however, that some of the synthetic processes of the body were probably retarded by it, for less hippuric acid was formed in a kidney perfused with blood containing phosphorus than in one in which normal blood was used. On the other hand the autolytic activity of the liver is augmented, as has been noted already.

The **Temperature** is often low in the later stages of phosphorus poisoning, but slight fever is also observed in some cases.

The **Fate** of phosphorus in the body is still obscure. It is possible that some of it is oxidized to phosphoric acid, and some phosphorus is said to be excreted by the lungs, although the statement that the breath becomes phosphorescent seems to be extremely improbable. It is also

[1] The lessened oxidation in the tissues was at one time believed to be due to the phosphorus using up the oxygen for its own oxidation, but this is obviously incorrect, for the amount of oxygen required for this would be quite insignificant. Another theory, that phosphorus acts by liberating nascent oxygen in the cells, is based on no sufficient evidence.

excreted in the urine in some organic combinations, of which nothing is known, though they are said to be volatile. In pregnant animals poisoned with phosphorus, the fœtus is found to undergo fatty degeneration, so that the poison would seem to pass through the placenta.

Phosphuretted hydrogen (PH_3) induces the same symptoms as phosphorus, but is more rapidly fatal. The oxygen compounds do not seem to have any such effects, and for the most part are harmless except in very large doses.

Preparations.

Phosphorus (U. S. P., B. P.), a translucent, nearly colorless solid resembling wax in lustre and consistency. It emits white fumes in the air, which are luminous in the dark, and takes fire spontaneously. The fumes have the odor of garlic, and in dilute solution phosphorus has a harsh, disagreeable taste. It is very little soluble in water, more so in alcohol, and dissolves to about two per cent. in fats and oils. ½–1 mg. ($\frac{1}{100}$–$\frac{1}{30}$ gr.) (B. P. $\frac{1}{100}$–$\frac{1}{20}$ gr.).

Zinci Phosphidum (U. S. P.) (Zn_3P_2), a gritty powder of a dark gray color, or crystalline fragments of a dark metallic lustre, and with a faint odor and taste of phosphorus, insoluble in water or alcohol. 0.003–0.005 G. ($\frac{1}{20}$–$\frac{1}{12}$ gr.) in pill.

Oleum Phosphoratum (U. S. P., B. P.) is a one per cent. solution in almond oil and ether. 0.05–0.1 c c. (1–2 mins.) (1–5 mins. B. P.). Phosphorated oil ought to be freshly prepared and kept in tightly stoppered bottles; solutions of one per cent. tend to lose their strength by evaporation of the phosphorus and by oxidation, when the bottle contains air. It is said to keep better in more dilute solution (one per mille). It is probable that much of the oil dispensed is much under one per cent. in strength.

Pilulæ Phosphori (U. S. P.), each pill contains 0.6 mg. of phosphorus ($\frac{1}{100}$ gr.).

Pilula Phosphori (B. P.), 2 per cent., 1–2 grs.

Spiritus Phosphori (U. S. P.) (Tincture of Phosphorus) is an alcoholic solution containing 1.2 parts of phosphorus in 1,000 of alcohol. 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Elixir Phosphori (U. S. P.) contains about $\frac{1}{5}$ of the amount of phosphorus of the spirits of phosphorus. 1–4 c.c. (15–60 mins.).

Therapeutic Uses.—Phosphorus has been recommended in various diseases of the central nervous system and in neuralgia, but it is still questionable whether it is of any real benefit in these. There is more reason to believe in its virtues in bone disease, more especially in rachitis and osteomalacia, for in a number of instances marked improvement has been observed in these diseases under its use. It is generally given in solution in cod-liver oil, and the benefit may be due in part to the menstruum, but not entirely, for Sternberg observed a relapse in a case of osteomalacia when pure cod-liver oil was substituted for the phosphorated oil. In rickets a solution containing 0.01 G. in 100 c.c. of cod-liver oil is recommended; 2–4 teaspoonfuls to be given each day.[1] In osteomalacia a one per cent. solution may be prescribed and 1–5 mg. phosphorus taken each day.

[1] This would be equivalent to ½–2 mg. of phosphorus daily, but as a matter of fact the phosphorated oil from which the prescription is filled contains much less than one per cent., so that the dose actually taken probably seldom amounts to more than one milligram daily.

Rey found the lime excreted in the urine in rickets increased under the treatment with phosphorated cod-liver oil, much less under the oil alone, and not at all under phosphorus alone. He regards this as indicating an increased absorption of lime from the food. Other bone diseases, such as caries and ununited fractures, have also been treated with phosphorus occasionally, but the results have not been recorded in sufficient numbers to allow of any statement as to the efficacy of the treatment.

Treatment of Phosphorus Poisoning. — Phosphorus is comparatively slowly absorbed from the alimentary canal, so that in the early stages an attempt ought to be made to remove it by emetics or the stomach tube, and by purges. Fats and oils must be avoided, as they tend to dissolve the poison and promote its absorption. Phosphorus has been found in the stools three days after its ingestion, and a sharp purge may therefore be of use up to this time.

Another method of treatment is that aiming at the oxidation of the phosphorus in the stomach, or at the formation of unabsorbable compounds. It is stated that turpentine oil forms one or more compounds with phosphorus which are very much less poisonous than the original element, and possibly some oxidation of the phosphorus may be induced by the oil if it has not been recently distilled. The treatment of phosphorus poisoning with turpentine oil is therefore widely practised, but from the latest experiments (Busch) it seems entirely useless, for he found that animals succumbed to almost the same dose of phosphorus whether turpentine was given or not. Sulphate of copper is also recommended in phosphorus poisoning, a large dose being given first as an emetic, and afterwards smaller doses to form an insoluble compound, copper phosphide. Permanganate of potassium solution, one per mille, has been recently advised to oxidize the phosphorus, while peroxide of hydrogen solution is of less value. In the secondary stage alkalies are recommended in order to neutralize the excess of sarcolactic acid formed in the tissues.

Phosphorus necrosis has to be treated surgically on the same principles as other necroses of bone.

Bibliography.

Wegner. Virchow's Arch., lv., p. 11.
Kassowitz. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., vii., p. 36.
Sternberg. Ibid., xxii., p. 265.
Stubenrauch. Arch. f. klin. Chir., lix., p. 144; lxi., p. 547.
Jacobj. Zeitschr. f. physiol. Chem., xxx., p. 174.
Mira u. Stoeltzer. Jahrb. f. Kinderheilkunde, xlvii., p. 153.
Rey. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1895, p. 569.
Stadelmann. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxiv., p. 270.
Aufrecht. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xxiii., p. 331.
Ackermann. Virchow's Arch., cxv., p. 216.
Stolnickow. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1887. Supplement, p. 1.
Schultze. Virchow's Arch., cii., p. 299.
Meyer. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xiv., p. 313.
Pal. Wien. klin. Woch., ix., p. 999.
Selmi. Arch. f. Pharmacie, ccxvii., p. 253.
Harnack. Berl. klin. Woch., 1893, p. 1137.

Miura. Virchow's Arch., xcvi., p. 54.
Bauer. Ztschr. f. Biol., vii., p. 63; xiv., p. 527.
Schultzen u. Riess. Annalen der Charite, xv., p. 1.
Fraenkel. Berl. klin. Woch., 1878, p. 265. Virchow's Arch., lxvii., p. 278.
Falck. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., vii., p. 376.
Sotnitschewsy. Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem., iii., p. 391.
Fraenkel u. Röhmann. Ibid., iv., p. 439.
Leo. Ibid., ix., p. 469.
Araki. Ibid., xvii., p. 311; xix., p. 422.
Münzer. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., lii., p. 199.
Taussig. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxx., p. 161.
Hauser. Ibid., xxxvi., p. 165.
Briliant. Ibid., xv., p. 439.
Corin u. Ansiaux. Vierteljahr. f. ger. Med., 1894, i., pp. 80, 212.
Hessler. Ibid., 1881, ii., p. 248, and 1882, p. 10.
Lebert et Wyss. Arch. gen. de Med., 1868, ii., p. 257.
Busch. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1892.
Athanasiu. Pflüger's Arch., lxxiv., p. 511.
Taylor. Journ. of Exp. Med., iv., p. 399.
Rosenfeld. Cong. f. inn. Med., xv., p. 427.
Lindemann. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xli., p. 191. Ztschr. f. Biol., xxxix., p. 1.
Steinhaus. Ziegler's Beiträge z. path. Anatomie, xxii., p. 466.
Monti, Slick, Fränkel, Zweifel, Kassowitz. Wiener klin. Woch., 1901.

XXXI. ARSENIC.

Some of the less active preparations of arsenic, such as the sulphides, Realgar (As_2S_2) and Orpiment (As_2S_3), have been known in therapeutics since the beginning of the Christian era, but this metal was brought into especial prominence in later times through the frequent use of the more dangerous oxides in criminal poisoning. Thus the notorious Aqua Tofana of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries owed its activity to the presence of arsenic, and various arsenical compounds have been used up to the last few years more largely than almost any other poison in suicide and homicide. This is to be explained by their having been widely employed in the arts, and thus being readily accessible to all, and by the general recognition of their poisonous nature. Of late years intentional arsenic poisoning has become somewhat less common, though on the other hand, accidental poisoning is still met with not infrequently, especially in the chronic forms. Many of these chronic cases are extremely difficult to diagnose, and probably often pass unrecognized by the attending physician. In view of this fact it seems desirable that more stringent measures should be taken to reduce the use of arsenic in the arts, and especially to prevent its being brought in contact with food. The danger of the use of the green arsenical dyes, such as Scheele's Green (arsenite of copper), and Schweinfurt's Green, or Paris Green (arsenite and acetate of copper), is now generally recognized, but arsenic is still used in the preparation of other colors, and these may give rise to poisoning from the imperfect removal of the metal. It has also been used in dilute solution to preserve food, and a solution is often sprayed upon grape vines and other plants to preserve them from the attacks of insects. Poisoning has occurred from these sources and is difficult to diagnose, as it is in some cases impossible to find the means by which the arsenic

entered the system. A widespread epidemic of poisoning in England in 1900 drew attention to a source of arsenic which had not up to that time received the attention it merited. Several thousands of persons suffered from arsenic being contained in cheap beers made from glucose, in the manufacture of which sulphuric acid had been employed. The sulphuric acid was formed from iron pyrites containing arsenic, and the poison was carried from the sulphuric acid with the glucose into the beer. Sulphuric acid is used in the manufacture of so many drugs, foods and other substances in constant use, that this intimation that it may convey arsenic into articles where its existence has not hitherto been suspected, is of the gravest importance.

Metallic arsenic is insoluble in water, and passes through the alimentary canal for the most part unchanged and without action, but it is possible that small quantities may be oxidized to arsenious acid in the stomach and intestine under some conditions. Some symptoms have been observed when it is rubbed on the skin in a state of fine division, and these are probably due to its absorption in the form of an oxide. The characteristic "arsenic" action is induced by the salts of arsenious acid (AsO_3H_3), and by its anhydride (As_2O_3) which is often known as arsenic, and which exists in the tissues as arsenites. Arsenic action is therefore due, not to the element, but to the ion of arsenious acid. The anhydride and salts of arsenic acid (H_3AsO_4) cause similar symptoms, but are less poisonous and act more slowly than those of arsenious acid, and may probably owe their effects to the formation of arsenites in the tissues.

The action being due to the ion and not to the element, it necessarily follows that compounds from which the ion is not liberated, do not induce the arsenic action, or do so only when they are changed to bodies which can dissociate the arsenious acid ion. Thus organic arsenic combinations in which the metallic atom is directly attached to carbon are only feebly poisonous, but in course of time seem to be changed to arsenious acid in the tissues, and then cause typical poisoning. The best known of these are cacodylic oxide ($(CH_3)_2As_2O(CH_3)_2$) and cacodylic acid ($(CH_3)_2AsOOH$). Arsenical compounds of the aromatic series have also been examined pharmacologically and induce arsenic symptoms when given in large quantities. This poisonous action is again due not to the undecomposed molecule, but to the arsenious acid derived from it, some of which is found excreted in the urine.

Arsenious acid, which in the following pages will be taken as the representative of "arsenic" action, has a somewhat sweetish taste, and is therefore not so likely to be detected by the victim as many of the other poisons.

Symptoms.— In large quantities arsenic very often causes no symptoms for half an hour or more, but then the patient complains of a feeling of constriction in the throat, of difficulty in swallowing, and of discomfort in the stomach region. This soon increases to violent pain, and is accompanied by vomiting, and later by watery diarrhœa. The stools are at first of ordinary diarrhœic appearance, but later resemble the "rice-water" stools of cholera, in that they consist almost entirely of minute shreds of disintegrated mucous membrane suspended

Corrosive poison.

in a serous fluid; sometimes, however, they are clear and gelatinous in appearance. In some cases, blood appears in the vomited matter and also in the stools, but this is not by any means an invariable feature. The urine is diminished, or entirely suppressed, from the great amount of fluid eliminated by the stomach and bowel. These symptoms from the alimentary tract are accompanied by giddiness, cramps in the muscles, headache, and soon by collapse, with cold, damp skin, pallor, feeble pulse and weak, sighing respiration; this later passes into coma, and death follows with or without convulsions. In cases in which the dose is smaller than the fatal one, or in which much of the poison is eliminated by vomiting, the patient may recover without further symptoms than those already described. Frequently, however, he recovers from the acute symptoms only to develop those of chronic arsenical poisoning. In some instances it is said that no symptoms are present except those of collapse and coma. In acute poisoning death may occur within 24 hours, but more frequently the patient lives for 2–4 days or longer, and then succumbs to exhaustion. The fatal dose is very uncertain, because arsenic is very insoluble, and much of the poison may be thrown up by vomiting, or pass out in the stools unabsorbed. Thus in some cases, recovery has followed after very large quantities, while in others about 0.1 G. (1½ grs.) has proved fatal.

Chronic Arsenic Poisoning may arise from a single large dose, the effects persisting for weeks or months after the ingestion and new symptoms arising as the earlier ones disappear; more frequently, however, it is induced by the prolonged absorption of small quantities. The milder symptoms may arise from its therapeutic use, but typical cases are generally due to the presence of arsenic in the form of dyes in wall paper or clothes, or in stuffed animals in the rooms inhabited by the victims, or to the constant handling of arsenical pigments and other compounds in mines and manufactories. Widespread poisoning has been observed from the use of wines containing arsenic at Hyeres in France, from milk diluted with arsenical water in London, and from beer in the Manchester district. In these last cases the arsenic was in solution, but it often seems to be inhaled in the form of fine dust, which falls from the walls or other objects. It has been suggested that the arsenic dyes are decomposed by microbes and the volatile arseniuretted hydrogen (AsH_3) inhaled, but there seems no reason to suppose that this is the case, and the inhalation of fine particles is a sufficient explanation.

The symptoms of chronic arsenic poisoning, which are often very obscure, may be divided into three phases. In the *first* of these, the patient complains of weakness and languor, loss of appetite, some nausea and occasionally vomiting, with a sense of heaviness and discomfort in the stomach. Diarrhœa may be present, but is often absent, and in fact some constipation may occur.

In the *second* phase the conjunctiva is often red and inflamed, and symptoms of coryza appear, with sneezing, hoarseness and coughing,

from a catarrhal condition of the mucous membranes of the nose and larynx. Some swelling of the liver and jaundice may occur, but these are not generally well marked. Skin eruptions of various forms — papular, vesicular, or erythematous — are generally noted; very often the epidermis falls off in fine brownish scales, or in the hands and feet in large flakes (keratosis); a curious pigmentation is very common, the skin assuming a dark metallic color resembling in extreme forms that produced by rubbing a lead pencil upon it (arsenic melanosis). This pigmentation is much more marked in persons of dark complexion than in fair people in whom it may be indistinguishable from ordinary freckles; it generally disappears when the patient is removed from the poisonous atmosphere, but has been permanent in some cases. In prolonged poisoning the eruptions may simulate almost any form of skin disease, and the hair and nails fall off. Herpes is not infrequently observed and points to nervous disturbances such as are prominent features in the next phase.

These phases are not always distinct in cases of poisoning, and very often some of the symptoms of the second phase may appear before any marked disorder of the digestive tract. In the prolonged therapeutic use of arsenic, the first indications of commencing poisoning are redness, suffusion and swelling of the conjunctiva and eyelids, and dryness of the nose and throat, as in coryza. On the other hand, in workmen exposed to arsenical dust, the first symptoms may arise from the skin or from bronchial irritation.

The *third phase* is marked by disturbance of sensation and motion in localized areas, generally in the hands and feet (peripheral neuritis). It is often ushered in by intense persistent headache or by acute pain located around the knee, ankle or foot, less frequently in the wrist and hand. The patient complains of formication in the extremities, and of the discomfort caused by the pressure of the bedclothes on the feet and legs. The palms of the hands and the soles of the feet are often red, swollen and extremely sensitive to touch (erythromelalgia), and pressure on the muscles induces the most intense pain. Later, sensory paralysis may set in, especially in the extremities, and the less acute sense of touch in the feet and hands induces symptoms resembling those of locomotor ataxia. The sensitiveness to heat and cold may be exaggerated or dulled, or sometimes heat is not appreciated, while cold causes intense pain. The sense of pain varies in different cases, in some being abnormally acute, in others deadened. These sensory disturbances are followed in severe poisoning by motor paralysis which generally appears in the extensor muscles of the toes, later in the peronei muscles. More rarely the flexor muscles of the leg and foot are involved, and in some cases the affection commences in the extensors of the hand and fingers. As a general rule the paralysis is confined to the extremities, but in some cases it has been found to invade the trunk. It is generally, but not invariably, symmetrical, and the muscles affected atrophy rapidly, and contract weakly to the galvanic shock, not at all to the faradic except in the beginning of the

affection. This lessened excitability of the muscles sometimes appears before the typical degeneration reaction is observed, but is then followed by it later. The muscles are abnormally excitable to mechanical stimulation, however, while the tendon reflexes are generally entirely absent. There is sometimes some difficulty experienced in diagnosing arsenic from lead paralysis, but in the former there is often a history of acute poisoning, while the latter is almost invariably due to prolonged absorption. Disturbances of sensation are much more common in arsenic than in lead palsy, and in the latter the forearm muscles are generally affected first, in the former those of the leg. In arsenic poisoning atrophy is said to occur much more rapidly, and there is no line on the gums. Another condition which presents still greater difficulties in diagnosis is alcoholic neuritis. But in the latter skin eruptions are extremely rare, coryza is not present, and there are generally more marked brain symptoms than in arsenical cases. In doubtful cases the urine and the hair of the patient should be tested for arsenic.

Arsenic paralysis may appear as early as three days after an acute intoxication, but is commonly observed later and may occur only after 3–4 weeks. Some authors have asserted that in chronic arsenic poisoning there is a paralysis of the sexual powers (anaphrodisia), and ascribe this to an action on the nerves of the sexual organs, similar to that observed in the extremities, but this symptom is not by any means generally present, and, in fact, abnormal sexual excitement has been noted in some cases.

In very prolonged arsenic poisoning the patient may sink into an apathetic, semi-idiotic condition, or may become epileptic. In most cases the symptoms slowly disappear when the poison is removed, but even slight paralysis may last for many years before it is entirely cured, and after complete degeneration of the muscles little improvement is to be expected. The contractures which follow are generally due to the unopposed action of the sound muscles, but sometimes arise from the shortening of the paralyzed ones.

Arsenic poisoning generally occurs from the inhalation of particles of the drug, or from swallowing solutions or powders. But the same symptoms have been elicited in animals by subcutaneous or intravenous injection, and some cases of poisoning in men are recorded in which the arsenic gained entrance to the body through its application to burns or other surfaces denuded of skin, or from its application to mucous membranes, as in the vagina.

Action. — The symptoms of arsenic poisoning, as far as the **Alimentary Canal** is concerned, resemble those of corrosive poisoning so closely that it was long supposed that arsenic had some destructive effect upon albumins, resembling that of the acids and corrosive metals. Many attempts to form a combination between proteids and arsenic have been made, but have proved fruitless; arsenites and arsenious acid do not coagulate proteids or change them in any way, except when applied in such enormous quantities as never reach the stomach.

The action of arsenic on the alimentary canal cannot be explained as due to any ordinary form of corrosion, therefore, although the symptoms and the post-mortem appearances resemble in many points those of the corrosive poisons. Thus the mucous membrane of the stomach is generally found red and swollen, either in patches or throughout its whole extent. Hæmorrhages into it are occasionally present, but are not by any means a constant feature, and little or no erosion can be made out as a general rule. The epithelial coat can be rubbed off very easily, and is found to be in a state of fatty degeneration. It sometimes resembles a false membrane and has been described as such, but closer examination shows it to consist almost entirely of the degenerated epithelium. This destruction of the epithelium is often confined to particular parts of the organ, affecting the posterior wall chiefly in man. Where arsenic has been swallowed in powder, and has remained in contact with the wall for some time, the congestion is often more marked, and here even erosion may appear. In some cases no congestion of the stomach is met, the only lesion consisting in cloudy swelling and fatty degeneration of the gland-cells, similar to that mentioned under phosphorus.

The intestine presents very similar appearances, the mucous membrane being swollen and congested, more especially around Peyer's patches. It contains a quantity of thin fluid with flakes of membrane, resembling exactly the rice-water stools of cholera, and in fact it may be difficult to distinguish the intestine of arsenic poisoning from that of cholera. Small particles of arsenic are often found in the stomach and bowel, even after profuse vomiting and purging.

In some cases the redness and congestion extends up to the throat and causes a feeling of soreness in the mouth.

The first explanation suggested for the action of arsenic on the alimentary tract, namely, the corrosive action of the drug, has been shown to be incorrect, for the same symptoms arise when arsenic is absorbed from the subcutaneous tissue, or from the broken skin. This does not entirely preclude the corrosive action, for arsenic, though absorbed from the skin, may be excreted by the mucous membranes, and thus corrode them; and, as a matter of fact, small quantities (up to a milligram) have been isolated from the stomach and intestines, when arsenic was injected intravenously in animals, but these are obviously insufficient to cause such violent symptoms. Besides, as has been stated, arsenic does not change proteids in solution as the corrosive poisons do, and cannot therefore elicit typical corrosion. Boehm and his pupils have suggested that the gastro-intestinal action of arsenic is due, not to any direct action on the epithelium, but to the vascular changes induced by it. They suppose that the extreme dilatation of the intestinal vessels and capillaries gives rise to the congestion and swelling, and this in turn to the destruction of the lining membrane, perhaps by the exudation of fluid beneath the epithelium. This transudation of fluid is certainly in accord with the watery character of the stools in arsenic poisoning, but the explanation does not

seem entirely satisfactory, for it fails to account for the fatty degeneration and the cloudy swelling of the epithelium, which are in some cases the only lesions found here. The fatty degeneration is not confined to the stomach and bowel, but involves a number of other organs, although it is not as a general rule so widely distributed as in phosphorus poisoning. Arsenic then must be considered to have a specific action in causing fatty degeneration of the epithelium of the stomach and intestine. This in itself is sufficient to explain many of the symptoms from these organs, although it may well be that the vascular action is the cause of the excess of fluid in the intestine, and in fact, the fatty degeneration alone is insufficient to explain this feature, which is absent in phosphorus poisoning. In cases of poisoning where the arsenic is taken by the mouth, and especially when large quantities of dry arsenious acid are swallowed, the specific action on the epithelium and the vascular action are probably intensified by the direct contact of the poison. Filehne is disposed to regard the corrosion of the stomach which is sometimes observed, as due to the digestion of the epithelium killed by arsenic, and not to the direct action of the poison.

In therapeutic doses arsenic is said to increase the appetite and promote digestion, an effect which may perhaps be due to the specific action on the epithelium, this in its milder forms proving of advantage to the organ, though in excess it leads to its degeneration.

The action of arsenic on the **Circulation** has been investigated by several authors, who have obtained discordant results. In the frog the heart is slow and weak, eventually becomes irregular, and ceases in diastole after comparatively small doses; the action seems to be a direct paralysis of the muscle. In the mammal the heart is less affected; it is somewhat accelerated by very small doses injected intravenously, but is slowed by larger ones, and the inhibitory mechanism does not seem to be altered. The blood-pressure is often increased at first, but soon falls after large doses. The cause of this fall has been a matter of dispute, but the most recent investigator (Pistorius) attempts to bring the results of his predecessors into accord by explaining that the vaso-motor centre and later the splanchnic nerves lose their control over the vessels. When the pressure begins to fall, it may be restored by stimulation of the vaso-motor centre, but this loses its effect later, although direct stimulation of the splanchnic nerves still increases the tension. Still later the splanchnics lose their action through paralysis of their ends, or of the vascular walls, while the other vaso-constrictor nerves are still capable of narrowing the vessels; for instance stimulation of the cervical sympathetic still causes pallor of the ear, so that this action of the drug seems to be confined to the splanchnic area. The dilation of the mesenteric vessels leads to very marked congestion of the stomach and bowel, and along with the lessened efficiency of the heart reduces the blood-pressure to zero. Some evidence has been brought forward that under arsenic the capillaries permit the passage of fluid into the tissues more readily than normally;

this may explain the appearance of œdema in cases of poisoning and also the large amount of fluid in the stools and vomited matter.

The **Respiration** is somewhat accelerated at first by the intravenous injection of small quantities of arsenic, but afterwards returns to its normal rhythm. In cases of poisoning in man the respiration does not seem to be much affected until late, but it ceases before the heart, probably from the exhaustion and low blood-pressure, and not from any specific action on the centre.

The action of arsenic on the **Central Nervous System** has been repeatedly examined. A descending paralysis is elicited in the frog, the animal first losing its spontaneous movements, and then its reflexes, and the terminations of the motor nerves being involved only very late in the intoxication. There is no question that the brain, spinal cord and nerve ends are directly acted on in these animals, for paralysis is elicited by arsenic much sooner than by arrest of the circulation by excision of the heart. In mammals there are generally no certain indications of direct action on the nervous system in acute poisoning, for the weakness and prostration, and the final loss of consciousness and coma may be attributed to the exhaustion from the gastro-intestinal effects rather than to the centres being immediately affected. At the same time the acceleration of the respiration in the beginning of the intoxication, and the paralysis of the vaso-motor centres, would seem to point to a direct action on the medulla oblongata.

The pathology of the nervous disturbances observed in chronic poisoning, and often after a single large but not immediately fatal dose, is still obscure, and probably bears no relation to the symptoms observed in animals in acute poisoning. In many cases of paralysis, there is distinct tenderness along the course of the nerve trunks, which would suggest peripheral neuritis as the cause. Kreyssig could find no alterations in the spinal cord in cases of poisoning in animals except occasional hæmorrhages, which did not seem to be of consequence. Jaschke and Alexander observed peripheral neuritis in animals, and the question therefore seemed decided in favor of the peripheral origin of the symptoms. More recently, however, in two autopsies of persons suffering from arsenical paralysis, undoubted lesions of the spinal cord have been described. The symptoms point so unmistakably to peripheral neuritis as the cause, however, that the almost universal opinion is that the nerve fibres are the primary point of attack, although in severe cases the affection may involve the nerve cells in the cord in addition.

The peripheral nerves and the muscles are little affected by arsenic in acute poisoning; but the muscles of a frog poisoned with arsenic are found to lose their irritability somewhat sooner than those of one whose circulation and central nervous system have been destroyed, so that the poison has some deleterious effect on them also.

The unbroken **Skin** is not affected by arsenic, unless when it is applied repeatedly or allowed to remain in contact with it for some time,

when it may give rise to redness, pustules or vesicles and later to violent erysipelatoid inflammation. It has not, however, any such corrosive action on the skin as is possessed by strong acids, and the subcutaneous injection of arsenic is said not to be painful. It is more active when applied to denuded surfaces and to the mucous membranes, destroying them to some depth and causing acute pain, but even here it acts more slowly than ordinary caustics. It seems to act only upon living cells, and unlike acids and alkalies, forms no combinations with the dead tissues. The local effects of arsenic on the skin are seen only in workmen handling arsenic, as in color factories, in which affections of the skin of the face, hands and scrotum are by no means rare.

In arsenic poisoning skin eruptions are common, and may be due in part to circulatory disorders, but are to be ascribed for the most part to the direct action of the drug on the skin. Arsenic has been found in appreciable amount in the hair, epidermal scales and in the fluid of a blister in patients treated with it, and changes in the condition of the skin in animals have also been observed. Thus Ringer found the epidermis of the frog peel off with great ease when it was poisoned with arsenic, and Nunn ascribes this to the softening of the protoplasm of the deeper cells of the epidermis; analogous changes have been observed in the cornea.

The melanosis of arsenic poisoning seems to be due to the deposition not of an arsenical compound, but of some organic product in the deeper layers of the corium. The symptoms of irritation of the mucous membranes of the eye, nose and larynx are ascribed to the excretion of arsenic on these surfaces, and are analogous to the skin eruptions.

The action of arsenic on **The Blood** is still obscure, although it is frequently prescribed in various forms of anæmia. In chlorosis and in normal persons, it is said to diminish the number of the red corpuscles, but not to alter the total hæmoglobin of the blood. In a case of pernicious anæmia recently examined by Engel, it was found that arsenic increased the number of young newly formed red cells while the number of more mature corpuscles was diminished. Bettmann states that in subacute poisoning in rabbits, the red cells and hæmoglobin are diminished, and nucleated red cells appear in the blood in some number; he holds that arsenic acts on the blood, and also on the blood-forming organs. Stockman and Greig found the blood cells and hæmoglobin unaltered by arsenic in normal animals, but describe the bone-marrow as evidently in a state of unusual activity, indicated by its increased vascularity, greater number of red blood corpuscles and lessened fat cells. Silbermann asserts that arsenic tends to induce widespread intravascular coagulation, which leads to a fall in the blood-pressure, anæmia and other disorders. This assertion has been denied by Falkenberg, but has been supported by the experiments of Heinz, who finds that arsenic induces not ordinary coagulation, but thrombi formed primarily of blood plates, and attributes to this throm-

bosis the hæmorrhages and subsequent ulceration which are sometimes observed in the walls of the stomach and intestine and elsewhere.

In some cases of arsenic poisoning **Fever** is observed; this does not seem due to any specific action of the drug but to the inflammation of the mucous membranes and the skin.

The **Metabolism** is affected by a poisonous dose of arsenic in the same way as by phosphorus, but the alteration is not generally so marked and is liable to be overlooked, owing to the more intense action on the alimentary canal. The nitrogen of the urine is considerably greater than that of inanition, but it is not quite clear whether this is due to an increase in the urea or to other nitrogenous substances. The ammonia is probably augmented, for a considerable amount of lactic acid has been derived from the urine, and the alkalinity of the blood is reduced owing to the formation of this acid in excess. The glycogen of the liver disappears entirely, and the liver seems incapable of forming it from the sugar of the food. Lesion of the medulla oblongata (diabetes puncture) does not cause glycosuria after arsenic, but curara and other drugs are still capable of eliciting this symptom. The fatty degeneration of the epithelium of the stomach and intestine has been mentioned already, but this alteration is not confined to these tissues, being found in the liver and kidney, in the muscle cells of the heart, blood vessels and striated muscles, and in the lining epithelium of the alveoli of the lungs. Small necrotic foci have been observed by Wolkow in the liver, along with signs of active division of the parenchymatous cells, as in phosphorus poisoning.

Many of these changes admit of the same explanation as that given in phosphorus poisoning, namely, that arsenic lessens the oxidation of the tissues and causes fatty degeneration of the cells of various organs; it may also increase the waste of the proteids of the body directly, but the increase in the nitrogen of the urine may perhaps be secondary to the other features. Attempts have been made to demonstrate the lessened oxidation by estimating the respiratory gases, but here, as in phosphorus, no satisfactory results can be obtained by this method, owing to the slow progress of the intoxication, and to the diminished movement and retarded digestion; these in themselves are sufficient to cause a marked fall in the output of carbonic acid and in the absorption of oxygen, without any direct action on the tissue cells. The metabolism is less affected by arsenic than by phosphorus, however, for the fatty degeneration is less marked and less lactic acid is excreted. Nencki and Sieber have also shown that benzol can be oxidized to phenol in animals poisoned with arsenic, while in phosphorus poisoning the tissues are unable to effect this.

The fatty degeneration may have the same results as in phosphorus poisoning. The liver is somewhat enlarged and the pressure on the bile ducts prevents the escape of bile into the intestine, and thus induces jaundice and the appearance of bile pigments and bile acid in the urine. Jaundice is seldom, however, a very marked feature in arsenic poisoning, and is often entirely absent.

The prolonged administration of arsenic in quantities insufficient to produce chronic poisoning is reputed to have some effect on the **Growth and Nutrition.** It is difficult to obtain accurate data in regard to this point, and while the improvement in nutrition is attested by a number of independent observers, other equally careful investigators have not been able to confirm their results. Gies treated some of a litter of young rabbits with arsenic in minute doses for several weeks, and found that they weighed more, and were larger in every way than the untreated animals; the subcutaneous fat was much greater in amount, the bones were longer, and the muscles more developed. The long bones presented the appearance described by Wegner under phosphorus treatment, being longer and containing more dense bone both in the shaft and the epiphyses. Female rabbits treated with arsenic bore young of abnormal size and weight; Gies, in fact, supposes that their size caused difficulties in their passage through the pelvis, for they were all born dead. Several other observers have described a more rapid growth and greater activity in young animals treated with arsenic, and an increase in weight is often noted in man. On the other hand Stockman and Greig observed no change in the growth of animals under prolonged treatment with arsenic, and found that the only tissues affected were the growing bones, which appeared denser than usual.

The improvement in nutrition has not been explained, though a slight decrease in the nitrogenous excretion, and in the amount of nitrogen in the stools has been noted by Weiske, who holds that more of the food is utilized by the digestive apparatus, and at the same time, less proteid is decomposed in the tissues. The change in the amount of nitrogen excreted is so small, however, that doubt may be entertained whether it may not be due to unavoidable errors in the estimation, and other investigators have been unable to detect any alteration attributable to the drug. Fresh investigation of this point is thus required before certainty can be reached regarding the effects on the nutrition, and still more regarding the explanation of the alterations.

When small quantities of arsenic are taken habitually, **Tolerance** is established, and the dose may be gradually increased until it far exceeds that which would be poisonous in ordinary persons. This is the explanation of arsenic-eating which is known to exist in different parts of the world, but which is most widespread and best known in Styria and the Tyrol. The peasants there indulge in the poison habitually, and believe that it enables them to work better, and in particular to climb the mountains with less effort and less respiratory distress. They also credit it with improving their complexions and general appearance, and give it to their horses in order to render their coats more smooth and glossy, and to make them stronger and fatter. Doubt was formerly entertained as to the truth of the statements made regarding the doses used by these people, but this was definitely settled by Knapp, who administered 0.4 G. (7 grs.) of arsenious acid to one of the peasants at Graz without inducing any effects whatsoever. Large quantities of arsenic have also been isolated from the urine of arsenic eaters,

showing that much of the drug is absorbed. Arsenic-eating is said to be indulged in to a considerable extent by young women in some countries with the object of improving the complexion and figure, and cases of arsenic habit have been described in different parts of America and elsewhere. As far as can be observed the habit is not deleterious, for the Styrian peasants live to old age, and no symptoms attributable to the poison have been noted. As a general rule large doses are taken once or twice a week, and no fluid is swallowed for some time afterwards, so that some of the poison may pass through the bowel unabsorbed. No tolerance for arsenic has been established in animals, even by prolonged treatment with minute doses.

As a contrast to the Styrian peasants, the miners of Reichenstein may be mentioned, who are constantly exposed to arsenic owing to its being contained in large quantities in the ore. These people are described by Geyer as shortlived, very subject in childhood to severe rickets and in adult life to dropsies and respiratory diseases; they offer little resistance to microbial infection and frequently present the skin and nervous symptoms of arsenic poisoning. Why arsenic should be beneficial or at any rate harmless at Graz, and so deleterious in Reichenstein, it is impossible to state at present.

Arsenic is **Excreted** for the most part in the urine, to a much smaller extent in the stomach and bowel and along the respiratory mucous membranes. Traces are eliminated in the skin secretions, in the hair, and in the milk, and fatal intoxication has been observed in a child from the milk of its mother, who was suffering from acute poisoning. In the urine arsenic appears in part in organic combinations, in part, according to Selmi, in the form of a volatile organic base, which is intensely poisonous and causes convulsions in frogs. Arsenic is only slowly excreted; it is stated to have been detected in the urine 2–3 months after its administration, but it has been shown to occur in the urine of a number of persons who presented no signs of poisoning and had not been treated with arsenic, so that it is possible that in those cases of slow elimination the arsenic of the urine did not arise from the single administration, but from its subsequent absorption from some other source, such as the water or air. There is no question, however, that it remains in the system longer than many other poisons. It is probable that the effects, especially the paralysis, last long after the drug has been excreted, lesions having been induced which are only slowly recovered from.

Arsenic is found in largest quantity in the liver after absorption, but is also deposited in the kidney, in the walls of the stomach and intestine, and in the spleen and lungs. Much smaller quantities are found in the muscles and in the nervous tissues, which were formerly supposed to contain more than the liver. It is stated that in cases of poisoning arsenic is found in the white matter of the brain in much larger proportion than in the cortex. In the blood, most of the arsenic is said to be contained in the blood-cells, comparatively little being free in the plasma. Arsenic has been detected in the cancellous

bones of the skull and vertebræ, after it had disappeared from all the other organs.

Arsenic is poisonous to many of the lower forms of life, as well as to the vertebrates; thus it has been found that its presence in comparatively dilute solution (one part of arsenious acid in 30,000 parts of water) hinders the development of, and eventually kills algæ and the seeds of the higher plants. On the other hand, moulds grow abundantly in a solution of arsenite of potash (1 per cent.) containing some organic matter, and the alcoholic fermentation proceeds in the presence of arsenic, although it is somewhat retarded at first; very dilute solutions of arsenic even accelerate the fermentation, as is true of most other antiseptics. Arsenious acid is only about one-tenth as strong an antiseptic as perchloride of mercury, and the spores of anthrax are destroyed only after ten days in a one per mille solution. It has therefore a greater antiseptic power than many of the other acids, but compared with its action on the higher forms of life, it is but slightly poisonous to the fungi. It seems to have no effect on the activity of the ferments, such as pepsin, myrosin and emulsin.

The arsenates are much less harmful to lowly organized forms, for seeds and algæ as well as moulds grow in a neutral solution abundantly, and even the infusoria do not seem injured by it to any marked degree. Apparently these plants and animals are incapable of reducing it to arsenious acid, and are therefore not more affected by it than by other acids.

The bodies of persons poisoned with arsenic are said to remain undecomposed for a remarkably long time, and to tend to become mummified. The statement is still disputed, but is vouched for by a number of authorities. It is certainly not invariably the case, and little weight is to be laid upon mummification in determining whether arsenic poisoning was the cause of death in exhumed persons.

No account of the pharmacology of arsenic would be complete without mention of the theory advanced by Binz and Schulz to explain its action. They suppose that arsenious acid is oxidized to arsenic acid by the living tissues, and the arsenic acid again reduced to arsenious. In this way oxygen is alternately withdrawn from, and supplied to the protoplasm, and this alternate reduction and oxidation they suppose to be the essential feature of the action of arsenic. The grounds on which this explanation is based must be sought in the numerous papers on the subject by these authors, and it may suffice here to state that while arsenic acid appears to be reduced, and arsenious acid oxidized in the tissues, these processes are probably only gradual. Otherwise it would be difficult to explain how arsenious acid is so much more poisonous than arsenic acid, for if the latter were readily reduced to arsenious acid it would be equally toxic.

Arsenic and phosphorus are included in one group in chemistry, and their effects on living organisms present sufficient resemblance to justify their association in the pharmacological system. The mucous membranes and the skin are more affected by arsenic, however, and the circulation is more rapidly depressed, while the fatty degeneration of the protoplasm of the vertebrates is much more prominent in phosphorus poisoning. The differences between their effects are more in degree than in kind, and there seems no question that their ultimate action on protoplasm is of the same nature. It is to be noted, however, that there is no reason to suppose that phosphorus owes its action to any of its numerous compounds with oxygen, while it is probable that the oxides of arsenic alone are capable of modifying vital functions.

The **Sulphur Compounds** of arsenic are entirely insoluble and are therefore not absorbed as such, but it seems likely that small quantities of arsenious acid are formed from them in the intestine by microbes. Commercial orpiment often contains large amounts of arsenious acid.

Arseniuretted Hydrogen (AsH_3) is an exceedingly poisonous gas, which has caused a number of fatal accidents from being inhaled accidentally in chemical laboratories. One source of danger is the liberation of hydrogen from acids by the action of zinc, which often contains arsenic and therefore gives rise to this gas. It differs entirely from the oxides of arsenic in its action, and there is no reason to suppose that it forms these in the body. Possibly traces of arseniuretted hydrogen are formed from arsenious acid in the intestine, but in insufficient quantities to have any appreciable effect. Arseniuretted hydrogen acts as a molecule, AsH_3, arsenites as ions, and the fact that both molecule and ion contain an atom of arsenic, does not necessarily entail that their effects shall bear any resemblance.

Arseniuretted hydrogen acts by destroying the red corpuscles of the blood, and induces intense headache, nausea and vomiting, prostration and fainting fits, cyanosis and collapse. Hæmoglobin, methæmoglobin, hæmatin and occasionally blood are passed in the urine, and more rarely the stools contain blood. Sometimes the urine is entirely suppressed from the tubules being plugged with blood cells and débris, and intense icterus appears from the formation of excess of bile pigment from the hæmoglobin of the disintegrated corpuscles. Œdema of the lungs or sudden failure of the heart is the cause of death. Some of the gas is excreted by the lungs, and may be recognized by its garlic odor, and some arsenic appears in the urine, but it is not known in what form.

Preparations.

Acidum Arsenosum (U. S. P.), Acidum Arseniosum (B. P.) (As_2O_3), arsenous or arsenious acid anhydride, white arsenic, ratsbane, forms a white powder, or opaque, porcelain-like masses, or a transparent, amorphous surface like glass. It dissolves slowly in cold water, the glassy variety requiring about thirty, the porcelain about eighty parts of water. It is almost tasteless and has no odor. 1–5 mgs. ($\frac{1}{60}$–$\frac{1}{12}$ gr.), in pill or solution, after meals. The "Asiatic" pill consists of arsenic, black pepper and liquorice.

Liquor Acidi Arsenosi (U. S. P.), *Liquor Arsenici Hydrochloricus* (B. P.), a one per cent. solution of arsenous acid acidulated with hydrochloric acid. 0.05–0.5 c.c. (1–8 mins.), 3–5 drops three times daily, after meals.

Liquor Potassii Arsenitis (U. S. P.), Liquor Arsenicalis (B. P.), Fowler's solution, contains one per cent. of arsenous acid neutralized with bicarbonate of potash, to which compound tincture of lavender is added to give color and flavor. 0.05–0.5 c.c. (1–8 mins.), 3–5 drops three times daily, after meals.

Sodii Arsenas (U. S. P.) ($Na_2HAsO_4 + 7H_2O$) forms colorless, odorless crystals, very soluble in water, with a mild, alkaline taste. 1–5 mgs. ($\frac{1}{60}$–$\frac{1}{12}$ gr.).

Sodii Arsenas (B. P.) (Na_2HAsO_4) is prepared from the ordinary arsenate (U. S. P.) by driving off the water of crystallization, and forms a white powder. $\frac{1}{40}$–$\frac{1}{10}$ gr.

Liquor Sodii Arsenatis (U. S. P., B. P.), Pearson's solution, a one per cent. solution of the sodium arsenate of the respective pharmacopœias. 0.05–0.5 c.c. (1–8 mins.).

Arseni Iodidum (U. S. P.), *Arsenii Iodidum* (B. P.) (AsI_3), glossy, orange-red crystals with an iodine odor and slowly giving off iodine in the air; it is soluble in 7 parts of water, but the solution soon decomposes into arsenous and hydriodic acids. 3–10 mgs. ($\frac{1}{20}$–$\frac{1}{6}$ gr.).

Liquor Arseni (Arsenii, B. P.) et Hydrargyri Iodidi (U. S. P., B. P.), Donovan's solution, contains one per cent. of arsenic iodide and one per cent. of red mercuric iodide. This solution is clear and yellowish, without odor, but with a harsh metallic taste. 0.3–1.3 c.c. (5–20 mins.), after meals.

Ferri Arsenas. (See Iron.)

Some mineral waters contain arsenic, that of Levico as much as 8 mgs. per litre.

Therapeutic Uses. — The action of arsenic as ascertained from experiments on the lower animals and from cases of poisoning in man throws little light on its use in therapeutics, and so little is known of the pathology of most of the conditions in which it is found of benefit, that no attempt can be made to bring the two series of observations into relation.

Arsenious acid has been used externally as a caustic, formerly in various forms of malignant disease, more recently in lupus, in which it is said to destroy the diseased surface while leaving the healthy skin unaffected. It has been superseded, however, by the introduction of surgical measures, such as scraping with the sharp spoon. Arsenic in substance is still used in dentistry to destroy the pulp in decayed teeth.

Internally arsenic is used in malarial disease, especially in inveterate cases in which there in much cachexia. In acute cases it is also of benefit, but is much less certain in its effects than quinine, and it is very questionable whether it acts on the malarial organism, for its efficacy often seems due rather to its improving the general nutrition and lessening the cachexia and wasting. Many authorities, in fact, deprecate the use of arsenic in acute malaria, and would limit its use to the cachexia of old disease, while others advise its use with iron in ordinary cases, after the acute stage has been successfully treated with quinine.

Arsenic has also been used with benefit in neuralgia, especially when it assumes a periodic character, and in chronic rheumatism, but in many gases no definite improvement follows, and the conditions under which it is of value cannot be more accurately defined at the present time. Old cases of chorea often improve under arsenic, which may imply some action on the central nervous system, although, as has been stated, little alteration in the nervous functions is observed in animals except under very large doses. Asthma has also been treated with arsenic given by the stomach, or by the inhalation of arsenic from smoking cigarettes made with arsenical paper.

In pernicious anæmia, arsenic is said to be beneficial, but the improvement is only temporary. Many forms of skin disease are treated with arsenic, some of them with the happiest results. Thus in psoriasis, chronic eczema and lichen ruber, marked improvement or complete recovery often dates from the beginning of the arsenic treatment. It is generally advised only in the chronic forms, and is said to be positively deleterious during the earlier stages of rapid cell proliferation.

In lymphoma, arsenic has been given internally and also by direct injection into the tumors, and often, though not by any means invariably, proves of value. Various other forms of leucæmia have been treated with less success.

The action of arsenic in reducing the glycogen of the liver suggested its use in diabetes, but most reliable authorities have failed to obtain satisfactory results.

Arsenic is in the great majority of cases prescribed in the form of Fowler's solution. It is generally advisable to commence with small doses, and to increase them as tolerance is developed, but some authorities advise large doses from the outset. Arsenic is always prescribed to be taken after meals, in order to avoid any possible action on the digestion.[1] Several authors have recommended the hypodermic injection of Fowler's solution diluted with two parts of water. (Dose 0.5 c.c., 8 mins.) Arsenic is contraindicated in cases of irritation of the stomach and bowel, and is generally avoided during acute fever, except in malaria.

If symptoms of chronic poisoning begin to assert themselves, the drug must be discontinued at once. The first symptoms are generally disordered digestion, loss of appetite and discomfort in the stomach region, a feeling of constriction in the throat and redness and swelling of the conjunctiva and eyelids.

In Acute Arsenic Poisoning the stomach ought to be emptied at once by means of the stomach tube or by an emetic (apomorphine). The stomach washing is to be continued for some time, as arsenic is very insoluble. Various chemical antidotes have been advised, chiefly with the view of forming the insoluble arsenites of iron or magnesia. The best preparation of iron is the hydrate, which must be recently precipitated, as it forms granules when it is allowed to stand and is then much less efficient; it may be prepared in an emergency by adding magnesia to a solution of iron sulphate. Magnesia alone may be used, and for this purpose magnesia levis is preferable, given shaken up with water. The mixture of iron sulphate and magnesia has the advantage of containing in addition to the hydrate and magnesia, the cathartic sulphate of magnesium, which tends to remove from the intestine any arsenic which may have already passed into it. The antidote should be given in large quantities at intervals as long as the acute symptoms persist.

The collapse is treated by the ordinary measures, warmth and stimulants, such as caffeine and digitalis. In chronic poisoning, the paralysis is treated by stimulating the muscles with the galvanic current, the other symptoms by suitable general treatment.

Bibliography.

A very complete account of the action of arsenic is given by *Wertheimer* in *Richet's* Dictionnaire de Physiologie, i., p. 674. Among the numberless papers on Arsenic the following may be mentioned:

Boehm u. Unterberger. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., ii., p. 89.
Johannsohn. Ibid., ii., p. 99.
Pistorius. Ibid., xvi., p. 188.
Kossel. Ibid., v., p. 128.
Gies. Ibid., viii., p. 175.
Saikowsky. Virchow's Arch., xxxiv., p. 73.
Sklarek. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1866, p. 481.

[1] Cacodylate of sodium, in doses of 0.05 G. (1 gr.), has recently been recommended as a substitute for the ordinary arsenical preparations. It appears to be excreted for the most part unchanged but a small percentage is reduced and this has the same effect as the more commonly used preparation (Heffter).

Vryens. Arch. de Physiol., 1881, p. 780.
Falck. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., vii., p. 394.
Meyer. Ibid., xiv., p. 329.
Filehne. Virchow's Arch., lxxxiii., p. 1.
Schulz u. Binz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xi., pp. 131, 200; xiii., p. 256; xiv., p. 345; xv., p. 322; xxxvi., p. 275; xxxviii., p. 259; xli., p. 179.
Husemann. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1892, p. 1081.
Lesser. Virchow's Arch., lxxiii. and lxxiv.
Dogiel. Pflüger's Arch., xxiv., p. 328.
Araki. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xvii., p. 331; xix., p. 442.
Heffter. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxi., p. 257.
Silbermann. Virchow's Arch., cxvii., p. 288.
Heinz. Ibid., cxxvi., p. 495.
Wolkow. Ibid., cxxvii., p. 477.
Smetana. Wien. klin. Woch., 1897, p. 903.
Engel. Virchow's Arch., cxxxv., p. 369.
Selmi. Virchow-Hirsch. Jahsresber., 1881, i., p. 413.
Imbert-Gourbeyre. Des suites de l'empoisonnement arsenical. Paris, 1881.
Brouardel et Pouchet. Bull. de l'acad. de med., 1889, p. 915.
Dana. Brain, ix., p. 456.
Seeligmüller. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1881, p. 185.
DaCosta. Philadelp. Med. Times, 1881, p. 385.
Krehl. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xliv., p. 325.
Marik. Wien. klin. Woch., 1891, p. 565.
Kovacs. Wien. med. Woch., 1887.
Kreyssig. Virchow's Arch., cii., p. 286.
Huber. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xiv., p. 444.
Alexander. Habilitation-Thesis, Breslau, 1889.
Erlicki u. Rybalkin. Arch. f. Psychiatrie, xxiii., p. 861.
Schlosser. Inaug. Diss., Basel, 1896.
Ringer and Murrell. Journ. of Physiol., i., p. 213.
Nunn. Ibid., i., p. 247.
Cornil et Brault. Journ. de l'anat., xviii., p. 1.
Putnam. Boston Medical and Surgical Journal, cxx., p. 235.
Bettmann. Ziegler's Beiträge, xxiii., p. 377.
Loew. Pflüger's Arch., xl., p. 444.
Chittenden. Maly's Jahresbericht, 1885, p. 277.
Stockman and Greig. Journ. of Physiol., xxiii., p. 376.
Geyer. Arch. f. Dermat. u. Syph., xliii.,p. 221.
Reynolds and *others.* Lancet and British Med. Journal, 1900, ii., and 1901, i. and ii.
Morishima. Arch. internat. de Pharmocodyn., vii., p. 65.
Heffter. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlvi., p. 230. (Cacodylates.)

On arseniuretted hydrogen.

Stadelmann. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xvi., p. 221.
Minkowski u. Naunyn. Ibid., xxi., p. 14.
Waechter. Vierteljahr. f. gericht. Med., xxviii., p. 251.

Heavy metals.

Local action

metallic salt + proteid matter = metallic albuminate + acid

action depends on –

- rate of ionization of salt
- character of acid formed
- sol. of metallic albuminate (cf HgA sol in excess of proteid
- salt action (cf alum withdraws H_2O from tissues)
- sol. of salt leading to a greater or less contact c tissues
- Hg a specific poison to cells.

Absorption.

very slow exc Hg

mostly pass through unabsorbed,

amount taken up small prob. forms metallic albuminate.

more taken up from inflamed parts

Secretion

v. slow. accumulative in liver - spleen etc

small quantities slowly eliminated in secretions along alimentary tract (urine)

General action.

- Inflam of Alimentary tract.
- " " Renal Epithelium foll by Interstitial Chang
- Heart ? BP falls towards end ! how
- prob - metabolism
- CNS various stim or dep.
- Nerves cf peripheral N. as Pb

Antiseptic action

due to

1. formation of metallic albuminate with proteid of Bacteria
2. rate of ionization
3. toxicity of actual Metal

PART IV.

THE HEAVY METALS.

HEAVY METALS.

A LARGE number of important drugs, belonging to the chemical series of heavy metals resemble each other so closely in their action in living organisms that they may be readily grouped together in a division of the pharmacological system. Some authors include in this series arsenic and antimony, but the former presents so many analogies to phosphorus in its effects that it is preferable to treat it apart from the heavy metals. Antimony is certainly as closely related to arsenic as to this group, and may be regarded as a connecting link between them.

The metals as such do not induce any symptoms except from their mechanical properties. Thus mercury may be swallowed in large quantities without causing mercurial poisoning, and silver or copper coins are equally devoid of effect as poisons. They are active only when they are capable of dissociation into ions of the metal or of an oxide. Thus potassium ferrocyanide does not cause any symptoms of iron poisoning when it is injected into a vein, because the iron passes through the body undissociated, and any effects are due to the ferrocyanide ion and not to the iron. In the same way compounds of the metals with ethyl and methyl, such as lead triethyl, have an action quite different from that of lead, as long as they remain undecomposed in the tissues, but eventually induce metallic poisoning, as they are broken up into bodies from which the lead or lead oxide ion can be dissociated.

The action of the heavy metals consists of two parts, the local effects induced at the point of application, and the general effects which follow the absorption of the poison into the blood and tissues. Either of these may be produced alone by suitable preparations and modes of administration, and they are to be regarded as entirely independent of each other.

The Local Action of the heavy metal series is due to the formation of proteid combinations. When the salt of a heavy metal is added to a solution of egg albumin, or of similar proteid, a precipitate is at once formed of metallic albuminate. The proteids apparently play the rôle of acids, forming insoluble salts with the metals, but these salts are not generally of definite chemical composition, for the percentage of metal contained in the albuminate usually varies within wide limits; in some cases, however, definite compounds have been formed.

The albumin displaces the original acid of the salt, which may be entirely removed by prolonged washing. The albuminates of the metals are insoluble in water, but some of them, notably that of mercury, are soluble in excess of proteid, and most of them may be dissolved in solutions of neutral salts such as chloride of sodium. In the albuminates formed by the addition of salts to proteid solutions, the metals are combined in the same way as in inorganic salts, and may be detected by their usual reactions. Thus iron albuminate is rapidly blackened by the presence of ammonium sulphide, because ferrous sulphide is formed from it exactly as from any of the inorganic salts. On subjecting these albuminates to certain chemical manipulations, however, the metal seems to become more firmly attached to the proteid, for ammonium sulphide acts on it much more slowly. The metal is then said to be masked, because its presence is not so readily detected as in ordinary combinations. Partially masked preparations have been formed artificially, but in the body the process is carried much further, for in many of their proteid compounds the metals cannot be detected by any of the ordinary tests, however long the reagents may remain in contact with them, and their presence is recognized only when the proteid is destroyed by heat or other similar agencies.

When a solution of a metallic salt comes in contact with a living tissue, such as the mucous membrane of the mouth or stomach, the albuminate is at once formed, and the acid with which the metal was combined is set free. The more completely dissociated the ions of the salt are, the more rapid is the reaction with proteid and the more intense the local action. Thus the more readily ionized inorganic salts act more strongly than the organic ones which are slowly dissociated, and these in turn are more liable to cause marked local changes than the double salts, which are dissociated with difficulty.[1] Other factors determining the nature of the local action are the character of the precipitate and the activity of the acid formed, the latter again varying with the extent to which it is dissociated into ions; it therefore exercises the same astringent or corrosive effects as if it had been applied uncombined, but its action may be modified by the presence of a layer of metallic albuminate protecting the surface. Thus when a weak solution of lead acetate is applied to a mucous membrane, the metal forms an albuminate with the proteids lying on the surface and in the more superficial parts of the cells. This albuminate forms a continuous sheet over the mucous membrane, and the very dilute acetic acid formed is incapable of inducing any reaction. If a stronger solution be applied, however, the metallic precipitate extends more deeply into the cell, while the acetic acid, being more concentrated, exercises some irritant action. As the concentration increases, the deeper parts of the epithelial cells are coagulated, and at the same time the acid becomes more destructive, so that eventually the superficial layer of the epithelium is killed and the deeper layers are attacked. The acetate of lead may thus act as an astringent, covering a mucous surface with a protective

[1] *Paul.* Bedeutung der Ionentheorie f. d. physiol. Chemie, 1901.

pellicle of insoluble albuminate, as an irritant, which induces an increase in the circulation of the part, a more rapid division of the cells and an effusion of liquid, or as a corrosive, involving the superficial layer of cells, and sometimes even the deeper ones in its destructive effects.

When the nitrate of lead is applied, the astringent effect is much less evident, the irritant and corrosive more marked, because the salt is more readily dissociated and the reaction is therefore more rapid, and in addition the nitric acid is much more corrosive than acetic acid. The same metal attached to different acids may therefore induce very different effects, in the one case acting chiefly as an astringent, in the other as an irritant and corrosive.

The character of the precipitate formed also determines to some extent the local action of the metallic salts. Thus the salts of mercury are more irritant and corrosive than those of the other metals, partly perhaps, because the precipitate is less continuous and more loose and flaky, partly because it is soluble in excess of proteid, and therefore allows the unattached molecules to penetrate deeply, while the lead albuminate remains on the surface of the membrane. The metals also differ in their toxicity, and a trace of mercury is sufficient to kill a cell, whereas a larger amount of lead may be absorbed by it without injury.

In addition salts which have a very strong affinity for water withdraw fluid from the cells and thus act more strongly on them than others which have not this character; for example dried alum is much more destructive to the tissues with which it comes in contact than alum containing its ordinary water of crystallization.

The different metallic salts therefore vary in their local action within wide limits—from the formation of mildly astringent membranes to the production of widespread necrosis and destruction of tissue.

The insoluble salts come into less intimate contact with the tissues, and have much less effect; but many of them are slowly formed into albuminates and may then act as irritants or astringents.

The most powerful corrosive salts of any metal are those which are most rapidly dissociated into ions, that is, the chlorides and nitrates, provided they are soluble. The sulphates are much less irritant, because they are less readily dissociated, and perhaps because the sulphuric acid may fail to penetrate the cells owing to its being less volatile and its anion having less permeating power than that of hydrochloric or nitric acid. (See page 535.) The iodides and bromides are generally regarded as less irritant than the chlorides, but are less frequently used and less well known.

The least corrosive of the salts of the metals are those formed with the slowly dissociated organic acids, such as the acetates, tartrates or citrates. When these are united with a metal which in itself is not a very active poison, such as lead, they are almost purely astringent. On the other hand, the acetate of silver or of mercury tends to be irritant and corrosive, from the poisonous action of these metals on the

tissues. In any case, the acetates are less irritant than the corresponding chlorides and nitrates, provided these are equally soluble.

The local action also varies in the same salt of different metals. Lead is the most astringent of the metals ordinarily used in solution, while mercury salts have little or no astringent action, owing to their specific poisonous action on the cells. Iron and alum approach most nearly to lead, then copper, zinc and silver, and at a longer interval mercury.

It is impossible to arrange the metallic salts as either astringents or irritants, because in every instance the effect varies with the concentration, and with many other features, such as the condition of the surface to which they are applied, and the quantity of proteid with which they come in contact before they actually reach the living membrane.

Of the salts in common use the most astringent are lead acetate and alum; the most irritant are the perchloride and the nitrate of mercury, the chlorides of zinc, copper, tin and antimony, while the chlorides of iron, sulphates of copper, zinc, iron and manganese, the acetates of copper and zinc and the nitrates of silver and lead are astringents when applied in very dilute solution, but tend to irritate and corrode in larger quantities. In most cases the effects of the last group are made up of a mixture of astringent and irritant action.

The insoluble preparations of mercury tend to irritate and corrode the surfaces to which they are applied, but the insoluble salts of the other metals are generally astringent. It is difficult to determine how far the so-called astringent and protective action of these insoluble substances is due to the formation of albuminates, and how far to their acting mechanically as protective coverings over irritated surfaces, but the latter factor is undoubtedly the more important in many instances.

The precipitation induced by the astringents involves only the surface layer of cells, but the membrane formed protects the part from mechanical and chemical irritation, and thus lessens congestion and inflammation. In addition several authors[1] have found that the astringent salts contract the vessels of the frog's mesentery by direct action on their coats, and have inferred that the same constriction is induced in the mucous membranes, when they are applied to them. Schütz[2] found that the secretion of the frog's skin and tongue is lessened when these parts are washed with astringent metallic salts, and it is quite possible that when these are applied to inflamed membranes, they may constrict the vessels and lessen the secretions, as well as form a protective membrane. When irritation is induced, the vessels of course dilate, and congestion and exudation follow.

The local action is due to the formation of albuminate compounds and the liberation of acid. If the metal be applied in the form of an albuminate, this irritation is almost entirely absent except in so far as

[1] *Rosenstirn*, Rossbach's Pharmakologische Untersuchungen, ii., p. 84. *Heinz*, Virchow's Arch., cxvi., p. 220.

[2] Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvii., p. 202.

the poisonous action of the metal may cause necrosis and consequent irritation and inflammation. The double salts of the metals are also less liable to irritate, because they do not precipitate albumin, and their dissociation only occurs slowly and is not confined to the point of application. Of course if these double salts are decomposed by acids, as in the stomach, they may act as irritants.

The salts of the heavy metals are often only slowly **Absorbed.** Mercury is again an exception, but even mercury does not induce general symptoms until many hours after its administration. The other metals given by the mouth pass through the alimentary canal for the most part unabsorbed. In recent years it has been disputed whether iron, manganese, copper and other metals are absorbed at all, but investigation with more accurate methods has shown that iron and manganese pass into the tissues from the alimentary tract, and it seems probable that a small proportion of most of the metals finds its way into the blood. At the same time there is no question that the great proportion of most of the metals passes through unabsorbed, and is devoid of any effect except from its local action. It is probable that the small quantity taken up by the stomach and intestine is first formed into proteid compounds in every instance, but there is very little known as to the process. When there is any lesion of the stomach and intestine, and particularly when the salt induces irritation and congestion itself, much more of the metal is taken up than by the normal epithelium. But even in the most favorable circumstances little of the metal is absorbed, and in acute poisoning the symptoms arise from the local irritation and corrosion, and only to a smaller extent from the general action of the metal.

If the absorption of the metals is slow, their **Excretion** progresses even more gradually, and repeated administration leads to their accumulation in the tissues and thus to intoxication. The metal seems to leave the blood very rapidly, and to become stored up in various organs, chiefly the liver, to a less extent the spleen, kidney, and bone marrow. While some of the metal is deposited in the liver and other organs, another part is excreted, for the most part along the alimentary tract. Thus it is found in the saliva and gastric secretion, to a much larger amount generally in that of the lower parts of the small intestine, in the cæcum and in the large bowel. A comparatively small amount escapes with the urine. Some metals have been detected in very small quantity in the milk, and there is reason to suppose that traces are eliminated by the other cutaneous secretions.

The **General Action** of the heavy metals in man is often elicited only by their prolonged ingestion, but it has been studied in animals by the intravenous or subcutaneous injection of the albuminates or of the double salts, which do not precipitate the proteids. The ordinary salts cannot be used, because the precipitated albumin of the blood causes embolism, and this obscures the symptoms. The symptoms of acute metallic poisoning elicited thus in animals generally resemble fairly closely those of chronic poisoning in man. Of course the ana-

tomical lesions induced in the latter by the constant presence of small quantities of metals in the nutritive fluids, can only be induced to a limited extent in such experiments.

Even when the heavy metals are injected into the blood in considerable quantity, the symptoms are often late in appearing, in the case of aluminium only after several days, so that the slowness of the absorption from the intestine is not the only explanation of the delay in the onset of the intoxication.

The general symptoms of metallic poisoning, as distinguished from those due to the local action at the point of application, arise chiefly from the central nervous system, and from the excretory passages — the alimentary canal and the kidney. Metallic poisoning always induces disturbance of the **Stomach and Intestine**, manifested by loss of appetite, pain and discomfort in the abdomen, nausea, vomiting and purging. In some cases no lesion of the canal is observed post mortem, but in the great majority congestion and swelling of the mucous membranes of the stomach and intestine is seen, or the whole surface may be covered by a diphtheritic membrane composed of necrosed cells and inflammatory exudate. Beneath this hæmorrhages occur, and if the animal live long enough, ulcers are formed, so that the whole condition can scarcely be distinguished from that of dysentery. Some metals act strongly on the mouth and salivary glands, salivation being one of the earliest features of mercury poisoning. The lining membrane of the mouth becomes congested and inflamed, and numerous shallow ulcers are formed in it.

The heavy metals thus seem to have a specific action along the alimentary tract quite independent of the local action induced when they are swallowed. This is connected with their excretions along it, although it seems inadvisable in the present state of knowledge to say that they irritate the digestive tract because they are excreted in it. One or two metals, notably lead, cause constipation and colic when they are absorbed into the blood, but under certain circumstances they too induce purgation.

Another organ which suffers from the circulation of metals in the blood is the **Kidney**. Comparatively little of the metal is excreted in the urine, but it is found that most of this class act as diuretics in small quantities. Somewhat larger doses irritate the renal epithelium, and albumin appears in the urine, along with casts and in severe cases blood cells and hæmoglobin. If this irritation of the secretory cells be long continued, it sets up a secondary inflammation of the interstitial tissue, and cirrhosis of the kidney results.

The **Circulation** is differently affected by different metals, or at any rate, the effects on the heart and vessels are described differently by the writers on the subject. Very often the heart is affected only in the last stages of poisoning, and it is impossible to determine how far its failure is due to direct action, and how far to the general disorder of the nutrition. The blood-pressure invariably falls towards the fatal issue of the intoxication, and as a general rule, a slow fall is

observed from the beginning. This fall in blood-pressure has been ascribed to the heart action, to depression of the vaso-motor centre, and to paralysis of the splanchnic terminations in the mesenteric vessels. It may doubtless be induced by different factors in the different forms of intoxication, but there is no question that it is partly due to the dilatation of the vessels of the intestines and stomach from the inflammation of these organs.

Several metals have been found to lessen the alkalinity of the **Blood** by increasing the amount of lactic acid in it, but this does not seem a common feature in metallic poisoning. The general malnutrition from the gastro-intestinal action renders it impossible to determine whether the metals often alter the metabolism of the body through directly affecting the cells, but it is not improbable that this is the case, for the loss of weight is often too rapid to be explained by the starvation alone.

The **Central Nervous System** is always affected more or less by the presence of the metals in the blood. As a general rule, the symptoms are a mixture of those of stimulation of certain divisions with those of paralysis of others. Several metals induce disturbance of the psychical centres, manifested in delirium, hallucinations and mania, or in stupor and coma. Convulsions of all forms indicate that the motor areas of the brain, the basal ganglia and the spinal cord are affected; thus epileptiform convulsions, chorea, clonic and tonic spasms occur from metallic poisoning. In several instances actual lesions of the brain cells have been shown to be caused by the ingestion of the metals. They often cause general weakness, or paresis of certain groups of muscles, and in addition to their specific action on the nervous centres, they may induce a peripheral neuritis (lead). The muscles do not seem to be so readily affected in general poisoning, although a solution of a non-irritating metallic salt generally paralyzes muscles suspended in it.

Therapeutic Uses.—In therapeutics only mercury and iron are largely employed for their effects after absorption, while the others have a more or less extensive use for their local effects as astringents, irritants, caustics or styptics. Iron is not prescribed for its general action on the organs, but to supply the place of food-irons in the formation of hæmoglobin. Mercury is used for its specific effect in syphilis, and some of its preparations have been advised as diuretics. Not infrequently the local action of the heavy metals is supposed to be induced after absorption, and prescriptions are met with containing lead or iron which are intended to stay hæmorrhage from the lungs or from the kidneys. It ought to be recognized, however, that lead or iron is absorbed only in minute quantities, and that they have no predilection for the bleeding points. If they were capable of coagulating the blood after absorption, and thus stopping hæmorrhage, they would certainly do so in the portal circulation and would not be carried to the lungs or kidney before they acted. As a matter of fact, however, they never reach the blood except in forms in which they have no astringent or styptic action.

Many of the metallic salts are powerful antiseptics, partly no doubt from their coagulating the proteids of the microbes, but also from a specific poisonous action on them, which is quite distinct from their precipitating action. As a general rule the antiseptic power varies with the amount of dissociation of the salt, that is, with the number of metallic ions present in the solutions, although the undissociated molecule also seems to have some influence, and a salt which is dissociated with difficulty may in some instances make up for this drawback by the more intense toxicity of the metal.[1] The most widely used metallic antiseptics are the mercurial salts, in particular the perchloride, but other metals have recently begun to play a more important rôle in surgery than heretofore. Almost incredibly small quantities of some of the metals have been found to be rapidly fatal to some of the algæ, the bacteria, and the infusoria. Thus one part of the perchloride of mercury in one million parts of water kills spirogyra, one of the simpler algæ, and water distilled from copper vessels is rapidly destructive to it. Israel and Klingmann[2] hung small pieces of copper foil in water for a few hours, and then diluted this water a hundred times and found it still poisonous to many lower organisms. Silver was less active and lead still less so. The amount of copper in the original solution was too small to be recognized by any chemical test, much more so then in the further diluted portion. These results, which were first obtained by Naegeli, and which have been confirmed by other observers besides Israel and Klingmann, indicate that certain lower organisms are much more sensitive to the action of copper, and probably of other metals, than the more highly organized plants and animals. Further examination of their effects as antiseptics in medicine and surgery is certainly desirable. Other curious effects on the growth of bacteria have been observed by Bolton and Brown,[3] who found that a piece of metal placed on a culture of microbes in gelatin causes curious alternating zones of intense growth and of sterility. These observations have recently been extended by Thiele and Wolff,[4] who state that silver, mercury and copper plates prevent the growth of microbes owing to minute traces of these metals being dissolved in the medium. Several other heavy metals — iron, lead, zinc, tin, gold, platinum and aluminum — proved devoid of action. Another explanation has been suggested by Novy and Freer, that these metals act by forming peroxides analogous to peroxide of hydrogen and the peracids (see page 592), and this view certainly appears more plausible than one that supposes a solution of copper to be toxic in such dilution as that tested by Israel and Klingmann. A practical application of this bactericidal action of the metals has been made by the introduction of solutions of colloid forms of silver and mercury as antiseptics.

[1] *Krönig u. Paul.* Ztschr. f. Hygiene, xxv., p. 1.
[2] Virchow's Arch., cxlvii., p. 293.
[3] Transactions of the Assoc. of Amer. Physicians, xii., p. 488.
[4] Arch. f. Hygiene, xxxiv., p. 43.

I. ANTIMONY.

The preparations of antimony played a much more important rôle in therapeutics in the earlier part of last century than at the present time, and promise to be used to a still more limited extent in the future. In many respects they resemble arsenic in their effects, and may be looked upon as forming a link between it and the salts of the other heavy metals. The salt most commonly used is *tartar emetic*, or the double tartrate of antimony and potassium [$K(SbO)C_4H_4O_6$]. The effects of this salt were at one time believed to be due in part to the potassium, but have been shown to be those of the antimony alone. Many other compounds of antimony have been used in therapeutics, and several others are still found in the pharmacopœias, but they differ for most part from tartar emetic only in the rapidity of their action.

Tartar emetic, like other double salts, is not corrosive, because it does not precipitate proteids except in acid solutions, in which it is decomposed into simpler forms. The chloride of antimony, on the other hand, readily dissociates the antimony ion and is a powerful caustic when applied to the skin or the mucous membranes.

When rubbed on the **Skin**, however, tartar emetic causes redness, and a papular eruption, which later passes into vesicles and pustules. If the application be further persisted in, these pustules may become confluent and form small abscesses, and later cause extensive necrosis and ulceration of the skin. The points of origin of the papules are the openings of the cutaneous glands and the hair follicles.

Symptoms. — Tartar emetic has a slight, acrid taste, and in very small quantities causes no symptoms, except some perspiration. In somewhat larger doses its ingestion is followed by nausea and vomiting, with very marked depression and the usual accompaniments of emesis, such as salivation, profuse perspiration and acceleration of the pulse (see Apomorphine, page 235). In antimonial poisoning the vomiting is violent and continuous, the ordinary contents of the stomach being first evacuated, and then a slimy mucous fluid, which may later contain blood. In some cases it is said that no gastric symptoms are observed, but these must be exceedingly rare. The vomiting is accompanied by profuse watery diarrhœa, resembling that of arsenical poisoning, and by great muscular weakness and collapse. The pulse may be somewhat accelerated at first, but is weak, and later becomes slow and irregular. The skin is cold and covered with a clammy perspiration, and cyanosis of the face and extremities is generally marked. The respiration is slow and may be irregular, the voice weak and husky, the temperature is depressed, and the patient falls into a comatose condition, which deepens, until after a few weak convulsive movements the respiration ceases. The urine is sometimes increased in the beginning of the poisoning, but later may become scanty or entirely suppressed. It often contains albumin.

The minimum fatal dose of tartar emetic is doubtful, as the greater part of the poison is generally removed by vomiting. Recovery has

been observed after very large quantities, while in other cases 0.1 G. (2 grs.) has proved fatal.

Chronic antimonial poisoning is very rare and difficult to diagnose. The symptoms are depression, headache, giddiness and confusion, drowsiness and indistinct sight. The appetite is bad, and the patient complains of heaviness, discomfort, or pain in the region of the stomach, general weakness and exhaustion. Profuse diarrhœa may be present, rapid loss of flesh, albuminuria and finally collapse. Pustular eruptions have been observed from the prolonged internal use of tartar emetic.

Action. — Many of the symptoms of antimonial poisoning, the profuse perspiration, salivation and, to some extent at least, the collapse, are manifestly secondary to the **Emetic Action**, and the cause of the vomiting has, accordingly, been repeatedly investigated. It may be stated at once that some authors attribute the vomiting to a central action, but that the majority are inclined to regard it as mainly due to irritation of the stomach. Large doses of antimony affect the stomach and bowel in the same way as arsenic, inducing hyperæmia and swelling and loosening of the epithelium, but smaller quantities such as are used in therapeutics do not seem to cause any obvious lesion. It is found that tartar emetic injected hypodermically or intravenously causes nausea and vomiting, but much larger quantities are required than are requisite when the drug is given by the mouth. This indicates a direct action on the stomach, rather than on the centre for vomiting, and this view is supported by the fact that antimony is found in the stomach and intestine when it is injected intravenously. The obvious explanation would therefore seem to be that antimony given by the mouth acts as a gastric irritant, and causes vomiting, while when it is injected intravenously it is carried to the stomach, and again causes irritation with the same result. The whole of the antimony swallowed acts at once on the stomach, while only a part of that injected exerts its action on it, and larger doses are therefore necessary when the poison is administered in the latter way.

This explanation is opposed, however, to an observation made by Orfila, who found that when the stomach was excised and replaced by a dead bladder, tartar emetic still caused the movements of vomiting, which even expressed the fluid in the bladder. Of course no antimony could be excreted into the bladder, and no irritation or reflexes could arise from it. Again Mosso states that when the vagus nerves are cut below the diaphragm, tartar emetic fails to cause vomiting when it is swallowed, but large doses have their usual effect when injected into a vein. These observations appear at first sight to indicate that tartar emetic acts centrally, but it has been suggested that although the poison could not act on the stomach in Orfila's experiment it might cause vomiting by causing irritation of some other part of the alimentary tract. As regards Mosso's results, the relation of the vagus nerve to vomiting is still so obscure that it is dangerous to draw any inference from such experiments. On the whole the evidence goes to show that the emesis is due to irritation of the gastric mucous membrane by the antimony.

The action of tartar emetic on the **Stomach** has been explained by supposing that the acid gastric juice decomposes the double salt and

that the chloride thus formed acts as a corrosive in the same way as the chlorides of the other heavy metals. This, however, fails to explain the fact that the same effects are met with in the intestine, in which no such acid fluid exists, and that vomiting is induced readily when the gastric juice is neutral in reaction (Mosso). A more probable explanation is that antimony has a specific irritant effect on the mucous membranes of the stomach and bowel, similar to that of arsenic. The irritation is greater, however, and is induced more rapidly, so that vomiting is caused much more easily. At the same time, antimony is more slowly absorbed than arsenic, so that its action remains confined to the stomach, and as the vomiting removes much the greater part of the poison, the intestine remains unharmed except when large quantities have been swallowed and the emesis is from any cause insufficient. In chronic poisoning ulceration of the small intestine is said to occur, especially around the solitary follicles and Peyer's patches.

The acceleration of the **Pulse** seen after tartar emetic is due for the most part to the emetic action and not to the absorption of the drug. When injected into a vein in animals, antimony causes a slow and weak pulse, although this is preceded in some cases by slight acceleration. The action is a direct one on the cardiac muscle, as may be seen by perfusing an excised frog's heart with blood containing some tartar emetic. The cardiac nerves do not seem to be affected.

The **Blood-pressure** falls throughout the experiment, partly owing to the weakness of the heart but chiefly owing to an action on the vascular mechanism similar to that described under arsenic. Here again it is doubtful whether the effect is due to the vaso-motor centre or to the peripheral nerves and muscle of the vessels, but the latter are certainly involved, for stimulation of the spinal cord fails to contract the mesenteric vessels.

The **Respiration** is often slightly accelerated at first, and may be shallow and irregular from the nausea; but in cases of poisoning it becomes slow and labored, and eventually ceases along with the heart. The respiratory centre is perhaps affected directly to some extent, but the changes in the breathing are probably due for the most part to the disturbance of the circulation, and to the action on the alimentary canal. The statement made by some of the older writers that antimony caused hepatization of the lungs, has been shown to be incorrect.

The **Central Nervous System** is depressed by antimony in the frog, spontaneous movements persisting after the reflexes have disappeared, according to some authors. This has been interpreted to mean that antimony paralyzes the sensory part of the cord or its connection with the motor cell, while leaving the connections between the latter and the brain intact; but the statement itself requires further confirmation. The paralysis is due to the direct action of antimony on the nerve cells and not to the disordered circulation, for frogs poisoned with antimony are paralyzed sooner than others in which the circulation is entirely destroyed by the excision of the heart. The effect of antimony on the central nervous system of the mammals is more obscure, for it is impossible to ascertain how far the changes are due to direct action and how far they are attributable to the disturbance of the circulation and the alimentary canal. There is reason to believe, however, that the poison depresses to some extent the nerve cells here also. According to Schaffer, the cells of the spinal cord undergo a degeneration marked by the disappearance of the chromatin in chronic antimonial poisoning.

The **Depression and Collapse** of antimony poisoning are caused by the

gastric effects and the slowed circulation acting on the central nervous system, and not, as is sometimes stated, to the peripheral nerves and muscles being affected. The voluntary muscular tissue is undoubtedly weakened to some extent in the frog, but only after large doses and at a late stage. The muscles then contract somewhat more weakly than normally, and are more readily fatigued.

Many of the **Secretions** are increased by tartar emetic, such as the perspiration, the saliva and the mucous secretion of the respiratory tract. This is not due to any direct action on the glands, for the same effect is induced by anything which causes vomiting. (See Apomorphine, page 235.) The urine is sometimes increased by antimony, at other times it is diminished or suppressed. This is perhaps due to a preliminary stimulation of the renal epithelium, which passes into acute irritation when much of the drug is absorbed. The action on the urinary secretion is not very marked, however.

The irritant action of tartar emetic on the **Skin** when it is applied to it in ointment, has been explained by the double salt being broken up by the acid formed in the decomposing secretions, and an analogy has been drawn between it and the irritant effects in the stomach. In support of this it is said that the addition of alkalies to the tartar emetic ointment prevents the formation of pustules. This does not seem a very happy explanation, although it accounts for the formation of pustules at the openings of the skin glands. The double salts of other metals, however, which would form irritants in the same way as tartar emetic have no special effect on the mouths of the gland ducts. Nunn finds a specific effect on the skin of the frog when tartar emetic is injected, similar to that induced by arsenic, but more rapid in its onset, and this may explain the pustulant action. A pustular eruption is said to be induced in some cases when antimony is taken internally. Pustules also occur in the œsophagus when tartar emetic is swallowed, and irritation of the mouth and swelling of the lips have been observed.

The effects of antimony on the **Nutrition** have not been so carefully examined as those of arsenic, but, as far as is known, present a strong resemblance to them. Thus fatty degeneration of many organs is induced by its prolonged use, the nitrogen of the urine is found to be increased, and the glycogen disappears from the liver. Very small quantities of antimony given repeatedly are said to increase the glycogen and fat of the liver, without apparently altering the nitrogen of the urine.

The fall in **Temperature** after antimony is often very considerable, amounting in animals to 6° C. in the course of a few hours. It is explained by the slowness of the circulation and by the general depression and collapse and profuse perspiration.

Antimony is **Absorbed** from the skin very slowly, and from the stomach and intestine. It passes into the tissues much more gradually than arsenic, however, and its action on the stomach, can, therefore, be elicited without danger of its causing general symptoms. After absorption antimony is found in considerable quantity in the liver, which stores it up for some time. It is excreted into the stomach and intestine, in the urine, and, it is said, in the bile and milk.

The **Chloride of Antimony** ($SbCl_3$) differs from tartar emetic chiefly in being a violent corrosive, which combines to form albuminates and thus acts like the other salts of the heavy metals, and also tends to withdraw fluid from the superficial tissues, when it is applied in a concentrated solution. The

other compounds of antimony act like the double tartrate except that most of them are much slower in their effects. Stibine or antimonuretted hydrogen (SbH_3) differs entirely from arsine (AsH_3) in its effects which are similar to those of the other antimony preparations. It is only feebly toxic, and owes its activity to its being decomposed in the organism.

Preparations.

Antimonii et Potassii Tartras (U. S. P.), Antimonium Tartaratum (B. P.), tartar emetic, tartarated antimony ($(KSbOC_4H_4O_6)_2 + H_2O$) forms colorless, transparent crystals, or a white granulated powder, without odor, and having a sweet, afterwards disagreeable, metallic taste, soluble in 17 parts of cold water, insoluble in alcohol. Dose as a diaphoretic 0.002–0.008 G. ($\frac{1}{30}$–$\frac{1}{8}$ gr.), as an emetic 0.03–0.1 G. ($\frac{1}{2}$–2 gr.).

Vinum Antimonii (U. S. P.), Vinum Antimoniale (B. P.), 4 parts of tartar emetic in one thousand (U. S. P.), in 875 parts (B. P.). 0.6–2 c.c. (10–30 mins.), diaphoretic; 4–15 c.c. (1–4 drs.), emetic.

Tartar emetic is also contained in the compound syrup of squills U. S. P.

Antimonii Oxidum (U. S. P., B. P.) (Sb_2O_3), a heavy, gray, insoluble and tasteless powder. 0.05–0.1 G. (1–2 grs.).

Pulvis Antimonialis (U. S. P., B. P.), James' powder, consists of antimony oxide 1 part to 2 parts of phosphate of calcium. 0.15–0.3 G. (3–6 grs.).

Antimonii Sulphidum (U. S. P.) (Sb_2S_3).

Antimonii Sulphidum Purificatum (U. S. P.), *Antimonium Nigrum Purificatum* (B. P.) (Sb_2S_3), a heavy grayish black powder, odorless, tasteless and insoluble in water. 0.015–0.06 G. ($\frac{1}{4}$–1 gr.).

Antimonium Sulphuratum (U. S. P., B. P.), Kermes mineral, consists of antimony sulphide (SbS_3) with a small amount of oxide (Sb_2O_3)—an amorphous, reddish brown powder, odorless, tasteless and insoluble in water. 0.06–0.3 G. (1–5 grs.).

Pilulæ Antimonii Compositæ (U. S. P.), Plummer's Pills, each contain 0.04 G. ($\frac{2}{3}$ gr.) of sulphurated antimony and an equal amount of calomel. 1–2 pills.

Pilula Hydrargyri Subchloridi Composita (B. P.), Plummer's Pills, compound calomel pill, 8 grains contain nearly 2 grains each of calomel and of sulphurated antimony. 4–8 grs.

Therapeutic Uses. — Antimony is used to a much less extent in medicine than was formerly the case. In the seventeenth century it was prescribed so widely and was believed to do so much harm, that the graduates in medicine of Heidelberg were required to take an oath never to use it. At present it is used to a limited extent as an emetic, but is slow in action and induces greater depression and more prolonged nausea than the other drugs which are prescribed for this purpose, such as apomorphine, ipecacuanha, or sulphate of copper. It is therefore seldom used to evacuate the stomach in cases of poisoning or of foreign bodies in the stomach or œsophagus. Its expectorant action is taken advantage of in acute bronchitis in which the secretion of the bronchial mucous membrane is insufficient, but it is of less value when the secretion is abundant. In commencing bronchitis tartar emetic is sometimes given until vomiting occurs, and then continued in smaller doses and at longer intervals.

It is also used as a diaphoretic to some extent, in the same doses as are prescribed as expectorants, but it has been almost entirely supplanted by pilocarpine for this purpose. James' powder was especially popular as a diaphoretic, but is now seldom employed.

In acute fever antimony was formerly largely used as a depressant, more especially when delirium was a marked feature. The object was to produce a mild collapse, but the treatment has been entirely abandoned by most authorities, and probably did more harm than good. Acute lobar pneumonia was almost universally treated by tartar emetic at one time, and an attempt has recently been made to revive this treatment, but without success.

Antimony has been advised instead of arsenic in the internal treatment of skin disease, but it is impossible to state at present how far it is capable of replacing the more widely used drug.

In all cases in which there is marked depression or weakness, in which the stomach or bowel is disordered, or in which the circulation is feeble, the preparations of antimony are contraindicated.

Tartar emetic was formerly used in ointment (one part to four) as a skin irritant, but its continued application has led in several cases to diffuse subcutaneous abscess, and sometimes to necrosis of bone, so that the tartar emetic ointment has passed into desuetude.

In cases of **Antimonial Poisoning**, emetics are seldom required, but the stomach may be washed out by means of the stomach tube, if vomiting is not present, and a purge may be given to remove the poison in the bowel. Tannic acid is used to precipitate the antimony in the stomach, and the tannate formed must be washed out. A form of tannic acid which is usually available in emergencies is strong tea, which is also useful as a stimulant for the collapse. Lime or magnesia may be used to precipitate the antimony instead of tannic acid.

Bibliography.

Ackermann. Virchow's Arch., xxv., p. 531.
Radziejewski. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1871, p. 472.
Saikowski. Virchow's Arch., xxxiv., p. 73.
Soloweitschyk. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xii., p. 438.
Kobert. Ibid., xv., p. 36.
Grimm. Pflüger's Arch., iv., p. 205.
Harnack. Münch. med. Woch., 1892, p. 179.
Ringer and Murrell. Journ. of Physiol., i., p. 241.
Nunn. Ibid., i., p. 247.
Thumas. Virchow's Arch., cxxiii., p. 66.
Mosso. Schmidt's Jahrbuch, clxix., p. 236.
Chittenden and Blake. Studies from the Lab. of Physiolog. Chem. Sheffield Scientific School, ii., p. 87; iii., p. 106.
Kubeler. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxvii., p. 451.

II. MERCURY.

Mercury, one of the most powerful inorganic poisons, has been used in medicine for a long time and in a large variety of forms. Some differences are observed in the action of these, but all of them induce the same general results, the differences existing only in their local effects, and being due to the salts differing in solubility and dissociability. A soluble salt, such as the perchloride, comes into more intimate contact with the tissues, and therefore acts more powerfully locally, and is also absorbed more rapidly and in larger amount than calomel, which is entirely insoluble in water. Both the local and the general effects of the perchloride are more marked than those of calo-

mel, therefore, but when sufficient mercury in the form of calomel is absorbed into the tissues, the general effects are the same as if an equal quantity had been taken up as perchloride.

Mercury is absorbed and circulates in the blood in the form of the albuminate, which is insoluble in water, but is rendered soluble by excess of proteid, and also by chloride of sodium in such quantities as are met with in the tissues. The solubility of the albuminate explains how mercury is absorbed so much more quickly than any of the other heavy metals, and at the same time it may account in part for its greater corrosive action. The corrosion is due to some extent to the acid constituent of the preparation, but this is not greater than that of an equally soluble and equally dissociable combination of the acid with another metal. The mercurial ion itself is also corrosive, and its destructive action is the more powerful because the precipitate formed with proteids is less insoluble in the surrounding fluids of the body and is therefore more flocculent and affords less protection to the surface, than those formed by the other heavy metals. The mercurial action is consequently not limited to the surface of a tissue but extends into the deeper cells. The highly corrosive action of the mercury ion has been ascribed to its great affinity for the amido-compounds which are contained in the albumin molecule. Liebermann has also shown that it has a special affinity for lecithalbumin, and it is possible that this may play an important rôle both in the absorption and in the slow excretion of the metal.

The albuminate is formed rapidly when such soluble salts as the perchloride come in contact with the tissues, and the local corrosion is greater and the absorption more rapid than when an insoluble salt is ingested. A good deal of dispute has arisen as to the absorption of the insoluble salts of mercury, and it is frequently stated that calomel is first changed to the perchloride by the action of the hydrochloric acid of the stomach and by the chlorides of the tissues, and that only then is the albuminate formed. There is, however, no sufficient evidence that the perchloride is formed from the chloride, and such a change is not necessary to explain its absorption, for the proteids of the tissues can act on calomel as such, and, forming the soluble albuminate, allow it to be absorbed. It has been asserted of late that when calomel is injected hypodermically, the leucocytes take it up and carry it off as they do any other foreign insoluble body, and it is quite possible that they may take it up in the same way from the alimentary canal. At the same time the quantity of calomel which comes into intimate contact with the tissues is much smaller than in the case of the soluble perchloride, and a smaller proportion of calomel is absorbed therefore. In the same way other insoluble preparations of mercury are absorbed in the form of albuminates, and even the metal may be oxidized and absorbed when it is applied to the living surfaces or injected into the blood in a state of fine division. Thus the inhalation of mercury vapor by the lungs leads to general poisoning, often of a very malignant type, and mercury rubbed into very fine globules, and applied in ointment

to the skin, passes into the gland ducts and along the roots of the hairs, and, after being oxidized, is dissolved and absorbed into the tissues, in which it causes the typical mercurial effects.

Symptoms. — Acute Mercurial Poisoning occurs only from the use of soluble preparations, and in particular from the perchloride of mercury or corrosive sublimate. Many cases have arisen from this poison being swallowed accidentally or with suicidal intent, but of late years an almost equal number has arisen from the perchloride being used as an antiseptic wash for large cavities. When corrosive sublimate is swallowed in poisonous quantity, the patient complains at once of the harsh, metallic taste, which is followed by burning pain in the mouth, throat and stomach. Nausea and vomiting set in very soon, and the vomited matter may contain shreds of mucous membrane and blood. Diarrhœa and violent tenesmus, with watery or bloody stools, often containing shreds of membrane, may be among the early symptoms, or may only occur after twenty-four hours. These symptoms from the alimentary canal are accompanied by collapse, with a small, thready, sometimes irregular pulse, shallow, irregular, rapid respiration, cold, clammy skin, pinched features, and sunken eyes. The temperature is often subnormal, but sometimes fever is observed, although this is attributed by many to concurrent disease. The consciousness is usually unaffected, but in some cases somnolence, giddiness, or more rarely anxiety and restlessness have been observed. The urine is much diminished and complete anuria often occurs in a few hours. If the urine is not completely suppressed, it generally contains albumin, renal epithelium, casts, and more rarely sugar. Death may occur within an hour from shock, but more frequently the patient survives several days or even one or two weeks, the symptoms of intestinal corrosion and of renal irritation continuing, until he finally sinks from exhaustion.

When acute poisoning occurs from the absorption of corrosive sublimate from wounds, the symptoms of corrosion of the mouth and stomach are absent at first, but the dysenteric symptoms and the renal inflammation are produced in the same way as when the poison is swallowed. Here again the patient may die within a few hours, but more frequently survives for several days, and in the latter case the symptoms towards the end partake of the character of chronic poisoning. In particular, salivation and stomatitis set in in the course of a few days. These also occur when the poison is swallowed, although they are more liable to be overlooked, from the cauterization produced in the mouth by the local action.

Chronic Poisoning. — A much more frequently observed form of poisoning is that induced by the prolonged medicinal use of mercury. It may arise from any of the preparations, and from any form of application, although some methods of administration are credited with being less liable to induce it than others. Thus inunction with mercurial ointment and the use of calomel internally are both more liable to cause the severer forms of stomatitis than is corrosive sublimate. A single hypodermic injection of an insoluble preparation may induce

Chronic P. chiefly secondary to Absorption
Idiosyncrasy

it in susceptible persons, because the mercury is only slowly absorbed, and passes into the tissues as gradually as if it were given by the mouth regularly for several days. This chronic poisoning or **Mercurialism** is due, not to the local action, but to the effects of the drug after absorption. It is much more liable to occur in certain people than in others, but may follow the abuse of mercury in any case, and the cause of the abnormal susceptibility to mercury is unknown. When mercurialism begins to be manifested, the drug ought to be stopped, or the dose much reduced, until the symptoms disappear. Formerly it was believed that the earlier symptoms of mercurial poisoning had to be induced in the cure of syphilis, but in modern therapeutics every effort is made to avoid them. The first symptoms generally arise from the *mouth and throat*, the patient complaining of a metallic taste, and of a feeling of numbness or soreness of the tongue and gums. The breath has an unpleasant fœtid odor, the tongue is swollen and thickly coated, the gums are soft, swollen and often of a dark bluish-red or gray color and the flow of saliva is augmented. If the medication be continued as was often done formerly, ulcers appear on the gums and on the sides of the tongue where it comes in contact with the teeth, especially if these are carious, and on the mucous membrane of the cheeks; the salivation increases and irritates the lips and the skin where it is exposed to the secretion. If the administration of mercury be still persisted in, the teeth become loose and fall out, gangrene of the gums, lips and throat, and necrosis of part or even of the whole jaw may follow, and may prove fatal by exhaustion and inanition due to the difficulty in swallowing and to the complete absence of desire for food. The milder forms of stomatitis and salivation are observed in a large proportion of cases of syphilis treated with mercury, according to some authors in 30 per cent. or more. It may be avoided, to some extent, at least, by scrupulous cleanliness of the mouth and teeth, by the filling of carious teeth, and by using a 2–4 per cent. solution of chlorate of potash as a mouth wash.

The *stomach and intestine* also suffer in chronic mercury poisoning. The patient often complains of loss of appetite, and occasionally of a feeling of weight and discomfort in the stomach, nausea and vomiting, general weakness and loss of flesh. Colic and diarrhœa are frequently observed, or diarrhœa and constipation may alternate. These symptoms are naturally more liable to occur from the administration of mercury by the mouth than by other channels, as here the action after absorption is reinforced by the direct local effects. Some *fever* is sometimes noted, but this is secondary to the affection of the mouth, bowel or skin, and is not directly attributable to the mercury.

Occasionally *skin eruptions* are seen when mercury is given by the mouth, but much more frequently when it is applied to the skin. In the latter case they are not limited to the point of application, although they often begin from it and spread over a large surface of the body. They are said to occur often without any other symptom of poisoning, except the fever and discomfort which they induce themselves. They

vary greatly in form, consisting of small reddish spots, large red erythematous surfaces, urticaria, or eczema, each of these occurring alone or in succession, and being usually followed by desquamation. The eruption generally lasts only 1–3 weeks, but in some cases has not entirely disappeared until three months after its first appearance, and in others has returned repeatedly afterwards. It is said to have been induced occasionally by a single dose of calomel.

The *urine* is often somewhat increased, but may be decreased afterwards, and it not infrequently contains albumin, although the proportion of cases in which this occurs is much disputed, and the amount in the urine is generally very small. Glycosuria is much rarer in man, but has been frequently observed in rabbits after prolonged treatment with mercury.

It is still a matter of doubt how far the *sexual organs* are involved in mercury poisoning. According to some authorities disturbances of the menstruation and even complete amenorrhœa have been observed, and abortion is also stated to have been caused by it.

A general condition of *cachexia* may be induced by the presence of these disorders, and is marked by pallor, anæmia, emaciation, weakness and restlessness, with a tendency to fainting and disturbed sleep. The pulse is small, weak and quick, sometimes irregular, and the patient often complains of breathlessness.

Affections of the *central nervous system* are rarely induced now by the abuse of mercury in therapeutics, but are mentioned by some of the earlier writers, and still occur in the case of workers in mercury mines, in mirror, barometer and thermometer factories, and in other manufactories in which mercury is used and its fumes are inhaled by the workmen for prolonged periods. One of these affections is the mercurial *erethism*, a condition of abnormal irritability, timidity or shyness, accompanied by great muscular weakness, and sometimes developing into sleeplessness, delirium and transitory hallucinations. Another well-known form is the mercurial *tremor*, which affects the hands and arms first, later the legs, and sometimes extends over all the muscles of the body. Shooting pains along the nerves or in the joints are sometimes complained of, circumscribed areas of partial anæsthesia, amblyopia, anosmia or deafness have been described, and in some cases localized paralysis of the muscles of the arm or leg have been induced. These last differ from the paralysis of lead or arsenic poisoning in the fact that no wasting of the muscles is observed, and the electrical reaction remains normal. According to Letulle they are due to the destruction of the myeline sheath of the peripheral nerves, the axis cylinder remaining intact.

The symptoms of mercurial poisoning, both acute and chronic, in animals, resemble those in man so closely that it is unnecessary to describe them further.

Action — Lower Forms of Life. — The action of mercury on proteids extends to all forms of living matter. Whenever the metal comes into intimate contact with albumins, it forms the albuminate and destroys life. This poisonous action is naturally much more evident when solu-

ble preparations are used than when the oxides or calomel are in question. Thus corrosive sublimate in a solution of one part in 50,000 destroys infusoria in some 20 minutes, and even one part in one million kills algæ in the course of a few days. The bacteria are somewhat more resistant than these forms, but corrosive sublimate is said to delay the development of some of these in a solution of one part in one million, and the anthrax bacillus fails to grow in blood which contains one part in 8,000. A solution of one part in one thousand is generally regarded as capable of disinfecting fluids completely in the course of a few hours, but there is no question that the germicidal power of corrosive sublimate has been much overestimated. Thus Geppert found that the spores of anthrax could be exposed to the action of a one per cent. solution for many hours and still develop as soon as the mercury was entirely removed. There is no doubt, however, that corrosive sublimate and the other soluble salts of mercury are among the most powerful antiseptics at present available. The insoluble preparations are less poisonous, owing to the difficulty in bringing them into intimate contact with the microbes, but calomel has been shown to have some effect as an intestinal antiseptic.

In the **Higher Animals and in Man** the same destructive effects are induced by the mercury preparations. The corrosion of the mouth, throat and stomach when the perchloride is swallowed, has already been mentioned. When it is applied to the other mucous membranes, similar effects are obtained, and when it is injected hypodermically, even in dilute solution, it induces intense pain, swelling and inflammation, which is rarely followed by suppuration, but which may result in the formation of cicatrices. Stronger solutions injected into animals often cause the formation of cheesy abscesses, and even dry necrosis of the skin and underlying tissue. The hypodermic or intramuscular injection of insoluble preparations is more liable to cause abscess formation, because the mercury is slowly absorbed and has therefore more time to induce its irritant effects.

When solutions of corrosive sublimate are applied to the skin, they cause a feeling of numbness very often; but when very strong solutions come in contact with tender parts of the skin, and in particular, when the salt itself is allowed to lie in contact with it for any length of time, deep corrosion, necrosis and sloughing may follow. Even the insoluble preparations are liable to set up irritation when they are rubbed into the skin, especially if there is any pre-existing tendency to cutaneous eruption.

After absorption, mercury acts more especially on the alimentary tract and on the kidneys, although other organs are not exempt from its effects.

The Salivation and Stomatitis, which are so frequently seen under mercurial medication, are obviously not due to the local action of the drug on its way to the stomach, for they occur equally readily when it is applied by hypodermic injection or by inunction. The salivation is apparently due to the direct action of the mercury on the secretory

apparatus, for it often appears before any other symptom and is certainly not the reflex effect of the irritation of the mouth. The saliva is sometimes excreted in enormous amounts, many litres of it being poured out in the course of twenty-four hours. It contains mercury, and has therefore a metallic taste, and tends to irritate the lips and skin where it comes in contact with them. In extreme cases it leads to sleeplessness from its accumulating in the back of the throat and awakening the patient with a feeling of suffocation. The stomatitis is likewise due to the excretion of mercury by the saliva and by the other mucous secretions of the mouth and throat. The irritation caused by the metal leads to excoriations, and these to the formation of ulcers, particularly where microbes are present in large numbers, as around carious teeth. The necrosis of the jaws is due to these ulcers, penetrating to the bone and setting up periostitis, for mercury in itself has no specific action on the bone such as has been mentioned under phosphorus.

Mercury has less direct effect on the **Stomach**, though congestion and even small hæmorrhages in cases of poisoning indicate that it is not entirely immune; the loss of appetite and malnutrition in chronic poisoning are ascribed to the presence of mercury in the saliva rather than to its affecting the gastric functions directly. In the **Intestine**, on the other hand, mercury is apparently excreted in large amount, and induces very distinct lesions. The parts affected are the cæcum and colon, while the small intestine very often escapes almost entirely. The action of mercury is evidenced by hyperæmia, redness and swelling of the mucous membrane, which later develop into necrotic surfaces and ulcers along the folds; these lend it an appearance almost indistinguishable from that of chronic dysentery and may eventually end in perforation. The symptoms from the intestine are in accordance with the lesions, consisting in constant purging with very fluid, sometimes rice-water stools, intense pain and tenesmus, blood and fragments of mucous membrane in the fæces.

Small doses of mercurials given by the mouth act as **Purges**, causing soft stools generally without pain or straining. The insoluble preparations are used for this purpose, as they act least on the stomach, and the mercurial purges par excellence are calomel and the metallic preparations — blue pill and gray powder. This effect is apparently due to their acting as intestinal irritants from their specific action on the intestine. They apparently do not remain long enough in the stomach to be dissolved, and besides seem to have less tendency to induce irritation here. In the intestine, on the other hand, their longer sojourn and special affinity for the epithelium, leads to their partial solution and to their irritant action being developed. A small proportion of these insoluble preparations is absorbed from the intestine, but the great mass is thrown out unchanged in the stools, and thus very large doses of calomel sometimes induce no serious symptoms. Mercury acts in the intestine even when the bile is suppressed, and the stools are often of a greenish color, which has been ascribed to a metallic com-

pound formed in the bowel, but which is really due to bile pigment. This is ordinarily decomposed by the microbes in the intestine with the formation of the fæcal pigment, but mercury from its antiseptic properties prevents the growth of the microbes, and the bile therefore appears in the stools undecomposed and possessed of its ordinary color.

The mercurial purges, and in particular calomel, have often been credited with increasing the secretion of the **Bile**, but this has been shown to be incorrect, for Stadelmann (in animals) and Pfaff (in man) found that the mercurial preparations had no effect on the secretion escaping from a biliary fistula. The belief probably arose from the dark-green color of the stools, but this, as already mentioned, is due, not to the increase of the bile, but to its being preserved from putrefaction in the intestine. There is, in fact, no sufficient experimental or clinical evidence that the liver is in any way affected directly by mercury. The "biliousness" which is so often relieved by calomel or blue pill, is due, not to the liver, but to disorder of the alimentary tract.

Mercury has no such powerful effect on the **Unorganized** ferments of digestion as it has upon the microbes, for though large amounts of the soluble preparations precipitate the pepsin in artificial digestion experiments, smaller quantities have little such effect. Calomel has no action on the digestive ferments, but retards the putrefaction in the intestine, and thus limits the decomposition of the food. Its antiseptic action is aided by the increased peristalsis which follows its use, and which removes the decomposing mass from the canal. In fact, the lessened amount of double sulphates in the urine which follows the use of calomel, may be ascribed as much to its purgative, as to its antiseptic power.

Another organ which is powerfully affected by mercury is the **Kidney**. A moderate dose of calomel induces marked diuresis, particularly in cases in which there is a large accumulation of fluid in the body, as in dropsy from heart disease. In other forms of dropsy, such as that arising from hepatic cirrhosis, or from renal disease, it is less reliable, although it not infrequently increases the flow of urine in these cases also. When purging follows the administration of the mercurial, less diuretic effect is observed.

In normal individuals and in animals the diuretic action is generally much weaker, although some recent work has shown that it can be elicited easily in rabbits (Cohnstein). In view of the fact that mercurial preparations have an irritant action on the kidney, it would seem that the increased secretion of urine induced by calomel and by other mercurials is most probably to be ascribed to a direct action on the epithelium.

In acute mercurial poisoning, when death does not follow in the course of a few hours, anuria is often observed both in man and animals. This anuria is due to the renal changes, which are found to consist in necrosis of the epithelium of the tubules in some parts of the cortex. The whole organ is congested and the glomeruli are in a state of acute

inflammation, but the necrosed tubules are the most prominent feature. Very generally in the rabbit, less often in the dog and in man, these are filled with a deposit of phosphate of calcium, occasionally intermixed with some chalk. According to some pathologists, it is deposited first in the tubules and only when these are filled does it force its way into the cells, but a more probable view is that it is thrown out in the necrosed cells, and as these break up, passes into the tubules. It may be remarked in passing that several other poisons, such as bismuth and aloin, occasionally induce this deposit of lime in the kidneys.

These renal symptoms have been observed most frequently in corrosive sublimate poisoning, either by the mouth, or from absorption from a wound. The more slowly absorbed, insoluble preparations apparently do not often accumulate in sufficient quantity in the blood to induce such severe effects. At the same time, albumin or casts are very often observed in the urine from the treatment of syphilitic patients with mercury in any form, although it is stated that this is less liable to occur when soluble preparations are injected hypodermically than after inunction or the use of insoluble salts subcutaneously. The more marked the action on the intestine, the less destruction of the kidney is observed in cases of severe poisoning.

The lime deposited in the kidney has suggested the idea that mercury has a specific action on **Bone**, consisting in the absorption of the calcium, and an attempt has been made to demonstrate this action by estimating the lime salts in bone after mercury, and comparing the amount with that of normal animals of the same size. In addition, some of the earlier writers mention a congestion of the bone marrow in chronic mercury poisoning. No action on bone has been established however, and the explanation of the renal deposit as due to decalcification of the bones has been shown to be incorrect by Klemperer, who found that, instead of being oversaturated with lime which it deposits in the kidney, the blood actually contains a somewhat smaller amount of lime than normally. The lime deposited in the kidney is evidently drawn from that normally circulating in the blood; in necrosed tissue from other causes lime is very often deposited, although not so rapidly as in mercury poisoning.

Mercury seems to have comparatively little direct action on the **Circulation** in cases of poisoning, and most of the changes in the pulse are to be ascribed rather to the shock and collapse, or in chronic poisoning to the cachexia and malnutrition, than to any direct effects on the heart and vessels; in some cases of acute poisoning, however, patches of fatty degeneration have been found in the heart. In the frog large doses of soluble salts slow and weaken the heart, and mercury salts injected into the blood vessels of mammals have been found to cause a sudden descent of the blood-pressure and paralysis of the heart. Subcutaneously injected into animals, the soluble salts reduce the blood-pressure more gradually, but at the end a very sudden descent to zero occurs. The action is in part on the heart muscle, in part on the peripheral vessels.

The **Respiration** is also only affected indirectly. In chronic mercury poisoning, marked breathlessness is sometimes observed and has been ascribed by Kussmaul to the general muscular weakness.

The action of mercury on the **Nervous System** is very obscure. In acute poisoning the intellect often remains clear to the end, and no symptoms pointing to any direct affection of the central nervous system are observed. In chronic poisoning, however, the higher centres are undoubtedly involved in the effects, as is shown by the erethism and occasional hallucinations. The tremor is also of cerebral origin probably, though this is not yet certain, and the general muscular weakness is not due to the peripheral muscles and nerves being affected, but to the alterations in the centres. As regards the paralysis sometimes observed in the arms or legs in workers in mercury, Letulle believes it to be caused by the poison acting on the peripheral nerves and destroying the myeline sheath. The areas of partial anæsthesia and the pains in joints may also prove to be due to peripheral changes. In some cases, especially where the tremor is marked, the reflex excitability of the spinal cord has been found to be exaggerated, but it is generally unaffected. The muscles do not seem to be acted on directly in either acute or chronic poisoning in man, and even when paralysis is developed, they maintain their irritability and do not atrophy. In the frog mercury weakens the muscles, but only after doses which are sufficient to paralyze both the central nervous system and the heart.

A good deal of interest has been manifested in the question whether mercury affects the **Nutrition** in any way except through its action on the alimentary canal. Several authors have stated that the urea is increased by the use of small doses, but the subject is a very difficult one to investigate, for when any save the smallest doses are given, the kidney and bowel are involved in the effects, and the prolonged use of mercury is restricted to experiments on animals and on syphilitics. There seems, however, good reason to believe that very small doses of mercury given for some time increase the nutrition and weight of animals. The cachexia of chronic poisoning may be due in part to a specific action on the metabolism, but it is impossible to determine this point, because the alterations in the alimentary tract are in themselves sufficient to cause such symptoms. Meyer found that mercury lessened to some extent the alkalinity of the blood, probably by the formation of lactic acid in excess.

Changes in the **Blood Corpuscles** have been observed under mercurial treatment in a number of instances, but there is as yet no general agreement as to wherein these consist, and it seems not unlikely that the blood reaction in health is different from that in syphilis and that it may vary in the successive stages of the disease. In health the red corpuscles and the hæmoglobin are said to be augmented at first but afterwards diminished, while in syphilis a sharp fall in the amount of hæmoglobin is succeeded by an increase to beyond that present before the treatment. Kuperwasser states that in healthy persons mercury increases the number of newly formed leucocytes but that this is more

than counterbalanced by the fall in the older cells; in syphilis he found fewer recently formed leucocytes and more mature ones after mercury.[1]

Mercury has no effect on the **Temperature** in itself, but when stomatitis or skin eruptions are developed, some fever generally accompanies them, while in collapse the temperature may fall several degrees below the normal.

Distribution. — After its prolonged use mercury is found in almost every organ of the body, but larger quantities are found in the kidney and liver than elsewhere, and it seems to be stored in these organs longer than in any other. In cases of acute poisoning through absorption from the subcutaneous tissue or from wounded surfaces, the distribution is the same. The statement that mercury is stored up in large quantities in the bones has not been confirmed by the more recent investigators, but traces are found here, as in the muscles, brain, lungs, intestine and spleen.

Mercury is **Eliminated** by almost all the excretory organs, but most largely by the intestine and kidney. It has been found in small quantities in the perspiration, milk, saliva, gastric juice and bile, and has been shown to pass to the fœtus in utero through the placental circulation. The excretion begins within one or two days after absorption, but is very slow and irregular. Mercury has certainly been found in the urine six months after its administration had been stopped, and some authors state that it may be detected in it for years afterwards. It is open to question, however, whether these last cases of very prolonged excretion are not to be explained by the patients having been exposed to the fumes of mercury in the interim. At the same time it is not impossible that pockets of mercury may be encapsuled in the tissues when the insoluble preparations are injected, exactly as a lead bullet may be, and that after a long time some irritation such as a blow may again liberate it and permit of its excretion. The elimination is said to last longer when the mercury is rubbed into the skin than when it is given by the mouth, or when soluble preparations are injected hypodermically. This is explained by the drug passing more slowly through the skin, which continues to contain some of it long after the inunction treatment has ceased. Mercury often disappears from the urine for several days or even weeks at a time, and then returns again. It is said that more mercury is found in the urine after its hypodermic injection than after inunction, but even in the most favorable circumstances only a small proportion of that absorbed is excreted by the kidneys. In the urine the mercury probably exists for the most part in the form of a salt, although some of it may be in organic combination.

[1] Many of the lesions of acute mercury poisoning have been stated by Kaufmann to be due to the formation of capillary emboli in the kidney and intestine. This explanation has been contested by several authors, and seems to be no more firmly established than the similar statement regarding the effects of phosphorus and arsenic.

Mercury forms very poisonous compounds with methyl and ethyl, which are apparently very slowly decomposed in the organism to ordinary forms, and which have given rise to fatal poisoning in two cases, the symptoms making their appearance only long after the ingestion.[1]

Therapeutic Uses. — The chief purpose for which mercury is used internally, is the treatment of **Syphilis.** Its curative effects in this disease can be explained at present only by supposing that it develops a specific destructive action on the syphilitic virus.[2] Its virtues are attested by the great majority of the medical profession, but a comparatively small minority still oppose its use, and some have even gone so far as to assert that instead of curing syphilis it promotes the development of tertiary symptoms. Less extreme opponents of the mercurial treatment hold that, while the secondary symptoms certainly disappear under it, they are only rendered latent, and reappear in course of time, whereas without mercury they would have run their course in the first instance and disappeared. There is no question that a certain proportion of cases of syphilis recover without the use of mercury, and indeed without the use of any drug. In many of these, however, the course of the disease can be shortened by mercury, and in many others, in which the symptoms show no signs of abating under hygienic measures, mercury causes a rapid and permanent improvement. A certain number of relapses undoubtedly occur after the mercurial treatment has been left off, but it seems probable that many of these would not have had even temporary relief without mercury. As to the old argument that tertiary syphilis is caused by the use of mercury in the earlier stages, it has been shown that tertiary syphilis occurs without mercury, and that the lesions caused in it are entirely different from those induced by this metal. The opponents of mercurial treatment frequently assume that it is necessarily followed by cachexia and by all the lasting disorders which its abuse leads to. At the present time, however, mercury is administered in small quantities, and syphilologists are agreed that it ought not to be allowed to induce any but the earliest symptoms of chronic poisoning. To summarize the view held by the great majority of authorities, it may be said that mercury is of benefit in a very large proportion of cases, although it is not essential to the treatment of some favorable ones, and that it is unable to arrest the progress of the disease in a certain proportion of malignant forms.

A question that is still debated, and which, like the other matters of doubt concerning the mercurial treatment of syphilis, has given rise to an overwhelming literature, is whether mercury ought to be exhibited as soon as the diagnosis of primary syphilis is made, or whether the advent of the secondary stage is to be awaited. Practice differs in this respect, but probably the majority of physicians do not prescribe mercury until some secondary symptom makes its appearance, and then continue its administration until the disease disappears, or until sali-

[1] *Hepp*, Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxiii., p. 91.

[2] There is some evidence that the administration of mercury to animals slightly increases their resistance to subsequent infection with anthrax for some time (Cash).

vation or stomatitis warns against its further use. Some authorities recommend that mercury be continued for months after the secondary symptoms have been relieved, in order to prevent relapse, but this is less rigidly carried out now than in the earlier decades of last century. In tertiary syphilis mercury is generally considered inferior to the iodides, but when the disease attacks any important organ, such as the brain or eye, mercury is more reliable, or both mercury and iodide may be prescribed together. In hereditary syphilis mercury is much more efficient than iodides.

Mercury has been used in syphilis in a large number of forms, and of late years new preparations and new methods of administration have succeeded each other so rapidly that it is impossible to discuss them all. Formerly mercury was given *by the mouth* or by inunction, and apart from the special clinics and the syphilologists, the internal treatment is still the most popular one. The preparations generally used for internal administration are corrosive sublimate, calomel, or the metallic preparations — blue pill and gray powder — the last being used most widely in England. Calomel and the metallic preparations are, however, very liable to induce diarrhœa, from their being insoluble and thus passing into the intestine before being absorbed, and opium is therefore often prescribed along with them. Calomel is also credited with causing salivation and stomatitis more readily than the other preparations, perhaps because it is more difficult to gauge how much of it is absorbed than in the case of the soluble perchloride. Mercury administered by the mouth is in all cases more liable to derange the digestion than when administered by other channels. Accordingly, *inunction* was introduced to avoid the disturbance of the stomach and intestine caused by the local action of the mercury, while that due to its excretion along the alimentary tract remained unchanged. By this method the mercury is rubbed into the skin in the form of ointment ; that most frequently used consists of metallic mercury suspended in a state of fine division in lard, but others have been suggested, such as the oleate of mercury, the ointment of the yellow oxide, and mercury soaps. The first is less irritant, however, and has entirely supplanted the others, which never enjoyed a very wide popularity. The action of mercury is somewhat more slowly elicited by this method than when it is administered internally, but lasts longer, and the digestion is less liable to be disturbed. The mercury is absorbed in the form of a proteid combination from the gland ducts, and probably a small quantity is inhaled by the lungs as vapor. The objection to the method is that it is inconvenient and uncleanly, and that it is even less possible to estimate the amount of mercury actually absorbed than when it is given by the mouth. One case of fatal poisoning has been recorded from the ointment being applied to sore hands. Instead of mercury ointment being rubbed into the skin, one of the plasters or lint containing mercurial ointment (Weylander) may be applied to it, permitting of the continuous absorption of small quantities by the skin and by inhalation of the vapor.

In 1867, Lewin introduced a new method, the *hypodermic injection* of a dilute solution of corrosive sublimate, and this has been very widely practised of late years, and with great success. The advantages of the method are the avoidance of digestive disturbance, which is shared by the inunction method, its cleanliness, the more accurate estimation of the amount of mercury actually administered, and the greater rapidity of action. Its chief disadvantage is the pain caused by the injection, which has to be repeated daily; some inflammation and swelling follow immediately, but no suppuration, when ordinary care is taken; but the pain is very intense and persistent and many patients refuse to continue the treatment. Salivation is said to follow this method more seldom than any other, and relief from the secondary syphilitic symptoms is gained sooner. Lewin continues to use the perchloride solution and prefers it to any of the modifications; others have added morphine, or, more recently, cocaine, in order to lessen the pain, but this is to be deprecated from the danger of the habit being formed. The addition of chloride of sodium tends to prevent the precipitation of proteids by the perchloride, and a solution of perchloride of mercury, with ten times its weight of common salt or of urea has therefore been advocated, while others have used the peptonate or the albuminate of mercury dissolved in salt solution. Mercury has a strong affinity for the amido-group, and in combination with it has little tendency to precipitate proteids, and this has led to the use of preparations of mercury with the amido-acids, such as glycocoll, formamide or succinimide. Many of these methods are said to lessen the pain of hypodermic injection, but do not remove it entirely, probably because the various compounds undergo some dissociation in the tissues, and the free mercury ion causes the same irritation as if the perchloride had been injected.

Instead of the soluble preparations of mercury, which necessitate the painful injections being repeated daily, *insoluble salts* have been injected, with the idea that these being slowly dissolved and absorbed from the seat of injection, a quantity sufficient for several days may thus be given at one time. Instead of injecting these insoluble preparations hypodermically, they are often thrown into the muscular tissue. According to the advocates of this method, it causes less immediate pain than perchloride injections, but, as solution takes place, and the mercury attacks the tissues, the part becomes extremely painful, swollen, and inflamed. Suppuration and even gangrene have been developed in a very considerable number of cases, and in others severe or fatal mercury poisoning has been observed. The advantages of the method are that the physician has not to visit the patient every day, and that the injection need only be made once, or at most twice a week. On the other hand, the local lesions are often very severe, and the amount of mercury absorbed cannot be controlled in any way. It has the advantage over the administration per os that the digestion is not so liable to be interfered with, but, as has been said, the danger and pain are very much greater. Many authorities therefore deprecate

the use of these insoluble preparations by injection, but a considerable number of syphilologists still persist in their use, and new preparations have been introduced for this purpose in large numbers. Those most commonly used are calomel in salt solution or in liquid paraffin, metallic mercury in very fine division suspended in liquid paraffin, the salicylate, benzoate, and the thymol-acetate. The oxides have also been proposed and many other preparations have received a trial by this method.

Other methods of introducing mercury into the tissues are more rarely employed. The *intravenous injection* of the perchloride has been suggested for the treatment of cases in which there is urgent haste, but has rarely been carried out, and is likely to prove dangerous from the formation of emboli, and also from the effects of mercury on the heart when thus applied.

Suppositories of mercury have been used to some extent, and are said to disturb the digestion less than the administration per os.

Mercury *fumigations* have also been practised to a limited extent, the vapor of mercury being freed by heating calomel or the sulphide. The patient sits in a wooden tent up to his neck and the mercury deposited on the skin is absorbed. The method is very cumbrous, and the quantity of mercury taken up cannot be controlled.

Mercury was recommended by Hamilton in the beginning of last century in the treatment of **Acute Febrile Affections**, and the greatest abuse unquestionably prevailed in the earlier decades. Later its sphere of usefulness was restricted to the treatment of inflammation of the serous membranes—pleurisy, meningitis, pericarditis, peritonitis—and many physicians still maintain that it checks the effusion and promotes the healing of these diseases. Others deny that mercury possesses any virtues in these cases, and its use is undoubtedly becoming more limited; in acute iritis it is still used almost universally. In these cases it is always administered by the mouth in the form of calomel, blue pill or gray powder.

As a **Purgative** mercury is very frequently prescribed in "biliousness," and in putrefactive diarrhœa. It acts partly from its antiseptic power, but mainly by removing the putrefying contents from the intestine; calomel, blue pill or gray powder is usually employed with or without the addition of a vegetable purge.

Calomel has proved of only doubtful value as an intestinal antiseptic in typhoid fever, dysentery and other similar conditions.

Calomel and other mercurials have long been known to be of value in cases of **Dropsy**, but Jendrassik deserves the credit of having revived their employment as diuretics, for this use of mercury had fallen into oblivion. The best preparation is calomel, given in 0.2 G. (3 grs.) doses three times a day or in 0.1 G. (2 grs.) doses 5–10 times a day. It is of great value in certain cases of cardiac dropsy, but is less reliable in the accumulations of fluid met with in hepatic or renal disease, although here too its administration is sometimes followed by the rapid excretion of the fluid. It does not seem to be contraindicated in chronic nephritis, although its action has to be carefully con-

trolled. It has no effect in removing the exudations of acute inflammation such as pleurisy.

Mercury is used **Externally** as an **Antiseptic** wash in surgical operations, chiefly in the form of the perchloride, but also as the cyanide and oxycyanide. It is irritant to wounds, however, and is liable to be absorbed when applied to large surfaces, and several cases of fatal poisoning have been recorded from the use of even the most dilute solutions of corrosive sublimate to wash out the uterus and vagina. These preparations, more especially the perchloride, have also the disadvantage of attacking steel instruments.

Numerous ointments have been applied externally in the treatment of **Skin Diseases,** particularly those of a parasitic nature, such as itch, and in condylomata, ulcers and skin diseases of syphilitic origin. These preparations combine an antiseptic with a more or less irritant action, and unlike carbolic acid and its allies, are equally powerful antiseptics in ointments and in water. The least irritant of the pharmacopœial ointments is the mercury ointment; then the oleate, yellow oxide, red oxide, and ammoniated mercury follow in order, while citrine ointment is much more irritant and corrosive. Other external applications are the plasters and the black and yellow wash. Ointments containing calomel, corrosive sublimate, and other preparations are sometimes prescribed, or calomel may be used as a dusting powder in syphilitic ulcers. The mercury ointments are frequently applied to the eye, the milder ones as antiseptics and slight irritants, citrine ointment to destroy granulations.

Mercurial ointments are sometimes employed to promote the absorption of subcutaneous effusions and to reduce swellings. They are not superior to other irritants for this purpose, however, and have the disadvantage of permitting the absorption of a dangerous poison.

The nitrate of mercury and its ointment (citrine) are sometimes used as caustics for application to the os uteri, condylomata and elsewhere.

Mercury treatment is **Contraindicated,** or requires special caution in cases of profound cachexia, weakness, or anæmia, unless these arise from syphilis. Where the digestion is weak, it ought to be avoided if possible, and in cases of tuberculosis there is always the danger that the disturbance of the digestion may accelerate the course of the disease. In severe nephritis it is also to be used with caution, although it is beneficial in some cases, and although some authorities deny that it is injurious even when it has no diuretic action. In pregnancy mercury is not absolutely contraindicated, at any rate up to the sixth month. Later it is liable to injure the patient by its action on the digestion, and in some cases has induced abortion; the child may also suffer from mercurial poisoning. Mercurial ointments or dusting powders have to be used with care when iodides are being administered internally, as the iodide excreted forms the iodide of mercury, and this may cause violent corrosion. Thus in the eye, severe effects have been induced by the application of calomel to the cornea while iodide was being given.

In cases of **Acute Corrosive Poisoning,** the indications are the evacuation of the stomach, preferably by the stomach tube. Tannic acid, or eggs, milk and other albuminous substances may be given to precipitate the metal and protect the mucous membrane. The treatment of the later symptoms is the same as that of the chronic form.

In **Chronic Poisoning** the salivation and stomatitis are treated by the use of chlorate of potash solution as a mouth wash, and its free application during mercurial treatment, along with careful brushing of the teeth, is believed by most physicians to hinder the onset of the symptoms. Tannic acid solution is also recommended as a mouth wash. The diarrhœa may be treated with opium, the other symptoms on general principles. In any case the drug ought to be abandoned, or the dose much reduced as soon as the salivation becomes marked. In chronic poisoning not arising from the therapeutic use of the drug, iodide of potassium is generally prescribed, although its utility has not yet been placed beyond question. Sulphur baths, and hot baths without sulphur are also recommended.

Preparations.

Hydrargyri Chloridum Corrosivum (U. S. P.), Hydrargyri Perchloridum (B. P.), corrosive sublimate ($HgCl_2$), forms heavy, colorless crystals, without odor, but possessing an acrid, metallic taste, soluble in 16 parts of cold water, in 2 parts of boiling water, in 3 parts of alcohol, and in 4 parts of ether.

Liquor Hydrargyri Perchloridi (B. P.) contains $\frac{1}{16}$ gr. in a fluid dr., ½–1 fl. dr.

Corrosive sublimate is one of the most irritant preparations, and is rapidly absorbed. It is used internally in syphilis, 0.002–0.02 G. ($\frac{1}{32}$–$\frac{1}{3}$ gr.),[1] in one per cent. solution and is also injected hypodermically in 0.6 per cent. solution, 2 c.c. (30 mins.) daily. This solution is often made up with 6 per cent. of sodium chloride or urea. Perchloride of mercury is less liable to induce salivation, but disturbs the digestion more than other preparations when given internally, while its hypodermic injection is exceedingly painful. It has induced fatal poisoning in the dose of 0.18 G. (3 grs.), taken by the mouth, but in other cases much larger quantities have been recovered from. It is stated that opium eaters can take enormous quantities without evil effects.

It is used extensively in surgery as an antiseptic solution (1 in 2,000–4,000), to disinfect the hands, wounds, etc., but is irritant to delicate tissues, such as the peritoneum, and corrodes steel instruments. It is also used in the form of a soap and to impregnate bandages, cotton-wool, gauze, catgut and silk. It preserves its antiseptic action in oils and ointments. It has been used to a limited extent in skin diseases in solution, in baths, or in ointment, as a local application in diphtheria, and as an intestinal antiseptic in putrefactive diarrhœa, typhoid fever and cholera.

The *albuminate* and *peptonate* of mercury are formed by precipitating a solution of egg albumin or of meat peptone with a five per cent. solution of corrosive sublimate. The precipitate is collected, washed and dissolved in 20 per cent. chloride of sodium solution. It was hoped that these preparations would not cause irritation and pain when injected subcutaneously, but this anticipation has not been fulfilled and they have fallen into almost complete disuse. They are not official.

Hydrargyri Cyanidum (U. S. P.), mercuric cyanide ($Hg(CN)_2$), colorless

[1] The B. P. gives as the dose of corrosive sublimate and the red iodide, $\frac{1}{32}$–$\frac{1}{16}$ gr.

crystals, without odor and with a bitter, metallic taste, soluble in about 12 parts of water, in 15 parts of alcohol. The cyanide resembles the perchloride in its action and has been used hypodermically in syphilis. As a surgical antiseptic it is equal to corrosive sublimate and attacks steel instruments less. Dose, as of corrosive sublimate.

The *oxycyanide of mercury* ($Hg_2O(CN)_2$) is also used to form an antiseptic lotion in surgery. The double cyanide of mercury and zinc has been recommended by Lister for this purpose.

HYDRARGYRI IODIDUM RUBRUM (U. S. P., B. P.), red iodide of mercury, biniodide of mercury (HgI_2), a scarlet-red, amorphous powder, tasteless and odorless, almost insoluble in water, but soluble in solution of iodide of potassium. 0.005–0.02 G. ($\frac{1}{12}$–$\frac{1}{3}$ gr.), (B. P. $\frac{1}{12}$–$\frac{1}{6}$ gr.).

This preparation is very seldom prescribed as such, but is frequently formed by prescribing a mixture of corrosive sublimate and potassic iodide, when the iodide of mercury is formed and is kept in solution by the excess of the iodide of potassium. This prescription is often indicated in the transitional period between secondary and tertiary syphilis, and even when the tertiary symptoms are fully developed.

Liquor Arseni et Hydrargyri Iodidi (U. S. P., B. P.), Donovan's solution, contains one per cent. each of arsenic iodide and red mercuric iodide. Used as a tonic in syphilitic and other cases. 0.3–1.3 c.c. (5–20 mins.).

Unguentum Hydrargyri Iodidi Rubri (B. P.), 4 per cent.

HYDRARGYRI CHLORIDUM MITE (U. S. P.), HYDRARGYRI SUBCHLORIDUM (B. P.), mild mercurous chloride, CALOMEL (Hg_2Cl_2), a heavy white powder without odor or taste, insoluble in water, alcohol and ether. 0.03–0.3 G. ($\frac{1}{2}$–5 grs.) in powder, less suitably in pill form.

Pilulæ Antimonii Composita (U. S. P.), *Pilula Hydrargyri Subchloridi Composita* (B. P.). See Antimony, page 637.

Unguentum Hydrargyri Subchloridi (B. P.), 10 per cent.

Calomel is contained in the compound cathartic pill U. S. P. (p. 106).

Calomel is used in syphilis (dose, 0.05 G. (1 gr.) thrice daily), but is credited with being more liable to induce salivation than other preparations, and its purgative action often has to be counteracted by opium. It has also been injected subcutaneously in suspension in 10 per cent. salt solution, or in liquid paraffin, but has many disadvantages compared with the soluble preparations. As a purge and intestinal disinfectant, it is of value in biliousness, and in the diarrhœa of putrefaction, less so in diseases in which the intestinal wall is the site of infection, as in typhoid fever and cholera. Calomel causes less irritation and colic than most other purges, and small doses are followed by only one evacuation. It may therefore be given where preexisting irritation of the intestine contraindicates the use of most other purgatives. Calomel is often advised in hepatic affections, but it is a question whether it has any effect here except as a purge. It is of great value in some forms of dropsy, especially those of cardiac origin, in which it is administered in 0.2 G. (3 gr.) doses thrice a day for 2–4 days, and is stopped as soon as the diuresis sets in. The treatment may be repeated if the dropsy returns. Alkalies are often added to calomel prescriptions on the ground that in this way there is less danger of the calomel being changed to corrosive sublimate in the stomach. For the same reason, acids are often avoided for some time after calomel is taken. As a matter of fact these fears are quite groundless, as calomel is not changed to the prechloride in the stomach and it is therefore quite unnecessary to add alkalies to calomel.

Calomel has been used externally as a dusting powder for syphilitic condylomata, as a slight irritant to the cornea and as an ointment in pruritus and other skin diseases.

Hydrargyri Iodidum Flavum (U. S. P.), yellow or green iodide of mercury (Hg_2I_2), a bright yellow amorphous powder, tasteless and odorless, insoluble in water, alcohol or ether.

It has been used in syphilis, with the idea of uniting the virtues of the iodides and of mercury. But the quantity of iodide is altogether inadequate. 0.05–0.2 G. (1–3 grs.).

HYDRARGYRUM CUM CRETA (U. S. P., B. P.), mercury with chalk, GRAY POWDER, is formed by rubbing up metallic mercury with chalk and honey (U. S. P.) until the mercury is divided into very fine globules, each encased in chalk. It forms a light-gray, somewhat damp powder, without odor and with a sweetish taste from the honey. The mercury (38 per cent. U. S. P., 33 per cent. B. P.), remains in the metallic state, very little oxide being formed. It is insoluble in water, alcohol and ether, and is always prescribed in powder form. 0.1–0.5 G. (2–8 grs.).

MASSA HYDRARGYRI (U. S. P.), mass of mercury, BLUE MASS, BLUE PILL, is formed from metallic mercury by rubbing it with Mel Rosæ, glycerin, althæa and liquorice until the globules are invisible under a lens magnifying ten diameters. The blue mass contains about 33 per cent. of mercury almost entirely in the metallic form. It is of the consistency of pills and is always prescribed in this form. 0.2–0.5 G. (3–8 grs.).

PILULA HYDRARGYRI, BLUE PILL, the corresponding B. P. preparation, is made up with confection of roses and liquorice by rubbing them with metallic mercury until the globules are no longer visible. 4–8 grs.

These preparations are very largely used as mild mercurial purgatives, the blue pill being frequently reinforced by the addition of one of the vegetable purges. The gray powder is especially adapted for children, and is of value in summer diarrhœa and other similar conditions. Blue pill is often given in cardiac dropsy along with squills or digitalis, but has proved inferior to calomel as a diuretic. Gray powder is held by some authorities to be the best form for the internal treatment of syphilis, and is given in doses of 0.05 G. (1 gr.) 3 to 5 times a day ; if necessary, opium may be given to prevent purging. The blue pill may also be used in syphilis and is less liable to purge.

UNGUENTUM HYDRARGYRI (U. S. P., B. P.), mercurial ointment, BLUE OINTMENT, is formed by triturating metallic mercury with lard and suet and oleate of mercury until the globules are invisible when magnified ten diameters. The ointment contains about one half its weight of metallic mercury along with a small proportion of oleate.

Unguentum Hydrargyri Compositum (B. P.) contains camphor and is somewhat weaker than blue ointment.

The famous blue ointment is used largely in many forms of skin diseases, especially in those of syphilitic origin, and was formerly the ordinary treatment for scabies, in which, however, it has been supplanted by balsam of Peru and other remedies, though it is still used occasionally to destroy pediculi. The most important purpose for which blue ointment is applied at the present time is the treatment of syphilis by inunction. For this purpose 2–4 G. (½–1 dr.) is rubbed in daily in different parts of the body, in order to avoid the irritation induced by applying it repeatedly to one spot. A warm bath is taken first, and the patient then rubs in the ointment on the inside of the thighs, next day on the inside of the arms, on the following days on the forearms, legs, abdomen and back, returning to the thighs on the seventh day and repeating the series. The treatment is continued for a fortnight or three weeks. This method has the advantage that the digestion is less affected than when the drug is given internally, but on the other hand, the mercury is more slowly absorbed than by other methods ; and no estimate of the quantity really taken up can be formed, as, although the patient is directed to rub it in until the whole disappears, the instructions may be imperfectly carried out. Salivation is not so readily produced as by the administration per os, but when it occurs, it lasts longer and may become severe. One case of fatal poisoning has been recorded from the application of the ointment, but in this case the skin appears to have been broken. Skin rashes are more frequent from inunction than from any other method of application, and finally,

the method is extremely inconvenient and dirty. The patient ought to carry out the inunction himself, for any other person doing so may acquire chronic poisoning from absorption through the hands, and even if this is prevented by the use of gloves of India-rubber or oiled bladder, some mercury may be absorbed by the lungs. In children the ointment is often applied by spreading it on a bandage, which is then applied around the waist. In skin disease and in very hirsute individuals, the inunction treatment is impossible.

Blue ointment diluted with oil, *oleum cinereum*, has been injected hypodermically, or into the muscles in the treatment of syphilis, but this method of treatment is even inferior to the injection of calomel, and in a large number of cases gives rise to abscesses, and gangrenous sores.

Oleatum Hydrargyri (U. S. P.), *Hydrargyri Oleas* (B. P.), oleate of mercury, has been used for the same purposes as mercury ointment, but is somewhat more irritant and possesses no compensating virtues.

Unguentum Hydrargyri Oleatis (B. P.), 1 part in 4.

Emplastrum Hydrargyri (U. S. P., B. P.), mercury plaster, is formed in the same way as the ointment by the trituration of metallic mercury.

Emplastrum Ammoniaci cum Hydrargyro (U. S. P., B. P.) is similarly formed but contains less mercury and a large quantity of a gum-resin (ammoniac).

These plasters are sometimes applied to chancres and to syphilitic ulcers, and mercury plaster has been applied instead of the ointment as a treatment of syphilis.

Linimentum Hydrargyri (B. P.).

HYDRARGYRI OXIDUM FLAVUM (U. S. P., B. P.), yellow mercuric oxide.

HYDRARGYRI OXIDUM RUBRUM (U. S. P., B. P.), red mercuric oxide.

UNGUENTUM HYDRARGYRI OXIDI FLAVI (U. S. P. 10 per cent., B. P. 2 per cent.).

UNGUENTUM HYDRARGYRI OXIDI RUBRI (U. S. P., B. P.), 10 per cent.

The two oxides are identical in constitution (HgO), but the yellow is obtained by precipitation from the perchloride, the red by oxidation of the metal by means of nitric acid. The red is crystalline, the yellow amorphous, and both are practically insoluble in water and alcohol, but are soluble in acids. The red oxide is more irritant than the yellow on account of its crystalline form, and perhaps also because it often contains some nitrate. The yellow oxide is used in ointment in various diseases of the eye, and both are employed as applications to syphilitic sores, condylomata, and chancres, although the red is often preferred for this purpose. They have also been proposed for hypodermic injection suspended in water.

Two famous preparations of mercury are the black and the yellow wash, the former prepared from calomel, the latter from corrosive sublimate by the action of lime water. The black wash, *Lotio Hydrargyri Nigra* (B. P.), contains mercurous oxide (Hg_2O), the yellow, *Lotio Hydrargyri Flava* (B. P.), mercuric oxide (HgO). The oxides are in both cases insoluble and the lotions have to be shaken before application. They are used in syphilitic lesions as local remedies.

Hydrargyrum Ammoniatum (U. S. P., B. P.), mercuric ammonium chloride, white precipitate (NH_2HgCl), is formed by precipitating corrosive sublimate with ammonia, and is a white, amorphous powder, without odor and with an earthy, metallic taste, almost insoluble in water and alcohol.

Unguentum Hydrargyri Ammoniati (U. S. P., B. P.), 10 per cent.

The white precipitate is not used internally, and is more irritant than the oxides. The ointment is occasionally applied in skin diseases and to destroy parasites.

Hydrargyri Subsulphas Flavus (U. S. P.), basic mercuric subsulphate, Turpeth mineral ($Hg(HgO)_2SO)_4$, forms a heavy, lemon-colored powder, odorless and almost tasteless, practically insoluble in water and alcohol.

The sulphate is scarcely used in medicine at the present day. It was at

one time recommended as an emetic in croup, as it irritates the stomach, but it is extremely dangerous to use it in this way.

Liquor Hydrargyri Nitratis (U. S. P., B. P.), solution of mercuric nitrate, contains about 60 per cent. of the nitrate ($Hg(NO_3)_2$) along with about 11 per cent. of free nitric acid. It is a powerfully corrosive fluid which is used to cauterize the os uteri, cancers or condylomata. Symptoms of mercury poisoning have arisen from its application to the os uteri.

Unguentum Hydrargyri Nitratis (U. S. P., B. P.), citrine ointment, is used, diluted with oil or lard, in conjunctivitis, and also as an application to syphilitic sores and gangrenous ulcers.

Unguentum Hydrargyri Citratis Dilutum (B. P.).

Hydrargyrum (U. S. P., B. P.), metallic mercury, is not used in therapeutics at the present time. It was formerly employed in cases of intestinal obstruction in large quantities (up to a pound or more) in order to drag the intestines into place by its weight. As a general rule no symptoms of poisoning occurred, the mercury being voided unchanged and unabsorbed, but in some cases salivation followed its use.

A large number of new preparations of mercury have been introduced of late years and have received a more or less extensive trial, but have seldom been found to be superior to the older forms. Among these may be mentioned the *tannate*, which was introduced in the hope that it would cause less purgation than calomel, and might therefore be better adapted for the treatment of syphilis. 0.1–0.3 G. (2–5 grs.) in powder. The *carbolate*, *salicylate* (*either neutral or basic*), *benzoate*, *sozoiodolate*, *thymol-acetate* and many other similar compounds have been used instead of calomel for hypodermic or intramuscular injection, have each in succession been blazoned forth as the best preparation, and will probably be forgotten in the course of a few years. Several amido acid salts of mercury such as the *formamide*, the *amido-propionate* (alanin mercury) and the *succinimide* have been proposed as substitutes for corrosive sublimate in hypodermic injection. It was believed that the affinity of mercury for nitrogen being satisfied in these compounds, it would attack the proteids less, and as a matter of fact, the injections are said to be less painful than those of corrosive sublimate. Dreser has recently proposed *mercuric-potassic hyposulphite*, because the mercury is apparently contained in it in a form which does not admit of its dissociation. *Colloid mercury* has been suggested for inunction instead of the blue ointment.

Bibliography.

Chittenden. Johns Hopkins Hosp. Bull. 98, 1899.
Saikowsky. Virchow's Arch., xxxvii., p. 346.
Rosenbach. Ztschr. f. ration. Med., xxxiii., p. 36.
Radziejewski. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1870, p. 55.
Heilborn. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., viii., p. 361.
V. Mering. Ibid., xiii., p. 86.
Meyer. Ibid., xvii., p. 304.
Grawitz. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1888, p. 41.
Keyes. Am. Journ. of Med. Scien., 1876, p. 17.
Schlesinger. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xiii., p. 317.
Wilbouchewitch. Arch. de Physiol., 1874, p. 509.
Letulle. Arch. de Phys., 1887, i., p. 301.
Rosenthal. Berl. klin. Woch., 1895, p. 500.
Morel-Lavalle. Rev. de Med., 1891, p. 449.
Jendrassik. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xxxviii., p. 499; xlvii., p. 226.
Bieganski. Ibid., xliii., p. 177.
Stintzing. Ibid., xliii., p. 206.
Sklodowski. Ibid., lii., p. 300.
Rosenheim. Zts. f. klin. Med., xiv., p. 170.
Cohnstein. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxx., p. 132.
Justus. Virchow's Arch., cxl., p. 91; cxlviii., p. 533.
Kaufmann. Ibid., cxv., p. 71, and cxvii., p. 227.

Klemperer. Ibid., cxviii., p. 445.
Falkenberg u. Marchand. Ibid., cxxiii., p. 579.
Neuberger. Ziegler's Beiträg zur path. Anat., vi., p. 429.
Leutert. Fortschritte der Med., 1895, p. 89.
Wassilieff. Zts. f. phys. Chem., vi., p. 112.
Böhm. Ibid., xv., p. 1.
Welander. Arch. f. Derm. u. Syph., xxvi., p. 331.
Pinner. Therap. Monatsh., 1889, p. 320.
Lewin. Berl. klin. Woch., 1895, p. 245.
V. Boeck. Ztschr. f. Biologie, v., p. 393.
Paton. Brit. Med. Journ., 1886, i., p. 433.
Kuperwasser. Arch. des Scienc. biol., vi., p. 325.
Neumann. Practitioner, vii., p. 279.
Piccardi. Arch. f. Derm. u. Syph., xli., p. 177.
Winternitz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxv., p. 225.
Ludwig u. Zillner. Wien. klin. Woch., 1889, p. 857.
Wolff u. Nega. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1885, p. 847.
Paschkis u. Vajda. Wien. med. Presse, 1881.
Schuster. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1883, p. 193; 1884, p. 279.
Dreser. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxii., p. 456.
Quincke. Münch. med. Woch., xliii., 1896, p. 854.
Marle. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iii., p. 397.
Liebermann. Pflüger's Arch., liv., p. 573.
Koch. Mittheil. a. d. Gesundheitsamte, i., p. 234.
Geppert. Berl. klin. Woch., 1889, p. 789; 1890, p. 246.
Gottstein. Therap. Monatsh., 1889, p. 102.
Cathelineau. Arch. gen. de Med., clxxiv., p. 38.
Schumacher. Arch. f. Derm. u. Syph., xliv., p. 189.

III. IRON.

Iron differs from the other heavy metals in being essential to the life of many, perhaps all, forms of protoplasm. In the vertebrates this is obscured by the fact that most of the iron is contained in the hæmoglobin of the blood, and its importance in the other tissues is generally ignored. In the invertebrates, however, in many of which no corresponding compound exists in the blood, considerable amounts of iron are found in the tissues, and there is no question that throughout the animal kingdom iron is essential to living matter, quite apart from its special relation to the blood in the vertebrates. Molisch has shown that it is also necessary for the development of the lower vegetable forms, and it has been found that in its absence the higher plants fail to form chlorophyll, although iron is not actually contained in the latter as it is in hæmoglobin.

The iron combinations are generally divided into two classes—inorganic and organic.[1] In the former of these iron is contained in the ordinary salt form, is dissociated in solution, and can be recognized by such tests as the black precipitate with ammonium sulphide, and the blue precipitates with the ferrocyanide or ferricyanide of potassium. In organic iron these tests fail, or are only elicited after prolonged contact, and this has been supposed to indicate that the iron is combined di-

[1] "Organic" and "inorganic" are here used in a special meaning, and have no reference to the combination to which iron is attached, but to the method of attachment. Thus the acetate and albuminate of iron are both classified among the inorganic iron compounds, because they are capable of dissociation, and the iron is precipitated by ammonium sulphide. "Masked iron" is a preferable term for "organic iron," but has not been so widely used.

rectly with the carbon of the preparation. Examples of inorganic iron are the chlorides, acetates or sulphates, while the best type of organic iron is hæmoglobin, though numbers of others exist in the tissues. Between the ordinary salts of iron and hæmoglobin and its allies, there exists a number of compounds, which are stained black by ammonium sulphide after prolonged contact, and which it is impossible to class either as organic or inorganic.

When such a salt as the perchloride is added to a solution of proteid, it precipitates it at once in the form of iron albuminate. This insoluble body is also formed in the living tissues when the perchloride is brought in contact with them, and forms a protective coating on the surface. Iron has no such relation to the proteids as mercury, and does not corrode them of itself, any destruction which may be caused by such compounds as the perchloride being due to the acid constituent and not to the metallic ion. The albuminate is not so flocculent as that of mercury, and tends to protect the tissues from the acid, so that the corrosion of iron compounds is limited to the surface. The double salts of iron, the albuminous compounds, and organic iron do not precipitate proteids, and are therefore neither irritant nor astringent as long as they maintain their original form and are not decomposed into simple salts.

Symptoms.—Inorganic iron compounds, of which the perchloride may be taken as a type, have an astringent, metallic, or often acid taste, but in ordinary doses induce no further symptoms. If swallowed in large quantities, they cause pain and uneasiness in the stomach, nausea, vomiting and often purging, with all the ordinary symptoms of acute gastro-intestinal irritation. General weakness and even collapse may be induced, but are manifestly secondary to the gastric and intestinal effects, and no symptoms which can in any way be attributed to the absorption of iron have been observed in either man or animals.

The prolonged use of inorganic iron is frequently followed by some dyspepsia, and by constipation and colic, which are obviously due to the continued astringent action on the stomach and bowel. Other symptoms observed occasionally are blackness of the teeth and tenderness in the gums, which may be due to the acid contained in many iron preparations; the blackening of the teeth has been supposed to be due to the tannic acid of the food precipitating the inky black tannate of iron, or to the sulphide of iron being formed by the action of the hydrogen sulphide present in carious teeth. According to Buzdygan, the iron preparations increase the secretion of hydrochloric acid in the stomach, and may thus lead to hyperacidity, or aggravate it if already present. In artificial digestion, the salts of iron with organic acids are said to hinder the process more than those with inorganic acids, the ferric salts more than the ferrous, and the insoluble preparations least of all. The digestion of starch is almost unaffected by the presence of iron.

Iron given by the mouth induces leucocytosis (Pohl), and does not

affect the amount of double sulphates excreted in the urine, so that it has no antiseptic action in the bowel (Mörner).

Some symptoms from the circulation are sometimes said to arise, but are for the most part subjective, and seem to be handed down by tradition rather than really observed. These are a feeling of congestion, fulness and heat in the head, and hæmorrhages from the nose, throat and lungs, especially in phthisis. If these symptoms are not entirely imaginary, they are to be attributed to some reflex from the stomach and intestine and not to any direct action of iron on the heart or vessels.

When these astringent preparations are injected into the blood vessels in animals, they coagulate the proteids and cause thrombosis but no real symptoms of iron poisoning. Fatal thrombosis has been observed in patients from the injection of the perchloride into the uterus, and also into nævi. The hypodermic injection of these salts causes some pain and swelling, but no further symptoms follow, and the iron is found for the most part deposited in an insoluble form at the point of injection.

The **General Symptoms** of iron are obtained only by the intravenous injection of double salts, such as the tartrate of iron and sodium, which do not coagulate the blood, and at the same time are capable of freeing the iron ion in the tissues. Such salts as the ferrocyanides or ferricyanides on the other hand leave the body as such, and the iron ion is not liberated, so that no iron symptoms are induced. Meyer and Williams found that the double tartrate caused in the frog slowness and clumsiness in movement, which gradually developed into complete paralysis of the central nervous system. The heart seemed to be little affected, but the skeletal muscles were somewhat less irritable than usual after death. In mammals, the symptoms of iron poisoning were often very late in appearing, and began with some acceleration of the breathing, which later became slow and dyspnœic; vomiting and diarrhœa often followed, and blood was sometimes seen in the evacuations of the stomach and bowel. Increasing weakness was followed by central paralysis and death, accompanied by weak convulsive movements. The heart seemed little affected, although the blood-pressure fell rapidly towards the end. Post-mortem, the mucous membranes of the stomach and intestine were found swollen and congested, and often contained numerous small blood extravasations. Kobert found that repeated injection of small quantities of the citrate of iron induces congestion of the kidney and the appearance of casts and albumin in the urine. In acute poisoning the alkalinity of the blood is reduced owing to the excess of lactic acid formed.

Iron, like the other heavy metals, would therefore seem to have a specific irritant effect on the intestinal and gastric mucous membrane, and to a less extent on the kidney. In addition, it depresses and eventually paralyzes the central nervous system, but it is impossible to state how far this is due to direct action, and how far it is secondary to the action in the alimentary canal.

According to Kobert, iron perfused through the vessels has no effect on their calibre except in large doses, when it dilates them. The astringent action is due, therefore, to the precipitation of the proteids, and not to constriction of the vessels.

Apart from irritation of the stomach and intestine, no symptoms are induced by iron given by the mouth, because it is absorbed too slowly and in too small amount, and perhaps in a form which has little tendency to cause them.

The **Absorption of Iron** has been a subject of discussion only during the latter half of the last century, for up to that time it had been assumed that it passed into the tissues with comparative ease, and was there

formed to hæmoglobin. In this way was explained its effect in anæmia, particularly in the form known as chlorosis, in which there is a deficiency of hæmoglobin rather than of blood cells. The benefit accruing from the use of iron salts in this disease has been attested by so many generations of physicians that only the most skeptical can have any doubt on the subject. The first to question this explanation of the action of iron in chlorosis was Kletzinsky, who formulated a theory of its action, which was soon forgotten, however, and only became popularly known when it was resuscitated by Bunge. This explanation, which is generally stated as Bunge's theory, has been widely held during the last few years, but has now been abandoned by almost all its former supporters including its author, who has been compelled to admit not only that iron salts are absorbed but that their administration leads to an increased formation of hæmoglobin.

No account of the action of iron would be complete, however, without reference to an explanation, which has at least had the effect of establishing a number of facts regarding the fate of iron in the body, and also the less desirable result of increasing to a considerable extent the number of patented preparations containing iron. Shortly stated, Bunge's theory is that in ordinary conditions a certain amount of iron is lost by the body constantly through the excretions, and this loss is made up by the absorption of the iron contained in the food. This food-iron consists wholly of organic iron, that is, of iron combined in such a way that sulphides attack it with difficulty; an example of such organic iron is the hæmatogen of the yolk of egg. In normal individuals the food-iron is sufficient to replace that lost by excretion, but in chlorosis the presence of large amounts of sulphides in the intestine causes the food-irons to be decomposed to ferric sulphide, which is insoluble and unabsorbable. When the ordinary inorganic iron preparations are administered in these cases, they are not taken up in place of the food-irons; but, by forming sulphide in the intestine, they remove the sulphuretted hydrogen, and prevent the decomposition of the food-irons, which thus remain capable of being absorbed. Bunge and his followers went on to state that inorganic iron is never under any circumstances absorbed by the normal epithelium, but that when large quantities are administered, they tend to corrode the walls of the stomach and intestine, and are thus absorbed to some extent. Even then, however, they are incapable of being formed to hæmoglobin, the animal body being able to perform only the last steps of this synthesis, after the plants have formed the simpler types of organic iron. This theory now possesses only historical interest, so that it is unnecessary to enumerate the arguments brought against it. It may be sufficient to state that if the ordinary preparations of iron acted only by binding the sulphides of the intestine, various other metals would be equally efficient in chlorosis; iron would not be beneficial injected hypodermically, and iron sulphide given so as to escape the action of the gastric juice would be equally useless. It is found, however, that no other metal can replace iron in chlorosis; that iron injected hypodermically is curative in chlorosis, and that the sulphide administered so as to reach the intestine unchanged, acts as well as other preparations (Stockman). Finally, it has been shown that ordinary preparations of iron are absorbed. The same arguments may be brought against two other theories which have been proposed to explain the action of iron in chlorosis without absorption. In the first of these it is supposed that in chlorosis the mucus of the intestine is increased and prevents the absorption of the food-iron, while the inorganic iron precipitates the mucus and thus removes it. The other is that the inorganic iron acts as a carminative, increases the circulation in the intestine,

and thus promotes the absorption of food-iron. It may be remarked in passing that there is no reason to suppose that the sulphides or mucus of the intestine are increased in chlorosis, or that its circulation is so weak as to prevent absorption.

Driven from their former position that inorganic iron is not absorbed by the intestine, the advocates of the use of organic iron in chlorosis have attempted to make a further stand by asserting that, although the ordinary preparations are absorbed, they are not used in the formation of hæmoglobin, but after a more or less prolonged stay in the liver and other organs, are excreted. This statement is refuted, however, by several researches, in which the addition of inorganic iron to food deficient in iron (milk), or entirely free from it, prevented the anæmia which was observed in animals fed on the same food, but without iron. Finally Abderhalden, the latest exponent of Bunge's views, finds that inorganic iron increases the hæmoglobin of the blood, but suggests that it may do so indirectly by taking the place of the food-iron which supplies the needs of the tissues, the food-iron then being formed to hæmoglobin; he fails to supply any arguments in support of this theory, which it is therefore unnecessary to discuss.

The chief difficulties in following the course of iron in the body are due to its being present in all the tissues and secretions normally, and to the very small quantity which is contained in ordinary food, and which is essential to the maintenance of health. About $2\frac{1}{2}$–$3\frac{1}{2}$ G. (40–55 grs.) of iron are estimated to be present in the tissues of a healthy human adult, the greater part of it existing in the form of hæmoglobin in the blood. Formerly it was believed that some 50 mgs. (1 gr.) of iron were taken in the food per day, but Stockman and Greig have recently shown that this estimate is much too high, and that an ordinary dietary provides only about 5–10 mgs. ($\frac{1}{12}$–$\frac{1}{6}$ gr.) of iron per day; they found in one case that even 3–5 mgs. ($\frac{1}{20}$–$\frac{1}{12}$ gr.) were sufficient to preserve the iron equilibrium. About the same amount of iron is excreted per day, chiefly in the fæces, to a much smaller extent in the urine.

When additional iron is supplied to the body, either as inorganic or as organic iron, much the greater part of it reappears in the stools. This does not necessarily entail that all of it has passed through the bowel unabsorbed, for it is now perfectly certain that iron is excreted through the intestinal epithelium, so that some of the iron of the stools may have been absorbed and reëxcreted. The strongest argument cited by Bunge in support of his theory was that inorganic iron, given by the mouth, did not increase the iron of the urine. He assumed that any iron absorbed would necessarily appear in course of time in the urine, but this has been shown to be incorrect by a whole series of investigations. When iron salts such as the double tartrate are injected into a vein, they soon disappear from the blood, but only some 2–5 per cent. of the quantity injected reappears in the urine, the rest being withdrawn from the blood and stored up in the cells of the liver and spleen, and perhaps in the bone-marrow. Thus even if iron is absorbed in the intestine, it is improbable that it will reappear in the urine in appreciable quantity, for supposing 10 mgs. to be taken up, 2 per cent. of this would represent only $\frac{1}{5}$ mg. and this lies within the limits of error of estimation. In addition, it seems probable that when

iron enters the blood slowly and in small quantities, even a less proportion of it is excreted in the urine than when larger quantities are injected suddenly. At any rate, the ordinary preparations of iron when given by the mouth do not increase the iron of the urine, while the results of the different investigators differ in regard to organic iron, for some have found it increase the urinary iron, while other and perhaps more impartial investigators have found it unaffected. On the whole the evidence goes to show that 0.5–1.5 mgs. of iron are normally excreted in the urine in 24 hours, and that the administration per os of iron preparations, whether organic or inorganic, does not affect this amount. The fact that an iron preparation given by the mouth does not increase the iron in the urine, is therefore no evidence that it has not been absorbed from the stomach.

Iron injected into the veins of normal animals is stored up in the liver and spleen, but is slowly taken up from these organs again, and is excreted by the epithelium of the cæcum and colon. When iron is given by the mouth, therefore, it may either pass along the canal and be thrown out in the fæces, or it may be absorbed, make a stay in the liver, be excreted in the large intestine, and again appear in the stools. The comparison of the iron in the food and in drugs with that of the stools therefore gives no clue as to how much has been absorbed, and how much has simply passed through the intestine.

But the passage of iron from the liver to the intestine is a somewhat slow process, and it is therefore possible to detect the excess of iron in the liver. This has been done repeatedly by the following method. Young animals of the same litter fed on milk have approximately the same amount of iron in the liver. If one be fed on milk only, the other on milk to which iron is added, the liver of the latter is found to contain more iron than that of the control. Other investigators have fed animals (rats or mice) on food that is practically free from iron, have killed them and estimated the iron in the whole body apart from the alimentary tract and compared it with that of animals treated in the same way except that iron was added to the food. The latter group contains much more iron than the control group fed on iron-free food, and in general presents a much more healthy and normal appearance.

Finally, attempts have been made to follow the iron in its course through the tissues. This is possible by the histological examination of tissues soaked in ammonium sulphide solution, in potassic ferrocyanide and hydrochloric acid, or in hæmatoxylin, as these form black or blue precipitates with most forms of iron, but leave the hæmoglobin unaffected. When animals are given iron preparations, and are then killed, and their organs stained by these reagents, the mucous membrane of the stomach and of the greater part of the small intestine gives no coloration, but the epithelium of the duodenum and the upper part of the jejunum is found to contain numerous granules of iron. These granules may be traced to the mesenteric lymph glands, are found in large numbers in the spleen around the corpuscles, to a much smaller

extent in the liver, and in the cortex of the kidney. If, however, the animal be kept for some days after the iron is given, the reaction in the duodenum, spleen, and mesenteric glands is less intense, while the liver gives much more distinct evidence of containing iron, and the epithelial cells of the large intestine and cæcum also give a strong reaction. This is interpreted to mean that iron is absorbed by the duodenum and is first stored in the spleen, but later finds its way through the blood vessels to the liver, where it rests again for some time, to be eventually taken up again by the blood and excreted into the large intestine and the cæcum. There is some question as to whether the lymph vessels are involved in the absorption of iron and the most recent investigators have failed to find it in the thoracic duct and accordingly hold that it is absorbed from the intestine into the blood vessels directly. The iron stored in the liver does not escape by the bile as might be anticipated. A small percentage of iron is a constant constituent of this fluid, but is not increased by iron given by the mouth or intravenously.

Nothing is known with certainty regarding the form in which iron is absorbed. It is assumed that in the stomach almost all the preparations form chlorides to a greater or less extent,[1] are then changed into albuminates, and in this form pass into the duodenum, where they may be absorbed in solution, or may be precipitated and taken up as solids by the epithelial cells and the leucocytes. In the liver it seems likely that the absorbed iron is changed to hepatic ferratin, and that it is stored in this form. Several other iron compounds have been found in the liver, and iron undoubtedly undergoes a number of synthetic processes there.

It must not be inferred from the foregoing that all of the inorganic iron swallowed is taken up by the intestinal epithelium. It is quite impossible to form even approximate estimates of the amount that is really absorbed and made use of by the tissues, but the probability is that only a small percentage is really taken up; the rest passing through the intestine and being thrown out in the stools. It is often stated that the iron stools are dark or black in color, from the sulphide present, but this seems to be seldom the case when they are passed, although they assume a darker gray or grayish black color in the air from oxidation. The iron is contained in them only to a small extent as the sulphide, some of the rest probably being albuminate.

To sum up what is known regarding the fate of the iron preparations, they are partially formed to the chloride and then to the albuminate in the stomach, pass into the duodenum, from which the great bulk is carried on into the lower parts of the intestine, while some is absorbed by the epithelium and leucocytes in solid form and perhaps in solution. It is then deposited in the spleen, where it may undergo some changes in form, is later taken up by the blood and deposited in the liver and perhaps in the bone marrow. Where the supply of iron has been

[1] According to several of the older authors the ferric salts are changed to ferrous in the stomach.

inadequate for the formation of hæmoglobin, the originally inorganic iron is probably worked into higher forms and eventually into hæmoglobin in the liver, and it seems likely that ferratin is one of the intermediate steps in this synthesis. When there is no deficiency of iron for the formation of hæmoglobin, the liver slowly yields its store of iron to the blood, which carries it to the cæcum and large intestine, by the epithelium of which it is finally excreted. It is to be noted that the iron absorbed does not increase the amount of iron in the urine, bile or other excretions. The investigations on which this sketch is founded have been completed only in the last few years, and establish finally the truth of the position held by the older physicians and indeed by the clinicians of this later time also, that inorganic iron follows the same course in the tissues as food-iron, although possibly more of the latter is absorbed.

But this explanation of the iron action does not cover all the difficulties of the case. Many cases of chlorosis recover without inorganic iron under hygienic conditions, such as rest, and particularly when foods rich in iron are prescribed, this being exactly what is to be expected on the theory that inorganic iron merely takes the place of the deficient food-iron. But many chlorotic patients show little or no improvement when treated with foods containing iron, even when there is no question that the iron supplied daily in food form is sufficient for the needs of the economy, and chlorosis even appears in individuals who have never suffered from any deficiency of food-iron. Yet many of these cases recover rapidly under inorganic iron. V. Noorden has attempted to explain this by supposing that inorganic iron when absorbed acts as a stimulant to the blood-forming organs, while food-iron has no such property. And some indications of abnormal activity of the bone-marrow cells have been observed in animals supplied with inorganic iron; this may not be the effect of stimulation in the ordinary sense of the word, however, for it may be explained by the unusual abundance of the materials necessary to their activity. The difference in the effects of the irons of the food and of the inorganic preparations may be due to the fact that food-iron is always accompanied by a large amount of colloid material, which may materially delay its absorption while inorganic iron on the other hand is much less completely enveloped, and may be more easily absorbed. In addition, the iron preparations are given in much larger amounts than the food-irons. When 10 mgs. (food-iron) are taken per day, only a small proportion (*e. g.*, 5 mgs.) may be absorbed, and this may be insufficient to supply the needs of the body, but if some hundreds of milligrams of inorganic iron be added, the proportion absorbed will be amply sufficient. The same effect might be obtained by the same amount of food-iron, but this is only to be obtained by giving more food than can be digested.

Iron is not absorbed from the unbroken skin, and the iron and steel baths are therefore of no value in themselves in the treatment of anæmia.

Therapeutic Uses. — Iron is most frequently used in the treatment of **Chlorosis**, which in a large proportion of cases recovers entirely under it. Some cases, however, improve somewhat under iron, but relapse when it is left off, and a certain number of patients show no improvement whatever under it. These last are not generally regarded as suffering from chlorosis proper, but from a more malignant form of anæmia. A number of symptoms which are due to chlorosis, and which are often more prominent than the original disease, are also relieved or entirely removed by iron. Thus gastric catarrh, amenorrhœa, or œdema may disappear under it, but in these cases the symptoms are chlorotic in origin, and the improvement is due to the increased hæmoglobin, and not to the direct action of iron on the stomach, uterus or circulation. In chlorosis, the iron is generally given in small doses, at any rate at first, and the less astringent preparations are preferred by most clinicians, although some still advise the perchloride. When chlorosis is complicated with gastric catarrh, some authorities advise that the latter be treated before the general condition, as iron in itself is liable to irritate the stomach. In many cases, however, the catarrh is secondary to the chlorosis, and can only be treated successfully by improving the condition of the blood ; the iron preparation here ought to be mild and not irritating. In chlorosis the tendency to constipation may be increased by iron, and a purge is often required, such as the iron and aloes pill, which is particularly recommended when chlorosis is attended by amenorrhœa.

Iron is of less value in other forms of anæmia, although it is often prescribed and may be followed by some improvement. Thus it may be administered during convalescence from acute disease, such as typhoid fever, or nephritis, and in the anæmia induced by profuse hæmorrhage, iron often seems to accelerate the recuperation of the blood. It is often prescribed for the cachexia of malaria, syphilis and other chronic diseases.

Iron is said to be contraindicated where there is fever, in plethoric individuals with a tendency to hæmorrhages, and in some forms of heart disease. In these conditions the iron preparations can harm only from a reflex induced from the stomach, as the small quantity of iron absorbed is incapable of producing any effects in the tissues. In phthisis, it is very generally credited with causing hæmorrhage from the lungs, but it may be questioned how far this apprehension is based on observation, and how far it is a relic of old and forgotten theories of the action of iron. It has to be given with caution here in order to avoid irritation of the stomach and dyspepsia, and in the presence of gastric catarrh from any cause, its effects have to be watched carefully.

Some of the older authorities advise iron to be given in large quantities, but the dose has been reduced of late years to about 0.1–0.2 G. (2–3 grs.) three times a day. It is given after meals in order to avoid the irritant action on the stomach as far as possible. It is to be noted that on giving 0.1 G. of iron three times a day, about thirty

times as much iron is given as is required normally in food, so that the chlorotic receives more iron per day than a workman in a month.

Iron is occasionally injected hypodermically, with the object of avoiding the irritation of the stomach, but this procedure is painful and causes some swelling and irritation, which lasts twenty-four hours or more. Most of the salts are precipitated at the point of injection, but some, such as the citrate, are taken up by the blood at once; the danger of renal irritation, anticipated by Kobert, does not seem to arise if small quantities are used. The citrate and pyro-phosphate in 5 per cent. solution have been used in this way, 0.05–0.1 G. (1–2 grs.) of the salt being injected daily. The hydrate and oxide have also been injected, suspended in salt solution, but are somewhat more irritant, while the peptonate is recommended as being almost devoid of irritant qualities.

Iron has been recommended in erysipelas, but has proved valueless in the hands of most investigators. Some of the iron salts are employed as **Astringents**, the most popular preparations for this purpose being the ferrous sulphate, which has been used to some extent in diarrhœa, and also externally. The perchloride is perhaps the best **Styptic** of its class. When applied to a bleeding point, it precipitates the proteids of the blood plasma, and thus forms an obstruction to the flow of blood similar to that caused by clotting, although no fibrin, but only a mass of iron albuminate, is formed by the perchloride. This styptic action is of value in capillary and recurrent hæmorrhage, while in bleeding from an artery, the ordinary surgical methods are of course preferred. The chloride arrests hæmorrhage only when it can be brought into actual contact with the bleeding point, and where this is covered by a large mass of semicoagulated blood, the treatment is of no avail, as it simply forms the albuminate with the blood with which it comes into contact first, and this may be far from the actual point of rupture. As an application to the stomach and bowel in hæmorrhage from these parts, the perchloride is unlikely to prove successful, while in bleeding from the nose, or gums, or after the extraction of a tooth, it is more reliable. It has been injected into the uterus in hæmorrhage, into nævus in order to cause coagulation and subsequent cicatrization of the tissue, and into aneurisms. This is a very dangerous treatment, however, for several cases of fatal embolism have arisen from the precipitated albuminate being carried off in the veins. Perchloride of iron solution has been sprayed into the air passages in hæmoptysis, but if sufficiently concentrated to coagulate the blood at the bleeding point in the lungs, it would certainly induce irritation and coughing. The perchloride is, of course, valueless in hæmorrhage from internal organs, for in the first place, very little of it is absorbed, and in the second place, what does pass into the tissues is already in proteid combination, and therefore incapable of coagulating the blood. The same objection applies to the alleged astringent effect of iron in nephritis. It is possible that iron may lessen the albumin in the urine in these cases, although the clinical evidence is contradictory on the subject,

but it is absolutely certain that it does not do so by any local action on the albumin in the kidney.

The sulphate of iron is used as a disinfectant for sewage. It acts here merely by precipitating the proteids, which carry down the bacteria mechanically. The proteids of the sewage may be increased by the addition of blood before the sulphate is applied. The sulphate of iron is used, because it is cheaper than the other salts of the heavy metals.

Preparations.

Ferri Chloridum (U. S. P.), ferric chloride ($Fe_2Cl_6+12H_2O$), orange yellow crystals, with a strong astringent taste, very deliquescent in air, soluble in water and alcohol.

Liquor Ferri Chloridi (U. S. P.), a solution of ferric chloride containing about 37.8 per cent. of the anhydrous salt or about 13 per cent. of iron.

Tinctura Ferri Chloridi (U. S. P.) is formed from the liquor by diluting it with 3 parts of alcohol. 0.5–2 c.c. (8–30 mins.).

Liquor Ferri Perchloridi Fortis (B. P.) is formed by dissolving iron in hydrochloric acid, and contains 22½ per cent. of iron. It is an orange-brown fluid, with a strong astringent taste.

Liquor Ferri Perchloridi (B. P.) and

Tinctura Ferri Perchloridi (B. P.) are formed by diluting the strong liquor with 3 times as much water, and with two parts of water and one of alcohol respectively. 5–15 mins.

The chloride is used as a styptic either as the Liquor Fortis (B. P.) or in a very much stronger form, prepared by allowing the crystals to deliquesce. A plug of cotton-wool steeped in the solution is used to stop bleeding after the extraction of teeth, and the liquor has been injected into the uterus in hæmorrhage, and into aneurisms and nævi. When diluted it may be used as a gargle, but has a disagreeable, inky taste, and attacks the teeth. The tincture is very commonly used in the treatment of chlorosis. It ought to be taken in a glass of water, and through a quill or glass tube, in order to avoid injury to the teeth.

Liquor Ferri Nitratis (U. S. P.), an aqueous solution of ferric nitrate ($Fe_2(NO_3)_6$), containing about 6.2 per cent. of the anhydrous salt and about 1.4 per cent. of metallic iron. 1–2 c.c. (15–30 mins.).

Liquor Ferri Nitratis (B. P.) contains 3.3 per cent. of iron. 5–15 mins. Used as an astringent to a limited extent.

Liquor Ferri Tersulphatis (U. S. P.), *Liquor Ferri Persulphatis* (B. P.), a solution of ferric sulphate ($Fe_2(SO_4)_3$), is used only for the preparation of other iron salts.

Liquor Ferri Subsulphatis (U. S. P.), Monsel's solution, an aqueous solution of basic ferric sulphate of variable chemical composition, and containing about 13.8 per cent. of metallic iron. 0.2–0.6 c.c. (3–10 mins.). Used as an astringent gargle, and in general like the chloride.

Ferri Sulphas (U. S. P., B. P.), ferrous sulphate ($FeSO_4+7H_2O$), large, pale, bluish-green crystals with a saline, astringent taste, soluble in water, insoluble in alcohol, and unstable in moist air. 0.05–0.3 G. (1–5 grs.).

Ferri Sulphas Granulatus (U. S. P.), recrystallized ferrous sulphate in very small crystals. 0.05–0.3 G. (1–5 grs.).

Ferri Sulphas Exsiccatus (U. S. P., B. P.), dried ferrous sulphate ($2FeSO_4+3H_2O$), ordinary sulphate from which most of the water of crystallization has been driven off by heat. A grayish-white powder resembling the ordinary sulphate in its solubility. 0.03–0.2 G. (½–3 grs.).

Ferri et Ammonii Sulphas (U. S. P.), ammonio ferric sulphate or ammonio-ferric alum ($Fe_2(NH_4)_2(SO_4)_4+24H_2O$), is a double salt forming pale violet

crystals with an acid astringent taste—soluble in water, not in alcohol, 0.3–0.6 G. (5-10 grs.).

The sulphate of iron is very astringent, though less so than the ferric salts. It is used as an astringent application to mucous membranes, such as the eye, mouth, urethra, more rarely internally in anæmia, although it is less irritant than the chloride.

The *Pil. Aloes et Ferri* (U. S. P., B. P.), which is used very largely in amenorrhœa and in chlorosis with constipation, contains dried sulphate of iron. Dose, B. P., 4–8 grs.

Ferrum (U. S. P., B. P.), metallic iron in the shape of fine wire is used only to form other preparations.

FERRUM REDUCTUM (U. S. P.), FERRUM REDACTUM (B. P.), reduced iron, a very fine grayish-black, lustreless powder, without taste, insoluble in water or alcohol, soluble in acid. It consists of metallic iron, with a small amount of the magnetic oxide. 0.05–0.3 G. (1–5 grs.).

Trochiscus Ferri Redacti (B. P.), each contains 1 gr. of reduced iron.

FERRI CARBONAS SACCHARATUS (U. S. P., B. P.), saccharated ferrous carbonate, is formed by precipitating ferrous sulphate with sodium bicarbonate (ammonium carbonate, B. P.), washing the precipitate and adding sugar. It contains ferrous carbonate along with some ferrous sulphate and sodium bicarbonate (U. S. P.), and is a greenish-brown powder, which rapidly oxidizes in the air, and has a sweetish, astringent taste. The carbonate is a very unstable body, and on keeping is slowly transformed to ferric hydrate ($Fe_2(OH)_6$). The sugar is added in order to retard this oxidation, but the carbonate ought not to be dispensed unless it is of recent preparation. 0.6–2 G. (10–30 grs.).

PILULÆ FERRI CARBONATIS (U. S. P.), PILULA FERRI (B. P.), ferruginous or chalybeate pills, BLAUD'S PILLS, are prepared in the same way, by the action of ferrous sulphate and carbonate of potash or soda. Sugar, tragacanth and glycerin are added; they ought to be freshly prepared in order to avoid the formation of the hydrate. Each pill (U. S. P.) contains about 0.06 G. (1 gr.) of iron, that is, 5 grs. contain about 1 gr. A method of keeping the carbonate and the sulphate apart until actually swallowed has been advertised, the two being given in a capsule, but being separated by a membrane which is dissolved off in the stomach. This same effect would be obtained by giving them entirely separate, and it is extremely improbable that the carbonate is formed in the acid contents of the stomach. 1–5 pills U. S. P., 5–15 grs. B. P.

Massa Ferri Carbonatis (U. S. P.), Vallets' Mass, is formed by the action of ferrous sulphate and sodium carbonate. Sugar and honey are added to the precipitate to form a mass of the proper consistency for pills. This preparation has never enjoyed the popularity of Blaud's pills and is superfluous. 0.2–0 3 G. (3–5 grs.).

MISTURA FERRI COMPOSITA (U. S. P., B. P.), Griffith's mixture, is formed by mixing ferrous sulphate, potassium carbonate, myrrh, sugar, spirits of lavender (nutmeg, B. P.) and rose water. The ferrous carbonate ($FeCO_3$) is precipitated and the mixture has therefore to be shaken before taking, and ought to be freshly prepared. 15–30 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

Reduced iron and the four carbonate preparations are used exclusively in the treatment of anæmia. They are practically devoid of irritant properties, and are among the best of all the iron preparations for this purpose. The Blaud's Pills have in particular a well merited reputation in the treatment of chlorosis and of chlorotic amenorrhœa. Another preparation used for this purpose but not official is *Ferrum Dialysatum* in which a considerable amount of iron oxide is kept in a semi-colloid state dissolved in a minimum amount of the chloride. It tastes of iron but is not astringent.

Ferri Oxidum Hydratum (U. S. P.), ferric hydrate, or hydroxide ($Fe_2(OH)_6$), a brownish-red, pasty mass, insoluble in water or alcohol but soluble in hydrochloric acid, is used almost exclusively in the treatment of

arsenic poisoning, as it forms an insoluble compound with it in the stomach. It ought to be freshly prepared, as otherwise it forms particles which combine with greater difficulty with the poison.

Ferri Oxidum Hydratum cum Magnesia (U. S. P.) is formed by precipitating ferric sulphate by magnesia and is used in arsenic poisoning and known as the arsenic antidote. Both of those preparations have to be given freely in arsenic poisoning, at least 15–20 G. (½ oz.). The remedy is harmless in itself.

Emplastrum Ferri (U. S. P.) and *Trochisci Ferri* (U. S. P.), iron plaster and iron lozenges, are prepared from ferric hydrate, but are not used in practice. The plaster has no effect except that of giving mechanical support, as iron is not absorbed by the skin.

Liquor Ferri Acetatis (U. S. P., B. P.), an aqueous solution of the acetate ($Fe_2(C_2H_3O_2)_6$), containing about 31 per cent. of the salt or about 7.5 per cent. of iron. 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Ferri Valerianas (U. S. P.), ferric valerianate, a dark, brick-red, amorphous powder, having the odor of valerianic acid and a mild, astringent taste, insoluble in water, soluble in alcohol. 0.05–0.3 G. (1–5 grs.).

Ferri Lactas (U. S. P.), ferrous lactate ($Fe(C_3H_5O_3)_2 + 3H_2O$), pale, greenish crusts, having a slight odor and a mildly astringent taste, soluble in 40 parts of water, more so in alkali citrate solutions, insoluble in alcohol. 0.05–0.3 G. (1–5 grs.).

The lactate is contained in the *Syrupus Hypophosphitum cum Ferro* (U. S. P.), 2–4 c.c. (½–1 fl. oz.).

Ferri Citras (U. S. P.), transparent, garnet-red scales with a slight iron taste. 0.05–0.3 G. (1–5 grs.).

Liquor Ferri Citratis (U. S. P.), an aqueous solution containing about 7½ per cent. of iron. 0.3–1 c.c. (5–15 mins.).

Ferri Phosphas (B. P.), a powder containing not less than 47 per cent. of hydrous ferrous phosphate ($Fe_3(PO_4)_2 8H_2O$), with ferric phosphate and some iron oxide. It is a slate-blue, amorphous powder, insoluble in water. 5–10 grs.

Syrupus Ferri Phosphatis (B. P.). 1 fl. dr. represents 1 gr. of anhydrous ferrous phosphate. ½–1 fl. dr.

Ferri Phosphas Solubilis (U. S. P.). The phosphate of iron is insoluble in itself, but is rendered soluble by the presence of sodium citrate—thin, green scales with a saline taste, insoluble in alcohol. 0.1–0.5 G. (2–8 grs.).

Ferri Pyrophosphas Solubilis (U. S. P.), like the phosphate, is rendered soluble by sodium citrate, and resembles it in its appearance and solubility. 0.1–0.5 G. (2–8 grs.).

Ferri Hypophosphis (U. S. P.) ($Fe_2(PH_2O_2)_6$), a white powder, odorless and nearly tasteless, almost insoluble in water, but dissolved by solutions of the alkali citrates. 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.), in pill.

Ferri Iodidum Saccharatum (U. S. P.), saccharated ferrous iodide, a yellowish-white, very hygroscopic powder with a sweetish, iron taste, soluble in water, less so in alcohol. 0.1–0.3 G. (2–5 grs.).

Pilulæ Ferri Iodidi (U. S. P.), each contains 0.04 G. of iron. 1–2 pills.

Syrupus Ferri Iodidi (U. S. P., B. P.) contains about 1.8 per cent. of iron. 2–4 G. (½–1 fl. dr.).

Ferri Arsenas (B. P.), iron arsenate, consists of ferrous arsenate ($Fe_3(AsO_4)_2$, $6H_2O$), with ferric arsenate and some iron oxide, and forms a tasteless, amorphous powder of a greenish color, insoluble in water. $\frac{1}{15}$–¼ gr.

These preparations have all been prescribed to a greater or less extent in the treatment of anæmia, the lactate, phosphate and pyrophosphate being perhaps more widely used than the others. It is needless to repeat that the valerianate is not of greater value in hysteria than the other preparations, as valerianic acid is useless in this condition. The iodide has been advised in order to combine the effects of iodide and iron, but the iodide given in this form is in much smaller quantity than that found necessary in the iodide of potassium treatment, and it seems open to question whether the improvement

is not due to the iron only. The hypophosphite is also used in cachexia, in order to combine the hypophosphite and the iron effects.

Ferri et Quininæ Citras (U. S. P., B. P.), thin scales of a reddish-brown color, and of a bitter, iron taste, slowly soluble in water, partially soluble in alcohol, containing 11.5 per cent. of quinine and 14.5 per cent. of iron U. S. P. 0.3–0.6 G. (5–10 grs.).

Ferri et Quininæ Citras Solubilis (U. S. P.), thin scales of a greenish color and of a bitter, iron taste, easily soluble in water, only partially in alcohol. It contains the same amount of iron and quinine as the ordinary preparation. 0.3–0.6 G. (5–10 grs.).

Ferri et Strychninæ Citras (U. S. P.), thin, transparent scales of garnet-red or yellowish-brown color, readily soluble in water, containing about 1 per cent. of strychnine and about 16 per cent. of iron. 0.1–0.3 G. (2–5 grs.).

Syrupus Ferri, Quininæ et Strychninæ Phosphatum (U. S. P.), *Syrupus Ferri Phosphatis cum Quinina et Strychnina* (B. P.), 2–4 c.c. (½–1 fl. dr.).

Ferri et Ammonii Citras (U. S. P., B. P.), thin garnet-red scales with an acid, iron taste, soluble in water and containing 16 per cent. iron. 0.3–0.6 G. (5–10 grs.).

Ferri et Ammonii Tartras (U. S. P.), thin, transparent, garnet-red scales, very soluble in water and containing about 17 per cent. of iron. 0.3–0.6 G. (5–10 grs.).

Ferri et Potassii Tartras (U. S. P.), *Ferrum Tartaratum* (B. P.) resembles the last preparation, but contains only about 15 per cent. of iron. 0.3–0.6 G. (5–10 grs.).

Liquor Ferri et Ammonii Acetatis (U. S. P.), Basham's mixture, contains only a very small proportion of iron, along with acetic acid, ammonium acetate, aromatic elixir and glycerin. 15–30 c.c. (½–1 fl. oz.).

Vinum Ferri (B. P.). 1–4 fl. drs.

Vinum Ferri Amarum (U. S. P.). 8–15 c.c. (2–4 fl. drs.).

Vinum Ferri Citratis (U. S. P., B. P.). 4–15 c.c. (1–4 fl. drs.).

The two wines of iron of the U. S. P. are practically identical except that the first contains the citrate of iron and quinine, the second, the citrate of iron and ammonium. Each is made up with tincture of sweet orange peel, syrup and white wine. The iron wine of the B. P. is formed by dissolving iron in sherry wine, the citrate of iron wine by dissolving the citrate in orange wine.

The double salts of iron (scale preparations) and the wines are used to some extent in chlorosis, but more frequently in convalescence from acute fevers, which is often attended by anæmia; in these cases the iron wines are often of considerable value. The double salts are not so liable to disturb the digestion as the other soluble preparations of iron, but are not superior to the carbonate preparations and the reduced iron in this respect.

Iron is contained in many *mineral waters*, which are therefore advised in cases of anæmia. It is generally in the form of the carbonate, which is dissolved by the excess of carbonic acid present, but becomes oxidized to the insoluble ferric hydrate in the air. The amount of iron contained is small, seldom being more than 0.1 G. per litre, but the treatment of chlorosis is unquestionably aided by change of scene and in particular by the high elevations at which many of these springs are situated, so that the success of treatment with these iron waters is perfectly intelligible. Bathing in iron water has no further action on the blood than ordinary baths, as no iron is absorbed.

Many **Proteid Compounds** of iron have been introduced into therapeutics in the last few years, but few of them need be mentioned, as a large number of them promise to be relegated to merited oblivion in the near future. The *albuminate* of iron and the *peptonate* of iron are generally prepared by the action of the chloride on egg albumin or on peptone, and differ very considerably in the percentage of iron contained. In most of them the albuminate or peptonate is accompanied by more or less perchloride and oxide.

These preparations are not "organic" iron in the sense defined on page 659, for the iron can be split off easily, and is precipitated by sulphides almost as readily as the ordinary salts. The albuminate and peptonate possess no advantage over the usual preparations, unless they prove less irritant to the stomach, and of this there is no satisfactory evidence. Soluble peptonate and albuminate of iron are put on the market by a number of manufacturers.

Schmiedeberg found in the liver an iron compound which does not seem to resemble the ordinary salts, for it is only blackened by sulphides after some time, and in other ways shows resemblances to the "organic iron," such as the hæmatogen of the yolk of egg. It would seem to stand midway between the ordinary dissociable salts and hæmoglobin, for it reacts to ammonium sulphide more tardily than the former, while the latter is not affected by this reagent. Schmiedeberg named this compound, which is an iron-containing proteid, *Ferratin*. He attempted to form a similar substance synthetically from the white of egg, and obtained a body containing 6–8 per cent. of iron, which reacted similarly with sulphide, and which he failed to dissociate by electrolysis. Believing it to be identical with the hepatic ferratin, he advised its use in chlorosis as being a natural food iron. It is impossible to state from these reactions, however, that the two substances—the hepatic and the artificial ferratin—are identical, and, in fact, Macallum finds that the former fails to give the hæmatoxylon test, while the latter yields it readily.

Artificial ferratin is partially decomposed in the stomach into ordinary inorganic salts, but there seems reason to believe that it is absorbed more easily than the usual preparations, and it is not irritant to the stomach and does not often give rise to dyspepsia. On the whole, ferratin seems a good preparation for use in chlorosis, but possesses no such specific virtues as have been attributed to it by enthusiastic advocates, and it has the disadvantage of being very much more expensive than most other preparations. It is given in powder or pill, or in solution as a sodium compound, in quantities of 0.5–1.5 G. (8–20 grs.) per day.

Carniferrin is an iron compound of carniphosphoric[1] (phosphosarkinic) acid, which is obtained from beef extract. It contains 35 per cent. of iron, and seems to bear the same relation to the inorganic salts and to hæmoglobin as artificial ferratin, for while it reacts slowly to sulphide, it gives the hæmatoxylon test. It has been highly recommended in chlorosis, as it does not irritate the stomach and is rapidly absorbed. It is given in doses of 0.5 G. (8 grs.) three times a day in powder, and like ferratin, is soluble in alkaline solutions.

The *hæmatogen* of the yolk of egg, another organic iron of the same type as ferratin and carniferrin, is obtained in too small quantity to be available for therapeutic use, but seems to be absorbed readily.

Other proteid compounds which have been advised are formed from yolk of egg or from casein, by the addition of iron salts.

Blood has been used in therapeutics by uncivilized peoples since time unknown, and has also been recommended in modern medicine in the treatment of chlorosis, in which it is administered by the mouth, and also hypodermically, though the latter method is difficult to carry out aseptically. *Hæmoglobin* has also been advertised largely of late years in a more or less impure form. In the stomach, hæmoglobin, whether contained in blood or as crystals, is changed to hæmatin; Abderhalden found that both hæmoglobin and hæmatin are absorbed and lead to an increase in the hæmoglobin of the blood. *Hæmol* and *hæmogallol* are prepared from blood by agitating it with zinc and with pyrogallol respectively, and have been strongly recommended by their discoverer, Kobert, and by some clinicians, but have been found by others of less value than the old inorganic salts.

[1] Carniphosphoric or phosphosarkinic acid (Ger., Fleischsäure) is a compound of phosphoric acid and antipeptone ($C_{10}H_{15}N_3O_5$).

The "organic" iron preparations therefore seem to have little to recommend them as superior to the "inorganic," except that ferratin and carniferrin are probably more rapidly absorbed, and are less liable to cause dyspepsia than many of the older salts. Where there is special difficulty in administering the more commonly used forms, these two may be substituted for them with advantage, but they seem to be unnecessary in ordinary cases. In regard to the other preparations mentioned, further and impartial investigation is required before their place in therapeutics can be determined.

Bibliography.

Meyer u. Williams. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xiii., p. 70.
Kobert. Ibid., xvi., p. 361.
Hamburger. Zts. f. phys. Chem., ii., p. 191; iv., p. 248.
Bunge. Ibid., ix., p. 49; xiii., p. 399; xvi., p. 173; xvii., p. 63.
Häusermann. Ibid., xxiii., p. 555.
Bunge, Quincke. Cong. f. inn. Med., 1895, p. 133.
Marfori. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxix., p. 212.
Schmiedeberg. Ibid., xxxiii., p. 101.
Gottlieb. Ibid., xxvi., p. 139. Zts. f. phys. Chem., xv., p. 371.
Jakobj. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxviii., p. 256.
Socin. Zts. f. phys. Chem., xv., p. 93.
Molisch. Sitzungber. Wien. Akad., ciii., 1894, Abt. i., p. 554.
Kunkel. Pflüger's Arch., l., p. 1; lxi., p. 595.
Stockman. Brit. Med. Journ., 1893, i., p. 881. Journ. of Phys., xviii., p. 484; xxi., p. 55 (with *Greig*).
Scherpf. Rossbach's Untersuchungen, ii., p. 145.
Macallum. Journ. of Phys., xvi., p. 268; xxii., p. 92.
Woltering. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xxi., p. 186.
Hall. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1894, p. 455; 1896, p. 49.
Pohl. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxv., p. 65.
Gaule. Deutsch. med. Woch., xxii., pp. 289, 373 (1896). Zts. f. Biol., xxxv., p. 377.
Hochhaus u. Quincke. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvii., p. 159.
Damaskin, Kumberg, Busch, Stender, Anselm, Samojloff. Arb. a. d. pharm. Instit. zu Dorpat, vii., viii., ix.
Cloetta. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvii., p. 69; xxxviii., p. 161; xliv., p. 363.
Hofmann. Virchow's Arch., cli., p. 488.
Filippi. Ziegler's Beiträge zur path. Anat., xvi., p. 462.
Mörner. Zts. f. phys. Chem., xviii., p. 13.
Buzdygan. Wien. klin. Woch., 1897, p. 713.
Voit. Zts. f. Biol., N. F., xi., p. 387 (1893).
Glaevecke. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xvii., p. 466.
Neuss. Zts. f. klin. Med., iii., p. 1.
Eger. Ibid., xxxii., p. 335.
V. Noorden. Berl. klin. Woch., 1895, p. 181.
Hari. Arch. f. Verdauungskrank., iv., p. 160.
Abderhalden. Ztschr. f. Biologie, xxxix., pp. 113, 193, 487.
Müller. Virchow's Arch., clxiv., p. 436.

IV. LEAD.

Lead is used to some extent in therapeutics, but its chief interest from a medical point of view lies in the frequency with which it gives rise to chronic poisoning, and in the diversity of the symptoms presented in that condition.

Solutions of lead salts precipitate albumin, and the precipitate is more dense and heavy than that of mercury, and is insoluble in excess of the salt. This precipitate is formed when lead solutions are applied to the mucous membranes, and protects them from the penetration of the metal, so that lead is one of the least corrosive, and one of the most

astringent of the heavy metals. This absence of corrosion is only in part due to the character of the precipitate, for lead forms insoluble and therefore non-irritant salts with two of the most corrosive acids, hydrochloric and sulphuric acids. The soluble nitrate of lead is comparatively irritating because it is readily dissociated and also because the nitric acid formed by its contact with proteid is itself corrosive. The only soluble salts which are largely used are the acetates, and these are slowly dissociated and the acid is only slightly active, so that the astringent metallic ion alone comes into play.

Symptoms. — In ordinary therapeutic doses, the acetate of lead (sugar of lead) has a sweetish, metallic taste followed by a feeling of astringency, and induces no symptoms except constipation. The stools after lead are often said to be dark in color from the sulphide formed in the intestine, but this does not seem to be the general rule. Probably little lead is absorbed from an ordinary dose of the acetate; at any rate no symptoms arise from the general action of the metal absorbed.

Lead acetate solutions applied to the skin have no effect, but mucous membranes, or exposed tissues, such as ulcers, are covered with a thin pellicle of albuminate, which serves to protect them from irritation, and thus promotes their healing.

When very large quantities of acetate are swallowed, particularly if in a concentrated form, they give rise to the ordinary symptoms of irritant poisoning, nausea, vomiting, pain in the abdomen, violent purging or sometimes constipation, blood in the vomited matter and stools, great thirst, weakness, and collapse. In some instances in which the patients recovered from these symptoms, they subsequently suffered from chronic lead poisoning, but apart from these, nothing in the course of acute lead poisoning suggests the absorption of the metal, all the symptoms being obviously due to the local effects on the stomach and bowel, and to the consequent collapse. In fact the effects of a sudden absorption of lead in man are unknown.

In animals also, some difficulty has been met in inducing the symptoms due to the action of large quantities of lead in the tissues, because most forms of lead injected into the vessels precipitate the proteids of the blood and cause embolism, while, on the other hand, only local symptoms can be induced by its administration by the mouth. Harnack investigated this point by injecting salts of lead-triethyl, in which the metal is not contained in a dissociable form, but which is decomposed in the tissues and then gives rise to lead symptoms. In this way he hoped to be able to elucidate the symptoms of chronic lead poisoning, but his results have not been of much value for this purpose, although they are of some interest. In the frog he found that his compound produced general paralysis, which he ascribed to action on the muscles, but which Wyss later stated to be due to action on the central nervous system. Harnack describes the muscles as being easily fatigued, and gives some further peculiarities induced by lead in them, but Wyss found in apparently equally satisfactory experiments that the muscles were practically unaffected at death. In the dog large doses of lead injected into a vein induced weakness and paralysis, violent diarrhœa, chorea-like movements, tremors, which often assume the appearance of true convulsions,

and ataxia. The diarrhœa was attended by severe colic, and both of these symptoms were removed by atropine. It would therefore appear that the colic is here due to nervous influences, and not to the muscle of the intestine being immediately acted upon, for atropine paralyzes only the terminations of nerves. The diarrhœa Harnack found to be due to violent contractions of the intestinal walls, which maintained a certain degree of contraction even when no peristaltic wave was passing. This action of lead upon the intestine is of interest, because it bears a close relation to the colic observed in chronic lead poisoning in man, although here there is generally constipation, and also because it connects lead with the other heavy metals, all of which have more or less specific action on the intestine. The ataxia and other brain symptoms also have their counterpart in the brain symptoms of chronic poisoning in man.

A single dose of a lead salt does not generally give rise to any symptoms which would indicate the absorption of the metal, but the continued ingestion of small quantities by way of the stomach, or by inhalation by the lungs, induces chronic poisoning, which can be explained only by its absorption. There seems some reason to believe that lead is absorbed from the unbroken skin, though it is possible that some of the metal was carried to the mouth and swallowed with the food in the cases on which the statement is founded. Lead is apparently **Absorbed** more rapidly than most of the metals except mercury, and remains lodged in the tissues a long time, the excretion taking place only very slowly. It is found in most organs in cases of poisoning, particularly in the liver and kidney. It is **Excreted** in the urine, the bile, the secretion of the intestinal epithelium, and in milk and saliva. It is still disputed whether it is eliminated by the skin glands, or whether the lead often seen on the skin in cases of poisoning is not simply deposited there as dust from the air.

Chronic Lead Poisoning is the commonest of all forms of metallic poisoning, and at the same time one of the most insidious. It is always accidental, and although it is most common in workers in lead, may occur in persons who are not apparently liable to come in contact with the metal. There is no question that some people are much more susceptible to lead than others. Anæmia and weakness from any cause are generally believed to predispose to the disease, women and children are more liable to it than men, and alcoholism and previous lead intoxication increase the tendency to the attack. Relapses are very common, and may occur years after the first symptoms, even although there has been no further exposure in the interval. Lead smelters, workers in white lead factories, painters, plumbers and typesetters are very liable to lead poisoning from their continually handling the metal; but other trades are not exempt from it, and sometimes the channels by which it gains entrance to the body are very obscure. Some of the more common causes of poisoning are lead water-pipes or cooking utensils, lead used to close tins of meat or fruit, and lead in hair dyes. Formerly a common source of poisoning was wine and cider to which lead had been added to reduce the acidity. A considerable number of cases of poisoning have been recorded from the use of lead preparations as abortifacients.

The symptoms of chronic lead poisoning vary greatly in different cases, sometimes only one or two organs being attacked, in others the whole economy appearing involved in the disorder. The symptoms may be divided into groups for convenience, but it is to be noted that many of these appear to be closely inter-connected, and that in many cases it is impossible to decide whether a set of symptoms is due to direct action upon a single organ, or to the simultaneous disease of several.

The **Mouth, Stomach and Digestion** very often give early indications of lead poisoning. The patient complains of loss of appetite, nausea, constipation, wasting, a metallic taste and fœtid breath, and a blue-black line is seen along the margin of the teeth where they enter the gums. This "lead line" is due to the precipitation of lead sulphide by the hydrogen sulphide produced by the action of bacteria, and it is often absent, especially where the teeth are not carious and are kept clean. The metallic taste seems due to the excretion of lead in the saliva, and the loss of appetite may arise from the same cause. These symptoms may be produced in animals also. Virchow and Maier found in one case in man the gastric epithelium in a state of fatty degeneration, and proliferation of the connective tissue of the mucous membrane.

Another early symptom is **Anæmia**, which may be due in part to the malnutrition, but is attributed mainly to an abnormal destruction of the red cells of the blood; the white corpuscles are increased in many cases but not in all. It is often accompanied by jaundice, with the highly pigmented urine and other symptoms which usually follow the liberation of large quantities of hæmoglobin from the breaking up of red cells. It is stated that the red blood-cells often contain granules staining with basophile dyes and indicating incomplete disappearance of the nucleus; this change may present itself before any other symptom. The anæmia is often very marked, and is sometimes the chief or only symptom of lead poisoning; according to some authorities, it is present in a greater or less degree in the majority of white-lead workers, and it leads to weakness, languor, and in young women often to amenorrhœa. Abortion is very often met with in lead poisoning, and in women employed in lead works who do not show any marked symptoms of disease. The children of parents suffering from lead are often weak and undersized, and a very large proportion of them die in early infancy.

One of the commonest symptoms is **Lead Colic**, painters' colic, colica saturnina or colica Pictonum. This generally sets in suddenly, and is accompanied in most cases by obstinate constipation, in a very small proportion by diarrhœa. Paroxysms of the most acute agony are followed by intervals of comparative freedom from pain, but in these intervals some tenderness of the abdomen may be complained of, while during the attack pressure generally relieves the pain. The colic lasts for several days, or a week, and then disappears, but is liable to return at intervals. The abdomen is generally hollow, retracted and hard,

and during the acute spasms the patient often gains some relief by lying on his face with the fists pressed against the umbilical region, to which the pain is usually referred. Vomiting is frequently present, the pulse is slow and very hard, especially during the acute crises, while the respiration may be accelerated. The urine is scanty, and, according to Stokvis and Nakorai, contains hæmatoporphyrin.

The cause of lead colic is evidently spasm of the intestine, which is generally attributed to action on the nervous ganglia of the walls. It can be induced in animals, and according to Harnack, is relieved by atropine, which would support the belief that it is of nervous origin. The blood-pressure is raised in man, not only during the spasms, but also in the intervals. This contraction of the vessels and the slowing of the pulse is often said to be reflex from the pain, but this seems to be disproved by the fact that it remains during the intervals. Some writers have therefore regarded the colic and its attendant symptoms as due to a vascular spasm, and have supported this by showing that nitrite of amyl, which dilates the vessels, also relieves the colic.[1]

On the whole, the colic appears to be of nervous origin, but whether the focus of disease lies in the wall of the intestine, in the nerves leading to it, or in the central nervous system, it is impossible to determine at present.

Another common result of chronic lead poisoning is **Paralysis**, lead or painters' palsy, paralysis saturnina, which is almost invariably limited to certain groups of muscles, the extensors of the forearm. It is bilateral in the great majority of cases, but sometimes involves only one arm. The affection generally begins in the middle and ring fingers, which cannot be extended, then spreads to the index and little finger, and afterwards to the thumb and wrist. The fingers remain flexed and later the wrist is similarly affected, so that the condition is often known as wrist-drop. Even after all the other muscles of the extensor surface of the forearm are involved, the supinator longus remains normal as a general rule. The muscles affected atrophy rapidly, and in old cases contracture of the flexor muscles sets in, when the limb becomes immovable and has a characteristic claw-like appearance. More rarely other regions are affected, such as the laryngeal muscles (in the horse), the external rectus of the eye, or the muscles of the leg. In rabbits and guinea-pigs several observers have succeeded in inducing paralysis of the hind limbs, and the legs are said to be affected very often in young children. When paralysis is complete, the induced electric current fails to cause contraction, whether it is applied to the muscle or to the nerve, but the galvanic shock induces an abnormally strong contraction when it is passed through the muscle, the make shock having more effect than the break ; the contraction is more prolonged, the relaxation slower than in normal muscles. This reaction

[1] Maier attributed the colic to a sclerosis of the intestinal ganglia, which he found to occur in animals treated with lead acetate ; but this explanation is opposed to the fact that complete recovery generally follows, and his experiments are open to the objection that the sclerosis may be due to the local action of the lead on the bowel, as he administered the acetate by the mouth for prolonged periods.

of degeneration is said to occur in the other muscles in lead poisoning, even when no paralysis can be detected in them. The cause of lead palsy is still undecided, for while in some cases there is undoubtedly a peripheral neuritis and nerve degeneration, and no anatomical lesion of the spinal cord, yet in others very distinct degeneration of the cord, particularly of the cells of the anterior horn, has been observed. Although the majority of pathologists at the present time are of the opinion that the lesion is a peripheral neuritis, and that the degeneration of the cord is either a consequence of this, or is perhaps an entirely independent lesion, some authorities hold that the focus of disease is situated in the cord, and that the neuritis is merely an extension of the process. They explain the absence of visible changes of the cord in some cases by supposing that the function of the cell is destroyed by the poison, without actual anatomical lesion. A third view which was held formerly, but has been abandoned except by a very few, is that the original lesion is in the muscles. Peripheral neuritis has been elicited repeatedly in animals.

Local **Anæsthesia** is also observed occasionally, though much more rarely than paralysis. It is generally sudden in its onset, but may be preceded by numbness or tickling of the skin, and generally lasts only one or two weeks, when sensation returns again to the part.

Lead **Arthralgia** is more commonly observed, perhaps because it is so much more evident. It consists in sharp lancinating or boring pains in the joints, bones, or the flexor muscles around the joints, the intensity of the pain being comparable only to that of lead colic. It sets in suddenly, usually in the night, and generally disappears as suddenly. This symptom is not in any way dependent on the gout which is often induced by lead poisoning, and its explanation, like that of the anæsthesia, is quite unknown.

Lead **Amblyopia**, or blindness, is one of the rarer affections. The sight may be lost completely, or may only be dim, and the onset may be sudden or gradual. In some cases the ophthalmoscope gives no clue to the cause of the blindness, in others an acute papillitis is made out. Stood ascribes the amblyopia to several causes, which may each give rise to it separately or may act together. The first of these is a neuritis of the optic nerve in the eye, which gives distinct ophthalmoscopic appearances. In the second the neuritis may be descending or retrobulbar, and may induce little visible change, while the third cause of blindness may be uræmia with an effusion into the optic sheath, and a fourth is albuminuric retinitis, these two last forms being due not to a direct action on the nerve, but to the nephritis induced by the poison. The sudden cases of blindness are probably due to uræmia, and the prognosis in all forms depends on the duration of the neuritis, and, in the case of albuminuria, on the extent to which the kidney is involved. In early cases of neuritis, the disease can generally be arrested and even complete restitution may take place, but if it be neglected, optic atrophy follows.

Under saturnine **Encephalopathia**, a number of disorders of the brain

are classed together. They are comparatively rare at the present time, and their onset generally indicates long standing and neglected lead intoxication, although in some cases the patient has been shown to be exposed to the poison for only a short period. An attempt has been made to divide the symptoms of encephalopathia saturnina into four groups, but as the author himself remarks, one of the most characteristic features is the rapidity with which the disease changes from one type to another, and the diversity of the symptoms present at one time. These cerebral symptoms sometimes appear suddenly, while in other cases they are heralded by violent headache, giddiness and sleeplessness, or by amblyopia, deafness, great depression, stupor, weakness, and tumor. Later, sudden mania and delirium, with convulsions resembling chorea or epilepsy, hallucinations and illusions indistinguishable from those of alcoholic delirium, sudden apoplectic paralysis, ataxia, partial analgesia, hyperæsthesia, or coma may occur separately or in succession. Oliver states that the encephalopathic symptoms are especially liable to occur in persons addicted to alcohol.

In animals cerebral symptoms are readily induced by lead, either by intravenous injection (Harnack), or by chronic poisoning with the ordinary salts. Chorea, tremors and general convulsions have been caused in this way in dogs.

The encephalopathia is obviously of cerebral origin for the most part, although the lower divisions of the central nervous system are also involved in many cases. In several autopsies of patients dying from lead poisoning, atrophy of parts of the cerebrum, or hæmorrhages have been found, and very frequently disease of the brain vessels — periarteritis, endoarteritis, atheroma or hyaline degeneration — has been met with. In other cases of undoubted encephalopathia in man, no such lesions have been observed, and in animals poisoned by Harnack's method they are certainly not present. Many of the symptoms are obviously not due to these gross lesions, for the suddenness of their onset and of the recovery precludes any such explanation, and show that lead has also a direct action on the brain cells. Lugaro and Schaffer have described some alterations in the chromatin and the dendrites of the nerve cells, which they suppose indicate this direct affection; McCarthy found marked changes in the capillaries of the cerebral cortex in a dog which was subjected to the action of lead for two months and which presented symptoms of cerebral disorder similar to those met with in chronic poisoning in man.

It must be noted that in addition to these generally recognized symptoms of encephalopathia saturnina, several obscure chronic nervous diseases have been ascribed by Putnam and others to lead intoxication, and it is certainly possible that its action may prove to be even more wide-reaching and insidious than is generally recognized at present, but it does not seem profitable to enter upon further details in the present state of the subject.

Another organ acted on by lead, especially in prolonged poisoning, is the **Kidney**, which is often found to present a typical red granular

nephritis. During life the urine presents the ordinary appearances of this disease, being copious in amount and of low specific gravity, and containing comparatively small quantities of albumin or casts. In some cases in man, the kidney has presented a mixture of parenchymatous and interstitial disease, while in animals the parenchyma alone is affected, perhaps because the experiments have not lasted long enough. The disease of the kidney from lead poisoning, as from other sources, may cause dropsy, uræmia and amblyopia, but it is to be noted that the brain and eye may be affected in cases in which there is no nephritis.

Gout is very common in lead poisoning, which evidently predisposes to this disease, if it does not actually cause it, for Garrod states that in one-fourth of the cases of gout treated by him there was a history of lead poisoning. It occurs only after prolonged exposure to the metal, and differs from ordinary gout in the rapidity with which it spreads from one joint to another, as well as in some other features (Luethje). Thus gout is seen without nephritis and *vice versa*, the two affections being quite independent of each other. The uric acid of the urine is not increased, while that of the blood is said to be abnormally high. In districts where ordinary gout is rare, lead poisoning seldom leads to it, but where ordinary gout is met with, it is a fairly common complication of saturninism.

Lead poisoning runs no definite course. As a general rule the anæmia, wasting, constipation and weakness appear early, and then colic may follow, or paralysis, or arthralgia. Nephritis, encephalopathia, anæsthesia and gout are rarer, and as a rule only occur in very prolonged poisoning. Any one of these symptoms may be present alone, and the diagnosis is then very difficult. In doubtful cases the urine ought to be examined after the administration of iodide, or the stools may be tested for lead. Every case in which lead is found in the urine is not necessarily one of lead intoxication, however, for it has been detected in a number of perfectly healthy individuals.

It is impossible at present to give any general explanation for the diversity of the forms of chronic lead poisoning. The central nervous system is certainly acted on, both in its higher and lower divisions, but it is still disputed how far the paralysis, arthralgia and anæsthesia are symptoms of central action, and how far they are due to peripheral neuritis. All of the symptoms, however, except those from the mouth, stomach and kidney, and the anæmia and gout seem to be due to affections of either the central or peripheral nervous system. The lead line, metallic taste and nausea, and perhaps the constipation, would seem to be connected with the excretion of the metal along the alimentary canal, while the renal action is probably of the same nature as that inducing periarteritis in the brain and, as is alleged, in the lungs under some conditions. The anæmia indicates an action on the red cells of the blood, and the gout some disturbance of the general nutrition. Attempts have been made to elucidate the nature of this action on metabolism by estimating the urea and other constituents of

the urine, but no important light has been thrown on it by this means, nor in fact are significant results to be hoped for in a disease which offers so many and so diverse types as lead poisoning.

Lead acts upon so many tissues that it might be expected to have some distinctive action upon the simpler organisms, but, as a matter of fact, it seems less poisonous to them than most other heavy metals.

Preparations.

Plumbi Acetas (U. S. P., B. P.), lead acetate, sugar of lead ($Pb(C_2H_3O_2)_2 + 3H_2O$), forms colorless crystals, with a sweetish, astringent, afterwards metallic taste, very soluble in water, less so in alcohol. 0.05–0.3 G. (1–5 grs.).

Unguentum Plumbi Acetatis (B. P.), 4 per cent.

Suppositoria Plumbi Composita (B. P.); each contains 3 grs. of lead acetate and 1 gr. of opium.

Pilula Plumbi cum Opio (B. P.) contains about 12½ per cent. of opium. 2–4 grs.

Liquor Plumbi Subacetatis (U. S. P.), *Liquor Plumbi Subacetatis Fortis* (B. P.), Goulard's extract, an aqueous solution containing about 25 per cent. of lead subacetate (approximately $Pb(C_2H_3O_2)_2PbO$). When exposed to the air, the insoluble lead carbonate is formed. The subacetate solutions are alkaline in reaction.

Liquor Plumbi Subacetatis Dilutus (U. S. P., B. P.), lead water, Goulard's lotion or water, a solution containing about 7.5 parts (3 parts B. P.) of the subacetate in 1,000 parts of water.

Glycerinum Plumbi Subacetatis (B. P.).

Unguentum Glycerini Plumbi Subacetatis (B. P.).

Ceratum Plumbi Acetatis (U. S. P.), Goulard's cerate.

Plumbi Carbonas (U. S. P., B. P.), white lead ($(PbCO_3)_2Pb(OH)_2$).

Unguentum Plumbi Carbonatis (U. S. P., B. P.).

Plumbi Iodidum (U. S. P., B. P.) (PbI_2).

Emplastrum Plumbi Iodidi (B. P.).

Unguentum Plumbi Iodidi (U. S. P., B. P.).

Plumbi Oxidum (U. S. P., B. P.), litharge (PbO).

Plumbi Nitras (U. S. P.) ($Pb(NO_3)_2$).

Lead plaster or diachylon plaster, *Emplastrum Plumbi*, is formed from the oxide but is mentioned elsewhere. (See Part VI.)

Therapeutic Uses. — Lead is used in therapeutics only for its astringent action. The acetate is prescribed internally in diarrhœa, generally along with opium, and always in pill form, as the solution would act on the stomach and have less effect on the bowel. It has been tried in dysentery and cholera, but has proved of little value. Lead has also been advised in cases of hæmorrhage from the lungs, kidneys and uterus, but has no astringent effect in these conditions, because it is slowly absorbed, and, besides, what reaches the blood does not act on the vessels. If lead preparations are of any value in these affections, and this is denied by many authorities, it can be explained only by some reflex action from the stomach and bowel. Still less reason is there for its use in nephritis, cystitis, and similar conditions.

Externally, a solution of the acetate, or the dilute solution of the subacetate is used as an astringent lotion in burns, and as an injection in gonorrhœa. White lead has been advised as a dusting powder in

burns and skin affections, but is not superior in any way to other similar preparations, and is liable to be absorbed. Nitrate of lead has a reputation in the treatment of onychia.

Lead ought not to be employed externally or internally except for a short time as otherwise symptoms of poisoning may arise.

Poisoning. — In acute lead poisoning, the indications are its removal from the stomach by washing, and its precipitation, which may be best accomplished by solutions of the sulphates such as of magnesium sulphate. In the absence of the sulphates, white of egg or milk is given to form the insoluble albuminate.

In chronic poisoning, the general treatment is the removal of the patient from the danger of further poisoning, the administration of iodide of potassium, and nutritious, strengthening diet. The iodide of potassium has been said to accelerate the elimination of lead by the kidneys, but according to Lehmann's experiments is not superior to the bromide or the chloride of potassium, and it has been recently denied that it has any effect on the excretion by the urine or by the intestine, by which most of the lead escapes from the body. In practice, however, the iodide is always used. Diuretics may be prescribed, and hot baths; sulphur baths are especially recommended, and massage is said to hasten the elimination of the poison.

In colic, morphine or opium is often necessary to allay the pain. Belladonna or atropine is used less frequently, and nitrite of amyl is said to be efficient for a short time. In the intervals between the paroxysms, a saline cathartic is often necessary to relieve the constipation, or if the vomiting prevents this, a large enema may be thrown into the bowel.

In arthralgia, the pain may necessitate the giving of opiates. In anæsthesia and encephalopathia, the treatment is expectant and symptomatic; for instance, in mania, or violent delirium, chloral may be necessary.

In paralysis, strychnine may be used along with the general treatment, but the chief reliance is to be placed on the electrical stimulation of the paralyzed muscles, first with the galvanic current, and, as recovery sets in, with the induction coil. Massage of the muscles is also of benefit.

Nephritis and gout due to lead poisoning are to be treated in the same way as those arising from other causes.

In lead works and paint factories, much may be done to prevent lead poisoning. Dust is to be avoided as much as possible, and where this is necessarily present, the rooms ought to be thoroughly ventilated. The necessity of frequent bathing and of thorough washing before meals ought to be impressed on the workmen, and no food is to be admitted to the works. A lemonade made with sulphuric acid is often recommended as a prophylactic measure with the object of changing the lead to the insoluble sulphate and thus rendering it less readily absorbed. Poisoning may, however, be induced by lead sulphate, though less often than by the carbonate, which is dissolved by water

in the presence of free carbonic acid, and which is changed to the slightly soluble chloride in the stomach.

When symptoms of poisoning have appeared, the patient ought not to be allowed to work again, or at least only after a long interval. Weak and anæmic men ought not to be admitted as workmen, and women are not to be employed in lead works more than can be avoided.

Bibliography.

Harnack. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., ix., p. 152.
Wyss. Virchow's Arch., xcii., p. 193.
Maier. Ibid., xc., p. 455.
Annuschat. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., vii., p. 45; x., p. 261.
Lehmann. Zts. f. physiolog. Chem., vi., p. 528.
Harnack. Deutch. med. Woch., 1897, p. 8.
Mann. Brit. Med. Jour., 1893, i., p. 401.
Miura. Berl. klin. Woch., 1890, p. 1005.
Oddo et Silbert. Rev. de Med., 1892, p. 295.
Gaucher. Ibid., 1881, p. 877.
Riegel. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., xxi., p. 175.
Borgen. Ibid., lvi., p. 248.
Ellenberger u. Hofmeister. Arch. f. Thierheilkunde, x., p. 216.
Westphal. Archiv f. Psychiatrie, xix., p. 620.
Stieglitz. Ibid., xxiv., p. 1.
Ceni. Ibid., xxix., p. 566.
Luethje. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxix., p. 266; xxxi., p. 112.
Stood. Arch. f. Ophthalmol., xxx., iii., p. 215.
Schroeder. Ibid., xxxi., i., p. 229.
Cornil et Brault. Journ. de l'Anat., 1883, p. 205.
Coen e D'Ajutolo. Ziegler's Beiträge, iii., p. 451.
Charcot. Arch. de Physiol., 1881, p. 126.
Walton. Boston Med. and Surg. Jour., cxxiii., p. 411.
Webber. Ibid., cxxv., p. 462.
Putnam. Ibid., cxvii., pp. 73, 596; cxxviii., p. 187.
Ebstein. Virchow's Arch., cxxxiv., p. 541.
Eichhorst. Ibid., cxx., p. 217.
Lugaro. Centralbl. f. Physiol., 1897, p. 211.
Schaffer. Ung. Archiv f. Med., ii., p. 43.
Provost et Binet. Rev. Med. de la Suisse Romande, 1889.
Lorimer. Brit. Med. Jour., 1886, ii., p. 163.
Oliver. Lancet, 1891, ii., p. 530. Lead poisoning, London, 1891.
Virchow. Berl. klin. Woch., 1884, p. 75.
Trimborn. Centralbl. f. klin. Med., 1891, p. 44.
White and Pepper. Trans. of Amer. Assoc. of Physicians, 1901, p. 410.
McCarthy. Univ. of Pennsylvania Med. Bull., January, 1902.

V. COPPER.

Copper seldom gives rise to poisoning, and is much less frequently used in medicine than many of the other heavy metals. The soluble salts precipitate proteids from solution, and are therefore astringent when applied to the mucous membranes and to wounded surfaces. In larger quantities they are somewhat irritant and corrosive, although much less so than mercury.

Symptoms. — The copper salts have a harsh, metallic, astringent taste, and when swallowed in some quantity cause nausea, salivation and vomiting. The most of the salt is thus removed, and no further symptoms are observed. Large quantities, however, induce corrosion

of the walls of the stomach and intestine, and give rise to violent vomiting and purging, the copper giving a blue or green color to the vomited matter and the stools, and blood appearing in them later from the corrosion of the mucous membrane. Violent pain in the abdomen is complained of, and the usual symptoms of acute corrosive poisoning may follow — collapse, with weak pulse and respiration, headache, giddiness, unconsciousness, delirium, coma, convulsions and paralysis. These may prove fatal in a few hours, but more frequently the patient lives for several days to eventually sink from exhaustion.

The nausea, vomiting and purging of acute copper poisoning are due to the local effect on the mucous membranes of the stomach and intestine. In fact, although some copper is absorbed in these cases, there is no reason to suppose that any of the acute symptoms are due to it, for they are all induced by other poisons which act only as gastro-intestinal irritants.

It is still disputed whether **chronic copper poisoning** occurs in man. The question is of great hygienic interest, because copper is used very often to give color to preserved vegetables, such as peas, is added to flour to improve the bread, and may enter into the food from the use of copper cooking vessels, and in a variety of other ways. In copper and brass workers, gastro-intestinal catarrh, or colic and diarrhœa, occur occasionally and are ascribed to the copper swallowed in the course of their occupation. The dust inhaled may similarly cause laryngeal irritation and bronchitis. The skin and hair have often a greenish tint, and a green line on the teeth, just where they enter the gums, is known as the copper line ; but it is believed that these are due largely to the copper dust deposited on the skin, hair and teeth, and not to the excretion of the metal. Local paralysis, anæmia, tremor, emaciation and cutaneous eruptions are said to have followed these symptoms in some cases, and have been held to indicate that copper is poisonous after absorption, but it may fairly be doubted whether these symptoms are really due to the copper or to the lead, arsenic and other poisons often associated with it. It is certain that only a very small proportion of workers suffer from any symptoms whatever, and that the great majority enjoy excellent health. Furthermore, copper has been taken in the form of the metal, or of its soluble salts for prolonged periods without any symptoms being elicited except those of slight intestinal catarrh and some nausea. Animals have been fed with food containing large doses of copper for many months, apparently without any symptoms of poisoning, and copper is found so regularly in the tissues of man and animals that it may be regarded as a normal constituent, although its function is altogether unknown and it may be merely stored up on its way to excretion. Of course it is possible that there exists in certain persons an idiosyncrasy for copper, and that these suffer from the ingestion of quantities which are harmless in others. But until the symptoms have been more definitely determined, and have been shown not to arise from the other poisons associated with copper, it is impossible to consider this form of intoxication as satisfactorily established, and there is no reason to suppose that poisoning can be induced by small quantities of copper such as are contained in preserved vegetables or in food cooked in copper vessels.

In animals the general action may be elicited by the injection of copper into the blood or subcutaneously. The ordinary salts are inadmissible by the former method, as they precipitate the proteids of the blood and cause embolism, and double salts, such as the tartrate of copper and sodium, or proteid compounds, such as the albuminate dissolved by means of alkalies, have therefore been used. A special form of proteid combination has been formed in the same way as artificial ferratin, and is found to act more slowly than ordinary salts. In the frog, copper induces great weakness and eventually complete paralysis of the spontaneous movements and of the heart.

Harnack attributed this to direct action on the muscle, but later observers have found that the central nervous system is primarily affected, and that the muscles retain their irritability after complete paralysis of the spinal cord. There is, however, a direct action on the muscles also, for they lose their irritability very soon after death, and even before the spontaneous movements have ceased, the contraction of the muscles on direct stimulation being much weaker than usual. Very often fibrillary contractions are observed early in the frog, but it is unknown whether these are of central or of peripheral origin. The heart is somewhat accelerated at first by very small quantities, but later becomes slow and weak, and finally ceases in diastole before the skeletal muscles are paralyzed; the changes in the heart are due to direct action on the muscle.

In mammals the intravenous injection of copper does not cause vomiting, according to most authors, thus proving that the emetic action is due to the irritation of the stomach, and not to any action on the medulla. When large quantities are injected, the locomotion soon becomes slow, clumsy and weak, and later, complete paralysis of the spontaneous movements follows. The heart and respiration seem equally involved, but the respiration ceases somewhat earlier than the heart. The blood-pressure rises slightly after the intravenous injection of copper, but afterwards falls, partly on account of the weakness of the heart, and partly from failure of the vaso-motor nerves to maintain the contraction of the blood vessels. When an animal survives longer, violent, sometimes bloody, diarrhœa is generally induced by copper, as by most of the other heavy metals. The animals lose flesh rapidly, and refuse food, and the urine often contains albumin, and according to some authors, hæmoglobin and blood. In the rabbit some icterus and anæmia is said to occur from the destruction of the red blood cells, and fatty degeneration of the liver, kidney, and heart have been observed. Others have found ecchymoses and congestion along the intestine and in the kidney to be the chief lesions. Similar results are obtained in rabbits when copper is given by the mouth, as this animal is incapable of rejecting the poison by vomiting. In the dog, on the other hand, poisonous doses seem to be removed by vomiting when they are given by the mouth; it is possible, however, that animals may show symptoms of poisoning from the prolonged administration by the mouth of quantities just too small to cause vomiting, and in fact a form of chronic poisoning in animals is described by Baum and Seeliger.

Copper is certainly absorbed from the stomach and intestine, for large quantities have been found in animals fed on it for some time. Baum and Seeliger state that a very large proportion of the poison is absorbed when small doses are given, but the proportion lessens as the dose is increased. It also passes into the blood from other mucous surfaces and from wounds. It is said to have a strong affinity for hæmoglobin, and to form with it a compound which Kobert has named cuprohæmol, and which is stated to be formed very rapidly when copper is injected into the blood, the metal leaving the serum and attaching itself to the corpuscles at once. The copper absorbed from the intestine and stomach is lodged chiefly in the liver, less in the spleen, kidney and thyroid. It is excreted in the bile, urine and saliva, in the intestinal secretions, and in traces in the milk, and is said to pass from the mother to the fœtus in utero. Copper is found in small quantities in these organs and secretions in man and in animals that have not been treated with it, but in much larger amount after prolonged administration. Taken by the mouth, it fails to cause gen-

eral poisoning, because it is slowly absorbed, and also because what is absorbed is withdrawn from the blood by the liver.

Copper is found as a normal constituent of the blood in many of the invertebrates, in which it performs the same function as the iron of the hæmoglobin in the vertebrates. It has been detected in one of the pigments of birds' feathers, and, as has been stated, is so frequently found in the tissues of mammals, both wild and domesticated, that it may be regarded as a normal constituent. Oysters and other animals take it up in large quantities when they live in water rich in copper, and apparently are not injured by it. Many of the higher plants, notably the grape vine, are said to be remarkably improved by the sprinkling of copper on their leaves, and this is not only from the destruction of parasites, for vines free from any disease show a more luxuriant foliage, and bear more and larger fruit than other healthy plants, which are not treated with it. On the other hand, copper is a deadly poison to several of the lower plants. Thus traces of copper added to the water in which they live, destroy some of the simpler algæ, and Naegeli asserts that one part of copper in one thousand million parts of water is sufficient to kill these plants. The parasites of the grape vine, potato, apple, and other plants are destroyed by spraying the plants with copper, and yeast ceases growing in a 0.02 per cent. solution, while penicillium seems to be almost immune to its action. Locke found that the traces of copper contained in water distilled in copper vessels was sufficient to destroy tubifex (one of the annelid worms) and tadpoles, while Bucholtz states that the development of bacteria is stopped by a solution of copper sulphate under one per cent. in strength. Copper thus seems to have a very powerful poisonous action on certain living forms and to be harmless to others, and the subject deserves further investigation. It is possible that it may prove to act prejudicially to some human parasites, and it is certainly less dangerous to man than many other remedies used as parasiticides and disinfectants.

Preparations.

Cupri Sulphas (U. S. P., B. P.) ($CuSO_4 + 5H_2O$), large, transparent, deep blue crystals, without odor, but with a nauseous, metallic taste, soluble in water, scarcely so in alcohol. Dose, as an astringent, 0.015–0.1 G. (¼–2 grs.); as an emetic, 0.3–0.6 G. (5–10 grs.).

Therapeutic Uses.—Copper sulphate is used internally only as an emetic, and for this purpose ought to be given in about one per cent. solution. It acts promptly, and does not leave so much depression and nausea as other metallic emetics, and for this reason is unsuitable as an expectorant. In phosphorus poisoning it is especially valuable, as in addition to causing evacuation of the stomach, the metal is deposited on the particles of phosphorus and prevents their absorption.

Externally copper sulphate is used as an astringent injection in gonorrhœa, and occasionally as a lotion in ulcers and wounds; for this purpose it is employed in one per cent. solution. The solid crystals are sometimes used to touch exuberant granulations for their astringent and corrosive effect.

The chloride of copper is a much more irritant and antiseptic substance than the sulphate. The albuminate of copper, cupratin, which is formed from the albuminate by heating with alkalies, and cuprohæmol, a combination of copper and hæmoglobin, have been suggested recently as non-irritant preparations suitable for internal use, but no condition is known at present in which the general action of copper is of benefit.

In cases of **Poisoning** with copper salts, the stomach generally rejects the metal by vomiting, and no emetic is required. Non-corrosive compounds may be formed by giving milk, egg, or other forms of albumin, tannic acid, magnesia, or ferrocyanide of potassium. Morphine may be required for the pain, ice to stop the vomiting.

Bibliography.

Harnack. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iii., p. 44; xvii., p. 145.
Curci. Virchow-Hirsch Jahresber., 1887, i., p. 387.
Klemptner. Ibid., 1895, i., p. 346.
Lehmann. Arch. f. Hygiene, xxiv., p. 1; xxvii., p. 1; xxxi., p. 279.
Filehne. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1895, p. 297; 1896, p. 145.
Tschirch. Das Kupfer, vom Standpunkte der gericht. Chemie, Toxikologie u. Hygiene, Stuttgart, 1893.
Schwartz. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxv., p. 437.
Kobert. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1895, p. 5.
De Moor. Arch. de Pharmacodynamique, i., p. 81.
Baum u. Seeliger. Centralbl. f. Physiol., 1896, pp. 714, 752; 1897, p. 797; 1898, p. 108.
Trolldenier. Ibid., 1898, p. 108.
Locke. Journ. of Phys., xviii., p. 319.
Ringer. Ibid., xxii., p. xiv.
Wolf. Ztschr. f. physiolog. Chem., xxvi., p. 442.
Murray. British Med. Journ., 1900, i., p. 1334.
Lewin. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1900, p. 689.
Kurth. Medical Record, 1900, Nov. 10th.
Richter. Centralbl. f. Bacteriologie (ii.), vii., p. 417.

VI. ZINC.

The effects of zinc resemble those of copper so closely that they need only brief mention. Like copper, the soluble salts form insoluble albuminates and therefore possess an astringent action, or in large quantities act as irritants and corrosives. The sulphate is the soluble salt most commonly used in medicine, but the chloride has frequently given rise to corrosive poisoning, and is therefore of greater importance than the chloride of copper. The sulphate is much less irritant and more astringent than the chloride, which is used only as a caustic and disinfectant.

Symptoms. — The sulphate of zinc has a harsh, metallic taste, and in small doses causes nausea and vomiting, in larger quantities violent vomiting and purging, pain in the abdomen and collapse; these symptoms are due to the local action on the stomach and intestine. The insoluble zinc oxide and carbonate are less liable to cause acute irritation than the sulphate, but their prolonged ingestion has given rise to dyspepsia and constipation or diarrhœa in some cases. The continued administration of zinc salts has no effects in man, except those of disordered digestion and constipation, and Lehmann could detect no effects in the dog, after the administration of 155 G. of the carbonate in the course of 335 days, although a considerable amount of the metal had been absorbed.

In workers in zinc, a curious condition known as brassfounders' ague, is occasionally met with. It is ushered in by a sense of general discomfort and weakness, with more or less pain in different parts of

the body; later prolonged rigors and shivering are followed by a rapid acceleration of the pulse, coughing and soreness of the chest, and headache. These symptoms give place to profuse perspiration, and the patient sinks into a sleep from which he awakes in ordinary health. The attacks may return frequently, and seem to be due to the fumes of zinc which escape in the process of casting. A number of obscure nervous conditions have also been described as arising from zinc in workmen in brass factories and bronze works, but they seem to be extremely rare, and it is questionable whether they are really due to the zinc or to its impurities, such as arsenic and lead.

Action.—The general action of zinc can therefore be observed only when it is injected intravenously, or hypodermically. For this purpose, the double salts alone can be used, as the ordinary salts precipitate the proteids of the blood when injected into a vein, and cause acute irritation when applied subcutaneously. In the frog, zinc is found to cause weakness and lessened reflex excitability, and the heart becomes weak and inefficient, irregular and slow, and eventually ceases in diastole. The action seems to be exercised chiefly on the central nervous system and the heart, although the voluntary muscles respond more weakly to the electric current in life, and lose their irritability entirely soon after death. Meihuizen inferred from his experiments that the zinc salts reduce the reflex irritability markedly in the frog, but he used an irritant salt and this invalidates his results.

In mammals the intravenous injection of zinc causes vomiting and diarrhœa, weakness, tremor, and paralysis of the extremities; and the stomach, intestine and heart contain small hæmorrhages. The blood-pressure seems to be but little affected, until just before death, but the pulse is slowed. Helpup found that the subcutaneous injection of zinc salts induced congestion and parenchymatous inflammation of the kidney.

Zinc seems therefore to depress the central nervous system, and to a less extent the heart and voluntary muscles, and to cause irritation and congestion of the mucous membrane of the stomach and intestine, and inflammation of the kidney. The fact that vomiting occurs from the intravenous injection of zinc salts might seem to indicate that it acts directly on the medullary centre for vomiting, but may more probably be explained by the metal inducing inflammation in the stomach. These effects occur, however, only when the metal is administered by way of the blood vessels or subcutaneously.

Zinc has, according to Grahe and Kobert, a special affinity for the hæmoglobin, with which it forms a compound (zinc-hæmol), but its administration has no effect on the formation of hæmoglobin.

Lehmann found that of the zinc absorbed from the stomach and intestine, most is contained in the liver and bile, less in the spleen, kidney, thyroid and pancreas, and very little in the other tissues. Zinc is excreted by the stomach and intestinal walls, and in much smaller amounts in the bile and urine.

Locke found zinc to possess a poisonous action on the tadpole and tubifex when present in traces in the water in which they lived, but this effect was weaker than that of copper. Richter states that zinc is less poisonous to fungi than copper, and very weak solutions seem to promote their growth. The zinc salts seem to be in general much weaker than those of copper, which they resemble closely in other respects.

Preparations.

Zincum (U. S. P.), metallic zinc, is used only to form the other preparations and as a reagent.

Zinci Sulphas (U. S. P., B. P.) ($ZnSO_4 + 7H_2O$), colorless, transparent,

odorless crystals, with a harsh, astringent, metallic taste, soluble in water, not in alcohol. 0.5–2 G. (8–30 grs.), as emetic; 0.05–0.2 G. (1–3 grs.), in epilepsy.

Zinci Oxidum (U. S. P., B. P.) (ZnO), an amorphous white powder without odor or taste, insoluble in water. 0.1–0.5 G. (2–8 grs.).

Zinci Carbonas Præcipitatus (U. S. P.), *Zinci Carbonas* (B. P.), a preparation varying somewhat in composition, but always containing some oxide, which it resembles in appearance and solubility. 0.1–0.5 G. (2–8 grs.).

Unguentum Zinci Oxidi (U. S. P.), 1 part to 4 of benzoinated lard.

Unguentum Zinci (B. P.), 15 per cent. of the oxide.

Oleatum Zinci (U. S. P.), a yellowish-white mass of the consistency of ointment.

Unguentum Zinci Oleatis (B. P.).

Zinci Chloridum (U. S. P., B. P.) ($ZnCl_2$), a white powder, or porcelain-like mass, irregular, or moulded into pencils, odorless and strongly caustic, very deliquescent, and soluble in water and alcohol.

Liquor Zinci Chloridi (U. S. P., B. P.), about 36 per cent.

Zinci Acetas (U. S. P., B. P.) ($Zn(C_2H_3O_2)_2 + 2H_2O$). 0.05–0.1 G. (1–2 grs.).

Zinci Valerianas (U. S. P., B. P.) ($Zn(C_5H_9O_2)_2 + 2H_2O$). 0.05–0.1 G.

Zinci Bromidum (U. S. P.) ($ZnBr_2$). 0.05–0.1 G.

Zinci Iodidum (U. S. P.) (ZnI_2). 0.05–0 1 G.

Zinci Phosphidum (U. S. P.) (Zn_3P_2). 0.003–0.005 G.

Zinci Sulphocarbolas (U. S. P., B. P.) ($Zn(C_6H_3SO_4)_2 + H_2O$), colorless crystals with an astringent taste, soluble in water and in alcohol. Used externally in 1 per cent. solution. (See page 422.)

Therapeutic Uses. — Zinc sulphate has been used internally as an emetic, but not so widely as the sulphate of copper, although it is equally efficient. The sulphate, the oxide and the carbonate have been advised in the treatment of various brain diseases, such as epilepsy, chorea and hysteria, in which zinc is believed to act as a sedative. Experiments on animals and on healthy persons give no reason to believe in this sedative action, and clinicians are divided as to its usefulness in these diseases, but there is some support for the treatment. The oxide and sulphate are seldom employed as astringents in diarrhœa.

Externally, the zinc preparations, with the exception of the chloride, are used as astringents, the sulphate being applied in solution, the oxide and carbonate as powders or as ointments, which most prefer to the oleate. The oxide is especially useful as an application in many skin diseases. Solutions of the sulphate are used as an eye wash ($\frac{1}{2}$ per cent.) and as an injection in gonorrhœa (1–4 per cent.). In the last case it is sometimes formed into a mixture with acetate of lead, the sulphate of lead which results being credited with some astringent action and not being washed off so readily from the diseased surface. The sulpho-carbolate is also used as a urethral injection, and the salicylate and the sulpho-iodolate of zinc have also been introduced as astringent and antiseptic applications.

The chloride of zinc differs from the other salts in being a powerful caustic, and is used as a paste or in pencil form to destroy malignant growths, or in chancres and gangrenous sores. It produces a white eschar and is said to be less liable to spread over the surface than potassium, but penetrates the epidermis with difficulty, and it is therefore advisable to destroy this with potassium or a blister before applying the caustic. It is sometimes mixed with flour or dried gypsum and water to a paste (Canquoin's paste), when a less

active caustic is desired. Its use is much more restricted at the present time than formerly, when there was greater apprehension of the minor surgical operations, but it has been recommended as a caustic and disinfectant application in inoperable cancer. In very dilute solution it has been applied as a disinfectant lotion or injection (1 in 5,000). Burnett's disinfecting solution (a somewhat stronger solution than the official liquor) is used to disinfect fæces and urinals, and the liquor of the pharmacopœia may be employed for the same purpose. It has frequently given rise to severe corrosive poisoning from being swallowed accidentally or suicidally.

The acetate of zinc acts in the same way as the sulphate and may be used for the same purpose. The valerianate and bromide have been introduced with the intention of combining the action of zinc with that of valerian or bromide in hysteria and epilepsy, but valerianic acid is entirely devoid of any action on the brain (see Valerian, page 74) and the bromide is given in too small doses to exert any influence. The iodide is used in a similar attempt to combine the astringent effects of zinc and the specific action of iodides, but is open to the same objection. The action of the phosphide is practically identical with that of phosphorus. Poisoning with zinc is treated in the same way as that with copper.

Bibliography.

Harnack. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iii., p. 53.
Bucholtz. Ibid., iv., p. 64.
Helpup. Inaug. Diss., Greifswald, 1889. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1889, p. 782.
Sacher. Arbeit. a. d. pharmak. Instit. zu Dorpat, ix., p. 88.
Grahe. Ibid., ix., p. 155.
Lehmann. Arch. f. Hygiene, xxviii., p. 291.
Mörner. Ibid., xxxiii., p. 160.
Jacobj. Arb. a. d. k. Gesundheitsamte, xv., p. 204.
Völcker. Beiträge z. klin. Chirurg., xxvii., p. 592.
Richter. Centralbl. f. Bacteriologie (II.), vii., p. 417.

VII. SILVER.

The only salt of silver used at all extensively in medicine is the nitrate, which is caustic, astringent and antiseptic. Added to solutions of proteids, it forms a heavy precipitate of albuminate, which is at first white in color but turns darker in the light as the silver is reduced, and which is soluble in the presence of chlorides. Van der Does has recently formed a soluble compound of proteid and metallic silver which was not coagulated by heat and which failed to putrefy after being kept for several weeks.

Symptoms. — In dilute solution silver is a slight irritant to the skin, and causes redness and itching only, but more concentrated solutions blister, and the solid nitrate of silver causes an eschar, which is at first white, but later turns black from the reduction of the silver in light. On the mucous membrane, dilute solutions act as astringents, but concentrated cause irritation and corrosion. The caustic action of silver does not extend so deeply as that of some other metals, such as mercury, because the penetration of the metal is limited by the membrane of silver albuminate formed. On the other hand, the silver salts are more irritant than those of lead.

Dilute solutions of silver nitrate are said to contract the vessels when they are applied locally, and this may be correct under some

circumstances, but if irritation is induced, the vessels are certainly dilated. The astringent action is to be attributed not to any action on the vessels, but to the formation of a protective layer of coagulated albumin.

In acute silver poisoning from the ingestion of silver nitrate, the symptoms are those of severe gastro-intestinal irritation and corrosion. Burning pain is felt in the throat and stomach, and is followed by nausea and vomiting and often by purging. The mouth is covered with a grayish-white membrane, which turns darker after a time, but this is absent if the poison be swallowed in the solid form, as has happened sometimes. The corrosion of the stomach and intestine causes collapse, with weak pulse, shallow respiration and pinched features, and this may be followed by coma, convulsions and death. The throat, stomach and intestine presented the ordinary appearances of acute corrosive poisoning in one case in which an autopsy was performed.

Action. — The symptoms of acute poisoning are due to the local action, and present no features suggesting that silver is absorbed and causes general poisoning. The action of silver after absorption has, however, been investigated in animals poisoned by subcutaneous or intravenous injection. The nitrate, owing to its coagulating properties, is unsuitable for this purpose, and the hyposulphite of sodium and silver, or a solution of the albuminate has therefore been used. In mammals the central nervous system is the chief seat of action, especially the medulla oblongata, which seems to be stimulated at first, for the blood-pressure rises and the pulse is somewhat slow, owing to increased activity of the vaso-motor and vagus centres. Later the blood-pressure falls, and the respiration becomes slow and labored, and eventually ceases from paralysis of the centre. Gaethgens asserts that the diaphragm, and eventually the other striated muscles are paralyzed soon afterwards. The heart is comparatively little affected, and often continues to beat some time after the respiration has stopped. In less acute poisoning, when the animal survives the injection for several hours or days, a marked increase in the bronchial secretion, culminating in œdema of the lungs, has been noted ; no satisfactory explanation of this has been advanced, but it does not seem due to cardiac inefficiency and occurs also when the excised lung is perfused with blood containing silver. Congestion and ecchymoses are found in the stomach and intestine, and some authors mention ulceration of these mucous membranes. Cohnstein found that small quantities of silver salts injected intravenously cause some increase in the urine for a time, but that larger quantities are followed by albuminuria.

In cold-blooded animals and in invertebrates, silver preparations are said to cause violent convulsions, resembling those of strychnine and followed by general paralysis. The heart is, according to one investigator, little affected, according to another, it is found in diastole.

The general action of silver is thus apparently directed first of all against the medulla oblongata, the rest of the central nervous system being affected to a less extent. The mucous membrane of the stomach and intestine is acted on, as by most heavy metals, and the kidney is also liable to irritation. Œdema of the lungs occurs frequently.

Chronic Poisoning. — None of these effects have been observed in man, and in fact there is no evidence that in acute poisoning any considerable amount of the metal is absorbed from the stomach and intestine. When silver is given for prolonged periods, however, some is absorbed, although probably only a minute fraction of that actually

swallowed. In the stomach small quantities of soluble silver salts are probably changed to the chloride and albuminate, but the form in which the metal is absorbed has proved a subject of dispute. It seems to be taken up in solution, for none of it is found in the epithelium of the stomach and intestine, and some of it may circulate in the blood in a soluble form for a short time. But the greater proportion is very soon thrown down in the form of minute granules, which were formerly believed to be metallic silver, but which have more recently been said to be one of its organic compounds. The formation of this pigment is quite different from the reduction of silver in sunlight, for it occurs in complete darkness. The change apparently takes place in the cells, especially in the leucocytes, but the granules are afterwards extruded into the surrounding fluid. They are found in the connective tissues of the body chiefly, and when present in quantity, give a dark color to the skin and mucous membranes. This pigmentation (Argyria) was much commoner formerly than at the present time, but several cases have been described quite recently. The chief source of chronic silver poisoning or argyria was formerly the treatment of epilepsy with the nitrate. It has also arisen locally from the prolonged use of silver nitrate solution as an application to the eye, throat, and vagina, and occurs in the workers in artificial pearls, who use silver as a pigment.

The deposit of the silver in the skin gives it a darker color, varying from light gray in mild cases to a darker slate shade after more prolonged use. It is generally distributed all over the body, but in some cases has been especially marked in the face, and it is said to begin in the gums, where it causes a dark, slate-colored line somewhat resembling the lead line. In the skin it is found in the corium, not in the epidermis. The deposit and the dark color extend throughout the alimentary canal and the respiratory passages, the granules occurring in the connective tissue, particularly in the intestinal villi, and not in the epithelium. The glomeruli of the kidneys, the connective tissue of the liver and spleen, the choroid plexus, the tunica intima of the aorta, the serous membranes, and the mesenteric lymph glands contain more of the deposit than other organs. The pigmentation is not accompanied by any other symptom of importance, and the victims live to old age without suffering from the chronic poisoning in any way, except from the annoyance induced by the change in color.

Local argyria is sometimes met with from the prolonged application of silver nitrate to the eye or throat, when it tints the eyelids and mouth, and from working with silver, when the hands are permanently blackened from the granules being forced into the skin.

Argyria is quite incurable, although many attempts have been made to remove it. Iodide has been tried, for the most part without effect, and blistering is equally valueless as the pigment lies deeper than the epidermis. The only known solvent of the granules is cyanide of potassium, and of course this is inadmissible owing to its powerful poisonous action.

Argyria has been induced in animals by prolonged treatment with small doses of silver salts, though the pigment is not found in the skin in them, but in the duodenal mucous membrane and the mesentery attached to it, the mesenteric lymph glands, the spleen and liver. A still more limited area of argyria has been caused in animals recently by administering for a few weeks the glycyrrhizinate of silver. It is not unlikely that more prolonged administration would lead to other organs and perhaps the skin being involved. A deposit of silver pigment has also been induced in animals by a single injection of a non-irritant preparation into a vein, or into the subcutaneous tissue. Here the silver is found at first in the liver capillaries, the glomeruli of the kidney, the intestine and the bone marrow, but is afterwards taken up by the leucocytes, and carried to all the organs of the body. Various symptoms of chronic poisoning quite apart from argyria have been described in animals from prolonged treatment with silver, but it would seem that they were due not to the direct action of the drug, but to the continued irritation of the stomach and intestine, as they were entirely absent when less irritant preparations and greater care in administration were used.

In man it seems likely that most of the silver passes through the alimentary canal unabsorbed, and that the small proportion taken up by the tissues is precipitated and remains embedded in them indefinitely, for the pigmentation remains unchanging in its depth, and there is therefore no reason to suppose that any of the silver is eliminated.

In animals, however, some of the silver injected hypodermically or intravenously is excreted by the epithelium of the alimentary canal. None appears in the urine. In the frog, silver injected hypodermically is all excreted by the epithelium of the tongue, is swallowed, and passes out in the fæces. No other poison is known to be eliminated by this channel.

Silver nitrate is a powerful antiseptic, partly from its action in coagulating the proteids of the micro-organisms, partly from the specific effects of the metal, as is shown by the fact that the albuminate of silver is also an active disinfectant.

Preparations.

Argenti Nitras (U. S. P., B. P.) ($AgNO_3$), colorless crystals which become gray or grayish-black on exposure to light in the presence of organic matter, with a bitter, caustic, strongly metallic taste, very soluble in water, less so in alcohol. 0.01–0.03 G. ($\frac{1}{6}$–$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.) in pills made up with kaolin.

Argenti Nitras Fusus (U. S. P.), moulded nitrate of silver, lunar caustic—a white, hard solid, generally cast in the form of pencils.

Argenti Nitras Induratus (B. P.), toughened caustic, a silver nitrate fused with 5 per cent. of nitrate of potassium.

Argenti Nitras Dilutus (U. S. P.), *Argenti Nitras Mitigatus* (B. P.), mitigated caustic, consists of one part of nitrate of silver and two parts of nitrate of potassium fused into rods like lunar caustic.

Argenti Iodidum (U. S. P.) (AgI), a heavy, amorphous, yellow powder, insoluble in water or alcohol.

Argenti Oxidum (U. S. P., B. P.) (Ag_2O), a heavy, brownish-black powder,

odorless and having a metallic taste, very little soluble in water. 0.03–0.1 G. (½–2 grs.).

The silver preparations ought to be kept in dark amber-colored bottles, in order to prevent their being reduced by light, and ought not to be prescribed with organic matter, which rapidly reduces them.

Therapeutic Uses. — Silver nitrate pills have been recommended in some forms of dyspepsia and vomiting, and in gastric ulcer, and have also been used as astringents in diarrhœa, but generally with little benefit. A very ancient use of silver oxide, and more recently of the nitrate, is that in the treatment of epilepsy, chorea, tabes and various other nervous diseases. This dates from the Arabs, and is said to have originated from the astrological medicine of that period, which taught that nervous diseases were especially affected by the phases of the moon, which was associated with silver in their system (hence, lunar caustic, lunacy). Clinical experience shows that silver is of no benefit in epilepsy, and, in fact, it is improbable that silver reaches the central nervous system in any other form than inert granules. This use of silver very often gave rise to argyria without benefiting the patient, about 15–30 G. proving sufficient to cause marked pigmentation.

Externally, silver nitrate is employed very extensively, the sticks of lunar caustic being used to destroy warts and other small skin growths, to arrest capillary hæmorrhage, to destroy the false membranes of diphtheria, and for other similar purposes. Where a milder caustic is required the mitigated caustic is used instead of ordinary lunar caustic. A solution of 2–5 per cent. may also be applied to cauterize chancres and indolent ulcers, and one of 1–2 per cent. may be painted on mucous membranes as an irritant antiseptic. A solution of common salt is then used to wash the part, in order to remove the excess of silver. In ophthalmia, especially of the infectious form, a solution of 1–2 per cent. is extremely valuable, and, in fact, a routine treatment in some lying-in hospitals is to wash the eyes of the infant with this solution immediately after birth as a prophylactic measure to prevent ophthalmia. A solution of this strength is only to be used by the surgeon himself, and the eye should be washed out with a salt solution at once. A more dilute solution (¼–½ per cent.) may be used as a lotion for the eye more frequently, may be applied to extensively denuded surfaces, as burns, and is often thrown into the rectum in chronic dysentery. In gonorrhœa the nitrate of silver, one part in 500–2000 of water, is used as an injection, and is found to have great value, destroying the gonococci and promoting healing. Very much stronger solutions (up to 5 per cent.) have been used to abort the disease in its onset, but cause great pain.

The precipitation of silver nitrate by proteids and chlorides confines its disinfectant action to narrower limits than those of some other antiseptics, and this has led to the introduction of a number of other compounds, which are less easily dissociated and accordingly less liable to be thrown out of solution. Thus *argentamine*, a ten per cent. solution of silver phosphate in ten per cent. ethylendiamine solution, has been used in gonorrhœa diluted to 1:1,000–5,000, in the eye in five per cent. solution. It penetrates better

than silver nitrate, but the alkaline diamine renders it somewhat irritating. Another recent product is *argonin*, which is a combination of casein and silver, is soluble in water, and, like argentamine, is not precipitated by chlorides nor by albumin ; it is a somewhat weaker antiseptic than the nitrate and argentamine. The lactate of silver, *actol*, and the citrate, *itrol*, have also been used as antiseptics. Actol is soluble in water, and resembles the nitrate in coagulating proteids, while itrol, on the other hand, is practically insoluble (1 to 3,800 water). The former is used in solution ($\frac{1}{5}$ per cent.), the latter as a disinfecting powder in wounds. Actol and argonin have been shown to have very considerable disinfectant power in test-tube cultures, and actol lessens the putrefaction in the bowel and constipates to some extent, but argonin has no effect on the intestinal microbes. *Protargol* and *largin*, proteid compounds of silver, have been introduced lately, and still more recently Credé has advised the use of *soluble metallic silver* in water or in ointment. These have all been reported on favorably as antiseptics in urethral infection and similar conditions, but the earlier claims of their advocates that they were of value as antiseptics in constitutional diseases have proved to have no more foundation than the similar statements in regard to other antiseptics. (See pages 393–396.)

Silver preparations ought not to be used for long periods, as argyria has been induced in three months and after the use of 15–30 G. ($\frac{1}{2}$–1 oz.) of the nitrate.

In cases of poisoning with silver nitrate, eggs, milk and, above all, common salt solution are indicated to form insoluble compounds. In argyria no improvement can be expected, though the iodide of potassium may be tried.

Bibliography.

Bogoslowsky. Virchow's Arch., xlvi., p. 409.
Huet. Journ. de l'Anat. et Physiol., 1873, p. 408.
Rouget. Arch. de phys., 1873, p. 333.
Jacobi. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., viii., p. 198.
Rozsahegyi. Ibid., ix., p. 289.
Cohnstein. Ibid., xxx., p. 129.
Loew. Pflüger's Arch., xxxiv., pp. 596, 602.
Schubert. Zts. f. Heilkunde, xvi., p. 341.
Samojloff. Arb. a. d. pharm. Instit. Dorpat, ix., p. 27.
Gerschun. Ibid., x., p. 154.
Tschisch. Virchow's Arch., c., p. 147.
Credé. Arch. f. klin. Chirurg., lv., p. 861.
Mosse. Zts. f. phys. Chem., xxiii., p. 160.
Liebrecht. Therap. Monatsheft, 1895, p. 306.
Van der Does. Zts. f. phys. Chem., xxiv., p. 351.
Athanasiu. Journ. de Physiol., iii., p. 163.

VIII. BISMUTH.

The insoluble salts of bismuth, in especial the subnitrate, have long enjoyed a reputation in the treatment of gastric and intestinal irritation, and have more recently been advised in surgery as applications to granulating wounds.

Symptoms. — Taken in therapeutic doses, the subnitrate induces no marked symptoms, even after prolonged use. It has little or no taste, and passes through the stomach and intestine for the most part unabsorbed. It is said to increase the peristalsis of the stomach and the secretion of mucus, but it may be questioned whether it has more effect here than any other heavy powder. In the intestine it is said to have some effect in increasing the leucocytes of the blood, and often causes

some constipation. It gives the stools a black color, which is generally believed to be due to the formation of the sulphide of bismuth, but which Quincke ascribes to the reduction of the subnitrate in the intestine.

Very little of the bismuth swallowed is absorbed, but several authorities have found traces in the urine of patients treated with it internally so that some evidently passes into the blood under certain unknown conditions. Enormous quantities have been administered internally without any symptoms of poisoning being elicited, but in one or two cases some stomatitis has been remarked, while in other instances large concretions of bismuth have been found in the stomach and bowel. Some of the older writers describe serious poisoning from bismuth, but this was not due to the drug itself, but to the lead, arsenic, or antimony with which it was contaminated.[1] As long as bismuth was given only internally, no serious symptoms arose from its action, and in fact any effects whatever beyond slight constipation were extremely rare. But since its use was extended to wounded surfaces, several cases of serious intoxication have occurred. The symptoms are salivation, swelling of the gums, tongue, and throat, pain and difficulty in swallowing, black spots in the mouth and throat, and gangrene of the soft palate and other parts of the mucous membrane of the mouth. Vomiting, diarrhœa and albuminuria follow, but the patients generally recover when the dressing is removed from the wound. In these cases much less bismuth is applied than is often prescribed for internal use, so that it would appear that it is absorbed more rapidly from granulating surfaces than from the mucous membranes, or that what is absorbed from the stomach and intestine is prevented by the liver from reaching the general circulation.

Action. — The general action of bismuth has been studied in animals by the subcutaneous or intravenous injection of the double salts, such as the tartrate of bismuth and sodium. In frogs, the symptoms are those of stimulation of the spinal cord and medulla oblongata, followed by depression and paralysis. The stimulation induces tonic convulsions, which are separated by periods in which the frog is at first apparently normal, but in which symptoms of depression and paralysis appear later. The peripheral nerves and muscles and the heart are little affected.

In mammals also, large doses act chiefly on the central nervous system. The respiration is accelerated, the heart slowed, and violent clonic and tonic convulsions follow at short intervals, during which the movements are weak and incoördinated. Towards the fatal issue of the injection, the heart often ceases entirely for some time, and then regains its former rhythm quite suddenly. The blood-pressure falls, partly owing to the weakness of the heart, partly from depression of the vasomotor centre. In some animals, the respiration ceases before the heart;

[1] A symptom formerly noted in cases treated with bismuth was an extremely disagreeable odor in the breath, but this has been shown to be due to the presence of tellurium in the preparation.

in others, the sequence is reversed. The heart seems to be affected directly, for division or paralysis of the vagus nerves does not alter the effects.

Smaller quantities injected intravenously or subcutaneously into mammals induce a more chronic form of intoxication, which resembles that seen in man. The earliest symptoms are loss of appetite, vomiting and diarrhœa, salivation and stomatitis with ulceration of the gums, tongue and buccal mucous membrane. Weakness, slowness and incoordination of the movements follow, and except in very chronic cases, tetanic convulsions occur at intervals. The urine contains albumin and casts. The weakness gradually deepens into complete paralysis, and the animal dies, generally without convulsions. The heart seems little affected in the chronic intoxication, but the blood-pressure is low from the intestinal irritation and general collapse.

Besides the stomatitis and ulceration of the mouth, the post-mortem appearances in chronic bismuth poisoning in animals consist in some congestion, inflammation and necrosis in the kidney, and an intense black coloration of the cæcum and the upper part of the large intestine. This pigmentation is limited very exactly by the ileocæcal valve, and extends throughout the thickness of the bowel wall. The mucous membrane may also be necrosed in places, and ulcers and hæmorrhages are met with in it. The black coloration is due to a deposit of bismuth sulphide on the mucous membrane, and in the capillary vessels and lymph spaces. Meyer and Steinfeld found that bismuth is excreted all along the alimentary canal, but in larger quantities in the cæcum and large intestine than elsewhere, and they ascribe the ulceration to the precipitation of the sulphide in the vessels and the consequent arrest of the blood-current. When sulphide solution was artificially introduced into the stomach and small intestine, bismuth caused necrosis and ulceration here also, so that there is considerable support for this view.

They found bismuth to be stored in considerable quantity in the liver, and to be excreted by the urine, stomach and intestine, but especially by the cæcum and large bowel. It has been found in the saliva by other observers, and perhaps in traces in the milk, although the last is not satisfactorily established.

The action of bismuth in acute poisoning in animal experiments seems therefore to be exerted on the medulla and spinal cord, to a less extent on the heart, while in chronic intoxication the organs affected are those by which it is excreted — the mouth, kidney, large intestine and cæcum.

Preparations.

Bismuthi Subnitras (U. S. P., B. P.), white bismuth, Magisterium Bismuthi, bismuth oxynitrate, a heavy white powder odorless and almost tasteless, insoluble in water or alcohol but soluble in nitric or hydrochloric acid. It consists of a mixture of the hydrate and subnitrate of bismuth in varying proportions.[1] 0.3–2 G. (5–30 grs.), in powder or suspended in water.

[1] The B. P. defines this preparation as bismuthoxynitrate ($BiONO_3H_2O$), but some hydrate is almost invariably present.

Bismuthi Subcarbonas (U. S. P.), *Bismuthi Carbonas* (B. P.), bismuth oxycarbonate, a white or pale yellowish-white powder, varying in composition, odorless, tasteless, insoluble in water or alcohol. 0.3–2 G. (5–30 grs.) in powder.

Trochiscus Bismuthi Compositus (B. P.); each contains 2 grs. of bismuth oxycarbonate along with the carbonates of magnesia and of lime.

Bismuthi Salicylas (B. P.), the salicylate or oxysalicylate of bismuth, is a white, amorphous powder, insoluble in water. 5–20 grs.

Bismuthi Oxidum (B. P.) (Bi_2O_3), a slightly brownish-yellow powder, insoluble in water. 5–20 grs.

Bismuthi Citras (U. S. P.) ($BiC_6H_5O_7$), a white powder, odorless, tasteless, insoluble in water or alcohol, used only to form

Bismuthi et Ammonii Citras (U. S. P.), small, shining, translucent scales, odorless, but with a slightly acidulous and metallic taste, and becoming opaque on exposure to the air, very soluble in water, less so in alcohol. 0.1–0.3 G. (2–5 grs.).

Liquor Bismuthi et Ammonii Citratis (B. P.) contains the equivalent of 5 per cent. of bismuth oxide. ½–1 fl. dr.

Therapeutic Uses. — Bismuth has been used chiefly in gastric catarrh and ulcer, and has often been looked upon as a specific in the last affection, though it acts simply as a protective powder with perhaps some astringent properties. It has been found that when swallowed it is at first deposited in the most dependent part of the stomach, but is later distributed evenly over the surface, and forms a continuous sheet over any ulceration, which it thus protects from mechanical injury from the food, and also from the chemical action of the gastric juice. The subnitrate is the only one of the official preparations largely used for this purpose, and is generally administered in quantities of 2–3 G. (30–45 grs.) per day in powder. Recently the use of much larger quantities (10–15 G., 150–250 grs., per day) has been recommended. Bismuth has also been used in diarrhœa for its astringent and protective action on the intestine, which is again due to its being deposited on the mucous membrane and acting as a mechanical coating over irritated surfaces.

The subnitrate has been advised in surgery as an antiseptic, astringent powder to replace iodoform. It is true that it is devoid of the disagreeable odor of the latter, but it is not a harmless remedy, as was at first supposed, for several cases of bismuth poisoning have been recorded from its surgical use. Like iodoform, its value depends not so much on its germicidal action as on its absorption of the fluids of the wound, which renders the surface less suitable for the growth of bacteria. The therapeutic uses of the bismuth preparations then are largely due to their insolubility. The subnitrate is generally used, the carbonate less frequently, while the soluble double citrate is quite superfluous.

Several new compounds of bismuth have been introduced into therapeutics of late years, chiefly with the intention of combining the astringent properties of bismuth with the antiseptic action of benzol preparations. Among these may be mentioned the *salicylate* (B. P.) and *benzoate*, which have been used as intestinal antiseptics and astringents. (0.2–0.3 G. (3–5 grs.), in powder.) Others are *dermatol* (gallate of bismuth, $C_6H_2(OH)_3COOBiO$), *airol*

(bismuth oxyiodide gallate), *thioform* (bismuth dithio-salicylate), *bismuth phenolate*, *cresolate*, *orphol* (β-naphtolate), *xeroform* (tribromphenolate), *tannate*, *sulphocarbolate*, *dermol* (chrysophenate), *eudoxin* (tetraiodo-phenolphtaleinate). These have been used chiefly as cutaneous applications in various forms of skin disease, in which an astringent and protective powder is indicated, in burns and ulcers, in some ophthalmic conditions, and as dusting powders after operations. Several of them, such as dermatol (0.1–0.2 G.), and the phenolate, cresolate, naphtolate, and tribromphenolate (1–4 G.), have been advised as intestinal antiseptics and astringents, and the last four have been shown to be decomposed in the intestine into bismuth and the corresponding aromatic antiseptic. Stomatitis and other symptoms have been observed occasionally from the external application of these new compounds, but they seem less dangerous than the subnitrate in ordinary surgical use. The phenol, cresol, and other similar substances freed by the decomposition of these new compounds, might also give rise to symptoms of poisoning, if large quantities were rapidly formed in the intestine. Dermatol has no effect on the double sulphates of the urine, so that it apparently does not act as a germicide, but merely as an astringent protective in the intestine.

Bibliography.

Meyer u. Steinfeld. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xx., p. 40.
Dalché and Villejean. Arch. gen. de Med., 1887, ii., p. 129.
Jasenski. Arch. des Sciences biolog., ii., p. 247.
Surveyor and Harley. Brit. Med. Jour., 1895, ii., p. 1483.
Fleiner. Centralbl. f. klin. Med., 1893, p. 69 (supplement).
Matthes. Centralbl. f. inn. Med., 1894, p. 2.
Crämer. Münch. med. Woch., 1896, p. 587.
Heinz. Berl. klin. Woch., 1892, p. 1190.
Kocher. Volkmann's Klinische Vorträge, No. 224.
Petersen. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1883, p. 365.
Savelieff. Therapeut. Monatsh., 1894, p. 485.

Cerium.

Cerium is used to a limited extent in therapeutics in the form of the oxalate. Very little is known of its effects, but it is apparently absorbed with difficulty from the stomach and intestine. It is said to depress the heart, and to induce vomiting and purging, with hyperæmia and ecchymoses in the stomach and bowel, and nephritis and congestion in the kidney, when it is injected into the blood vessels.

In therapeutics it is used in vomiting from seasickness, pregnancy and other conditions, in which irritation of the stomach is not the primary cause. It is quite unknown how it acts in these cases, but it is surmised that its effects are local and similar to those of bismuth subnitrate.

Cerii Oxalas (U. S. P., B. P.) ($Ce_2(C_2O_4)_3+9H_2O$), a white granular powder, tasteless, odorless, insoluble in water or alcohol. 0.1–0.6 G. (2–10 grs.).

IX. ALUMINIUM AND ALUM.

The chief pharmacopœial preparation of aluminium is the sulphate of aluminium and potassium, or alum, which has been largely used for its astringent properties. Alum solutions precipitate albumin, but the precipitate is soluble in excess of the proteid. It is not known whether an albuminate is formed similar to those of the heavy metals, though it seems probable that this is the case. Dilute solutions of alum have an astringent effect from their throwing down a layer of precipitated proteid on the surface of the mucous membranes or on wounded surfaces, but larger quantities and more concentrated solutions act as

irritants. This is more especially the case when dried alum is applied, for, in addition to its coagulating effect on the proteids, this preparation has a great avidity for water.

Symptoms. — Alum solutions have a sweetish, astringent taste, and in small quantities induce no symptoms except a feeling of dryness and astringency of the mouth and throat, and some constipation. Larger doses act as gastric irritants and cause nausea and vomiting, and, in extreme cases, purging. Even the largest quantities, however, are followed by no symptoms except those of gastro-intestinal irritation and inflammation, and the long-continued use of alum does not elicit any symptoms of chronic poisoning. The aluminium salts are not absorbed in any quantity from the stomach and intestine, so that no symptoms of general poisoning arise from the internal use of the salt. Aluminium vessels may be used for cooking, or even to contain acids, without danger of intoxication, as has been shown by a recent series of investigations.

No case of aluminium poisoning presenting the symptoms of general intoxication has been recorded as yet, but if the newer preparations are used as extensively and negligently as some of the other modern panaceas, medical literature will probably be enriched by such additions in the near future.

Aluminium salts, especially the acetate, chloride and some more recent preparations, have very considerable antiseptic power, much more than some of the more generally used antiseptics, such as boric acid.

Action. — Aluminium has a very remarkable general action when it obtains access to the blood. In Siem's experiments on animals, the sodium-aluminium lactate or tartrate induced a very slow intoxication, mammals never dying from the effects sooner than one or two weeks after the intravenous injection of the salts. In frogs the symptoms were those of a descending paralysis of the central nervous system, the heart and the peripheral nerves and muscles being little affected. In mammals the first symptoms appeared only after three to five days, and consisted in constipation, rapid loss of weight, weakness, torpor and vomiting; marked abnormalities in movement and sensation were observed later, such as tremor, jerking movements, clonic convulsions, paresis of the hind legs, anæsthesia of the mouth and throat, and lessened sensation all over the body. Before death, diarrhœa often set in, and albuminuria was generally present. The mucous membrane of the stomach and bowel was found swollen and congested, the kidney and liver had often undergone fatty degeneration, and hæmorrhages were found in the renal cortex. Aluminium was found in the urine.

Like the other members of the heavy metal series, aluminium therefore acts on the bowel and kidney in general poisoning, while many of the symptoms point to a direct action on the brain. Döllken has recently confirmed Siem's results, and showed that the nerve cells and fibres of the cord and medulla undergo degeneration, particularly those of the lower cranial nerves.

It has been stated that the alum salts of the food are absorbed and stored in the bones, but this is incorrect. What little is absorbed is probably rapidly excreted by the bowel and perhaps by the urine.

A metal which is very nearly related to aluminium in its effects in the organism is **Beryllium**. It differs chiefly in being more poisonous, in being

absorbed from the stomach and intestine, and in causing more distinct lesions in these when it is injected into the blood.

Preparations.

Alumen (U. S. P., B. P.), alum, potassium alum, ($Al_2K_2(SO_4)_4 + 24H_2O$), large, colorless, octahedral crystals, with a sweetish, strongly astringent taste, soluble in water, but not in alcohol. 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Glycerinum Aluminis (B. P.), 10 per cent.

Alumen Exsiccatum (U. S. P.), *Alumen Ustum* (B. P.), burnt alum, dried alum ($Al_2K_2(SO_4)_4$), a white, granular powder, attracting moisture on exposure to air, soluble in water.

Alumini Hydras (U. S. P.) ($Al_2(OH)_6$), a white, light, amorphous powder, odorless, tasteless, insoluble in water or alcohol, but soluble in hydrochloric or sulphuric acids and in fixed alkalies. 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Alumini Sulphas (U. S. P.) ($Al_2(SO_4)_3$), a white, crystalline powder, with a sweetish, astringent taste, soluble in water, not in alcohol.

Uses. — Alum is used chiefly externally for its astringent properties. It has been employed as an emetic, but is less reliable than the sulphate of copper or tartar emetic, and very large doses (4–8 G., 1–2 drs.) are required. In diarrhœa either alum or the hydrate is sometimes advised.

Alum solution is useful as an astringent gargle (1–5 per cent.), as an injection in gonorrhœa ($\frac{1}{2}$–1 per cent.), as an astringent lotion in skin diseases (1 per cent.), and for other similar purposes. It is said to tend to cause corneal perforation by dissolving the intercellular substance, but has been used in ophthalmia by many surgeons. Dried alum is more caustic, from its withdrawing fluid from the tissues. It has been used to a limited extent as an emetic; more frequently as an application to exuberant granulations, hæmorrhoids, or condylomata, and as a styptic in bleeding from the nose or teeth. Alum has often been prescribed in chronic lead poisoning with success. A one per cent. solution has been injected into the rectum in chronic dysentery, but is inferior to the nitrate of silver.

A large number of aluminium preparations have been introduced recently as antiseptic astringents. Among these may be mentioned *alumnol* (naphtol sulphonate of aluminium), *salumin* (salicylate), *tannal* (tannate), *gallal* (gallate), *boral* (borotartrate), *cutol* (borotannate), *alsol* (acetate), *alkasal* (salicylate of potassium and aluminium). They are used partly in solution, chiefly as dusting powders, but it has yet to be proved that they are superior to the older preparations. As with so many of the products of the new industrial chemistry, they are thrown on the market in such profusion, and are heralded with such exaggerated praise, that it is impossible at present to state which of them are really improvements on the more generally recognized preparations, and which are merely adapted to enrich the inventor, without materially advancing therapeutics.

Bibliography.

Siem. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1886.
Döllken. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xl., p. 98.
Jalan de la Croix. Ibid., xiii., p. 210.
Heinz. Berl. klin. Woch., 1892, p. 1158. (Alumnol.)
Plagge u. Lebbin. Ueber Feldflaschen und Kochgeschirre aus Aluminum, Berlin, 1893.

X. MINOR METALS.

Gold.

Gold has never been largely used in therapeutics, although repeated attempts have been made to introduce it in the treatment of the most diverse conditions; the salt employed has almost invariably been the double chloride of gold and sodium. It is much less poisonous than many of the other metals and may be taken for many months without entailing any untoward symptoms. The subcutaneous injection in frogs is followed by paralysis of the central nervous system, gold possessing little action on the heart and striated muscles in these animals. Injected intravenously in dogs, it causes vomiting and dyspnœa, which soon pass off, but if sufficient has been injected the animal suffers from nausea, vomiting and diarrhœa for several days, eats nothing, loses flesh rapidly, and dies a week or more after the experiment. Numerous ulcers are found in the stomach and intestine, and these often betray their presence in life by hæmorrhages. Gold lowers the blood pressure somewhat on intravenous injection, probably from the dilation of the mesenteric vessels accompanying the intestinal action. It has little effect on the rate of the heart except in large doses, and dilates the vessels when perfused through them. When given by the mouth to dogs and cats, it is at once ejected from the stomach by vomiting.

Gold has therefore the ordinary general effects of the heavy metals in causing acute irritation and ulceration of the alimentary canal. The early vomiting may be due to action on the centre, but is more probably caused by its irritating the stomach. The diarrhœa, and the ulceration of the stomach and intestine probably indicate that it is excreted by these organs.

Auri et Sodii Chloridum (U. S. P.), a mixture of equal parts by weight of dry gold chloride ($AuCl_3$) and sodium chloride (NaCl), an orange-yellow powder, with a saline, metallic taste, deliquescent in the air and very soluble in water. 0.005–0.03 G. ($\frac{1}{10}$–$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.), in solution. Gold has been used in various nervous disorders, in particular in those of a hysterical nature, and may conceivably be of value through suggestion, if the patient be informed of the nature of the remedy. It has also been advised in syphilis, rheumatism, and other chronic diseases. Of late years it has been widely advertised as a specific in chronic alcoholism, but analysis has shown that no gold was contained in the fluid advocated, and there is no reason to suppose that it is of value except by means of suggestion. Kantnack and Calmette have recommended its hypodermic injection in cases of snake bite.

Bibliography.

Aronowitsch. Inaug. Dissertation, Wurzburg, 1881.
Schultz. Inaug. Dissertation, Dorpat, 1892.

Platinum.

Platinum resembles gold in its action very closely, but is much more poisonous. In the frog it paralyzes the central nervous system, and later the striated muscles. Kebler observed a stage of convulsions precede that of paralysis, the spasms evidently arising from the spinal cord or medulla oblongata. In mammals the symptoms resemble those of gold poisoning in almost every detail. Small quantities of platinum double salts injected intravenously increase the urine to some extent; larger injections cause albuminuria.

Platinum was at one time advised in syphilis, but has never been widely used.

Bibliography.

Kebler. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., ix., p. 137.
Cohnstein. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxx., p. 127.

Chromium.

Chromium is used in medicine in the form of chromic acid and the bichromate of potassium, which are both powerful oxidizing bodies in addition to their poisonous action as metallic oxides. The former property renders them more irritant and corrosive than most of the salts of the heavy metals. Chromic acid in particular is a powerful caustic, combining the action of a metallic oxide, an acid, and a strongly oxidizing agent. Applied to the skin in substance it corrodes it, but is said to cause less pain than the more penetrating caustic potash. Even in dilute solution the chromic salts and the acid act as skin irritants, and the caustic effects are shown by skin diseases, and particularly by deep perforating ulcers in persons exposed constantly to the dust of chromic salts in factories. These ulcers arise from any abrasion of the skin, while the acid does not seem to be capable of penetrating the unbroken epidermis. The cartilaginous septum of the nose is also a common seat of ulceration, which eventually leads to perforation. These ulcers arise from the local action of the poison and not from its absorption ; they are said to be almost painless. The inhalation of the dust leads to chronic bronchitis, while that swallowed and absorbed may give rise to nephritis.

Symptoms.—In acute poisoning, when a large quantity of the acid or of a salt is swallowed, the symptoms are those of gastro-intestinal corrosion, intense pain in the throat and stomach, vomiting and purging, with blood in the vomited matter and the stools, collapse and frequently death. The mouth and throat are stained yellow, and the stomach and intestine exhibit the usual appearance of violent corrosive poisoning.

The general action of chromic preparations may be elicited in animals by subcutaneous or intravenous injection, or by the administration of smaller quantities by the mouth. The symptoms resemble those caused by the general action of other metals. In the frog increasing weakness, tremor and eventually paralysis of the central nervous system are induced. In the mammal weakness and slowness in the movements is followed by albuminuria and later by diarrhœa and vomiting. Sometimes twitching of the muscles or even convulsions are seen, and then the weakness passes into general paralysis. The heart seems little affected by chromium, but the blood-pressure falls. After death the stomach and bowel are found congested, and the mucous membrane is necrosed and ulcerated in some parts, covered with ecchymoses in others. Hæmorrhages are also found in other organs of the body, notably in the heart wall. The kidney is in a state of acute parenchymatous nephritis and often contains deposits of uric acid, and albumin, casts, and often blood cells appear in the urine. In chronic poisoning interstitial nephritis is said to occur.

Chromic acid and its salts are readily absorbed from the stomach and intestine. They seem to be excreted for the most part through the kidney, to a less extent by the intestinal epithelium probably. In the urine the metal occurs in part in organic combinations.

Chromic oxide compounds act in the same way as the chromates, but are much less poisonous.

Preparations.

Acidum Chromicum (U. S. P., B. P.), chromic acid or anydride (CrO_3), forms crystals of dark purplish-red color and metallic lustre, odorless, very soluble in water. When brought in contact with organic substances, such as alcohol, glycerin or sugar, it oxidizes them rapidly and often violently with explosion.

Liquor Acidi Chromici (B. P.), 25 per cent.

Potassii Bichromas (U. S. P., B. P.), bichromate or dichromate of potassium ($K_2Cr_2O_7$), forms large, orange-red transparent crystals, with a bitter metallic taste, soluble in ten parts of water. 6–12 mgs. ($\frac{1}{10}$–$\frac{1}{5}$ gr.).

Chromic acid is used as a caustic application to malignant growths,

chancres and diphtheritic membranes, to a less extent as an irritant antiseptic. It has generally been applied by dipping a glass rod into a solution formed by allowing the crystals to deliquesce, or it may be fused on the end of a wire. It has also been advised in 5 per cent. solution as an application to prevent perspiration of the feet and to harden the skin.

The bichromate has been recommended recently in certain forms of dyspepsia in doses of 5 mgs. ($\frac{1}{12}$ gr.).

Bibliography.

Priestley. Jour. of Anat. and Phys., xi., p. 285.
Gergens. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., vi., p. 148.
Pander. Kobert's Arb. a. d. pharm. Instit. zu Dorpat, ii., p. 1.
Hermanni. Munch. med. Wochenschr., 1901, i., p. 536.

Manganese.

Traces of manganese are found in the blood and tissues of man and animals very frequently, but this metal is not an essential constituent of the body, but is apparently absorbed accidentally with the food. The salts of manganese in large quantities cause acute irritation of the stomach and intestine, like those of the other heavy metals, but no symptoms pointing to effects from the absorption of the metal are observed even when the administration is continued for a long time.[1] Manganese is absorbed from the alimentary tract, however, but only in very small quantity, and it appears to resemble iron closely in its course through the tissues (see page 664). Its general action has been elicited by the hypodermic or intravenous injection of double salts. In frogs manganese injected hypodermically causes a descending paralysis of the brain and spinal cord, and later weakens and arrests the heart, while the peripheral muscles and nerves seem unaffected. In mammals large injections induce epileptiform convulsions, particularly in the rabbit and guinea pig. Smaller quantities, which cause a less acute intoxication, induce in the dog, nausea and vomiting, diarrhœa, weakness, somnolence, stupor and death from arrest of the respiration. The urine is often increased, and contains bile pigment, and, towards death, albumin and casts. The stomach and bowel present no congestion or ulceration in these cases. Manganese is found in the vomited matter and the stools, in the liver, kidney and intestinal wall, to a less extent in the other organs. In acute poisoning in mammals the blood-pressure falls, from depression and paralysis of the vaso-motor centre, while the heart is affected only much later. In subacute poisoning the darker color of the urine indicates icterus, but this is much more marked when small quantities are repeatedly injected into the subcutaneous tissues, and chronic poisoning induced. In chronic cases the nephritis, which is shown in acute poisoning by albuminuria, is also more developed, the inflammation commencing in the secretory cells of the kidney but later involving the interstitial tissue, if the animal lives long enough.

Manganese injected hypodermically or subcutaneously, is excreted chiefly by the intestinal epithelium, to a less extent by the kidney.

Preparations.

Mangani Dioxidum (U. S. P.), Black Oxide of Manganese. The pharmacopœial preparation is the crude impure mineral and need contain only 66 per cent. of the pure dioxide (MnO_2).

Mangani Sulphas (U. S. P.) ($MnSO_4 + 4H_2O$), colorless, or pale rose-colored crystals with a somewhat bitter, astringent taste, soluble in water, not in alcohol. 0.1–0.5 G. (2–8 grs.).

[1] Symptoms ascribed to chronic poisoning have recently been described by Embden as occurring in workmen in manganese.

Manganese has been advised in chlorosis and especially in amenorrhœa, in which it is believed by many to have a specific action, while others have found it of no value in either of these conditions. In amenorrhœa the permanganate of potassium is generally prescribed instead of the dioxide or sulphate, but as it is at once reduced in the stomach, the effect is the same as if pure dioxide was administered.

Bibliography.

Harnack. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iii., p. 58 ; xlvi., p. 372.
Kobert. Ibid., xvi., p. 361.
Cahn. Ibid., xviii., p. 129.
Stockman. Brit. Med. Jour., 1893, i., p. 942.
Embden. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1901, p. 795.

Cadmium resembles zinc very closely in its effects.

Nickel and **Cobalt** salts, administered to the frog, cause a curious dark color in the skin, followed by convulsive movements, which at first arise apparently from the medulla oblongata and higher centres, and resemble those of picrotoxin, but later are reflex from excessive irritability of the spinal cord. In mammals the usual symptoms arising from the action on the intestine and kidney are accompanied by tremors and chorea-like movements, later by tetanus, and finally by paralysis. Strongly acid food may form nickel salts when it is cooked in vessels made of this metal, but no poisoning results, either because the quantity ingested is too small or because it is slowly absorbed from the stomach and intestine. Cobalt nitrate has been recommended as an antidote in prussic acid poisoning, as it forms an insoluble cyanide, but appears to be of little or no value ; the oxide has been applied externally as an astringent, antiseptic powder.

Tin salts paralyze the central nervous system in the frog, and later the heart. In mammals, diarrhœa, colic, vomiting and general weakness are observed, along with paralysis of some parts of the central nervous system and stimulation of others, leading to ataxia, stiffness and irregularity of the movements, and occasionally convulsions. The sulphide is said to be deposited in the lymph spaces of the intestines in the same way as in bismuth poisoning. General poisoning may be induced by the administration of the salts by the mouth, even when there is no corrosion of the mucous membrane. Tin is often contained in preserved foods from being dissolved off the vessels, and is certainly absorbed, for it has been detected in the urine after the use of such articles. Apparently it is not often present in sufficient quantities to induce poisoning, for although some cases of "tin poisoning" are met with in medical literature, in none of them has it been satisfactorily established that tin was the cause.

Thallium salts seem to resemble those of lead in their effects, but have a powerful depressant action on the heart, and are said to be more poisonous. Richet states that the injection of thallium acetate in animals is followed by a general atrophy of the muscles, especially of those of the jaw and spine, while baldness has been ascribed to its continued use in man.

Vanadium presents only the ordinary characteristics of metallic poisoning. The different oxides vary in toxicity, the pyrovanadates being much the most powerful.

Molybdenum and **Tungsten** resemble each other closely, and induce typical metallic poisoning.

Uranium, in addition to the ordinary features of metallic intoxication, causes some glycosuria, the sugar often amounting to one per cent. in the urine. This may probably be explained by the recently discovered fact that this metal retards the reduction of the oxyhæmoglobin of the blood, for lessened oxidation in the tissues has been shown to cause some glycosuria in a number of instances.

Selenium and **Tellurium** are classed along with sulphur in chemical sys-

tems, but the salts of telluric, selenious and selenic acid induce symptoms resembling those of the heavy metals and arsenic in many points, and may be inserted in this series. In the frog the symptoms are those of central nervous paralysis, and later of heart failure. In mammals vomiting, purging, somnolence, dyspnœa, tonic and clonic convulsions have been noted, and the stomach is found somewhat reddened, the mucous membrane of the intestine swollen and dysenteric, while the kidneys seem less affected. The perspiration is prevented by tellurates, apparently from a paralysis of the terminations of the secretory nerves similar to that induced by atropine. An early symptom of poisoning with these bodies is a garlic odor in the breath, and many of the organs are found of a grayish color after death, and possess this odor. Hofmeister has shown that these salts are reduced to metallic selenium and tellurium in the body, and that afterwards methyl compounds ($Te(CH_3)_2$, $Se(CH_3)_2$) are formed. These are volatile, and, excreted by the lungs, urine and fæces, give the disagreeable odor. The synthesis of methyl-tellurium is one of the few known cases in which a compound with methyl is formed in the animal body, and is of great biological importance. All the selenium and tellurium is not excreted in this form, for some of it appears in the urine, and probably in the fæces, in other combinations.

Tellurates have been advised in therapeutics to prevent excessive sweating, and certainly have this effect, but are not to be recommended, as the strong garlic odor of the breath persists for days or even weeks after one dose.

Osmic Acid has been recommended as an injection into the nerves in neuralgia. It is an intensely irritant substance, and seems to induce nephritis and diarrhœa when absorbed. The greater part of the poison is, however, deposited as a black powder at the point of injection, owing to its being reduced by the tissues.

Bibliography.

Cadmium.

Marmé. Ztschr. f. rat. Med., xxix., p. 125.
Wheeler. Boston Med. and Surg. Journ., xcv., p. 434.

Nickel and Cobalt.

Stuart. Journ. of Anat. and Phys., xvii., p. 89. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm. xviii., p. 151.
Rohde. Arch. f. Hygiene, ix., p. 331.
Hübner. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., ix., p. 339.

Tin.

White. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xiii., p. 53.
Ungar u. Bodländer. Ztschr. f. Hygiene, ii., p. 241.

Thallium.

Marmé. Göttingen Nachrichten, 1867, p. 397.
Luck. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1891.
Richet. Comptes rend. de la Soc. de Biol., 1899, p. 252.

Vanadium.

Priestley. Phil. Trans. of Roy. Soc., clxvi., p. 495.
Gamgee and Larmuth. Journ. of Anat. and Phys., xi., pp. 235, 251.
Dowdeswell. Jour. of Phys., i., p. 257.

Tungsten.

Bernstein-Kohan. Kobert's Arbeit. a. d. pharm. Instit. zu Dorpat, v., p. 42.

Uranium.

Woroschilsky. Kobert's Arbeit. a. d. pharm. Instit. zu Dorpat, v., p. 1.
Chittenden. Studies from the Lab. of Phys. Chem. of Sheffield Scientific School, i., ii., iii.

Selenium and Tellurium.

Czapek u. Weil. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxii., p. 438.
Hofmeister. Ibid., xxxiii., p. 198.
Gies and *Mead.* Amer. Journ. of Phys., v., p. 104; Philadelphia Med. Journ., 1901, p. 566.

PART V.

FERMENTS, SECRETIONS AND TOXALBUMINS.

I. DIGESTIVE FERMENTS.

A NUMBER of digestive ferments have been introduced into therapeutics for the treatment of gastric and intestinal disorders. The earlier members of the series were proteolytic ferments, intended to reinforce the pepsin of the stomach, but of recent years the amylolytic ferments have also been strongly advocated.

Pepsin.

The pharmacopœial preparations of pepsin are generally obtained from the pig's stomach. Their origin is not a matter of indifference, for it has been recently shown that pepsins obtained from different species of animals differ considerably in their behavior towards various acids. Pepsin digests only in acid solution, the best results being obtained in a solution of 0.2 per cent. of hydrochloric acid. (See Acids, page 561.) In alkaline solution it is inert, and in fact is rapidly decomposed, so that when pepsin and alkaline carbonates or bicarbonates are prescribed together, the effects are due to the alkalies only.

Pepsin is used in therapeutics on the theory that the stomach does not secrete enough of the ferment in certain conditions. But it may be questioned whether this is true in even a small proportion of the cases treated with pepsin, for the gastric juice is almost always capable of digesting proteids if it is acid in reaction. In a number of forms of dyspepsia the acid secretion is insufficient, but the ferment is almost always present in quantity, for it digests proteids outside the body as soon as it is acidulated. Pepsin is indicated then, only in the rare cases in which the contents of the stomach acidulated with hydrochloric acid fail to digest proteids. It is very often administered in other forms of dyspepsia, and certainly does no harm, but there is no question that it is entirely unnecessary in the great majority of the cases in which it is prescribed.

PREPARATIONS.

Pepsinum (U. S. P., B. P.), a proteolytic ferment obtained from the glandular layer of fresh stomachs from healthy pigs, and capable of digesting not less than 3,000 times its own weight of freshly coagulated egg albumin.[1] It is a fine, white, amorphous powder or thin scales, free from

[1] The B. P. preparation may be obtained from the pig, sheep or calf and is required to digest 2,500 times its weight of hard-boiled white of egg.

offensive odor and having a mildly acid or saline taste, usually followed by a suggestion of bitterness. It is soluble in about 100 parts of water, but is more soluble if the water is acidulated. 0.3–0.6 G. (5–10 grs.), in powder, or in solution in 0.2 per cent. hydrochloric acid.

Pepsin is generally given during or after meals. As has been stated, it is very rarely indicated, as the gastric juice almost always contains sufficient for the ferment.

Glycerinum Pepsini (B. P.) contains hydrochloric acid. A fluid drachm represents 5 grs. of pepsin. 1–2 fl. drs.

Pepsinum Saccharatum (U. S. P.) is formed from pepsin by adding nine parts of sugar of milk.

Many other preparations of pepsin are used in popular medicine, to a less extent by the profession. Pepsin wines, for example, are often taken as tonics and digestives, but the wine is probably of greater efficacy than the ferment. In these pepsin wines the ferment is not destroyed, however, as is sometimes stated, for pepsin is able to digest proteids in much stronger alcoholic solutions than they represent.

Pancreatic Ferments.

The pancreatic ferments have also been introduced into therapeutics, generally in the form of an extract of the gland, *pancreatin*. These ferments differ from pepsin in acting only in alkaline or neutral solution, and besides digesting proteids, form sugar from starch and saponify and emulsify fats. The pancreatic ferments are rendered inert by a comparatively short exposure to the acid gastric juice.

The value of pancreatin is even more problematical than that of pepsin, for though it would no doubt be valuable where the digestive ferments, particularly those of the pancreas, were deficient, this has not been shown to occur. On the other hand, the pancreatic ferments are certainly destroyed in passing through the stomach. It has been suggested, however, that they may act in the stomach, if they are given before or with the food, as the acid gastric juice is only secreted slowly, and some time must elapse before the pancreatin is rendered inert. In cases in which there is a deficiency in the acid of the gastric juice, the pancreatin might conceivably act throughout the stay of the food in the stomach. Attempts have been made to preserve the pancreatin from the deleterious effects of the gastric juice by administering it in capsules which are dissolved only in the intestine. It is certainly possible that the pancreatin may be useful in certain cases, where the ferments of the pancreas are absent and the acid of the stomach so deficient as not to be destructive, but there is no reason to suppose that this series of accidents occurs at all frequently, and it is impossible to diagnose inefficiency of the pancreatic secretion.

Preparations.

Pancreatinum (U. S. P.), a mixture of the enzymes naturally existing in the pancreas of warm-blooded animals, usually obtained from the fresh pancreas of the pig. It forms a yellowish, yellowish-white, or grayish, amorphous powder, having a faint, not disagreeable odor and a meat-like taste, and is slowly soluble in water. 0.1–0.3 G. (2–5 grs.), in powder or in capsules. Keratin capsules have been proposed in order to protect the pancreatin from the gastric juice.

Liquor Pancreatis (B. P.), a liquid preparation containing the digestive principles of the fresh pancreas of the pig. The preparation is most active when the animal from which it has been obtained has been fed shortly before being killed. Two cubic centimetres of the solution ought to digest 80 c.c. of milk.

Benger's Liquor Pancreaticus is a solution of the pancreatic ferments made up with some alcohol.

In connection with the digestive ferments may be mentioned *ingluvin*, an extract of the fowl's gizzard, which was a few years ago highly recommended as a remedy in the sickness of pregnancy, but has proved entirely valueless.

Vegetable Ferments.

Besides these animal digestive ferments, a number of vegetable proteolytic enzymes are known, and have enjoyed a more or less shortlived popularity. Probably many more plant juices are able to digest proteids than are at present generally recognized; thus many of the bacteria liquefy gelatin and albumin, and the insectivorous plants such as Drosera (sundew) and Dionea secrete a digestive fluid. Figs, pine apples (*bromelin*), the scarlet pimpernal (Anagallis arvensis), and many others of the higher plants have been shown to possess these ferments, but the best known of these is the Carica papaya, or pawpaw, which contains a digestive ferment known as *papain*, *papayotin* or *papoid*. This ferment acts in neutral, moderately acid, or alkaline solution at the temperature of the body and in the cold. When swallowed it has no effect except its digestive action, but injected into the blood, it is said to paralyze the heart and central nervous system, and to cause hæmorrhages into the intestine; it is very irritant in the subcutaneous tissues, causing pain and high fever. It has been used instead of pancreatin and pepsin in disorders of the digestion, and also as an anthelmintic. Diphtheritic membranes have been treated by the frequent application of papain solution (once an hour by some of its advocates, more frequently by others), and apparently with success as far as the removal of the membrane was concerned; the underlying disease was not favorably influenced, however, and the treatment has been abandoned. Papain solution has also been injected by the hypodermic needle into tumors and abscesses, with the intention of digesting the new growth, or accelerating the progress of the abscess towards the surface, but the results obtained do not encourage the further use of the remedy in this way. Peptones are unquestionably formed in the tumors when papain is injected.

Several milk-curdling ferments have been found in plants, but none of them have been used in therapeutics.

Diastase.

Several amylolytic or sugar-forming ferments have been used more or less in therapeutics, the first of these being the *diastase* or *enzyme of malt*, which is known under the names of malt extract, maltzyme, maltine, etc. When grain is allowed to germinate, its starch is formed into a soluble form (sugar) by means of a ferment known as diastase, and it was supposed that this diastase might aid the digestion of starchy foods in the body. When malt extract is formed at a low temperature, it unquestionably contains diastase and is capable of digesting starch, but many of the extracts on the market are quite inert, the ferment having been destroyed by heat. Those extracts are therefore devoid of digestive power, but form a pleasant, easily digested food. They often contain alcohol, and are then indistinguishable from beer or stout.

More recently, some other sugar-forming ferments have been brought forward, notably that obtained from Eurotium oryzæ, a mould of the aspergillus family. This enzyme is known as *taka-diastase* from the name of its discoverer, Takamine, and is very much more powerful than any of the malt extracts, as it digests over one hundred times its weight of starch. Taka-diastase has been recommended in cases in which there is supposed to be a deficient digestion of starch. It ceases to act in the gastric juice as soon as the acidity exceeds 0.1 per cent., but may be able to digest a certain amount of starch in the mouth and stomach before it is destroyed. The question at once arises, however, whether the ordinary digestive juices are ever unable to digest the starch of the food. And although a new term, "amylaceous dyspepsia," has been introduced to indicate this class of cases, if they should be found to exist, it must be admitted that no satisfactory evidence of their existence has been brought forward as yet. It is stated that more starch is found to be digested in the stomach after the administration of diastase, but this seems to be beside the point, for it merely indicates that less starch reaches the intestine for the pancreatic juice to act upon. Until it is shown that in some cases the digestion of starch by the intestinal ferments is insufficiently performed, the diastase preparations would seem to be superfluous. According to Friedenwald, diastase increases the digestion of starch in the stomach chiefly in cases of hyperacidity, but doubt is thrown on this statement by other investigators.

Bibliography.

Papain.

Hirsch. Therap. Mon., 1894, p. 609.
Osswald. Munch. med. Woch., 1894, p. 665.
Rossbach. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., vi., p. 527.
Martin. Jour. of Phys., v., p. 213; vi., p. 336.
Younger. Lancet, 1895, i., p. 1050.
Chittenden, Mendel and McDermott. Amer. Journ. of Phys., i., p. 255.

Pineapple.

Chittenden. Jour. of Phys., xv., p. 249.

Taka-Diastase.

Friedenwald. New York Med. Journ., 1897, May 29.
Leo. Therapeut. Monatsh., 1896, p. 635.
Strauss u. Stargardt. Ibid., 1898, p. 65.

II. BILE.

The bile is very seldom used in therapeutics at the present day, although it was formerly credited with great healing virtues. It has a bitter taste, and may have some effect like the vegetable bitters, but has no advantage over these, and is not likely to be used to promote the appetite now, although it was formerly used as a stomachic. The bile is found to precipitate the peptones in test-tube experiments, but does not appear to retard digestion in the stomach materially, judging from experiments carried out in a case of gastric fistula. In the intestine it is generally believed to act as an antiseptic, chiefly because the

stools have a strong putrefactive odor in cases of retention of bile. Limbourg has also shown that the addition of bile to proteid solutions delays their decomposition, while there is some evidence that it promotes pancreatic digestion. It has some purgative action, as is shown by the obstinate constipation which often occurs when it is prevented from reaching the intestine; according to Stadelmann, the bile acids irritate the mucous membrane of the large bowel and thus induce purgation. An obscure relation exists between the drastic purgatives and the bile in the intestine, several of them failing to act in its absence. (See page 98.) Another unexplained effect of the presence of bile in the intestine is the increased absorption of fats. Most of the bile given by the mouth is absorbed in the stomach and small intestine and carried to the liver, which excretes it again, while a small quantity of the bile acids escapes in the urine. In the liver it increases the secretion of both the fluid and the solids of the bile; in fact, the bile is the only reliable cholagogue known. The constituent which acts on the secretory liver cells seems to be the bile acids, and their increase is greater than can be accounted for merely by the excretion of that administered, so that it would seem that they exercise some specific stimulant action on the secretory cells. The bile pigment is also augmented when bile acids are absorbed, owing to the destruction of the red cells of the blood, as the liberated hæmoglobin is carried to the liver and there formed into bile pigment.

Bile given by the mouth does not cause any symptoms except those from the intestine and liver. When it is injected into the blood, however, it depresses the central nervous system and the heart muscle from its direct action on these organs, and decomposes the red cells of the blood. Muscles and nerves suspended in a solution of bile salts rapidly lose their irritability, and some unicellular organisms are killed and dissolved by them. The poisonous constituent of the bile seems to be the salts of the bile acids, but several authors have stated that the pigment is also active.

Frazer has recently discovered that the bile has considerable virtue as an antitoxin. Thus the bile of the venomous snake acts as an antidote to their poison, and the bile of other animals has also some effect in this direction. The bile acids and pigment do not seem to partake in the action, but the exact nature of the antidote is unknown. It is much more efficient when it is mixed with the poison before its application, than when it is injected after the bite. Frazer adds that the bile is also an antitoxin to other poisons, including those produced by the pathogenic microbes. Others have found that the bile of animals dying of an infectious disease (rinderpest) possesses some curative properties in other animals suffering from the same malady, this being explained by the excretion of the antitoxin in the bile.

Bile has been used as a purgative, and it has been particularly recommended in the form of an enema. It does not seem to be reliable, however, and presents no advantages over soaps and similar substances.

As a cholagogue it is without rival, but no condition is known in which an increase of the bile secretion is indicated, for though it has been proposed to expel gall-stones by raising the pressure in the gall-ducts by cholagogues, it is found that when the pressure is only slightly increased, the secretion is arrested. It is inconceivable that the small rise in pressure could force out an impacted gall-stone.

Bile might be used to aid the absorption of fats, particularly when it is deficient in the bowel; in a case of biliary fistula Joslin found that much less fat and nitrogenous food escaped in the stools when the patient was treated with bile pills, than when no treatment was adopted.

Preparations.

Fel Bovis (U. S. P.), ox gall, the fresh bile of the ox.

Fel Bovis Purificatum (U. S. P.), *Fel Bovinum Purificatum* (B. P.), is formed from the fresh bile by the addition of alcohol, filtration and evaporation to pillular consistency. The alcohol is added to remove the mucus of the bile. The pigments may be removed by filtering the watery solution through animal charcoal.

Bile is always prescribed in the form of pills made from the purified preparation. 0.3–1 G. (5–15 grs.).

Bibliography.

Stadelmann. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xxxvii., p. 352. Ztschr. f. Biolog., xxxiv., p. 1.

Rywosch. Arb. a. d. pharm. Instit. zu Dorpat, ii., p. 102; vii., p. 157.

Limbourg. Ztschr. f. phys. Chem., xiii., p. 196.

Pfaff and Balch. Journ. of Exp. Med., ii., p. 49.

Fraser. Brit. Med. Journ., 1897, ii., pp. 125 and 595; 1898, ii., p. 627.

Joslin. Journ. of Exp. Med., v., p. 513.

III. INTERNAL SECRETIONS.

Until very recently the only animal secretions recognized in therapeutics were the digestive ferments, the bile, and a few rarely used substances, such as musk. But within the last few years it has been shown that certain glands supply the blood constantly with substances which are necessary to the economy, and a deficiency in which leads to the gravest symptoms. The subject of internal secretion is still in its infancy, but therapeutics has already been enriched with at least one addition of unquestioned value, and may profit still more by the further exploration of this field. The chief object of "organotherapeutics," or the treatment of disease with extracts of the glands of the body (animal extracts), has been to supply a deficiency of the normal secretion. At the same time, it is possible that a wider field of usefulness may be developed, for there is no reason why these animal extracts should not have a true pharmacological action, as well as the vegetable extracts. Advance in organotherapeutics is not, however, to be expected from the indiscriminate use of the gland extracts in every sort of disease, such as is too popular at present. Such progress as has been made hitherto in this field has been due to careful observation and experiment, and not to haphazard use of the hypodermic syringe.

Thyroid Gland.

The treatment of certain diseases by the administration of thyroid gland and its extracts is one of the most satisfactory examples of rational therapeutic progress, and the steps which led to its adoption may therefore be briefly mentioned. In 1882–3, Kocher and Reverdin published observations made on patients whose thyroids had been totally extirpated, and who had subsequently presented a series of symptoms to which these observers gave the name of cachexia thyreopriva. They pointed out that this condition resembled in many of its features myxœdema, a disease discovered by Gull some years before and associated with atrophy of the thyroid gland. These observations were confirmed by a number of authors, who removed the thyroids from animals, and found a cachexia appear in them. The next advance was the discovery that these symptoms in animals could be removed, or at any rate ameliorated, by grafting pieces of thyroid in the peritoneal cavity or subcutaneous tissue. Horsley suggested that myxœdema should be treated in the same way, and Murray soon afterwards introduced the treatment of this disease by the subcutaneous injection of thyroid juice. Even in his first case, the results were eminently satisfactory, but it was soon found that the same results could be obtained by administration by the stomach, and a large number of cases have now been recorded in which very favorable results, or even the complete disappearance of the symptoms has followed this medication. These include not only myxœdematous patients, but also cases in which the thyroid was removed by surgical operation, or where its disease gave rise to symptoms. That the favorable results are due to the treatment is proved conclusively by the return of the symptoms when it is abandoned.

The effect of the thyroid extract could be explained only by the presence of some unknown principle, for the preparation of course contained no living cells. In the last few years, numerous researches have been carried out with the object of isolating this principle.[1] It is found in the colloid contents of the gland follicles in the form of a globulin, *thyreoglobulin*, which may be extracted from the colloid and gives the ordinary proteid reactions, but is characterized by containing about 1.5 per cent. of iodine; Baumann's detection of this element in the thyroid gland was the first intimation that it existed in the tissues of the higher animals and man. Thyreoglobulin is not completely saturated with iodine, for it forms a higher combination with it in the test-tube, but then loses its specific action on the animal organism. When it is subjected to artificial digestion, it forms albumoses and an insoluble non-proteid substance known as *Iodothyrin*,[2] which contains practically all the iodine of the gland. A similar result is obtained by acting on thyroid gland, colloid, or thyreoglobulin with

[1] No attempt is made to follow the chronological order of these researches.

[2] Iodothyrin was at first named *Thyroiodin*, but this was liable to be confused with thyreoidin, a term used to indicate the simple extract of the gland.

acids. Iodothyrin is readily dissolved in dilute alkaline solutions and may be reprecipitated by acids. It contains more iodine than thyreoglobulin of course, but the exact percentage is still a disputed point, for while Baumann originally stated that it contained about ten per cent., others have found it as low as four per cent., and Oswald's analysis gives no less than fourteen per cent. for iodothyrin obtained by the action of acids, and about five per cent. for that formed by digestion. Much remains to be done, therefore, before the composition of iodothyrin can be definitely settled, but it is certain that it is not a proteid and that it is rich in iodine and nitrogen, while sulphur is present in smaller amount, and phosphorus is not contained in the molecule.

The amount of iodothyrin in the gland varies a good deal in different animals, and in different individuals of the same species. It was at first supposed that in the goitre districts the percentage of iodothyrin in the gland was lower than in healthy areas, and that in cases of goitre the percentage was smaller than in normal individuals, but this seems to be incorrect, no relation existing apparently between the amount of iodine in the thyroid and the presence of endemic goitre. As a general rule it is found that the iodine and iodothyrin of the glands vary directly with the amount of colloid material. In children less iodine is found in the gland than in adults, and after middle age it lessens again. Meat diet diminishes the amount of iodine, either because it makes greater demands on the supply, or because too little iodine is ingested in the food. Vegetable foods, especially those containing much iodine, such as beetroot and probably the marine algæ, increase the iodine of the thyroid gland. Iodine given medicinally also augments it, and not only iodine itself, but various combinations, such as iodoform and iodides. It is not yet determined whether actually more iodothyrin is formed under these conditions, or whether that already present contains more iodine.

A number of other constituents have been isolated from the thyroid gland in a condition of greater or less purity, some of them proteids and others crystalline non-proteid bodies; but none of them possess the specific action of the gland extract and in fact none of them have been shown to induce any effect at all except those which it may be supposed contained iodothyrin. On the other hand, thyreoglobulin and iodothyrin induce the same effects as the extract both in myxœdema and goitre in man and in excision of the thyroid in animals. This has been disputed until recently owing to a misapprehension of the effects of thyroidectomy in animals, which was supposed to be inevitably fatal unless thyroid extract was administered. As a matter of fact, dogs (on which these experiments have been performed generally) may react in three different ways to excision of the thyroid and subsequent thyroid feeding. In a small number the operation is not followed by any serious symptoms and the animal recovers completely, or at any rate survives for many months. In the great majority thyroidectomy is followed by tremors, convulsions, paralysis and death in the course of a few weeks, but some of these can be kept alive and free

from spasms by feeding them thyroid extract or iodothyrin. A third class is formed of those animals which suffer from spasms and eventually succumb to them even when supplied with abundant thyroid extract. The exact proportion of these three classes, those which live without extract, those which are saved by it, and those which perish in spite of it, appears to vary at the hands of different investigators and perhaps in different regions, and this has given rise to erroneous views as to the value of the different preparations. But the balance of evidence is in favor of the view that iodothyrin represents the whole therapeutic virtues of thyroid extract, although it is possible that the gland may have other functions than its secretion. Iodothyrin and thyroid extracts are thus used to replace the secretion of the thyroid gland, when it is deficient from any cause. The function of the thyroid gland is still very obscure, however, although it is now certain that it is of great importance in the metabolism, as is clearly shown by the disastrous results of its removal or atrophy. The results of the injection of the thyroid extract have also thrown much light on the working of this mysterious organ.

Action. — The thyroid extracts and iodothyrin seem to be devoid of effect in many normal animals and patients, unless when given in enormous quantities. In others they cause some unpleasant symptoms, which occur more especially in myxœdema and goitre. These symptoms are partly subjective and indefinite, such as headache, wandering pains, or general weakness, while others are evidently due to circulatory changes, and consist of a feeling of fullness and congestion of the head, palpitation of the heart, and acceleration, sometimes weakness, of the pulse. Tremors in the arms and legs point to changes in the central nervous system, while loss of appetite and diarrhœa indicate that the alimentary canal is not exempt from its influence. Perspiration is often complained of, especially in myxœdema, and a rise of temperature also occurs not infrequently.

In normal animals iodothyrin injected intravenously in large quantities generally accelerates the heart and lowers the blood-pressure somewhat, and even when given by the mouth repeatedly for several days, it causes some acceleration. This acceleration of the heart has been attributed by some investigators to stimulation of the accelerator centre, by others to direct action on the heart;[1] it does not seem to be due to any changes in the inhibitory apparatus.

Loss of flesh and thirst have been observed, even when the appetite is good and sufficient food and water are supplied. The urine is uniformly increased in amount. Lanz observed some dyspnœa and occasional diarrhœa, sometimes with blood in the stools, along with a curious stiffness in the hind legs. Most of his dogs treated by hypodermic injections died after a longer or shorter time, but he is inclined to look upon this as due to putrefactive products in the preparations which he

[1] Cyon has recently stated that iodothyrin increases the irritability of the inhibitory terminations in the heart, but this is opposed to the well-established fact that the heart is accelerated by thyroid preparations.

used. Hellin has asserted, however, that thyroid extract which has not undergone putrefaction, causes gastro-enteritis, nephritis, cloudy swelling of the cells of the liver and spleen, and paresis of the hind legs. Cunningham, on the other hand, asserts that fresh thyroid is not poisonous to normal dogs, but this is again disputed by Georgiewsky.

Some of the symptoms induced in man by an overdose of thyroid resemble those seen in exophthalmic goitre or Graves' (Basedow's) disease, and exophthalmos has been observed in monkeys to which large amounts of thyroid were given.

As may be gathered from the above, great discrepancies occur in the accounts of the effects of thyroid on normal animals. The acceleration of the heart and the fall in weight seem to be the most common results, and it is certainly possible that the other symptoms described are due to the injection of albumoses and other putrefactive products.

The effects of thyroid extract on the **Metabolism** have been repeatedly examined, with very uniform results. One of the most striking features in many individuals is the rapid loss of weight, which often amounts to several pounds per week. Another is the increase in the amount of nitrogen in the urine, which occurs both in goitre and myxœdema, and very often in apparently normal persons. More nitrogen is excreted in the urine frequently than is taken in the food, that is to say, the iodothyrin leads to the destruction of the proteids of the tissues. If more nitrogenous food be given, however, this may be arrested, and in fact if large quantities of meat be taken, less nitrogen may be excreted than is taken in the food, so that although the patient is losing in weight, he may be actually increasing in nitrogenous tissue. If, on the other hand, a patient has been put in nitrogenous equilibrium, and then under iodothyrin begins to excrete more nitrogen than he ingests, this excessive tissue waste is not stayed by increased carbohydrates and fats; that is, the carbohydrates and fats cannot replace nitrogenous food to the same extent as in normal individuals. Iodothyrin has thus a specific effect in increasing the waste of the proteids of the body. But this increased waste of the proteids only accounts for about one-sixth of the loss of weight, the other five-sixths being evidently due to the more rapid oxidation of fats and the removal of fluid from the body.[1] The more rapid oxidation is further evidenced by the increased amount of oxygen absorbed and of carbonic acid exhaled by the lungs in cases of myxœdema and sometimes in obesity and goitre treated with the extract. The removal of fluid from the body, perhaps the most potent factor in reducing the weight in these cases, is shown by diuresis, which occurs in myxœdema especially,

[1] Schöndorff states that in nitrogenous equilibrium the oxidation of the fats is increased before the proteids of the body are attacked, but when the fat destruction has reached a certain point, the proteid waste is also increased. The early augmentation of the nitrogen of the urine does not indicate an acceleration of the proteid metabolism, but is due to the removal of urea and other products, which have been formed in the tissues before the administration of the remedy, but which are now excreted through the increased activity of the kidneys.

but also in obesity. This diuresis has been ascribed to some specific action on the kidney, or to the changes in the circulation, but may perhaps be due to the increased excretion of urea and other urinary substances. That the kidney is acted on in some cases is shown by the occasional appearance of albumin in the urine of patients treated with thyroid, but it is still undetermined whether this is due to the iodothyrin or to some other body, perhaps of putrefactive origin.

The phosphates excreted are increased in the same ratio as the nitrogen, and the increase is obviously due to the same cause, augmented proteid waste.

In some cases sugar has been found in the urine after thyroid treatment, and in a considerable percentage of persons it seems to cause a tendency to glycosuria, as is shown by the appearance of sugar in the urine after the ingestion of large quantities of sugar, which would normally be oxidized in the tissues. The uric acid excretion does not seem to be materially affected by thyroid treatment.

After iodothyrin has been administered, iodine is found in the urine in the form of iodides, so that the iodothyrin is evidently decomposed, at any rate in part, in the body. The rest of the iodine is taken up by the thyroid gland, and it would appear probable that it enters into it in the form of iodothyrin, and that no preliminary decomposition occurs here.

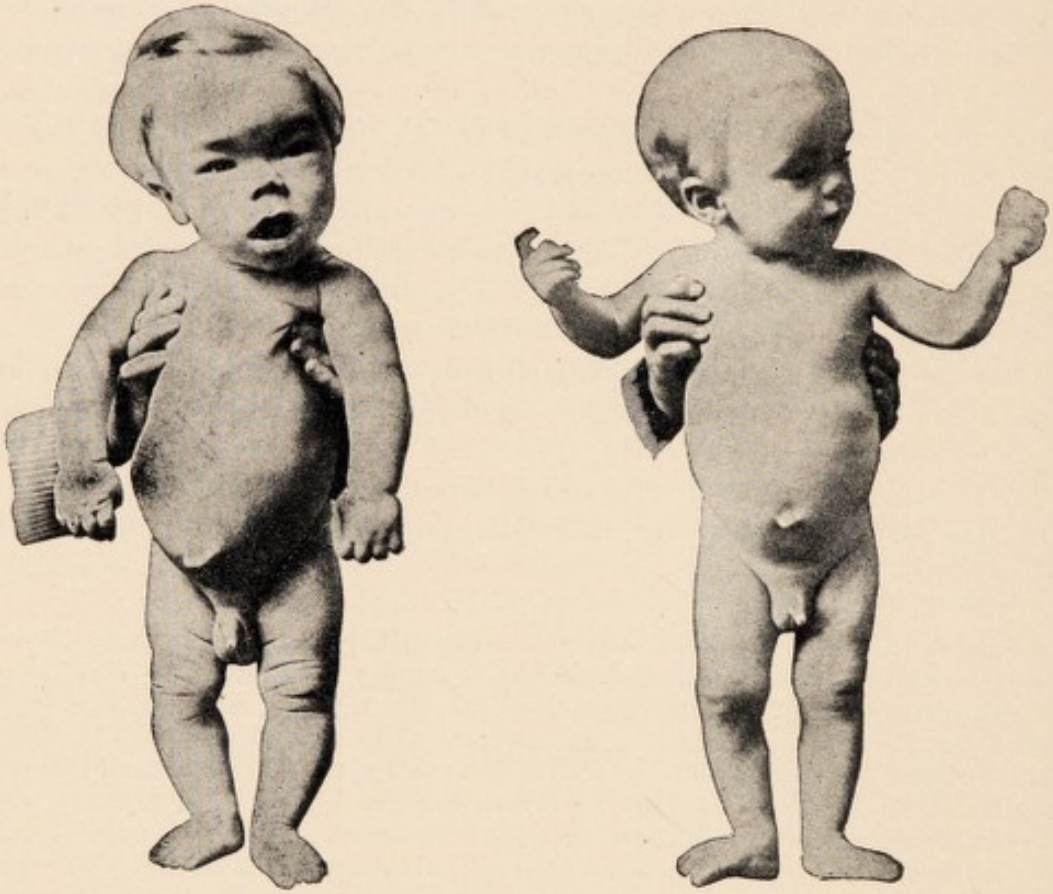
In regard to their reaction to thyroid medication, individuals vary considerably, for many are scarcely affected by it in any way, and this is particularly true of children, while others lose weight rapidly, and under larger doses show symptoms of poisoning (thyroidism). These seem to be more easily elicited in goitre and myxœdema than in ordinary cases. On the other hand, in Grave's disease the symptoms are generally aggravated by thyroid treatment, although a few cases are recorded in which it gave relief. Many authorities therefore believe that Grave's disease is due to the overproduction of iodothyrin, but this has not yet been proved, although there is considerable support for the theory.

The fact that "thyroidism" occurs more frequently in myxœdematous than in normal persons seems difficult of explanation, but it has been suggested that the symptoms are due not to the iodothyrin itself, but to the products of its action. It may be supposed that in myxœdema a large amount of some substance accumulates in the tissues, because the iodothyrin is not present in sufficient quantity to decompose it, and that when the thyroid treatment is commenced, the body is flooded with the products of decomposition and these give rise to symptoms. In normal persons, on the other hand, there is no such accumulation, and iodothyrin therefore induces no symptoms until it is given in such quantity as to induce intoxication itself. In Grave's disease the iodothyrin would, of course, tend to aggravate the symptoms, if these are due to its excessive production. Until more is learned of the action of iodothyrin and of the cause of Grave's disease, however, these explanations are mere hypotheses, and they need not be entered upon further here.

Iodine, as has been stated, increases the iodothyrin of the gland, and this perhaps explains the beneficial effects formerly seen in goitre from the application of iodine internally and locally. When iodine was efficient in those cases, and any considerable diminution of the gland occurred, it was often accompanied by symptoms exactly resembling those produced by large doses

of iodothyrin. Those symptoms were caused by small quantities in some patients, while much larger doses had no such effects in others—a fact which gave rise to some discussion and several erroneous theories. Sometimes the acute symptoms passed into a cachexia of very long standing. The quantity of iodine required to act in goitre is much greater than the iodine of the iodothyrin necessary, and this shows that the latter acts not merely as an

FIG. 51. FIG. 52.



A case of sporadic cretinism. Fig. 51, before treatment, age 23 months, height 28 inches, circumference of the abdomen 19 inches. Fig. 52 after treatment with thyroid extract for 5½ months, height 30 inches, circumference of abdomen 15 inches. (OSLER.)

iodine compound, but as the specific substance of the gland. Various iodine compounds, such as *iodalbumin* and *iodospongin* (the iodine compound of the sponge) have been shown to be practically inert in goitre.[1]

PREPARATIONS.

THYROIDEUM SICCUM (B. P.), a powder prepared from the fresh and healthy thyroid gland of the sheep. It forms a light, dull-brown powder with a faint, meat-like odor and taste, free from any odor of putrescence. About 16 grs. represent an entire gland. Dose, 3–10 grs.

[1] In this account of the action of the thyroid extract and its constituents, the generally accepted view has been given, namely, that the thyroid gland secretes a substance into the blood which is necessary to the normal life of the organism. It must be added that Blum advocates the theory that the thyroid gland retains its colloid substance in its interior and employs it to destroy a poisonous proteid formed in the course of metabolism. The grounds for this view seem quite inadequate, however, and the reader may be referred to the numerous papers of Blum on the subject.

Liquor Thyroidei (B. P.), a liquid prepared from the fresh and healthy thyroid gland of the sheep, and containing some phenol. A pinkish, turbid fluid, entirely free from any odor of putrescence. It ought to be freshly prepared. 6 c.c. (100 mins.) represent an entire thyroid gland (5–15 mins.).

Thyroid medication may be carried out in a number of different ways. The old method of ordering the raw or toasted gland to be taken daily may now be said to be rendered obsolete by more elegant preparations, such as dried thyroid or thyroid extract in powder form or in pills or tablets, or the liquor. These ought not to be prescribed in large quantities as they are liable to undergo putrefaction unless when carefully kept; iodothyrin tablets have also been introduced, each containing 0.001 G. ($\frac{1}{60}$ gr.) or more of iodine. The dose should be small at first (*e. g.*, ½ gr. of the dried gland or 2–3 mins. of the liquor every evening for the first week of treatment) and should be gradually increased, until improvement sets in or unpleasant symptoms arise.

Therapeutic Uses. — Iodothyrin is not a dangerous remedy, unless in certain cases. In myxœdema, however, it should be used with care, especially if the heart is seriously affected, as the cardiac muscle may be unable to meet the requirements of the accelerated rhythm; several serious cases and one or two fatalities have already been recorded in these conditions.

Iodothyrin is useful as a substitute for the normal gland secretion in cases where the latter is wanting or deficient, as in myxœdema, cachexia thyreopriva, goitre and sporadic cretinism. In all of these the medication has to be continued for a long time, perhaps throughout life, as otherwise the patient relapses into his former condition. The decrease in weight occurring in thyroid medication suggested its use in obesity, and it has been followed by some loss of weight in a certain number of cases, especially when accompanied by proper dietetic treatment. In many instances it has had little or no effect, however, and the initial encouraging action is seldom maintained when the treatment is continued, the daily loss of weight gradually becoming smaller until it ceases altogether. The amount of fat actually destroyed seems to be trifling, Magnus-Levy estimating that about one pound disappears in ten days, which is much less than can be got rid of by judicious exercise and an appropriate dietary. Besides the continued use of thyroid in these cases is not altogether devoid of danger.

In some skin diseases, especially in psoriasis, it has been of benefit, though not by any means invariably, and in syphilis of old standing some improvement has been seen. This is probably due to the iodine contained, and not to the specific gland secretion. At the same time the peculiar combination in which the iodine is present may perhaps be more easily made use of by the economy than the ordinary inorganic preparations.

The improvement seen in the brain symptoms in myxœdema and cretinism suggested its use in other mental diseases, but the action in the former is due to its substitution for the normal secretion, and little or no effect has followed in ordinary cases of mental disease.

In Graves' disease it seems generally to be injurious. A curious relation appears to exist between thyroid and the thymus gland, for the administration of the latter is often attended by some relief in this disease.

Bibliography.

Baumann u. Roos. Ztschr. f. physiologische Chemie, xxi., xxii.
Roos. Ibid., xxi., xxii., xxv., pp. 1 and 242; xxviii., p. 40.
Baumann u. Goldmann. Münch. med. Woch., 1896, p. 1153.
Ewald. Die Erkrankungen der Schilddrüse — Myxœdem and Cretinismus, Wien, 1896.
Möbius. Die Basedow'sche Krankheit, Wien, 1896. These two are contained in Nothnagel's Specielle Pathologie und Therapie, Bd. xxii.
Hutchison. Brit. Med. Journ., 1896, i., p. 722; 1897, i., p. 194. Journ. of Phys., xx., p. 474; xxiii., p. 178.
Oswald. Zts. f. phys. Chem., xxiii., p. 265; xxvii., p. 14; xxxii., p. 121.
Schöndorff. Pflüger's Arch., lxiii., p. 423; lxvii., p. 395.
David. Zts. f. Heilkunde, xvii., p. 439.
Schiff. Wien. klin. Woch., 1897, p. 277.
Bettmann. Berl. klin. Woch., 1897, p. 518.
Treupel. Münch. med. Woch., 1896, p. 117.
Bleibtreu u. Wendelstadt. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1895, p. 346.
Zinn. Berl. klin. Woch., 1897, p. 577.
Blum. Pflüger's Arch., lxxvii., p. 70.
Voit. Ztschr. f. Biol., xxxv., p. 116.
Cunningham. Journ. of Exp. Med., iii., p. 147.
Magnus-Levy. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxxiii., p. 269.
Donath. Virchow's Arch., cxliv., Supplem., p. 253.
Notkin. Ibid., p. 224.
Hellin. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xl., p. 121.
Howell, Chittenden, Adami, Putnam, Kinnicutt and Osler. Transactions of the Congress of American Physicians and Surgeons, iv., pp. 70–206.
Berkeley. Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin, 1897, p. 137.
Cyon. Pflüger's Arch., lxx., pp. 126, 511, 643.
Ver Eecke. Arch. de Pharmacodynam., iv., p. 81.
Tambach. Ztschr. f. Biol., xxxvi., p. 549.
Anderson u. Bergmann. Skand. Arch. f. Physiol., viii., p. 326.
Georgiewski. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxxiii., p. 153.
Haskovec. Arch. internat. de Pharmacodyn., viii., p. 167.
Edmunds. Proc. Roy. Soc., lxv., p. 368.
Murray. Practitioner, 1901, April.

Other Internal Secretions.

Extract of the **Suprarenal or Adrenal Glands**. See p. 463.

The extracts of the **Pituitary Body** or rather of its posterior lobe or infundibular body, cause some changes in the circulation, owing to their containing two substances which have been termed the pressor and depressor bodies. The arterial tension is increased by the extract or by the pressor body, but the rise is smaller than that induced by suprarenal extract, although it is maintained longer. The heart is slowed, partly through inhibitory action, partly from direct action on the muscle. The depressor body causes a transient fall in the blood pressure. The hypodermic injection of large quantities of the extract is followed by paralysis in mammals. Schiff found that extract of the hypophysis caused a marked increase in the excretion of phosphates in a case of acromegaly and in a healthy old man, while it had no effect on a younger individual; he attributes this to the extract tending to increase the destruction of the bone tissue. Acromegaly is generally regarded as being connected in some way with disease of the hypophysis, but the extract does not seem to modify the disorder in most cases, although improvement has been stated to occur sometimes.

The **Thymus Gland** has been found to contain minute quantities of an iodine compound, which may be identical with that of the thyroid. Svehla found that the injection of an extract into the veins caused considerable acceleration of the pulse with some depression of the blood-pressure. The acceleration was found to be due to direct action on the heart, the fall of the blood-pressure to paralysis of the vaso-constrictors. Very large quantities

caused restlessness, collapse and death. Thymus extract has been advised in exophthalmic goitre, and is said to be of some value in a certain number of cases, but does not benefit most patients.

The excision of the **Pancreas** in animals is followed by the appearance of sugar in large quantity in the urine, and in many cases of diabetes in the human subject the pancreas is found diseased, so that this gland seems to secrete some substance which is required by the tissues to enable them to maintain the normal amount of sugar in the blood. Extract of pancreas has therefore been administered in diabetes, but as yet without satisfactory results in the ordinary form of the disease.

Bone Marrow extract and **Spleen** extract have been given in pernicious anæmia in order to increase the number of the red cells, and many other extracts of organs have been proposed, often on the most extraordinary grounds. It was not to be expected that these extracts of brain, heart, liver, kidney, prostate and lung would prove of benefit in the diseases of these organs, and experience has shown that they may without exception be relegated to the realms of quackery.

One extract deserves mention on account of the attention it has attracted, and the influence it has had on the theory of organotherapeutics—the extract of the **Testicles.** The use of testicular extract was first recommended by Brown-Sequard in 1889, as having a general tonic effect. He was led to this conclusion by the consideration that the sexual power is diminished in advanced life and made the bold step from this, that one of the causes of the woes of old age is the diminution of the internal secretion of the testes; this elixir of youth might, however, be obtained by extracting the organs in various ways. It is surprising how widely this theory has been accepted, and with what zeal all sorts of preparations of the testicles and ovaries, including the unaltered human semen, have been used in therapeutics, and, it must be added in justice to the observers, in experiments upon themselves. While there is no question that the removal of these organs exercises an important influence on a number of organs and tissues, there are no sufficient grounds for believing that the testicular extract has any effect whatsoever except through hypnotic suggestion. Two investigators have recently attempted to demonstrate the increase in the muscular strength by means of the ergograph, but the results obtained by means of this instrument in other investigations have proved so deceptive, that little weight is to be laid on their results. Loewy and Richter state that extract of testicle increases the oxidation in the tissues of male castrated animals, but not in normal male animals or in castrated females; extract of ovary (*oophorin*) has a similar effect on the castrated female.

Instead of the extract of testicle, *spermine*, an alkaloid found in the testicle chiefly, but also in a number of other organs, has been proposed by Poehl. According to this author, it is an important factor in the oxidation of the tissues, and a number of symptoms of disease are due to its being precipitated in the form of the phosphate and thus rendered inactive, this being especially liable to occur whenever the alkalinity of the blood is reduced in any way. Poehl's spermine has therefore been advised in a large number of diseases, and in fact is considered by some almost a panacea. His statements are not founded on any satisfactory experimental or clinical observations, and have met with little credence from experienced physicians. Spermine was at one time supposed to be identical with piperazine but this has proved to be erroneous.

Bibliography.

On **Pituitary Gland.**

Schäfer and Oliver. Journ. of Phys., xviii., p. 277.
Howell. Journ. of Exp. Med., iii., p. 245.
Schiff. Wien. klin. Woch., 1897, p. 277.
Mairet et Bosc. Arch. de Phys. (5), viii., p. 600.

Cleghorn. Amer. Journ. of Phys., ii., p. 282.
Schäfer and Vincent. Jour. of Physiol., xxv., p. 87.

On **Thymus Gland.**

Svehla. Arch. f. Exp. Path. u. Pharm., xliii., p. 321.
Kinnicutt. Cong. of Amer. Phys. and Surg., iv., p. 157.

On **Testicular Extract** (experimental).

Zoth. Pflüger's Arch., lxii., p. 335; lxix., p. 386.
Pregl. Ibid., lxii., p. 379.
Loewy u. Richter. Arch. f. [Anat. u.] Phys., 1899, Suppl., p. 174.
Dixon. Journ. of Physiol., xxvi., p. 244.

On **Spermine.**

Bubis. Therap. Monatsch., 1896, p. 22.
Spitzer. Berl. klin. Woch., 1895, p. 695.
Poehl. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxvi., p. 135.

IV. TOXALBUMINS.

A series of bodies, whose existence has only been recognized in the last few years, but whose importance in medicine is ever increasing, is that of the poisonous proteids or toxalbumins. The idea that a proteid can produce dangerous or even fatal symptoms, or act in any way except as a food, dates only from 1884, but many of the animal poisons are now believed to be of proteid nature, and the toxins formed by the micro-organisms of disease are almost certainly of the same general class. The description of most of these must be relegated to the text-books on bacteriology and pathology, but some toxalbumins which are associated with drugs in daily use deserve short mention.

Ricin is an intensely poisonous globulin found in the seeds of Ricinus communis along with castor oil, which does not itself contain this principle, however. Ricin is poisonous in doses of about $\frac{1}{25}$ milligram ($\frac{1}{1600}$ gr.) per kilogram body weight when it is injected into the blood, and is somewhat less poisonous when applied subcutaneously, but seldom causes any symptoms when swallowed, as it is apparently destroyed for the most part by the digestive ferments. It is thus among the most powerful of the vegetable poisons when it is injected directly into the blood. Death often occurs only several days after the injection in animals, and in the interval no symptoms make their appearance except some loss of appetite, and towards the end, diarrhœa and vomiting. Post-mortem, the bowel is found inflamed and congested and contains ecchymoses; blood is found in the serous cavities, and extravasations may occur in various other organs, although not so uniformly as in the bowel. Among the most obvious lesions are the innumerable ecchymoses in the great omentum and the swelling of the abdominal lymph-glands, which generally contain numerous small hæmorrhages. Microscopical examination reveals small foci of necrosed tissue in the liver, spleen, intestine, stomach and other organs. Ricin seems to be excreted by the intestinal epithelium, which may explain the violence of its action here, although it acts as a poison in many other tissues. It is a powerful irritant, inducing inflammation and suppuration when it is injected subcutaneously, or is applied to the conjunctiva. On the other hand it has little or no irritant action on the mouth and throat, and is digested and rendered harmless in the stomach. The mucous membrane of the nose is irritated by the inhalation of the powder in many persons. This toxoglobulin has a very characteristic action on the blood. When a drop of a dilute solution is added to a test-tube of defibrinated blood, the corpuscles soon fall to the bottom, leaving the clear serum above, and the blood does not filter through paper any longer, the corpuscles all remaining on the filter, the serum passing through colorless. This is due to the agglutination of the red cells,

which are formed into masses and thus fail to pass through the pores of the filter. Fibrin does not seem to be formed in the process, as was at one time supposed, but the nature of the cementing substance is unknown. Stillmark supposed that ricin formed these masses of red cells in the blood vessels, and that the symptoms were due to the emboli resulting, but this is certainly incorrect, for the blood of immune animals reacts in the same way, yet these are not poisoned by many times the usual fatal dose of ricin.

Ehrlich found that animals rapidly acquired immunity to the action of ricin, if they received for some time small non-toxic doses. From this discovery has arisen the whole of serum-therapeutics, which plays such an important rôle in medicine at the present time. By gradually increasing the daily amount of ricin, rabbits have attained an immunity of 5,000, that is, they are not affected by 5,000 times as much ricin as would have killed them had no preliminary treatment been instituted. This immunity is entirely different from the tolerance acquired for morphine and other drugs, for the latter is due to the cells of the body becoming accustomed to being constantly bathed in a fluid containing the alkaloid. The same tolerance is acquired by various marine animals, which would be killed if suddenly changed to fresh water, but which are gradually acclimatized, if the change is made more gradually by adding increasing proportions of fresh water to the sea water of the aquarium. The immunity acquired for ricin and other toxalbumins is, on the contrary, due to the formation in the body of a substance which antagonizes the original poison, and which is known as an antitoxin, in this case antiricin. This antagonistic substance circulates in the blood, and can be withdrawn from the immune animal and injected into a second, which then acquires a certain degree of immunity, although less than that of the first. In tolerance, then, the tissues become indifferent to the poison; in immunity they form an antitoxin. Antiricin is antagonistic only to ricin ; it does not protect an animal from any other toxalbumin.

Ricin and antiricin are not used in therapeutics, but ricin has repeatedly given rise to poisoning, from the beans being taken as a substitute for the oil. Cattle have also been poisoned by being fed on the refuse of castor oil beans after the oil had been expressed.

Another vegetable toxalbumin which resembles ricin very closely in its effects is **Abrin,** which is obtained from the seeds of Abrus precatorius or jequirity, the familiar scarlet and black beans, which are often formed into necklaces. Abrin contains two poisons, a globulin and an albumose, of which the former is the more powerful. It induces the same symptoms as ricin, but is less poisonous, and immunity can be acquired in the same way. Animals which are immune to ricin are not more resistant to the action of abrin than others, because the two poisons form different antitoxins. Abrin or jequirity has been used as an irritant to the eye in cases of granular lids and of corneal opacities. It causes an acute inflammation which improves the condition in some cases, but it must be regarded as an exceedingly dangerous remedy, as the inflammation is entirely beyond the control of the surgeons. In animals the eye is often completely destroyed by the application of abrin, while in other experiments enough of the drug is absorbed to cause fatal poisoning.

Crotin is another toxalbumin, which is found in the Croton Tiglium, but which does not pass into croton oil. It is less poisonous than ricin and abrin, but resembles them in most other points, except that it does not cause agglutination of the blood cells of certain animals, while ricin and abrin have this effect in all kinds of blood hitherto examined. Many other plants contain toxalbumins, but none of them have aroused so much interest as those mentioned above.

Many animals produce proteid poisons, such as the snakes, the poisonous lizard, Heloderma suspectum (Gila monster), several amphibia and fish, and the scorpions and spiders (tarantula). On the other hand, several insect

poisons which resemble these poisons in their irritant action and in some other points, have been shown not to be proteids. An antitoxin for snake poison has been introduced recently under the name of antivenin, and is found in the bile of poisonous snakes and in smaller quantities in that of other animals. These animal poisons and the bacterial poisons, however, can be treated of with advantage only in special text-books.

BIBLIOGRAPHY of Ricin, Abrin and Crotin.

Stillmark. Arb. a. d. pharm. Instit. zu Dorpat, iii., p. 59.
Martin. Proc. Roy. Soc., xlii., p. 331 ; xlvi., p. 94.
Hellin. Inaug. Diss., Dorpat, 1891.
Ehrlich. Deutsch. med. Woch., 1891, Nos. 32 and 44.
Flexner. Journ. of Exp. Med., ii., p. 197.
Elfstrand. Kobert's Görbersdorfer Veröffentlichungen, i., p. 1.
Müller. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., xlii., p. 302.
Jacoby. Ibid., xlvi., p. 28 ; Beiträge z. Chem. Phys. u. Path., i., p. 51.

V. COD-LIVER OIL.

Cod-liver oil has been long used by the fishermen of the North Sea as a remedy in children's diseases, and was introduced into medicine in the beginning of last century, but became generally used only in the last fifty years.

It is obtained from the liver of the cod-fish (Gadus morrhua), and probably from other members of the genus. Formerly the livers were left to decompose, and the oil set free by the breaking up of the cells was collected. It had a most disagreeable odor and taste, however, and many patients could not be induced to take it, while those who were courageous enough to swallow it, often suffered from eructation and diarrhœa afterwards. This method was therefore soon replaced by the "steam-process," in which the oil is melted out of the fresh livers, yielding an oil of much lighter color, and with much less disagreeable smell and taste. Quite recently a new process has been introduced, by which the oil is extracted by steam, without being exposed to the air, and it is stated that oil thus obtained is less disagreeable than any other.

The cod-liver oils used in therapeutics differ considerably in appearance and in composition, the older preparations being brownish in color, and having a strong fishy odor and a somewhat acrid, disagreeable taste, while the oil prepared by the more recent process is pale yellow in color, and has much less odor and a bland taste.

Cod-liver oil probably contains the ordinary constituents of an animal fat, olein, stearin and palmitin, but the relative proportion in which these are present is unknown. Some free fatty acid is generally found in it, the darker preparations containing some 4–7 per cent., the pale yellow oil less than one per cent. as a general rule.

Iodine and bromine are present in traces, apparently very much smaller in amount than is generally believed. The usual statement is that 0.03–0.04 per cent. of iodine and 0 003–0.005 of bromine exists in the oil, but some oils have been found to contain only about one-hundredth of this amount of iodine.

Phosphorus is found in traces in some oils, in an organic combination,

not in the free state. A small percentage of cholesterin is often, not invariably present, and bile acids and pigments have been said to occur, but this seems incorrect. A number of bases have been found in cod-liver oil by Gautier, especially in the darker colored varieties, while the pale yellow oil contains little or none. These bases or alkaloids (leucomaines) are *Butylamine* ($C_4H_{11}N$), *Amylamine* ($C_5H_{13}N$), *Hexylamine* ($C_6H_{15}N$), *Dihydrolutidine* ($C_7H_{11}N$) and two new non-volatile ones, *Asseline* and *Morrhuine*. They were found combined with morrhuic, formic, butyric and other acids. *Trimethylamine* has also been said to occur in it.

Heyderdahl has recently stated that cod-liver oil contains no olein or stearin and only some four per cent. of palmitin, the bulk of the oil being made up of therapin, jecolein and other similar bodies; these are all glycerides of unsaturated acids of the oleic acid series except therapin, which is the glyceride of an acid with several unsaturated carbons. All of these acids change to oxyacids in the air and then cause eructation when swallowed. He attributes the benefits arising from cod-liver oil treatment to these glycerides, which, he considers, are readily assimilated by the tissues and which are not present in any other food. But it seems unlikely that this fat should be so entirely different from all other animal fats, and Heyderdahl's statements certainly require confirmation before they can be accepted.

Cod-liver oil has no very distinct action when taken in ordinary doses, while in large quantities it has a tendency to cause eructation, nausea and diarrhœa. Taken repeatedly, it increases the weight and strength, and improves the general condition. The same effects are obtained in healthy persons by the use of good food and fats, but delicate patients who are unable to digest ordinary animal fats, are able to take cod-liver oil. Its effects are obviously those of an easily assimilable food, and it is not a drug in the ordinary sense of the term, and has therefore no place in pharmacology properly speaking, but should be classed along with other foods. It is always treated of as a drug, however, because it has often been supposed to have some specific effect quite apart from ordinary foods. It is generally believed to differ from ordinary fats in being more readily assimilable, but the explanation of this fact is by no means agreed upon, for though it is often said to be more rapidly absorbed from the intestine, there is little reliable evidence that such is the case. A few experiments have been carried out, but by no means enough to establish the truth of the statement satisfactorily, and the chief argument brought forward in its support is that cod-liver oil forms an emulsion in the test-tube more rapidly than other oils. It is undoubtedly well borne by the stomach, but it has not been often compared with other oils in regard to this point, and it is still impossible to state that other oils administered with the same care as cod-liver oil are not equally successful remedies.

Buchheim explained that cod-liver oil formed an emulsion rapidly on account of the free acid it contained, and this has generally been put forward as accounting for its effects in therapeutics. As far as regards the old dark-colored oils, this explanation may hold good, but the pale oil now used in therapeutics often contains less free acid than ordinary olive oil. Some enthusiastic supporters of Buchheim's theory have, therefore, asserted that the pale oil does not give the same results

as the older, less pure, acid preparations, but this is not the general opinion of the medical profession.

The older explanations started from the view that cod-liver oil is a drug, that the oil itself is only a means to administer certain active principles contained in it. Thus iodine and phosphorus were in turn supposed to be the essential constituents, but have both been shown to be present in too small quantities to be of any effect. More recently cholesterin has been suggested as the curative agent, but it is present in smaller quantities in cod-liver oil than in many other foods.

Lastly the bases have been credited with lending cod-liver oil all its virtues. But the pale oil contains only traces of these, and again the statement has been made that the brown oil is superior. An attempt has been made to support this theory by examining the urine of persons under treatment with the bases separated from the oil. The urine has been found increased in amount, the urea augmented, the less oxidized forms of nitrogen diminished, but these experiments are of no value, because apparently no measures were taken to keep the amount of food ingested constant.

Several substitutes for cod-liver oil have been proposed, such as **Lipanin** (v. Mering), which is formed from olive oil by the addition of 6 per cent. of oleic acid, and which was suggested by the theory that cod-liver oil owes its rapid absorption to the presence of free acid. A mixture of cacao butter and oleic acid has also been introduced, as well as oil of sesame and olive oil. On the theory that the bases were the indispensable part of the oil, **Morrhuol**, a crude mixture of bases, acids and pigment, has been introduced into therapeutics and used to some extent, but it has not proved a substitute for the oil in practice. Lipanin has been used only to a limited extent, and has not been able to supplant cod-liver oil, although, like oil of sesame and olive oil, it has the advantage of being much less disagreeable in smell and taste. This may perhaps be due to the conservatism of the medical profession, rather than to the special merits of cod-liver oil.

On the whole, cod-liver oil has not been shown to have any action apart from that of an easily digested food, and its superiority to some other fats and oils has not been satisfactorily established.

Preparation.

Oleum Morrhuæ (U. S. P., B. P.), cod-liver oil, Oleum Jecoris Aselli, a fixed oil obtained from the fresh livers of Gadus Morrhua and of other species of Gadus,—a pale yellow, thin, oily liquid, with a peculiar, slightly fishy, but not rancid odor, and a bland slightly fishy taste. 4–16 c.c. (1–4 fl. drs.).

Therapeutic Uses. — Cod-liver oil is used in chronic wasting diseases, such as tuberculosis, scrofula, rickets and some forms of syphilis. It is especially beneficial in the earlier stages of pulmonary phthisis, but has no specific virtues here or elsewhere apart from those of an easily digested fat. In all forms of malnutrition and delicacy in children, it is largely used, and undoubtedly causes a considerable increase in weight, but care must be taken that it does not disturb the digestion, especially if the darker oils are used. In some persons pure cod-liver oil always induces nausea, but a much larger number refuse to take the brown oil. In most cases the light-colored oil is taken readily, especially if the dose be small at first (a teaspoonful). When there is dyspepsia or a tendency to diarrhœa, cod-liver oil should be given

with caution, and it is generally prescribed only in cold weather, as it is found that patients have a distaste for it in summer. When fever or acute disease is present, cod-liver oil is generally found of little value, perhaps on account of the disturbed condition of the digestion. Cod-liver oil should not be forced on patients; when it continues to induce nausea and eructation after a fair trial, it should be abandoned.

Innumerable means have been proposed to conceal the odor and taste, but it is generally conceded that when possible the pure oil is better given alone. When patients cannot be induced to take it in this way, some volatile oil, ether, or brandy may be added to it; saccharine has also been used to sweeten it. Creosote is sometimes mixed with cod-liver oil in cases of phthisis, or an emulsion is formed containing cod-liver oil, some flavoring substance, iron, hypophosphites or calcium. Extract of malt and cod-liver oil form a common mixture, and are the basis of many patented emulsions.

In general, the pale oil is preferred, but it must be added that some physicians persist in the use of the darker forms, which contain more bases and more free acid, but have a much more disagreeable taste and smell, and are more liable to disturb the digestion. Of the substitutes for cod-liver oil, lipanin has little taste and is generally taken readily. It may be given shaken up in milk, or formed into an emulsion.

Bibliography.

Naumann. Arch. der Heilkunde, 1865, p. 536.
Buchheim. Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharm., iii., p. 118.
V. Mering. Therap. Monatsh., 1888, pp. 49 and 233.
Salkowski. Ibid., 1888, p. 230.
Hauser. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xiv., p. 543; xx., p. 239.
Lowenthal. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1897, p. 258.
Mersereau. New York Med. Journ., 1899, ii., p. 11.
Sternberg. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., xxii., p. 295.
Bouillot. Compt. Rend. de l'Acad. des Scien., cxv., p. 754.
Gautier et Mourgues. Les Alcaloides de Huile des Foies de Morue, Paris, 1890.
Heyerdahl. F. Pekel Möller's Cod-liver Oil and Chemistry, London, 1895, p. 88.

VI. PHLORIDZIN.[1]

Phloridzin is not used in therapeutics, but has attracted some attention from its effects in animals, and may therefore be mentioned shortly. It is a glucoside ($C_{21}H_{24}O_{10} + 2H_2O$) found in the rootbark of the apple, pear, cherry and plum tree. When given in large quantities by the mouth it sometimes causes some diarrhœa in animals, but apart from this its only effect is glycosuria, which also follows its injection subcutaneously or intravenously. The urine is found to contain 5–15 per cent. or even more of sugar, sometimes along with acetone and oxybutyric acid, so that the intoxication seems at first sight to resemble diabetes mellitus in man very closely. Phloridzin induces the same results in man, and the glycosuria is not accompanied by any other symptoms generally. It differs from true diabetes, however, in the fact that the sugar of the blood is not increased in amount. The glycosuria is not due to any change in the general metabolism of the body, therefore, but to some alteration of the renal epithelium, by which

[1] Phloridzin is not in any way related to the other drugs of this part, and has only been inserted here because no suitable position could be found elsewhere.

the blood sugar escapes into the urine instead of being retained in the body and used as a source of energy. This has been definitely proven by Zuntz, who showed that when phloridzin was injected into one renal artery, the urine secreted by the corresponding kidney contained sugar, while that from the other remained normal for some time. As the available sugar is drained off in the urine, the tissues rapidly manufacture more and pour it into the blood. As long as sufficient food is given, the loss of sugar does not seem to entail any increase in the destruction of the proteid tissues, but when phloridzin is given to starving dogs, the waste of sugar has to be made up from the tissues, and the nitrogen of the urine accordingly rises in amount, while at the same time the liver cells become infiltrated with fat globules. The statement that the sugar of the milk is increased by phloridzin has proved to be incorrect.

Glycosuria may be maintained for an indefinite time if the administration of phloridzin be continued, and animals recover rapidly when the treatment is stopped. The glucoside is probably excreted in the urine unchanged, although this has not been quite satisfactorily demonstrated as yet. Phloridzin may be decomposed into a sugar, phlorose, and phloretin, which also induces glycosuria.

Syzygium Jambolanum, a tree growing in South America and in the East Indies, is said to contain some unknown substance which has a specific action in diabetes. Several clinical observers have observed improvement in some cases, but others have seen no result whatever follow, and as a general rule, no sufficient estimation of the sugar of the urine was made in the cases in which the treatment was believed to be successful. Some experiments on animals seem to indicate that it modifies the sugar formation in the tissues, but cannot be accepted until they are confirmed by further research.

Bibliography of Phloridzin.

V. Mering. Zts. f. klin. Med., xiv., p. 405; xvi., p. 431.
Rosenfeld. Ibid., xxviii., p. 256.
Zuntz. Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys. (Phys. Abth.), 1895, p. 570.
Coolen. Arch. de Pharmacodynam., i., p. 267; ii., p. 255.
Kulz, Wright, Moritz, Prausnitz, Cremer, Ritter, Lusk. Zts. f. Biol., xxvii., xxviii., xxix., xxxvi.
Reilly, Nolan and Lusk. Am. Jour. of Phys., i., p. 395.
Levene. Jour. of Exp. Med., ii., p. 107.
Pappenheim. Arch. f. Verdauungskrank., iii., p. 421.
Hildebrandt. Virchow's Arch., cxxxi., p. 26.

PART VI.

MENSTRUA AND MECHANICAL REMEDIES.

Oleum Theobromatis (U. S. P., B. P.), cacao-butter, a fixed oil expressed from the seeds of Theobroma cacao, forms a yellowish-white solid having a faint, agreeable odor and a bland, chocolate taste. It melts a little below the temperature of the body. Cacao-butter is used almost exclusively to form suppositories, in which astringents and other remedies are incorporated. When these are introduced into the rectum, they melt and the active principle is liberated.

Keratin (not official) is a substance obtained from horns, hoofs, nails, etc., which is insoluble in the gastric juices, but is dissolved by the alkaline pancreatic secretion. It is used to coat pills which it is desired to protect from disintegration in the stomach.

Kaolinum (B. P.), or porcelain clay, is used in the formation of pills containing easily reduced bodies, such as silver nitrate or potassium permanganate. Mixed with the ordinary vegetable excipients, such as confection of roses, or extract of liquorice or gentian, these salts would be reduced at once. Kaolin is an aluminium silicate and forms a soft whitish powder insoluble in water or dilute acids.

Sapo (U. S. P.), **Sapo Duras** (B. P.), hard soap, white Castile soap, is prepared from soda and olive oil.

Sapo Mollis (U. S. P., B. P.), soft soap, sapo viridis, a soap made from potash and olive oil.

Sapo Animalis (B. P.), curd soap, soap made with sodium hydroxide and a purified animal fat consisting chiefly of stearin ; it contains about 30 per cent. of water.

These soaps are used in therapeutics as ingredients of liniments and plasters. Water containing soap is often thrown into the rectum as an enema, and in infants a soapstick inserted into the anus generally provokes evacuation of the bowels in a few minutes.

Soaps impregnated with antiseptics, such as perchloride of mercury, carbolic acid, tar, or iodine, are often used to disinfect the hands.

The chief preparations in which soap is used in the pharmacopœias are :

Emplastrum Saponis (U. S. P., B. P.), soap plaster.

Linimentum Saponis (U. S. P., B. P.), soap liniment.

Linimentum Saponis Mollis (U. S. P., B. P.).

The liniments consist of alcohol with soap in suspension, perfumed with volatile oils, and are mildly irritant to the skin. They are used largely as bases for other liniments.

The use of the oils, fats and glycerin as vehicles for the application of remedies to the skin has been mentioned already (page 49). They may also be used to dissolve remedies which are insoluble in water, but which are to be given by the mouth, such as phosphorus (in oil).

Wax (cera alba, cera flava) is used chiefly to increase the consistency of ointments. A special series of preparations somewhat stiffer than the ointments are the cerates of the U. S. P.

Plasters are sticky adhesive substances which are chiefly used to give mechanical support, but which are often impregnated with active remedies in order to elicit their local action on the skin. The basis of many of the plasters is lead plaster, which is obtained by the action of lead oxide on olive oil and consists for the most part of lead oleate.

Emplastrum Plumbi (U. S. P., B. P.), lead or diachylon plaster.
Emplastrum Resinæ (U. S. P., B. P.), adhesive plaster.
Emplastrum Saponis (U. S. P., B. P.), soap plaster.
Emplastrum Opii (U. S. P., B. P.), opium plaster.
Emplastrum Belladonnæ (U. S. P., B. P.), belladonna plaster.
Emplastrum Picis Burgundicæ (U. S. P.), *Emplastrum Picis* (B. P.), Burgundy pitch plaster.
Emplastrum Capsici (U. S. P.).
Emplastrum Arnicæ (U. S. P.).
Emplastrum Picis Cantharidatum (U. S. P.), warming plaster.
Emplastrum Calefaciens (B. P.), warming plaster.
Emplastrum Cantharidis (B. P.).
Emplastrum Hydrargyri (U. S. P., B. P.), mercury plaster.
Emplastrum Ammoniaci cum Hydrargyro (U. S. P., B. P.).
Emplastrum Plumbi Iodidi (B. P.).
Emplastrum Ferri (U. S. P.).
Emplastrum Menthol (B. P.).
Emplastrum Ichthyocollæ (U. S. P.), isinglass plaster or court plaster.

Court plaster is formed from isinglass, the dried swimming bladder of several species of sturgeon, which is dissolved in water, alcohol and glycerin and painted on taffeta. Isinglass differs from lead plaster and its derivatives in being transparent, so that if it be spread on a flesh-colored cloth, it disfigures the hands and face less than the others.

Lead plaster, resin plaster and isinglass plaster are used only to cover and protect cuts and abrasions, and to keep the edges of wounds in apposition. The adhesive plaster and isinglass plaster are superior to lead plaster, as they stick more firmly. It is perhaps unnecessary to add that plasters are always applied spread on cloth. Opium and belladonna plasters are believed to lessen pain locally as well as to give support, but this is perhaps imaginary. Belladonna plaster is said to lessen the secretion of perspiration and of milk. The pitch, arnica, menthol and capsicum plasters have some irritant action and this is of course more marked in the case of the warming plaster and cantharides plaster. Some mercury is absorbed when the mercury plasters are applied to the skin, but this method of administration allows of even less accurate dosage than inunction, and is seldom used. Iron plaster is devoid of any properties apart from those shared with the others.

Another series resembling the plasters in their sphere of usefulness is formed by the **Collodia**. Their basis is pyroxylin, or soluble gun-cotton, which is formed from cotton by the action of sulphuric and nitric acids, and which consists of a mixture of nitrates of cellulose. Collodion is formed by dissolving pyroxylin in a mixture of alcohol and ether. When these evaporate, there remains a fine layer of pyroxylin, which protects the surface to which it is applied and gums the edges of slight cuts together. This collodion is rendered less brittle by the addition of Canada turpentine and castor oil in small proportions, and is then known as flexible collodion. A blistering collodion is formed by the addition of powdered cantharides to the flexible preparation. Another preparation contains tannic acid.

Pyroxylinum (U. S. P., B. P.), soluble gun cotton, colloxylin.
Collodium (U. S. P., B. P.), collodion.
Collodium Flexile (U. S. P., B. P.), flexible collodion.
Collodium Cantharidatum (U. S. P.), *Collodium Vesicans* (B. P.), blistering collodion.
Collodium Stypticum contains 20 per cent. of tannic acid.

Instead of collodion, india-rubber, *Caoutchouc* (B. P.), *Elastica* (U. S. P.), may be dissolved in chloroform and applied in the same way.

Calcii Sulphas Exsiccatus (U. S. P.), Dried Gypsum, and *Liquor Sodii Silicatis* (U. S. P.), solution of waterglass, are used to impregnate bandages, which then become hard and immovable. The waterglass bandage is lighter than the plaster of Paris (gypsum) one, but has not been so widely used.

CLASSIFICATION OF DRUGS ACCORDING TO THEIR THERAPEUTIC USES.

I. Drugs applied for their local action to the skin, wounds or visible mucous membranes.

Corrosives or caustics.

- Potash, 544
- Mercury nitrate, 654
- Potassium and sodium carbonate, 544
- Silver nitrate, 691
- Zinc chloride, 688
- Nitric acid and other acids, 559
- Chromic acid, 704
- Burnt alum, 700
- Bromine, 586
- Arsenic, 607
- Lead nitrate, 674
- Trichloracetic acid, 568
- Ammoniated mercury and other mercury preparations, 654
- (Soda, 544)
- (Sodium ethylate, 549)
- (Lime, 569)
- (Carbolic acid, 398)

Disinfectants and antiseptics.

- Hydrogen peroxide, 591
- Permanganate of Potassium, 591
- Chlorine, 586 } not applied to living objects
- Sulphurous anhydride, 566 } not applied to living objects
- Formaldehyde, 428 } not applied to living objects
- Carbolic acid, 398
- Corrosive sublimate and other mercury salts, 654
- Silver nitrate, 691
- Zinc chloride, 688
- Boracic acid, 582
- Iodoform, Iodol, 521
- Cresol, 404
- Tar, 410
- Salicylic acid, 413
- (Benzoic acid, 423)
- (Camphor, 430)
- (Sulphites, 533)
- (Sulphocarbolates, 422)
- (Volatile oils (thymol, eucalyptol, etc.))

Astringents.

- Tannic acid series, 111
- Iron preparations, e. g., sulphate, 659
- Bismuth preparations, 696
- Lead acetate, 674
- Zinc sulphate and oxide, 688
- Copper sulphate, 684
- Alum, 700

Styptics.

- Soluble astringents (see above)
  - Iron perchloride, 659
  - Silver nitrate, 691
  - Burnt alum, 700

To contract vessels and reduce hæmorrhage and swelling.

- Cocaine, 302
- Suprarenal extract (adrenalin), 463

Emollients or protectives.

- Emollients, 49
- Plasters and Collodia, 732
- Dusting powders—starch, talcum, chalk, 53
  - and many insoluble metallic powders which may also be slightly astringent.

Local anodynes and analgesics for pain and itching.

- Bicarbonate of potassium, 544
- Cocaine, eucaine, orthoform, etc., 302
- Carbolic acid, 398
- Chloretone, 187
- (Prussic acid, 239)
- (Atropine, 279)
- (Aconite, 332)
- (Veratrine, 38)

Local anæsthetics.

- Cold by evaporation of ether, etc., 182
- Cocaine and eucaine, 302

II. Drugs used for affections of the alimentary tract.

MOUTH AND THROAT (see section I.)

Demulcents, 45

- Chlorates, 526
- Ammonium chloride, 500
- Cubebs, 75

To lessen salivation, atropine, 279

Flavoring substances.
Sugars, 54
Volatile oil series, 66
Acids (citric), 559
Syrups of Tolu, ginger, etc.

STOMACH. *Digestives.*
Pepsin, papain, etc., 709
Hydrochloric acid, 565

Emetics.
Common salt, 490
Mustard, 89
Warm water
Apomorphine, 235
Ipecacuanha, 343
Tartar emetic, 625
Copper sulphate, 688
Zinc sulphate, 691
(Alum, 700)
(Ammonium carbonate, 554)

To lessen irritation and vomiting.
Opium, 207
Chloral, 187
Lime water, 569
Bismuth, 696
Cerium oxalate, 700
Cold (ice)
Cocaine, 302
Carbonic acid water, 584
Demulcents, 45
(Prussic acid, 239)

To lessen acidity. antacids.
Potassium and sodium carbonate and bicarbonates, 544
Magnesia and magnesium carbonate, 544
Lime water and chalk, 569
Lithium carbonate, 544

To increase secretion, bitters.
Simple bitters, 56
Nux vomica and strychnine, 196
Cinchona and quinine, 357
(Hydrastis, 230)
(Salicin, 413)

Carminatives.
Volatile oil carminatives, 61
Alcoholic preparations
Carbonic acid waters, 584
Carbonates and bicarbonates, 544
Bitters (see above)
Camphor, 430
Charcoal, 581
Ammonium carbonate, 544
(Peppers, 72)

INTESTINE. *To promote digestion.*
(Pancreatin, 710)
(Diastase, 711)

To promote evacuation—purgatives.
Vegetable purgatives, 95
Saline cathartics, 535
Mercurial purgatives—calomel and metallic preparations, 638
Sulphur, 577
Enemata
Glycerin suppositories, 51
(Atropine)

To lessen movement and relax spasm.
Opium and morphine, 207
Tannic acid series, 111
Lime water, 569
Lead acetate, 674
Bismuth, 696
Atropine (to relax spasm), 279
(Alum, 700)

To destroy parasites—anthelmintics.
Male fern, 118
Pomegranate, 121
Cusso, etc., 120
Santonin, 122
Calomel, 638
Salol, 413
(Some volatile oils)
(Chloroform, 182)
(Thymol, naphtol, 405)
(Quassia enema, 56)

Disinfectants and antiseptics.
(Vegetable and Saline Purgatives)
Mercurial Purges—Calomel, 638
Naphtol, 408
Salol, 413

III. Drugs used for their effects on the circulation.

HEART. *To strengthen contraction.*
Digitalis group, 440

To accelerate pulse.
Atropine, 279
(Camphor, 430)
(Caffeine, 245)

To slow the pulse.
Digitalis group, 440
Aconite, 332
Veratrine, 338
Strychnine, 196

VESSELS. *To contract calibre and raise blood-pressure.*
Digitalis, 440
Strychnine, 196
Caffeine, 245
Camphor, 430
Ergot, 476

To relax vessels and lower blood-pressure.
Nitrite series, 468

To arrest internal hæmorrhage (styptics).
Ergot, 476
Hydrastine and hyrastinine, 230
Opium and morphine (to allay restlessness)

To remove fluid (dropsy, anasarca).
Digitalis series, 440
Diuretics (see kidney below)
Saline cathartics, 535
Diaphoretics (see skin, below)
(Vegetable cathartics, 95)
(Salicylic acid, 413)

IV. Drugs used for their effects on the genito-urinary system.

To increase the flow of urine (diuretics).
Caffeine and theobromine, 245
Digitalis and squills, 440
(Turpentine, uva ursi, scoparius)
Nitrates, 531
Acetates, 555
Citrates, iodides of the alkalies, 510
Carbonates, 544
Mercury—calomel and blue pill, 638

To render the urine less acid.
Alkali carbonates and bicarbonates, 544
acetates, 555
citrates, 556

To render the urine antiseptic.
Copaiba series, 75
Salol and salicylates, 413
Sodium sulphocarbolate, 422
Borax, 582
Urotropin, 553
Local antiseptics, astringents, anodynes, caustics, etc., are used in the urethra and bladder.

To promote contraction of the uterus (ecbolics).
Ergot, 476
Quinine, 357
(Pilocarpine, 315)
(Cottonroot-bark, 476)
(Hydrastis, 230)

To promote menstruation (emmenagogues).
Iron, 659
Vegetable purgatives—aloes, 95
(Myrrh)

V. Drugs used for their effects on the respiratory system.

To stimulate the respiratory centre.
Atropine, 279
Caffeine, 245
Camphor, 430
Strychnine, 196
(Alcohol?)

To reduce the irritability of the centre in cough.
Opium, morphine and codeine, 207
(Heroine)
Chloral series, 187
Bromides of the alkalies, 504

To increase and liquefy the bronchial secretion.
Ipecacuanha, 343
Tartar emetic, 633
Squills, 440
Senega, 350
Ammonium carbonate, 555
Iodides of the alkalies, 510
(Lobelia, 278)

To lessen the secretion of the bronchi (?).
Benzoic acid, benzoin, Tolu balsam, 423
Ammonium chloride, 500
Cubebs, 75

To relax bronchial spasm (?) in asthma.
Belladonna and atropine, 279
Lobelia, 278
Nitrite series, 468
Iodides, 510
(Charta potassii nitratis, 531)
(Aspidosperma, 356)

VI. Drugs used for their effects on the Central Nervous System.

Stimulants.

(*a*) *The spinal cord.*
Strychnine, 196

(*b*) *The brain and medulla oblongata.*
Atropine (cocaine), 279
Camphor, 430
Caffeine, 245

Depressants.

(*a*) *To paralyze sensation—General anæsthetics.*
Ether, chloroform, nitrous oxide, 154–187

(*b*) *To induce sleep and rest—hypnotics or narcotics.*
Opium and morphine, 207
Alcohol, 131
Chloral group, 187
Bromides, 504
Hyoscine, 279
Cannabis indica, 233

To relieve pain—analgesics or anodynes.
Opium, 207
Cannabis, 233
Antipyrine series, 373
(Alcohol, 131)
(Chloral, 187)
(Arsenic, iodides, quinine, nitrites are sometimes of value in headache)

VII. Drugs used to reduce fever temperature.
Antipyrine and acetanilide group, 373
Quinine, 357
Aconite, 332
Salicylic acid group, 413
Diaphoretics (see below)
(Resorcin, guaiacol, 406)

VIII. Drugs used for their effects on the liver.
To increase the secretion of bile—cholagogues.
Ox gall, 712
(Salicylic acid, 413)

IX. Drugs used for their effects on the blood.
To increase the hæmoglobin.
Iron, 659
Arsenic, 607
To increase the alkalinity.
Alkali carbonate group, 544
Acetates and citrates, 554

X. Drugs used for specified diseases.
In Malaria.
Quinine, 357
Arsenic, 607
In Syphilis.
Mercury, 638
Iodides, 510
Rheumatic Fever.
Salicylates, Salol, 413
Myxœdema and some other thyroid diseases.
Thyroid extract, 715
Gout.
(Colchicum, 347)

XI. Drugs used for their effects on the skin.
Corrosives or caustics, 733
Emollients and protectives, 733
Local anodynes and anæsthetics, 733
Irritants.
Turpentine oil group, 86
Mustard, 89
Cantharides, 90
Croton oil, 99
Tartar emetic, 633
Camphor, 430
Menthol, 430
Iodine, 517
Ammonia, 555
(Aconite, 332)
(Veratrine, 338)
Disinfectant or irritant ointments in parasitic skin diseases.
Mercury ointment, 638
Sulphur ointment, 577
Tar, 410
Ichthyol, 412
Benzoin, storax and Peru balsam, 423
Naphtalin and naphtol, 408
Resorcin, 406
Thymol, 405
Pyrogallol, 407
Chrysarobin, 104
Camphor, 430
Boracic acid, 582
Iodol and other organic iodine compounds, 521
Organic bismuth preparations, 700
Alum preparations, 702
Arsenic, iodide of potassium, etc., may be used internally in skin diseases
Drugs administered internally to increase the secretion of perspiration (diaphoretics or sudorifics).
Ipecacuanha, 343
and other nauseating expectorants (antimony)
Ipecacuanha and opium (Dover's powder), 343
Camphor, 430
Pilocarpine, 315
Drugs administered internally to lessen the secretion of perspiration.
Atropine and belladonna, 279
Agaricin, 301
Camphoric acid, 430
Drugs applied locally and internally to arrest the secretion of milk.
Atropine

XII. Drugs used locally for their effects on the eye.
Astringents, 733
Disinfectants, 733
Caustics, 733
Anodynes and anæsthetics, 733
Drugs dilating the pupil and relaxing the accommodation—mydriatics.
Atropine and homatropine, 279
Cocaine, 302
(Gelseminine, 265)
Drugs contracting the pupil and the ciliary muscle—myotics.
Physostigmine or Eserine, 324
Pilocarpine, 315
(Muscarine, 315)

INDEX.

The preparations are not mentioned in the index unless when they are met with in the text apart from the chief constituent, *e. g.*, Tinctura Digitalis will be found under Digitalis; but Lead plaster is indexed, because it occurs apart from lead. For metallic salts, see the text under the metal, *e. g.*, for Mercury perchloride, see Mercury.

ABIES excelsa, 86
Abrin, 84, 725
Abrus precatorius, 725
Absinthe, 65, 68
Absorption from the alimentary tract, 32
lungs, 32
rectum, 34
skin, 33, 49
subcutaneous tissues, 33
wounds, 34
Acacia, 47
catechu, 114
A. C. E. mixture, 180
Aceta, 40
Acetal, 129
Acetaldehyde, 429
Acetanilide, 373
Acetate of ammonium, 557
Acetates, 554
Acetic acid, 567
ether, 71, 181
Acetone-chloroform, 129
Acetoperacid, 592
Acetophenone, 128
Acetylene, 128
Acid, acetic, 567
agaric, 301
angelic, 338
arabinic, 47
arsenic, 608
arsenious, 608
benzoic, 391, 423
boracic, 582
boric, 582
bromacetic, 129
butyric, 129
cacodylic, 608
caffeotannic, 357 (note)
cambogic, 105
camphoric, 302, 430, 433, 435
carbolic, 390, 398
carbonic, 584
cathartinic, 101
cetraric, 59
chloracetic, 129
chromic, 594, 704
chrysophanic, 101, 104, 124
cinnamic, 391, 424, 425
Acid, citric, 569
cresotinic, 391, 422
crotonoleic, 99
digallic, 114
ergotinic, 476, 482
filicic, 118
flavaspidic, 118
formic, 568
gallic, 111, 114
gallotannic, 114
gymnemic, 306 (note)
hippuric, 423
hydriodic, 514
hydrobromic, 508
hydrochloric, 565
hydrocyanic, 68, 239
hydrofluoric, 525, 567
hydrosulphuric, 579
jalapinic, 105
lactic, 568
lupulinic, 58
meconic, 207
muriatic, 565
nitric, 565
nitrohydrochloric, 565
ophelic, 59
opianic, 230
osmic, 707
oxalic, 568
oxybenzoic, 422
oxynaphtoic, 422
pannic, 118 (note)
phosphoric, 566
picramic, 426
picric, 426
piperinic, 72
polygalic, 351
propionic, 127
prussic, 48, 68, 239
pyrogallic, 407
quillaiac, 351
quinic, 357, 553
quinonic, 357 (note)
ricinoleic, 99
salicylic, 391, 413
santoninic, 122
selenic, 707
selenious, 707
sclerotinic, 482

Acid, sozoiodolic, 523
sozolic, 422
sphacelinic, 476
sulfanilic, 516
sulphuric, 564
sulphurous, 566
tannic, 111
tartaric, 568
telluric, 707
trichloracetic, 568
tropic, 279
valerianic, 74
Acids, 37, 559
fatty, 567
of the methane series, 129, 567
organic, 567
Acocanthera, 440
Acoines, 314
Aconine, 332, 336
Aconite, comparison with antipyretics, 388
digitalis, 461
Aconitine, 332
Aconitum, 332
Acorin, 70
Action, cumulative, 28
relation between chemical composition and pharmacological, 24
remote, local, indirect, general, 23
Actol, 696
Adeps, 50
Lanæ, 50
Adhesive plaster, 88, 732
Adipis, oleum, 51
Adjuvants, 28
Administration of drugs, 30
Adonidin, 441
Adonis, 440
Adrenal extract, 463
Adrenalin, 463, 466
Æther, 178
aceticus, 181
Ætheris nitrosi, spiritus, 474, 476
Affinity, elective, of drugs, 22
Agaric, 301
Agaricin, 301
Agaricus, 301
muscarius, 315
Age in relation to dose, 25
Agropyrum repens, 47
Agrostemma, 351
Ague, brass-founders', 688
Airol, 699
Alanin-mercury, 658
Alapurin, 50
Albaspidin, 118
Alcohol, 87, 128, 131
amyl, 146
butyl, 127, 146
food value of, 141
methyl, 128
propyl, 127, 128, 146
Alcohol-chloroform group, 127
Alcoholic neuritis and arsenic, 611
preparations, 39
Alcoholism, chronic, 151
Aldehyde, 129
formic, 428
Alkaline earths, see Calcium, Barium, Strontium
carbonates, 544
hydrates, 544
Alkaloids, 35
Alkasal, 702
Allium, 68, 89
Allspice, 68
Almond, 239
bitter, 68, 239
oil, 51
sweet, 48
Aloe, 103
Aloes, 100
Aloin, 57, 101, 646
Alsol, 702
Althæa, 47
Alum, 628, 700
ammonioferric, 669
Alumen, 702
Aluminium, 700
Alumnol, 702
Amidocamphor, 430
Ammonia, 555
Ammoniacum, 88
Ammonias, substituted, 503
Ammoniated mercury, 657
Ammonium acetate, 557
bases, 503
benzoate, 424
bromide, 508
carbonate, 555
chlorate, 526
chloride, 503
citrate, 557
iodide, 514
salts, 261, 500
Amygdala amara, 68, 239
dulcis, 48
Amygdalæ, oleum expressum, 51
Amygdalin, 48, 68, 239
Amyl alcohol, 146
nitrite, 468
Amylamine, 727
Amylene, 128
hydrate, 128, 192, 194
Amylquinine, 261
Amylum, 48
Anacardium, 94
Anacyclus, 73
Anæsthesia, general, 154
infiltration, 311
local, 182, 311
subarachnoid, 312
Anæsthetics, general, 154
local action of, 181
mixtures of, 180
preparations of, 178, 181
Anagallis, 711
Analgen, 374
Anamirta, 436
Andira araroba, 104

Anemone, 94
Aneson, 129
Anethi fructus, 68
Angostura bark, 59
Anhalonium, 229
Aniline, 35, 374, 428
Animal extracts, 714
Anion, 488
Anise, 67
  oil of, 68
Anisol, 391, 405
Anodyne, Hoffman's, 181
Antacids, 551
Antagonistic effects, 29
Anthelmintics, 117
Anthemis, 67
Anthracene purgatives, 100
Anthraquinone, 101
Anthrarobin, 104
Antiarin, 441
Antiaris, 440
Antidote, the arsenic, 671
Antifebrine, 374
Antihydrotics, 302
Antimoniuretted hydrogen, 637
Antimony, 48, 625, 633
Antinosin, 523
Antipyretics, 373
Antipyrine, 373
Antiricin, 724
Antiseptics, 393
Antithermine, 374
Antivenin, 726
Antozon, 590
Apalache tea, 246
Aperients, 95
Apocodeine, 237
Apocynin, 441
Apocynum, 440
Apolysine, 375
Apomorphine, 235
Apple seeds, 239
Aqua regia, 566
  Tofana, 607
Aquæ, 38
  of volatile oils, 70
  rosæ, unguentum, 50
Aqueous preparations, 38
Arabin, 47
Araroba, 104
Arbutin, 77
Arctostaphylos uva ursi, 77
Argentamine, 695
Argenti cyanidum, 244
Argentic preparations, 694
Argonin, 696
Argyria, 693
Aricine, 357 (note)
Aristol, 523
Aristolochia, 57, 59
Aristolochine, 57
Armoracia, 73, 89
Amoraciæ, Spir. Co., 69
Arnica, 67, 68
Arnicin, 70
Aromatic bitters, 70
  elixir, 69
  fluid extract, powder, 71
  series, 390
  spirit, 70
Arsenate, iron, 671
Arsenic, 607
  antidote, 671
  iodide, 620
  sulphide, 620
Arseniuretted hydrogen, 620
Arsenous acid, 608
Arsine, 620
Artemisia, 122
Asafœtida, 74
Asagræa, 338
Aseptol, 422
Ash, flowering, 54
Asiatic pill, 620
Aspidin, 118
Aspidinol, 118
Aspidium, 118
Aspidosamine, 356
Aspidosperma, 356
Aspirin, 391, 419
Asseline, 727
Astragalus, 47
Astringents, metallic, 628
  vegetable, 111
Atropa, 280
Atropamine, 280
Atropine, 235, 279, 296, 330, 351
Atroscine, 280
Attar of roses, 68
Aurantii cortex, 68
  vinum, 147
Auri chloridum, 703
Azulene, 62

BÆL fruit, 60
  Balm, 67
Balsam, 37, 391, 424
  Canada, 86
  copaiba, 76
  gurjun, 77
  of Peru, 424
  traumatic, 424
  of Tolu, 424
Balsamodendron, 89
Barbadoes nuts, 99 (note)
Barbaloin, 101
Barium, 440, 576
Barley, 48
Barosma, 78
Basham's mixture, 672
Baths, 495
  iron and steel, 666
Bay, oil of, 68
Bay rum, 69
Bearberry, 77
Beaver, 436
Bebeerine, 59
Bebeeru bark, 59
Bebirine, 59
Beers, 147

Belladonna, 280, 295
plaster, 732
Belladonnine, 280
Bellatropine, 280
Bengal quince, 60
Benne, oil of, 51
Benzaconine, 332, 336
Benzanilide, 374
Benzene, 390, 427
Benzoates, 423
Benzoic acid, 391, 423
Benzoin, 424
flowers of, 424
Benzoinated lard, 50
Benzol, 390, 427
Benzoperacid, 592
Benzoylecgonine, 302, 310
Benzoylperoxide, 592
Berberine, 56, 58, 59, 230
Bergamot, oil of, 68
Beryllium, 499 (note), 701
Beta-eucaine, 313
Betol, 391, 417
Betulæ, ol. vol., 68, 418
Bhang, 233
Biberine, 59
Bicarbonates, 544
Bichromate, 704
Bile, 98, 712
Birch, oil of, 68, 391, 418
Bismuth, 628, 696
Bitter almonds, oil of, 68, 239
Bitters, 37, 56
aromatic, 70
Bittersweet, 351, 355
Blackberry, 115
Black draught, 103
drop, 220
wash, 657
Blaud's pills, 670
Blazing star, 351
Bleaching powder, 587
Blister, flying, 92, 732
Blistering collodion, 92
Blood, therapeutic use of, 673
Bloodroot, 228
Blue mass, ointment, 656
pill, 656
Blumea, 430
Boletus laricis, 301
Bone black, 581
marrow, extract of, 723
Bones, burned, 576
Boracic acid, 582
Boral, 702
Borax, 582
Boric acid, 582
Borneo-camphor, 74, 430
Borneol, 430, 433, 434
Bornylamine, 430
Boroglycerin, 583
Bougies, 31
Brandy, 72, 146
Brassfounders' ague, 688
Brassica, 90
Brayera, 120
Bromacetic acid, 129
Bromal, 193
Bromated camphor, 435
Bromates, 529
Bromelin, 711
Bromides, 504
Bromine, 586
Bromism, 504
Bromoform, 130, 180
Bromol, 402
Bromum, 587
Broom, tops of, 267
Brown mixture, 48, 220
Brown-Sequard's fluid, 723
Brucine, 196, 204
Bryony, 105, 107
Buchheim's classification, 42
Buchu, 78
Buckthorn, 103
Bufonin, 440 (note)
Bufotulin, 440 (note)
Bunge's theory of iron, 662
Burgundy pitch, 86
plaster, 732
Burnett's solution, 691
Butternut, 108
Buttonbush, 427 (note)
Butyl alcohol, 128
chloral, 129, 192, 194
Butylamine, 727
Butyrates, 554
Butyric acid, 129
Buxine, 56, 59

CACAO, 245
butter, 31, 40, 255, 731
Cachets, 41
Cacodylates, 622 (note)
Cacodylic acid, 608
Cactaceæ, 229
Cactus grandiflorus, 440 (note)
Cade, oil of, 410
Cadmium, 706
Cæsium, 499
Caffeine, 245
compared with atropine and strychnine, 282
Cajuput, oil of, 68, 406
Calabar bean, 196, 324, 328
Calabarine, 196, 204, 324
Calamus, 70
Calcis, liquor, 574
Calcium, 569
bromide, 508, 576
carbonate, 575
chloride, 574
glycerophosphate, 576
hydrate, 574
hypochlorite, 587
hypophosphite, 534
lactophosphate, 576
peroxide, 593
phosphate, 576
sulphate, 576, 732

Calcium sulphide, 579
Calefaciens, emplastrum, 732
Cali nut, 324
Calomel, 655
Calumba, 58
Calumbin, 56, 57
Calx, 574
  chlorata, 587
  sulphurata, 579
Cambogia, 107
Camphor, 430
  com. tincture, 221
  monobromated, 430, 508
Camphoric acid, 302, 430, 433, 435
Camphorol, 430, 433
Canada balsam, 86
Canadian hemp, 440, 457
  moonseed, 59
Canadine, 56, 230, 231
Cane sugar, 54
Cannabin, 235
Cannabinol, 233
Cannabis Indica, 233
Canquoin's paste, 690
Cantharidin, 90
Cantharis, 91
Caoutchouc, 732
Caprylates, 554
Capsicum, 72, 94
Capsules, 31, 41
Capsule, suprarenal, 463
Caraway, 68
Carbo, 581
Carbolic acid, 390, 398
Carbon, 581
Carbonates, 544
Carbonic acid, 584
Carbylamine, 240
Cardamom, 68
Cardol, 94
Carica, 711
Carlsbad salts, 541
Carminatives, 63, 72, 74
Carniferrin, 673
Carolina Jasmine, 265
Carragheen, 48
Carron oil, 575
Carum, 68
Caryophyllum, 68
Caryophyllus, 68
Casca bark, 440
Cascara sagrada, 104
Cascarilla, 70
Cassia acutifolia, 102
  angustifolia, 102
  fistula, 54
  purging, 54
Cassiæ pulpa, 54
Castanea, 115
Castile soap, 731
Castoreum, 436
Castor oil, 99, 724
Catalase, 592
Cataplasma, 41 (See Poultices)
Catechu, 114
Cathartics, 95
  saline, 535
Cathartin, 101
Caulophyllum, 355
Caustic, lunar, 694
  mitigated, 694
  potash, 549
  soda, 549
  toughened, 694
Cayenne pepper, 72
Celandine, 228
Cephæline, 343
Cephælis, 343
Cephalanthin, 427 (note)
Cera, 51, 731
Cerates, 30, 40, 731
Ceratum, 51
  camphoræ, 87
Cerberin, 441
Cereus, 440 (note)
Cerium, 700
Cetaceum, 51
Cetraria, 48
Cetraric acid, 48, 59
Cetrarin, 57
Cevadilla, 338
Cevadilline, 338
Cevadine, 338
Cevine, 338
Chalk, 575
Chalybeate preparations, 669
Chamælirium, 351
Chamomile, 67
Champagne, 147, 584
Charas, 233
Charcoal, 581
Charta, 41
Chaulmoogra, 94
Chavicine, 72
Chavicinic acid, 72
Cheiranthin, 441
Cheiranthus, 441
Chelerythrin, 228
Chelidonine, 228
Chelidonium, 228
Chemical composition and action, 24
Chenopodium, 126
Cherry, Virginian, 68, 240, 244
Cherry water, 72, 147
Chestnut, 115
Children, dose for, 25
Chili saltpeter, 532
Chillies, 73
Chimaphila, 78
Chinotropine, 553
Chirata, 59
Chiretta, 59
Chloracetic acid, 129
Chloral, 129, 187, 193
  compared with hyoscine, 300
Chloralamide, 129, 192, 194
Chloralose, 129, 193, 194
Chlorates, 526
Chloretone, 129, 193, 194
Chlori aqua, 587

Chlorides, 490
Chlorinated lime, 587
soda, 587
Chlorine, 586
Chlorodyne, 181, 222
Chloroform, 71, 118, 129, 154, 178, 181
Chlorphenol, 392, 402
Chlorum, 587
Chocolate, 245, 255
Cholagogues, 95, 714
Chondrodendron, 59
Chondrus, 48
Christmas rose, 440
Chromic acid, 594, 704
Chromium, 704
Chromotherapeutics, 428
Chrysarobin, 104
Chrysophanic acid, 101, 104
Chrysotoxin, 477
Churrus, 233
Cicuta, 436
Cicutoxin, 436
Cinchona, 357
red, 357 (note)
Cinchonamine, 357 (note)
Cinchonidine, 357
Cinchonine, 357
Cineol, 122
Cinnamic acid, 391
Cinnamomum camphora, 430
Cinnamon, 68
Cinnamyl-cocaine, 302
Citrates, 535, 539
Citric acid, 569
Citrine ointment, 658
Citrophen, 375
Citrullus colocynthis, 106
Clarets, 147
Classification of drugs, 41
Claviceps purpurea, 476
Cloves, 68
Clysma, 41
Clyster, 41
Coal-tar, 410
Cobalt, 706
Coca, 302, 310
Cocaine, 302, 309, 427
Cocainization, intra-spinal, 312
subarachnoid, 312
Cocamine, 302, 309
Coccus, 55
Cochineal, 55
Cochlearia, 73, 89
Cocoa, 245
Codamine, 207
Codeine, 207, 217, 221
Cod-liver oil, 726
Coffee, 245, 254
Coffeon, 254
Cohosh, blue, 355
Cola, 245
Colchicum, 347
Cold, 86
bath, 387
cream, 50, 70
Cold pack, 322
Coleoptera, 91
Colic, painter's, 677
Colica Pictonum, 677
saturnina, 677
Collodia, 30, 40, 732
Colloid substances, 45
as demulcents, 45
as purgatives, 54
relations of to salts, 487
Collodium, 30, 40, 732
stypticum, 114, 732
vesicans, 92, 732
Colloxylin, 732
Colocynth, 105
Cologne, eau de, 69
Colophony, 88
Columbo, 58
Commiphora, 89
Common salt, 490
Compresses, hot water, 86
Concusconine, 357 (note)
Condurango, 57, 59
Condy's fluid, 594
Confectiones, 40
Conhydrine, 262
Coniine, 261, 330
Conium, 262
Conjunctiva, applications to, 31
Conquairamidine, 357 (note)
Conquairamine, 357 (note)
Conquinamine, 357 (note)
Conquinine, 357, 366
Convallamarin, 441
Convallaria, 440
Convolvulin, 105
Convolvulus, 107
Copaiba, 75
Copaiva, 75
Copper, 327, 628, 684
arsenite, 607
Coral, 576
Coralline, 576
Coriamyrtin, 436
Coriander, 67
Coriaria, 436
Corncockle, 351
Cornsilk, 78
Cornsmut, 483
Cornutine, 476, 482
Coronilla, 440
Coronillin, 441
Corrosive sublimate, 654
Cotarnine, 230, 232
Coto bark, 58, 59
Cotoin, 58, 59
Cottonroot bark, 483
Cottonseed oil, 51
Couchgrass, 47
Counter-irritation, 78
Court plaster, 732
Cranesbill, 115
Crede's colloid silver, 696
Creolin, 405
Creosols, 391, 412

Creosote, 392, 411
Cresalol, 391, 417
Cresol, 391, 404
Cresotinic acid, 391
Creta, 575
  pulv. cum opio, 221
Crocus, 55
Crotin, 725
Croton-chloral, 129, 192
Croton oil, 99
Crotonoleic acid, 99
Croton Tiglium, 100, 725
Cruciferæ, oils of, 61, 72, 89
Cryptopine, 207, 219
Cubebin, 75
Cubebs, 76
Cucumber, squirting, 107
Cucurbita, 122
Culver's Root, 107
Cumarin, 524
Cumulative effects, 28
Cupratin, 687
Cuprea, 357
Cupric sulphate, 687
Cuprohæmol, 686
Curaçoa, 72
Curara, 256, 330
Curarine, 256
Curd soap, 731
Curine, 256, 260
Currier's sumach, 436
Cuscamidine, 357 (note)
Cuscamine, 357 (note)
Cusconidine, 357 (note)
Cusconine, 357 (note)
Cusparia, 59
Cusso, 120
Cutol, 702
Cuttlefish, 576
Cyanides, 240
Cyanogen, 240
Cyclamen, 351
Cynoctonine, 336
Cypripedium, 68
Cytisus scoparius, 266

DANDELION, 59
Daphne mezereum, 94
Datura, 281, 295
Daturine, 280
Dead tongue, 436
Decocta, 39
Decoctions, 39
Degeneration, fatty, 596
Delirium tremens, 151
Delphinium, 332
Demulcents, 45
Depression, depressants, 20
Derivation, theory of, 79
Dermatol, 699
Dermol, 700
Desoxycaffeine, 254
Dextrins, 45
Diacetylperoxide, 592
Diachylon ointment, 50
Diachylon plaster, 682, 732
Diastase, 711
Didymium, 499 (note)
Diffusion, 485
Digestive ferments, 709
Digitalein, 441
Digitalin, 441
Digitalines, 456
Digitaliresin, 436
Digitalis, 351, 436, 440
  comparison with aconite, 337
  with antipyretics, 388
Digitonin, 351, 441
Digitophyllin, 441
Digitoxin, 441
Dihydrolutidine, 727
Dill, 68
Dionea, 711
Dionine, 218
Diosphenol, 78
Dioxide of hydrogen, 591
Dipterocarpus alatus, 77
Discs, 40
Disease, effect of, on dose, 29
Disinfectants, 393
Dissociation of salts, 488
Diterpenes, 61
Diuretin, 252
Dock, 115
Dogwood, 427 (note)
Donovan's solution, 620, 655
Dorema ammoniacum, 88
Dormiol, 192
Dose, conditions modifying the, 25
Dover's powder, 220, 346
Drastics, 95
Dropwort, water, 436
Drosera, 711
Drugs, 17
  action of, 20
  chemical character of, 34
  classification of, 41
  conditions modifying the effect of, 25
  definition of, 17
  elective affinity of, 22
Dryobalanops, 430, 434
Dryopteris filix-mas, 119
Duboisia Hopwoodii, 280
  myoporoides, 280, 281
Duboisine, 280, 294
Dulcamara, 351, 355
Dulcamarine, 351
Dulcin, 55
Dusting powders, 53
Dyes, aniline, 428

EASTON'S syrup, 367
Eau de cologne, 69, 146
Ecballium, 107
Eccoprotic, 95
Ecgonine, 302, 310
Effects of drugs, conditions affecting, 25
Effervescing purgatives, 541

Egg, yolk of, 49
Eigon, 520
Elastica, 732
Elaterin, 105
Elaterium, 105, 107
Elderflower, 67
Elecampane, 49
Elective affinity of drugs, 22
Electuaries, 40
Elemi, 89
Elixirs, 39
  aromatic, 69
Elm, slippery, 47
Elœoptene, 61
Embrocations, 40
Emetics, 238
Emetine, 343
Emodin, 101
Emollients, 49
Emplastra, 30, 41, 731
Emplastrum calefaciens, 92, 732
Emulsa, 39
Emulsin, 48, 68, 239
Emulsions, 32, 39
Endermic, 33
Enema, 31, 41
Epinephrine, 440, 463
Epsom salts, 535
Erbium, 499 (note)
Ergochrysin, 477
Ergot, 476
Ergotin, 482
Ericolin, 77
Erigeron, oil of, 68
Errhines, 31
Erythrol, tetranitrate, 469, 474
Erythrophœine, 441
Erythrophlœum, 440
Erythroxylon, 310
Eseridine, 324
Eserine, 324
Essences, 71
  of volatile oils, 69
Essential oils, 61
Esters, 129
Ether, 71, 129, 154, 178
  acetic, 71, 181
  nitric, 468
  nitrous, 468
Ethereal oils, 61, 86, 392
  salts, 129
Ethyl alcohol, 128
  bromide, 130, 179
  chloride, 182
  ether, 129
  nitrite, 65, 474
  oxide, 178
Ethylene bromide, 180
  chloride, 129, 179
Ethylidene chloride, 129, 179
Eucaine, 313
Eucalypti gummi, 115
Eucalyptol, 71, 406
Eucalyptus, 67, 68
  oil of, 68, 406
Eudoxine, 523, 700
Euonymin, 105, 441
Euonymus, 105, 107, 441
Euphorbin, 94
Euphorin, 375
Euquinine, 368
Europhen, 523
Eurotium oryzæ, 712
Exalgine, 374
Extracts, 40
  animal, 714
  fluid, liquid, 39
Extractum aromaticum fluidum, 71

FABIANA, 78
  Fats, 49
Fatty degeneration, 596
Fel Bovis, 714
Fennel, 68
Ferments, digestive, 709
Ferratin, 673
Ferric preparations, 669
  salts (See Iron)
Ferrocyanides, 240, 535
Ferrous preparations, 669
Ferruginous preparations, 670
Ferula, 74
  galbanum, 88
Ficus, 55
Figs, 55, 711
Filicic acid, 118
Filix mas, 118
Flag, blue, 107
Flavaspidic acid, 118
Flavoring substances, 54
Fleabane, 68
Flexible collodion, 732
Flowering ash, 54
Flowers of sulphur, 50
Fluorides, 525
Flying blister, 92
Fœniculum, 68
Formaldehyde, 394, 428, 533
Formaline, 428
Formates, 554
Formic acid, 568
Fowler's solution, 620
Foxglove, 440
Frangula, 100, 103
Frangulin, 101
Frankincense, 86
Fraxinus, 54
Friar's balsam, 424
Fruit juices, 563
Frumenti, spiritus, 146
Fuller's earth, 53
Fumigation, mercurial, 652
Fusel oil, 146

GADUS, 726
  Galbanum, 73, 88
Galipine, 59
Galla, 115
Gallacetophenone, 408
Gallæ, ung. cum opio, 222

Gallal, 702
Gallic acid, 111, 114
Gamboge, 107
Ganja, 233
Garcinia, 107
Gargarisma, 31
Gargle, 31
Garlic, 68, 89
Gas, laughing, 183
Gaultheriæ, oleum, 68, 418
Gelatin, 574 (note)
  capsule, 41
Gelsemine, 196, 204, 265
Gelsemium, 261, 265
General action, 23, 31
  anæsthetics, 154
Genito-urinary disinfectants, oils used as, 75
Gentian, 58
Geranium, 115
Gigartina, 48
Gila monster, 725
Gin, 72, 146
Ginger, 68, 72
Gland extracts, 715
Glauber's salt, 535
Glonoinum, 474
Glucose, 54
Glucosi, syrupus, 54
Glucosides, 36
Glusidum, 55
Glutol, 430
Glycerin, 40, 51
Glycerin trinitrate, 468
Glycerites, 40
Glyceritum amyl, 51
  vitelli, 51
Glycerophosphates, 543, 576
Glycol, 127
Glyconin, 51
Glycosides, 36
Glycyrrhiza, 48
  compound mixture, 220
Glycyrrhizin, 48
Gnoscopine, 207
Goa powder, 104
Gold, 703
Golden seal, 230
Gonolobus, 59
Gorite, 593
Gossypii, radicis cortex, 483
  seminis, ol., 51
Goulard's extract, cerate, lotion, 682
Granatum, 121
Grape cure, 563
Gray oil, 657
  powder, 656
Greens, Scheele's, Schweinfurt's, Paris, 607
Gregory's powder, 102
Grey oil, 657
  powder, 656
Griffith's mixture, 670
Guaiacol, 391, 412
  carbonate, 391, 412
Guaiacol salol, 417
Guaiacum, 88
Guanine, 254
Guarana, 245
Gum, 37, 45
  arabic, 47
Gum-resins, 37
Gun cotton, 732
Gurjun balsam, 77
Gymnema silvestre, 306 (note)
Gymnemic acid, 306 (note)
Gynocardia, 94
Gypsophila, 351
Gypsum, 576, 732

HÆMATOGEN, 673
  Hæmatoxylon, 115
Hæmogallol, 673
Hæmoglobin, 673
Hæmol, 673
Hagenia, 120
Hamamelis, 115
Harnack's experiment, 327
Hartshorn, spirit of, 556
Hashish, 233
Heat, 86
Heavy metals, 625
Hedeoma, 68
Hedonal, 129, 192, 194
Hellebore, green, white, 338
Helleborein, 441
Helleborus niger, 440
Heloderma, 725
Hemidesmus, 355
Hemlock, 262
  water, 436
Hemp, Canadian, 440, 457
  Indian, 233
Henbane, 281
Hepar sulphuris, 579
Heroine, 217
Hesperidin, 70
Heteroxanthine, 246
Hexylamine, 727
Hock, 147
Hofmann's anodyne, 181
Holocaine, 314, 389
Homatropine, 280, 294, 296
Homococamine, 302
Homochelidonine, 228
Homocinchonidine, 357 (note)
Homoisococamine, 303
Honey, 39, 54
Hops, 58
Hordeum, 48
Horehound, 67
Horseradish, 69, 73, 89
Hot compresses, 86
  packs, 322
Humulus, 59
Hunjadi-janos, 541
Hydragogues, 95
Hydrargyrum, 654
Hydrastine, 230, 231
Hydrastinine, 230, 231

Hydrastis, 230
Hydrates, 544
Hydriodic acid, 514
Hydrobromic acid, 508
Hydrochloric acid, 565
Hydrocinchonine, 357 (note)
Hydrocotarnine, 207, 218
Hydrocyanic acid, 239
Hydrofluoric acid, 525, 567
Hydrogen, antimoniuretted, 637
arseniuretted, 620
dioxide, 591
ion, 559
peroxide, 591
phosphuretted, 605
sulphuretted, 579
Hydroquinidine, 357 (note)
Hydroquinine, 357 (note)
Hydroquinone, 77, 390
Hydrosulphuric acid, 579
Hygrine, 303 (note)
Hyoscine, 279, 293
Hyoscyamine, 235, 279, 292, 296
Hyoscyamus, 281, 295
Hypertonic solutions, 486
Hypnal, 193, 374
Hypnone, 129, 193
Hypnotics, 187
Hypochlorites, 587
Hypodermic injection, 33
Hypophosphites, 534
Hypophysis, extract of, 722
Hypoquebrachine, 356
Hyposulphites, 534
Hypotonic solution, 486

ICELAND moss, 48, 59
Ichthyocolla, 732
Ichthyol, 392, 412
Idiosyncrasies, 27
Ignatia, 204
Ilex, Paraguay, 245
Illicium, 68
Immunity, 28, 725
Indian corn, 78
hemp, 233, 235
tobacco, 278
India-rubber, 732
Indirect action, 23
Infiltration anæsthesia, 311
fatty, 596
Infundibular body, 722
Infusa, 39
Infusions, 39
Ingluvin, 711
Injection, hypodermic, 33
intravenous, 34
subcutaneous, 33
Insect poisons, 725
Internal secretions, 714
Intestine, absorption from, 32
Intraspinal cocainization, 312
Intravenous injection, 34
Inula, 49
Inunction, 33, 650, 657
Iodalbumin, 720
Iodates, 529
Iodides, 510
Iodine, 517, 719
Iodipin, 520
Iodism, 510, 518
Iodoform, 521
Iodol, 523
Iodolen, 520
Iodospongin, 720
Iodothyrin, 715
Iodum, 519
Ions, 488
Ipecacuanha, 343
Ipecacuanhæ pulvis co., 221
cum scilla, pil., 221
Ipomœa, 107
Iris, 107
Irish moss, 48
Iron, 628, 659
arsenate, 621
hypophosphite, 534
Irritation, Irritants, 20
Irritants, skin, 78
Isinglass, 732
Isoamyl alcohol, tertiary, 128
Isobutyl nitrite, 472
Isococamine, 302
Isolichenin, 48
Isonitriles, 240
Isopelletierine, 121
Isopilocarpine, 315
Isoquinoline, 35, 264
Isotonic solutions, 486
Itrol, 696
Ivy, poison, 93

JABORANDI, 315, 321
Jaborine, 315 (note)
Jalapa, 107
Jalapin, 105
James' powder, 637
Japaconitine, 332
Jasmine, yellow or Carolina, 265
Jateorhiza, 58
Jatropha, 99 (note)
Javelle's solution, 587
Jecoris aselli, oleum, 728
Jequirity, 725
Jervine, 338
Jesuit's drops, 424
Juglans, 108
Juices, 40
Juniper, empyreumatic oil of, 410
oil, 68
sabina, 87
tar oil, 410

KAIRINE, 374
Kairoline, 374
Kali nut, 324
Kamala, 122
Kaolin, 53, 731
Kation, 488
Kava-kava, 73

Keratin, 731
Kermes mineral, 637
Ketones, 129
Kino, 115
  pulvis comp., 221
Kirschwasser, 72
Kola, 245
Kombe, 440
Kosin, 120
Kosotoxin, 120
Kousso, 120
Krameria, 114
Kresamine, 405
Kryofine, 375
Kummel, 72

LABARRAQUE'S solution, 587
Lactates, 554
Lactation, medication during, 26
Lactic acid, 568
Lactophenine, 375
Lactophosphate, 576
Lactose, 54
Lactuca, 235
Lactucarium, 235
Lady's slipper, 68
Lamellæ, 40
Lanichol, 50
Lanolin, 50
Lanthanum, 499 (note)
Lanthopine, 207
Lappaconitine, 336
Lard, 50
  oil of, 51
Largin, 696
Larynx, application to, 31
Laudanine, 207, 219
Laudanosine, 207
Laudanum, 220
Laughing gas, 183
Laurel, 68, 240
  camphor, 434
  leaves, 68, 240
  water, 70
Laurocerasi folia, 68, 70
Laurocerasus, 240
Lavender, oil of, 68
Laxative, 95
Lead, 628, 674
  iodide, 514
  palsy and arsenic, 611
  plaster, 732
Lemon, 68
  essential salts of, 569
  juice, 569
  oil of, 68
Leptandra, 107
Leptandrin, 105
Lettuce, 235
Levico water, 621
Lichenin, 48
Lily of the valley, 440
Lime, 569, 574
  chlorinated, 587
  hypophosphite, 534
Lime juice, 569
  phosphate, carbonate, 53
  sulphurated, 579
Limonis cortex, 68
Liniments, 40
Linimentum camphoras, 87
  chloroformi, 87
  saponis, 87
Lini oleum, 51
Linseed, 47
  oil, 51
Linum, 47
Lipanin, 728
Liqueurs, 67, 71
Liquidambar, 424
Liquid extracts, 39
Liquor epispasticus, 92
Liquores, 39
Liquorice, 48
Litharge, 682
Lithium, 499
  benzoate, 424
  bicarbonate, 544
  bromide, 508
  carbonate, 544
  citrate, 540, 541
  hydrate, 544
  salicylate, 418
Liver of sulphur, 579
Lizard, poisonous, 725
Lobelia, 278
Lobeline, 278
Local action, 23
  anæsthesia, 182, 311
Logwood, 115
Loretin, 523
Losophan, 523
Lotions, 39, 657
Lozenges, 31, 40
Lugol's solution, 519
Lunar caustics, 694
Lungs, absorption from, 32
  administration by, 30
Lupulin, 59
Lupulinic acid, 58
Lupulus, 59
Lycaconitine, 337
Lycetol, 553
Lycopodium, 53
Lysidine, 553
Lysol, 405
Lytta, 91

MACE, 68
Magisterium bismuthi, 698
Magnesia, 540, 550
  fluid, 540
Magnesium, 539
  carbonate, 535, 550
  chloride, 535
  citrate, 535, 541
  oxide, 535
  salts, 539
  sulphate, 535
Maize, 78

Maize, fungus of, 483
Malakine, 375, 417
Malates, 535
Male fern, 118
Mallotus, 122
Malonates, 558
Malt enzyme, 711
extract, 711
Maltine, 711
Maltzyme, 711
Mandragora, 281, 295
Mandragorine, 280
Mandrake, 280, 281, 295
Manganese, 628, 703, 705
Mangani dioxidum, 705
Manicheel tree, 94
Manna, 54
Mannitol hexanitrate, 469
Marrubium, 67
Marshmallow, 47
Massa, 40
Mastiche, 103
Maté, 245
Materia medica, definition of, 19
Matico, 77
Matricaria, 67
Maydis, ustilago, 483
Meals, influence of, on dose, 26
Meconic acid, 207
Meconidine, 207
Medicated waters, 38
Medication, local, 30
Mel, 54
Melissa, 67
Mellita, 39
Menispermum, 56, 59
cocculus, 436
Menstruation, 26
Mentha, 67
Menthane, 430
Menthol, 71, 430, 434, 732
Mercurialism, 641
Mercury, 625–632, 638
iodide, 514, 655
sozoiodolate, 523, 658
Metacresol, 404
Metals, heavy, 625
minor, 703
Metaphosphates, 539
Methacetine, 375
Methyl alcohol, 128
-arbutin, 77
bromide, 180
chloride, 182
coniine, 262
hydroquinone, 77
morphine, 218
salicylate, 391, 417, 418
strychnine, 261
Methylal, 129
Methylene bichloride, 179
Meyer-Overton theory of narcosis, 20, 128, 167
Mezcal buttons, 229
Mezcaline, 229
Mezereum, 94
Milk of lime, 575
sugar of, 54
of sulphur, 580
Mindererus, spirit of, 557
Mineral waters, 579, 588, 673
alkaline, 552
iron, 671
Mint, essence of, 72
Misturæ, 39
Mithridatism, 27
Mitigated caustic, 694
Mixture, 39
brown, 48
Molasses, 54
Molybdenum, 706
Monkshood, 337
Monobromated camphor, 430, 434, 508
Monochlorphenol, 391, 402
Monsel's solution, 669
Moonseed, Canadian, 59
Morphine, 207, 219
comparison with antipyrine, 388
poisoning, atropine in, 299
Morphinism, 226
Morpholine, 207
Morrhuæ, oleum, 728
Morrhuine, 727
Morrhuol, 728
Moschus, 435
Mouth, administration by, 30, 31
Muawine, 442
Mucilages, 39, 47
Mucuna, 324
Muriatic acid, 565
Muscale buttons, 229
Muscarine, 315, 330
Mushrooms, 315
Musk, 74, 435
Mustard, 72, 89
Myoctonine, 337
Myrciæ oleum, 68
Myriapoda, 239
Myristica, 68
Myronate, 89
Myrosin, 89
Myroxylon, 424
Myrrha, 89, 103

NAPHTHALAN, 392
Naphthalene, 390, 408
Naphtalol, 417
Naphtol, 118, 390, 408
Naphthylamine, 426
Narceine, 207, 218
Narcosis, Mayer-Overton theory of, 20, 128, 167
Narcotics, of methane series, 127, 187
Narcotine, 207, 218, 230
Nectandræ cortex, 59
Neriin, 441
Neriodorin, 441
Nerium, 440
Neroli, oil of, 68
Neurodine, 375

Newt, 437
Ngai-camphor, 430
Nickel, 706
Nicotiana, 268
Nicotin, 268, 330
Nightshade, black, 351
deadly, 280
Nitrates, 468, 531
Nitre, 532
sweet spirits of, 474
Nitric acid, 565
ethers, 468
Nitriles, 240
Nitrites, 468
Nitrobenzol, 425
Nitro-bodies, 469
Nitroethane, 469
Nitroglycerin, 468, 473
and digitalis, 460
Nitrohydrochloric acid, 565
Nitromethane, 469
Nitrous ether, 468
oxide, 183
Nose, application to, 31
Nosophen, 523
Nut-gall, 115
Nutmeg, 68
Nuts, purging, 99 (note)
Nux vomica, 196, 204

OAK BARK, white, 115
poison, 93
Octane, 128
Oenanthic ethers, 72, 131, 146
Oenanthotoxin, 436
Oenanthylates, 554
Oil, See Oleum
Oil, cod-liver, 725
cotton-seed, 51
fusel, 146
of roses, 68
Oils, 49, 51
essential, 61, 392
ethereal, 61
purgative, 91
volatile, 61, 392
Ointments, 30, 40, 50
Olea, 51
Oleander, 440
Oleandresin, 436
Oleandrin, 441
Oleates, 40
Oleites, 356
Oleoresin zingiberis, 68
Oleoresins, 37
Oleum adipis, 51
amygdalæ amaræ, 68, 239
expressum, 51
anethi, 68
anisi, 68
aurantii florum, 68
bergamottæ, 68
betulæ volatile, 68, 418
cadinum, 410
cajuputi, 68
Oleum carui, 68
caryophylli, 68
chenopodii, 126
cinereum, 657
cinnamomi, 68
copaibæ, 76
coriandri, 68
crotonis, 99
cubebæ, 76
erigerontis, 68
eucalypti, 68
fœniculi, 68
gaultheriæ, 68, 418
gossypii seminis, 51
hedeomæ, 68
jecoris aselli, 728
juniperi, 68, 87
lavandulæ florum, 68
limonis, 68
lini, 51
menthæ piperitæ, 68
viridis, 68
morrhuæ, 728
myrciæ, 68
myristicæ, 68
olivæ, 51
phosphoratum, 605
picis, 410
pimentæ, 68
pini, 87
ricini, 99
rosæ, 68
rosmarini, 68
sabinæ, 68, 87
santali, 76
sassafras, 68
sesami, 51
sinapis volatile, 90
terebinthinæ, 86
theobromatis, 731
thymi, 68
tiglii, 99
Olive oil, 51, 728
Oöphorin, 723
Ophelic acid, 59
Opianic acid, 230
Opium, 207, 219
comparison with hysocine, 300
Orange flowers, oil of, 68
peel, 68
wine, 147
Ordeal bean, 324, 328
Orexine, 58, 60
Organic acids, 567
iron, 659
Organotherapeutics, 714
Orphol, 700
Orpiment, 607
Orthocresol, 405
Orthoform, 314
Orthophosphates, 539
Oscine, 279
Osmic acid, 707
Osmosis, 486
Osmotic pressure, 486

Otto of roses, 68
Ouabaio, 440
Oxalates, 557
Oxalic acid, 568
Oxamine, 558
Oxgall, 714
Oxybenzoic acid, 422
Oxydimorphine, 217
Oxygen, 588
Oxymel, 39, 54
Oxynaphtoic acid, 391, 422
Oxynarcotine, 207
Ozone, 590

PACK, hot, cold, 322
Palmitatis, 554
Palsy, painters', 678
Panama bark, 355
Pancreas, extract of, 723
Pancreatic ferment, 710
Pancreatin, 710
Pannic acid, 118 (note)
Papain, 711
Papaja, 711
Papaveraceæ, 228
Papaveramine, 207
Papaverine, 207, 218
Papaveris capsulæ, 222
Papaver Rhœas, 55
somniferum, 207, 220
Papayotin, 711
Papers, 41
Papoid, 711
Paracotoine, 58
Paracresol, 405
Paraffin, 50
Paraform, 429
Paraguay tea, 245
Paraldehyde, 129, 191, 194
Paralysis, definition of, 21
and fatigue, relation between, 257
Paramidophenol, 374
Paraxanthine, 246, 254
Paregoric, 220, 434
Pareira, 59
Parilla, yellow, 59
Parillin, 351
Paris green, 607
plaster of, 576, 732
Pathological conditions modifying dose, 29
Paullinia, 245
Pawpaw, 711
Payta, 356
Paytanine, 356
Pearson's solution, 620
Pelletierine, 121
Pellitory, 72
Pellote, 229
Pennyroyal, 68
oil, 68
Pental, 128, 179
Pentane, 128
Pepo, 122
Pepper, 72, 94
Pepper, black, 72
Cayenne, 72
Peppermint, 67
oil of, 68, 420
Pepsin, 709
Peracids, 592
Perchlorates, 529
Perchlorethane, 180
Permanganates, 593
Peronine, 218
Peroxide of hydrogen, 591
Persodine, 593
Persulphates, 593
Peru, balsam of, 424
Petrolate, 50
Petroleum, 50
Peyotl, 229
Pharmacognosy, 19
Pharmacological action and chemical structure, 24
Pharmacology, definition of, and relations to biology and clinical subjects, 17–19
Pharmacopœia, 37
Pharmacy, 19
Pheasant's eye, 440
Phenacetine, 375
Phenanthren, 207
Phenatidines, 375
Phenazone, 385
Phenetol, 391, 405
Phenocoll, 375
Phenol, 390, 398
Phenylhydrazine, 374
Phloretin, 730
Phloridzin, 729
Phosphates, 535, 539
Phosphidum zinci, 605, 690
Phosphine, 605
Phosphorated oil, 605
Phosphoric acid, 566
Phosphorus, 594
Phosphuretted hydrogen, 605
Physostigma, 324, 328
Physostigmin, 260, 324, 330
Phytolacca, 436
Phytolaccatoxin, 436
Pichi, 78
Picis liquidæ, oleum, 410
emplastrum cantharidum, 92, 732
Picræna, 58
Picric acid, 426
Picroaconitine, 332
Picropodophyllin, 105
Picrotin, 436
Picrotoxin, 436
Pills, 40
cathartic vegetable, 106
compound cathartic, 106
Pilocarpidine, 315 (note)
Pilocarpine, 315, 330
Pilocarpus, 314
Pilulæ, 40
cathartic vegetable, 106
compositæ, 106

Pimenta, 68
Pimpernel, scarlet, 711
Pimpinella, 67
Pineapple, 711
Pink-root, 125
Pinus, 86, 410
Piper, 73
  angustifolium, 77
  cubeba, 76
Piperazine, 553
Piperidine, 72, 261, 264
Piperine, 72
Pipirinic acid, 72
Pipsissewa, 78
Pitch, Burgundy, 86, 732
  plaster, 87, 732
Pituitary gland, 722
Pituri, 268
Piturin, 268, 281
Pix, Burgundica, 86
  carbonis, 410
  liquida, 410
Plasters, 30, 41, 731
  warming, 92
Platinum, 703
Plum stones, 239
Plumbi suppositoria, co., 221
  cum opio, pilula, 221
Plumbum, 674
Plummer's pills, 637
Podophyllotoxin, 105
Podophyllum, 105, 107
Poison ivy, 93
  oak, 93
Poisons, 17
Pokeberry, 436
Pokeroot, 439
Polygala, 351
Polygalic acid, 351
Polysolve, 356
Pomegranate, 121
Poplar, 418
Poppy, red, 55
Port wine, 147
Potash, 549
  water, 584
Potassa, 547
  sulphurata, 579
Potassium action, 498
  acetate, 554
  arsenite, 620
  bicarbonate, 550
  bichromate, 704
  bitartrate, 540
  bromide, 508
  carbonate, 549
  chlorate, 526
  chloride, 498
  citrate, 535, 540
  ferrocyanide, 535
  hydrate, 549
  hypophosphite, 534
  iodate, 529
  iodide, 514
  lactate, 554
Potassium malate, 535
  nitrate, 532
  nitrite, 468, 473
  oxalate, 557
  perchlorate, 529
  permanganate, 593
  persulphate, 593
  phosphate, 535
  propionate, 554
  relation to lime, 572
  salts, 498
  sozoiodolate, 523
  sulphate, 540
  sulphide, 579
  tartrate, 535, 540
  thiosulphate, 579
  valerianate, 554
Potato, 281, 351
Poultices, 41, 86
Powders, 40
  bleaching, 587
  dusting, 53
  Seidlitz, 541
Precipitate, white, 657
Pregnancy, 26
Preparations, alcoholic, 39
  aqueous, 38
  pharmacopœial, 37
Propionates, 554
Propyl alcohol, 128, 146
  nitrite, 472
Protargol, 696
Protocurarine, 256
Protocuridine, 256
Protocurine, 256
Protopine, 207, 219, 228
Protoplasm poisons, 22
Protoveratridine, 338
Protoveratrine, 338
Prune stones, 239
Prunes, 59
Prunus amygdala, 48
  laurocerasus, 240
  Virginiana, 68, 240, 244
Prussic acid, 48, 68, 239
Pseudaconitine, 332
Pseudohyoscyamine, 280
Pseudojervine, 338
Pseudomorphine, 207
Pseudostrophanthin, 441
Psychotria, 346
Pterocarpi lignum, 55
Pterocarpus, 115
Ptomatropine, 281
Pulsatilla, 94
Pulveres, 40
Pulvis, aromatic, 71
  effervescens co., 541
Pumpkin seed, 122
Punica, 121
Punicine, 121
Purine bodies, 246
Purgatives, 95, 104
  anthracene, 100
  effervescing, 541

Purgatives, oily, 99
saline, 535
vegetable, 95
Purging nuts, 99 (note)
Pustulants, 79
Pyoctanine, 428
Pyrethric acid, 72
Pyrethrum, 72
Pyridine, 35, 261, 264, 533
Pyrocatechin, 390, 401
Pyrodine, 374
Pyrogallol, 390, 407
Pyrophosphates, 539
Pyrovanadates, 706
Pyroxylin, 732

QUAIRAMIDINE, 357 (note)
Quairamine, 357 (note)
Quassia, 58, 118
Quassiin, 56, 57, 58
Quebracho, 356
Quercus, 115
Quicksilver, 638
Quillaja, 351, 355
Quinamine, 357 (note)
Quince, Bengal, 60
seeds, 48
Quinetum, 369
Quinidine, 357, 366
Quinic acid, 553
Quinine, 357
compared with antipyretics, 388
hydrobromate, 508
tasteless, 368
Quinoidine, 369
Quinoline, 35, 261, 264, 374
Quinova red, 357 (note)
Quinovin, 357 (note)

RASPBERRY, 54
Realgar, 607
Rectified spirits, 146
Rectum, application to, 31, 34, 40
Remijia, 357
Remote action, 23
Resin, 88, 732
Resinous purges, 105
Resins, 36
Resopyrin, 374
Resorcin, 390, 406
Revulsion, theory of, 79
Rhamnus purshiana, 104
Rhatany, 114
Rheum, 102
Rhœadine, 207
Rhœados petala, 55
Rhubarb, 100
Rhus glabra, 115
radicans, 94
toxicodendron, 93
Ricin, 724
Ricinus, 99, 100, 724
Roburite, 426
Rochelle salt, 535
Rosa, 67
Rose, petals, 68
Rose, Christmas, 440
Rosemary, oil of, 68
Roses, attar, otto, oil of, 68
Rosmarinæ, oleum, 68
Rottlerin, 122
Rubefacients, 79
Rubidium, 499
Rubijervine, 338
Rubus, 115
idæus, 54
Rum, 72, 146
Rumex, 115

SABADILLA, 338
Sabadine, 338
Sabina, 68, 87
Saccharides, 36
Saccharin, 55
Saccharum, 54
lactis, 54
Saffron, 55
Sage, 65, 68
Salamander, alkaloids of, 36
Salep, 48
Salicin, 418
Salicylates, 418
Salicylic acid, 391, 413
Saline cathartics, 535
Saliphen, 375, 417
Salipyrine, 374
Salithymol, 391, 417
Salocoll, 375
Salol, 391, 417
Salophen, 375
Salt action, 485
common, 490
of sorrel, 568
Saltpetre, 532
Salts, dissociation of, 488
ethereal, 129
purgative, 535
smelling, 556
Salumin, 702
Salves, 30, 40
Salvia, 68
Sal volatile, spirit of, 556
Samandarine, 437
Sambucus, 67
Sandalwood, 75
oil of, 75
red, 55
Sanders, 55
Sanguinaria, 228
Sanguinarine, 228
Santalol, 75
Santalum album, 76
rubrum, 55
Santonica, 125
Santonin, 122
Santoninoxim, 124
Sapo, 87, 221, 731
Saponaria, 351
Saponin, 350
Sapotoxin, 350
Sarsæ radix, 355

Sarsaparilla, 351, 355
Sarsaponin, 357
Sassafras, 47, 68
Sassy bark, 440
Saturnine colic, palsy, 677
Saunders, 55
Savine, 65, 68, 87
Scammony, 98, 107
Schænocaulon, 338
Scheele's green, 607
Schleich's infiltration anæsthesia, 311
  mixtures, 180
Schmiedeberg's classification, 42
Schweinfurth's green, 607
Scilla, 440
  Pil. ipecac. cum, 221
Scillain, 441
Scillotoxin, 457
Sclerotinic acid, 482
Scoparin, 266
Scopolamine, 279, 293
Scopoleine, 280, 295
Scopolia, 279, 295, 351
  atropoides, 281, 295
Scopoline, 279
Scorpion, 725
Scurvy grass, 73
Secale, 476
Secaline, 477
Secalintoxin, 477
Secretions, internal, 714
Securite, 426
Sedine, 72
Sedum acre, 72
Seidlitz powder, 541
Selenium, 706
Semecarpus, 94
Senega, 351, 355
Senegin, 351
Senna, 100, 102, 103
Sepia, 576
Septentrionaline, 336
Serpentaria, 59
Serpentary, 57
Sesame oil, 51
Sesquiterpenes, 61, 75
Sevum, 50
Sex, influence of, on dose, 26
Sherry wine, 147
Sidonal, 553
Silver, 628, 691
  colloid, 696
Sinalbin, 89
Sinapis, 89
Sinigrin, 89
Size, influence of, on dose, 25
Skin, application of drugs to, 30, 33
  irritants, 78
Slippery elm, 47
Smilacin, 351
Smilax, 351, 355
Snake poison, 725
  root, 59
Soap, 87, 221, 731
  bark, 351, 355
Soaps, compound pill of, 221
Soapwort, 351
Socaloin, 101
Socatrine aloes, 103
Soda, 549
  chlorinated, 581
  water, 584
Sodæ chloratæ, liquor, 587
Sodium, acetate, 555
  arsenate, 620
  benzoate, 424
  bicarbonate, 550
  bisulphite, 534
  borate, 583
  bromate, 529
  bromide, 508
  butyrate, 554
  cacodylate, 622 (note)
  caprylate, 554
  carbonate, 550
  chlorate, 526
  chloride, 490
  citrate, 535, 554
  citrotartrate, 541
  ethylate, 549
  ferrocyanide, 535
  fluoride, 525
  fluorosilicate, 526
  formate, 554
  hydrate, 549
  hypophosphite, 534
  hyposulphite, 534
  iodate, 529
  iodide, 514
  lactate, 554
  malate, 535
  malonate, 559
  metacresotinate, 422
  nitrate, 532
  nitrite, 468, 473
  œnanthylate, 554
  orthocresotinate, 422
  oxalate, 557
  palmitate, 554
  paracresotinate, 422
  perchlorate, 529
  persulphate, 593
  phosphate, 540
  propionate, 554
  pyrophosphate, 540
  salicylate, 391, 413, 418
  silicate, 732
  sozoiodolate, 523
  stearate, 554
  succinate, 559
  sulphate, 535, 540
  sulphide, 577
  sulphite, 534
  sulphocarbolate, 422
  sulphovinate, 541
  tartrate, 535, 540
  thiosulphate, 534
  valerianate, 554
Soft soap, 731
Solanaceæ, alkaloids, 281

Solanein, 351
Solanine, 350, 351
Solanidine, 351
Solanum, 351
Solutions, 486
Solutol, 405
Solveol, 405
Solvines, 356
Soporifics, 187
Sorrel, salts of, 568
Sowbread, 351
Sozoiodolates, 523
Sozolic acid, 422
Spanish fly, 91
Sparteine, 261, 266
Spartium, 266
Spearmint, 67
  oil of, 68
Spermaceti, 51
Spermine, 723
Sphacelinic acid, 476
Sphacelotoxin, 477
Spider poison, 725
Spigelia, 125
Spirits, 71, 146
Spiritus, 39
  frumenti, 146
  rectificatus, 146
  vini gallici, 146
  of volatile oils, 69
Spleen, extract of, 723
Spruce fir, Norway, 86
Squills, 440
Squirting cucumber, 107
Stannous salts, 706
Staphisagria, 332, 336
Star anise, 68
  blazing, 351
Starch, 45, 48, 51, 53
  glycerite, 51
Stavesacre, 332
Stearates, 554
Stearoptenes, 61, 430
Stupe, turpentine, 87
Sterculia, 245
Sternutatories, 31
St. Ignatius' bean, 204
Stibine, 637
Stimulation, 20
Stomach and intestine, absorption from, 32
  administration by, 30
Stonecrop, biting, 72
Storax, 424
Stramonium, 281, 295
Strontium, 576
  acetate, 555
  bromide, 508, 577
  iodide, 514
Strophanthus, 440, 456
Structure, chemical and pharmacological action of, 24
Strychnine, 196, 204, 219
  comparison with atropine and caffeine, 282
Strychnine, comparison with digatilis, 461
  with picrotoxin, 437
Strychnos, 196, 204, 256
Styptic collodion, 114, 732
Stypticine, 232
Styrax, 424
Subarachnoid cocainization, 312
Subcutaneous injection, 33
Sublimate, corrosive, 654
Succi, 40
Succinates, 558
Suet, 50
Sugar, 45, 54
  of lead, 675
Sulphanilic acid, 516
Sulphates, 535, 539
Sulphides, 577
Sulphites, 533
Sulphocarbolates, 391, 422, 690, 700
Sulphonal, 129, 191
Sulphovinate, 541
Sulphur, 577
  flowers of, 580
  iodide, 518
  milk of, 580
  sublimated, 580
  washed, 580
Sulphuretted hydrogen, 579
Sulphuric acid, 564
  ether, 178
Sulphuris, hepar, 579
Sulphurous acid, 566
Sumach, 115
  Currier's, 436
Sumbul, 74
Sundew, 711
Suppository, 31
  glycerin, 52
Suppositories, 40
Suprarenal capsule, extract of, 440, 463
Suprarennin, 463 (note)
Swamp dogwood, 427 (note)
Swertia chirata, 59
Symphorol, 254
Synergists, 28
Syrupus, 39, 54
  aromaticus, 70
Systemic action, 23
Syzygium, 730

TABELLÆ, 40
  Tablet triturates, 40
Taka-diastase, 712
Talc, 53
Tamarind, 55
Tanacetum, 68
Tanghinia, 441
Tanghinin, 441
Tannal, 702
Tannalbin, 116
Tannic acid, 111
Tannigen, 115
Tannocol, 116
Tannoform, 115

Tannopin, 115
Tansy, 68, 117
Tar, 391, 410
Tarantula, 725
Taraxacum, 59
Tartar, cream of, 540
emetic, 633
Tartaric acid, 563, 568
Tartrates, 535, 539
Tea, 245, 254
Teel oil, 51
Tellurates, 707
Tellurium, 706
Terebene, 87
Terebinthina, 86
Terpenes, 61, 86
Terpin hydrate, 87
Testicle, extract of, 723
Tetrachloride of carbon, 180
Tetraiodpyrrol, 523
Tetronal, 129, 192, 194
Thalline, 374
Thallium, 706
Thea, 245
Thebaine, 196, 204, 207, 218
Theine, 245 (note)
Theobroma, 245
Theobromine, 245
Theon, 255
Theophylline, 245
Therapeutics, 17
Therapin, 727
Thermifugine, 374
Thermodine, 375
Thevetia, 440
Thevetin, 441
Thilanin, 580
Thioform, 700
Thiol, 392, 412
Thiosinamine, 90
Thiosulphates, 533
Thornapple, 281
Thus Americanum, 86
Thyme, 68, 405
Thymol, 67, 71, 390, 405
Thymosalol, 417
Thymus extract, 722
Thyreoglobulin, 715
Thyreoiodin, 715 (note)
Thyroid extract, 715
Thyroidism, 719
Tin, 628, 706
Tinctures, 39
Tobacco, 268, 276, 283
Indian, 278
Tolerance, 27, 725
Tolu, balsam of, 424
Toluifera, 424
Toluol, 390
Tolutana, tinctura, 424
Toluylendiamine, 427
Tonka bean, 524
Toot poison, 436
Toughened caustic, 694
Toxalbumin, 724
Toxicodendrol, 93
Toxicology, 17
Toxiresin, 436
Tragacanth, 47
Tribromphenol, 402
Trichloracetic acid, 568
Trichlorphenol, 391
Tricresol, 405
Triiodocresol, 523
Trimethyl-ammonium, 315, 504
Trimethylamine, 128, 727
Trinitrate of glycerin, 468
Trinitrini, liquor, 474
Trional, 129, 192, 194
Trioxybenzol, 407
Triticum, 47
Tritopine, 207
Trituratio, 40, 107
Trituration, 40
Troches, 40
Trochisci, 31, 40
Tropacocaine, 303, 310
Tropeines, 280, 294
Tropic acid, 279
Tropine, 121, 279
Tully's powder, 221
Tumenol, 392
Tungsten, 706
Turlington's balsam, 424
Turpentine, 117
oil of, 86, 590
Turpeth mineral, 657

ULMUS, 47
Uncaria, 114
Uncomocomo, 118 (note)
Unguenta, 30, 40
Unguentum, 50
Upas tree, 440
Uranium, 706
Urari, 256
Urea as a diuretic, 493
Urechites, 440
Urethane, 129, 192, 194
Urethra, applications to, 31
Urethral suppositories, 40
Urginea maritima, 456
Urosin, 553
Urotropine, 553
Ursion, 77
Ustilago, 483
Uterus, applications to, 31
Uva ursi, 77

VAGINA, applications to, 31
Vaginal suppositories, 40
Valerian, 74
Valerianates, 554
Vallet's mass, 670
Valyl, 74
Vanadium, 706
Vanilla, 68
Vaseline, 50
Vegetable astringents, 111
cathartic pill, 106

Vegetable purgatives, 95
Veratrine, 338
Veratrum, 338
Verbascum, 48
Vermicides, 117
Vermifuges, 117
Veronica, 107
Vesicans, collodium, 732
Vesicants, 79
Vienna paste, 549, 574
Vina, 39
Vinegar, 517
  medicated, 40
Vini Gallici, spiritus, 146
Vinum album, 147
  aurantii, 147
  rubrum, 147
  xericum, 147
Vioform, 523
Violet, 344
  sight, 122
Virginian cherry, 68, 240, 244
  prune, 68
Vitellus, 49
Volatile oils, 61, 392, 430

WAHOO, 107, 457
  Warburg's tincture, 368
Warming plaster, 92, 732
Wash, black, 657
Wash, yellow, 657
Washes, 39, 657
Water, 490
  aërated, 504
  potash, 584
  soda, 584
Waterglass, 732
Waterhemlock, 436
Watering places, 495
Waters, iron, 672
Waters, medicated, 38
Wax, 51, 731
Weight, influence of, on dose, 25
Whiskey, 72, 146
Willow, 418
Wine, 147
Wines, medicated, 39
Wintergreen, oil of, 68, 391, 418
Witchhazel, 115
Woodtar, 391
Woolfat, 50
Woorali, 256
Woorara, 256
Wormseed, American, 126
  Levant, 125
Wormwood, 65, 68
Wristdrop, 678

XANTHIN, 246, 254
  Xanthopsia, 122
Xeroform, 700
Xylol, 390

YELLOW jasmine, 265
  sight, 122
Yerba Mate, 245
Yolk of egg, 49
  glycerite of, 51
Young's formula, 25
Youpon, 246
Yttrium, 499 (note)

ZEA, 78
  Zinc, 628, 688
Zinc-hæmol, 689
Zinc phosphide, 605, 690
  sozoiodolate, 523
  sulphocarbolate, 422, 690
Zincum, 689
Zingiber, 68, 73

WELLCOME LIBRARY INSTITUTE

Diuretics.

(i) direct action on Kidney cells.

Caffeine
Mercury
Squills

acetates
citrates
tartrates
etc. (? chiefly by salt-action)

(ii) increasing pressure of blood ~~[illegible]~~

~~[illegible]~~

(a) increasing action of heart
digitalis group.
caffeine
alcohol

(b) vaso constriction general
digit. group caffeine ~~alcohol~~
strychnine cold

(c) altering vessels in Kidney
Broom Buchu Uva ursi
Juniper Turps Copaiba Cantharides.
caffeine

Antipyretics.

(i) Cold direct withdrawal of heat, this reduces metabolism which in turn reduces T still further.

(ii) antipyrin series Coal tar series
+ loss of heat – setting regulating central mechanism in C S at lower level.

(iii) Quinine
dim. metabolism less N etc excreted.
At 1st O_2 & CO_2 ON later decreased.

(iv) direct action on cause.
eg Quinine on malarial parasite
salicylates in rheumatic fever.

(v) simple vaso dilatation
eg Sp. Aeth. Nit. by increasing sweat etc.

(vi) obscure central action.
Aconite + heat loss due to vaso dil.

Antiseptics.

(1) Iodoform. ? prob only by forming dim. secretion & ∴ less favorable soil for organisms
crust on wound protecting
free Iodine may be formed.

(2) nascent oxygen

(3) substances forming albuminates c̄ protoplasm of organisms.

(4) specific action as Hg ion

atropin group
nitrites
lobelia
Stramonium

relieve in
asthma by
paralysing
X terminating
leading to
relaxation of
Bronchial musculature